

5G Toolbox™

User's Guide



MATLAB®

R2021a



How to Contact MathWorks



Latest news: www.mathworks.com
Sales and services: www.mathworks.com/sales_and_services
User community: www.mathworks.com/matlabcentral
Technical support: www.mathworks.com/support/contact_us



Phone: 508-647-7000



The MathWorks, Inc.
1 Apple Hill Drive
Natick, MA 01760-2098

5G Toolbox™ User Guide

© COPYRIGHT 2018–2021 by The MathWorks, Inc.

The software described in this document is furnished under a license agreement. The software may be used or copied only under the terms of the license agreement. No part of this manual may be photocopied or reproduced in any form without prior written consent from The MathWorks, Inc.

FEDERAL ACQUISITION: This provision applies to all acquisitions of the Program and Documentation by, for, or through the federal government of the United States. By accepting delivery of the Program or Documentation, the government hereby agrees that this software or documentation qualifies as commercial computer software or commercial computer software documentation as such terms are used or defined in FAR 12.212, DFARS Part 227.72, and DFARS 252.227-7014. Accordingly, the terms and conditions of this Agreement and only those rights specified in this Agreement, shall pertain to and govern the use, modification, reproduction, release, performance, display, and disclosure of the Program and Documentation by the federal government (or other entity acquiring for or through the federal government) and shall supersede any conflicting contractual terms or conditions. If this License fails to meet the government's needs or is inconsistent in any respect with federal procurement law, the government agrees to return the Program and Documentation, unused, to The MathWorks, Inc.

Trademarks

MATLAB and Simulink are registered trademarks of The MathWorks, Inc. See www.mathworks.com/trademarks for a list of additional trademarks. Other product or brand names may be trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective holders.

Patents

MathWorks products are protected by one or more U.S. patents. Please see www.mathworks.com/patents for more information.

Revision History

September 2018	Online only	New for Version 1.0 (Release 2018b)
March 2019	Online only	Revised for Version 1.1 (Release 2019a)
September 2019	Online only	Revised for Version 1.2 (Release 2019b)
March 2020	Online only	Revised for Version 2.0 (Release 2020a)
September 2020	Online only	Revised for Version 2.1 (Release 2020b)
March 2021	Online only	Revised for Version 2.2 (Release 2021a)

1		Downlink Channels
	5G NR Downlink Vector Waveform Generation	1-2
	NR PDSCH Resource Allocation and DM-RS and PT-RS Reference Signals	1-15
	NR Cell Search and MIB and SIB1 Recovery	1-30
	NR PDSCH Throughput	1-56
	Downlink Control Processing and Procedures	1-77
	NR Channel Estimation Using CSI-RS	1-83
	5G NR CSI-RS Measurements	1-90
	NR SSB Beam Sweeping	1-97
	NR Downlink Transmit-End Beam Refinement Using CSI-RS	1-112
	NR Positioning Reference Signal	1-126

2		Uplink Channels
	5G NR Uplink Vector Waveform Generation	2-2
	5G NR Uplink with PUCCH Vector Waveform Generation	2-13
	NR PUSCH Resource Allocation and DM-RS and PT-RS Reference Signals	2-27
	NR PUSCH Throughput	2-45
	NR SRS Configuration	2-59
	NR Uplink Channel State Information Estimation Using SRS	2-79
	5G NR PRACH Configuration	2-92
	5G NR PRACH Waveform Generation	2-105

5G NR PRACH Detection Test	2-109
NR UCI Multiplexing on PUSCH	2-116

Signal Reception

3

Extract PBCH Symbols and Channel Estimates for Decoding	3-2
Deep Learning Data Synthesis for 5G Channel Estimation	3-5
NR Phase Noise Modeling and Compensation	3-16

End-To-End Simulation

4

Transmission Over MIMO Channel Model with Delay Profile TDL	4-2
Plot Path Gains for TDL-E Delay Profile with SISO	4-4
Reconstruct Channel Impulse Response Using CDL Channel Path Filters	4-6
Visualize CDL Channel Model Characteristics	4-8
NR PUCCH Block Error Rate	4-12
CDL Channel Model Customization with Ray Tracing	4-23
TDD Reciprocity-Based PDSCH Beamforming Using SRS	4-33
5G NR Downlink CSI Reporting	4-47

System-Level Simulation

5

NR Interference Modeling with Toroidal Wrap-Around	5-2
NR Cell Performance Evaluation with MIMO	5-22
NR PUSCH FDD Scheduling	5-37
NR FDD Scheduling Performance Evaluation	5-55
NR TDD Symbol Based Scheduling Performance Evaluation	5-72

NR Cell Performance Evaluation with Physical Layer Integration	5-92
NR Intercell Interference Modeling	5-108
Generate and Visualize FTP Application Traffic Pattern	5-124

Test and Measurement

6

5G NR-TM and FRC Waveform Generation	6-2
App-Based 5G Waveform Generation	6-19
5G NR Downlink ACLR Measurement	6-22
Modeling and Testing an NR RF Transmitter	6-32
Modeling and Testing an NR RF Receiver with LTE Interference	6-45
EVM Measurement of 5G NR PDSCH Waveforms	6-59
EVM Measurement of 5G NR PUSCH Waveforms	6-69
5G NR Downlink Carrier Aggregation, Demodulation, and Analysis	6-78

Code Generation and Deployment

7

What is C Code Generation from MATLAB?	7-2
Using MATLAB Coder	7-2
C/C++ Compiler Setup	7-2
Functions and System Objects That Support Code Generation	7-3

Downlink Channels

5G NR Downlink Vector Waveform Generation

This example shows how to configure and generate a 5G NR downlink vector waveform for a baseband component carrier by using the `nrWaveformGenerator` function.

Introduction

This example shows how to parameterize and generate a 5G New Radio (NR) downlink waveform by using the `nrWaveformGenerator` function. The generated waveform contains these channels and signals:

- PDSCH and its associated DM-RS and PT-RS
- PDCCCH and its associated DM-RS
- PBCH and its associated DM-RS
- PSS and SSS
- CSI-RS

This example demonstrates how to parameterize and generate a baseband component carrier waveform characterized by multiple subcarrier spacing (SCS) carriers and bandwidth parts (BWP). You can generate multiple instances of the physical downlink shared channel (PDSCH), the physical downlink control channel (PDCCCH), and the channel state information reference signal (CSI-RS) over the different BWPs. You can configure sets of control resource sets (CORESETs) and search space monitoring opportunities for mapping the PDCCCHs. This example does not apply precoding to the physical channels and signals.

Waveform and Carrier Configuration

The baseband waveform is parameterized by the `nrDLCarrierConfig` object and a set of additional objects associated with the waveform channels and signals.

With the `nrDLCarrierConfig` object, you can set these downlink carrier configuration parameters.

- Label for this DL carrier configuration
- SCS carrier bandwidth in resource blocks
- Carrier cell ID
- Length of the generated waveform in subframes
- Windowing
- Sample rate of the OFDM modulated waveform
- Carrier frequency for symbol phase compensation

You can control SCS carrier bandwidths and guardbands using the `NStartGrid` and `NSizeGrid` properties of the `nrSCSCarrierConfig` object.

```
waveconfig = nrDLCarrierConfig(); % Create an instance of the waveform's parameter object
waveconfig.Label = 'DL carrier 1'; % Label for this downlink waveform configuration
waveconfig.NCellID = 0; % Cell identity
waveconfig.ChannelBandwidth = 40; % Channel bandwidth (MHz)
waveconfig.FrequencyRange = 'FR1'; % 'FR1' or 'FR2'
waveconfig.NumSubframes = 10; % Number of 1ms subframes in generated waveform (1,2,4,8 slots)
waveconfig.WindowingPercent = 0; % Percentage of windowing relative to FFT length
waveconfig.SampleRate = []; % Sample rate of the OFDM modulated waveform
```



```

waveconfig.CarrierFrequency = 0; % Carrier frequency in Hz. This property is used for symbol pl
                                % compensation before OFDM modulation, not for upconversion

% Define a set of SCS specific carriers, using the maximum sizes for a
% 40 MHz NR channel. See TS 38.101-1 for more information on defined
% bandwidths and guardband requirements
scscarriers = {nrSCSCarrierConfig(),nrSCSCarrierConfig()};
scscarriers{1}.SubcarrierSpacing = 15;
scscarriers{1}.NSizeGrid = 216;
scscarriers{1}.NStartGrid = 0;

scscarriers{2}.SubcarrierSpacing = 30;
scscarriers{2}.NSizeGrid = 106;
scscarriers{2}.NStartGrid = 1;

```

SS Burst

In this section you can set the parameters for the signal synchronization (SS) burst. The numerology of the SS burst can be different from other parts of the waveform. This is specified via the block pattern parameter, as specified in TS 38.213 Section 4.1. A bitmap specifies the blocks to transmit in a 5 ms half-frame burst. You can also set the periodicity in milliseconds and the power of the burst. For a full list of configurable SS burst properties, see `nrWavegenSSBurstConfig`.

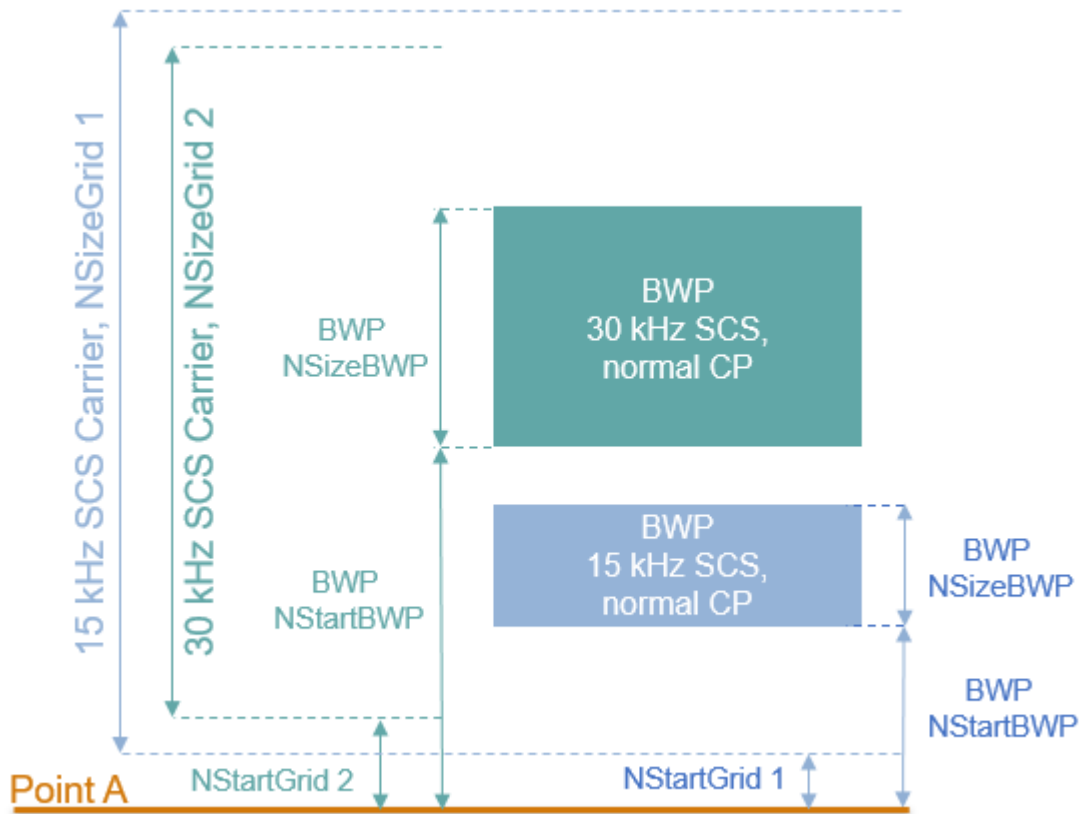
```

% SS burst configuration
ssburst = nrWavegenSSBurstConfig();
ssburst.Enable = 1; % Enable SS Burst
ssburst.Power = 0; % Power scaling in dB
ssburst.BlockPattern = 'Case B'; % Case B (30kHz) subcarrier spacing
ssburst.TransmittedBlocks = [1 1 1 1]; % Bitmap indicating blocks transmitted in a 5ms half-frame
ssburst.Period = 20; % SS burst set periodicity in ms (5, 10, 20, 40, 80, 160)
ssburst.NCRBSSB = []; % Frequency offset of SS burst (CRB), use [] for the waveform

```

Bandwidth Parts

A BWP is formed by a set of contiguous resources sharing a numerology on a given carrier. You can define multiple BWPs using a cell array. Each element in the cell array of `nrWavegenBWPConfig` objects defines a BWP. For each BWP, you can specify the SCS, the cyclic prefix (CP) length and the bandwidth. The `SubcarrierSpacing` property maps the BWP to one of the SCS specific carriers defined earlier. The `NStartBWP` property controls the location of the BWP in the carrier, relative to point A. This is expressed in common resource blocks (CRB) in terms of the BWP numerology. Different BWPs can overlap with each other.



```
% Bandwidth parts configurations
bwp = {nrWavegenBWPConfig(),nrWavegenBWPConfig()};
bwp{1}.BandwidthPartID = 1; % Bandwidth part ID
bwp{1}.Label = 'BWP @ 15 kHz'; % Label for this BWP
bwp{1}.SubcarrierSpacing = 15; % BWP subcarrier spacing
bwp{1}.CyclicPrefix = 'Normal'; % BWP cyclic prefix for 15 kHz
bwp{1}.NSizeBWP = 25; % Size of BWP in PRBs
bwp{1}.NStartBWP = 12; % Position of BWP, relative to point A (i.e. CRB)

bwp{2}.BandwidthPartID = 2; % Bandwidth part ID
bwp{2}.Label = 'BWP @ 30 kHz'; % Label for this BWP
bwp{2}.SubcarrierSpacing = 30; % BWP subcarrier spacing
bwp{2}.CyclicPrefix = 'Normal'; % BWP cyclic prefix for 30 kHz
bwp{2}.NSizeBWP = 50; % Size of BWP in PRBs
bwp{2}.NStartBWP = 51; % Position of BWP, relative to point A (i.e. CRB)
```

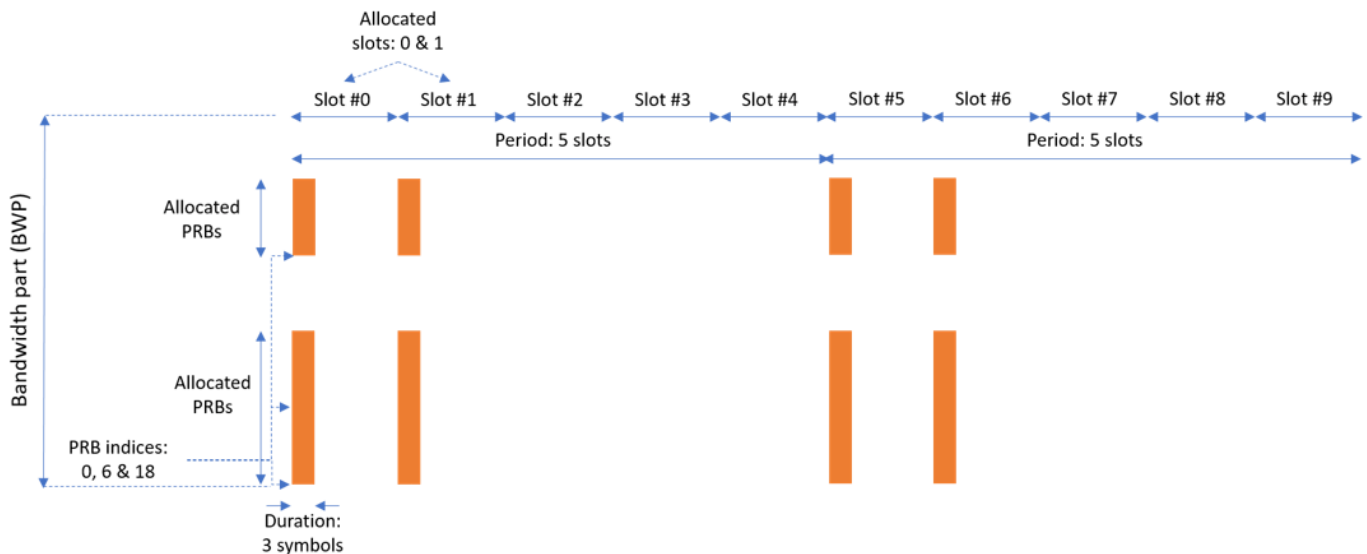
CORESET and Search Space Configuration

This section specifies the CORESET and the PDCCH search space configuration. The CORESET and search spaces specify the possible locations (in time and frequency) of the control channel transmissions for a given numerology. Each element in the cell array of nrCORESETConfig objects defines a CORESET and each element in the cell array of nrSearchSpaceConfig objects defines a search space.

Set these parameters for each CORESET and search space:

- The OFDM symbols which specify the first symbol of each CORESET monitoring opportunity in a slot
- The duration of the block of allocated slots within a period
- Periodicity of the allocation pattern
- The CORESET duration in symbols, either 1, 2 or 3
- A bitmap defining the allocated physical resource blocks (PRB) of the CORESET. The CORESET frequency allocation is defined in blocks of 6 PRBs, aligned in CRB numbering, relative to point A. Each bit in the bitmap selects all 6 PRBs in the CRB aligned block that contains it
- CCE-to-REG mapping which can be 'interleaved' or 'noninterleaved'
- Resource element group (REG) bundle size (L), either (2,6) or (3,6), based on CORESET duration
- Interleaver size, either 2, 3, or 6
- Shift index, a scalar value in the range 0...274

The figure below shows the meaning of some of the CORESET parameters.



```
% CORESET and search space configurations
coresets = {nrCORESETConfig()};
coresets{1}.CORESETID = 1;
coresets{1}.Duration = 3;
coresets{1}.FrequencyResources = [1 1 0 1];
coresets{1}.CCEREGMapping = 'noninterleaved';
coresets{1}.REGBundleSize = 3;
coresets{1}.InterleaverSize = 2;
coresets{1}.ShiftIndex = waveconfig.NCellID;
```

```
% CORESET ID
% CORESET symbol duration (1,2,3)
% Bitmap indicating blocks of 6 PRB for CORESET
% Mapping: 'interleaved' or 'noninterleaved'
% L (2,6) or (3,6)
% R (2,3,6)
% Set to NCellID
```

```
searchspaces = {nrSearchSpaceConfig()};
searchspaces{1}.SearchSpaceID = 1;
searchspaces{1}.CORESETID = 1;
searchspaces{1}.SearchSpaceType = 'ue';
searchspaces{1}.SlotPeriodAndOffset = [5,0];
searchspaces{1}.Duration = 2;
searchspaces{1}.StartSymbolWithinSlot = 0;
searchspaces{1}.NumCandidates = [8 8 4 2 0];
```

```
% Search space ID
% CORESET associated with this search space
% Search space type, 'ue' or 'common'
% Allocated slot period and slot offset of search
% Number of slots in the block of slots in pattern
% First symbol of each CORESET monitoring opportunity
% Number of candidates at each AL (set to 0 if the
```

PDCCH Instances Configuration

This section specifies the the set of PDCCH instances in the waveform by using a cell array. Each element in the cell array of `nrWavegenPDCCHConfig` objects defines a sequence of PDCCH instances.

Set these parameters for each PDCCH sequence:

- Enable or disable this PDCCH sequence
- Specify a label for this PDCCH sequence
- Specify the BWP carrying the PDCCH. The PDCCH uses the SCS specified for this BWP
- Power scaling in dB
- Enable or disable downlink control information (DCI) channel coding
- Allocated search spaces within the CORESET monitoring occasion sequence
- Search space (and CORESET) that carries the PDCCH instances
- Period of the allocation in slots. Empty period indicates no repetition
- The aggregation level (AL) of the PDCCH (number of control channel elements (CCEs))
- The allocated candidate which specifies the CCE used for the transmission of the PDCCH
- RNTI
- Scrambling NID for this PDCCH and its associated DM-RS
- DM-RS power boosting in dB
- DCI message payload size
- DCI message data source. You can use an array of bits or one of these standard PN sequences: 'PN9-ITU', 'PN9', 'PN11', 'PN15', 'PN23'. The seed for the generator can be specified using a cell array in the form {'PN9', seed}. If no seed is specified, the generator is initialized with all ones

```

pdcch = {nrWavegenPDCCHConfig()};
pdcch{1}.Enable = 1 ; % Enable PDCCH sequence
pdcch{1}.Label = 'PDCCH @ 15 kHz'; % Label for this PDCCH sequence
pdcch{1}.BandwidthPartID = 1; % Bandwidth part of PDCCH transmission
pdcch{1}.Power = 1.1; % Power scaling in dB
pdcch{1}.Coding = 1; % Enable DCI coding
pdcch{1}.SearchSpaceID = 1; % Search space
pdcch{1}.SlotAllocation = 0; % Allocated slots indices for PDCCH sequence
pdcch{1}.Period = 5; % Allocation period in slots
pdcch{1}.AggregationLevel = 8; % Aggregation level (1,2,4,8,16 CCEs)
pdcch{1}.AllocatedCandidate = 1; % PDCCH candidate in search space (1 based)
pdcch{1}.RNTI = 0; % RNTI
pdcch{1}.DMRSScramblingID = 1; % PDCCH and DM-RS scrambling NID
pdcch{1}.DMRSPower = 0; % Additional DM-RS power boosting in dB
pdcch{1}.DataBlockSize = 20; % DCI payload size
pdcch{1}.DataSource = 'PN9'; % DCI data source

```

PDSCH Instances Configuration

This section specifies the set of PDSCH instances in the waveform by using a cell array. Each element in the cell array of `nrWavegenPDSCHConfig` objects defines a sequence of PDSCH instances. This example defines two PDSCH sequences.

General Parameters

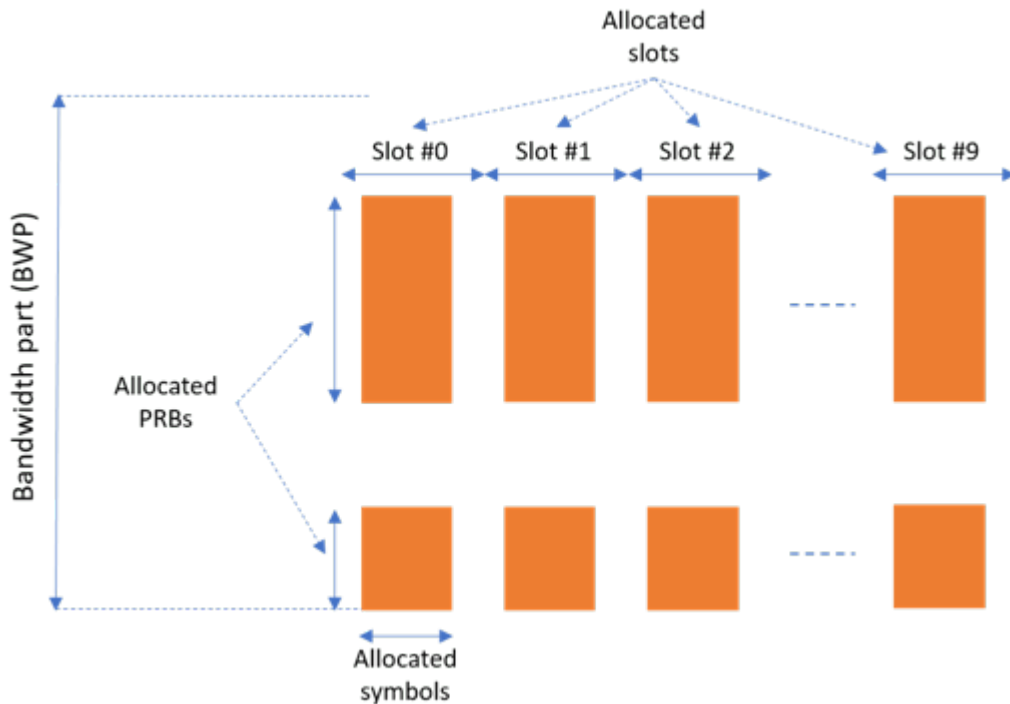
Set these parameters for each PDSCH sequence:

- Enable or disable this PDSCH sequence
- Specify a label for this PDSCH sequence
- Specify the BWP carrying the PDSCH. The PDSCH uses the SCS specified for this BWP
- Power scaling in dB
- Enable or disable the DL-SCH transport channel coding
- Transport block data source. You can use an array of bits or one of these standard PN sequences: 'PN9-ITU', 'PN9', 'PN11', 'PN15', 'PN23'. The seed for the generator can be specified using a cell array in the form {'PN9', seed}. If no seed is specified, the generator is initialized with all ones
- Target code rate used to calculate the transport block sizes
- Overhead parameter
- Symbol modulation
- Number of layers
- Redundancy version (RV) sequence
- Enable or disable the interleaving of the virtual to physical resource block mapping
- Bundle size for the interleaved map, specified by the higher layer parameter vrb-ToPRB-Interleaver

```
pdsch = {nrWavegenPDSCHConfig()};
pdsch{1}.Enable = 1;           % Enable PDSCH sequence
pdsch{1}.Label = 'PDSCH @ 15 kHz'; % Label for this PDSCH sequence
pdsch{1}.BandwidthPartID = 1; % Bandwidth part of PDSCH transmission
pdsch{1}.Power = 0;           % Power scaling in dB
pdsch{1}.Coding = 1;         % Enable the DL-SCH transport channel coding
pdsch{1}.DataSource = 'PN9'; % Channel data source
pdsch{1}.TargetCodeRate = 0.4785; % Code rate used to calculate transport block sizes
pdsch{1}.XOverhead = 0;      % Rate matching overhead
pdsch{1}.Modulation = 'QPSK'; % 'QPSK', '16QAM', '64QAM', '256QAM'
pdsch{1}.NumLayers = 2;      % Number of PDSCH layers
pdsch{1}.RVSequence = [0,2,3,1]; % RV sequence to be applied cyclically across the PDSCH
pdsch{1}.VRBToPRBInterleaving = 0; % Disable interleaved resource mapping
pdsch{1}.VRBBundleSize = 2; % vrb-ToPRB-Interleaver parameter
```

Allocation

This diagram represents some of the parameters used in the PDSCH allocation.



You can set the following parameters to control the PDSCH allocation. These parameters are relative to the BWP. The specified PDSCH allocation will avoid the locations used for the SS burst.

- Symbols in a slot allocated to each PDSCH instance
- Slots in a frame used for the sequence of PDSCH
- Period of the allocation in slots. Empty period indicates no repetition
- The allocated PRBs relative to the BWP
- RNTI. This value is used to link the PDSCH to an instance of the PDCCH
- NID for scrambling the PDSCH bits

```
pdsch{1}.SymbolAllocation = [2,9]; % First symbol and length
pdsch{1}.SlotAllocation = 0:9; % Allocated slot indices for PDSCH sequence
pdsch{1}.Period = 15; % Allocation period in slots
pdsch{1}.PRBSet = [0:5, 10:20]; % PRB allocation
pdsch{1}.RNTI = 0; % RNTI
pdsch{1}.NID = 1; % Scrambling for data part
```

CORESETs and sets of PRB can be specified for rate matching around, if required

- The PDSCH can be rate matched around one or more CORESETs
- The PDSCH can be rate matched around other resource allocations

```
pdsch{1}.ReservedCORESET = 1; % Rate matching pattern, defined by CORESET IDs
pdsch{1}.ReservedPRB{1}.PRBSet = []; % Rate matching pattern, defined by set of PRB (RRC 'bitr
pdsch{1}.ReservedPRB{1}.SymbolSet = [];
pdsch{1}.ReservedPRB{1}.Period = [];
```

PDSCH DM-RS Configuration

Set the DM-RS parameters.

```
% Antenna port and DM-RS configuration (TS 38.211 section 7.4.1.1)
pdsch{1}.MappingType = 'A';           % PDSCH mapping type ('A'(slot-wise),'B'(non slot-wise))
pdsch{1}.DMRSPower = 0;                % Additional power boosting in dB

pdsch{1}.DMRS.DMRSConfigurationType = 2; % DM-RS configuration type (1,2)
pdsch{1}.DMRS.NumCDMGroupsWithoutData = 1; % Number of DM-RS CDM groups without data. The value of 1 is for configuration type 1, and 2 is for configuration type 2.
pdsch{1}.DMRS.DMRSPortSet = [];        % DM-RS antenna ports used ([] gives port numbers 0:N)
pdsch{1}.DMRS.DMRSTypeAPosition = 2;   % Mapping type A only. First DM-RS symbol position (2)
pdsch{1}.DMRS.DMRSLength = 1;          % Number of front-loaded DM-RS symbols (1(single symbol), 2(double symbol))
pdsch{1}.DMRS.DMRSAdditionalPosition = 0; % Additional DM-RS symbol positions (max range 0...3)
pdsch{1}.DMRS.NIDNSCID = 1;            % Scrambling identity (0...65535)
pdsch{1}.DMRS.NSCID = 0;                % Scrambling initialization (0,1)
```

PDSCH PT-RS Configuration

Set the PT-RS parameters.

```
% PT-RS configuration (TS 38.211 section 7.4.1.2)
pdsch{1}.EnablePTRS = 0;                % Enable or disable the PT-RS (1 or 0)
pdsch{1}.PTRSPower = 0;                  % Additional PT-RS power boosting in dB

pdsch{1}.PTRS.TimeDensity = 1;           % Time density (L_PT-RS) of PT-RS (1,2,4)
pdsch{1}.PTRS.FrequencyDensity = 2;     % Frequency density (K_PT-RS) of PT-RS (2,4)
pdsch{1}.PTRS.REOffset = '00';          % PT-RS resource element offset ('00','01','10','11')
pdsch{1}.PTRS.PTRSPortSet = 0;          % PT-RS antenna ports must be a subset of DM-RS ports
```

When PT-RS is enabled, the DM-RS ports must be in the range from 0 to 3 for DM-RS configuration type 1, and in the range from 0 to 5 for DM-RS configuration type 2. Nominally, the antenna port of PT-RS is the lowest DM-RS port number.

Specifying Multiple PDSCH Instances

Specify the second PDSCH sequence for the second BWP.

```
pdsch{2} = pdsch{1};
pdsch{2}.Enable = 1;
pdsch{2}.Label = 'PDSCH @ 30 kHz';
pdsch{2}.BandwidthPartID = 2;           % PDSCH mapped to 2nd BWP
pdsch{2}.SymbolAllocation = [0,12];
pdsch{2}.SlotAllocation = [2:4,6:20];
pdsch{2}.PRBSet = [25:30, 35:38];      % PRB allocation, relative to BWP
```

CSI-RS Instances Configuration

This section configures CSI-RS in the waveform. Each element in the cell array of `nrWavegenCSIRSConfig` objects defines a set of CSI-RS resources associated with a BWP. This example defines two sets of CSI-RS resources that are disabled.

General Parameters

Set these parameters for a set of CSI-RS resources:

- Enable or disable this set of CSI-RS resources
- Specify a label for this set of CSI-RS resources

- Specify the BWP carrying this set of CSI-RS resources. The CSI-RS resource(s) configuration uses the SCS specified for this BWP
- Specify the power scaling in dB. Providing a scalar defines the power scaling for a single CSI-RS resource or all configured CSI-RS resources. Providing a vector defines a separate power level for each of the CSI-RS resources.

```
csirs = {nrWavegenCSIRSConfig()};  
csirs{1}.Enable = 0;  
csirs{1}.Label = 'CSI-RS @ 15 kHz';  
csirs{1}.BandwidthPartID = 1;  
csirs{1}.Power = 3; % Power scaling in dB
```

CSI-RS Configuration

You can configure these parameters for one or more zero-power (ZP) or non-zero-power (NZP) CSI-RS resource configurations.

- Type of CSI-RS resource(s) ('nzp','zp')
- Row number corresponds to CSI-RS resource(s) as defined in TS 38.211 Table 7.4.1.5.3-1 (1...18)
- Frequency density of CSI-RS resource(s). It can be 'one', 'three', 'dot5even', or 'dot5odd'
- Subcarrier locations of CSI-RS resource(s) within a resource block (RB)
- Number of RBs allocated to CSI-RS resource(s) (1...275)
- Starting RB index of CSI-RS resource(s) allocation relative to the carrier resource grid (0...274)
- OFDM symbol locations of CSI-RS resource(s) within a slot
- The period and offset of slots (0-based) of CSI-RS resource(s). This parameter can be a vector or a cell array of vectors. In the latter case, each cell corresponds to an individual CSI-RS resource. In case of a vector, the same set of slots is used for all CSI-RS resources
- Scrambling identity corresponds to CSI-RS resource(s) for pseudo-random sequence generation (0...1023)

```
csirs{1}.CSIRSType = {'nzp','zp'};  
csirs{1}.RowNumber = [3 5];  
csirs{1}.Density = {'one','one'};  
csirs{1}.SubcarrierLocations = {6,4};  
csirs{1}.NumRB = 25;  
csirs{1}.RBOffset = 12;  
csirs{1}.SymbolLocations = {13,9};  
csirs{1}.CSIRSPeriod = {[5 0],[5 0]};  
csirs{1}.NID = 5;
```

Specifying Multiple CSI-RS Instances

Specify the second set of CSI-RS resources for the second BWP.

```
csirs{2} = nrWavegenCSIRSConfig();  
csirs{2}.Enable = 0;  
csirs{2}.Label = 'CSI-RS @ 30 kHz';  
csirs{2}.BandwidthPartID = 2;  
csirs{2}.Power = 3; % Power scaling in dB  
csirs{2}.CSIRSType = {'nzp','nzp'};  
csirs{2}.RowNumber = [1 1];  
csirs{2}.Density = {'three','three'};  
csirs{2}.SubcarrierLocations = {0,0};
```



```
csirs{2}.NumRB = 50;  
csirs{2}.RBOffset = 50;  
csirs{2}.SymbolLocations = {6,10};  
csirs{2}.CSIRSPeriod = {[10,1],[10,1]};  
csirs{2}.NID = 0;
```

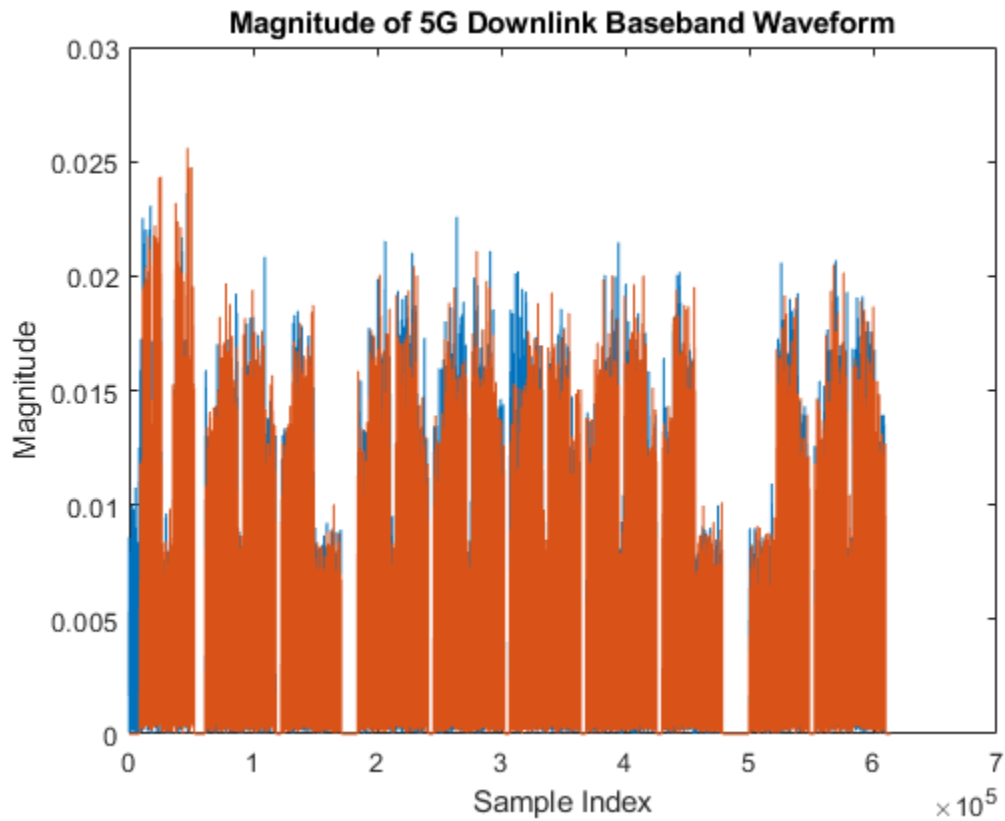
Waveform Generation

This section assigns all the channel and signal parameters into the main carrier configuration object `nrDLCarrierConfig`, then generates and plots the waveform.

```
waveconfig.SSBurst = ssburst;  
waveconfig.SCSCarriers = scscarriers;  
waveconfig.BandwidthParts = bwp;  
waveconfig.CORESET = coresets;  
waveconfig.SearchSpaces = searchspaces;  
waveconfig.PDCCH = pdcch;  
waveconfig.PDSCH = pdsch;  
waveconfig.CSIRS = csirs;  
  
% Generate complex baseband waveform  
[waveform,info] = nrWaveformGenerator(waveconfig);
```

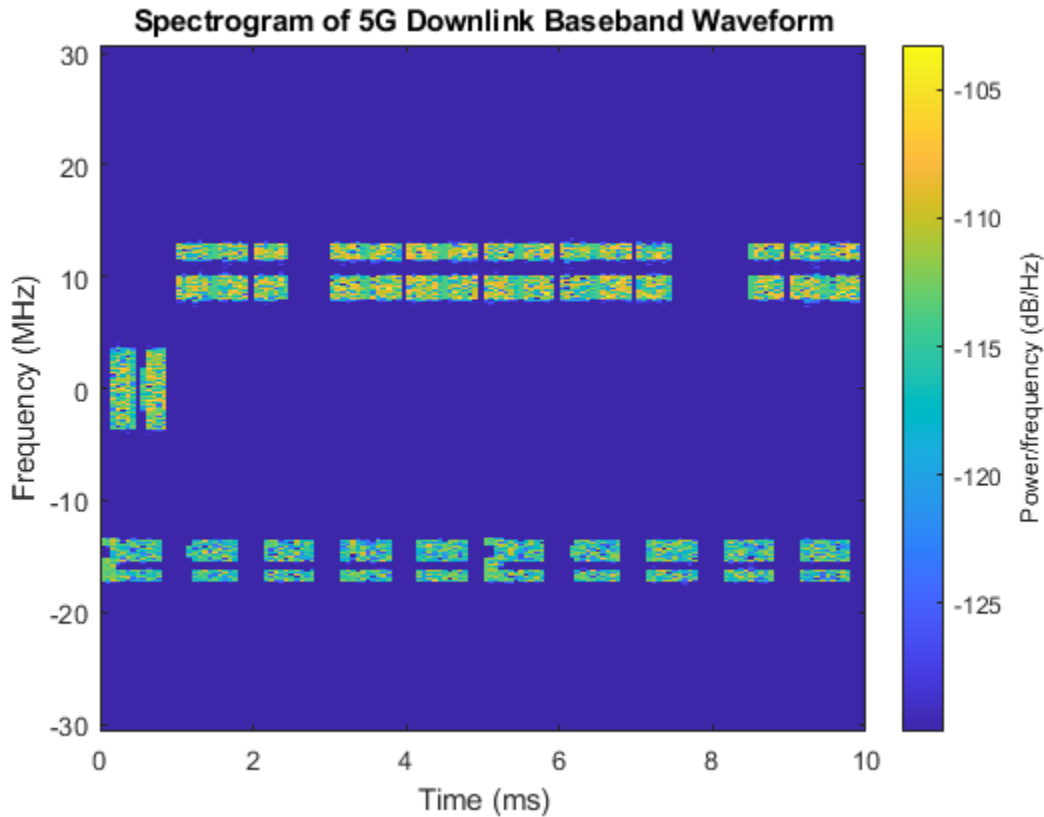
Plot the magnitude of the baseband waveform for the set of antenna ports defined.

```
figure;  
plot(abs(waveform));  
title('Magnitude of 5G Downlink Baseband Waveform');  
xlabel('Sample Index');  
ylabel('Magnitude');
```



Plot spectrogram of waveform for first antenna port.

```
samplerate = info.ResourceGrids(1).Info.SampleRate;  
nfft = info.ResourceGrids(1).Info.Nfft;  
figure;  
spectrogram(waveform(:,1),ones(nfft,1),0,nfft,'centered',samplerate,'yaxis','MinThreshold',-130)  
title('Spectrogram of 5G Downlink Baseband Waveform');
```



The waveform generator function returns the time-domain waveform and a structure `info`, which contains the underlying resource element grid and a breakdown of the resources used by all the PDSCH and PDCCH instances in the waveform.

The `ResourceGrids` field is structure array, which contains these fields:

- The resource grid corresponding to each BWP
- The resource grid of the overall bandwidth containing the channels and signals in each BWP
- An info structure with information corresponding to each BWP. The contents of this info structure for the first BWP are shown below.

```
disp('Modulation information associated with BWP 1:')
disp(info.ResourceGrids(1).Info)
```

```
Modulation information associated with BWP 1:
      Nfft: 4096
      SampleRate: 61440000
      CyclicPrefixLengths: [1x14 double]
      SymbolLengths: [1x14 double]
      Windowing: 0
      SymbolPhases: [0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0]
      SymbolsPerSlot: 14
      SlotsPerSubframe: 1
      SlotsPerFrame: 10
      k0: 0
```

Note that the generated resource grid is a 3D matrix where the different planes represent the antenna ports. For the different physical channels and signals the lowest port is mapped to the first plane of the grid.

See Also

Functions

`nrWaveformGenerator`

Objects

`nrCORESETConfig` | `nrSCSCarrierConfig` | `nrSearchSpaceConfig` | `nrULCarrierConfig` | `nrWavegenBWPCConfig` | `nrWavegenCSIRSCConfig` | `nrWavegenPDCCHConfig` | `nrWavegenPDSCHConfig` | `nrWavegenSSBurstConfig`

More About

- “5G NR Uplink Vector Waveform Generation” on page 2-2

NR PDSCH Resource Allocation and DM-RS and PT-RS Reference Signals

This example shows the time-frequency aspects of the new radio (NR) physical downlink shared channel (PDSCH), the associated demodulation reference signal (DM-RS), and phase tracking reference signal (PT-RS). The example shows how PDSCH resource allocation affects the time-frequency structure of DM-RS and PT-RS.

Introduction

In 5G NR, PDSCH is the physical downlink channel that carries user data. DM-RS and PT-RS are the reference signals associated with PDSCH. These signals are generated within the PDSCH allocation, as defined in TS 38.211 Sections 7.4.1.1 and 7.4.1.2 [1] on page 1-0 . DM-RS is used for channel estimation as part of coherent demodulation of PDSCH. To compensate for the common phase error (CPE), 3GPP 5G NR introduced PT-RS. Phase noise produced in local oscillators introduces a significant degradation at mmWave frequencies. It produces CPE and inter-carrier interference (ICI). CPE leads to an identical rotation of a received symbol in each subcarrier. ICI leads to loss of orthogonality between the subcarriers. PT-RS is used mainly to estimate and minimize the effect of CPE on system performance.

The 5G Toolbox™ provides the functions for physical (PHY) layer modeling with varying levels of granularity. The levels of granularity range from PHY channel level functions that perform the transport and physical channel processing to individual channel processing stage functions performing cyclic redundancy check (CRC) coding, code block segmentation, low density parity check (LDPC) channel coding, and so on. The toolbox offers the reference signals functionality associated with the PDSCH as functions `nrPDSCHDMRS`, `nrPDSCHDMRSIndices`, `nrPDSCHPTRS`, and `nrPDSCHPTRSIndices`.

PDSCH

PDSCH is the physical channel that carries the user data. The resources allocated for PDSCH are within the bandwidth part (BWP) of the carrier, as defined in TS 38.214 Section 5.1.2 [2] on page 1-0 . The resources in the time domain for PDSCH transmission are scheduled by downlink control information (DCI) in the field *Time domain resource assignment*. This field indicates the slot offset K_0 , starting symbol S , the allocation length L , and the mapping type of PDSCH. The valid combinations of S and L are shown in Table 1. For mapping type A, value of S is 3 only when the DM-RS type A position is set to 3.

PDSCH Mapping Type	Normal Cyclic Prefix			Extended Cyclic Prefix		
	S	L	$S+L$	S	L	$S+L$
Type A	{0,1,2,3}	{3,...,14}	{3,...,14}	{0,1,2,3}	{3,...,12}	{3,...,12}
Type B	{0,...,12}	{2,4,7}	{2,...,14}	{0,...,10}	{2,4,6}	{2,...,12}

Table 1: Valid S and L Combinations

The resources in the frequency domain for PDSCH transmission are scheduled by a DCI in the field *Frequency domain resource assignment*. This field indicates whether the resource allocation of

resource blocks (RBs) is contiguous or noncontiguous, based on the allocation type. The RBs allocated are within the BWP.

The 5G Toolbox™ provides the `nrCarrierConfig` and `nrPDSCHConfig` objects to set the parameters related to the PDSCH within the BWP.

```
% Setup the carrier with 15 kHz subcarrier spacing and 10 MHz bandwidth
carrier = nrCarrierConfig;
carrier.SubcarrierSpacing = 15;
carrier.CyclicPrefix = 'normal';
carrier.NSizeGrid = 52;
carrier.NStartGrid = 0;

% Configure the physical downlink shared channel parameters
pdsch = nrPDSCHConfig;
pdsch.NSizeBWP = []; % Empty implies that the value is equal to NSizeGrid
pdsch.NStartBWP = []; % Empty implies that the value is equal to NStartGrid
pdsch.PRBSets = 0:51; % Allocate the complete carrier
pdsch.SymbolAllocation = [0 14]; % Symbol allocation [S L]
pdsch.MappingType = 'A'; % PDSCH mapping type ('A' or 'B')
```

DM-RS

DM-RS is used to estimate the radio channel. The signal is present only in the RBs allocated for the PDSCH. The DM-RS structure is designed to support different deployment scenarios and use cases. A front-loaded design supports low-latency transmissions, twelve orthogonal antenna ports for MIMO transmissions, and up to four reference signal transmission instances in a slot to support high-speed scenarios. The front-loaded reference signals indicate that the signal occurs early in the transmission. The DM-RS is present in each RB allocated for PDSCH.

Parameters That Control Time Domain Resources

The parameters that control DM-RS OFDM symbol locations are:

- PDSCH symbol allocation
- Mapping type
- DM-RS type A position
- DM-RS length
- DM-RS additional position

The symbol allocation of PDSCH indicates the OFDM symbol locations used by the PDSCH transmission in a slot. DM-RS symbol locations lie within the PDSCH symbol allocation. The positions of DM-RS OFDM symbols depend on the mapping type. The mapping type of PDSCH is either slot-wise (type A) or non-slot-wise (type B). The positions of any additional DM-RS symbols are defined by a set of tables, as specified in TS 38.211 Section 7.4.1.1.2 [1] on page 1-0 . For the purpose of indexing the tables, the specification defines the term l_d indicating the duration of OFDM symbols to be accounted for, depending on the mapping type.

For mapping type A, the DM-RS OFDM symbol locations are defined relative to the first OFDM symbol of the slot (symbol #0). The location of first DM-RS OFDM symbol (l_0) is provided by the DM-RS type A position, which is either 2 or 3. For any additional DM-RS, the duration of OFDM symbols (l_d) is the number of OFDM symbols between the first OFDM symbol of the slot (symbol #0) and the last OFDM symbol of the allocated PDSCH resources. Note that l_d may differ from the number of

OFDM symbols allocated for PDSCH, when the first OFDM symbol of PDSCH is other than symbol #0.

For mapping type B, the DM-RS OFDM symbol locations are defined relative to the first OFDM symbol of allocated PDSCH resources. The location of first DM-RS OFDM symbol (l_0) is always 0, meaning that the first DM-RS OFDM symbol location is the first OFDM symbol location of the allocated PDSCH resources. For any additional DM-RS, the duration of OFDM symbols (l_d) is the duration of the allocated PDSCH resources.

Figure 1 illustrates the DM-RS symbol locations depending on the mapping type for an RB within a slot, having single-symbol DM-RS. The figure shows a configuration with PDSCH occupying the OFDM symbols from 1 to 10 (0-based) with l_d equal to 11 for mapping type A, and from 3 to 9 (0-based) with l_d equal to 7 for mapping type B respectively.

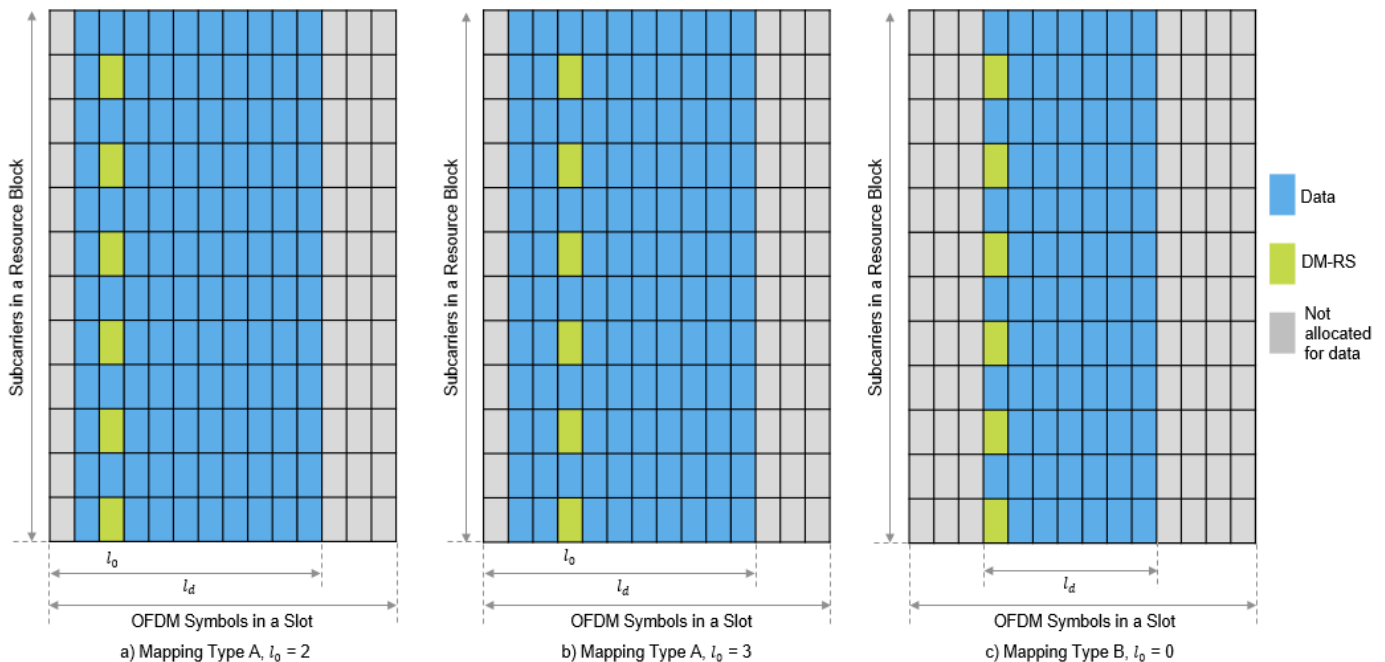


Figure 1: DM-RS Symbol Locations Based on Mapping Type

The maximum number of DM-RS OFDM symbols used by a UE is configured by RRC signaling (*dmrs-AdditionalPosition* and *maxLength*). The *maxLength* RRC parameter configures the length of DM-RS symbol, single symbol DM-RS or double symbol DM-RS. For double-symbol DM-RS, the actual selection is signaled in the DCI format 1_1 message. Figure 2 illustrates the single-symbol and double-symbol DM-RS locations.

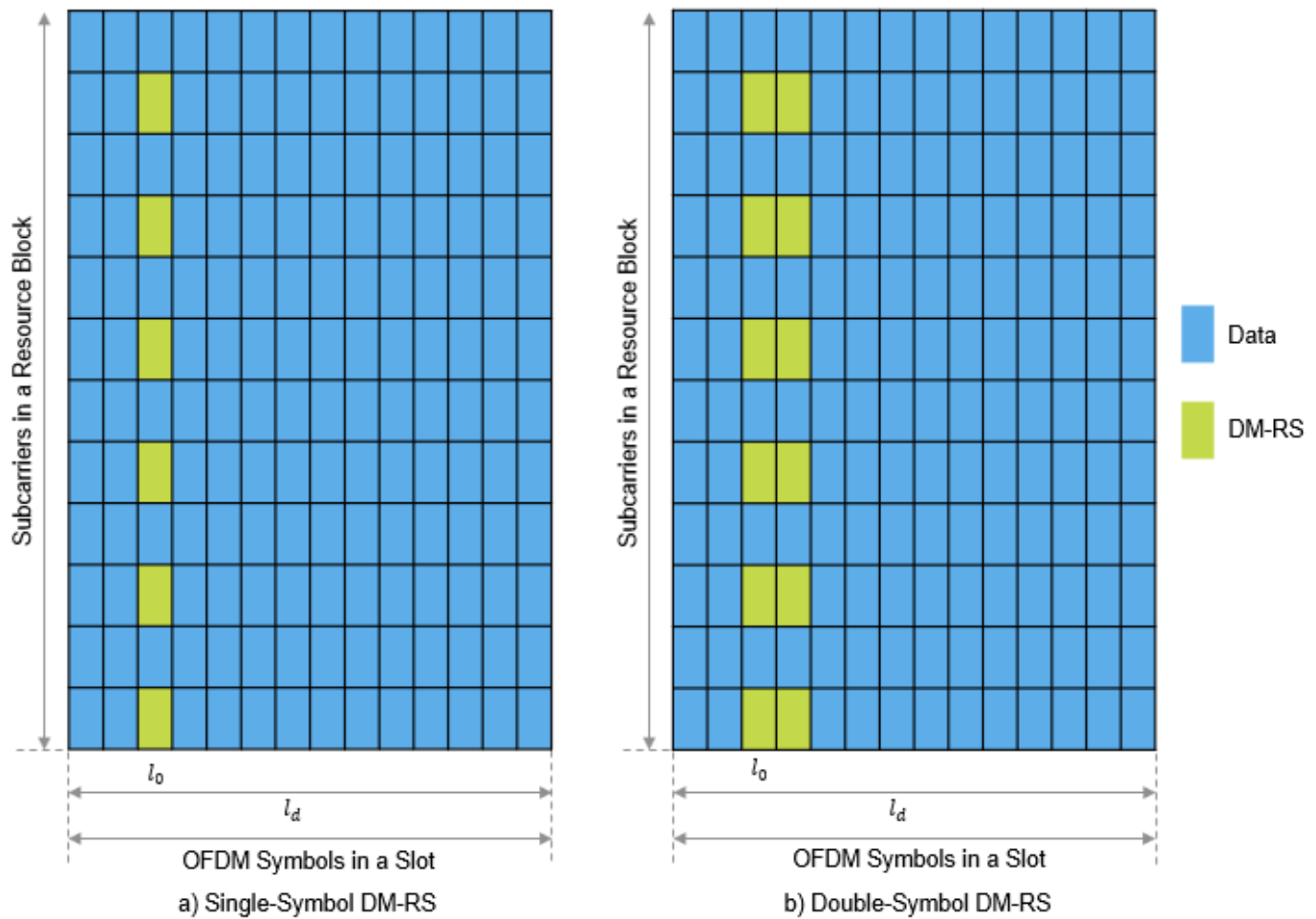


Figure 2: DM-RS Symbol Locations Based on Number of Front-Loaded DM-RS Symbols

The higher-layer parameter *dmrs-AdditionalPosition* defines the maximum number of additional single- or double-symbol DM-RS transmitted. The number of additional positions is in the range of 0 to 3 and depends on the mapping type, DM-RS length, and PDSCH symbol allocation. The DM-RS symbol locations are given by TS 38.211 Tables 7.4.1.1.2-3, and 7.4.1.1.2-4. Figure 3 illustrates the DM-RS additional positions in combination with single-symbol and double-symbol DM-RS.

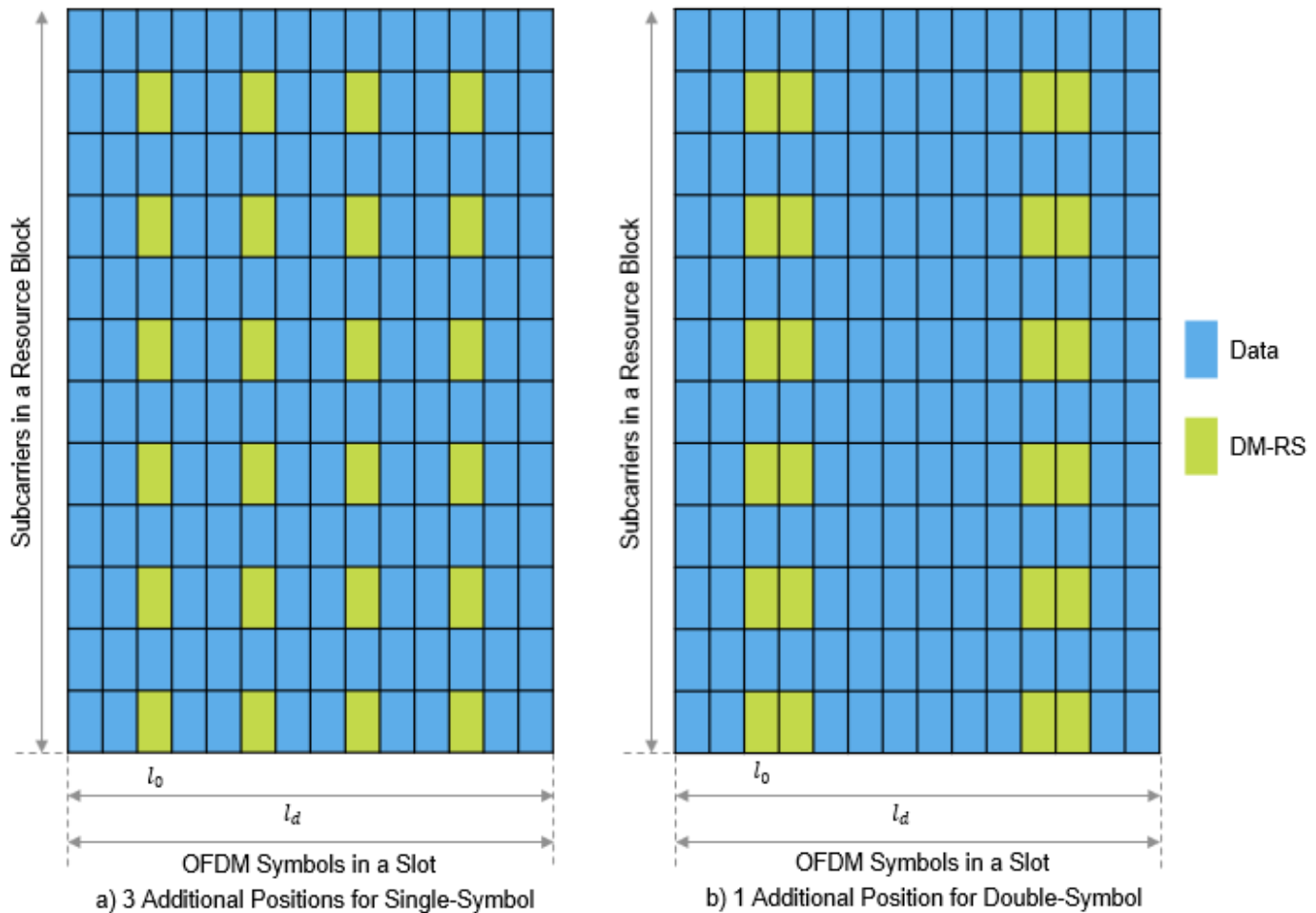


Figure 3: DM-RS Symbol Locations Based on Number of Additional DM-RS Positions

```
% Set the parameters that control the time resources of DM-RS
pdsch.DMRS.DMRSTypeAPosition = 2;    % 2 or 3
pdsch.DMRS.DMRSLength = 1;          % 1 or 2
pdsch.DMRS.DMRSAdditionalPosition = 1; % 0...3
```

Parameters That Control Frequency Domain Resources

The parameters that control the subcarrier locations of DM-RS are:

- DM-RS configuration type
- DM-RS antenna ports

The configuration type indicates the frequency density of DM-RS and is signaled by RRC message *dms-Type*. Configuration type 1 defines six subcarriers per physical resource block (PRB) per antenna port, comprising alternate subcarriers. Configuration type 2 defines four subcarriers per PRB per antenna port, consisting of two groups of two consecutive subcarriers. Figure 4 indicates the DM-RS subcarrier locations based on configuration type.

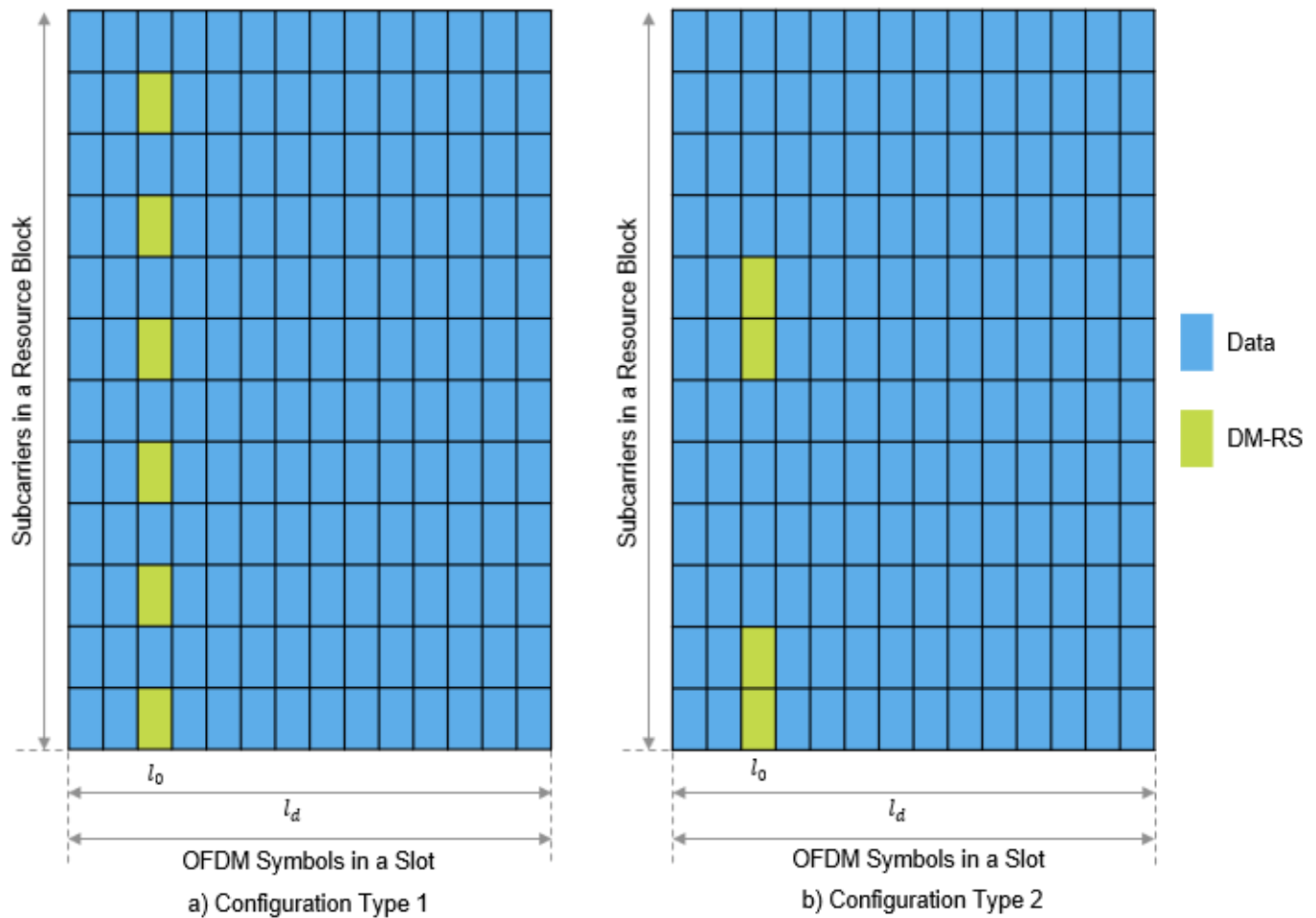


Figure 4: DM-RS Subcarrier Locations Based on DM-RS Configuration Type

Different delta shifts are applied to the sets of subcarriers used, depending on the associated antenna port or code division multiplexing (CDM) group. For configuration type 1, there are two possible CDM groups/shifts across eight possible antenna ports ($p=0\dots7$). Figure 5 illustrates the different shifts associated for DM-RS subcarrier locations with the DM-RS configuration type set to 1. Notice that the resource elements (REs) corresponding to the DM-RS subcarrier locations of lower CDM group (i.e. antenna port 0) are blocked for data transmission in the antenna ports of higher CDM group (i.e. antenna port 2).

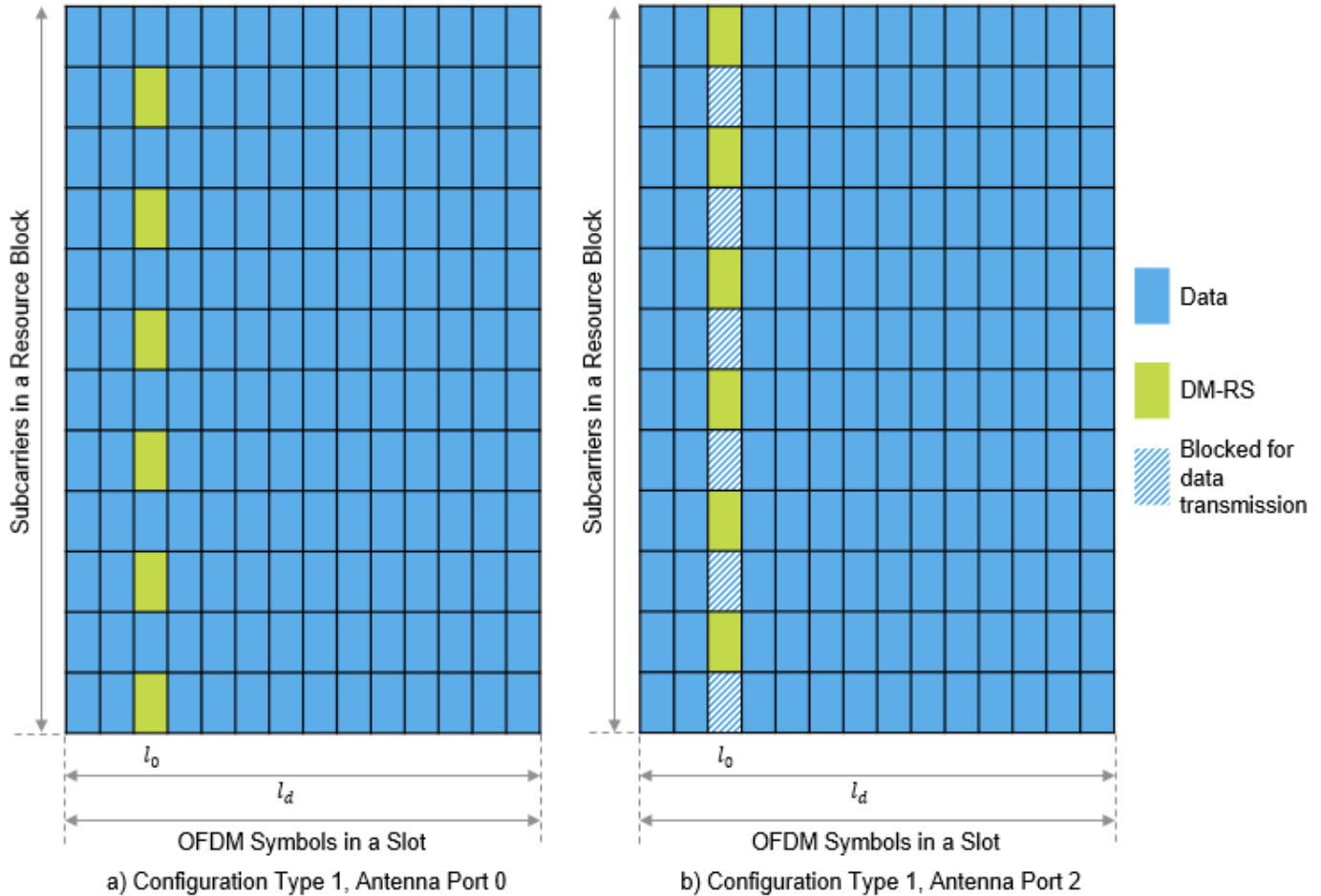


Figure 5: DM-RS Subcarrier Locations Based on DM-RS Antenna Ports for Configuration Type 1

For configuration type 2, there are three possible CDM groups/shifts across twelve antenna ports ($p=0\dots11$). Figure 6 illustrates the different shifts associated with DM-RS subcarrier locations in DM-RS configuration type 2. For full configuration details, see TS 38.211 Section 7.4.1.1. Notice that the REs corresponding to the DM-RS subcarrier locations of lower CDM groups are blocked for data transmission in the antenna ports of higher CDM groups.

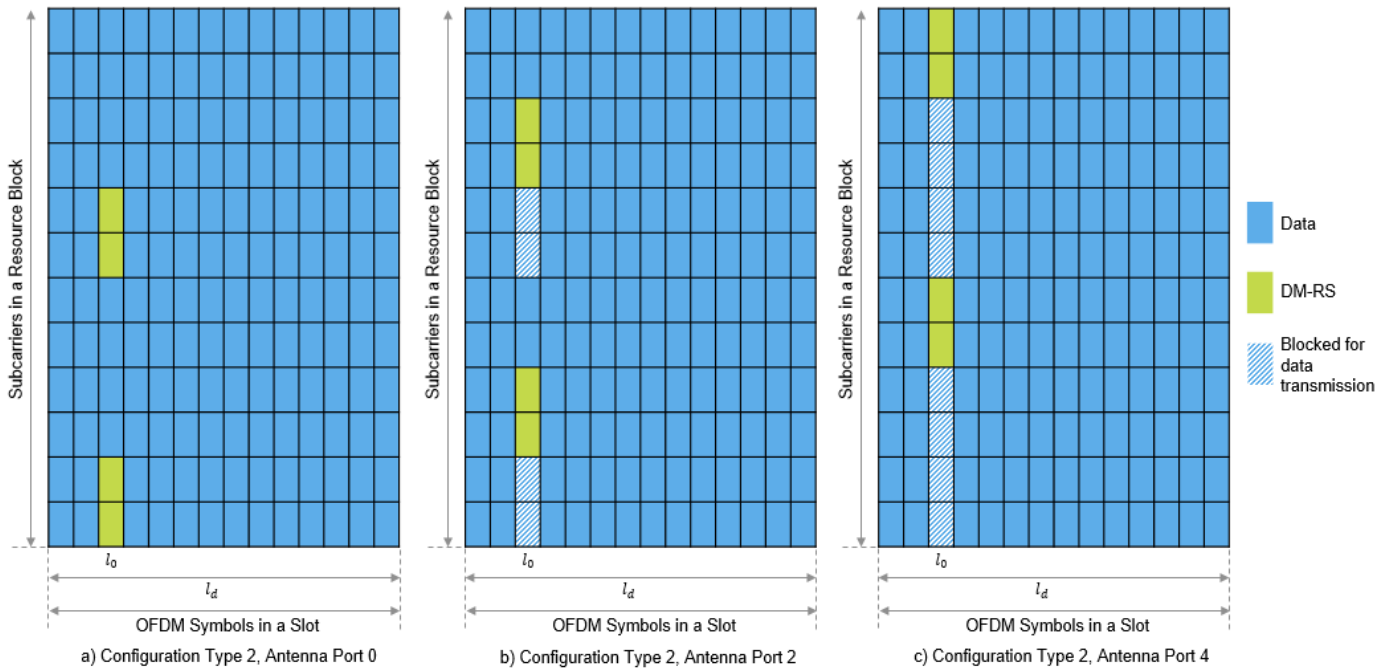


Figure 6: DM-RS Subcarrier Locations Based on DM-RS Antenna Ports for Configuration Type 2

```

% Set the parameters that control the frequency resources of DM-RS
pdsch.DMRS.DMRSConfigurationType = 1; % 1 or 2
pdsch.DMRS.DMRSPortSet = 0;

% Set the parameter that controls the number of REs available for data
% transmission in a DM-RS carrying OFDM symbol. This value is nominally
% greater than the maximum configured CDM group number.
pdsch.DMRS.NumCDMGroupsWithoutData = 1; % 1 corresponds to CDM group number 0

% The read-only properties DeltaShifts and DMRSSubcarrierLocations of DMRS
% property of pdsch object provides the values of delta shift(s) and DM-RS
% subcarrier locations in an RB for each antenna port configured.
pdsch.DMRS.DeltaShifts

ans = 0

pdsch.DMRS.DMRSSubcarrierLocations

ans = 6x1

    0
    2
    4
    6
    8
   10
    
```

Sequence Generation

The pseudorandom sequence used for DM-RS is $2^{31} - 1$ length gold sequence. The sequence is generated across all the common resource blocks (CRBs) and is transmitted only in the RBs allocated

for data because it is not required to estimate the channel outside the frequency region in which data is not transmitted. Generating the reference signal sequence across all the CRBs ensures that the same underlying pseudorandom sequence is used for multiple UEs on overlapping time-frequency resources in the case of a multi-user MIMO. The parameters that control the sequence generation are:

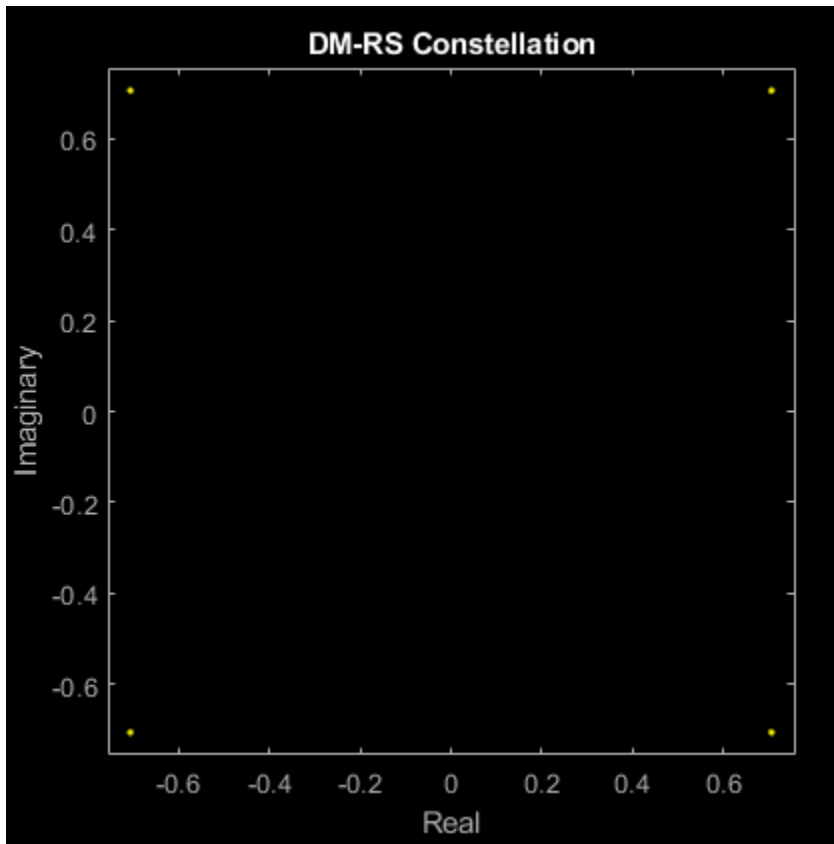
- DM-RS scrambling identity ($N_{ID}^{n_{SCID}}$)
- DM-RS scrambling initialization (n_{SCID})
- Number of OFDM symbols in a slot
- Slot number in a radio frame
- DM-RS symbol locations
- PRBs allocation

The CyclicPrefix property of the carrier object controls the number of OFDM symbols in a slot. The NSlot property of the carrier object controls the slot number.

```
% Set the parameters that only control the DM-RS sequence generation
pdsch.DMRS.NIDNSCID = 1; % Use empty to set it to NCellID of the carrier
pdsch.DMRS.NSCID = 0;    % 0 or 1
```

```
% Generate DM-RS symbols
pdsch.NumLayers = numel(pdsch.DMRS.DMRSPortSet);
dmrsSymbols = nrPDSCHDMRS(carrier,pdsch);
```

```
% Plot the constellation
scatterplot(dmrsSymbols)
title('DM-RS Constellation')
xlabel('Real')
ylabel('Imaginary')
```



```
% The read-only properties TimeWeights and FrequencyWeights of DMRS
% property of pdsch object provides the values of time and frequency
% weights applied to the DM-RS symbols.
```

```
pdsch.DMRS.TimeWeights
```

```
ans = 2x1
```

```
1
1
```

```
pdsch.DMRS.FrequencyWeights
```

```
ans = 2x1
```

```
1
1
```

```
% Generate DM-RS indices
```

```
dmrsIndices = nrPDSCHDMRSIndices(carrier,pdsch);
```

```
% Map the DM-RS symbols to the grid with the help of DM-RS indices
```

```
grid = zeros([12*carrier.NSizeGrid carrier.SymbolsPerSlot pdsch.NumLayers]);
```

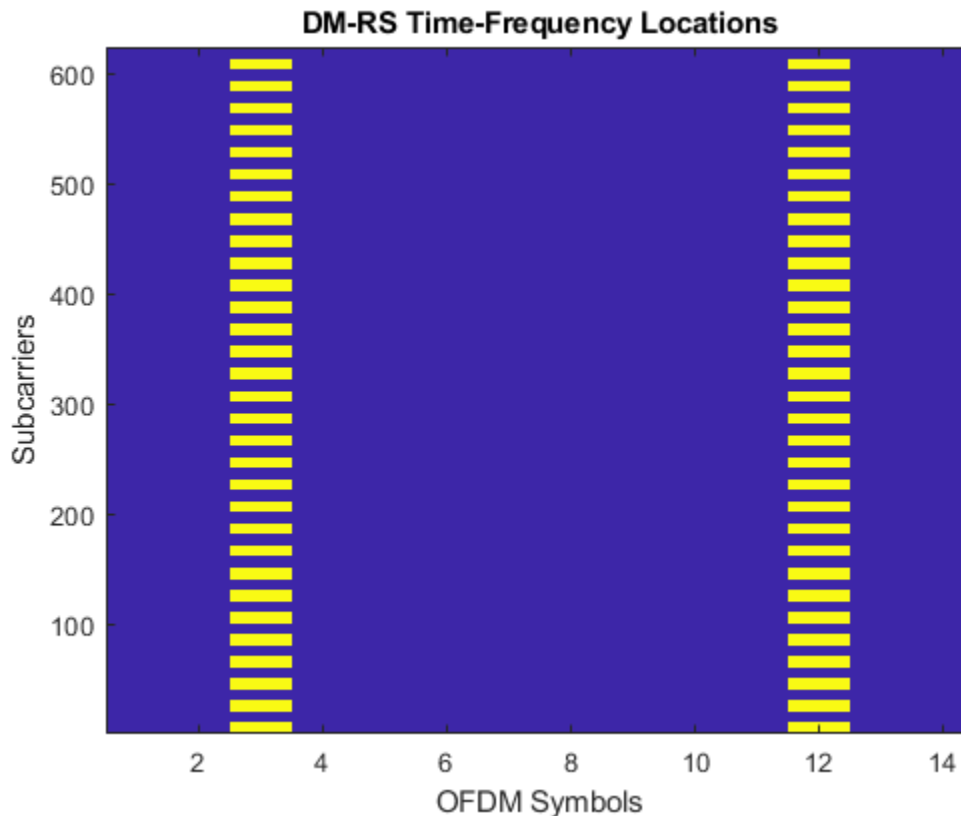
```
grid(dmrsIndices) = dmrsSymbols;
```

```
figure
```

```
imagesc(abs(grid(:,:,1)));
```

```
axis xy;
```

```
xlabel('OFDM Symbols');
ylabel('Subcarriers');
title('DM-RS Time-Frequency Locations');
```



PT-RS

PT-RS is the phase tracking reference signal. PT-RS is used mainly to estimate and minimize the effect of CPE on system performance. Due to the phase noise properties, PT-RS signal has a low density in the frequency domain and a high density in the time domain. PT-RS always occurs in combination with DM-RS and only when the network has configured PT-RS to be present.

Parameters That Control Time Domain Resources

PT-RS is configured through the higher layer parameter *DMRS-DownlinkConfig* for downlink. The parameters that control the time resources of PT-RS are:

- DM-RS symbol locations
- Time density of PT-RS (L_{PT-RS})

L_{PT-RS} depends on the scheduled modulation and coding scheme. Value of L_{PT-RS} must be from the set {1, 2, 4}. For the parameters that control DM-RS symbol locations, refer to Parameters that Control DM-RS Time Resources on page 1-0 .

The PT-RS symbol locations in a slot start from the first OFDM symbol in the shared channel allocation and hop every L_{PT-RS} symbols, if no DM-RS symbol is present in this interval. In the case where a DM-RS symbol or symbols are present in between or at the hop interval, the hop starts from

the last DM-RS symbol location to provide the next PT-RS symbol. Figure 7 shows the PT-RS symbol locations in an RB for single slot with time-density set to 4 and DM-RS symbol locations set to 2 and 11 (0-based).

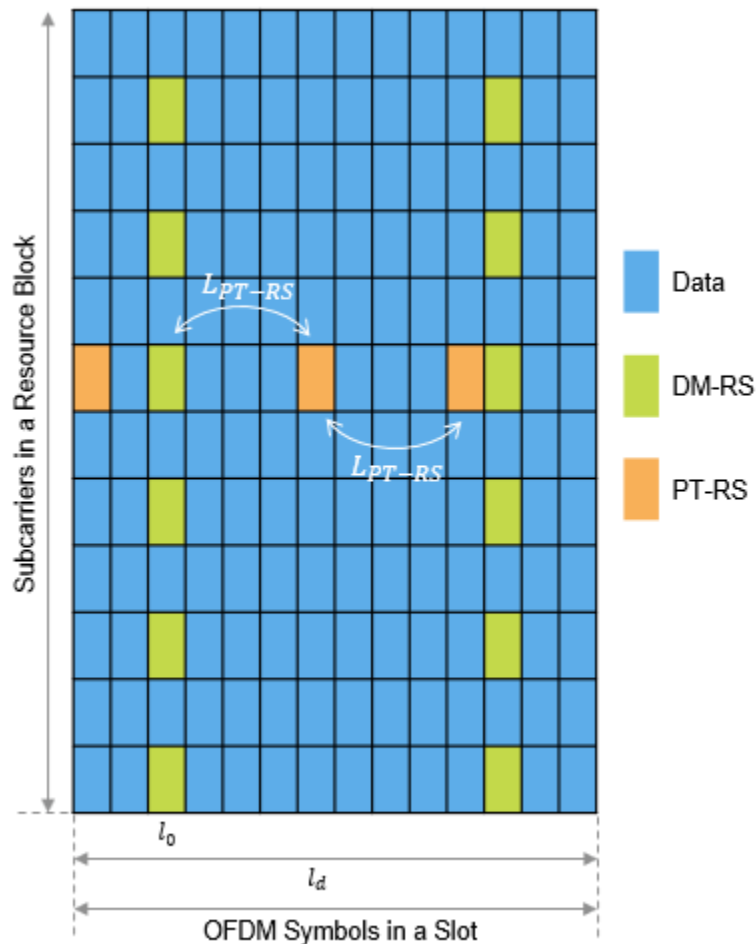


Figure 7: PT-RS Symbol Locations

```
% Set the EnablePTRS property in pdsch to 1
pdsch.EnablePTRS = 1;
```

```
% Set the parameters that control the time resources of PT-RS
pdsch.PTRS.TimeDensity = 4;
```

Parameters That Control Frequency Domain Resources

PT-RS occupies only one subcarrier in an RB for one OFDM symbol. The parameters that control the frequency resources of PT-RS are:

- PRB allocation
- DM-RS configuration type
- Frequency density of PT-RS (K_{PT-RS})
- Radio network temporary identifier (n_{RNTI})

- Resource element offset
- PT-RS antenna port

$K_{\text{PT-RS}}$ depends on the scheduled bandwidth. The value of $K_{\text{PT-RS}}$ is either 2 or 4, which indicates whether PT-RS is present in every two RBs or every four RBs.

The starting RB at which PT-RS is present ($k_{\text{ref}}^{\text{RB}}$), depends on $K_{\text{PT-RS}}$, n_{RNTI} , and the number of RBs (N_{RB}) allocated for PDSCH. For the purpose of mapping PT-RS, all the RBs of PDSCH are numbered in increasing order from 0 to $N_{\text{RB}} - 1$. The subcarrier location of PT-RS ($k_{\text{ref}}^{\text{RE}}$) within a resource block depends on the DM-RS configuration type, resource element (RE) offset, and PT-RS antenna port. The PT-RS antenna port must be a subset of DM-RS antenna ports. The PT-RS subcarrier location always aligns with one of the DM-RS subcarrier locations in an RB.

PT-RS in an RB occupies the same subcarrier locations in all the OFDM symbols where PT-RS is present.

```
% Set the parameters that affect the PT-RS subcarrier locations
```

```
pdsch.RNTI = 1;
pdsch.PTRS.FrequencyDensity = 2; % 2 or 4
pdsch.PTRS.REOffset = '10'; % '00', '01', '10', '11'
pdsch.PTRS.PTRSPortSet = min(pdsch.DMRS.DMRSPortSet);
```

```
% Set the other parameters that control PT-RS subcarrier locations
```

```
pdsch.DMRS.DMRSConfigurationType = 1;
pdsch.DMRS.DMRSPortSet = 0;
```

Sequence Generation

The sequence used to generate PT-RS is the same pseudorandom sequence used for DM-RS sequence generation. The values of the PT-RS sequence depend on the position of the first DM-RS symbol. For more details, refer to DM-RS sequence generation on page 1-0 .

```
% Set the parameters that control the PT-RS sequence generation
```

```
pdsch.DMRS.NIDNSCID = 1; % Use empty to set it to NCellID of the carrier
pdsch.DMRS.NSCID = 0; % 0 or 1
```

```
% Generate PT-RS symbols
```

```
carrier.NSizeGrid = 4;
pdsch.PRBSets = 0:carrier.NSizeGrid-1;
pdsch.NumLayers = numel(pdsch.DMRS.DMRSPortSet);
ptrsSymbols = nrPDSCHPTRS(carrier,pdsch);
```

```
% Generate PT-RS indices
```

```
ptrsIndices = nrPDSCHPTRSIndices(carrier,pdsch);
```

Get DM-RS symbols, RE indices of PDSCH, and DM-RS.

```
% PDSCH indices, DM-RS symbols and indices
```

```
[pdschIndices, pdschInfo] = nrPDSCHIndices(carrier,pdsch);
dmrsIndices = nrPDSCHDMRSIndices(carrier,pdsch);
dmrsSymbols = nrPDSCHDMRS(carrier,pdsch);
```

Map PDSCH, DM-RS, and PT-RS RE indices to the grid with scaled values to visualize the respective locations on the grid.

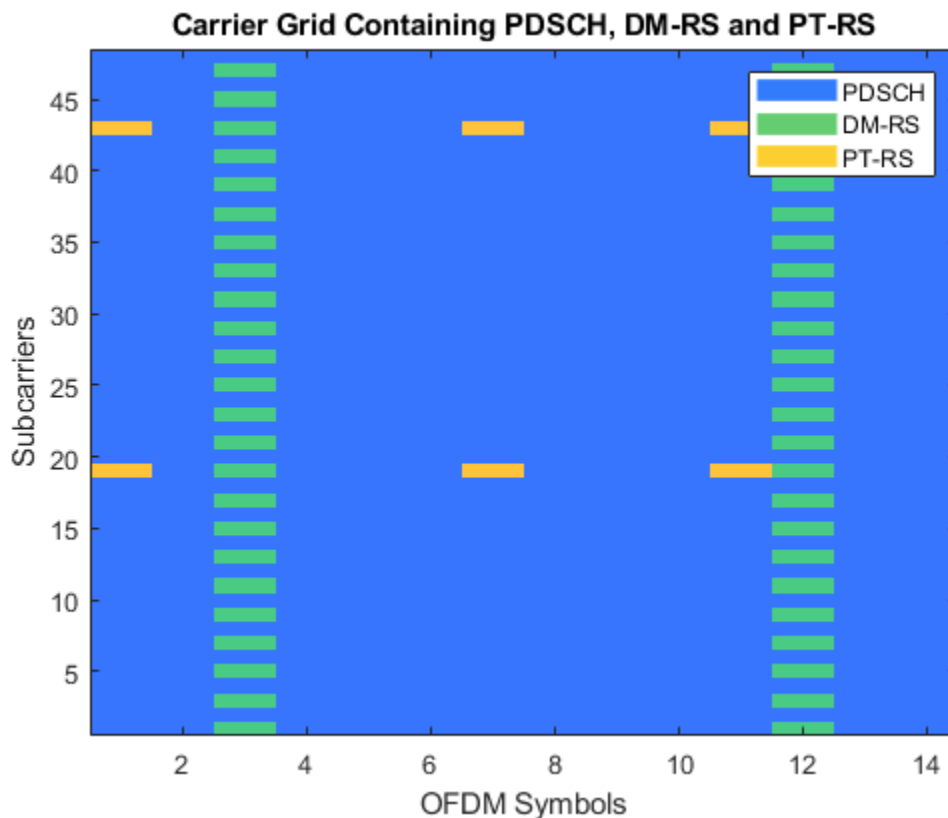
```
chpLevel = struct;
chpLevel.PDSCH = 0.4;
```

```

chpLevel.DMRS = 1;
chpLevel.PTRS = 1.4;
nSlotSymb = carrier.SymbolsPerSlot;
grid = complex(zeros(carrier.NSizeGrid*12,nSlotSymb,pdsch.NumLayers));
grid(pdschIndices) = chpLevel.PDSCH;
grid(dmrsIndices) = chpLevel.DMRS*dmrsSymbols;
grid(ptrsIndices) = chpLevel.PTRS*ptrsSymbols;
map = parula(64);
cscaling = 40;
im = image(cscaling*abs(grid(:,:,1)));
colormap(im.Parent,map);

% Add legend to the image
chpval = struct2cell(chpLevel);
clevels = cscaling*[chpval{:}];
N = length(clevels);
L = line(ones(N),ones(N), 'LineWidth',8); % Generate lines
% Index the color map and associated the selected colors with the lines
set(L,{'color'},mat2cell(map( min(1+clevels,length(map) ),:),ones(1,N),3)); % Set the colors acco
% Create legend
fnames = {'PDSCH','DM-RS','PT-RS'};
legend(fnames{:});
axis xy
title('Carrier Grid Containing PDSCH, DM-RS and PT-RS')
xlabel('OFDM Symbols')
ylabel('Subcarriers')

```



In the preceding figure, PT-RS is located at the start of the OFDM symbol in the PDSCH allocation. The symbols are present at every $L_{\text{PT-RS}}$ hop interval from each other or from DM-RS symbols. PT-RS symbols in the frequency domain are located at subcarrier 19 (first RB) and at subcarrier 43 (third RB) of each OFDM symbol where PT-RS is present. The difference in consecutive subcarrier locations of PT-RS is 24, which is the number of subcarriers in an RB (12) times the frequency density of PT-RS (2).

Further Exploration

You can try changing the parameters that affect the time and frequency resources of reference signals and observe the variations in the RE positions for the respective signals.

Try performing channel estimation and phase tracking by using the reference signals. Compute the throughput by following the steps outlined in “NR PDSCH Throughput” on page 1-56.

This example shows how to generate the DM-RS and PT-RS sequences, and how to map the sequences to the OFDM carrier resource grid. It highlights the properties that control the time-frequency structure of reference signals.

References

- 1 3GPP TS 38.211. "NR; Physical channels and modulation (Release 15)." *3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Radio Access Network*.
- 2 3GPP TS 38.214. "NR; Physical layer procedures for data (Release 15)." *3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Radio Access Network*.
- 3 3GPP TS 38.212. "NR; Multiplexing and channel coding (Release 15)." *3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Radio Access Network*.

See Also

Functions

`nrPDSCHDMRS` | `nrPDSCHDMRSIndices` | `nrPDSCHIndices` | `nrPDSCHPTRS` | `nrPDSCHPTRSIndices`

Objects

`nrCarrierConfig` | `nrPDSCHConfig`

Related Examples

- “NR PUSCH Resource Allocation and DM-RS and PT-RS Reference Signals” on page 2-27

NR Cell Search and MIB and SIB1 Recovery

This example demonstrates how to use 5G Toolbox™ to synchronize, demodulate, and decode a live gNodeB signal. The example decodes the master information block (MIB) and the first of the system information blocks (SIB1). Decoding MIB and SIB1 requires a comprehensive receiver, capable of demodulating and decoding the majority of the downlink channels and signals.

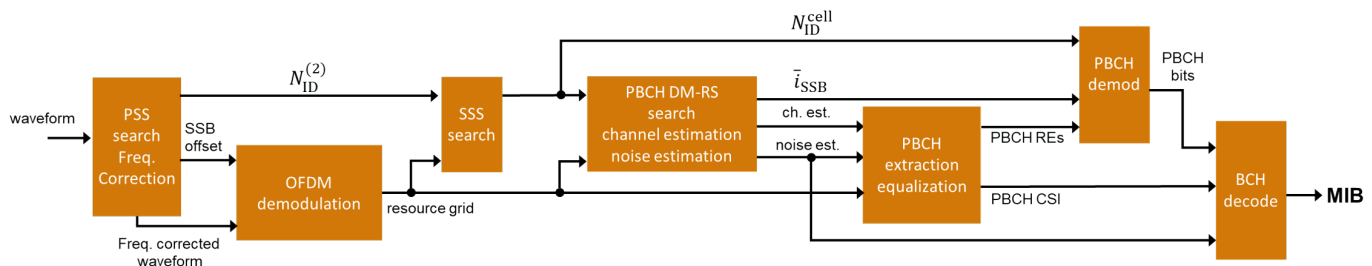
Introduction

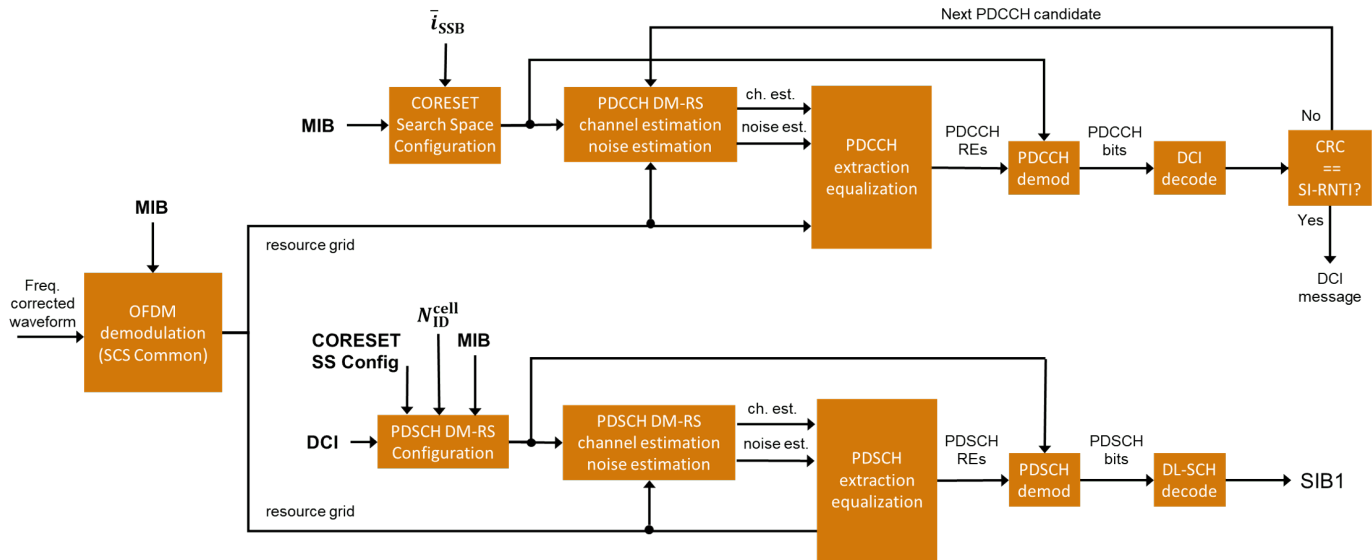
Before user equipment (UE) can communicate with the network, it must perform cell search and selection procedures and obtain initial system information. The first steps in that process are acquiring frame synchronization, finding out the cell identity and decoding the MIB and SIB1. This example shows how to perform these steps by using 5G Toolbox.

You can use this example with a captured waveform of I/Q samples or generate a local waveform containing a synchronization signal (SS) burst and SIB1 using `nrWaveformGenerator`. For locally generated waveforms, the example performs these steps:

- *Waveform generation:* Configure and generate a synchronization signal burst carrying the MIB, CORESET0, PDCCH and PDSCH carrying SIB1 by using the downlink waveform generator from 5G Toolbox. The transmitter can enhance the SNR of one SS block, but it does not perform beamforming. For more information on SSB beamforming, see “NR SSB Beam Sweeping” on page 1-97.
- *AWGN:* Apply additive white Gaussian noise (AWGN) to the waveform.
- *Receiver:* Apply various synchronization and demodulation processes to the received waveform to establish the system frame number, cell identity and SSB, and decode the MIB. These provide the information required for blind decoding of downlink control information (DCI) in a PDCCH. The receiver uses DCI to configure the PDSCH demodulator, decode DL-SCH and finally recover the SIB1.

These figures show the processing steps inside the receiver.





Receiver Configuration

To synchronize and demodulate the received waveform, this information is needed:

- The waveform sample rate to demodulate the received waveform.
- The carrier center frequency to apply symbol phase compensation to the received waveform.
- The minimum channel bandwidth to determine CORESET0 frequency resources. TS 38.101-1 Table 5.3.5-1 [1] describes the channel bandwidths for each NR band.
- The SS block pattern (Case A...E) to determine the subcarrier spacing of the SS/PBCH blocks. UE searches for SS block patterns based on the NR operating band. For more information, see TS 38.104 Tables 5.4.3.3-1 and 5.4.3.3-2 [2].
- The number of SS/PBCH blocks in a burst (L_{max}) to calculate parameters of the PBCH DM-RS sequences and PBCH descrambling. These parameters depend on the SS/PBCH block index as described in TS 38.211 Sections 7.3.3.1 and 7.4.1.4.1 [3]. TS 38.213 Section 4.1 [5] describes the set of SS/PBCH blocks in a burst in each case. UE knows the value of L_{max} based on the SS block pattern and the NR operating band.

```
loadFromFile = 0; % Set to 1 to load a captured waveform
```

```
if loadFromFile
    % Load captured waveform
    rx = load('capturedWaveformSIB1.mat');
    rxWaveform = rx.waveform;

    % Configure receiver sample rate (samples/second)
    rxSampleRate = rx.sampleRate;

    % Symbol phase compensation frequency. Specify the carrier center
    % frequency or set to 0 to disable symbol phase compensation
    fPhaseComp = rx.fPhaseComp; % Carrier center frequency (Hz)

    % Set the minimum channel bandwidth for the NR band required to
    % configure CORESET0 in FR1 (See TS 38.101-1 Table 5.3.5-1)
    minChannelBW = rx.minChannelBW; % 5, 10, 40 MHz
```

```

% Configure necessary burst parameters at the receiver. The SSB pattern
% can be 'Case A','Case B','Case C' for FR1 or 'Case D','Case E' for
% FR2. The maximum number of blocks L_max can be 4 or 8 for FR1 and 64
% for FR2.
refBurst.BlockPattern = rx.ssbBlockPattern;
refBurst.L_max = rx.L_max;
else
% Generate waveform containing SS burst and SIB1
% Configure the cell identity
config = struct();
config.NCellID = 102;

% Configure an SS burst
config.BlockPattern = 'Case B';           % FR1: 'Case A','Case B','Case C'. FR2: 'Case D','Case E'
config.TransmittedBlocks = ones(1,8);    % Bitmap of SS blocks transmitted
config.SubcarrierSpacingCommon = 15;     % SIB1 subcarrier spacing in kHz (15 or 30 for FR1. 0 for FR2)
config.EnableSIB1 = 1;                   % Set to 0 to disable SIB1

% Set the minimum channel bandwidth for the NR band required to
% configure CORESET0 in FR1 (See TS 38.101-1 Table 5.3.5-1)
config.MinChannelBW = 5; % 5, 10, 40 MHz

% Configure and generate a waveform containing an SS burst and SIB1
wavegenConfig = hSIB1WaveformConfiguration(config);
[txWaveform,waveInfo] = nrWaveformGenerator(wavegenConfig);
txOfdmInfo = waveInfo.ResourceGrids(1).Info;

% Introduce a beamforming gain by boosting the SNR of one SSB and
% associated SIB1 PDCCH and PDSCH
ssbIdx = 0; % Index of the SSB to boost (0-based)
boost = 6; % SNR boost in dB
txWaveform = hSIB1Boost(txWaveform,wavegenConfig,waveInfo,ssbIdx,boost);

% Add white Gaussian noise to the waveform
rng('default'); % Reset the random number generator
SNRdB = 20; % SNR for AWGN
rxWaveform = awgn(txWaveform,SNRdB-boost,-10*log10(double(txOfdmInfo.Nfft)));

% Configure receiver
% Sample rate
rxSampleRate = txOfdmInfo.SampleRate;

% Symbol phase compensation frequency (Hz). The function
% nrWaveformGenerator does not apply symbol phase compensation to the
% generated waveform.
fPhaseComp = 0; % Carrier center frequency (Hz)

% Minimum channel bandwidth (MHz)
minChannelBW = config.MinChannelBW;

% Configure necessary burst parameters at the receiver
refBurst.BlockPattern = config.BlockPattern;
refBurst.L_max = numel(config.TransmittedBlocks);
end

% Get OFDM information from configured burst and receiver parameters
nrbSSB = 20;

```

```
scsSSB = hSSBurstSubcarrierSpacing(refBurst.BlockPattern);
rxOfdmInfo = nrOFDMInfo(nrbSSB,scsSSB,'SampleRate',rxSampleRate);
```

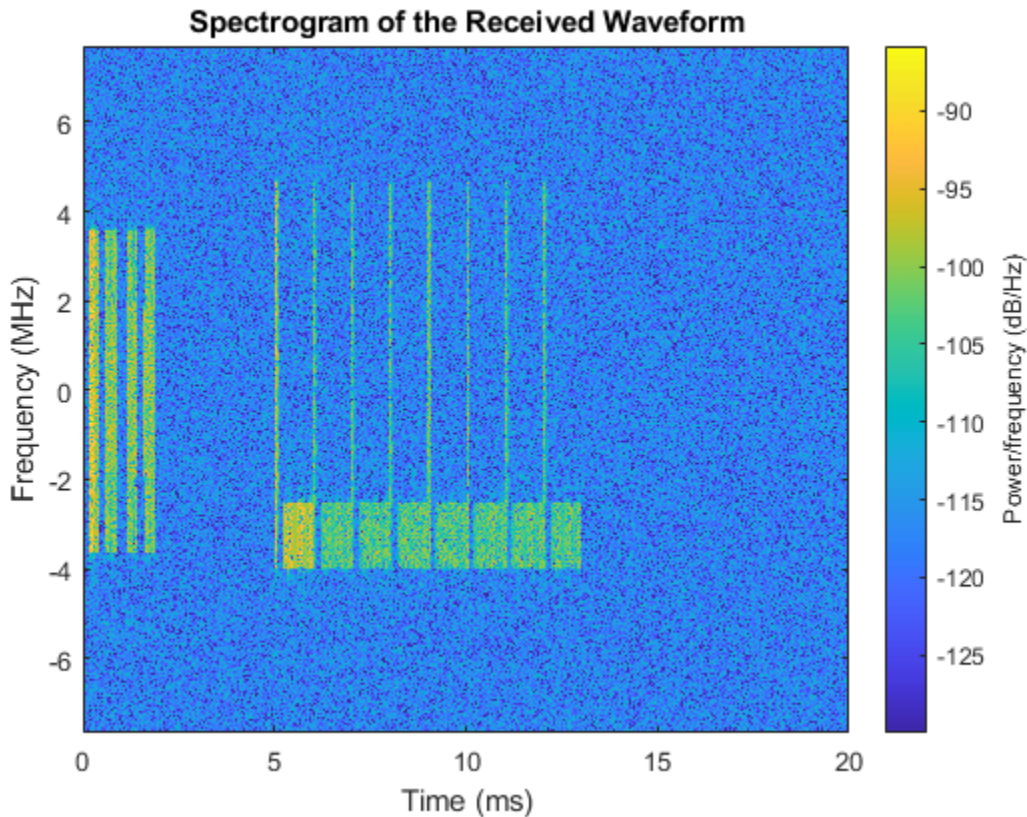
```
% Display spectrogram of received waveform
```

```
figure;
```

```
nfft = rxOfdmInfo.Nfft;
```

```
spectrogram(rxWaveform(:,1),ones(nfft,1),0,nfft,'centered',rxSampleRate,'yaxis','MinThreshold',-125);
```

```
title('Spectrogram of the Received Waveform')
```



PSS Search and Frequency Offset Correction

The receiver performs PSS search and coarse frequency offset estimation following these steps:

- Frequency shift the received waveform with a candidate frequency offset. Candidate offsets are spaced half subcarrier apart. Use `searchBW` to control the frequency offset search bandwidth.
- Correlate the frequency-shifted received waveform with each of the three possible PSS sequences (NID2) and extract the strongest correlation peak. The reference PSS sequences are centered in frequency. Therefore, the strongest correlation peak provides a measure of coarse frequency offset with respect to the center frequency of the carrier. The peak also indicates which of the three PSS (NID2) has been detected in the received waveform and the time instant of the best channel conditions.
- Estimate frequency offsets below half subcarrier by correlating the cyclic prefix of each OFDM symbol in the SSB with the corresponding useful parts of the OFDM symbols. The phase of this correlation is proportional to the frequency offset in the waveform.

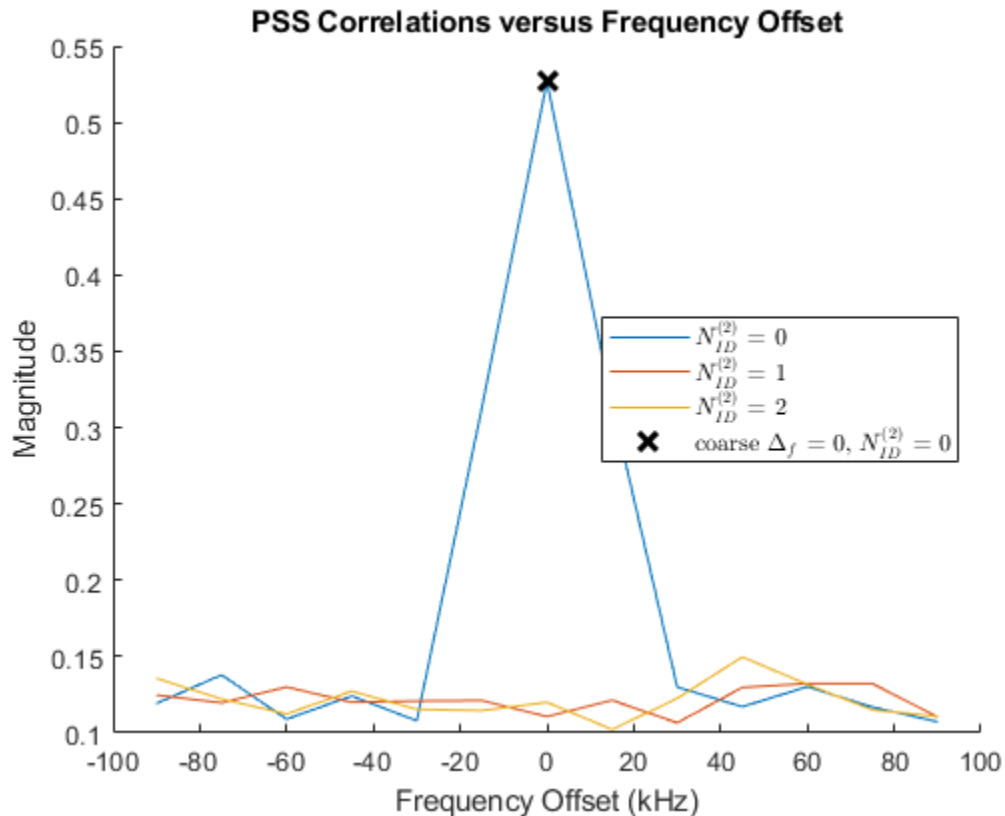
```

disp(' -- Frequency correction and timing estimation --')

% Specify the frequency offset search bandwidth in kHz
searchBW = 6*scsSSB;
[rxWaveform,freqOffset,NID2] = hSSBurstFrequencyCorrect(rxWaveform,refBurst.BlockPattern,rxSampleRate);
disp([' Frequency offset: ' num2str(freqOffset,'%0f') ' Hz'])

-- Frequency correction and timing estimation --
Frequency offset: 65 Hz

```



Time Synchronization and OFDM Demodulation

The receiver estimates the timing offset to the strongest SS block by using the reference PSS sequence detected in the frequency offset search process. After frequency offset correction, the receiver can assume that the center frequencies of the reference PSS and received waveform are aligned. Finally, the receiver OFDM demodulates the synchronized waveform and extracts the SS block.

```

% Create a reference grid for timing estimation using detected PSS. The PSS
% is placed in the second OFDM symbol of the reference grid to avoid the
% special CP length of the first OFDM symbol.
refGrid = zeros([nrSSB*12 2]);
refGrid(nrPSSIndices,2) = nrPSS(NID2); % Second OFDM symbol for correct CP length

% Timing estimation. This is the timing offset to the OFDM symbol prior to
% the detected SSB due to the content of the reference grid
nSlot = 0;
timingOffset = nrTimingEstimate(rxWaveform,nrbSSB,scsSSB,nSlot,refGrid,'SampleRate',rxSampleRate);

```



```

% Synchronization, OFDM demodulation, and extraction of strongest SS block
rxGrid = nrOFDMDemodulate(rxWaveform(1+timingOffset:end,:),nrbSSB,scsSSB,nSlot,'SampleRate',rxSampleRate);
rxGrid = rxGrid(:,2:5,:);

% Display the timing offset in samples. As the symbol lengths are measured
% in FFT samples, scale the symbol lengths to account for the receiver
% sample rate.
srRatio = rxSampleRate/(scsSSB*1e3*rxOfdmInfo.Nfft);
firstSymbolLength = rxOfdmInfo.SymbolLengths(1)*srRatio;
str = sprintf(' Time offset to synchronization block: %.0f samples (%%.0ff ms) \n',floor(log10(timingOffset+firstSymbolLength)));
fprintf(str,timingOffset+firstSymbolLength,(timingOffset+firstSymbolLength)/rxSampleRate*1e3);

Time offset to synchronization block: 2200 samples (0.1432 ms)

```

SSS Search

The receiver extracts the resource elements associated to the SSS from the received grid and correlates them with each possible SSS sequence generated locally. The indices of the strongest PSS and SSS sequences combined give the physical layer cell identity, which is required for PBCH DM-RS and PBCH processing.

```

% Extract the received SSS symbols from the SS/PBCH block
sssIndices = nrSSSIndices;
sssRx = nrExtractResources(sssIndices,rxGrid);

% Correlate received SSS symbols with each possible SSS sequence
sssEst = zeros(1,336);
for NID1 = 0:335

    ncellid = (3*NID1) + NID2;
    sssRef = nrSSS(ncellid);
    sssEst(NID1+1) = sum(abs(mean(sssRx .* conj(sssRef),1)).^2);

end

% Plot SSS correlations
figure;
stem(0:335,sssEst,'o');
title('SSS Correlations (Frequency Domain)');
xlabel('$N_{ID}^{(1)}$', 'Interpreter','latex');
ylabel('Magnitude');
axis([-1 336 0 max(sssEst)*1.1]);

% Determine NID1 by finding the strongest correlation
NID1 = find(sssEst==max(sssEst)) - 1;

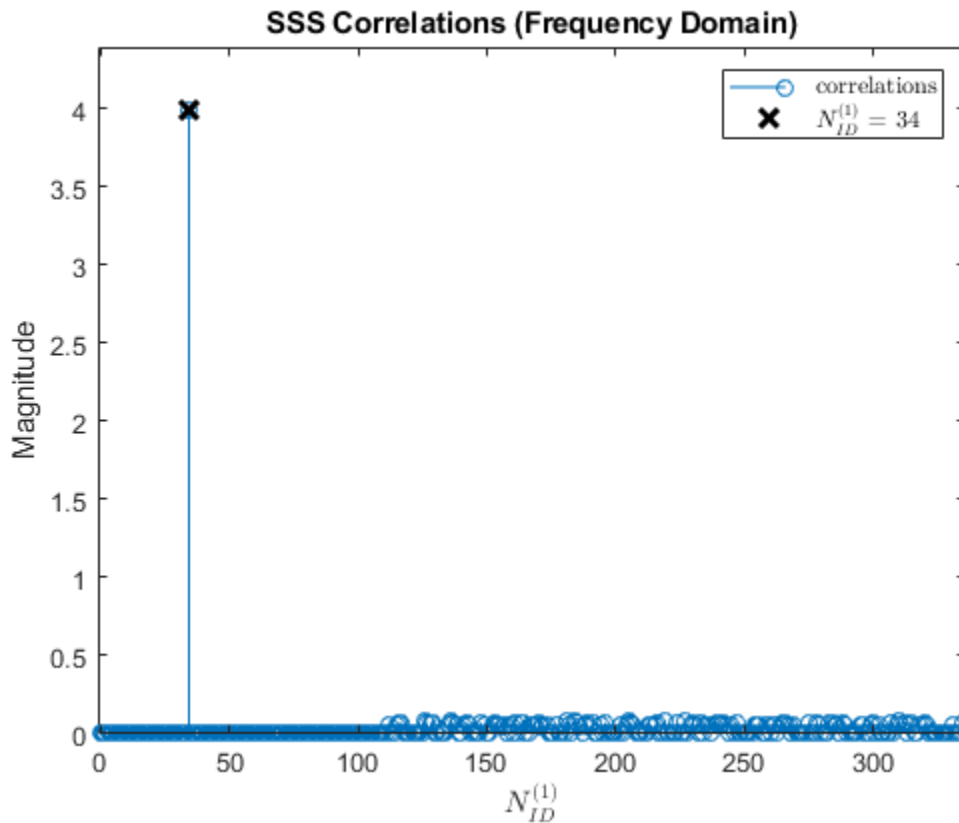
% Plot selected NID1
hold on;
plot(NID1,max(sssEst),'kx','LineWidth',2,'MarkerSize',8);
legend(["correlations" "$N_{ID}^{(1)}$ = " + num2str(NID1)],'Interpreter','latex');

% Form overall cell identity from estimated NID1 and NID2
ncellid = (3*NID1) + NID2;

disp([' Cell identity: ' num2str(ncellid)])

Cell identity: 102

```



PBCH DM-RS search

In a process similar to SSS search, the receiver constructs each possible PBCH DM-RS sequence and performs channel and noise estimation. The index of the PBCH DM-RS with the best SNR determines the LSBs of the SS/PBCH block index required for PBCH scrambling initialization.

```
% Calculate PBCH DM-RS indices
dmrsIndices = nrPBCHDMRSIndices(ncellid);

% Perform channel estimation using DM-RS symbols for each possible DM-RS
% sequence and estimate the SNR
dmrsEst = zeros(1,8);
for ibar_SSB = 0:7

    refGrid = zeros([240 4]);
    refGrid(dmrsIndices) = nrPBCHDMRS(ncellid,ibar_SSB);
    [hest,nest] = nrChannelEstimate(rxGrid,refGrid,'AveragingWindow',[0 1]);
    dmrsEst(ibar_SSB+1) = 10*log10(mean(abs(hest(:).^2)) / nest);

end

% Plot PBCH DM-RS SNRs
figure;
stem(0:7,dmrsEst,'o');
title('PBCH DM-RS SNR Estimates');
xlabel('$\overline{i}_{SSB}$','Interpreter','latex');
xticks(0:7);
```

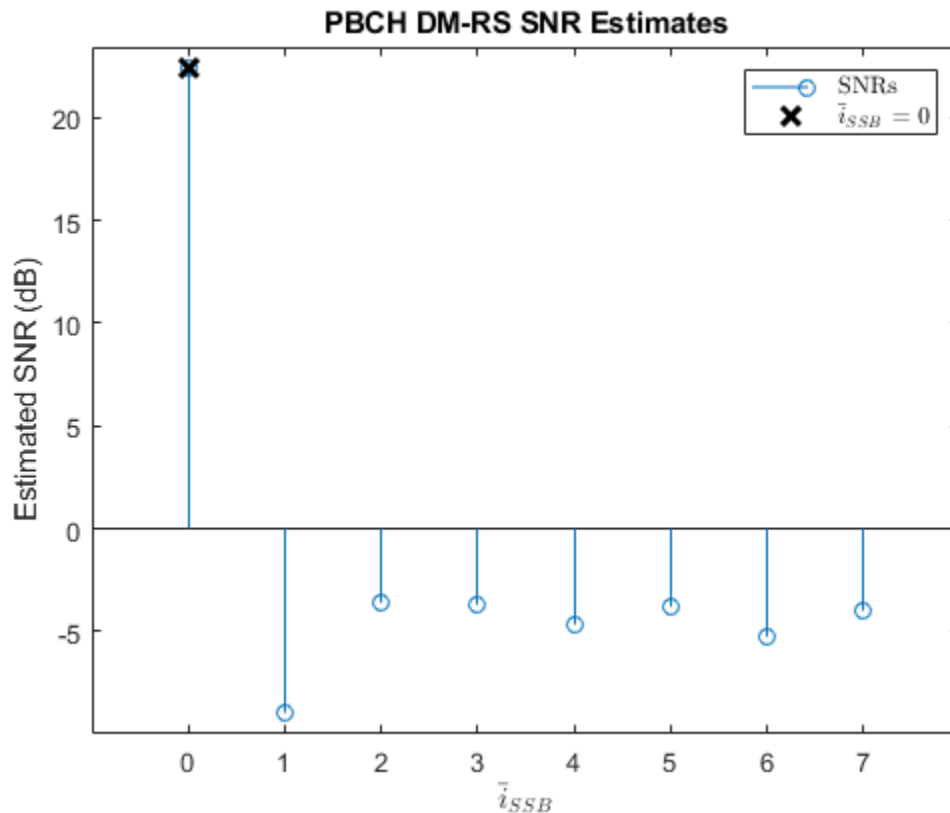
```

ylabel('Estimated SNR (dB)');
axis([-1 8 min(dmrsEst)-1 max(dmrsEst)+1]);

% Record ibar_SSB for the highest SNR
ibar_SSB = find(dmrsEst==max(dmrsEst)) - 1;

% Plot selected ibar_SSB
hold on;
plot(ibar_SSB,max(dmrsEst),'kx','LineWidth',2,'MarkerSize',8);
legend(["SNRs" "\overline{i}_{SSB} = " + num2str(ibar_SSB)],'Interpreter','latex');

```



Channel Estimation using PBCH DM-RS and SSS

The receiver estimates the channel for the entire SS/PBCH block using the SSS and PBCH DM-RS detected in previous steps. An estimate of the additive noise on the PBCH DM-RS / SSS is also performed.

```

refGrid = zeros([nrSSB*12 4]);
refGrid(dmrsIndices) = nrPBCHDMRS(ncellid,ibar_SSB);
refGrid(sssIndices) = nrSSS(ncellid);
[hest,nest,hestInfo] = nrChannelEstimate(rxGrid,refGrid,'AveragingWindow',[0 1]);

```

PBCH Demodulation

The receiver uses the cell identity to determine and extract the resource elements associated with the PBCH from the received grid. In addition, the receiver uses the channel and noise estimates to perform MMSE equalization. The equalized PBCH symbols are then demodulated and descrambled to give bit estimates for the coded BCH block.

```
disp(' -- PBCH demodulation and BCH decoding -- ')

% Extract the received PBCH symbols from the SS/PBCH block
[pbchIndices,pbchIndicesInfo] = nrPBCHIndices(ncellid);
pbchRx = nrExtractResources(pbchIndices,rxGrid);

% Configure 'v' for PBCH scrambling according to TS 38.211 Section 7.3.3.1
% 'v' is also the 2 LSBs of the SS/PBCH block index for L_max=4, or the 3
% LSBs for L_max=8 or 64.
if refBurst.L_max == 4
    v = mod(ibar_SSB,4);
else
    v = ibar_SSB;
end
ssbIndex = v;

% PBCH equalization and CSI calculation
pbchHest = nrExtractResources(pbchIndices,hest);
[pbchEq,csi] = nrEqualizeMMSE(pbchRx,pbchHest,nest);
Qm = pbchIndicesInfo.G / pbchIndicesInfo.Gd;
csi = repmat(csi.',Qm,1);
csi = reshape(csi,[],1);

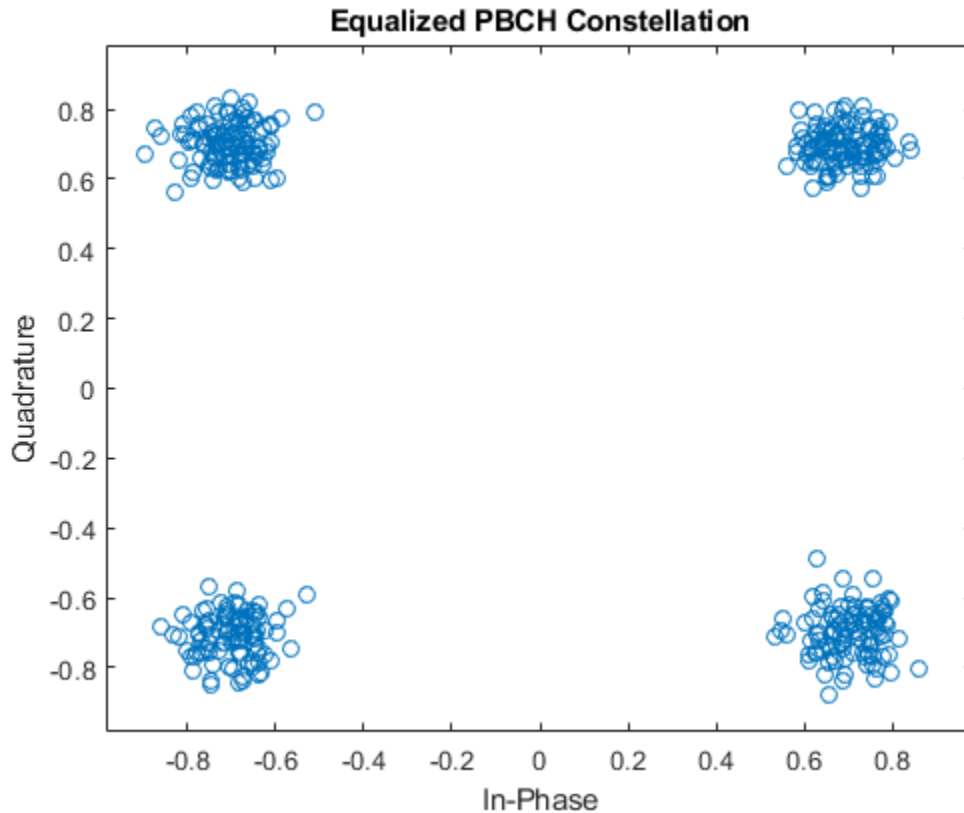
% Plot received PBCH constellation after equalization
figure;
plot(pbchEq,'o');
xlabel('In-Phase'); ylabel('Quadrature')
title('Equalized PBCH Constellation');
m = max(abs([real(pbchEq(:)); imag(pbchEq(:))])) * 1.1;
axis([-m m -m m]);

% PBCH demodulation
pbchBits = nrPBCHDecode(pbchEq,ncellid,v,nest);

% Calculate RMS PBCH EVM
pbchRef = nrPBCH(pbchBits<0,ncellid,v);
evm = comm.EVM;
pbchEVMrms = evm(pbchRef,pbchEq);

% Display calculated EVM
disp([' PBCH RMS EVM: ' num2str(pbchEVMrms,'%0.3f') '%']);

-- PBCH demodulation and BCH decoding --
PBCH RMS EVM: 8.687%
```



BCH Decoding

The receiver weights BCH bit estimates with channel state information (CSI) from the MMSE equalizer and decodes the BCH. BCH decoding consists of rate recovery, polar decoding, CRC decoding, descrambling, and separating the 24 BCH transport block bits from the 8 additional timing-related payload bits.

```
% Apply CSI
pbchBits = pbchBits .* csi;

% Perform BCH decoding including rate recovery, polar decoding, and CRC
% decoding. PBCH descrambling and separation of the BCH transport block
% bits 'trblk' from 8 additional payload bits A...A+7 is also performed:
%   A ... A+3: 4 LSBs of System Frame Number
%       A+4: half frame number
%   A+5 ... A+7: for L_max=64, 3 MSBs of the SS/PBCH block index
%               for L_max=4 or 8, A+5 is the MSB of subcarrier offset k_SSB
polarListLength = 8;
[~,crcBCH,trblk,sfn4lsb,nHalfFrame,msbidxoffset] = ...
    nrBCHDecode(pbchBits,polarListLength,refBurst.L_max,ncellid);

% Display the BCH CRC
disp([' BCH CRC: ' num2str(crcBCH)]);

% Stop processing MIB and SIB1 if BCH was received with errors
if crcBCH
    disp(' BCH CRC is not zero.');
```

```

    return
end

% Use 'msbidxoffset' value to set bits of 'k_SSB' or 'ssbIndex', depending
% on the number of SS/PBCH blocks in the burst
if (refBurst.L_max==64)
    ssbIndex = ssbIndex + (bi2de(msbidxoffset.','left-msb') * 8);
    k_SSB = 0;
else
    k_SSB = msbidxoffset * 16;
end

% Displaying the SSB index
disp([' SSB index: ' num2str(ssbIndex)]);

BCH CRC: 0
SSB index: 0

```

MIB Parsing

The example parses the 24 decoded BCH transport block bits into a structure which represents the MIB message fields. This process includes reconstituting the 10-bit system frame number (SFN) NFrame from the 6 MSBs in the MIB and the 4 LSBs in the PBCH payload bits. It also includes incorporating the MSB of the subcarrier offset k_{SSB} from the PBCH payload bits in the case of $L_{max}=4$ or 8 SS/PBCH blocks per burst.

```

% Create set of subcarrier spacings signaled by the 7th bit of the decoded
% MIB, the set is different for FR1 (L_max=4 or 8) and FR2 (L_max=64)
if (refBurst.L_max==64)
    commonSCSs = [60 120];
else
    commonSCSs = [15 30];
end

% Create a structure of MIB fields from the decoded MIB bits. The BCH
% transport block 'trblk' is the RRC message BCCH-BCH-Message, consisting
% of a leading 0 bit then 23 bits corresponding to the MIB
mib.NFrame = bi2de([trblk(2:7); sfn4lsb] .','left-msb');
mib.SubcarrierSpacingCommon = commonSCSs(trblk(8) + 1);
mib.k_SSB = k_SSB + bi2de(trblk(9:12).','left-msb');
mib.DMRSTypeAPosition = 2 + trblk(13);
mib.PDCCHConfigSIB1 = bi2de(trblk(14:21).','left-msb');
mib.CellBarred = trblk(22);
mib.IntraFreqReselection = trblk(23);

% Display the MIB structure
disp(' BCH/MIB Content:')
disp(mib);

% Check if a CORESET for Type0-PDCCH common search space (CSS) is present,
% according to TS 38.213 Section 4.1
if ~isCORESET0Present(refBurst.BlockPattern,mib.k_SSB)
    fprintf('CORESET0 is not present (k_SSB > k_SSB_max).\n');
    return
end

BCH/MIB Content:
NFrame: 0

```

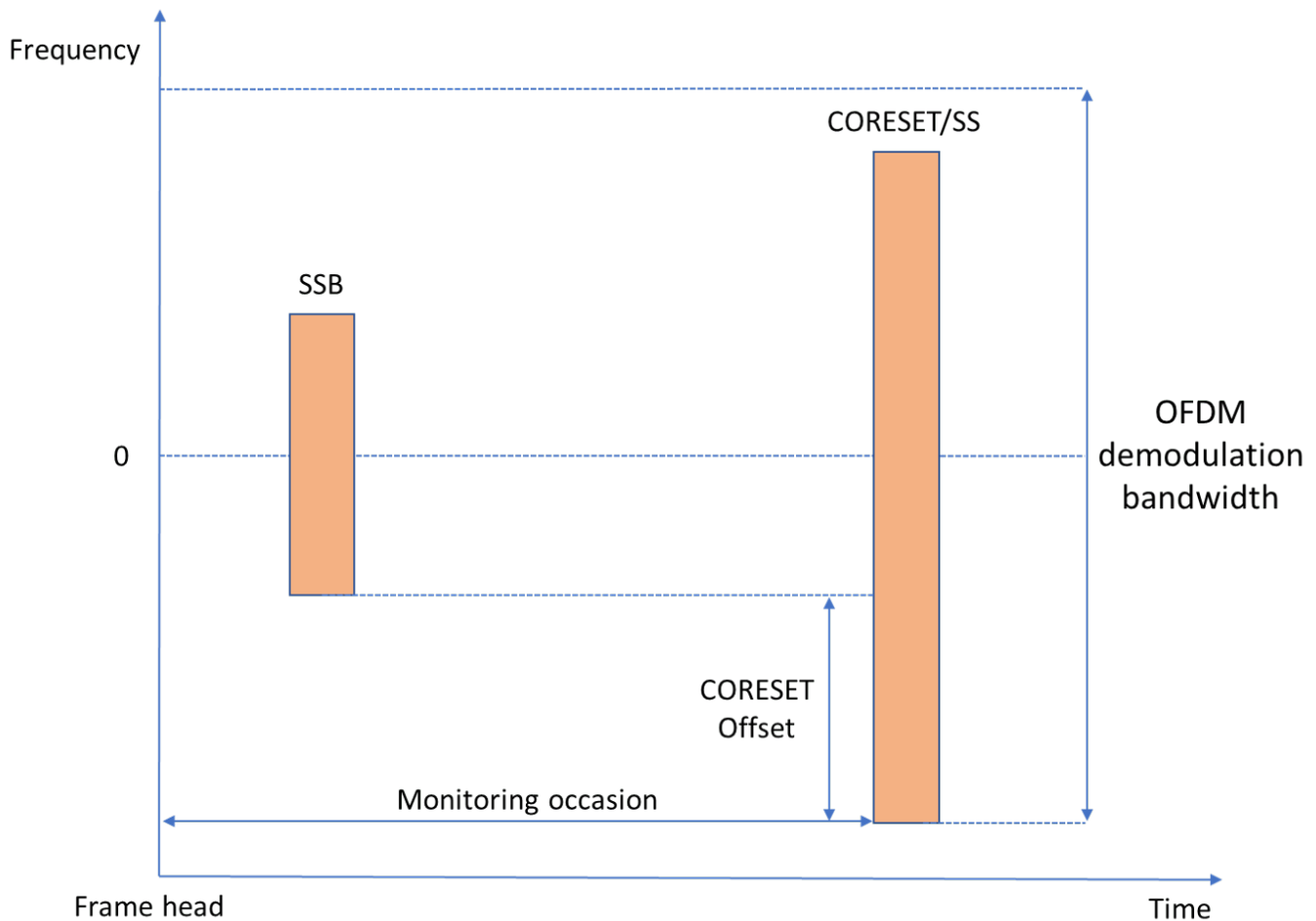
```

SubcarrierSpacingCommon: 15
    k_SSB: 0
  DMRSTypeAPosition: 3
    PDCCHConfigSIB1: 4
      CellBarred: 0
    IntraFreqReselection: 0

```

OFDM Demodulation on Full Bandwidth

Once the MIB is recovered, the receiver uses common subcarrier spacing and a bandwidth supporting CORESET0 to OFDM demodulate the frame containing the detected SS block. The receiver determines the CORESET0 frequency resources in common numerology through an offset from the location of the SSB detected and a bandwidth specified in TS 38.213 Section 13 Tables 13-1 through 13-10 [5]. The frequency correction process aligned the center of the OFDM resource grid with the center frequency of the SS burst. However, these centers are not necessarily aligned with the center frequency of CORESET0. This figure shows the relationship between the SSB, CORESET0 frequency resources and associated PDCCH monitoring occasions.



Unlike the SS burst, control and data channels must be aligned in frequency with their common resource block (CRB) raster. The value of K_{SSB} in the MIB signals the frequency offset of the SSB from that CRB raster. As the frequency correction process centered the SSB in frequency, apply a

```

frequency shift determined by k_SSB to align data and control channels with their CRB before OFDM
demodulation

if (refBurst.L_max==64)
    scsKSSB = mib.SubcarrierSpacingCommon;
else
    scsKSSB = 15;
end
k_SSB = mib.k_SSB;
kFreqShift = k_SSB*scsKSSB*1e3;
rxWaveform = rxWaveform.*exp(1i*2*pi*kFreqShift*(0:length(rxWaveform)-1)/rxSampleRate);

% Adjust timing offset to the frame origin
frameOffset = hTimingOffsetToFrame(refBurst,timingOffset,ssbIndex,rxSampleRate);

% If the frame offset is negative, the frame of interest is incomplete. Add
% leading zeros to the waveform to align the wavefom to the frame
if frameOffset < 0
    rxWaveform = [zeros(-frameOffset,size(rxWaveform,2));rxWaveform];
else
    rxWaveform = rxWaveform(1+frameOffset:end,:);
end

% Determine the OFDM demodulation bandwidth using CORESET0 bandwidth
msbIdx = floor(mib.PDCCHConfigSIB1/16); % 4 MSB of PDCCHConfigSIB1 in MIB
scsCommon = mib.SubcarrierSpacingCommon;
scsPair = [scsSSB scsCommon];
[csetNRB,~,csetFreqOffset] = hCORESET0Resources(msbIdx,scsPair,minChannelBW,k_SSB);

% Minimum bandwidth in RB that includes CORESET0 in received waveform.
c0 = csetFreqOffset+10*scsSSB/scsCommon; % CORESET frequency offset from carrier center
nrb = 2*max(c0,csetNRB-c0); % Minimum number of RB to cover CORESET0

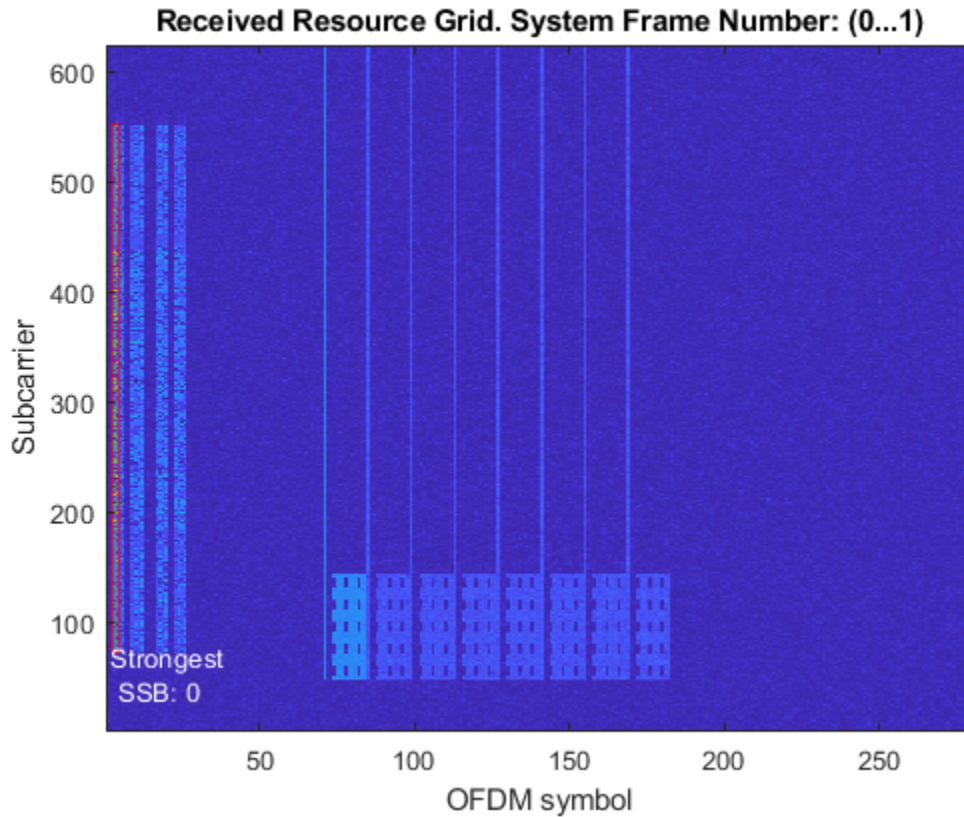
if rxSampleRate < nrb*12*scsCommon*1e3
    disp(['SIB1 recovery cannot continue. CORESET0 resources are beyond '...
        'the frequency limits of the received waveform for the sampling rate configured.']);
    return;
end

% OFDM demodulate received waveform with common subcarrier spacing
nSlot = 0;
rxGrid = nrOFDMDemodulate(rxWaveform, nrb, scsCommon, nSlot,...
    'SampleRate',rxSampleRate,'CarrierFrequency',fPhaseComp);

% Display OFDM resource grid and highlight strongest SS block
figure;
imagesc(abs(rxGrid(:,:,1))); axis xy
xlabel('OFDM symbol'); ylabel('Subcarrier');
numFrames = floor(length(rxWaveform)/rxSampleRate/10e-3);
sfns = sprintf('%d...%d',mib.NFrame, mib.NFrame+numFrames-1);
title(['Received Resource Grid. System Frame Number: ' sfns]);

highlightSSBlock(refBurst,ssbIndex,nrb,scsPair,kFreqShift)

```

Demodulation of PDCCH and Downlink Control Information Decoding

To blindly search for system information DCI messages in CORESET/SS, the receiver performs these steps:

- Determination of PDCCH monitoring occasions and extraction of the OFDM resource grid containing control information.
- Configuration of CORESET0, Search spaces and PDCCH.
- Blind search for Format 1_0 DCI messages.

The receiver determines the PDCCH monitoring occasions through a slot and OFDM symbol offset from the location of the SS block detected, as described in TS 38.213 Tables 13-11 and 13-12 [5] .

```

msbIdx = floor(mib.PDCCHConfigSIB1/16); % 4 MSB of PDCCHConfigSIB1 in MIB index Tables 13-1 to 13-11
[csetNRB,csetDuration,csetOffset,csetPattern] = hCORESET0Resources(msbIdx,scsPair,minChannelBW,k_scs);
lsbIdx = mod(mib.PDCCHConfigSIB1,16);
[ssSlot,ssFirstSym,isOccasion] = hPDCCH0MonitoringOccasions(lsbIdx,ssbIndex,scsPair,csetPattern,ssbIndex);

% PDCCH monitoring occasions associated to different SS blocks can be in
% different frames. If there are no monitoring occasions in this frame,
% there must be one in the next one.
slotsPerFrame = 10*scsCommon/15;
if ~isOccasion
    [ssSlot,ssFirstSym,isOccasion] = hPDCCH0MonitoringOccasions(lsbIdx,ssbIndex,scsPair,csetPattern,ssbIndex);
    ssSlot = ssSlot+slotsPerFrame;
end

```

```

% For FR1, UE monitors PDCCH in the Type0-PDCCH CSS over two consecutive
% slots for CORESET pattern 1
if csetPattern == 1
    monSlotsPerPeriod = 2;
else
    monSlotsPerPeriod = 1;
end

% Calculate 1-based subscripts of the subcarriers and OFDM symbols for the
% slots containing the PDCCH0 associated to the detected SS block in this
% and subsequent 2-frame blocks
csetSubcarriers = 12*(nrb-20*scsSSB/scsCommon)/2 - csetOffset*12 + (1:csetNRB*12);
numRxSym = size(rxGrid,2);
symbolsPerSlot = 14;
numRxSlots = ceil(numRxSym/symbolsPerSlot);
monSlots = ssSlot + (0:monSlotsPerPeriod-1)' + (0:2*slotsPerFrame:(numRxSlots-ssSlot-1));
monSlots = monSlots(:)';
monSymbols = monSlots*symbolsPerSlot + (1:symbolsPerSlot)';
monSymbols = monSymbols(:)';
% Remove monitoring symbols exceeding waveform limits
monSymbols(monSymbols > numRxSym) = [];

% Check if search space is beyond end of waveform
if isempty(monSymbols)
    disp('Search space slot is beyond end of waveform.');
```

return;

```
end

% Extract slots containing strongest PDCCH from the received grid
rxMonSlotGrid = rxGrid(csetSubcarriers,monSymbols,:);
```

Configure CORESET, search space, and other PDCCH parameters. CORESET resources and search spaces are configured according to TS 38.213 Section 13 Tables 13-1 through 13-15 [5]. CCE-to-REG interleaved mapping parameters (REGBundleSize = 6, InterleaverSize = 2, and ShiftIndex = NCellID) are described in TS 38.211 Section 7.3.2.2 [3]. For CORESET 0, the BWP is the size of the CORESET as described in TS 38.212 Section 7.3.1.0 [4]. The PDCCH scrambling parameters are nRNTI = 0 and nID = NCellID as described in TS 38.211 Section 7.3.2.3 [3].

```
pdccch = hPDCCH0Configuration(ssbIndex,mib,scsPair,ncellid,minChannelBW);

% Configure the carrier to span the BWP (CORESET0)
c0Carrier = nrCarrierConfig;
c0Carrier.SubcarrierSpacing = mib.SubcarrierSpacingCommon;
c0Carrier.NStartGrid = pdccch.NStartBWP;
c0Carrier.NSizeGrid = pdccch.NSizeBWP;
c0Carrier.NSlot = pdccch.SearchSpace.SlotPeriodAndOffset(2);
c0Carrier.NFrame = mib.NFrame;
c0Carrier.NCellID = ncellid;
```

Search for DCI messages. UE decodes the received PDCCH symbols blindly by monitoring all PDCCH candidates for every aggregation level using the SI-RNTI to identify the right candidate (or instance).

```

% Specify DCI message with Format 1_0 scrambled with SI-RNTI (TS 38.212
% Section 7.3.1.2.1)
dcispec1_0 = hSystemInformationDCIFieldsSize(pdccch.NSizeBWP);
numDCIBits = sum(structfun(@(x)x,dcispec1_0));
```

```

disp(' -- Downlink control information message search in PDCCH -- ');

siRNTI = 65535; % TS 38.321 Table 7.1-1
dciCRC = true;
mSlot = 0;
% Loop over all monitoring slots
while (mSlot < length(monSlots)) && dciCRC ~= 0
    c0Carrier.NSlot = monSlots(mSlot+1);

    if monSlotsPerPeriod==2
        if mod(mSlot,2)
            pdcch.SearchSpace.SlotPeriodAndOffset(2) = monSlots(2);
        else
            pdcch.SearchSpace.SlotPeriodAndOffset(2) = monSlots(1);
        end
    end

    % Get PDCCH candidates according to TS 38.213 Section 10.1
    [pdcchInd,pdcchDmrsSym,pdcchDmrsInd] = nrPDCCHSpace(c0Carrier,pdcch);
    rxSlotGrid = rxMonSlotGrid(:,(1:symbolsPerSlot) + symbolsPerSlot*mSlot,:);
    rxSlotGrid = rxSlotGrid/max(abs(rxSlotGrid(:))); % Normalization of received RE magnitude

    % Loop over all supported aggregation levels
    aLev = 1;
    while (aLev <= 5) && dciCRC ~= 0
        % Loop over all candidates at each aggregation level in SS
        cIdx = 1;
        numCandidatesAL = pdcch.SearchSpace.NumCandidates(aLev);
        while (cIdx <= numCandidatesAL) && dciCRC ~= 0
            % Channel estimation using PDCCH DM-RS
            [hest,nVar,pdcchHestInfo] = nrChannelEstimate(rxSlotGrid,pdcchDmrsInd{aLev}(:,cIdx),);

            % Equalization and demodulation of PDCCH symbols
            [pdcchRxSym,pdcchHest] = nrExtractResources(pdcchInd{aLev}(:,cIdx),rxSlotGrid,hest);
            pdcchEqSym = nrEqualizeMMSE(pdcchRxSym,pdcchHest,nVar);
            dcicw = nrPDCCHDecode(pdcchEqSym,pdcch.DMRSScramblingID,pdcch.RNTI,nVar);

            % DCI message decoding
            polarListLength = 8;
            [dcibits,dciCRC] = nrDCIDecode(dciw,numDCIBits,polarListLength,siRNTI);

            if dciCRC == 0
                disp([' Decoded PDCCH candidate #' num2str(cIdx) ' at aggregation level ' num2str(aLev)]);
            end
            cIdx = cIdx + 1;
        end
        aLev = aLev+1;
    end
    mSlot = mSlot+1;
end
cIdx = cIdx-1;
aLev = aLev-1;
mSlot = mSlot-1;
monSymbols = monSymbols(mSlot*symbolsPerSlot + (1:symbolsPerSlot));

% Calculate RMS PDCCH EVM
pdcchRef = nrPDCCH(double(dciw<0),pdcch.DMRSScramblingID,pdcch.RNTI);
evm = comm.EVM;

```

```

pdccchEVMrms = evm(pdccchRef,pdccchEqSym);

% Display calculated EVM
disp([' PDCCH RMS EVM: ' num2str(pdccchEVMrms,'%0.3f') '%']);
disp([' PDCCH CRC: ' num2str(dciCRC)]);

% Highlight CORESET0/SS corresponding to strongest SSB
bounding_box = @(y,x,h,w)rectangle('Position',[x+0.5 y-0.5 w h],'EdgeColor','r');
bounding_box(csetSubcarriers(1),monSymbols(1)+ssFirstSym-1,csetNRB*12,csetDuration);
str = sprintf('CORESET0/SS');
text(monSymbols(1)+ssFirstSym-7,csetSubcarriers(1)-20,0,str,'FontSize',10,'Color','w')

if dciCRC
    disp(' DCI decoding failed. ');
    return
end

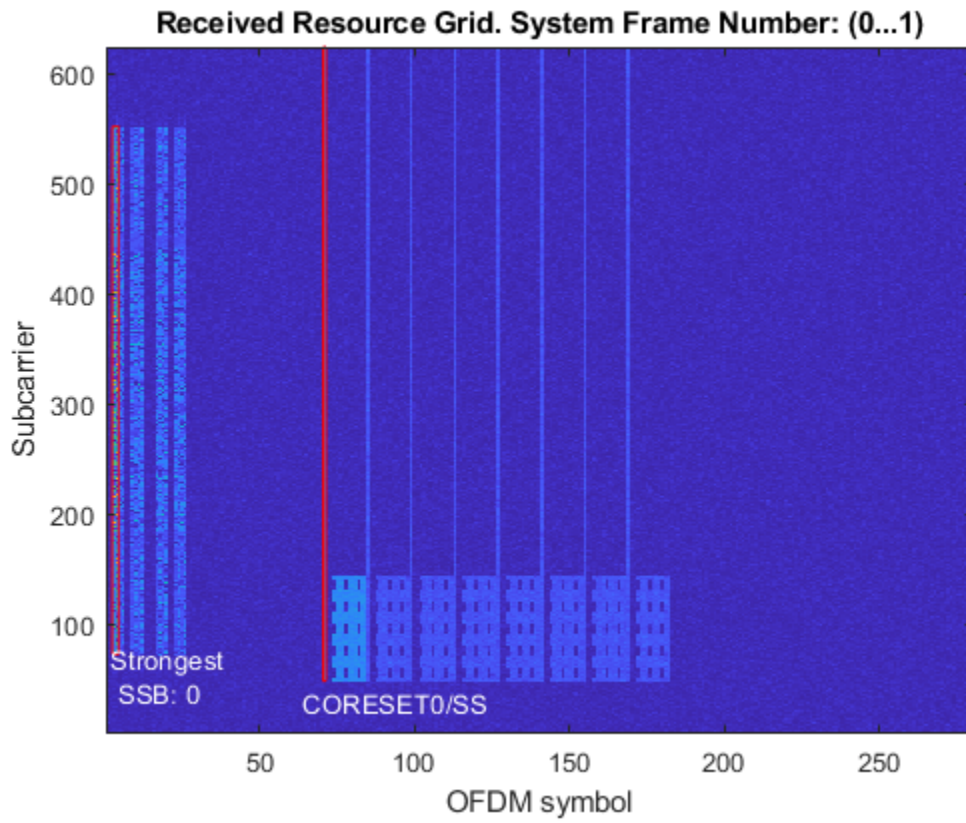
% Plot received PDCCH constellation after equalization
figure;
plot(pdccchEqSym,'o');
xlabel('In-Phase'); ylabel('Quadrature');
title('Equalized PDCCH Constellation');
m = max(abs([real(pdccchEqSym(:)); imag(pdccchEqSym(:))])) * 1.1;
axis([-m m -m m]);

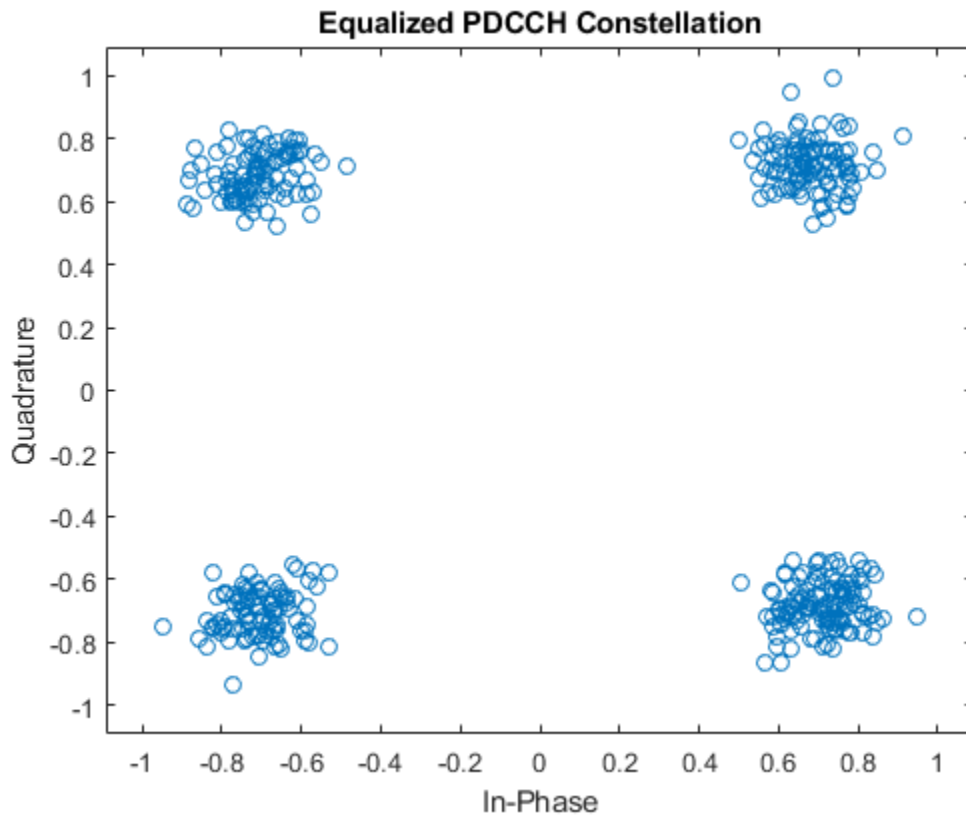
% Display the OFDM grid of the slot containing strongest PDCCH
figure;
imagesc(abs(rxSlotGrid(:,:,1))); axis xy
xlabel('OFDM symbol');
ylabel('subcarrier');
title('Slot Containing Strongest PDCCH');

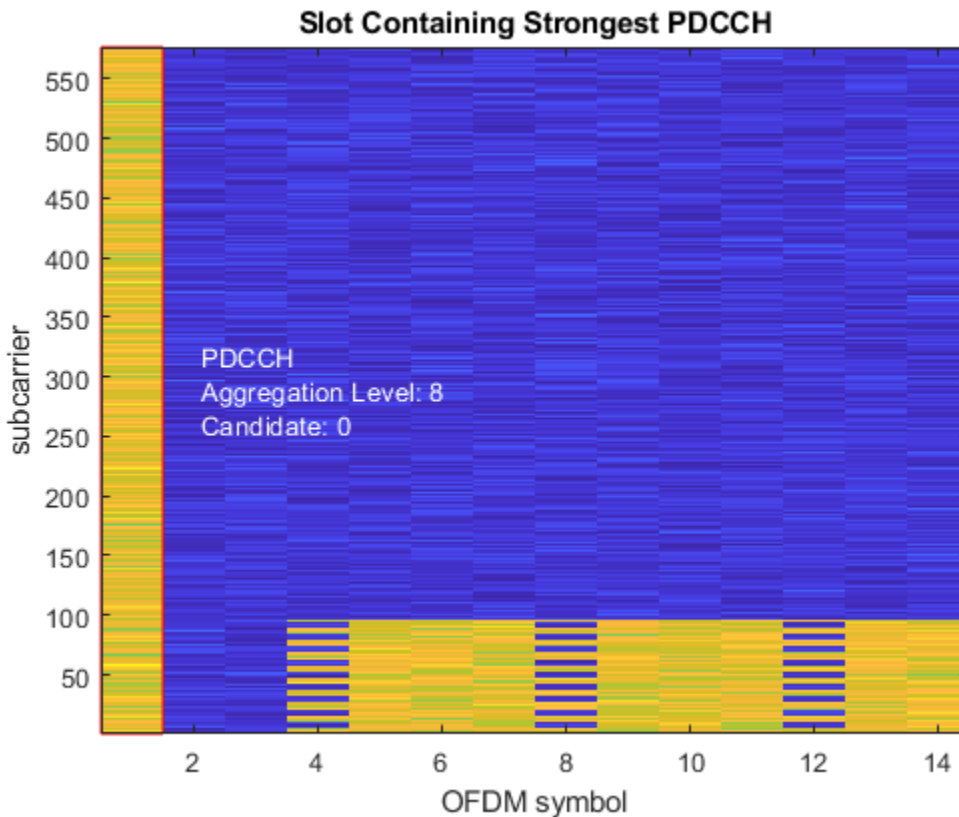
% Highlight PDCCH in resource grid
subsPdcch = nrPDCCHSpace(c0Carrier,pdccch,'IndexStyle','Subs');
subsPdcch = double(subsPdcch{aLev}(:,:,cIdx));
x = min(subsPdcch(:,2))-1; X = max(subsPdcch(:,2))-x;
y = min(subsPdcch(:,1)); Y = max(subsPdcch(:,1))-y+1;
bounding_box(y,x,Y,X);
str = sprintf(' PDCCH \n Aggregation Level: %d\n Candidate: %d',2.^(aLev-1),cIdx-1);
text(x+X+1,y+Y/2,0,str,'FontSize',10,'Color','w')

-- Downlink control information message search in PDCCH --
Decoded PDCCH candidate #1 at aggregation level 8
PDCCH RMS EVM: 10.759%
PDCCH CRC: 0

```







Demodulation of PDSCH, Decoding of DL-SCH and SIB1 Extraction

To recover the first system information block, the receiver performs these steps:

- Determination of PDSCH configuration using cell ID, MIB, and DCI
- Channel estimation, equalization and demodulation of PDSCH symbols
- Decoding of DL-SCH and SIB1 extraction

```
disp(' -- PDSCH demodulation and DL-SCH decoding -- ')
```

```
% Build DCI message structure
dci = hDCI(dcispec1_0,dcibits);
```

```
% Get PDSCH configuration from cell ID, MIB, and DCI
[psch,K_0] = hSIB1PDSCHConfiguration(dci,pcch.NSizeBWP,mib.DMRSTypeAPosition,csetPattern);
```

```
% For CORESET pattern 2, the gNodeB can allocate PDSCH in the next slot,
% which is indicated by the slot offset K_0 signaled by DCI. For more
% information, see TS 38.214 Table 5.1.2.1.1-4.
```

```
c0Carrier.NSlot = c0Carrier.NSlot+K_0;
symbolOffset = symbolsPerSlot*(mSlot+K_0);
monSymbols = monSymbols+symbolOffset;
rxSlotGrid = rxGrid(csetSubcarriers,monSymbols,:);
rxSlotGrid = rxSlotGrid/max(abs(rxSlotGrid(:))); % Normalization of received RE magnitude
if K_0 > 0
    % Display the OFDM grid of the slot containing associated PDSCH
    figure;
```

```

    imagesc(abs(rxSlotGrid(:,:,1))); axis xy
    xlabel('OFDM symbol');
    ylabel('subcarrier');
    title('Slot Containing PDSCH (Slot Offset K_0 = 1)');
end

```

```

% PDSCH channel estimation and equalization using PDSCH DM-RS
pdschDmrsIndices = nrPDSCHDMRSIndices(c0Carrier,pdsch);
pdschDmrsSymbols = nrPDSCHDMRS(c0Carrier,pdsch);

```

```
-- PDSCH demodulation and DL-SCH decoding --
```

To compensate for the negative effects of a carrier frequency mismatch in symbol phase compensation and channel estimation, the receiver OFDM demodulates the waveform with a set of carrier frequencies over a search bandwidth around `fPhaseComp`. The search finishes when DL-SCH decoding succeeds or the last frequency has been reached. The minimum search bandwidths that produce equal symbol phase compensation are 1920, 3840, 7680, and 15360 kHz for common subcarrier spacings 15, 30, 60, and 120 kHz, respectively. Increase the search bandwidth up to these values when SIB1 decoding fails and the equalized PDSCH symbols result in a heavily distorted and rotated constellation.

```

mu = log2(scsCommon/15);
bw = 2^mu*100; % Search bandwidth (kHz)
freqStep = 2^mu; % Frequency step (kHz)
freqSearch = -bw/2:freqStep:bw/2-freqStep;
[~,fSearchIdx] = sort(abs(freqSearch)); % Sort frequencies from center
freqSearch = freqSearch(fSearchIdx);

for fpc = fPhaseComp + 1e3*freqSearch

    % OFDM demodulate received waveform
    nSlot = 0;
    rxGrid = nrOFDMDemodulate(rxWaveform, nrb, scsCommon, nSlot,...
        'SampleRate',rxSampleRate,'CarrierFrequency',fpc);

    % Extract monitoring slot from the received grid
    rxSlotGrid = rxGrid(csetSubcarriers,monSymbols,:);
    rxSlotGrid = rxSlotGrid/max(abs(rxSlotGrid(:))); % Normalization of received RE magnitude

    % Channel estimation and equalization of PDSCH symbols
    [hest,nVar,pdschHestInfo] = nrChannelEstimate(rxSlotGrid,pdschDmrsIndices,pdschDmrsSymbols);
    [pdschIndices,pdschIndicesInfo] = nrPDSCHIndices(c0Carrier,pdsch);
    [pdschRxSym,pdschHest] = nrExtractResources(pdschIndices,rxSlotGrid,hest);
    pdschEqSym = nrEqualizeMMSE(pdschRxSym,pdschHest,nVar);

    % PDSCH demodulation
    cw = nrPDSCHDecode(c0Carrier,pdsch,pdschEqSym,nVar);

    % Initialize DL-SCH decoder
    decodedLSCH = nrDLSCHDecoder;

    % Target code rate and transport block size
    Xoh_PDSCH = 0; % TS 38.214 Section 5.1.3.2
    tcr = hMCS(dci.ModCoding);
    NREPerPRB = pdschIndicesInfo.NREPerPRB;
    tbsLength = nrTBS(pdsch.Modulation,pdsch.NumLayers,length(pdsch.PRBSets),NREPerPRB,tcr,Xoh_PD
    decodedLSCH.TransportBlockLength = tbsLength;
    decodedLSCH.TargetCodeRate = tcr;

```



```

% Decode DL-SCH
[sib1bits,sib1CRC] = decodeDLSCH(cw,pdsch.Modulation,pdsch.NumLayers,dci.RV);

if sib1CRC == 0
    break;
end

end

% Highlight PDSCH in resource grid
subsPdsch = double(nrPDSCHIndices(c0Carrier,pdsch,'IndexStyle','subscript'));
x = min(subsPdsch(:,2))-1; X = max(subsPdsch(:,2))-x;
y = min(subsPdsch(:,1)); Y = max(subsPdsch(:,1))-y+1;
bounding_box(y,x,Y,X);
str = sprintf('PDSCH (SIB1) \n Modulation: %s\n Code rate: %.2f',pdsch.Modulation,tcR);
text(x+4,y+Y+60,0, str,'FontSize',10,'Color','w')

% Plot received PDSCH constellation after equalization
figure;
plot(pdschEqSym,'o');
xlabel('In-Phase'); ylabel('Quadrature');
title('Equalized PDSCH Constellation');
m = max(abs([real(pdschEqSym(:)); imag(pdschEqSym(:))])) * 1.1;
axis([-m m -m m]);

% Calculate RMS PDSCH EVM, including normalization of PDSCH symbols for any
% offset between DM-RS and PDSCH power
pdschRef = nrPDSCH(c0Carrier,pdsch,double(cw{1}<0));
evm = comm.EVM;
pdschEVMrms = evm(pdschRef,pdschEqSym/sqrt(var(pdschEqSym)));

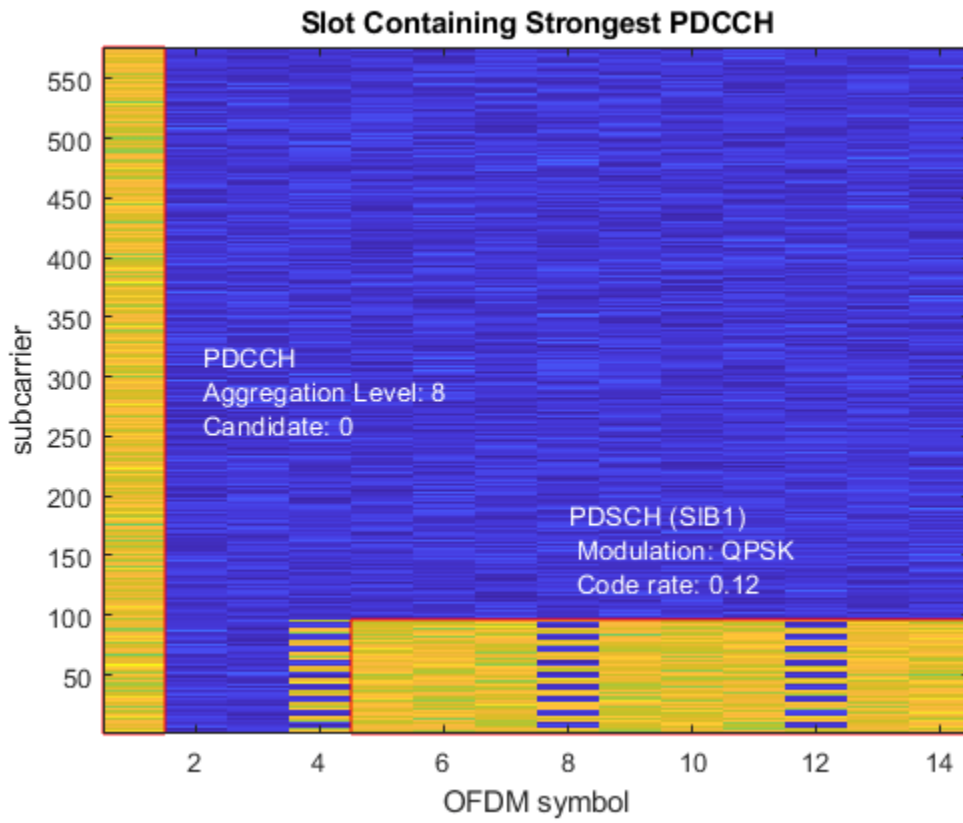
% Display PDSCH EVM and DL-SCH CRC
disp([' PDSCH RMS EVM: ' num2str(pdschEVMrms,'%0.3f') '%']);
disp([' PDSCH CRC: ' num2str(sib1CRC)]);

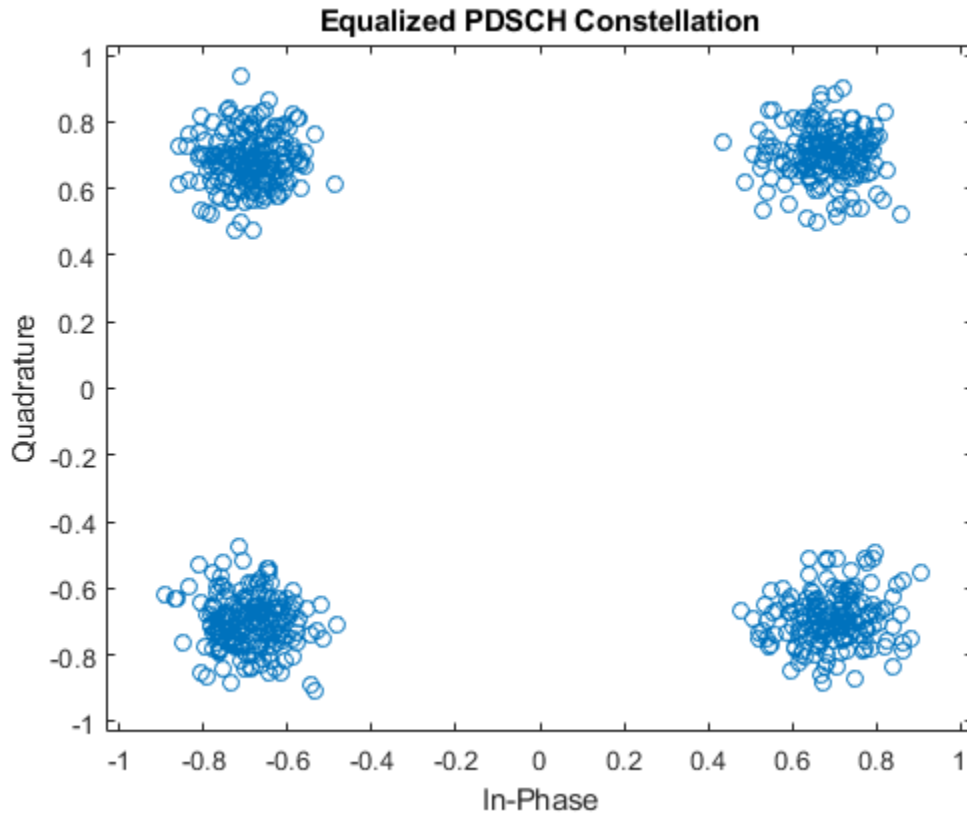
if sib1CRC == 0
    disp(' SIB1 decoding succeeded. ');
else
    disp(' SIB1 decoding failed. ');
end

end

PDSCH RMS EVM: 10.835%
PDSCH CRC: 0
SIB1 decoding succeeded.

```





Appendix

This example uses these helper functions:

- hCORESET0Resources.m
- hMCS.m
- hPDCCH0Configuration.m
- hPDCCH0MonitoringOccasions.m
- hSIB1PDSCHConfiguration.m
- hPDSCHTimeAllocationTables.m
- hSIB1WaveformConfiguration.m
- hSIB1Boost.m
- hSSBurstFrequencyCorrect.m
- hSSBurstStartSymbols.m
- hSSBurstSubcarrierSpacing.m
- hSystemInformationDCIFieldsSize.m

References

- 1 3GPP TS 38.101-1. "NR; User Equipment (UE) radio transmission and reception; Part 1: Range 1 Standalone" *3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Radio Access Network*.

- 2 3GPP TS 38.104. "NR; Base Station (BS) radio transmission and reception." *3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Radio Access Network.*
- 3 3GPP TS 38.211. "NR; Physical channels and modulation." *3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Radio Access Network.*
- 4 3GPP TS 38.212. "NR; Multiplexing and channel coding." *3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Radio Access Network.*
- 5 3GPP TS 38.213. "NR; Physical layer procedures for control." *3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Radio Access Network.*
- 6 3GPP TS 38.214. "NR; Physical layer procedures for data." *3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Radio Access Network.*
- 7 3GPP TS 38.321. "NR; Medium Access Control (MAC) protocol specification." *3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Radio Access Network.*

Local functions

```
function present = isCORESET0Present(ssbBlockPattern,kSSB)

    switch ssbBlockPattern
        case {'Case A','Case B','Case C'} % FR1
            kssb_max = 23;
        case {'Case D','Case E'} % FR2
            kssb_max = 11;
    end
    if (kSSB <= kssb_max)
        present = true;
    else
        present = false;
    end
end

function dci = hDCI(dcispec,dcibits)

    % Parse DCI message into a structure of DCI message fields
    fieldsizes = structfun(@(x)x,dcispec);
    fieldbits2dec = @(x,y)bin2dec(char(x(y(1):y(2)) + '0'));
    fieldbitranges = [[0; cumsum(fieldsizes(1:end-1))]+1 cumsum(fieldsizes)];
    fieldbitranges = num2cell(fieldbitranges,2);
    values = cellfun(@(x)fieldbits2dec(dcibits.',x),fieldbitranges,'UniformOutput',false);
    dci = cell2struct(values,fieldnames(dcispec));
end

function timingOffset = hTimingOffsetToFrame(burst,offset,ssbIdx,rxSampleRate)

    % As the symbol lengths are measured in FFT samples, scale the symbol
    % lengths to account for the receiver sample rate. Non-integer delays
    % are approximated at the end of the process.
    scs = hSSBurstSubcarrierSpacing(burst.BlockPattern);
    ofdmInfo = nrOFDMInfo(1,scs,'SampleRate',rxSampleRate); % smallest FFT size for SCS-SR
    srRatio = rxSampleRate/(scs*1e3*ofdmInfo.Nfft);
    symbolLengths = ofdmInfo.SymbolLengths*srRatio;

    % Adjust timing offset to the start of the SS block. This step removes
    % the extra offset introduced in the reference grid during PSS search,
```

```

% which contained the PSS in the second OFDM symbol.
offset = offset + symbolLengths(1);

% Timing offset is adjusted so that the received grid starts at the
% frame head i.e. adjust the timing offset for the difference between
% the first symbol of the strongest SSB, and the start of the frame
burstStartSymbols = hSSBurstStartSymbols(burst.BlockPattern,burst.L_max); % Start symbols in
ssbFirstSym = burstStartSymbols(ssbIdx+1); % 0-based

% Adjust for whole subframes
symbolsPerSubframe = length(symbolLengths);
subframeOffset = floor(ssbFirstSym/symbolsPerSubframe);
samplesPerSubframe = sum(symbolLengths);
timingOffset = offset - (subframeOffset*samplesPerSubframe);

% Adjust for remaining OFDM symbols and round offset if not integer
symbolOffset = mod(ssbFirstSym,symbolsPerSubframe);
timingOffset = round(timingOffset - sum(symbolLengths(1:symbolOffset)));

end

function highlightSSBlock(refBurst,ssbIndex,commonNRB,scs,kFreqShift)

    scsSSB = scs(1);
    scsCommon = scs(2);

    % Determine frequency origin of the SSB in common numerology
    bounding_box = @(y,x,h,w)rectangle('Position',[x+0.5 y-0.5 w h],'EdgeColor','r');
    scsRatio = scsSSB/scsCommon;
    ssbFreqOrig = 12*(commonNRB-20*scsRatio)/2+1+kFreqShift/(scsCommon*1e3);

    % Determine time origin of the SSB in common numerology
    ssbStartSymbols = hSSBurstStartSymbols(refBurst.BlockPattern,refBurst.L_max);
    ssbHeadSymbol = ssbStartSymbols(ssbIndex+1)/scsRatio;
    ssbTailSymbol = floor((ssbStartSymbols(ssbIndex+1)+4)/scsRatio)-1;

    bounding_box(ssbFreqOrig,ssbHeadSymbol,240*scsRatio,ssbTailSymbol-ssbHeadSymbol+1);

    str = sprintf('Strongest \n SSB: %d',ssbIndex);
    text(ssbHeadSymbol,ssbFreqOrig-20,0, str,'FontSize',10,'Color','w')

end

```

See Also

More About

- “Synchronization Signal Blocks and Bursts”
- “NR SSB Beam Sweeping” on page 1-97
- “NR Downlink Transmit-End Beam Refinement Using CSI-RS” on page 1-112

NR PDSCH Throughput

This example shows how to measure the physical downlink shared channel (PDSCH) throughput of a 5G New Radio (NR) link, as defined by the 3GPP NR standard. The example implements the PDSCH and downlink shared channel (DL-SCH). The transmitter model includes PDSCH demodulation reference signals (DM-RS), PDSCH phase tracking reference signals (PT-RS), and synchronization signal (SS) bursts. The example supports both clustered delay line (CDL) and tapped delay line (TDL) propagation channels. You can perform perfect or practical synchronization and channel estimation. To reduce the total simulation time, you can execute the SNR points in the SNR loop in parallel by using the Parallel Computing Toolbox™.

Introduction

This example measures the PDSCH throughput of a 5G link, as defined by the 3GPP NR standard [1], [2], [3], [4].

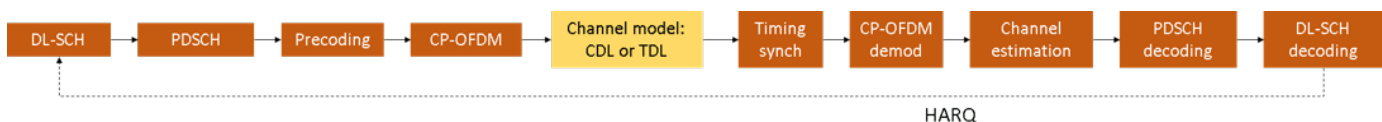
The example models these 5G NR features:

- DL-SCH transport channel coding
- Multiple codewords, dependent on the number of layers
- PDSCH, PDSCH DM-RS, and PDSCH PT-RS generation
- SS burst generation (PSS/SSS/PBCH/PBCH DM-RS)
- Variable subcarrier spacing and frame numerologies ($2^n * 15$ kHz) for normal and extended cyclic prefix
- TDL and CDL propagation channel models

Other features of the simulation are:

- PDSCH precoding using SVD
- CP-OFDM modulation
- Slot wise and non slot wise PDSCH and DM-RS mapping
- SS burst generation (cases A-E, SS/PBCH block bitmap control)
- Perfect or practical synchronization and channel estimation
- HARQ operation with 16 processes
- The example uses a single bandwidth part across the whole carrier

The figure shows the implemented processing chain. For clarity, the DM-RS, PT-RS, and SS burst generation are omitted.



This example supports both wideband and subband precoding. The precoding matrix is determined using SVD by averaging the channel estimate across all PDSCH PRBs in the allocation (wideband case) or in the subband. There is no beamforming on any SS/PBCH blocks in the SS burst.

To reduce the total simulation time, you can use the Parallel Computing Toolbox to execute the SNR points of the SNR loop in parallel.

Simulation Length and SNR Points

Set the length of the simulation in terms of the number of 10ms frames. A large number of NFrames should be used to produce meaningful throughput results. Set the SNR points to simulate. The SNR for each layer is defined per RE, and it includes the effect of signal and noise across all antennas.

```
simParameters = struct();           % Clear simParameters variable to contain all key simulation parameters
simParameters.NFrames = 2;         % Number of 10 ms frames
simParameters.SNRIn = [-5 0 5]; % SNR range (dB)
```

Channel Estimator Configuration

The logical variable PerfectChannelEstimator controls channel estimation and synchronization behavior. When set to true, perfect channel estimation and synchronization is used. Otherwise, practical channel estimation and synchronization is used, based on the values of the received PDSCH DM-RS.

```
simParameters.PerfectChannelEstimator = true;
```

Simulation Diagnostics

The simulation always displays the CRC pass/fail result of the PDSCH transmission for the HARQ process used in each slot. This includes the RV value used and the instantaneous code rate. Note that the code rate may differ from the process target code rate, especially in a slot containing SS blocks when there is a loss of physical resources available to the PDSCH. This increase in code rate may require further transport block retransmissions for successful reception, even at high SNR.

The DisplayDiagnostics flag enables the plotting of the EVM per layer. This plot monitors the quality of the received signal after equalization. The EVM per layer figure shows:

- The EVM per layer per slot, which shows the EVM evolving with time.
- The EVM per layer per resource block, which shows the EVM in frequency.

This figure evolves with the simulation and is updated with each slot. Typically, low SNR or channel fades can result in decreased signal quality (high EVM). The channel affects each layer differently, therefore, the EVM values may differ across layers.

In some cases, some layers can have a much higher EVM than others. These low-quality layers can result in CRC errors. This behavior may be caused by low SNR or by using too many layers for the channel conditions. You can avoid this situation by a combination of higher SNR, lower number of layers, higher number of antennas, and more robust transmission (lower modulation scheme and target code rate).

```
simParameters.DisplayDiagnostics = false;
```

Carrier and PDSCH Configuration

Set the key parameters of the simulation. These include:

- The bandwidth in resource blocks (12 subcarriers per resource block).
- Subcarrier spacing: 15, 30, 60, 120, 240 (kHz)
- Cyclic prefix length: normal or extended
- Cell ID
- Number of transmit and receive antennas

A substructure containing the DL-SCH and PDSCH parameters is also specified. This includes:

- Target code rate
- Allocated resource blocks (PRBSet)
- Modulation scheme: 'QPSK', '16QAM', '64QAM', '256QAM'
- Number of layers
- PDSCH mapping type
- DM-RS configuration parameters
- PT-RS configuration parameters

Other simulation wide parameters are:

- Propagation channel model: 'TDL' or 'CDL'
- SS burst configuration parameters. Note that the SS burst generation can be disabled by setting the SSBTransmitted field to [0 0 0 0].

```
% Set waveform type and PDSCH numerology (SCS and CP type)
simParameters.Carrier = nrCarrierConfig;
simParameters.Carrier.NSizeGrid = 51;           % Bandwidth in number of resource blocks (51 RB)
simParameters.Carrier.SubcarrierSpacing = 30;   % 15, 30, 60, 120, 240 (kHz)
simParameters.Carrier.CyclicPrefix = 'Normal';  % 'Normal' or 'Extended' (Extended CP is relevant)
simParameters.Carrier.NCellID = 1;             % Cell identity

% SS burst configuration
% The burst can be disabled by setting the SSBTransmitted field to all zeros
simParameters.SSBurst = struct();
simParameters.SSBurst.BlockPattern = 'Case B'; % 30 kHz subcarrier spacing
simParameters.SSBurst.SSBTransmitted = [0 1 0 1]; % Bitmap indicating blocks transmitted in the M
simParameters.SSBurst.SSBPeriodicity = 20;     % SS burst set periodicity in ms (5, 10, 20, 40)

% PDSCH/DL-SCH parameters
simParameters.PDSCH = nrPDSCHConfig;           % This PDSCH definition is the basis for all PDSCH transmission
simParameters.PDSCHExtension = struct();      % This structure is to hold additional simulation parameters

% Define PDSCH time-frequency resource allocation per slot to be full grid (single full grid BWP)
simParameters.PDSCH.PRBSet = 0:simParameters.Carrier.NSizeGrid-1; % PDSCH PRB allocation
simParameters.PDSCH.SymbolAllocation = [0,simParameters.Carrier.SymbolsPerSlot]; % Starting symbol
simParameters.PDSCH.MappingType = 'A';        % PDSCH mapping type ('A'(slot-wise),'B'(non slot-wise))

% Scrambling identifiers
simParameters.PDSCH.NID = simParameters.Carrier.NCellID;
simParameters.PDSCH.RNTI = 1;

% PDSCH resource block mapping (TS 38.211 Section 7.3.1.6)
simParameters.PDSCH.VRBToPRBInterleaving = 0; % Disable interleaved resource mapping
simParameters.PDSCH.VRBBundleSize = 4;

% Define the number of transmission layers to be used
simParameters.PDSCH.NumLayers = 2;            % Number of PDSCH transmission layers

% Define codeword modulation and target coding rate
% The number of codewords is directly dependent on the number of layers so ensure that
% layers are set first before getting the codeword number
if simParameters.PDSCH.NumCodewords > 1      % Multicodeword transmission
    simParameters.PDSCH.Modulation = {'16QAM', '16QAM'}; % 'QPSK', '16QAM', '64QAM',
```



```

    simParameters.PDSCHExtension.TargetCodeRate = [490 490]/1024; % Code rate used to calculate
else
    simParameters.PDSCH.Modulation = '16QAM'; % 'QPSK', '16QAM', '64QAM',
    simParameters.PDSCHExtension.TargetCodeRate = 490/1024; % Code rate used to calculate
end

% DM-RS and antenna port configuration (TS 38.211 Section 7.4.1.1)
simParameters.PDSCH.DMRS.DMRSPortSet = 0:simParameters.PDSCH.NumLayers-1; % DM-RS ports to use for
simParameters.PDSCH.DMRS.DMRSTypeAPosition = 2; % Mapping type A only. First DM-RS symbol position
simParameters.PDSCH.DMRS.DMRSLength = 1; % Number of front-loaded DM-RS symbols (1 or 2)
simParameters.PDSCH.DMRS.DMRSAdditionalPosition = 0; % Additional DM-RS symbol positions (max range 0..14)
simParameters.PDSCH.DMRS.DMRSConfigurationType = 2; % DM-RS configuration type (1,2)
simParameters.PDSCH.DMRS.NumCDMGroupsWithoutData = 1; % Number of CDM groups without data
simParameters.PDSCH.DMRS.NIDNSCID = 1; % Scrambling identity (0..65535)
simParameters.PDSCH.DMRS.NSCID = 0; % Scrambling initialization (0,1)

% PT-RS configuration (TS 38.211 Section 7.4.1.2)
simParameters.PDSCH.EnablePTRS = 0; % Enable or disable PT-RS (1 or 0)
simParameters.PDSCH.PTRS.TimeDensity = 1; % PT-RS time density (L_PT-RS) (1, 2, 4)
simParameters.PDSCH.PTRS.FrequencyDensity = 2; % PT-RS frequency density (K_PT-RS) (2 or 4)
simParameters.PDSCH.PTRS.REOffset = '00'; % PT-RS resource element offset ('00', '01')
simParameters.PDSCH.PTRS.PTRSPortSet = []; % PT-RS antenna port, subset of DM-RS port set

% Reserved PRB patterns, if required (for CORESETs, forward compatibility etc)
simParameters.PDSCH.ReservedPRB{1}.SymbolSet = []; % Reserved PDSCH symbols
simParameters.PDSCH.ReservedPRB{1}.PRBSet = []; % Reserved PDSCH PRBs
simParameters.PDSCH.ReservedPRB{1}.Period = []; % Periodicity of reserved resources

% Additional simulation and DL-SCH related parameters
%
% PDSCH PRB bundling (TS 38.214 Section 5.1.2.3)
simParameters.PDSCHExtension.PRGBundleSize = []; % 2, 4, or [] to signify "wideband"
% HARQ process and rate matching/TBS parameters
simParameters.PDSCHExtension.XOverhead = 6*simParameters.PDSCH.EnablePTRS; % Set PDSCH rate matching
simParameters.PDSCHExtension.NHARQProcesses = 16; % Number of parallel HARQ processes to use
simParameters.PDSCHExtension.EnableHARQ = true; % Enable retransmissions for each process,

% LDPC decoder parameters
% Available algorithms: 'Belief propagation', 'Layered belief propagation', 'Normalized min-sum'
simParameters.PDSCHExtension.LDPCDecodingAlgorithm = 'Layered belief propagation';
simParameters.PDSCHExtension.MaximumLDPCIterationCount = 6;

% Define the overall transmission antenna geometry at end-points
% If using a CDL propagation channel then the integer number of antenna elements is
% turned into an antenna panel configured when the channel model object is created
simParameters.NTxAnts = 8; % Number of PDSCH transmission antennas (1,2,4)
if simParameters.PDSCH.NumCodewords > 1 % Multi-codeword transmission
    simParameters.NRxAnts = 8; % Number of UE receive antennas (even number >= 2)
else
    simParameters.NRxAnts = 2; % Number of UE receive antennas (1 or even number)
end

% Define the general CDL/TDL propagation channel parameters
simParameters.DelayProfile = 'CDL-C'; % Use CDL-C model (Urban macrocell model)
simParameters.DelaySpread = 300e-9;
simParameters.MaximumDopplerShift = 5;

```

```
% Cross-check the PDSCH layering against the channel geometry
validateNumLayers(simParameters);
```

The simulation relies on various pieces of information about the baseband waveform, such as sample rate.

```
waveformInfo = nrOFDMInfo(simParameters.Carrier); % Get information about the baseband waveform a
```

Propagation Channel Model Construction

Create the channel model object for the simulation. Both CDL and TDL channel models are supported [5].

```
% Constructed the CDL or TDL channel model object
if contains(simParameters.DelayProfile,'CDL','IgnoreCase',true)

    channel = nrCDLChannel; % CDL channel object

    % Turn the overall number of antennas into a specific antenna panel
    % array geometry. The number of antennas configured is updated when
    % nTxAnts is not one of (1,2,4,8,16,32,64,128,256,512,1024) or nRxAnts
    % is not 1 or even.
    [channel.TransmitAntennaArray.Size, channel.ReceiveAntennaArray.Size] = ...
        hArrayGeometry(simParameters.NTxAnts,simParameters.NRxAnts);
    nTxAnts = prod(channel.TransmitAntennaArray.Size);
    nRxAnts = prod(channel.ReceiveAntennaArray.Size);
    simParameters.NTxAnts = nTxAnts;
    simParameters.NRxAnts = nRxAnts;
else
    channel = nrTDLChannel; % TDL channel object

    % Set the channel geometry
    channel.NumTransmitAntennas = simParameters.NTxAnts;
    channel.NumReceiveAntennas = simParameters.NRxAnts;
end

% Assign simulation channel parameters and waveform sample rate to the object
channel.DelayProfile = simParameters.DelayProfile;
channel.DelaySpread = simParameters.DelaySpread;
channel.MaximumDopplerShift = simParameters.MaximumDopplerShift;
channel.SampleRate = waveformInfo.SampleRate;
```

Get the maximum number of delayed samples by a channel multipath component. This is calculated from the channel path with the largest delay and the implementation delay of the channel filter. This is required later to flush the channel filter to obtain the received signal.

```
chInfo = info(channel);
maxChDelay = ceil(max(chInfo.PathDelays*channel.SampleRate)) + chInfo.ChannelFilterDelay;
```

Reserve PDSCH Resources Corresponding to SS burst

This section shows how to reserve resources for the transmission of the SS burst.

```
% Get information about the SS burst configuration
% Some dependent parameter assignments are required first
simParameters.SSBurst.NCellID = simParameters.Carrier.NCellID;
simParameters.SSBurst.SampleRate = waveformInfo.SampleRate;
ssbInfo = hSSBurstInfo(simParameters.SSBurst);
```

```

% Map the occupied subcarriers and transmitted symbols of the SS burst
% (defined in the SS burst numerology) to PDSCH PRBs and symbols in the
% PDSCH BWP/carrier numerology
[mappedPRB,mappedSymbols] = mapNumerology(ssbInfo.OccupiedSubcarriers,ssbInfo.OccupiedSymbols,ssbInfo.CarrierNumerology,ssbInfo.BWPStart,ssbInfo.BWPEnd);
% Configure the PDSCH to reserve these resources so that the PDSCH
% transmission does not overlap the SS burst
reservation = nrPDSCHReservedConfig;
reservation.SymbolSet = mappedSymbols;
reservation.PRBSet = mappedPRB;
reservation.Period = simParameters.SSBurst.SSBPeriodicity * (simParameters.Carrier.SubcarrierSpacing/simParameters.PDSCH.ReservedPRB{end+1} = reservation;

```

Processing Loop

To determine the throughput at each SNR point, analyze the PDSCH data per transmission instance using the following steps:

- *Update current HARQ process.* Check the CRC of the previous transmission for the given HARQ process. Determine whether a retransmission is required. If retransmission is not required, generate new data.
- *Resource grid generation.* Perform channel coding by calling the nrDLSCH System object. The object operates on the input transport block and keeps an internal copy of the transport block in case a retransmission is required. Modulate the coded bits on the PDSCH by using the nrPDSCH function. Then apply precoding to the resulting signal.
- *Waveform generation.* OFDM modulate the generated grid.
- *Noisy channel modeling.* Pass the waveform through a CDL or TDL fading channel. Add AWGN. The SNR is defined per RE at each UE antenna. For an SNR of 0 dB the signal and noise contribute equally to the energy per PDSCH RE per receive antenna.
- *Perform synchronization and OFDM demodulation.* For perfect synchronization, reconstruct the channel impulse response to synchronize the received waveform. For practical synchronization, correlate the received waveform with the PDSCH DM-RS. Then OFDM demodulate the synchronized signal.
- *Perform channel estimation.* For perfect channel estimation, reconstruct the channel impulse response and perform OFDM demodulation. For practical channel estimation, use the PDSCH DM-RS.
- *Perform equalization and CPE compensation.* MMSE equalize the estimated channel. Estimate the common phase error (CPE) by using the PT-RS symbols, then correct the error in each OFDM symbol within the range of reference PT-RS OFDM symbols.
- *Precoding matrix calculation.* Generate the precoding matrix W for the next transmission by using singular value decomposition (SVD).
- *Decode the PDSCH.* To obtain an estimate of the received codewords, demodulate and descramble the recovered PDSCH symbols for all transmit and receive antenna pairs, along with a noise estimate, by using the nrPDSCHDecode function.
- *Decode DL-SCH and store the block CRC error for a HARQ process.* Pass the vector of decoded soft bits to the nrDLSCHDecoder System object. The object decodes the codeword and returns the block CRC error used to determine the throughput of the system.

```

% Array to store the maximum throughput for all SNR points
maxThroughput = zeros(length(simParameters.SNRIn),1);
% Array to store the simulation throughput for all SNR points
simThroughput = zeros(length(simParameters.SNRIn),1);

```

```

% Set up Redundancy Version (RV) sequence to be used, according to the HARQ configuration
if simParameters.PDSCHExtension.EnableHARQ
    % In the final report of RAN WG1 meeting #91 (R1-1719301), it was
    % observed in R1-1717405 that if performance is the priority, [0 2 3 1]
    % should be used. If self-decodability is the priority, it should be
    % taken into account that the upper limit of the code rate at which
    % each RV is self-decodable is in the following order: 0>3>2>1
    rvSeq = [0 2 3 1];
else
    % HARQ disabled - single transmission with RV=0, no retransmissions
    rvSeq = 0;
end

% Create DL-SCH encoder system object to perform transport channel encoding
encodeDLSCH = nrDLSCH;
encodeDLSCH.MultipleHARQProcesses = true;
encodeDLSCH.TargetCodeRate = simParameters.PDSCHExtension.TargetCodeRate;

% Create DL-SCH decoder system object to perform transport channel decoding
% Use layered belief propagation for LDPC decoding, with half the number of
% iterations as compared to the default for belief propagation decoding
decodeDLSCH = nrDLSCHDecoder;
decodeDLSCH.MultipleHARQProcesses = true;
decodeDLSCH.TargetCodeRate = simParameters.PDSCHExtension.TargetCodeRate;
decodeDLSCH.LDPCDecodingAlgorithm = simParameters.PDSCHExtension.LDPCDecodingAlgorithm;
decodeDLSCH.MaximumLDPCIterationCount = simParameters.PDSCHExtension.MaximumLDPCIterationCount;

for snrIdx = 1:numel(simParameters.SNRIn) % comment out for parallel computing
% parfor snrIdx = 1:numel(simParameters.SNRIn) % uncomment for parallel computing
% To reduce the total simulation time, you can execute this loop in
% parallel by using the Parallel Computing Toolbox. Comment out the 'for'
% statement and uncomment the 'parfor' statement. If the Parallel Computing
% Toolbox is not installed, 'parfor' defaults to normal 'for' statement

    % Set the random number generator settings to default values
    rng('default');

    % Take full copies of the simulation-level parameter structures so that they are not
    % PCT broadcast variables when using parfor
    simLocal = simParameters;
    waveinfoLocal = waveformInfo;

    % Take copies of channel-level parameters to simplify subsequent parameter referencing
    carrier = simLocal.Carrier;
    pdsch = simLocal.PDSCH;
    pdschextra = simLocal.PDSCHExtension;
    ssburst = simLocal.SSBurst;
    decodeDLSCHLocal = decodeDLSCH; % Copy of the decoder handle to help PCT classification of v
    decodeDLSCHLocal.reset(); % Reset decoder at the start of each SNR point
    pathFilters = [];
    ssbWaveform = [];

    % Prepare simulation for new SNR point
    SNRdB = simLocal.SNRIn(snrIdx);
    fprintf('\nSimulating transmission scheme 1 (%dx%d) and SCS=%dkHz with %s channel at %gdB SNR\n',
        simParameters.NTxAnts, simParameters.NRxAnts, carrier.SubcarrierSpacing, ...
        simLocal.DelayProfile, SNRdB, simLocal.NFrames);

```

```

% Initialize variables used in the simulation and analysis
bitTput = []; % Number of successfully received bits per transmission
txedTrBlkSizes = []; % Number of transmitted info bits per transmission

% Specify the order in which we cycle through the HARQ processes
harqSequence = 1:pdschextra.NHARQProcesses;

% Initialize the state of all HARQ processes
harqProcesses = hNewHARQProcesses(pdschextra.NHARQProcesses, rvSeq, pdsch.NumCodewords);
harqProcCntr = 0; % HARQ process counter

% Reset the channel so that each SNR point will experience the same
% channel realization
reset(channel);

% Total number of slots in the simulation period
NSlots = simLocal.NFrames * carrier.SlotsPerFrame;

% Index to the start of the current set of SS burst samples to be
% transmitted
ssbSampleIndex = 1;

% Obtain a precoding matrix (wtx) to be used in the transmission of the
% first transport block
estChannelGrid = getInitialChannelEstimate(carrier, simLocal.NTxAnts, channel);
newWtx = getPrecodingMatrix(carrier, pdsch, estChannelGrid);

% Timing offset, updated in every slot for perfect synchronization and
% when the correlation is strong for practical synchronization
offset = 0;

% Loop over the entire waveform length
for nslot = 0:NSlots-1

    % Update the carrier slot numbers for new slot
    carrier.NSlot = nslot;

    % Generate a new SS burst when necessary
    if (ssbSampleIndex==1)
        nSubframe = carrier.NSlot / carrier.SlotsPerSubframe;
        ssburst.NFrame = floor(nSubframe / 10);
        ssburst.NHalfFrame = mod(nSubframe / 5, 2);
        [ssbWaveform,~, ssbInfo] = hSSBurst(ssburst);
    end

    % Get HARQ process index for the current PDSCH from HARQ index table
    harqProcIdx = harqSequence(mod(harqProcCntr, length(harqSequence))+1);

    % Update current HARQ process information (this updates the RV
    % depending on CRC pass or fail in the previous transmission for
    % this HARQ process)
    harqProcesses(harqProcIdx) = hUpdateHARQProcess(harqProcesses(harqProcIdx), pdsch.NumCodewords);

    % Calculate the transport block sizes for the codewords in the slot
    [pdschIndices, pdschIndicesInfo] = nrPDSCHIndices(carrier, pdsch);
    trBlkSizes = nrTBS(pdsch.Modulation, pdsch.NumLayers, numel(pdsch.PRBSets), pdschIndicesInfo);

```

```

% HARQ processing
% Check CRC from previous transmission per codeword, i.e. is a retransmission required?
for cwIdx = 1:pdsch.NumCodewords
    newdata = false;
    if harqProcesses(harqProcIdx).blkerr(cwIdx) % Error for last recorded decoding
        if (harqProcesses(harqProcIdx).RVIdx(cwIdx)==1) % Signals the start of the RV sequence
            resetSoftBuffer(decodedDLSCHLocal,cwIdx-1,harqProcIdx-1); % Explicit reset retransmission
            newdata = true;
        end
    else % No error
        newdata = true;
    end
    if newdata
        trBlk = randi([0 1],trBlkSizes(cwIdx),1);
        setTransportBlock(encodeDLSCH,trBlk,cwIdx-1,harqProcIdx-1);
    end
end

% Encode the DL-SCH transport blocks
codedTrBlocks = encodeDLSCH(pdsch.Modulation,pdsch.NumLayers,...
    pdschIndicesInfo.G,harqProcesses(harqProcIdx).RV,harqProcIdx-1);

% Get precoding matrix (wtx) calculated in previous slot
wtx = newWtx;

% Resource grid array
pdschGrid = nrResourceGrid(carrier,simLocal.NTxAnts);

% PDSCH modulation and precoding
pdschSymbols = nrPDSCH(carrier,pdsch,codedTrBlocks);
[pdschAntSymbols,pdschAntIndices] = hPRGPrecode(size(pdschGrid),carrier.NStartGrid,pdschSymbols);

% PDSCH mapping in grid associated with PDSCH transmission period
pdschGrid(pdschAntIndices) = pdschAntSymbols;

% PDSCH DM-RS precoding and mapping
dmrsSymbols = nrPDSCHDMRS(carrier,pdsch);
dmrsIndices = nrPDSCHDMRSIndices(carrier,pdsch);
[dmrsAntSymbols,dmrsAntIndices] = hPRGPrecode(size(pdschGrid),carrier.NStartGrid,dmrsSymbols);
pdschGrid(dmrsAntIndices) = dmrsAntSymbols;

% PDSCH PT-RS precoding and mapping
ptrsSymbols = nrPDSCHPTRS(carrier,pdsch);
ptrsIndices = nrPDSCHPTRSIndices(carrier,pdsch);
[ptrsAntSymbols,ptrsAntIndices] = hPRGPrecode(size(pdschGrid),carrier.NStartGrid,ptrsSymbols);
pdschGrid(ptrsAntIndices) = ptrsAntSymbols;

% OFDM modulation of associated resource elements
txWaveform = nrOFDMModulate(carrier, pdschGrid);

% Add the appropriate portion of SS burst waveform to the
% transmitted waveform
Nt = size(txWaveform,1);
txWaveform = txWaveform + ssbWaveform(ssbSampleIndex + (0:Nt-1),:);
ssbSampleIndex = mod(ssbSampleIndex + Nt,size(ssbWaveform,1));

% Pass data through channel model. Append zeros at the end of the
% transmitted waveform to flush channel content. These zeros take

```

```

% into account any delay introduced in the channel. This is a mix
% of multipath delay and implementation delay. This value may
% change depending on the sampling rate, delay profile and delay
% spread
txWaveform = [txWaveform; zeros(maxChDelay, size(txWaveform,2))];
[rxWaveform,pathGains,sampleTimes] = channel(txWaveform);

% Add AWGN to the received time domain waveform
% Normalize noise power by the IFFT size used in OFDM modulation,
% as the OFDM modulator applies this normalization to the
% transmitted waveform. Also normalize by the number of receive
% antennas, as the channel model applies this normalization to the
% received waveform by default
SNR = 10^(SNRdB/20); % Calculate linear noise gain
N0 = 1/(sqrt(2.0*simLocal.NRxAnts*double(waveinfoLocal.Nfft))*SNR);
noise = N0*complex(randn(size(rxWaveform)),randn(size(rxWaveform)));
rxWaveform = rxWaveform + noise;

if (simLocal.PerfectChannelEstimator)
    % Perfect synchronization. Use information provided by the channel
    % to find the strongest multipath component
    pathFilters = getPathFilters(channel); % get path filters for perfect channel estimation
    [offset,mag] = nrPerfectTimingEstimate(pathGains,pathFilters);
else
    % Practical synchronization. Correlate the received waveform
    % with the PDSCH DM-RS to give timing offset estimate 't' and
    % correlation magnitude 'mag'. The function hSkipWeakTimingOffset
    % is used to update the receiver timing offset. If the
    % correlation peak in 'mag' is weak, the current timing
    % estimate 't' is ignored and the previous estimate 'offset'
    % is used
    [t,mag] = nrTimingEstimate(carrier,rxWaveform,dmrsIndices,dmrsSymbols);
    offset = hSkipWeakTimingOffset(offset,t,mag);
    % Display a warning if the estimated timing offset exceeds the
    % maximum channel delay
    if offset > maxChDelay
        warning(['Estimated timing offset (%d) is greater than the maximum channel delay',
            ' This will result in a decoding failure. This may be caused by low SNR,' ..
            ' or not enough DM-RS symbols to synchronize successfully.'],offset,maxChDelay);
    end
end
rxWaveform = rxWaveform(1+offset:end, :);

% Perform OFDM demodulation on the received data to recreate the
% resource grid, including padding in the event that practical
% synchronization results in an incomplete slot being demodulated
rxGrid = nrOFDMDemodulate(carrier, rxWaveform);
[K,L,R] = size(rxGrid);
if (L < carrier.SymbolsPerSlot)
    rxGrid = cat(2,rxGrid,zeros(K,carrier.SymbolsPerSlot-L,R));
end

if (simLocal.PerfectChannelEstimator)
    % Perfect channel estimation, using the value of the path gains
    % provided by the channel. This channel estimate does not
    % include the effect of transmitter precoding
    estChannelGrid = nrPerfectChannelEstimate(carrier,pathGains,pathFilters,offset,sampleTimes);
else
    % Practical channel estimation. Correlate the received waveform
    % with the PDSCH DM-RS to give channel estimate 'estChannelGrid' and
    % correlation magnitude 'mag'. The function hSkipWeakChannelEstimate
    % is used to update the receiver channel estimate. If the
    % correlation peak in 'mag' is weak, the current channel estimate
    % 'estChannelGrid' is ignored and the previous estimate 'estChannelGrid'
    % is used
    [estChannelGrid,mag] = nrChannelEstimate(carrier,rxWaveform,dmrsIndices,dmrsSymbols);
    estChannelGrid = hSkipWeakChannelEstimate(estChannelGrid,mag);
end

```

```

% Get perfect noise estimate (from the noise realization)
noiseGrid = nrOFDMDemodulate(carrier,noise(1+offset:end ,:));
noiseEst = var(noiseGrid(:));

% Get precoding matrix for next slot
newWtx = getPrecodingMatrix(carrier,pdsch,estChannelGrid);

% Get PDSCH resource elements from the received grid and
% channel estimate
[pdschRx,pdschHest,~,pdschHestIndices] = nrExtractResources(pdschIndices,rxGrid,estCh

% Apply precoding to channel estimate
pdschHest = hPRGPrecode(size(estChannelGrid),carrier.NStartGrid,pdschHest,pdschHestI
else
% Practical channel estimation between the received grid and
% each transmission layer, using the PDSCH DM-RS for each
% layer. This channel estimate includes the effect of
% transmitter precoding
[estChannelGrid,noiseEst] = nrChannelEstimate(carrier,rxGrid,dmrsIndices,dmrsSymbols

% Get PDSCH resource elements from the received grid and
% channel estimate
[pdschRx,pdschHest] = nrExtractResources(pdschIndices,rxGrid,estChannelGrid);

% Remove precoding from estChannelGrid prior to precoding
% matrix calculation
estChannelGridPorts = precodeChannelEstimate(carrier,estChannelGrid,conj(wtx));

% Get precoding matrix for next slot
newWtx = getPrecodingMatrix(carrier,pdsch,estChannelGridPorts);
end

% Equalization
[pdschEq,csi] = nrEqualizeMMSE(pdschRx,pdschHest,noiseEst);

% Common phase error (CPE) compensation
if ~isempty(ptrsIndices)
% Initialize temporary grid to store equalized symbols
tempGrid = nrResourceGrid(carrier,pdsch.NumLayers);

% Extract PT-RS symbols from received grid and estimated
% channel grid
[ptrsRx,ptrsHest,~,~,ptrsHestIndices,ptrsLayerIndices] = nrExtractResources(ptrsIndi

if (simLocal.PerfectChannelEstimator)
% Apply precoding to channel estimate
ptrsHest = hPRGPrecode(size(estChannelGrid),carrier.NStartGrid,ptrsHest,ptrsHest:
end

% Equalize PT-RS symbols and map them to tempGrid
ptrsEq = nrEqualizeMMSE(ptrsRx,ptrsHest,noiseEst);
tempGrid(ptrsLayerIndices) = ptrsEq;

% Estimate the residual channel at the PT-RS locations in
% tempGrid
cpe = nrChannelEstimate(tempGrid,ptrsIndices,ptrsSymbols);

% Sum estimates across subcarriers, receive antennas, and

```



```

% layers. Then, get the CPE by taking the angle of the
% resultant sum
cpe = angle(sum(cpe,[1 3 4]));

% Map the equalized PDSCH symbols to tempGrid
tempGrid(pdschIndices) = pdschEq;

% Correct CPE in each OFDM symbol within the range of reference
% PT-RS OFDM symbols
symLoc = pdschIndicesInfo.PTRSSymbolSet(1)+1:pdschIndicesInfo.PTRSSymbolSet(end)+1;
tempGrid(:,symLoc,:) = tempGrid(:,symLoc,:).*exp(-li*cpe(symLoc));

% Extract PDSCH symbols
pdschEq = tempGrid(pdschIndices);
end

% Decode PDSCH physical channel
[dlschLLRs,rxSymbols] = nrPDSCHDecode(carrier,pdsch,pdschEq,noiseEst);

% Display EVM per layer, per slot and per RB
if (simLocal.DisplayDiagnostics)
    plotLayerEVM(NSlots,nslot,pdsch,size(pdschGrid),pdschIndices,pdschSymbols,pdschEq);
end

% Scale LLRs by CSI
csi = nrLayerDemap(csi); % CSI layer demapping
for cwIdx = 1:pdsch.NumCodewords
    Qm = length(dlschLLRs{cwIdx})/length(rxSymbols{cwIdx}); % bits per symbol
    csi{cwIdx} = repmat(csi{cwIdx}',Qm,1); % expand by each bit per symbol
    dlschLLRs{cwIdx} = dlschLLRs{cwIdx} .* csi{cwIdx}(:); % scale by CSI
end

% Decode the DL-SCH transport channel
% Write the decoding CRC error back into the HARQ process state structure
decodedDLSCHLocal.TransportBlockLength = trBlkSizes;
[decbits,harqProcesses(harqProcIdx).blkerr] = decodeDLSCHLocal(dlschLLRs,pdsch.Modulation);

% Store values to calculate throughput (only for active PDSCH instances)
if(any(trBlkSizes ~= 0))
    bitTput = [bitTput trBlkSizes.*(1-harqProcesses(harqProcIdx).blkerr)];
    txdTrBlkSizes = [txdTrBlkSizes trBlkSizes];
end

% Update HARQ process counter
harqProcCntr = harqProcCntr + 1;

% Display transport block CRC error information per codeword managed by current HARQ process
icr = trBlkSizes./pdschIndicesInfo.G; % Instantaneous code rate
csn = mod(nslot,carrier.SlotsPerFrame); % Slot number in frame
fprintf('\n(%3.2f%%) HARQ Proc %d: ',100*(nslot+1)/NSlots,harqProcIdx);
estrings = {'passed','failed'};
rvi = harqProcesses(harqProcIdx).RVIdx;
for cw=1:length(rvi)
    cwrvi = rvi(cw);
    % Create a report on the RV state given position in RV sequence and decoding error
    if cwrvi == 1
        ts = sprintf('Initial transmission (NSlot=%d,RV=%d,CR=%f)',csn,rvSeq(cwrvi),icr);
    else

```

```

        ts = sprintf('Retransmission #%d (NSlot=%d,RV=%d,CR=%f)', cwrvi-1, csn, rvSeq(cwrvi-1), cr);
    end
    fprintf('CW%d:%s %s. ', cw-1, ts, estrings{1+harqProcesses(harqProcIdx).blkerr(cw)});
end

end

% Calculate maximum and simulated throughput
maxThroughput(snrIdx) = sum(txedTrBlkSizes); % Max possible throughput
simThroughput(snrIdx) = sum(bitTput,2);      % Simulated throughput

% Display the results dynamically in the command window
fprintf(['\n\nThroughput(Mbps) for ', num2str(simLocal.NFrames) ' frame(s) '],...
        '= %.4f\n'], 1e-6*simThroughput(snrIdx)/(simLocal.NFrames*10e-3));
fprintf(['Throughput(%%) for ', num2str(simLocal.NFrames) ' frame(s) = %.4f\n'],...
        simThroughput(snrIdx)*100/maxThroughput(snrIdx));

end

```

Simulating transmission scheme 1 (8x2) and SCS=30kHz with CDL-C channel at -5dB SNR for 2 10ms f

```

(2.50%) HARQ Proc 1: CW0:Initial transmission (NSlot=0,RV=0,CR=0.513458) failed.
(5.00%) HARQ Proc 2: CW0:Initial transmission (NSlot=1,RV=0,CR=0.513458) failed.
(7.50%) HARQ Proc 3: CW0:Initial transmission (NSlot=2,RV=0,CR=0.451578) failed.
(10.00%) HARQ Proc 4: CW0:Initial transmission (NSlot=3,RV=0,CR=0.451578) failed.
(12.50%) HARQ Proc 5: CW0:Initial transmission (NSlot=4,RV=0,CR=0.451578) failed.
(15.00%) HARQ Proc 6: CW0:Initial transmission (NSlot=5,RV=0,CR=0.451578) failed.
(17.50%) HARQ Proc 7: CW0:Initial transmission (NSlot=6,RV=0,CR=0.451578) failed.
(20.00%) HARQ Proc 8: CW0:Initial transmission (NSlot=7,RV=0,CR=0.451578) failed.
(22.50%) HARQ Proc 9: CW0:Initial transmission (NSlot=8,RV=0,CR=0.451578) failed.
(25.00%) HARQ Proc 10: CW0:Initial transmission (NSlot=9,RV=0,CR=0.451578) failed.
(27.50%) HARQ Proc 11: CW0:Initial transmission (NSlot=10,RV=0,CR=0.451578) failed.
(30.00%) HARQ Proc 12: CW0:Initial transmission (NSlot=11,RV=0,CR=0.451578) failed.
(32.50%) HARQ Proc 13: CW0:Initial transmission (NSlot=12,RV=0,CR=0.451578) failed.
(35.00%) HARQ Proc 14: CW0:Initial transmission (NSlot=13,RV=0,CR=0.451578) failed.
(37.50%) HARQ Proc 15: CW0:Initial transmission (NSlot=14,RV=0,CR=0.451578) failed.
(40.00%) HARQ Proc 16: CW0:Initial transmission (NSlot=15,RV=0,CR=0.451578) failed.
(42.50%) HARQ Proc 1: CW0:Retransmission #1 (NSlot=16,RV=2,CR=0.451578) passed.
(45.00%) HARQ Proc 2: CW0:Retransmission #1 (NSlot=17,RV=2,CR=0.451578) passed.
(47.50%) HARQ Proc 3: CW0:Retransmission #1 (NSlot=18,RV=2,CR=0.451578) passed.
(50.00%) HARQ Proc 4: CW0:Retransmission #1 (NSlot=19,RV=2,CR=0.451578) passed.
(52.50%) HARQ Proc 5: CW0:Retransmission #1 (NSlot=0,RV=2,CR=0.451578) passed.
(55.00%) HARQ Proc 6: CW0:Retransmission #1 (NSlot=1,RV=2,CR=0.451578) passed.
(57.50%) HARQ Proc 7: CW0:Retransmission #1 (NSlot=2,RV=2,CR=0.451578) passed.
(60.00%) HARQ Proc 8: CW0:Retransmission #1 (NSlot=3,RV=2,CR=0.451578) passed.
(62.50%) HARQ Proc 9: CW0:Retransmission #1 (NSlot=4,RV=2,CR=0.451578) passed.
(65.00%) HARQ Proc 10: CW0:Retransmission #1 (NSlot=5,RV=2,CR=0.451578) passed.
(67.50%) HARQ Proc 11: CW0:Retransmission #1 (NSlot=6,RV=2,CR=0.451578) passed.
(70.00%) HARQ Proc 12: CW0:Retransmission #1 (NSlot=7,RV=2,CR=0.451578) passed.
(72.50%) HARQ Proc 13: CW0:Retransmission #1 (NSlot=8,RV=2,CR=0.451578) passed.
(75.00%) HARQ Proc 14: CW0:Retransmission #1 (NSlot=9,RV=2,CR=0.451578) passed.
(77.50%) HARQ Proc 15: CW0:Retransmission #1 (NSlot=10,RV=2,CR=0.451578) passed.
(80.00%) HARQ Proc 16: CW0:Retransmission #1 (NSlot=11,RV=2,CR=0.451578) passed.
(82.50%) HARQ Proc 1: CW0:Initial transmission (NSlot=12,RV=0,CR=0.451578) failed.
(85.00%) HARQ Proc 2: CW0:Initial transmission (NSlot=13,RV=0,CR=0.451578) failed.
(87.50%) HARQ Proc 3: CW0:Initial transmission (NSlot=14,RV=0,CR=0.451578) failed.
(90.00%) HARQ Proc 4: CW0:Initial transmission (NSlot=15,RV=0,CR=0.451578) failed.

```

(92.50%) HARQ Proc 5: CW0:Initial transmission (NSlot=16,RV=0,CR=0.451578) failed.
 (95.00%) HARQ Proc 6: CW0:Initial transmission (NSlot=17,RV=0,CR=0.451578) failed.
 (97.50%) HARQ Proc 7: CW0:Initial transmission (NSlot=18,RV=0,CR=0.451578) failed.
 (100.00%) HARQ Proc 8: CW0:Initial transmission (NSlot=19,RV=0,CR=0.451578) failed.

Throughput(Mbps) for 2 frame(s) = 24.1728
 Throughput(%) for 2 frame(s) = 40.0000

Simulating transmission scheme 1 (8x2) and SCS=30kHz with CDL-C channel at 0dB SNR for 2 10ms fra

(2.50%) HARQ Proc 1: CW0:Initial transmission (NSlot=0,RV=0,CR=0.513458) passed.
 (5.00%) HARQ Proc 2: CW0:Initial transmission (NSlot=1,RV=0,CR=0.513458) passed.
 (7.50%) HARQ Proc 3: CW0:Initial transmission (NSlot=2,RV=0,CR=0.451578) passed.
 (10.00%) HARQ Proc 4: CW0:Initial transmission (NSlot=3,RV=0,CR=0.451578) passed.
 (12.50%) HARQ Proc 5: CW0:Initial transmission (NSlot=4,RV=0,CR=0.451578) passed.
 (15.00%) HARQ Proc 6: CW0:Initial transmission (NSlot=5,RV=0,CR=0.451578) passed.
 (17.50%) HARQ Proc 7: CW0:Initial transmission (NSlot=6,RV=0,CR=0.451578) passed.
 (20.00%) HARQ Proc 8: CW0:Initial transmission (NSlot=7,RV=0,CR=0.451578) passed.
 (22.50%) HARQ Proc 9: CW0:Initial transmission (NSlot=8,RV=0,CR=0.451578) passed.
 (25.00%) HARQ Proc 10: CW0:Initial transmission (NSlot=9,RV=0,CR=0.451578) passed.
 (27.50%) HARQ Proc 11: CW0:Initial transmission (NSlot=10,RV=0,CR=0.451578) passed.
 (30.00%) HARQ Proc 12: CW0:Initial transmission (NSlot=11,RV=0,CR=0.451578) passed.
 (32.50%) HARQ Proc 13: CW0:Initial transmission (NSlot=12,RV=0,CR=0.451578) passed.
 (35.00%) HARQ Proc 14: CW0:Initial transmission (NSlot=13,RV=0,CR=0.451578) passed.
 (37.50%) HARQ Proc 15: CW0:Initial transmission (NSlot=14,RV=0,CR=0.451578) passed.
 (40.00%) HARQ Proc 16: CW0:Initial transmission (NSlot=15,RV=0,CR=0.451578) passed.
 (42.50%) HARQ Proc 1: CW0:Initial transmission (NSlot=16,RV=0,CR=0.451578) passed.
 (45.00%) HARQ Proc 2: CW0:Initial transmission (NSlot=17,RV=0,CR=0.451578) passed.
 (47.50%) HARQ Proc 3: CW0:Initial transmission (NSlot=18,RV=0,CR=0.451578) passed.
 (50.00%) HARQ Proc 4: CW0:Initial transmission (NSlot=19,RV=0,CR=0.451578) passed.
 (52.50%) HARQ Proc 5: CW0:Initial transmission (NSlot=0,RV=0,CR=0.451578) passed.
 (55.00%) HARQ Proc 6: CW0:Initial transmission (NSlot=1,RV=0,CR=0.451578) passed.
 (57.50%) HARQ Proc 7: CW0:Initial transmission (NSlot=2,RV=0,CR=0.451578) passed.
 (60.00%) HARQ Proc 8: CW0:Initial transmission (NSlot=3,RV=0,CR=0.451578) passed.
 (62.50%) HARQ Proc 9: CW0:Initial transmission (NSlot=4,RV=0,CR=0.451578) passed.
 (65.00%) HARQ Proc 10: CW0:Initial transmission (NSlot=5,RV=0,CR=0.451578) passed.
 (67.50%) HARQ Proc 11: CW0:Initial transmission (NSlot=6,RV=0,CR=0.451578) passed.
 (70.00%) HARQ Proc 12: CW0:Initial transmission (NSlot=7,RV=0,CR=0.451578) passed.
 (72.50%) HARQ Proc 13: CW0:Initial transmission (NSlot=8,RV=0,CR=0.451578) passed.
 (75.00%) HARQ Proc 14: CW0:Initial transmission (NSlot=9,RV=0,CR=0.451578) passed.
 (77.50%) HARQ Proc 15: CW0:Initial transmission (NSlot=10,RV=0,CR=0.451578) passed.
 (80.00%) HARQ Proc 16: CW0:Initial transmission (NSlot=11,RV=0,CR=0.451578) passed.
 (82.50%) HARQ Proc 1: CW0:Initial transmission (NSlot=12,RV=0,CR=0.451578) passed.
 (85.00%) HARQ Proc 2: CW0:Initial transmission (NSlot=13,RV=0,CR=0.451578) passed.
 (87.50%) HARQ Proc 3: CW0:Initial transmission (NSlot=14,RV=0,CR=0.451578) passed.
 (90.00%) HARQ Proc 4: CW0:Initial transmission (NSlot=15,RV=0,CR=0.451578) passed.
 (92.50%) HARQ Proc 5: CW0:Initial transmission (NSlot=16,RV=0,CR=0.451578) passed.
 (95.00%) HARQ Proc 6: CW0:Initial transmission (NSlot=17,RV=0,CR=0.451578) passed.
 (97.50%) HARQ Proc 7: CW0:Initial transmission (NSlot=18,RV=0,CR=0.451578) passed.
 (100.00%) HARQ Proc 8: CW0:Initial transmission (NSlot=19,RV=0,CR=0.451578) passed.

Throughput(Mbps) for 2 frame(s) = 60.4320
 Throughput(%) for 2 frame(s) = 100.0000

Simulating transmission scheme 1 (8x2) and SCS=30kHz with CDL-C channel at 5dB SNR for 2 10ms fra

(2.50%) HARQ Proc 1: CW0:Initial transmission (NSlot=0,RV=0,CR=0.513458) passed.
 (5.00%) HARQ Proc 2: CW0:Initial transmission (NSlot=1,RV=0,CR=0.513458) passed.

```

(7.50%) HARQ Proc 3: CW0:Initial transmission (NSlot=2,RV=0,CR=0.451578) passed.
(10.00%) HARQ Proc 4: CW0:Initial transmission (NSlot=3,RV=0,CR=0.451578) passed.
(12.50%) HARQ Proc 5: CW0:Initial transmission (NSlot=4,RV=0,CR=0.451578) passed.
(15.00%) HARQ Proc 6: CW0:Initial transmission (NSlot=5,RV=0,CR=0.451578) passed.
(17.50%) HARQ Proc 7: CW0:Initial transmission (NSlot=6,RV=0,CR=0.451578) passed.
(20.00%) HARQ Proc 8: CW0:Initial transmission (NSlot=7,RV=0,CR=0.451578) passed.
(22.50%) HARQ Proc 9: CW0:Initial transmission (NSlot=8,RV=0,CR=0.451578) passed.
(25.00%) HARQ Proc 10: CW0:Initial transmission (NSlot=9,RV=0,CR=0.451578) passed.
(27.50%) HARQ Proc 11: CW0:Initial transmission (NSlot=10,RV=0,CR=0.451578) passed.
(30.00%) HARQ Proc 12: CW0:Initial transmission (NSlot=11,RV=0,CR=0.451578) passed.
(32.50%) HARQ Proc 13: CW0:Initial transmission (NSlot=12,RV=0,CR=0.451578) passed.
(35.00%) HARQ Proc 14: CW0:Initial transmission (NSlot=13,RV=0,CR=0.451578) passed.
(37.50%) HARQ Proc 15: CW0:Initial transmission (NSlot=14,RV=0,CR=0.451578) passed.
(40.00%) HARQ Proc 16: CW0:Initial transmission (NSlot=15,RV=0,CR=0.451578) passed.
(42.50%) HARQ Proc 1: CW0:Initial transmission (NSlot=16,RV=0,CR=0.451578) passed.
(45.00%) HARQ Proc 2: CW0:Initial transmission (NSlot=17,RV=0,CR=0.451578) passed.
(47.50%) HARQ Proc 3: CW0:Initial transmission (NSlot=18,RV=0,CR=0.451578) passed.
(50.00%) HARQ Proc 4: CW0:Initial transmission (NSlot=19,RV=0,CR=0.451578) passed.
(52.50%) HARQ Proc 5: CW0:Initial transmission (NSlot=0,RV=0,CR=0.451578) passed.
(55.00%) HARQ Proc 6: CW0:Initial transmission (NSlot=1,RV=0,CR=0.451578) passed.
(57.50%) HARQ Proc 7: CW0:Initial transmission (NSlot=2,RV=0,CR=0.451578) passed.
(60.00%) HARQ Proc 8: CW0:Initial transmission (NSlot=3,RV=0,CR=0.451578) passed.
(62.50%) HARQ Proc 9: CW0:Initial transmission (NSlot=4,RV=0,CR=0.451578) passed.
(65.00%) HARQ Proc 10: CW0:Initial transmission (NSlot=5,RV=0,CR=0.451578) passed.
(67.50%) HARQ Proc 11: CW0:Initial transmission (NSlot=6,RV=0,CR=0.451578) passed.
(70.00%) HARQ Proc 12: CW0:Initial transmission (NSlot=7,RV=0,CR=0.451578) passed.
(72.50%) HARQ Proc 13: CW0:Initial transmission (NSlot=8,RV=0,CR=0.451578) passed.
(75.00%) HARQ Proc 14: CW0:Initial transmission (NSlot=9,RV=0,CR=0.451578) passed.
(77.50%) HARQ Proc 15: CW0:Initial transmission (NSlot=10,RV=0,CR=0.451578) passed.
(80.00%) HARQ Proc 16: CW0:Initial transmission (NSlot=11,RV=0,CR=0.451578) passed.
(82.50%) HARQ Proc 1: CW0:Initial transmission (NSlot=12,RV=0,CR=0.451578) passed.
(85.00%) HARQ Proc 2: CW0:Initial transmission (NSlot=13,RV=0,CR=0.451578) passed.
(87.50%) HARQ Proc 3: CW0:Initial transmission (NSlot=14,RV=0,CR=0.451578) passed.
(90.00%) HARQ Proc 4: CW0:Initial transmission (NSlot=15,RV=0,CR=0.451578) passed.
(92.50%) HARQ Proc 5: CW0:Initial transmission (NSlot=16,RV=0,CR=0.451578) passed.
(95.00%) HARQ Proc 6: CW0:Initial transmission (NSlot=17,RV=0,CR=0.451578) passed.
(97.50%) HARQ Proc 7: CW0:Initial transmission (NSlot=18,RV=0,CR=0.451578) passed.
(100.00%) HARQ Proc 8: CW0:Initial transmission (NSlot=19,RV=0,CR=0.451578) passed.

```

```
Throughput(Mbps) for 2 frame(s) = 60.4320
```

```
Throughput(%) for 2 frame(s) = 100.0000
```

Results

Display the measured throughput. This is calculated as the percentage of the maximum possible throughput of the link given the available resources for data transmission.

figure;

```
plot(simParameters.SNRIn,simThroughput*100./maxThroughput,'o-.')
```

```
xlabel('SNR (dB)'); ylabel('Throughput (%)'); grid on;
```

```
title(sprintf('%s (%dx%d) / NRB=%d / SCS=%dkHz',...
```

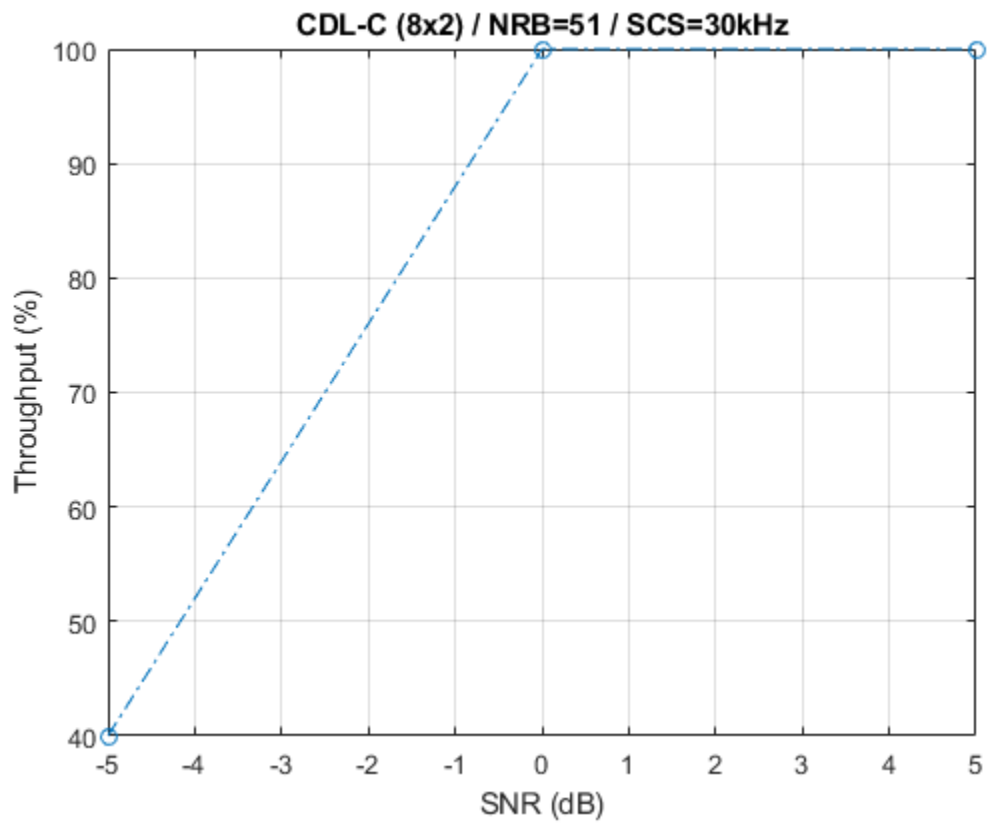
```
simParameters.DelayProfile,simParameters.NTxAnts,simParameters.NRxAnts,...
```

```
simParameters.Carrier.NSizeGrid,simParameters.Carrier.SubcarrierSpacing));
```

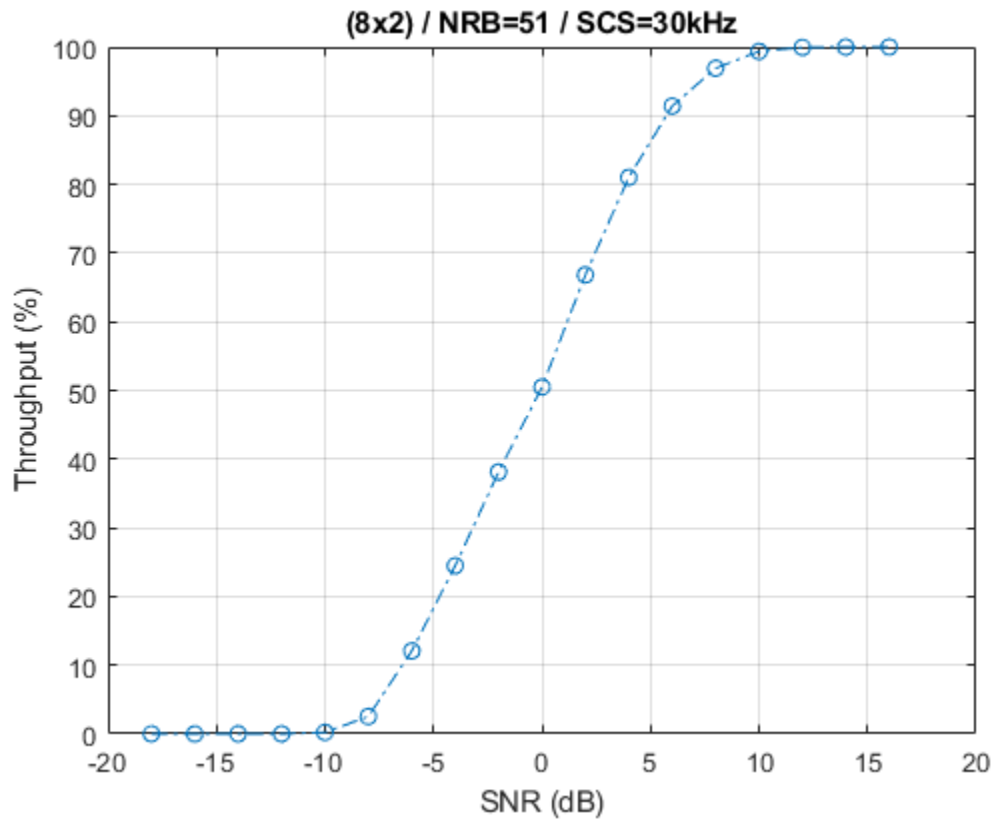
```
% Bundle key parameters and results into a combined structure for recording
```

```
simResults.simParameters = simParameters;
```

```
simResults.simThroughput = simThroughput;
```



The figure below shows throughput results obtained simulating 10000 subframes (NFrames = 1000, SNRIn = -18:2:16).



Appendix

This example uses the following helper functions:

- hArrayGeometry.m
- hNewHARQProcesses.m
- hPRGPrecode.m
- hSkipWeakTimingOffset.m
- hSSBurst.m
- hUpdateHARQProcess.m

Selected Bibliography

- 1 3GPP TS 38.211. "NR; Physical channels and modulation." 3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Radio Access Network.
- 2 3GPP TS 38.212. "NR; Multiplexing and channel coding." 3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Radio Access Network.
- 3 3GPP TS 38.213. "NR; Physical layer procedures for control." 3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Radio Access Network.
- 4 3GPP TS 38.214. "NR; Physical layer procedures for data." 3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Radio Access Network.
- 5 3GPP TR 38.901. "Study on channel model for frequencies from 0.5 to 100 GHz." 3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Radio Access Network.

Local Functions

```

function validateNumLayers(simParameters)
% Validate the number of layers, relative to the antenna geometry

    nlayers = simParameters.PDSCH.NumLayers;
    ntxants = simParameters.NTxAnts;
    nrxants = simParameters.NRxAnts;
    antennaDescription = sprintf('min(NTxAnts,NRxAnts) = min(%d,%d) = %d',ntxants,nrxants,min(nlayers,ntxants));
    if nlayers > min(ntxants,nrxants)
        error('The number of layers (%d) must satisfy NLayers <= %s',...
            nlayers,antennaDescription);
    end

% Display a warning if the maximum possible rank of the channel equals
% the number of layers
if (nlayers > 2) && (nlayers == min(ntxants,nrxants))
    warning(['The maximum possible rank of the channel, given by %s, is equal to NLayers (%d).',...
        ' This may result in a decoding failure under some channel conditions.' ...
        ' Try decreasing the number of layers or increasing the channel rank' ...
        ' (use more transmit or receive antennas).'],antennaDescription,nlayers); %#ok<SPWRN:
end

end

function estChannelGrid = getInitialChannelEstimate(carrier,nTxAnts,propchannel)
% Obtain channel estimate before first transmission. This can be used to
% obtain a precoding matrix for the first slot.

    ofdmInfo = nrOFDMInfo(carrier);

    chInfo = info(propchannel);
    maxChDelay = ceil(max(chInfo.PathDelays*propchannel.SampleRate)) + chInfo.ChannelFilterDelay;

% Temporary waveform (only needed for the sizes)
tmpWaveform = zeros((ofdmInfo.SampleRate/1000/carrier.SlotsPerSubframe)+maxChDelay,nTxAnts);

% Filter through channel
[~,pathGains,sampleTimes] = propchannel(tmpWaveform);

% Perfect timing synch
pathFilters = getPathFilters(propchannel);
offset = nrPerfectTimingEstimate(pathGains,pathFilters);

% Perfect channel estimate
estChannelGrid = nrPerfectChannelEstimate(carrier,pathGains,pathFilters,offset,sampleTimes);

end

function wtx = getPrecodingMatrix(carrier,pdsch,hestGrid)
% Calculate precoding matrices for all PRGs in the carrier that overlap
% with the PDSCH allocation

% Maximum CRB addressed by carrier grid
maxCRB = carrier.NStartGrid + carrier.NSizeGrid - 1;

% PRG size
if (isfield(pdsch,'PRGBundleSize') && ~isempty(pdsch.PRGBundleSize))

```

```

        Pd_BWP = pdsch.PRGBundleSize;
    else
        Pd_BWP = maxCRB + 1;
    end

    % PRG numbers (1-based) for each RB in the carrier grid
    NPRG = ceil((maxCRB + 1) / Pd_BWP);
    prgset = repmat((1:NPRG),Pd_BWP,1);
    prgset = prgset(carrier.NStartGrid + (1:carrier.NSizeGrid).');

    [~,~,R,P] = size(hestGrid);
    wtx = zeros([pdsch.NumLayers P NPRG]);
    for i = 1:NPRG

        % Subcarrier indices within current PRG and within the PDSCH
        % allocation
        thisPRG = find(prgset==i) - 1;
        thisPRG = intersect(thisPRG,pdsch.PRBSet(:) + carrier.NStartGrid,'rows');
        prgSc = (1:12)' + 12*thisPRG';
        prgSc = prgSc(:);

        if (~isempty(prgSc))

            % Average channel estimate in PRG
            estAllocGrid = hestGrid(prgSc, :, :, :);
            Hest = permute(mean(reshape(estAllocGrid, [], R, P)), [2 3 1]);

            % SVD decomposition
            [~,~,V] = svd(Hest);
            wtx(:, :, i) = V(:, 1:pdsch.NumLayers).';

        end
    end

    wtx = wtx / sqrt(pdsch.NumLayers); % Normalize by NumLayers
end

function estChannelGrid = precodeChannelEstimate(carrier,estChannelGrid,W)
% Apply precoding matrix W to the last dimension of the channel estimate

    [K,L,R,P] = size(estChannelGrid);
    estChannelGrid = reshape(estChannelGrid,[K*L R P]);
    estChannelGrid = hPRGPrecode([K L R P],carrier.NStartGrid,estChannelGrid,reshape(1:numel(estChannelGrid),[K*L R P]));
    estChannelGrid = reshape(estChannelGrid,K,L,R,[]);
end

function [mappedPRB,mappedSymbols] = mapNumerology(subcarriers,symbols,nrbs,nrft,fs,ft)
% Map the SSBurst numerology to PDSCH numerology. The outputs are:
% - mappedPRB: 0-based PRB indices for carrier resource grid (arranged in a column)
% - mappedSymbols: 0-based OFDM symbol indices in a slot for carrier resource grid (arranged in a column)
% The input parameters are:
% - subcarriers: 1-based row subscripts for SSB resource grid (arranged in a column)
% - symbols: 1-based column subscripts for SSB resource grid (arranged in an N-by-4 matrix, 4 is the number of subcarriers per subframe)
% - SSB resource grid is sized using ssbInfo.NRB, normal CP, spanning 5 subframes
% - nrbs: source (SSB) NRB

```



```

% - nrbt: target (carrier) NRB
% - fs: source (SSB) SCS
% - ft: target (carrier) SCS

mappedPRB = unique(fix((subcarriers-(nrbs*6) - 1)*fs/(ft*12) + nrbt/2),'stable');

symbols = symbols.';
symbols = symbols(:).' - 1;

if (ft < fs)
    % If ft/fs < 1, reduction
    mappedSymbols = unique(fix(symbols*ft/fs),'stable');
else
    % Else, repetition by ft/fs
    mappedSymbols = reshape((0:(ft/fs-1))' + symbols(:)'*ft/fs,1,[]);
end

end

function plotLayerEVM(NSlots,nslot,pdsch,siz,pdschIndices,pdschSymbols,pdschEq)
% Plot EVM information

persistent slotEVM;
persistent rbEVM
persistent evmPerSlot;

if (nslot==0)
    slotEVM = comm.EVM;
    rbEVM = comm.EVM;
    evmPerSlot = NaN(NSlots,pdsch.NumLayers);
    figure;
end
evmPerSlot(nslot+1,:) = slotEVM(pdschSymbols,pdschEq);
subplot(2,1,1);
plot(0:(NSlots-1),evmPerSlot);
xlabel('Slot number');
ylabel('EVM (%)');
legend("layer " + (1:pdsch.NumLayers),'Location','EastOutside');
title('EVM per layer per slot');

subplot(2,1,2);
[k,~,p] = ind2sub(siz,pdschIndices);
rbsubs = floor((k-1) / 12);
NRB = siz(1) / 12;
evmPerRB = NaN(NRB,pdsch.NumLayers);
for nu = 1:pdsch.NumLayers
    for rb = unique(rbsubs).'
        this = (rbsubs==rb & p==nu);
        evmPerRB(rb+1,nu) = rbEVM(pdschSymbols(this),pdschEq(this));
    end
end
plot(0:(NRB-1),evmPerRB);
xlabel('Resource block');
ylabel('EVM (%)');
legend("layer " + (1:pdsch.NumLayers),'Location','EastOutside');
title(['EVM per layer per resource block, slot #' num2str(nslot)]);

drawnow;

```

end

See Also

Objects

nrCDLChannel | nrTDLChannel

Functions

nrDLSCHInfo | nrPDSCH | nrPDSCHDecode | parfor

Downlink Control Processing and Procedures

This example describes the blind search decoding of the physical downlink control channel (PDCCH) for 5G New Radio communications system. Building on the tutorial “Modeling Downlink Control Information”, this example introduces the concepts of control resource set (CORESET) and search spaces, their generic specification and shows how a PDCCH instance is mapped to one of several candidates within a search space. To recover the transmitted control information at the receiver, the example performs a blind search over the set of candidates.

System Parameters

Set system parameters corresponding to the carrier, CORESET, search space set, and PDCCH instance respectively.

```

rng(111); % Set RNG state for repeatability

% Carrier configuration
carrier = nrCarrierConfig;
carrier.NCellID = 2; % Cell identity
carrier.SubcarrierSpacing = 30; % Carrier/BWP Subcarrier spacing
carrier.CyclicPrefix = 'normal'; % Cyclic prefix
carrier.NSlot = 0; % Slot counter
carrier.NFrame = 0; % Frame counter
carrier.NStartGrid = 10; % Carrier offset
carrier.NSizeGrid = 48; % Size of carrier in RB

% CORESET configuration
coreset = nrCORESETConfig;
coreset.CORESETID = 1; % CORESET ID (0...11)
coreset.FrequencyResources = ones(1,4); % 6 RB sized
coreset.Duration = 1; % CORESET symbol duration (1,2,3)
coreset.CCEREGMapping = 'interleaved'; % CORESET Mapping
coreset.REGBundleSize = 2; % L (2,6) or (3,6)
coreset.InterleaverSize = 2; % R (2,3,6)
coreset.ShiftIndex = carrier.NCellID; % default to NCellID

% Search space configuration
ss = nrSearchSpaceConfig;
ss.CORESETID = 1; % Associated CORESET ID (0...11)
ss.SearchSpaceType = 'ue'; % 'ue', 'common'
ss.StartSymbolWithinSlot = 0; % Starting symbol in slot
ss.SlotPeriodAndOffset = [1 0]; % Search space period and offset
ss.Duration = 1; % Search space duration in slots
ss.NumCandidates = [4 2 1 0 0]; % For (1,2,4,8,16) levels respectively

% PDCCH configuration
pdcch = nrPDCCHConfig;
pdcch.NStartBWP = 10; % BWP offset wrt CRB 0
pdcch.NSizeBWP = 48; % Size of BWP in resource blocks
pdcch.CORESET = coreset; % Associated CORESET
pdcch.SearchSpace = ss; % Associated SearchSpace
pdcch.RNTI = 1; % C-RNTI
pdcch.DMRSScramblingID = []; % Use carrier.NCellID instead
pdcch.AggregationLevel = 4; % Number of CCEs in PDCCH (1,2,4,8,16)
pdcch.AllocatedCandidate = 1; % 1-based scalar

```

This example assumes single slot processing, using a single bandwidth part with a single PDCCH transmission for an associated CORESET and search space set.

For more information on waveform generation with multiple physical channels, see the “5G NR Downlink Vector Waveform Generation” on page 1-2 example.

PDCCH Bit Capacity

The bit capacity for a PDCCH instance is determined based on the number of control-channel elements (CCE) configured for the PDCCH. A CCE consists of six resource-element groups (REGs) where a REG equals one resource block (RB) during one OFDM symbol.

```
% Number of bits for PDCCH resources and actual indices
[ind,dmrs,dmrsInd] = nrPDCCHResources(carrier,pcch);
E = 2*numel(ind);
```

DCI Encoding

The `nrDCIEncode` function encodes the DCI message bits based on a downlink format. DCI encoding includes the stages of CRC attachment, polar encoding and rate matching the codeword to the PDCCH bit capacity `E`.

```
K = 64; % Number of DCI message bits
dciBits = randi([0 1],K,1,'int8');

dciCW = nrDCIEncode(dciBits,pcch.RNTI,E);
```

PDCCH Symbol Generation and Mapping

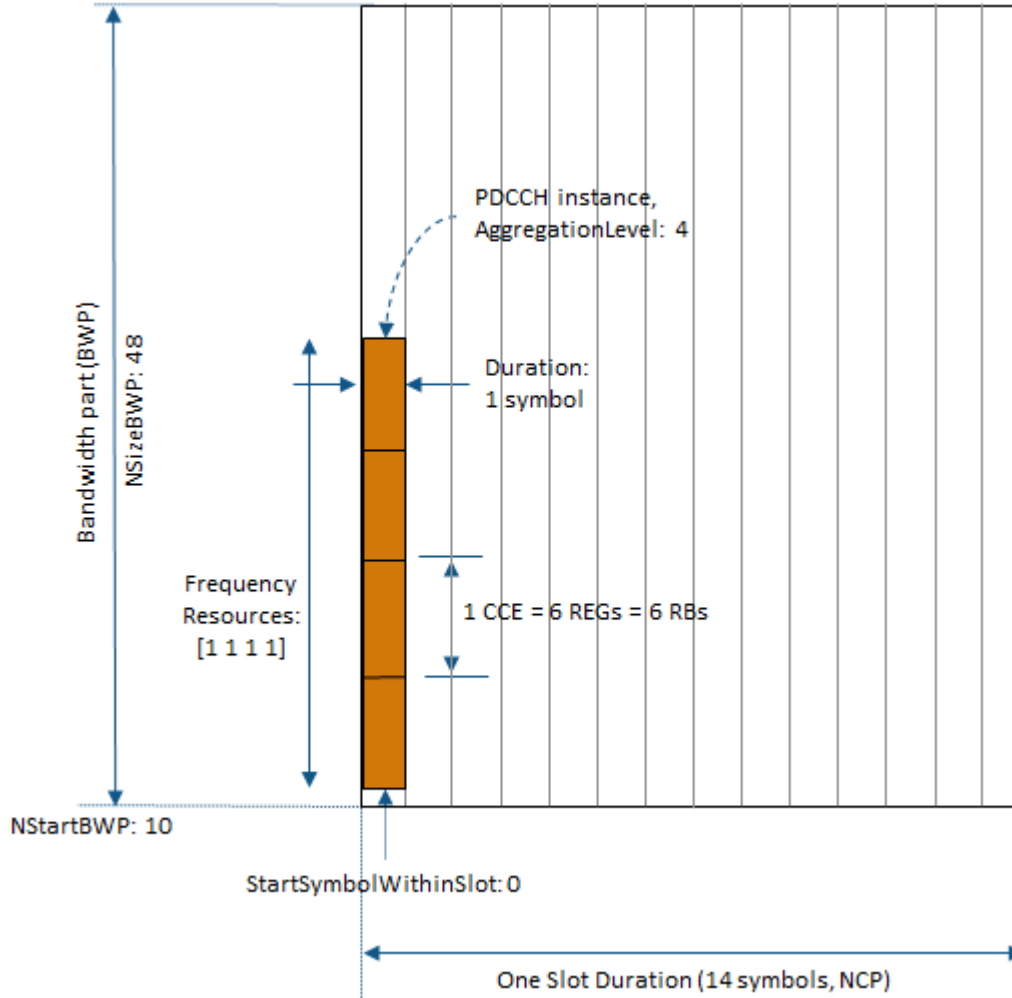
The `nrPDCCH` function maps the encoded DCI bits onto the physical downlink control channel (PDCCH). The function returns the scrambled, QPSK-modulated symbols. The scrambling accounts for the user-specific parameters.

```
if isempty(pcch.DMRSScramblingID)
    nID = carrier.NCellID;
else
    nID = pcch.DMRSScramblingID;
end
sym = nrPDCCH(dciCW,nID,pcch.RNTI);
```

The PDCCH symbols are then mapped to the resource elements corresponding to the allocated candidate within an OFDM grid. The resource grid also contains PDSCH and PBCH symbols, and other reference signal elements. For simplicity, this example only additionally maps the PDCCH DM-RS symbols to the grid.

```
carrierGrid = nrResourceGrid(carrier);
carrierGrid(ind) = sym; % PDCCH symbols
carrierGrid(dmrsInd) = dmrs; % PDCCH DM-RS
```

For a resource grid spanning the whole bandwidth part and a single slot, this figure shows some of the CORESET, search space set and PDCCH instance parameters for the selected example configuration.



OFDM Modulation

OFDM modulate the carrier grid. Specify no windowing for the slot-based processing.

```
[wave,winfo] = nrOFDMModulate(carrier,carrierGrid,'Windowing',0);
```

Fading Channel

Transmit the generated waveform over a TDL fading channel with delay profile A and a delay spread of 30 ns.

```
channel = nrTDLChannel;
channel.DelayProfile = 'TDL-A';
channel.DelaySpread = 30e-9;
channel.NumTransmitAntennas = 1;
channel.NumReceiveAntennas = 1;
channel.SampleRate = winfo.SampleRate;
```

```
chInfo = info(channel);
maxChDelay = ceil(max(chInfo.PathDelays*channel.SampleRate)) + ...
    chInfo.ChannelFilterDelay;
```

```
txWave = [wave; zeros(maxChDelay, size(wave,2))];
rxWave = channel(txWave);
```

Noise Addition

Add white Gaussian noise with the specified level to the received signal, taking into account the coding rate, QPSK modulation, and sampling rate.

```
EbNo = 6; % in dB
bps = 2; % bits per symbol, 2 for QPSK
EsNo = EbNo + 10*log10(bps);
snrdB = EsNo + 10*log10(K/E);
noiseVar = 10.^(-snrdB/10); % assumes unit signal power
N0 = sqrt(noiseVar)/sqrt(2*winfo.Nfft);
noise = N0 * complex(randn(size(rxWave)),randn(size(rxWave)));
rxWaveN = rxWave + noise;
```

Blind PDCCH and DCI Decoding

The UE does not have information about the detailed control channel structure. Therefore, the UE decodes the received PDCCH symbols blindly by monitoring a set of PDCCH candidates for each slot using the UE's RNTI to identify the right candidate (or instance).

Monitoring a candidate implies attempting to decode a set of resource elements corresponding to the candidate by checking if the returned checksum is zero for the known RNTI (UE). Use the `nrPDCCHSpace` function to determine all candidates specified by the search space set in terms of the PDCCH resource element indices, corresponding DM-RS symbols and indices.

For each candidate, the front-end recovery includes

- timing offset estimation based on the DM-RS symbols using the function `nrTimingEstimate`,
- OFDM demodulation using the function `nrOFDMDemodulate`,
- channel estimation based on the DM-RS symbols using the function `nrChannelEstimate`, and
- MMSE equalization using the function `nrEqualizeMMSE`

to yield the equalized candidate PDCCH symbols.

The equalized symbols per candidate are demodulated with known user-specific parameters and channel noise variance using the `nrPDCCHDecode` function.

For an instance of the received PDCCH codeword, the `nrDCIDeCode` function includes the stages of rate recovery, polar decoding, and CRC decoding. If the output mask value is zero, the PDCCH is decoded successfully and the UE can process the DCI message.

In this example, the receiver assumes knowledge of the DCI format and the DCI payload size K . In practice, even these would be searched for in an outer loop over all supported formats with respective bit lengths per format.

```
listLen = 8; % polar decoding list length
% Get all possible candidates
[allInd,allDMRS,allDMRSInd] = nrPDCCHSpace(carrier,pcch);
% Loop over all supported aggregation levels
decoded = false;
```

```

for aIdx = 1:5

% Loop over all candidates at each aggregation level
for cIdx = 1:pdccch.SearchSpace.NumCandidates(aIdx)

% Get candidate
cSymIdx = allInd{aIdx}(:,cIdx);
cDMRS = allDMRS{aIdx}(:,cIdx);
cDMRSInd = allDMRSInd{aIdx}(:,cIdx);

% Timing estimate
offset = nrTimingEstimate(carrier,rxWaveN,cDMRSInd,cDMRS);
if offset > maxChDelay
    offset = 0;
end
rxWaveS = rxWaveN(1+offset:end,:);

% OFDM demodulate the carrier
rxCarrGrid = nrOFDMDemodulate(carrier,rxWaveS);

% Channel estimate
[hest,nVar] = nrChannelEstimate(carrier,rxCarrGrid,cDMRSInd,cDMRS);
[rxSym,pcchHest] = nrExtractResources(cSymIdx,rxCarrGrid,hest);

% Equalization
[pcchEq,csi] = nrEqualizeMMSE(rxSym,pcchHest,nVar);

% Demodulate
rxCW = nrPDCCHDecode(pcchEq,nID,pcch.RNTI,nVar);

% Apply CSI
csiRep = repmat(csi.',2,1);
scalRxCW = rxCW.*csiRep(:);

% Decode
[decDCIBits,errFlag] = nrDCIDecode(scalRxCW,K,listLen,pcch.RNTI);

if isequal(errFlag,0)
    disp(['Decoded candidate #' num2str(cIdx) ...
         ' at aggregation level ' num2str(2^(aIdx-1)) ...
         ' in slot'])
    decoded = true;
    if isequal(decDCIBits,dciBits)
        disp(' Recovered DCI bits with no errors');
    else
        disp(' Recovered DCI bits with errors');
    end
    break;
end
end
% Dont loop over other aggregation levels if RNTI matched
if decoded
    break;
end
end

Decoded candidate #1 at aggregation level 4 in slot
Recovered DCI bits with no errors

```

For the chosen system parameters, the decoded information matches the transmitted information bits.

The example searched over all candidates within a single search space set as specified by the `ss` configuration parameter. Search over multiple search space sets would require another external loop over all the sets defined.

Selected References

- 1 3GPP TS 38.211. "NR; Physical channels and modulation (Release 15)." 3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Radio Access Network.
- 2 3GPP TS 38.212. "NR; Multiplexing and channel coding (Release 15)." 3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Radio Access Network.
- 3 3GPP TS 38.213. "NR; Physical layer procedures for control (Release 15)." 3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Radio Access Network.

See Also

Functions

`nrDCIDecode` | `nrDCIEncode` | `nrPDCCH` | `nrPDCCHDecode` | `nrPDCCHResources` | `nrPDCCHSpace`

NR Channel Estimation Using CSI-RS

This example shows how to generate channel state information reference signal (CSI-RS) symbols and indices for a given carrier and CSI-RS resource configuration, as defined in TS 38.211 Section 7.4.1.5. The example shows how to map the generated symbols to the carrier resource grid, performs channel estimation at the receiver side, and compares the estimated channel against the actual channel.

Introduction

CSI-RS is a downlink-specific (DL) reference signal. The NR standard defines zero-power (ZP) and non-zero-power (NZP) CSI-RSs.

The user equipment (UE) processes utilize NZP-CSI-RSs:

- L1-Reference signal received power (RSRP) measurements for mobility and beam management
- DL CSI acquisition
- Interference measurement
- Time and frequency tracking

ZP-CSI-RS is used for DL CSI acquisition and interference measurement. It also masks certain resource elements (REs) to make them unavailable for PDSCH transmission. As the name ZP indicates, nothing is transmitted in those REs.

This example shows how to use CSI-RS to perform channel estimation which forms the basis of CSI acquisition.

Initialize Configuration Objects

Create a carrier configuration object representing a 5 MHz carrier with subcarrier spacing of 15 kHz.

```
carrier = nrCarrierConfig;
carrier.NSizeGrid = 25;
carrier.SubcarrierSpacing = 15;
carrier.NSlot = 1;
carrier.NFrame = 0

carrier =
  nrCarrierConfig with properties:

        NCellID: 1
  SubcarrierSpacing: 15
        CyclicPrefix: 'normal'
        NSizeGrid: 25
        NStartGrid: 0
        NSlot: 1
        NFrame: 0

  Read-only properties:
        SymbolsPerSlot: 14
        SlotsPerSubframe: 1
        SlotsPerFrame: 10
```

Create a CSI-RS configuration object representing two CSI-RS resources, NZP with row number 3 and ZP with row number 5.

```
csirs = nrCSIRSConfig;
csirs.CSIRSType = {'nzp', 'zp'};
csirs.CSIRSPeriod = {[5 1], [5 1]};
csirs.Density = {'one', 'one'};
csirs.RowNumber = [3 5];
csirs.SymbolLocations = {1,6};
csirs.SubcarrierLocations = {6,4};
csirs.NumRB = 25

csirs =
  nrCSIRSConfig with properties:
        CSIRSType: {'nzp'  'zp'}
  CSIRSPeriod: {[5 1]  [5 1]}
      RowNumber: [3 5]
        Density: {'one'  'one'}
 SymbolLocations: {[1]  [6]}
SubcarrierLocations: {[6]  [4]}
          NumRB: 25
        RBOffset: 0
           NID: 0

  Read-only properties:
    NumCSIRSPorts: [2 4]
      CDMType: {'FD-CDM2'  'FD-CDM2'}
```

Consider the power scaling of CSI-RS in dB.

```
powerCSIRS = 0;
disp(['CSI-RS power scaling: ' num2str(powerCSIRS) ' dB']);
```

```
CSI-RS power scaling: 0 dB
```

Generate CSI-RS Symbols and Indices

Generate CSI-RS symbols for the specified carrier and CSI-RS configuration parameters. Apply power scaling.

```
sym = nrCSIRS(carrier, csirs);
csirsSym = sym*db2mag(powerCSIRS);
```

The variable `csirsSym` is a column vector containing CSI-RS symbols.

Generate CSI-RS indices for the specified carrier and CSI-RS configuration parameters.

```
csirsInd = nrCSIRSIndices(carrier, csirs);
```

The variable `csirsInd` is also a column vector of same size as that of `csirsSym`.

When you configure both ZP and NZP resources, the generation of ZP signals takes priority over the generation of NZP signals.

Initialize Carrier Grid

Initialize the carrier resource grid for one slot.

```
ports = max(csirs.NumCSIRSPorts); % Number of antenna ports
txGrid = nrResourceGrid(carrier, ports);
```

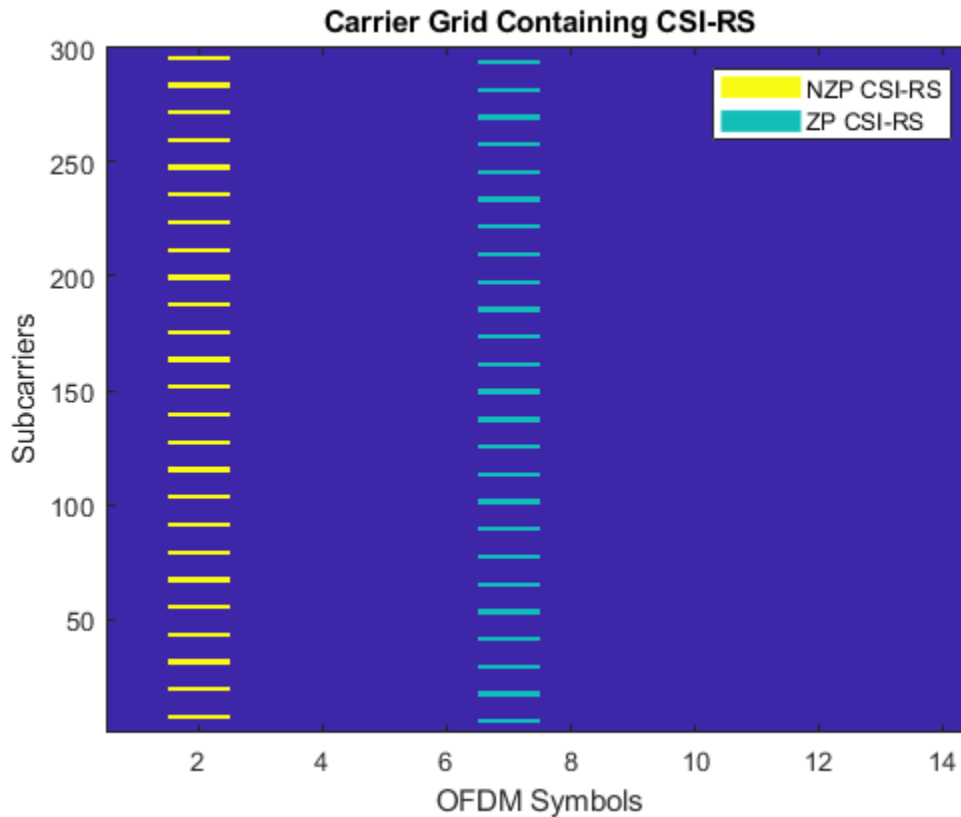
Map CSI-RS Symbols Onto Carrier Grid

Perform resource element mapping.

```
txGrid(csirsInd) = csirsSym;
```

Plot the locations of the CSI-RS (both ZP and NZP) in the grid.

```
plotGrid(size(txGrid),csirsInd,csirsSym);
```



Perform OFDM Modulation

Perform OFDM modulation to generate the time-domain waveform.

```
[txWaveform,ofdmInfo] = nrOFDMModulate(carrier,txGrid);
```

Pass Time-Domain Waveform Through Channel and Add AWGN Noise

Configure the number of receiving antennas.

```
R = 4;
```

Configure the channel.

```
channel = nrTDLChannel;  
channel.NumTransmitAntennas = ports;  
channel.NumReceiveAntennas = R;  
channel.DelayProfile = 'TDL-C';
```

```

channel.MaximumDopplerShift = 10;
channel.DelaySpread = 1e-8

channel =
  nrTDLChannel with properties:

        DelayProfile: 'TDL-C'
        DelaySpread: 1.0000e-08
  MaximumDopplerShift: 10
        SampleRate: 30720000
        MIMOCorrelation: 'Low'
        Polarization: 'Co-Polar'
  TransmissionDirection: 'Downlink'
  NumTransmitAntennas: 4
  NumReceiveAntennas: 4
  NormalizePathGains: true
        InitialTime: 0
        NumSinusoids: 48
        RandomStream: 'mt19937ar with seed'
                Seed: 73
  NormalizeChannelOutputs: true
  TransmitAndReceiveSwapped: false

```

Based on the configured channel, append zeros to the transmitted waveform to account for the channel delay.

```

chInfo = info(channel);
maxChDelay = ceil(max(chInfo.PathDelays*channel.SampleRate)) + chInfo.ChannelFilterDelay;
txWaveform = [txWaveform; zeros(maxChDelay,size(txWaveform,2))];

```

Pass waveform through channel.

```
[rxWaveform,pathGains] = channel(txWaveform);
```

To produce the actual propagation channel `H_actual`, perform perfect channel estimation.

```

pathFilters = getPathFilters(channel);
H_actual = nrPerfectChannelEstimate(carrier,pathGains,pathFilters);

```

Add AWGN noise to the waveform.

```

SNRdB = 50;           % in dB
SNR = 10^(SNRdB/20); % Linear value
N0 = 1/(sqrt(2.0*R*double(ofdmInfo.Nfft))*SNR); % Noise variance
rng(0);
noise = N0*complex(randn(size(rxWaveform)),randn(size(rxWaveform)));
rxWaveform = rxWaveform + noise

```

```
rxWaveform = 7690x4 complex
```

```

 0.0000 - 0.0001i  -0.0001 + 0.0000i  -0.0001 - 0.0000i  -0.0001 + 0.0000i
 0.0001 - 0.0001i  -0.0000 + 0.0000i   0.0001 - 0.0000i  -0.0000 - 0.0000i
-0.0001 + 0.0000i   0.0001 + 0.0000i  -0.0001 - 0.0000i  -0.0001 + 0.0000i
 0.0000 - 0.0000i   0.0000 - 0.0000i  -0.0001 + 0.0001i  -0.0000 - 0.0000i
 0.0000 + 0.0001i   0.0001 - 0.0000i   0.0000 - 0.0000i   0.0001 - 0.0000i
-0.0001 + 0.0000i  -0.0000 + 0.0000i  -0.0000 + 0.0000i   0.0001 + 0.0000i
-0.0000 - 0.0001i  -0.0000 - 0.0001i  -0.0001 - 0.0000i  -0.0000 - 0.0000i
 0.0000 + 0.0001i  -0.0001 - 0.0000i  -0.0000 + 0.0000i  -0.0000 - 0.0000i

```

```

0.0002 - 0.0001i    0.0001 + 0.0001i    0.0001 + 0.0000i    0.0001 + 0.0000i
0.0001 + 0.0000i    0.0000 + 0.0000i    0.0000 - 0.0001i    0.0000 - 0.0001i
:

```

Perform timing synchronization using NZP-CSI-RS. To estimate timing offset, use `nrTimingEstimate` and consider the NZP-CSI-RS as a reference.

```

% Disable ZP-CSI-RS resource, not going to be used for timing and channel
% estimation
csirs.CSIRSPeriod = {[5 1], 'off'};
% Generate reference symbols and apply power scaling
refSym = db2mag(powerCSIRS)*nrCSIRS(carrier,csirs);
% Generate reference indices
refInd = nrCSIRSIndices(carrier,csirs);
offset = nrTimingEstimate(carrier,rxWaveform,refInd,refSym)

offset = 7

rxWaveform = rxWaveform(1+offset:end,:);

```

OFDM demodulate the received time-domain waveform.

```
rxGrid = nrOFDMDemodulate(carrier,rxWaveform); % Of size K-by-L-by-R
```

Compare Estimated Channel Against Actual Channel

Perform practical channel estimation using NZP-CSI-RS. Make sure the CSI-RS symbols `csirsSym` are of the same CDM type.

```

cdmLen = [2 1]; % Corresponds to CDMType = 'FD-CDM2'
[H_est,nVar] = nrChannelEstimate(carrier,rxGrid,refInd,refSym,'CDMLengths',cdmLen);
estSNR = -10*log10(nVar);
disp(['estimated SNR = ' num2str(estSNR) ' dB'])

estimated SNR = 27.4577 dB

```

Plot the estimated channel and actual channel between first transmitting antenna and first receiving antenna.

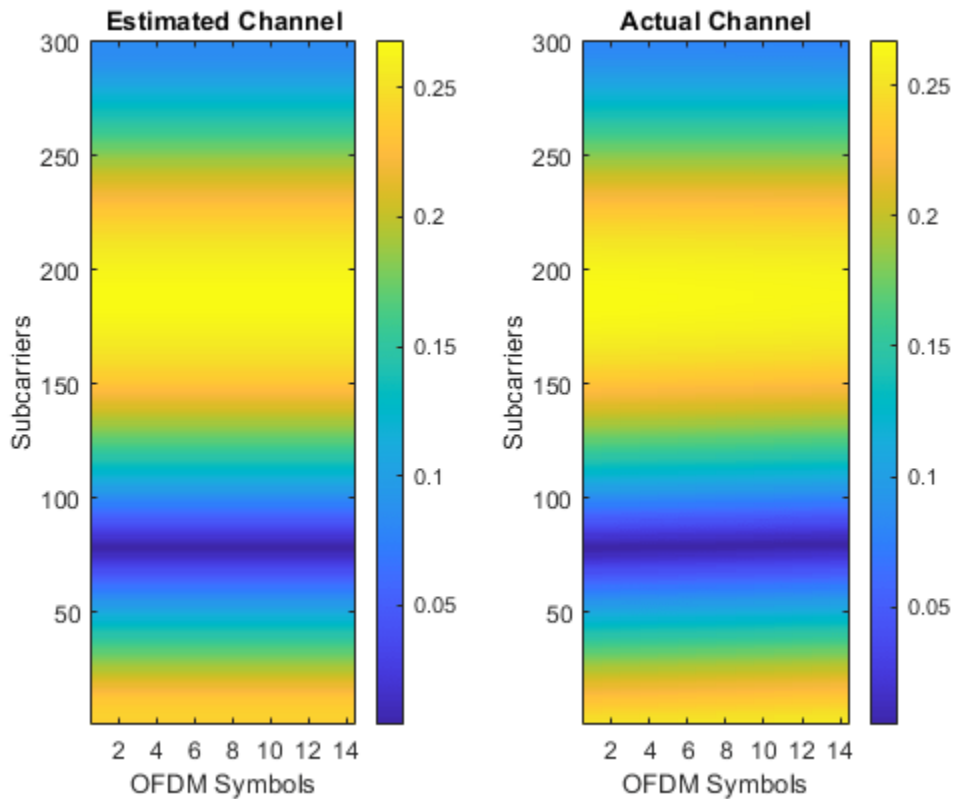
```

figure;

% Plot the estimated channel
subplot(1,2,1)
imagesc(abs(H_est(:,:,1,1)));
colorbar;
title('Estimated Channel')
axis xy;
xlabel('OFDM Symbols');
ylabel('Subcarriers');

% Plot the actual channel
subplot(1,2,2)
imagesc(abs(H_actual(:,:,1,1)));
colorbar;
title('Actual Channel')
axis xy;
xlabel('OFDM Symbols');
ylabel('Subcarriers');

```



Calculate the channel estimation error.

```
H_err = (H_est - H_actual(:,:,1:size(H_est,4)));
[minErr,maxErr] = bounds(abs(H_err),'all');
disp(['Absolute value of the channel estimation error is in the range of [' num2str(minErr) ', ' ' num2str(maxErr) ']]');
```

Absolute value of the channel estimation error is in the range of [4.9184e-06, 0.035047]

Local Functions

```
function plotGrid(gridSize,csirsInd,csirsSym)
% plotGrid(GRIDSIZE,CSIRSIND,CSIRSSYM) plots the carrier grid of size GRIDSIZE
% by populating the grid with CSI-RS symbols using CSIRSIND and CSIRSSYM.

figure()
cmap = colormap(gcf);
chpval = {20,2};
chpscale = 0.25*length(cmap); % Scaling factor

tempSym = csirsSym;
tempSym(tempSym ~= 0) = chpval{1}; % Replacing non-zero-power symbols
tempSym(tempSym == 0) = chpval{2}; % Replacing zero-power symbols
tempGrid = complex(zeros(gridSize));
tempGrid(csirsInd) = tempSym;

image(chpscale*tempGrid(:,:,1)); % Multiplied with scaling factor for better visualization
axis xy;
names = {'N ZP CSI-RS','Z P CSI-RS'};
```

```
clevels = chpscale*[chpval{:}];
N = length(clevels);
L = line(ones(N),ones(N),'LineWidth',8); % Generate lines
% Index the color map and associate the selected colors with the lines
set(L,{'color'},mat2cell(cmap( min(1+clevels,length(cmap) ),:),ones(1,N),3)); % Set the color
% Create legend
legend(names{:});

title('Carrier Grid Containing CSI-RS')
xlabel('OFDM Symbols');
ylabel('Subcarriers');
end
```

References

- [1] 3GPP TS 38.211. "NR; Physical channels and modulation." *3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Radio Access Network.*

See Also

Functions

nrCSIRS | nrCSIRSIndices

Objects

nrCSIRSConfig | nrCarrierConfig

5G NR CSI-RS Measurements

This example shows the measurement procedure of CSI-RSRP, CSI-RSSI, and CSI-RSRQ for the test environment, as described in TS 38.133 Annex A.4.6.3.3, by using the channel state information reference signal from 5G Toolbox™.

Introduction

In NR 5G, the three types of CSI-RS based reference signal measurements, as defined in TS 38.215 Sections 5.1.2 and 5.1.4, includes:

- **CSI-RSRP (CSI reference signal received power):** CSI-RSRP is defined as the linear average over the power contributions of the resource elements of the antenna ports, which carry CSI-RS configured for RSRP measurements. This measurement is performed across N number of resource blocks (measurement bandwidth). For this measurement, CSI-RS transmitted on antenna port(s) 3000 or 3000 and 3001 is used.
- **CSI-RSSI (CSI received signal strength indicator):** CSI-RSSI is defined as the linear average of the total received power observed only in the OFDM symbols, in which CSI-RS is present. This measurement is also performed across N number of resource blocks (measurement bandwidth). CSI-RSSI includes the power from sources, such as co-channel serving and non-serving cells, adjacent channel interference, and thermal noise. For this measurement, CSI-RS transmitted on antenna port 3000 is used.
- **CSI-RSRQ (CSI reference signal received quality):** CSI-RSRQ is defined as, $N * \frac{\text{CSI_RSRP}}{\text{CSI_RSSI}}$.

The purposes of these measurements include:

- Cell selection and reselection
- Mobility and handover management
- Beam management (beam adjustment and beam recovery)

This example configures only the CSI-RS from the test environment.

Initialize Configuration Objects

Carrier configuration

Create carrier configuration object occupying 10 MHz bandwidth with 15 kHz subcarrier spacing as per configuration 1 in TS 38.133 Table A.4.6.3.3.1-1.

```
carrier = nrCarrierConfig;
carrier.NSlot = 1;
carrier.NSizeGrid = 52;
```

CSI-RS configuration

As per the test environment TS 38.133 Table A.4.6.3.3.2-1, user equipment (UE) is configured with one CSI-RS resource set (CSI-RS 1.2 FDD), consisting of 2 CSI-RS resources.

```
csirs = nrCSIRSConfig;
% CSI-RS resource
csirs.CSIRSType      = {'nzp', 'nzp'};
csirs.CSIRSPeriod    = {[10 1], [10 1]};
csirs.RowNumber      = [1      1]; % Single port (3000) CSI-RS resources
```



```

csirs.Density           = {'three', 'three'};
csirs.SymbolLocations  = {6,      10};
csirs.SubcarrierLocations = {0,      0};
csirs.NumRB            = [52,      52]; % Measurement bandwidth in terms of resource blocks

```

Generate CSI-RS Symbols and Indices

Generate CSI-RS symbols and indices for the specified carrier and CSI-RS configuration parameters with the output resource format as 'cell'. This output resource format provides a way to identify the outputs uniquely for each CSI-RS resource in a resource set. You can also apply different power levels to each CSI-RS resource.

```

ind = nrCSIRSIndices(carrier,csirs,'OutputResourceFormat','cell');
sym = nrCSIRS(carrier,csirs,'OutputResourceFormat','cell');

```

Signal and Noise Power Setup

Set up the signal and noise powers as described in TS 38.133 Table A.4.6.3.3.2-2. As per note 2 in TS 38.133 Table A.4.6.3.3.2-2, interference from other cells and noise from other sources is modeled as additive white Gaussian noise (AWGN) of appropriate power N_{oc} .

```

SINRdB0 = 0; % For CSI-RS #0
SINRdB1 = 3; % For CSI-RS #1
NocdBm = -94.65;
NocdB = NocdBm - 30;
Noc = 10^(NocdB/10);

```

Calculate the power scaling of CSI-RS resources by using SINR values.

```

% Power scaling of CSI-RS resource #0
SINR0 = 10^(SINRdB0/10); % linear Es/Noc
Es0 = SINR0*Noc;

% Power scaling of CSI-RS resource #1
SINR1 = 10^(SINRdB1/10); % linear Es/Noc
Es1 = SINR1*Noc;

```

Initialize the Carrier Resource Grid and Map CSI-RS Symbols to the Grid

Initialize the carrier resource grid for one slot.

```

ports = max(csirs.NumCSIRSPorts); % Number of antenna ports
txGrid = nrResourceGrid(carrier,ports);

```

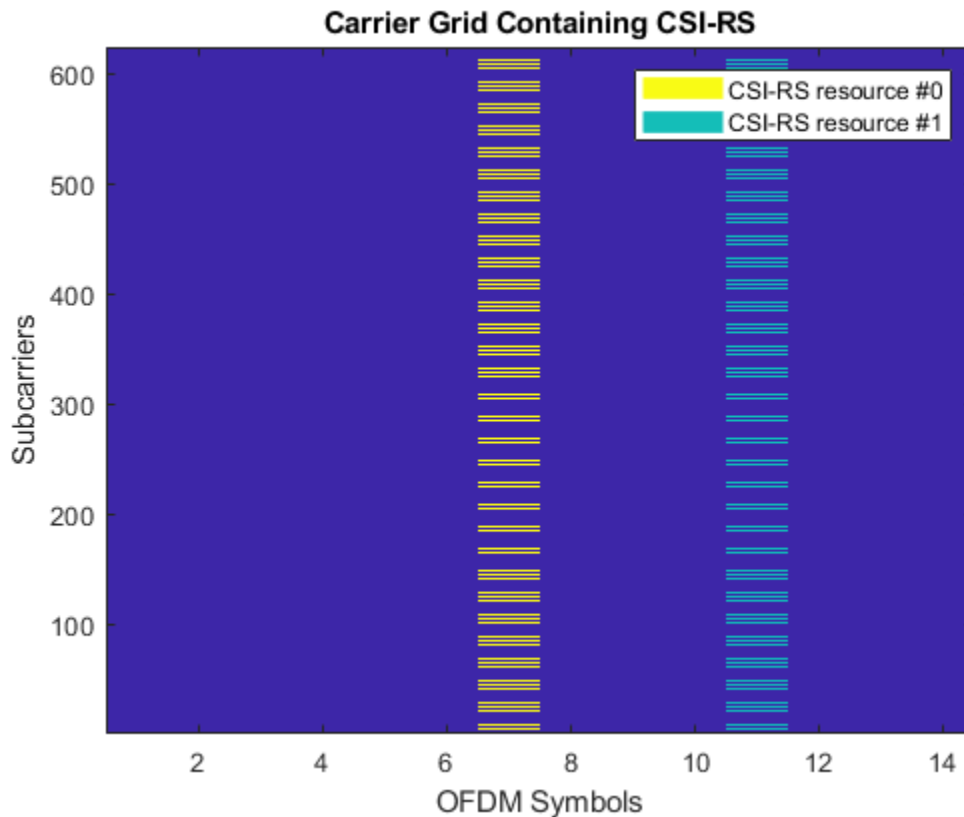
Apply the power scaling values to the CSI-RS resources and map them onto the grid.

```

txGrid(ind{1}) = sqrt(Es0)*sym{1};
txGrid(ind{2}) = sqrt(Es1)*sym{2};

% Plot the carrier grid for two CSI-RS resources
plotGrid(size(txGrid),ind)

```



Perform OFDM modulation

Perform OFDM modulation to generate the time-domain waveform.

```
[txWaveform,ofdmInfo] = nrOFDMModulate(carrier,txGrid);
```

Add AWGN to the Transmitted Waveform and Perform OFDM Demodulation

Consider the propagation condition as AWGN, as specified in TS 38.133 Table A.4.6.3.3.2-1.

```
% Generate the noise
rng('default'); % Set RNG state for repeatability
N0 = sqrt(Noc/(2*double(ofdmInfo.Nfft)));
noise = N0*complex(randn(size(txWaveform)),randn(size(txWaveform)));
```

```
% Add AWGN to the transmitted waveform
rxWaveform = txWaveform + noise;
```

Perform OFDM demodulation on the received time-domain waveform to get the received resource element array.

```
rxGrid = nrOFDMDemodulate(carrier,rxWaveform);
```

Perform CSI-RSRP, CSI-RSSI, and CSI-RSRQ Measurements

Finally, perform the CSI-RSRP, CSI-RSSI, and CSI-RSRQ measurements on the CSI-RS resources present in the received grid, by using the helper file *hCSIRSMeasurements*.

```
meas = hCSIRSMeasurements(carrier,csirs,rxGrid)
```

```
meas = struct with fields:
```

```
RSRPPerAntennaPerResource: [3.8372e-13 7.3692e-13]
```

```
RSSIPerAntennaPerResource: [2.7403e-10 3.1752e-10]
```

```
RSRQPerAntennaPerResource: [0.0728 0.1207]
```

```
RSRP: [3.8372e-13 7.3692e-13]
```

```
RSSI: [2.7403e-10 3.1752e-10]
```

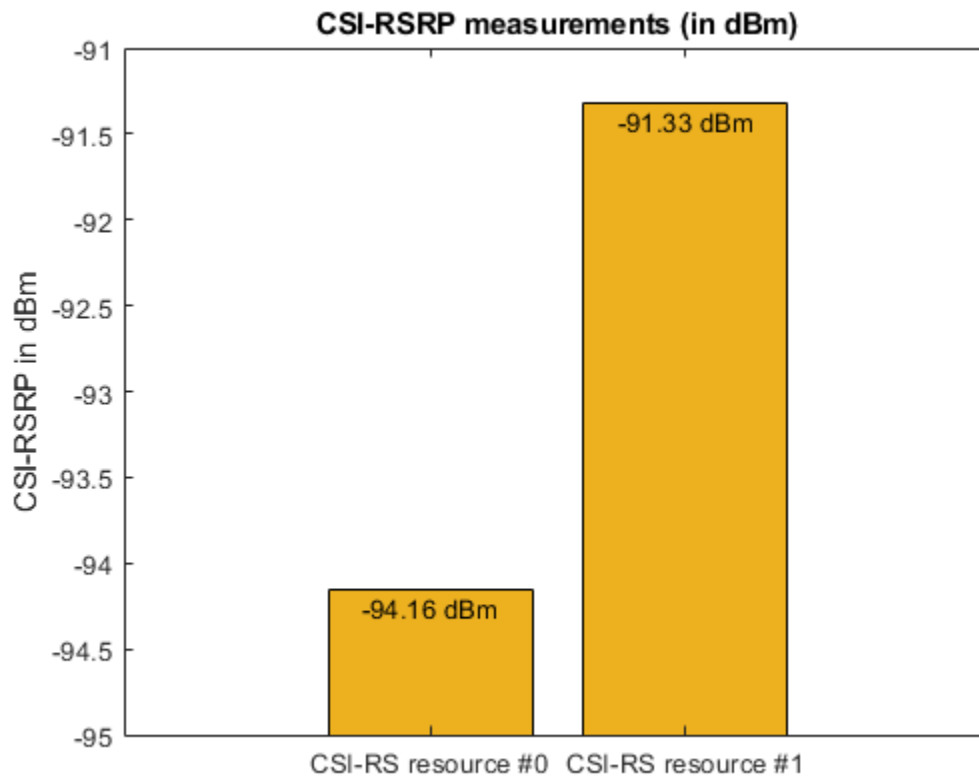
```
RSRQ: [0.0728 0.1207]
```

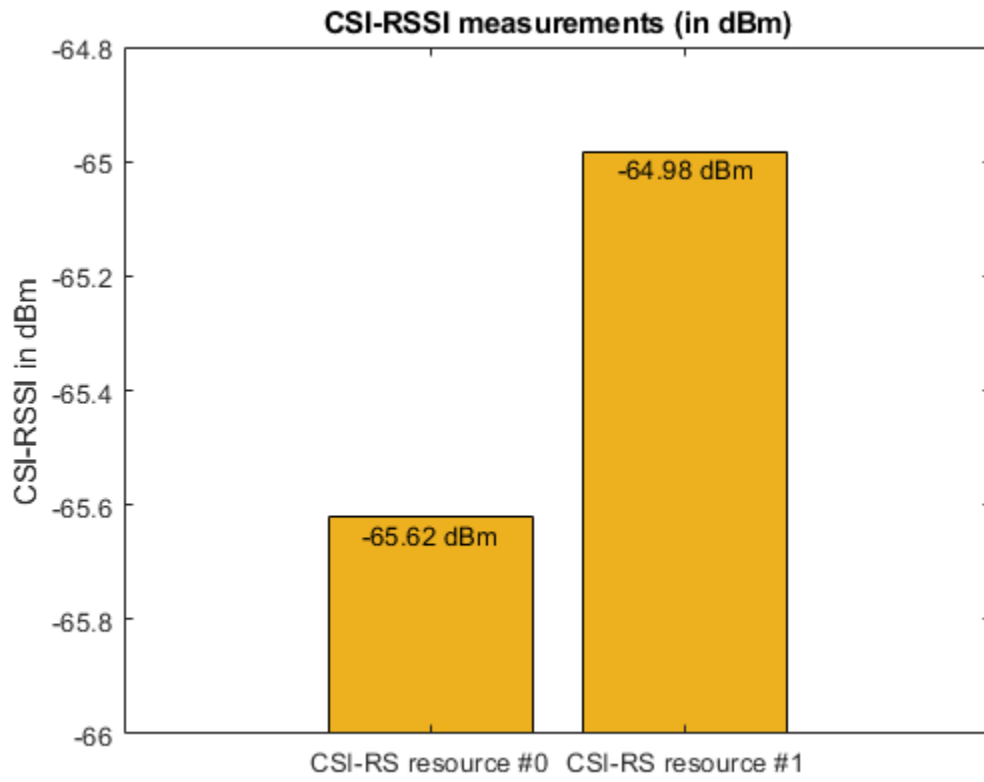
```
RSRPaBm: [-94.1599 -91.3258]
```

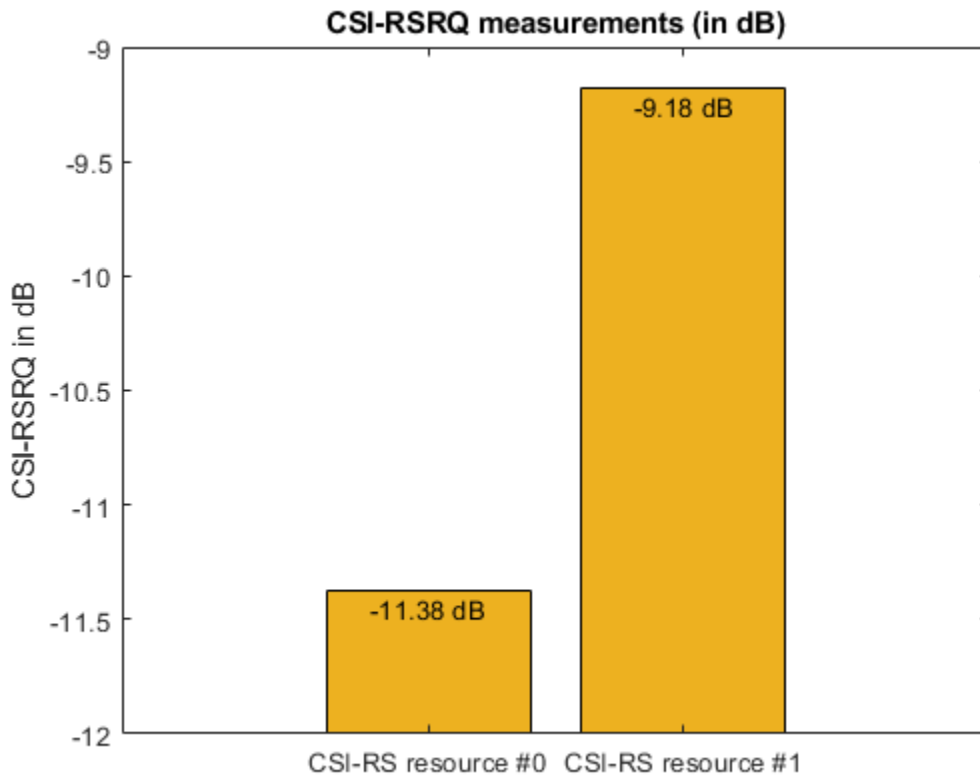
```
RSSIdBm: [-65.6220 -64.9823]
```

```
RSRQdB: [-11.3779 -9.1834]
```

```
% Plot RSRPaBm, RSSIdBm and RSRQdB measurements for all CSI-RS resources  
hPlotCSIRSMeasurements(meas)
```







You can compare the measured CSI-RSRP values of two CSI-RS resources represented by the output field RSRPdBm to the standard specified values given in TS 38.133 Table A.4.6.3.3.2-2.

Local Functions

```
function plotGrid(gridSize,csirsInd)
% plotGrid(GRIDSIZE,CSIRSIND) plots the carrier grid of size GRIDSIZE
% by populating the grid with CSI-RS symbols of multiple resources
% indicated by a cell array of CSI-RS indices CSIRSIND.

figure()
cmap = colormap(gcf);

% Considering the following values for two CSI-RS resources and they need
% to be updated based on the number of CSI-RS resources
names = {'CSI-RS resource #0','CSI-RS resource #1'};
chpval = {20,2};
chpscale = 0.25*length(cmap); % Scaling factor
tempGrid = zeros(gridSize);
tempGrid(csirsInd{1}) = chpval{1};
tempGrid(csirsInd{2}) = chpval{2};

image(chpscale*tempGrid(:,:,1)); % Multiplied with scaling factor for better visualization
axis xy;
clevels = chpscale*[chpval{:}];
N = length(clevels);
L = line(ones(N),ones(N),'LineWidth',8); % Generate lines
```

```
% Index the color map and associate the selected colors with the lines
set(L,{'color'},mat2cell(cmap( min(1+clevels,length(cmap) ),:),ones(1,N),3)); % Set the color
% Create legend
legend(names{:});

title('Carrier Grid Containing CSI-RS')
xlabel('OFDM Symbols');
ylabel('Subcarriers');
end
```

References

- [1] 3GPP TS 38.133. “NR; Requirements for support of radio resource management.” *3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Radio Access Network*.
- [2] 3GPP TS 38.215. “NR; Physical layer measurements.” *3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Radio Access Network*.

See Also

Functions

nrCSIRS | nrCSIRSIndices

Objects

nrCSIRSConfig | nrCarrierConfig

Related Examples

- “NR Channel Estimation Using CSI-RS” on page 1-83

NR SSB Beam Sweeping

This example shows how to employ beam sweeping at both the transmitter (gNB) and receiver (UE) ends of a 5G NR system. Using synchronization signal blocks (SSB), this example illustrates some of the beam management procedures used during initial access. To accomplish beam sweeping, the example uses several components from Phased Array System Toolbox™.

Introduction

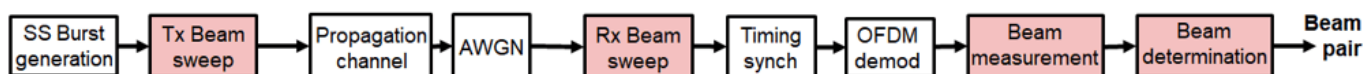
The support of millimeter wave (mmWave) frequencies requires directional links, which led to the specification of beam management procedures for initial access in NR. Beam management is a set of Layer 1 (physical) and Layer 2 (medium access control) procedures to acquire and maintain a set of beam pair links (a beam used at gNB paired with a beam used at UE). Beam management procedures are applied for both downlink and uplink transmission and reception [1], [2]. These procedures include:

- Beam sweeping
- Beam measurement
- Beam determination
- Beam reporting
- Beam recovery

This example focuses on initial access procedures for idle users when a connection is established between the user equipment (UE) and access network node (gNB). At the physical layer, using synchronization signal blocks (SSB) transmitted as a burst in the downlink direction (gNB to UE), the example highlights both transmit/receive point (TRP) beam sweeping and UE beam sweeping to establish a beam pair link. Amongst the multiple beam management procedures, TR 38.802 defines this dual-end sweep as procedure P-1 [1].

Once connected, the same beam pair link can be used for subsequent transmissions. If necessary, the beams are further refined using CSI-RS (for downlink) and SRS (for uplink). In case of beam failure, these pair links can be reestablished. For an example of beam pair refinement, see “NR Downlink Transmit-End Beam Refinement Using CSI-RS” on page 1-112.

This example generates an NR synchronization signal burst, beamforms each of the SSBs within the burst to sweep over both azimuth and elevation directions, transmits this beamformed signal over a spatial scattering channel, and processes this received signal over the multiple receive-end beams. The example measures the reference signal received power (RSRP) for each of the transmit-receive beam pairs (in a dual loop) and determines the beam pair link with the maximum RSRP. This beam pair link thus signifies the best beam-pair at transmit and receive ends for the simulated spatial scenario. This figure shows the main processing steps with the beam management ones highlighted in color.



```
rng(211); % Set RNG state for repeatability
```

Simulation Parameters

Define system parameters for the example. Modify these parameters to explore their impact on the system.

```

prm.NCellID = 1; % Cell ID
prm.FreqRange = 'FR1'; % Frequency range: 'FR1' or 'FR2'
prm.CenterFreq = 3.5e9; % Hz
prm.SSBBlockPattern = 'Case B'; % Case A/B/C/D/E
prm.SSBTransmitted = [ones(1,8) zeros(1,0)]; % 4/8 or 64 in length

prm.TxArraySize = [8 8]; % Transmit array size, [rows cols]
prm.TxAZlim = [-60 60]; % Transmit azimuthal sweep limits
prm.TxELlim = [-90 0]; % Transmit elevation sweep limits

prm.RxArraySize = [2 2]; % Receive array size, [rows cols]
prm.RxAZlim = [-180 180]; % Receive azimuthal sweep limits
prm.RxELlim = [0 90]; % Receive elevation sweep limits

prm.ElevationSweep = false; % Enable/disable elevation sweep
prm.SNRdB = 30; % SNR, dB
prm.RSRPMode = 'SSSwDMRS'; % {'SSSwDMRS', 'SSSonly'}

```

The example uses these parameters:

- Cell ID for a single-cell scenario with a single BS and UE
- Frequency range, as a string to designate FR1 or FR2 operation
- Center frequency, in Hz, dependent on the frequency range
- Synchronization signal block pattern as one of Case A/B/C for FR1 and Case D/E for FR2. This also selects the subcarrier spacing.
- Transmitted SSBs in the pattern, as a binary vector of length 4 or 8 for FR1 and length 64 for FR2. The number of SSBs transmitted sets the number of beams at both transmit and receive ends.
- Transmit array size, as a two-element row vector specifying the number of antenna elements in the rows and columns of the transmit array, respectively. A uniform rectangular array (URA) is used when both values are greater than one.
- Transmit azimuthal sweep limits in degrees to specify the starting and ending azimuth angles for the sweep
- Transmit elevation sweep limits in degrees to specify the starting and ending elevation angles for the sweep
- Receive array size, as a two-element row vector specifying the number of antenna elements in the rows and columns of the receive array, respectively. A uniform rectangular array (URA) is used when both values are greater than one.
- Receive azimuthal sweep limits in degrees to specify the starting and ending azimuth angles for the sweep
- Receive elevation sweep limits in degrees to specify the starting and ending elevation angles for the sweep
- Enable or disable elevation sweep for both transmit and receive ends. Enable elevation sweep for FR2 and/or URAs
- Signal-to-noise ratio in dB
- Measurement mode for SSB to specify the use of only secondary synchronization signals ('SSSonly') or use of PBCH DM-RS along with secondary synchronization signals ('SSSwDMRS')

```
prm = validateParams(prm);
```


Synchronization Signal Burst Configuration

Set up the synchronization signal burst parameters by using the specified system parameters. For initial access, set the SSB periodicity to 20 ms.

```
txBurst.BlockPattern = prm.SSBBlockPattern;
txBurst.SSBTransmitted = prm.SSBTransmitted;
txBurst.NCellID = prm.NCellID;
txBurst.SSBPeriodicity = 20;
txBurst.NFrame = 0;
txBurst.Windowing = 0;
txBurst.DisplayBurst = true;

% Assume same subcarrier spacing for carrier as the burst
carrier = nrCarrierConfig('NCellID',prm.NCellID,'NFrame',txBurst.NFrame);
carrier.SubcarrierSpacing = prm.SCS;
carrierInfo = nrOFDMInfo(carrier);
txBurst.SampleRate = carrierInfo.SampleRate;
```

Refer to the tutorial “Synchronization Signal Blocks and Bursts” for more details on synchronization signal blocks and bursts.

Channel Configuration

Configure a spatial scattering MIMO channel `channel`. This channel model applies free space path loss and, optionally, other atmospheric attenuations to the input. Specify the locations for the BS and UE as $[x, y, z]$ coordinates in a cartesian system. Depending on the array sizes specified, employ either uniform linear arrays (ULA) or uniform rectangular arrays (URA). Use isotropic antenna elements for the arrays.

```
c = physconst('LightSpeed'); % Propagation speed
lambda = c/prm.CenterFreq; % Wavelength

prm.posTx = [0;0;0]; % Transmit array position, [x;y;z], meters
prm.posRx = [100;50;0]; % Receive array position, [x;y;z], meters

toRxRange = rangeangle(prm.posTx,prm.posRx);
spLoss = fspl(toRxRange,lambda); % Free space path loss

% Transmit array
if prm.IsTxURA
    % Uniform rectangular array
    arrayTx = phased.URA(prm.TxArraySize,0.5*lambda, ...
        'Element',phased.IsotropicAntennaElement('BackBaffled',true));
else
    % Uniform linear array
    arrayTx = phased.ULA(prm.NumTx, ...
        'ElementSpacing',0.5*lambda, ...
        'Element',phased.IsotropicAntennaElement('BackBaffled',true));
end

% Receive array
if prm.IsRxURA
    % Uniform rectangular array
    arrayRx = phased.URA(prm.RxArraySize,0.5*lambda, ...
        'Element',phased.IsotropicAntennaElement);
else
    % Uniform linear array
```

```

        arrayRx = phased.ULA(prm.NumRx, ...
            'ElementSpacing',0.5*lambda, ...
            'Element',phased.IsotropicAntennaElement);
    end

    % Scatterer locations
    prm.FixedScatMode = true;
    if prm.FixedScatMode
        % Fixed single scatterer location
        prm.ScatPos = [50; 80; 0];
    else
        % Generate scatterers at random positions
        Nscat = 10; % Number of scatterers
        azRange = -180:180;
        elRange = -90:90;
        randAzOrder = randperm(length(azRange));
        randElOrder = randperm(length(elRange));
        azAngInSph = azRange(randAzOrder(1:Nscat));
        elAngInSph = elRange(randElOrder(1:Nscat));
        r = 20; % radius
        [x,y,z] = sph2cart(deg2rad(azAngInSph),deg2rad(elAngInSph),r);
        prm.ScatPos = [x;y;z] + (prm.posTx + prm.posRx)/2;
    end

    % Configure channel
    channel = phased.ScatteringMIMOChannel;
    channel.PropagationSpeed = c;
    channel.CarrierFrequency = prm.CenterFreq;
    channel.SampleRate = txBurst.SampleRate;
    channel.SimulateDirectPath = false;
    channel.ChannelResponseOutputPort = true;
    channel.Polarization = 'None';
    channel.TransmitArray = arrayTx;
    channel.TransmitArrayPosition = prm.posTx;
    channel.ReceiveArray = arrayRx;
    channel.ReceiveArrayPosition = prm.posRx;
    channel.ScattererSpecificationSource = 'Property';
    channel.ScattererPosition = prm.ScatPos;
    channel.ScattererCoefficient = ones(1,size(prm.ScatPos,2));

    % Get maximum channel delay
    [~,~,tau] = channel(complex(randn(txBurst.SampleRate*1e-3,prm.NumTx), ...
        randn(txBurst.SampleRate*1e-3,prm.NumTx)));
    maxChDelay = ceil(max(tau)*txBurst.SampleRate);

```

Burst Generation

Create the SS burst waveform [3] by calling the hSSBurst helper function. The generated waveform is not yet beamformed.

```

% Create and display burst information
txBurstInfo = hSSBurstInfo(txBurst);
disp(txBurstInfo);

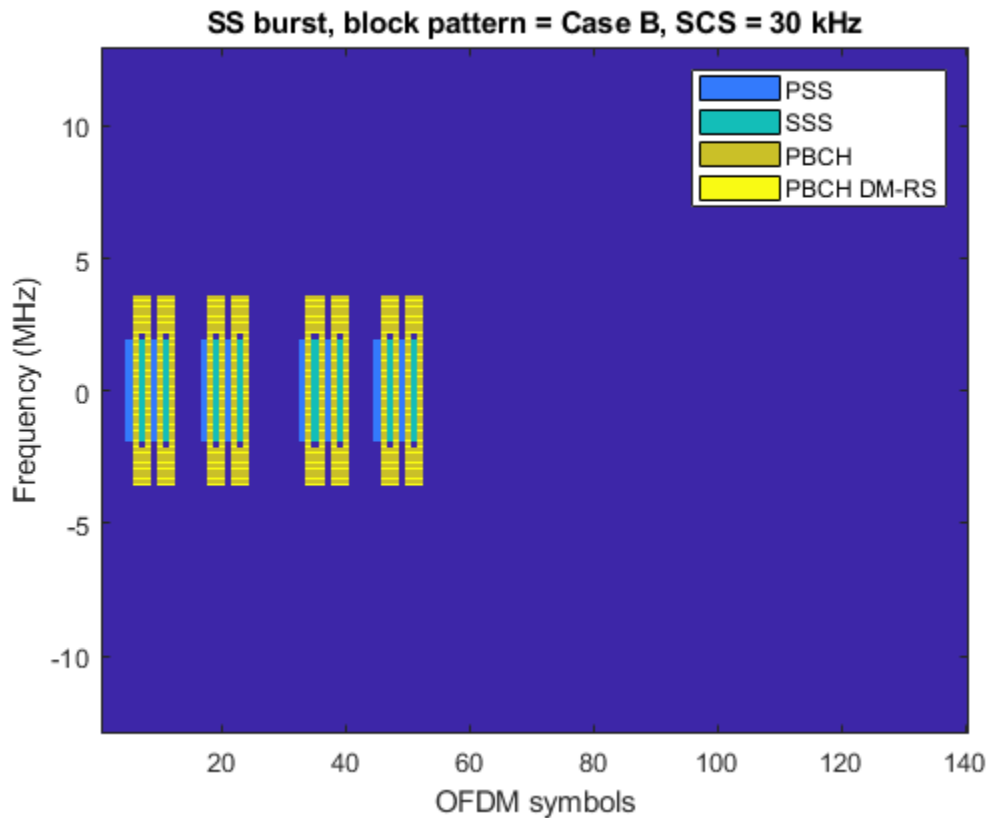
% Generate burst waveform and grid
[burstWaveform,txBurstGrid] = hSSBurst(txBurst);

```

```

SubcarrierSpacing: 30
  NCRB_SSB: -20
  k_SSB: 0
FrequencyOffsetSSB: 0
  MIB: [24x1 double]
  L: 8
  SSBIndex: [0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7]
  i_SSB: [0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7]
  ibar_SSB: [0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7]
SampleRate: 30720000
  Nfft: 1024
  NRB: 72
  CyclicPrefix: 'Normal'
OccupiedSubcarriers: [240x1 double]
OccupiedSymbols: [8x4 double]
Windowing: 0

```



Transmit-End Beam Sweeping

To achieve TRP beam sweeping, beamform each of the SS blocks in the generated burst using analog beamforming. Based on the number of SS blocks in the burst and the sweep ranges specified, determine both the azimuth and elevation directions for the different beams. Then beamform the individual blocks within the burst to each of these directions.

```

% Number of beams at both transmit and receive ends
numBeams = sum(txBurst.SSBTransmitted);

```

```

% Transmit beam angles in azimuth and elevation, equi-spaced
azBW = beamwidth(arrayTx,prm.CenterFreq,'Cut','Azimuth');
elBW = beamwidth(arrayTx,prm.CenterFreq,'Cut','Elevation');
txBeamAng = hGetBeamSweepAngles(numBeams,prm.TxAZlim,prm.TxELlim, ...
    azBW,elBW,prm.ElevationSweep);

% For evaluating transmit-side steering weights
SteerVecTx = phased.SteeringVector('SensorArray',arrayTx, ...
    'PropagationSpeed',c);

% Apply steering per OFDM symbol for each SSB
carrier.NSizeGrid = txBurstInfo.NRB;
ofdmInfo = nrOFDMInfo(carrier);
gridSymLengths = repmat(ofdmInfo.SymbolLengths,1, ...
    size(txBurstGrid,2)/length(ofdmInfo.SymbolLengths));
% repeat burst over numTx to prepare for steering
strTxWaveform = repmat(burstWaveform,1,prm.NumTx)./sqrt(prm.NumTx);
for ssb = 1:length(txBurstInfo.SSBIndex)

    % Extract SSB waveform from burst
    blockSymbols = txBurstInfo.OccupiedSymbols(ssb,:);
    startSSBInd = sum(gridSymLengths(1:blockSymbols(1)-1))+1;
    endSSBInd = sum(gridSymLengths(1:blockSymbols(4)));
    ssbWaveform = strTxWaveform(startSSBInd:endSSBInd,1);

    % Generate weights for steered direction
    wT = SteerVecTx(prm.CenterFreq,txBeamAng(:,ssb));

    % Apply weights per transmit element to SSB
    strTxWaveform(startSSBInd:endSSBInd,:) = ssbWaveform.*(wT');

end

```

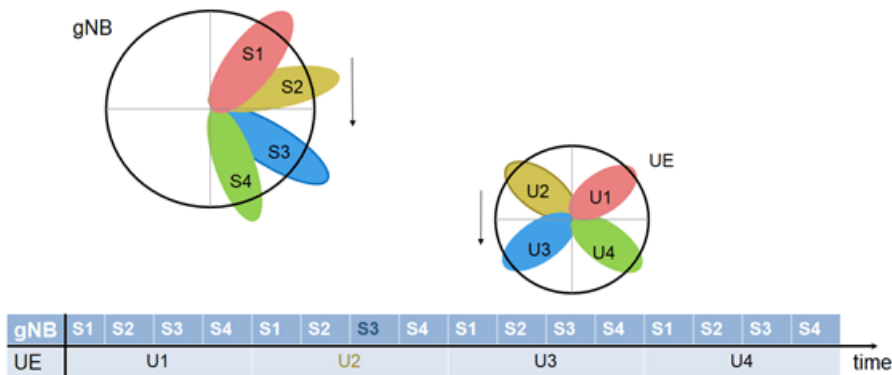
The beamformed burst waveform is then transmitted over the spatially-aware scattering channel.

Receive-End Beam Sweeping and Measurement

For receive-end beam sweeping, the transmitted beamformed burst waveform is received successively over each receive beam. For N transmit beams and M receive beams in procedure P-1, each of the N beams is transmitted M times from gNB so that each transmit beam is received over the M receive beams.

The example assumes both N and M to be equal to the number of SSBs in the burst. For simplicity, the example generates only one burst, but to mimic the burst reception over the air M times, the receiver processes this single burst M times.

This figure shows a beam-based diagram for the sweeps at both gNB and UE for $N = M = 4$, in the azimuthal plane. The diagram shows the time taken for the dual sweep, where each interval at gNB corresponds to an SSB and each interval at the UE corresponds to the SS burst. For the depicted scenario, beams S3 and U2 are highlighted as the selected beam-pair link notionally. The example implements the dual-sweep over a time duration of $N \cdot M$ time instants.



The receive processing of the transmitted burst includes

- Application of the spatially-aware fading channel
- Receive gain to compensate for the induced path loss and AWGN
- Receive-end beamforming
- Timing correction
- OFDM demodulation
- Extracting the known SSB grid
- Measuring the RSRP based on the specified measurement mode

The processing repeats these steps for each of the receive beams, then selects the best beam-pair based on the complete set of measurements made.

To highlight beam sweeping, the example assumes known SSB information at the receiver. For more details on recovery processing see “NR Cell Search and MIB and SIB1 Recovery” on page 1-30.

For the idle mode SS-RSRP measurement, use either only the secondary synchronization signals (SSS) or the physical broadcast channel (PBCH) demodulation reference signals (DM-RS) in addition to the SSS (Section 5.1.1. of [4]). Specify this by the `RSRPMODE` parameter of the example. For FR2, the RSRP measurement is based on the combined signal from antenna elements, while the measurement is per antenna element for FR1.

```
% Receive beam angles in azimuth and elevation, equi-spaced
azBW = beamwidth(arrayRx,prm.CenterFreq,'Cut','Azimuth');
elBW = beamwidth(arrayRx,prm.CenterFreq,'Cut','Elevation');
rxBeamAng = hGetBeamSweepAngles(numBeams,prm.RxAZlim,prm.RxELlim, ...
    azBW,elBW,prm.ElevationSweep);

% For evaluating receive-side steering weights
SteerVecRx = phased.SteeringVector('SensorArray',arrayRx, ...
    'PropagationSpeed',c);

% AWGN level
SNR = 10^(prm.SNRdB/20); % Convert to linear gain
N0 = 1/(sqrt(2.0*prm.NumRx*double(ofdmInfo.Nfft))*SNR); % Noise Std. Dev.

% Receive gain in linear terms, to compensate for the path loss
rxGain = 10^(spLoss/20);

% Generate a reference grid for timing correction
```

```

% assumes an SSB in first slot
pssRef = nrPSS(carrier.NCellID);
pssInd = nrPSSIndices;
pbchdmrsRef = nrPBCHDMRS(carrier.NCellID,txBurstInfo.ibar_SSB(1));
pbchDMRSInd = nrPBCHDMRSIndices(carrier.NCellID);
pssGrid = zeros([240 4]);
pssGrid(pssInd) = pssRef;
pssGrid(pbchDMRSInd) = pbchdmrsRef;
refGrid = zeros([12*carrier.NSizeGrid ofdmInfo.SymbolsPerSlot]);
refGrid(txBurstInfo.OccupiedSubcarriers, ...
        txBurstInfo.OccupiedSymbols(1,:)) = pssGrid;

% Loop over all receive beams
rsrp = zeros(numBeams,numBeams);
for rIdx = 1:numBeams

    % Fading channel, with path loss
    txWave = [strTxWaveform; zeros(maxChDelay,size(strTxWaveform,2))];
    fadWave = channel(txWave);

    % Receive gain, to compensate for the path loss
    fadWaveG = fadWave*rxGain;

    % Add WGN
    noise = N0*complex(randn(size(fadWaveG)),randn(size(fadWaveG)));
    rxWaveform = fadWaveG + noise;

    % Generate weights for steered direction
    wR = SteerVecRx(prm.CenterFreq,rxBeamAng(:,rIdx));

    % Apply weights per receive element
    if strcmp(prm.FreqRange, 'FR1')
        strRxWaveform = rxWaveform.*(wR');
    else % for FR2, combine signal from antenna elements
        strRxWaveform = rxWaveform*conj(wR);
    end

    % Correct timing
    offset = nrTimingEstimate(carrier, ...
        strRxWaveform(1:ofdmInfo.SampleRate*1e-3,:),refGrid*wR(1)');
    if offset > maxChDelay
        offset = 0;
    end
    strRxWaveformS = strRxWaveform(1+offset:end,:);

    % OFDM Demodulate
    rxGrid = nrOFDMDemodulate(carrier,strRxWaveformS);

    % Loop over all SSBs in rxGrid (transmit end)
    for tIdx = 1:numBeams
        % Get each SSB grid
        rxSSBGrid = rxGrid(txBurstInfo.OccupiedSubcarriers, ...
            txBurstInfo.OccupiedSymbols(tIdx,:),:);

        % Make measurements, store per receive, transmit beam
        rsrp(rIdx,tIdx) = measureSSB(rxSSBGrid,prm.RSRPMode,txBurst.NCellID);
    end
end
end

```

Beam Determination

After the dual-end sweep and measurements are complete, determine the best beam-pair link based on the RSRP measurement.

```
[m,i] = max(rsrp,[],'all','linear'); % First occurrence is output
% i is column-down first (for receive), then across columns (for transmit)
[rxBeamID,txBeamID] = ind2sub([numBeams numBeams],i(1));
```

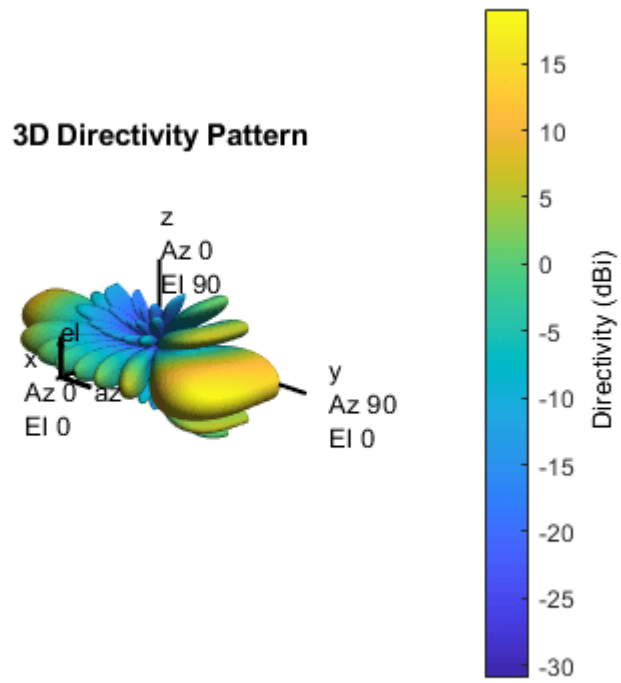
```
% Display the selected beam pair
disp(['Selected Beam pair with RSRP: ' num2str(10*log10(rsrp(rxBeamID, ...
    txBeamID))+30) ' dBm', 13 ' Transmit #' num2str(txBeamID) ...
    ' (Azimuth: ' num2str(txBeamAng(1,txBeamID)) ', Elevation: ' ...
    num2str(txBeamAng(2,txBeamID)) ') ' 13 ' Receive #' num2str(rxBeamID) ...
    ' (Azimuth: ' num2str(rxBeamAng(1,rxBeamID)) ', Elevation: ' ...
    num2str(rxBeamAng(2,rxBeamID)) ') ' ]);
```

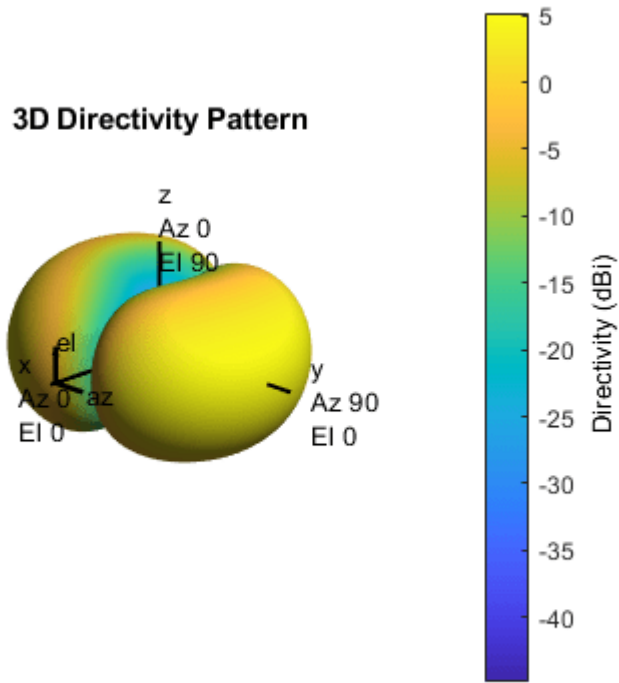
```
% Display final beam pair patterns
h = figure('Position',figposition([32 55 32 40]),'MenuBar','none');
h.Name = 'Selected Transmit Array Response Pattern';
wT = SteerVecTx(prm.CenterFreq,txBeamAng(:,txBeamID));
pattern(arrayTx,prm.CenterFreq,'PropagationSpeed',c,'Weights',wT);
```

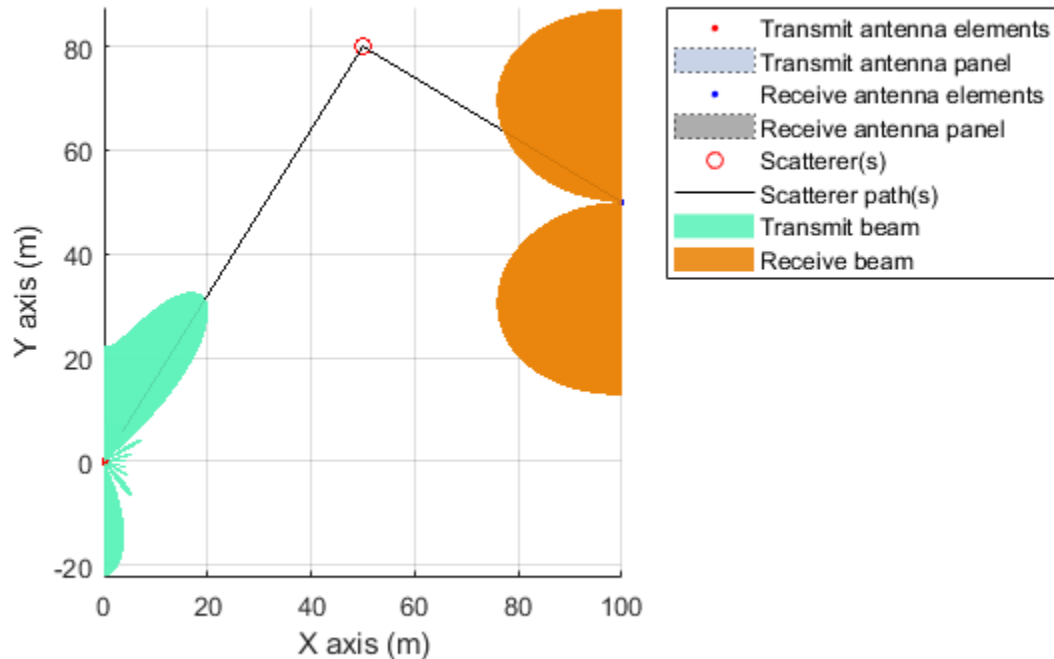
```
h = figure('Position',figposition([32 55 32 40]),'MenuBar','none');
h.Name = 'Selected Receive Array Response Pattern';
wR = SteerVecRx(prm.CenterFreq,rxBeamAng(:,rxBeamID));
pattern(arrayRx,prm.CenterFreq,'PropagationSpeed',c,'Weights',wR);
```

```
% Plot MIMO scenario with tx, rx, scatterers, and determined beams
prmScene = struct();
prmScene.txArraySize = prm.TxArraySize;
prmScene.rxArraySize = prm.RxArraySize;
prmScene.txElemPos = getElementPosition(arrayTx); % meters
prmScene.rxElemPos = getElementPosition(arrayRx); % meters
prmScene.txArrayPos = prm.posTx;
prmScene.rxArrayPos = prm.posRx;
prmScene.txAzAngles = -90:90;
prmScene.rxAzAngles = [90:180 -179:-90];
prmScene.scatPos = prm.ScatPos;
prmScene.lambda = lambda;
prmScene.arrayScaling = 1;
hPlotSpatialMIMOscene(prmScene,wT,wR);
if ~prm.ElevationSweep
    view(2);
end
```

```
Selected Beam pair with RSRP: 45.1516 dBm Transmit #8 (Azimuth: 60, Elevation: 0) Receive #6 (
```







These plots highlight the transmit directivity pattern, receive directivity pattern, and the spatial scene, respectively. The results are dependent on the individual beam directions used for the sweeps. The spatial scene offers a combined view of the transmit and receive arrays and the respective determined beams, along with the scatterers.

Summary and Further Exploration

This example highlights the P-1 beam management procedure by using synchronization signal blocks for transmit-end and receive-end beam sweeping. By measuring the reference signal received power for SSBs, you can identify the best beam pair link for a selected spatial environment.

The example allows variation on frequency range, SSB block pattern, number of SSBs, transmit and receive array sizes, transmit and receive sweep ranges, and the measuring mode. To see the impact of parameters on the beam selection, experiment with different values. The receive processing is simplified to highlight the beamforming aspects for the example.

For an example of the P-2 procedures of transmit-end beam sweeping using CSI-RS signals for the downlink, see “NR Downlink Transmit-End Beam Refinement Using CSI-RS” on page 1-112. You can use these procedures for beam refinement and adjustment in the connected mode, once the initial beam pair links are established [5], [6].

References

- 1 3GPP TR 38.802. "Study on New Radio access technology physical layer aspects." *3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Radio Access Network*.

- 2 Giordani, M., M. Polese, A. Roy, D. Castor, and M. Zorzi. "A tutorial on beam management for 3GPP NR at mmWave frequencies." *IEEE Comm. Surveys & Tutorials*, vol. 21, No. 1, Q1 2019.
- 3 3GPP TS 38.211. "NR; Physical channels and modulation." *3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Radio Access Network*.
- 4 3GPP TS 38.215. "NR; Physical layer measurements." *3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Radio Access Network*.
- 5 Giordani, M., M. Polese, A. Roy, D. Castor, and M. Zorzi. "Standalone and non-standalone beam management for 3GPP NR at mmWaves." *IEEE Comm. Mag.*, April 2019, pp. 123-129.
- 6 Onggosanusi, E., S. Md. Rahman, et al. "Modular and high-resolution channel state information and beam management for 5G NR." *IEEE Comm. Mag.*, March 2018, pp. 48-55.

Local Functions

```
function prm = validateParams(prm)
% Validate user specified parameters and return updated parameters
%
% Only cross-dependent checks are made for parameter consistency.

if strcmpi(prm.FreqRange, 'FR1')
    if prm.CenterFreq > 7.125e9 || prm.CenterFreq < 410e6
        error(['Specified center frequency is outside the FR1 ', ...
            'frequency range (410 MHz - 7.125 GHz).']);
    end
    if strcmpi(prm.SSBLOCKPattern, 'Case D') || ...
        strcmpi(prm.SSBLOCKPattern, 'Case E')
        error(['Invalid SSBLOCKPattern for selected FR1 frequency ' ...
            'range. SSBLOCKPattern must be one of ''Case A'' or ' ...
            ''Case B'' or ''Case C'' for FR1.']);
    end
    if ~((length(prm.SSBTransmitted)==4) || ...
        (length(prm.SSBTransmitted)==8))
        error(['SSBTransmitted must be a vector of length 4 or 8', ...
            'for FR1 frequency range.']);
    end
    if (prm.CenterFreq <= 3e9) && (length(prm.SSBTransmitted)~=4)
        error(['SSBTransmitted must be a vector of length 4 for ' ...
            'center frequency less than or equal to 3GHz.']);
    end
    if (prm.CenterFreq > 3e9) && (length(prm.SSBTransmitted)~=8)
        error(['SSBTransmitted must be a vector of length 8 for ', ...
            'center frequency greater than 3GHz and less than ', ...
            'or equal to 7.125GHz.']);
    end
else % 'FR2'
    if prm.CenterFreq > 52.6e9 || prm.CenterFreq < 24.25e9
        error(['Specified center frequency is outside the FR2 ', ...
            'frequency range (24.25 GHz - 52.6 GHz).']);
    end
    if ~(strcmpi(prm.SSBLOCKPattern, 'Case D') || ...
        strcmpi(prm.SSBLOCKPattern, 'Case E'))
        error(['Invalid SSBLOCKPattern for selected FR2 frequency ' ...
            'range. SSBLOCKPattern must be either ''Case D'' or ' ...
            ''Case E'' for FR2.']);
    end
    if length(prm.SSBTransmitted)~=64
        error(['SSBTransmitted must be a vector of length 64 for ', ...
```

```

        'FR2 frequency range.']);
    end
end

prm.NumTx = prod(prm.TxArraySize);
prm.NumRx = prod(prm.RxArraySize);
if prm.NumTx==1 || prm.NumRx==1
    error(['Number of transmit or receive antenna elements must be', ...
        ' greater than 1.']);
end
prm.IsTxURA = (prm.TxArraySize(1)>1) && (prm.TxArraySize(2)>1);
prm.IsRxURA = (prm.RxArraySize(1)>1) && (prm.RxArraySize(2)>1);

if ~( strcmpi(prm.RSRPMode,'SSSonly') || ...
    strcmpi(prm.RSRPMode,'SSSwDMRS') )
    error(['Invalid RSRP measuring mode. Specify either ', ...
        ''SSSonly' or 'SSSwDMRS' as the mode.']);
end

% Select SCS based on SSBLOCKPattern
switch lower(prm.SSBLOCKPattern)
    case 'case a'
        scs = 15;
    case {'case b', 'case c'}
        scs = 30;
    case 'case d'
        scs = 120;
    case 'case e'
        scs = 240;
end
prm.SCS = scs;

end

function rsrp = measureSSB(rxSSBGrid,mode,NCellID)
% Compute the reference signal received power (RSRP) based on SSS, and if
% selected, also PBCH DM-RS.

    sssInd = nrSSSIndices; % SSS indices

    numRx = size(rxSSBGrid,3);
    rsrpSSS = zeros(numRx,1);
    for rxIdx = 1:numRx
        % Extract signals per rx element
        rxSSBGridperRx = rxSSBGrid(:,:,rxIdx);
        rxSSS = rxSSBGridperRx(sssInd);

        % Average power contributions over all REs for RS
        rsrpSSS(rxIdx) = mean(rxSSS.*conj(rxSSS));
    end

    if strcmpi(mode,'SSSwDMRS')
        pbchDMRSInd = nrPBCHDMRSIndices(NCellID); % PBCH DM-RS indices
        rsrpDMRS = zeros(numRx,1);
        for rxIdx = 1:numRx
            % Extract signals per rx element
            rxSSBGridperRx = rxSSBGrid(:,:,rxIdx);
            rxPBCHDMRS = rxSSBGridperRx(pbchDMRSInd);
        end
    end
end

```

```
        % Average power contributions over all REs for RS
        rsrpDMRS(rxIdx) = mean(rxPBCHDMRS.*conj(rxPBCHDMRS));
    end
end

switch lower(mode)
    case 'ssonly' % Only SSS
        rsrp = max(rsrpSSS); % max over receive elements
    case 'sswdmrs' % Both SSS and PBCH-DMRS, accounting for REs per RS
        rsrp = max((rsrpSSS*127+rsrpDMRS*144)/271); % max over receive elements
end
end
```

See Also

Objects

phased.ScatteringMIMOChannel | phased.SteeringVector

Related Examples

- “NR Cell Search and MIB and SIB1 Recovery” on page 1-30
- “NR Downlink Transmit-End Beam Refinement Using CSI-RS” on page 1-112

NR Downlink Transmit-End Beam Refinement Using CSI-RS

This example demonstrates the downlink transmit-end beam refinement procedure using the channel state information reference signal (CSI-RS) from 5G Toolbox™. The example shows how to transmit multiple CSI-RS resources in different directions in a scattering environment and how to select the optimal transmit beam based on reference signal received power (RSRP) measurements.

Introduction

In NR 5G, frequency range 2 (FR2) operates at millimeter wave (mmWave) frequencies (24.25 GHz to 52.6 GHz). As the frequency increases, the transmitted signal is prone to high path loss and penetration loss, which affects the link budget. To improve the gain and directionality of the transmission and reception of the signals at higher frequencies, beamforming is essential. Beam management is a set of Layer 1 (physical layer) and Layer 2 (medium access control) procedures to establish and retain an optimal beam pair (transmit beam and a corresponding receive beam) for good connectivity. TR 38.802 Section 6.1.6.1 [1 on page 1-0] defines beam management as three procedures:

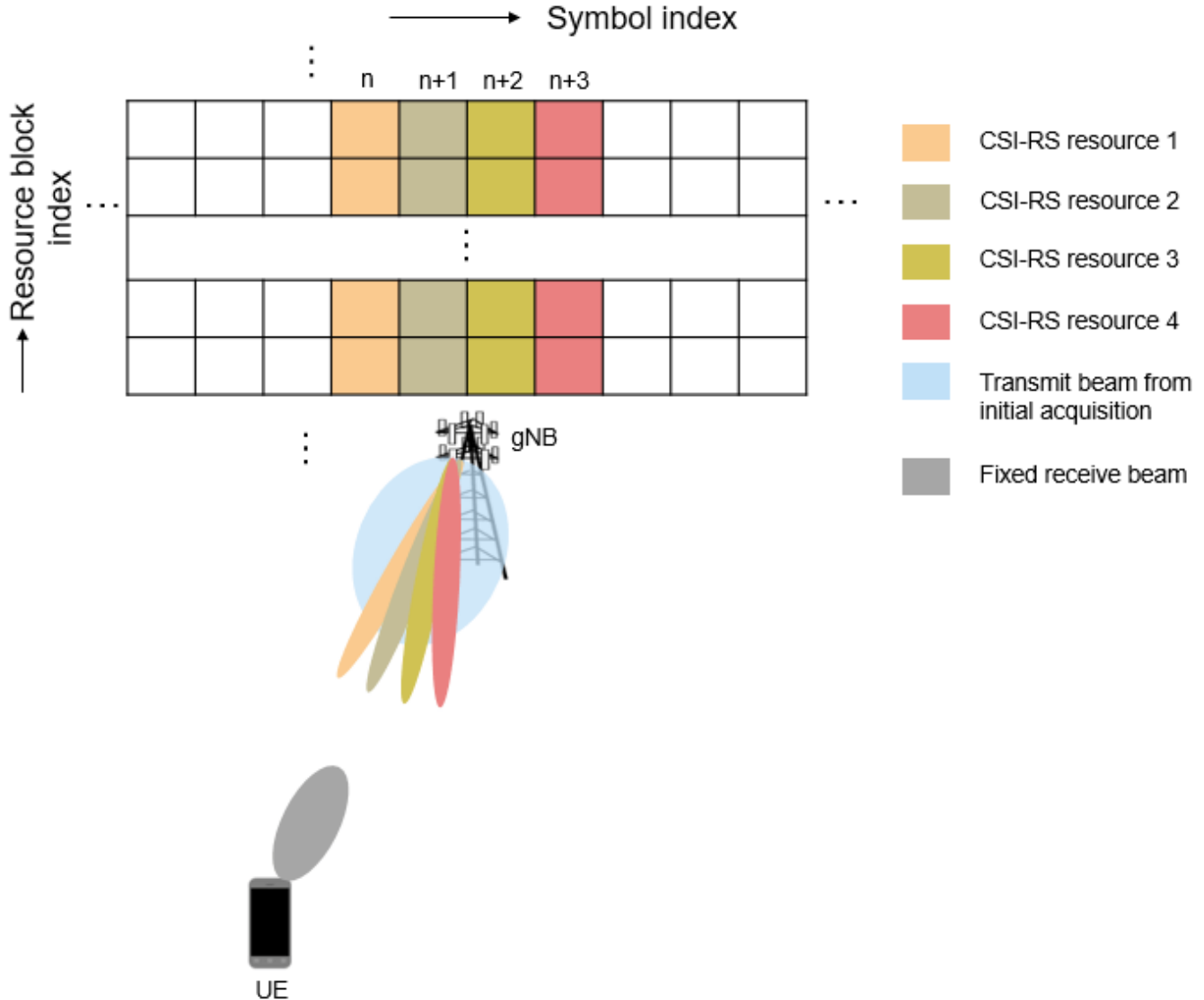
Procedure 1 (P-1): This procedure focuses on the initial acquisition based on synchronization signal blocks (SSB). During the initial acquisition, beam sweeping takes place at both transmit and receive ends to select the best beam pair based on the RSRP measurements. In general, the selected beams are wide and may not be an optimal beam pair for the data transmission and reception. For more details on this procedure, see “NR SSB Beam Sweeping” on page 1-97.

Procedure 2 (P-2): This procedure focuses on transmit-end beam refinement, where the beam sweeping happens at the transmit end by keeping the receive beam fixed. The procedure is based on non-zero-power CSI-RS (NZP-CSI-RS) for downlink transmit-end beam refinement and sounding reference signal (SRS) for uplink transmit-end beam refinement.

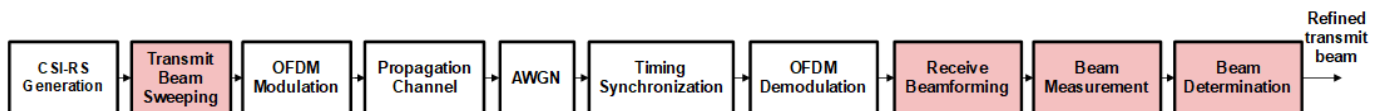
After the initial beam establishment, obtaining a unicast data transmission with high directivity and high gain requires a beam much finer than the SSB beam. Therefore, a set of reference signal resources are configured and transmitted in different directions by using finer beams within the angular range of the beam from the initial acquisition process. Then the user equipment (UE) or the access network node (gNB) measures all these beams by capturing the signals with a fixed receive beam. Finally, the best transmit beam is selected based on the RSRP measurements on all transmit beams.

Procedure 3 (P-3): This procedure focuses on receive-end beam adjustment, where the beam sweeping happens at the receive end given the current transmit beam. This process aims to find the best receive beam, which can be a neighbor beam or a refined beam. For this procedure, a set of reference signal resources (NZP-CSI-RS for downlink and SRS for uplink) are transmitted with the same transmit beam and the UE or gNB receives the signal using different beams from different directions covering an angular range. Finally, the best receive beam is selected based on the RSRP measurements on all receive beams.

This example focuses on downlink beam refinement at the transmitter. The example works for both frequency range 1 (FR1) and frequency range 2 (FR2) of NR 5G. This figure depicts the transmit-end beam refinement procedure, considering four NZP-CSI-RS resources transmitted in four different directions.



This figure shows the main processing steps of this example with the transmit-end beam refinement process-related steps in color.



Generate CSI-RS Resources

Configure Carrier

Create a carrier configuration object representing a 50 MHz carrier with subcarrier spacing of 30 kHz.

```
carrier = nrCarrierConfig;
% Maximum transmission bandwidth configuration for 50 MHz carrier with 30 kHz subcarrier spacing
```

```

carrier.NSizeGrid = 133;
carrier.SubcarrierSpacing = 30;
carrier.NSlot = 0;
carrier.NFrame = 0

carrier =
  nrCarrierConfig with properties:

      NCellID: 1
  SubcarrierSpacing: 30
    CyclicPrefix: 'normal'
      NSizeGrid: 133
    NStartGrid: 0
      NSlot: 0
      NFrame: 0

  Read-only properties:
    SymbolsPerSlot: 14
    SlotsPerSubframe: 2
    SlotsPerFrame: 20

```

Configure CSI-RS

Create a CSI-RS configuration object representing an NZP-CSI-RS resource set with numNZPRes number of NZP-CSI-RS resources. For Layer 1 RSRP measurements, configure all the CSI-RS resources in a resource set with the same number of antenna ports (either single-port or dual-port), as specified in TS 38.215 Section 5.1.2 [2 on page 1-0] or TS 38.214 Section 5.1.6.1.2 [3 on page 1-0]. This example works for single-port CSI-RS.

```

numNZPRes = 12;
csirs = nrCSIRSConfig;
csirs.CSIRSType = repmat({'nzp'},1,numNZPRes);
csirs.CSIRSPeriod = 'on';
csirs.Density = repmat({'one'},1,numNZPRes);
csirs.RowNumber = repmat(2,1,numNZPRes);
csirs.SymbolLocations = {0,1,2,3,4,5,6,7,8,9,10,11};
csirs.SubcarrierLocations = repmat({0},1,numNZPRes);
csirs.NumRB = 25

csirs =
  nrCSIRSConfig with properties:

      CSIRSType: {1x12 cell}
    CSIRSPeriod: 'on'
      RowNumber: [2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2]
      Density: {1x12 cell}
  SymbolLocations: {[0] [1] [2] [3] [4] [5] [6] [7] [8] [9] [10] [11]}
  SubcarrierLocations: {[0] [0] [0] [0] [0] [0] [0] [0] [0] [0] [0] [0]}
      NumRB: 25
      RBOffset: 0
      NID: 0

  Read-only properties:
    NumCSIRSPorts: [1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1]
    CDType: {1x12 cell}

```



```
% Validate CSI-RS antenna ports
validateCSIRSPorts(csirs);
```

```
% Get the binary vector to represent the presence of each CSI-RS resource
% in a specified slot
```

```
csirsTransmitted = getActiveCSIRSRes(carrier,csirs);
```

Configure the power scaling of all NZP-CSI-RS resources in decibels (dB).

```
powerCSIRS = 0;
```

Generate CSI-RS Symbols and Indices

Generate CSI-RS symbols and indices by using the `carrier` and `csirs` configuration objects. To distinguish each CSI-RS resource output separately, specify the `OutputResourceFormat`, 'cell' name-value pair.

```
csirsSym = nrCSIRS(carrier,csirs,'OutputResourceFormat','cell')
```

```
csirsSym=1×12 cell array
```

```
Columns 1 through 4
```

```
{25x1 double} {25x1 double} {25x1 double} {25x1 double}
```

```
Columns 5 through 8
```

```
{25x1 double} {25x1 double} {25x1 double} {25x1 double}
```

```
Columns 9 through 12
```

```
{25x1 double} {25x1 double} {25x1 double} {25x1 double}
```

```
csirsInd = nrCSIRSIndices(carrier,csirs,'OutputResourceFormat','cell')
```

```
csirsInd=1×12 cell array
```

```
Columns 1 through 4
```

```
{25x1 uint32} {25x1 uint32} {25x1 uint32} {25x1 uint32}
```

```
Columns 5 through 8
```

```
{25x1 uint32} {25x1 uint32} {25x1 uint32} {25x1 uint32}
```

```
Columns 9 through 12
```

```
{25x1 uint32} {25x1 uint32} {25x1 uint32} {25x1 uint32}
```

Configure Antenna Arrays and Scatterers

Configure Transmit and Receive Antenna Arrays

Configure the carrier frequency and the signal propagation speed.

```
% Set the carrier frequency
```

```
fc = 3.5e9;
```

```
freqRange = validateFc(fc);
```

```
% Set the propagation speed
c = physconst('LightSpeed');
% Calculate wavelength
lambda = c/fc;
```

Configure the size of transmit and receive antenna arrays as a two-element vector, where the first element represents the number of rows and the second element represents the number of columns in the antenna array.

```
txArySize = [8 8];
rxArySize = [2 2];
```

Calculate the total number of transmit and receive antenna elements.

```
nTx = prod(txArySize);
nRx = prod(rxArySize);
```

Configure the positions of transmit and receive antenna arrays. Then calculate the free space path loss based on the spatial separation between transmit and receive antenna array positions.

```
% Configure antenna array positions
txArrayPos = [0;0;0];
rxArrayPos = [100;50;0];

% Calculate the free space path loss
toRxRange = rangeangle(txArrayPos,rxArrayPos);
spLoss = fspl(toRxRange,lambda);
```

Configure the uniform linear array (ULA) or uniform rectangular array (URA) based on the sizes of antennas arrays.

```
% Initialize the flags to choose between URA and ULA
isTxRectArray = false;
isRxRectArray = false;

% Enable isTxRectArray if both the number of rows and columns of transmit
% antenna array are greater than one
if ~any(txArySize == 1)
    isTxRectArray = true;
end
% Enable isRxRectArray if both the number of rows and columns of receive
% antenna array are greater than one
if ~any(rxArySize == 1)
    isRxRectArray = true;
end
```

```
% Configure the transmit and receive antenna elements
txAntenna = phased.IsotropicAntennaElement('BackBaffled',true); % To avoid transmission beyond -
% degrees from the broadside, ba
% the back of the transmit anten
% element by setting the BackBa
% property to true
rxAntenna = phased.IsotropicAntennaElement('BackBaffled',false); % To receive the signal from 360
% set the BackBaffled property t
```

```
% Configure transmit antenna array
if isTxRectArray
    % Create a URA System object for signal transmission
```

```

    txArray = phased.URA('Element',txAntenna,'Size',txArySize,'ElementSpacing',lambda/2);
else
    % Create a ULA System object for signal transmission
    txArray = phased.ULA('Element',txAntenna,'NumElements',nTx,'ElementSpacing',lambda/2);
end

% Configure receive antenna array
if isRxRectArray
    % Create a URA System object for signal reception
    rxArray = phased.URA('Element',rxAntenna,'Size',rxArySize,'ElementSpacing',lambda/2);
else
    % Create a ULA System object for signal reception
    rxArray = phased.ULA('Element',rxAntenna,'NumElements',nRx,'ElementSpacing',lambda/2);
end

```

Configure Scatterers

```

fixedScatMode = true;
rng(42);
if fixedScatMode
    % Fixed single scatterer location
    numScat = 1;
    scatPos = [60;10;15];
else
    % Generate scatterers at random positions
    numScat = 10; %#ok<UNRCH>
    azRange = -180:180;
    randAzOrder = randperm(length(azRange));
    elRange = -90:90;
    randElOrder = randperm(length(elRange));
    azAngInSph = deg2rad(azRange(randAzOrder(1:numScat)));
    elAngInSph = deg2rad(elRange(randElOrder(1:numScat)));
    r = 20;

    % Transform spherical coordinates to Cartesian coordinates
    [x,y,z] = sph2cart(azAngInSph,elAngInSph,r);
    scatPos = [x;y;z] + (txArrayPos + rxArrayPos)/2;
end

```

Transmit Beamforming and OFDM Modulation

Calculate the Steering Vectors

Create the steering vector System object for transmit antenna array.

```
txArrayStv = phased.SteeringVector('SensorArray',txArray,'PropagationSpeed',c);
```

Calculate the angle of scatterer position with respect to the transmit antenna array.

```
[~,scatAng] = rangeangle(scatPos(:,1),txArrayPos); % Pointing towards the first scatterer position
```

Configure the azimuth and elevation beamwidths of SSB transmit beam from the initial acquisition process (P-1).

```
azTxBeamWidth = 30; % In degrees
elTxBeamWidth = 30; % In degrees
```

Get the SSB transmit beam direction which is aligned (partially or fully) to the position of scatterer, by using the beamwidths in azimuth and elevation planes.

```
ssbTxAng = getInitialBeamDir(scatAng,azTxBeamWidth,eLTxBW);
```

Calculate the beam directions (azimuth and elevation angle pairs) for all active CSI-RS resources within the angular range covered by the SSB transmit beam.

```
% Get the number of transmit beams based on the number of active CSI-RS resources in a slot
numBeams = sum(csirsTransmitted);
```

```
% Get the azimuthal sweep range based on the SSB transmit beam direction
% and its beamwidth in azimuth plane
azSweepRange = [ssbTxAng(1) - azTxBeamWidth/2 ssbTxAng(1) + azTxBeamWidth/2];
```

```
% Get the elevation sweep range based on the SSB transmit beam direction
% and its beamwidth in elevation plane
elSweepRange = [ssbTxAng(2) - eLTxBW/2 ssbTxAng(2) + eLTxBW/2];
```

```
% Get the azimuth and elevation angle pairs for all NZP-CSI-RS transmit beams
azBW = beamwidth(txArray,fc,'Cut','Azimuth');
elBW = beamwidth(txArray,fc,'Cut','Elevation');
csirsBeamAng = hGetBeamSweepAngles(numBeams,azSweepRange,elSweepRange,azBW,elBW);
```

Calculate the steering vectors for all active CSI-RS resources.

```
wT = zeros(nTx,numBeams);
for beamIdx = 1:numBeams
    tempW = txArrayStv(fc,csirsBeamAng(:,beamIdx));
    wT(:,beamIdx) = tempW;
end
```

Apply Digital Beamforming

Loop over all NZP-CSI-RS resources and apply the digital beamforming to all the active ones. Digital beamforming is considered to offer frequency selective beamforming within the same OFDM symbol.

```
% Number of CSI-RS antenna ports
ports = csirs.NumCSIRSPorts(1);
% Initialize the beamformed grid
bfGrid = nrResourceGrid(carrier,nTx);
% Get the active NZP-CSI-RS resource indices
activeRes = find(logical(csirsTransmitted));
for resIdx = 1:numNZPRes
    % Initialize the carrier resource grid for one slot and map NZP-CSI-RS symbols onto
    % the grid
    txSlotGrid = nrResourceGrid(carrier,ports);
    txSlotGrid(csirsInd{resIdx}) = db2mag(powerCSIRS)*csirsSym{resIdx};
    reshapedSymb = reshape(txSlotGrid,[],ports);

    % Get the transmit beam index
    beamIdx = find(activeRes == resIdx);

    % Apply the digital beamforming
    if ~isempty(beamIdx)
        bfSymb = reshapedSymb * wT(:,beamIdx)';
        bfGrid = bfGrid + reshape(bfSymb,size(bfGrid));
    end
end
```

Perform OFDM Modulation

Generate the time-domain waveform by performing the OFDM modulation.

```
% Perform OFDM modulation
[tbfWaveform,ofdmInfo] = nrOFDMModulate(carrier,bfGrid);

% Normalize the beamformed time-domain waveform over the number of transmit
% antennas
tbfWaveform = tbfWaveform/sqrt(nTx);
```

Scattering MIMO Channel and AWGN

Configure the Channel

Configure the scattering-based MIMO propagation channel by using the System object `phased.ScatteringMIMOChannel` (Phased Array System Toolbox). This channel model applies time delay, gain, Doppler shift, phase change, free space path loss, and optionally, other atmospheric attenuations to the input.

```
chan = phased.ScatteringMIMOChannel;
chan.PropagationSpeed = c;
chan.CarrierFrequency = fc;
chan.Polarization = 'none';
chan.SpecifyAtmosphere = false;
chan.SampleRate = ofdmInfo.SampleRate;
chan.SimulateDirectPath = false;
chan.ChannelResponseOutputPort = true;

% Configure transmit array parameters
chan.TransmitArray = txArray;
chan.TransmitArrayMotionSource = 'property';
chan.TransmitArrayPosition = txArrayPos;

% Configure receive array parameters
chan.ReceiveArray = rxArray;
chan.ReceiveArrayMotionSource = 'property';
chan.ReceiveArrayPosition = rxArrayPos;

% Configure scatterers
chan.ScattererSpecificationSource = 'property';
chan.ScattererPosition = scatPos;
chan.ScattererCoefficient = ones(1,numScat);

% Get the maximum channel delay by transmitting random signal
[~,~,tau] = chan(complex(randn(chan.SampleRate*1e-3,nTx), ...
    randn(chan.SampleRate*1e-3,nTx)));
maxChDelay = ceil(max(tau)*chan.SampleRate);
```

Send the Waveform through the Channel

Append zeros at the end of the transmitted waveform to flush the channel content and then pass the time-domain waveform through the scattering MIMO channel. These zeros take into account any delay introduced in the channel.

```
% Append zeros to the transmit waveform to account for channel delay
tbfWaveform = [tbfWaveform; zeros(maxChDelay,nTx)];
```

```
% Pass the waveform through the channel
fadWave = chan(tbfWaveform);
```

Apply AWGN

Configure and apply the receive gain to the faded waveform, to compensate for the path loss. Then apply AWGN to the resultant waveform.

```
% Configure the receive gain
rxGain = 10.^((spLoss)/20); % Gain in linear scale
% Apply the gain
fadWaveG = fadWave*rxGain;

% Configure the SNR in dB
SNRdB = 20;
SNR = 10^(SNRdB/20); % SNR in linear scale
% Calculate the standard deviation for AWGN
N0 = 1/(sqrt(2.0*nRx*double(ofdmInfo.Nfft))*SNR);

% Generate AWGN
noise = N0*complex(randn(size(fadWaveG)),randn(size(fadWaveG)));
% Apply AWGN to the waveform
rxWaveform = fadWaveG + noise;
```

Timing Synchronization

Perform the timing synchronization by cross correlating the received reference symbols with a local copy of NZP-CSI-RS symbols.

```
% Generate reference symbols and indices
refSym = nrCSIRS(carrier,csirs);
refInd = nrCSIRSIndices(carrier,csirs);

% Estimate timing offset
offset = nrTimingEstimate(carrier,rxWaveform,refInd,refSym);
if offset > maxChDelay
    offset = 0;
end

% Correct timing offset
syncTdWaveform = rxWaveform(1+offset:end,:);
```

OFDM Demodulation and Receive Beamforming

OFDM Demodulation

OFDM demodulate the synchronized time-domain waveform.

```
rxGrid = nrOFDMDemodulate(carrier, syncTdWaveform);
```

Calculate Steering Vector

Create the steering vector System object for the receive antenna array.

```
rxArrayStv = phased.SteeringVector('SensorArray', rxArray, 'PropagationSpeed', c);
```

Calculate the angle of scatterer position with respect to the receive antenna array. Assuming this as receive beam direction from the initial acquisition process using SSB.

```
[~,scatRxAng] = rangeangle(scatPos(:,1),rxArrayPos); % Pointing towards the first scatterer position
```

Configure the azimuth and elevation beamwidths of receive beam from the initial acquisition process (P-1).

```
azRxBeamWidth = 30; % In degrees
elRxBeamWidth = 30; % In degrees
```

Get the initial receive beam direction which is aligned (partially or fully) to the position of scatterer, by using the beamwidths in azimuth and elevation planes from P-1.

```
rxAng = getInitialBeamDir(scatRxAng,azRxBeamWidth,elRxBeamWidth);
```

Calculate the steering vector for the angle of reception.

```
wR = rxArrayStv(fc,rxAng);
```

Apply Receive Beamforming

To perform digital beamforming at the receiver side, apply the steering weights to rxGrid, with the assumption that there is no other signal present in rxGrid (single UE scenario). Combine the signals from all receive antenna elements in case of FR2, as specified in TS 38.215 Section 5.1.2 [2 on page 1-0].

```
temp = rxGrid;
if strcmpi(freqRange,'FR1')
    % Beamforming without combining
    rbfGrid = reshape(reshape(temp,[],nRx).*wR',size(temp,1),size(temp,2),[]);
else % 'FR2'
    % Beamforming with combining
    rbfGrid = reshape(reshape(temp,[],nRx)*conj(wR),size(temp,1),size(temp,2),[]);
end
```

Plot the Scattering MIMO Scenario

Get the element positions of transmit and receive antenna arrays for plotting.

```
% Get the positions of transmit antenna elements (in meters)
txElemPos = getElementPosition(txArray);
% Get the positions of receive antenna elements (in meters)
rxElemPos = getElementPosition(rxArray);
```

Configure the MIMO scene parameters.

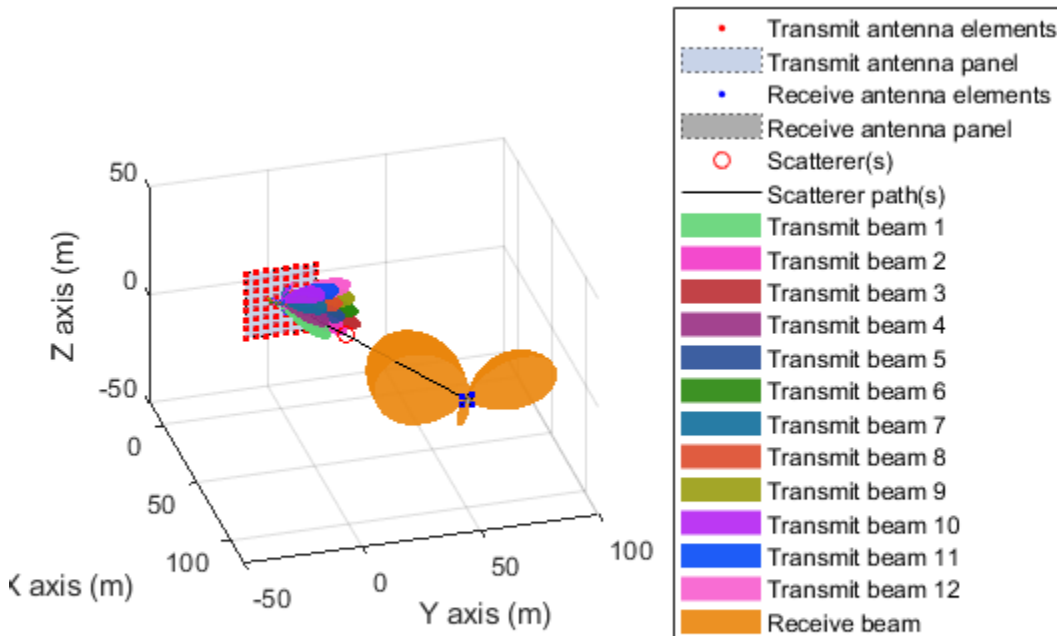
```
sceneParams.txElemPos = txElemPos;
sceneParams.rxElemPos = rxElemPos;
sceneParams.txArraySize = txArySize;
sceneParams.rxArraySize = rxArySize;
sceneParams.txArrayPos = txArrayPos;
sceneParams.rxArrayPos = rxArrayPos;
sceneParams.txAzAngles = -90:90; % Vector of azimuth angles, where the pattern of
                                % transmit antenna array is calculated
sceneParams.txElAngles = -90:90; % Vector of elevation angles, where the pattern of
                                % transmit antenna array is calculated
sceneParams.rxAzAngles = [90:180 -179:-90]; % Vector of azimuth angles, where the pattern of
                                % receive antenna array is calculated
sceneParams.rxElAngles = -90:90; % Vector of elevation angles, where the pattern of
                                % receive antenna array is calculated
```

```
sceneParams.scatPos = scatPos;
sceneParams.lambda = lambda;
sceneParams.arrayScaling = 100;
sceneParams.maxBeamLength = 45;
```

```
% To enlarge antenna arrays in the plot
% Maximum length of transmit and receive beams in the
```

Plot the scattering MIMO scenario (including transmit and receive antenna arrays, scatterer positions and their paths, and all the transmit and receive antenna array beam patterns) by using the helper function `hPlotSpatialMIMOScene`.

```
hPlotSpatialMIMOScene(sceneParams,wT,wR);
xlim([-20 120]);
ylim([-50 100]);
zlim([-50 50]);
view([74 29]);
```



Beam Determination

After the OFDM demodulation, the UE measures the RSRP for all the CSI-RS resources transmitted in different beams, given the current receive beam. Perform these measurements by using the helper function `hCSIRSMeasurements`.

```
% Perform RSRP measurements
meas = hCSIRSMeasurements(carrier,csirs,rbfGrid);

% Display the measurement quantities for all CSI-RS resources in dBm
RSRpdBm = meas.RSRpdBm;
disp(['RSRP measurements of all CSI-RS resources (in dBm):' 13 num2str(RSRpdBm)]);
```



```
RSRP measurements of all CSI-RS resources (in dBm):
42.3147      33.237      29.1999      45.1102      37.0922      31.4861      39.9414      33.50
```

Identify the maximum RSRP value from the measurements and find the best corresponding beam.

```
% Get the transmit beam index with maximum RSRP value
[~,maxRSRPIIdx] = max(RSRPdBm(logical(csirsTransmitted)));
```

```
% Get the CSI-RS resource index with maximum RSRP value
[~,maxRSRPResIdx] = max(RSRPdBm);
```

Calculate the beamwidth which corresponds to the refined transmit beam.

```
% Get the steering weights corresponding to refined transmit beam
if numBeams == 0
    disp('Refinement has not happened, as NZP-CSI-RS is not transmitted')
else
    refBeamWts = wT(:,maxRSRPIIdx);
    csirsAzBeamWidth = beamwidth(txArray,fc,'PropagationSpeed',c,'Weights',refBeamWts);
    csirsElBeamWidth = beamwidth(txArray,fc,'PropagationSpeed',c,'Weights',refBeamWts,'Cut','Elev');
    disp(['From initial beam acquisition:' 13 ' Beamwidth of initial SSB beam in azimuth plane is: '...
        num2str(azTxBeamWidth) ' degrees' 13 ...
        ' Beamwidth of initial SSB beam in elevation plane is: '...
        num2str(elTxBeamWidth) ' degrees' 13 13 ...
        'With transmit-end beam refinement:' 13 ' Refined transmit beam ('...
        num2str(maxRSRPIIdx) ') corresponds to CSI-RS resource '...
        num2str(maxRSRPResIdx) ' is selected in the direction ['...
        num2str(csirsBeamAng(1,maxRSRPIIdx)) ';' num2str(csirsBeamAng(2,maxRSRPIIdx))...
        ']' 13 ' Beamwidth of refined transmit beam in azimuth plane is: '...
        num2str(csirsAzBeamWidth) ' degrees' 13 ...
        ' Beamwidth of refined transmit beam in elevation plane is: '...
        num2str(csirsElBeamWidth) ' degrees']);
end
```

```
From initial beam acquisition:
Beamwidth of initial SSB beam in azimuth plane is: 30 degrees
Beamwidth of initial SSB beam in elevation plane is: 30 degrees
```

```
With transmit-end beam refinement:
Refined transmit beam (4) corresponds to CSI-RS resource 4 is selected in the direction [10;
Beamwidth of refined transmit beam in azimuth plane is: 12.98 degrees
Beamwidth of refined transmit beam in elevation plane is: 13.25 degrees
```

Summary and Further Exploration

This example highlights the beam refinement procedure (P-2) using NZP-CSI-RS. The procedure identifies a transmit beam that is finer than the beam from the initial acquisition.

You can configure multiple CSI-RS resources, transmit and receive antenna array configurations, and multiple scatterers to see the variations in the selection of the refined beam. You can also configure the azimuth and elevation angle pairs for the signal transmission and reception.

References

- 1 3GPP TR 38.802. "Study on New Radio access technology physical layer aspects." *3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Radio Access Network*.
- 2 3GPP TS 38.215. "NR; Physical layer measurements." *3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Radio Access Network*.

- 3 3GPP TS 38.214. "NR; Physical layer procedures for data." *3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Radio Access Network.*

Local Functions

```
function validateCSIRSPorts(csirs)
% validateCSIRSPorts validates the CSI-RS antenna ports, given the
% CSI-RS configuration object CSIRS.

    numPorts = csirs.NumCSIRSPorts;
    if any(numPorts > 1)
        error('nr5g:PortsGreaterThan1','CSI-RS resources must be configured for single-port for R
    end
end

function csirsTransmitted = getActiveCSIRSRes(carrier,csirs)
% getActiveCSIRSRes returns a binary vector indicating the presence of
% all CSI-RS resources in a specified slot, given the carrier
% configuration object CARRIER and CSI-RS configuration object CSIRS.

% Extract the following properties of carrier
NSlotA      = carrier.NSlot;           % Absolute slot number
NFrameA     = carrier.NFrame;         % Absolute frame number
SlotsPerFrame = carrier.SlotsPerFrame; % Number of slots per frame

% Calculate the appropriate frame number (0...1023) based on the
% absolute slot number
NFrameR = mod(NFrameA + fix(NSlotA/SlotsPerFrame),1024);
% Relative slot number (0...slotsPerFrame-1)
NSlotR = mod(NSlotA,SlotsPerFrame);

% Loop over the number of CSI-RS resources
numCSIRSRes = numel(csirs.CSIRSRes);
csirsTransmitted = zeros(1,numCSIRSRes);
csirs_struct = validateConfig(csirs);
for resIdx = 1:numCSIRSRes
    % Extract the CSI-RS slot periodicity and offset
    if isnumeric(csirs_struct.CSIRSRes{resIdx})
        Tcsi_rs = csirs_struct.CSIRSRes{resIdx}(1);
        Toffset = csirs_struct.CSIRSRes{resIdx}(2);
    else
        if strcmpi(csirs_struct.CSIRSRes{resIdx},'on')
            Tcsi_rs = 1;
        else
            Tcsi_rs = 0;
        end
        Toffset = 0;
    end
end

% Check for the presence of CSI-RS, based on slot periodicity and offset
if (Tcsi_rs ~= 0) && (mod(SlotsPerFrame*NFrameR + NSlotR - Toffset, Tcsi_rs) == 0)
    csirsTransmitted(resIdx) = 1;
end
end

function freqRange = validateFc(fc)
% validateFc validates the carrier frequency FC and returns the frequency
```

```

% range as either 'FR1' or 'FR2'.

if fc >= 410e6 && fc <= 7.125e9
    freqRange = 'FR1';
elseif fc >= 24.25e9 && fc <= 52.6e9
    freqRange = 'FR2';
else
    error('nr5g:invalidFreq',['Selected carrier frequency is outside '...
        'FR1 (410 MHz to 7.125 GHz) and FR2 (24.25 GHz to 52.6 GHz).']);
end
end

function beamDir = getInitialBeamDir(scatAng,azBeamWidth,elBeamWidth)
% getInitialBeamDir returns the initial beam direction BEAMDIR, given the
% angle of scatterer position with respect to transmit or receive antenna
% array SCATANG, beamwidth of transmit or receive beam in azimuth plane
% AZBEAMWIDTH, and beamwidth of transmit or receive beam in elevation
% plane ELBEAMWIDTH.

% Azimuth angle boundaries of all transmit/receive beams
azSSBSweep = -180:azBeamWidth:180;
% Elevation angle boundaries of all transmit/receive beams
elSSBSweep = -90:elBeamWidth:90;

% Get the azimuth angle of transmit/receive beam
azIdx1 = find(azSSBSweep <= scatAng(1),1,'last');
azIdx2 = find(azSSBSweep >= scatAng(1),1,'first');
azAng = (azSSBSweep(azIdx1) + azSSBSweep(azIdx2))/2;

% Get the elevation angle of transmit/receive beam
elIdx1 = find(elSSBSweep <= scatAng(2),1,'last');
elIdx2 = find(elSSBSweep >= scatAng(2),1,'first');
elAng = (elSSBSweep(elIdx1) + elSSBSweep(elIdx2))/2;

% Form the azimuth and elevation angle pair (in the form of [az;el])
% for transmit/receive beam
beamDir = [azAng;elAng];
end

```

See Also

Objects

nrCSIRSConfig | nrCarrierConfig

Related Examples

- “NR Cell Search and MIB and SIB1 Recovery” on page 1-30
- “NR SSB Beam Sweeping” on page 1-97

NR Positioning Reference Signal

This example shows how to configure the time-frequency aspects of the new radio (NR) positioning reference signal (PRS). The example shows how different PRS resource set configurations affect the time-frequency structure of the PRS using 5G Toolbox™ features.

Introduction

According to TR 22.872 [1 on page 1-0], these 5G use cases require finding the accurate and real-time location of nodes in the wireless network:

- Location-based services, such as accurate positioning for shared bikes and location-based advertising
- Industry-related use cases, such as waste management and collection
- eHealth-related use cases, such as medical equipment location in hospitals and patient location outside of hospitals
- Emergency-related and mission-critical-related use cases
- Road-related use cases, such as road-user charging
- Rail- and maritime-related use cases, such as asset and freight tracking
- Aerial-related use cases, such as unmanned aerial vehicle missions and operations

To find the position of a node, downlink reference signals are used at the user equipment (UE) side. The existing downlink reference signals, like the channel state information reference signal and the synchronization signals, are not used for the position estimation due to these limitations:

- These reference signals are not capable of detecting a sufficient number of neighbor access network nodes (gNBs) because of the interference from the adjacent cells when the signals from multiple cells collide in both the time-domain and frequency-domain. Due to this interference, signals from nearby cells shadow the weak signals from far away cells, causing difficulty for the UE to detect far away cells or gNBs. This difficulty results in a loss in hearability.
- These reference signals also have weak correlation properties due to low resource element (RE) density and their RE pattern might not spread across all of the subcarriers in the frequency-domain.

To overcome these limitations, the 3GPP introduced a new reference signal called the PRS in Release 16 of 5G specification, with a high RE density and with the correlation properties better than that of existing reference signals due to the diagonal or staggered PRS RE pattern. Hearability of the PRS is achieved with a concept called muting. With PRS muting, multiple cells transmit the PRS in a coordinated manner by muting the relevant PRS transmission occasions to avoid the interference from adjacent cells. This example demonstrates the time-frequency aspects of the PRS and shows how to configure PRS muting.

As per the 3GPP standard, you can configure a UE with one or more downlink PRS positioning frequency layer configurations. A PRS positioning frequency layer is defined as a collection of PRS resource sets with each PRS resource set defining a collection of PRS resources. All of the PRS resource sets defined in the PRS positioning frequency layer are configured with these common parameters:

- **Subcarrier Spacing:** Subcarrier spacing for all PRS resource sets in a PRS positioning frequency layer, specified as 15, 30, 60, or 120. Use the `SubcarrierSpacing` property of the `nrCarrierConfig` to set the subcarrier spacing of a PRS resource set.

- **Cyclic Prefix:** Cyclic prefix for all PRS resource sets in a PRS positioning frequency layer, specified as 'normal' or 'extended'. Use the CyclicPrefix property of the nrCarrierConfig object to set the cyclic prefix of a PRS resource set.
- **PRS Point A:** Absolute frequency of reference resource block or common resource block. The lowest subcarrier of this reference resource block is known as PRS Point A. The 5G specification defines the PRS frequency resource allocation relative to PRS point A. The example shows how to configure the start of PRS frequency-domain allocation using 5G Toolbox™ features and its relation with the standard notion.

The 5G Toolbox™ offers the PRS symbols and indices generation with a configuration object nrPRSConfig and functions nrPRS and nrPRSIndices. The nrPRSConfig object bundles all of the parameters related to a PRS resource set.

PRS Slot Configuration

These properties of the nrPRSConfig object control the PRS slot configuration.

- PRSResourceSetPeriod: Slot periodicity and offset (0-based) of a PRS resource set
- PRSResourceOffset: Slot offset (0-based) of each PRS resource defined relative to the slot offset of the PRS resource set
- PRSResourceRepetition: Repetition factor of all PRS resources in a PRS resource set
- PRSResourceTimeGap: Slot offset between two consecutive repetition indices of all PRS resources in a PRS resource set

The Figure 1 illustrates the case of a PRS resource set with 2 PRS resources. The PRS resource set period is 10 slots and the PRS resource set offset is 3 slots (0-based). The first PRS resource offset is 1 slot (0-based) and the second PRS resource offset is 4 slots (0-based). The PRS resource repetition factor is 2 (which means each PRS resource is repeated twice in all PRS resource set instances), and the PRS resource time gap is 2 (which means an offset of 2 slots).

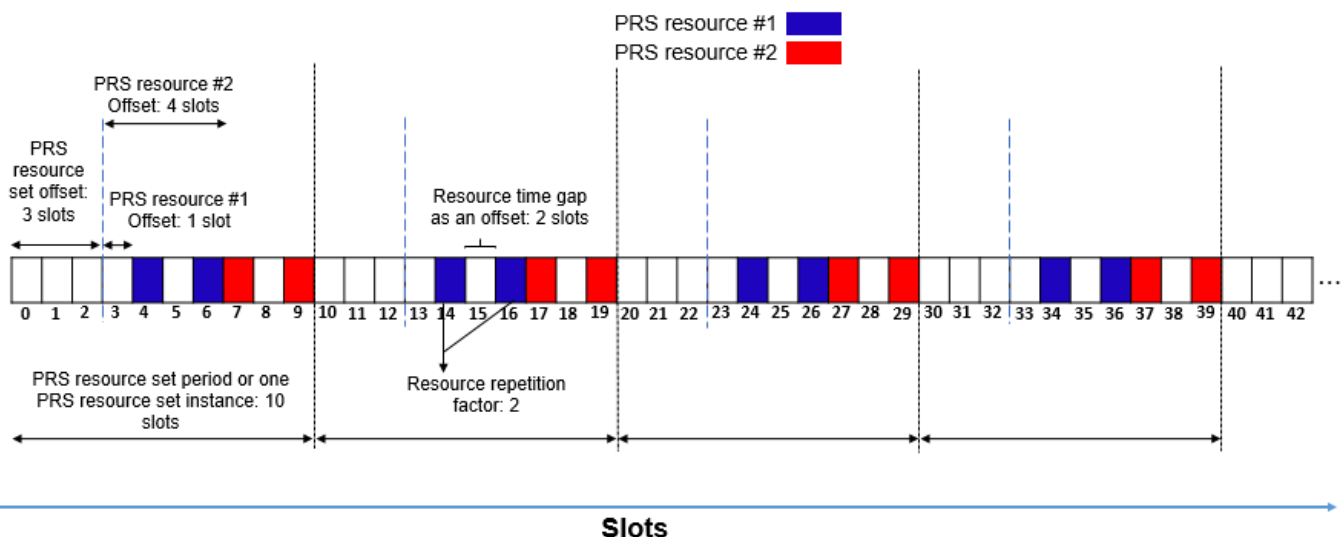


Figure 1: PRS Slot Configuration

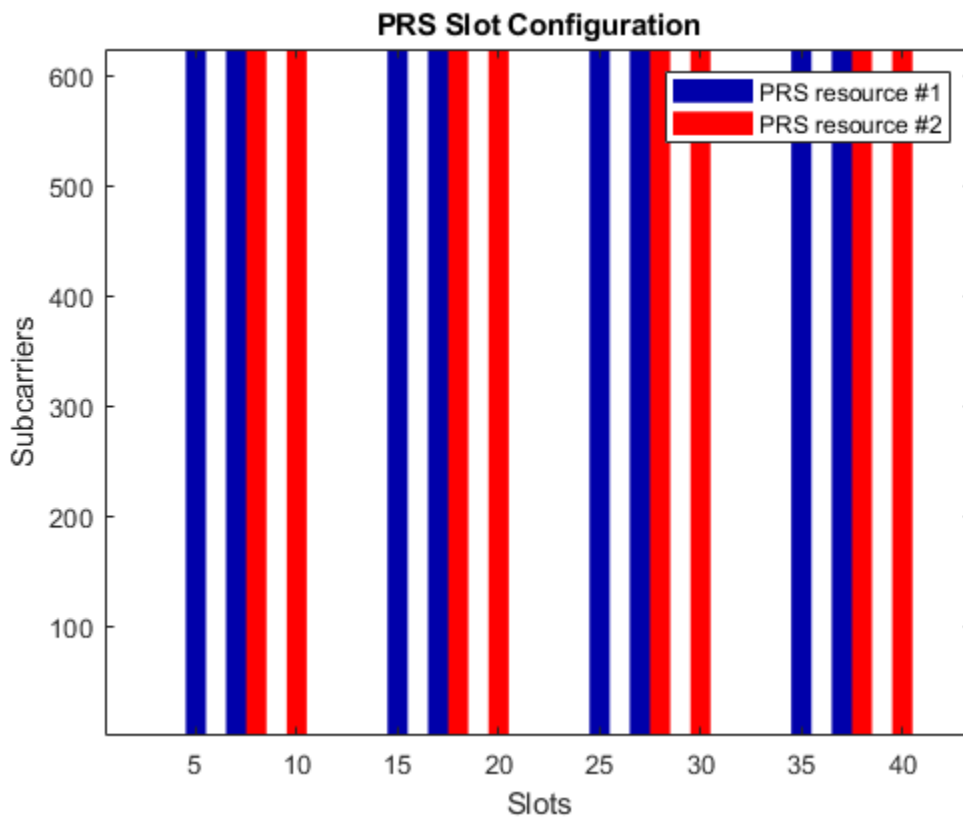
Configure the PRS slot configuration parameters and plot the carrier grid in a slot level to highlight the slots in which PRS resources are present.

```

% Set carrier parameters
carrier = nrCarrierConfig;
carrier.SubcarrierSpacing = 15;
carrier.CyclicPrefix = 'Normal';

% Set parameters related to PRS slot configuration
prs = nrPRSConfig;
prs.PRSResourceSetPeriod = [10 3];
prs.PRSResourceOffset = [1 4];
prs.PRSResourceRepetition = 2;
prs.PRSResourceTimeGap = 2;
numSlots = 43; % Consider 43 slots to compare the plot with
plotTitle = 'PRS Slot Configuration';
plotGrid(carrier,prs,numSlots,'SlotFill',plotTitle); % Slot numbers on the x-axis of the MATLAB p

```



PRS Muting Configuration

You can mute a PRS resource in two ways:

- Mute the PRS resource set instances using the properties `MutingPattern1` and `MutingBitRepetition` of the `nrPRSConfig` object
- Mute the PRS resource repetition indices using the property `MutingPattern2` of the `nrPRSConfig` object

MutingPattern1: A binary vector that controls the muting of PRS resource set instances. Each element in the binary vector controls the muting of all PRS resources in a PRS resource set instance (one instance corresponds to one period of the PRS resource set). The first element in the binary

vector corresponds to the first PRS resource set instance, the second element corresponds to the second PRS resource set instance, and so on.

- A binary value of 1 indicates that all PRS resources in a PRS resource set instance are transmitted.
- A binary value of 0 indicates that all PRS resources in a PRS resource set instance are muted.

The Figure 2 illustrates the case of muting bit pattern option-1 as [1 0] in addition to the previous PRS slot configuration which is shown in Figure 1. In this case, the effective muting bit pattern option-1 at PRS resource set instance level is [1 0 1 0 1 0 ...], which is the repeated pattern of MutingPattern1.

Solid fill in the figure represents the PRS resource set instances that are transmitted, and pattern fill in the figure represents the PRS resource set instances that are muted or not transmitted.

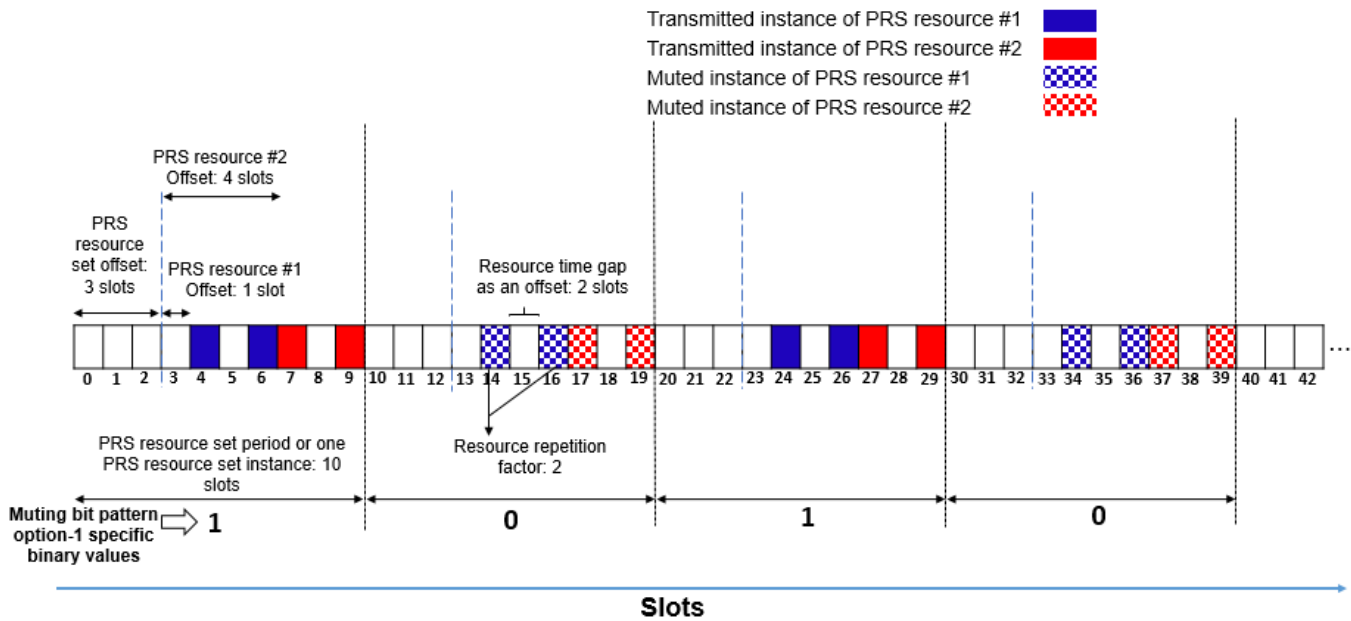


Figure 2: Muting Bit Pattern Option-1 Configuration

MutingBitRepetition: Number of consecutive PRS resource set instances (say N) corresponding to a single element of the **MutingPattern1** binary vector. The first element in the **MutingPattern1** binary vector corresponds to N consecutive instances of a PRS resource set, the second element corresponds to the next N consecutive instances of a PRS resource set, and so on.

The Figure 3 illustrates the case of muting pattern option-1 as [1 0] and muting bit repetition factor as 2 in addition to the previous PRS slot configuration which is shown in Figure 1. With these parameters, the effective muting bit pattern at PRS resource set instance level is [1 1 0 0 1 1 0 0 ...].

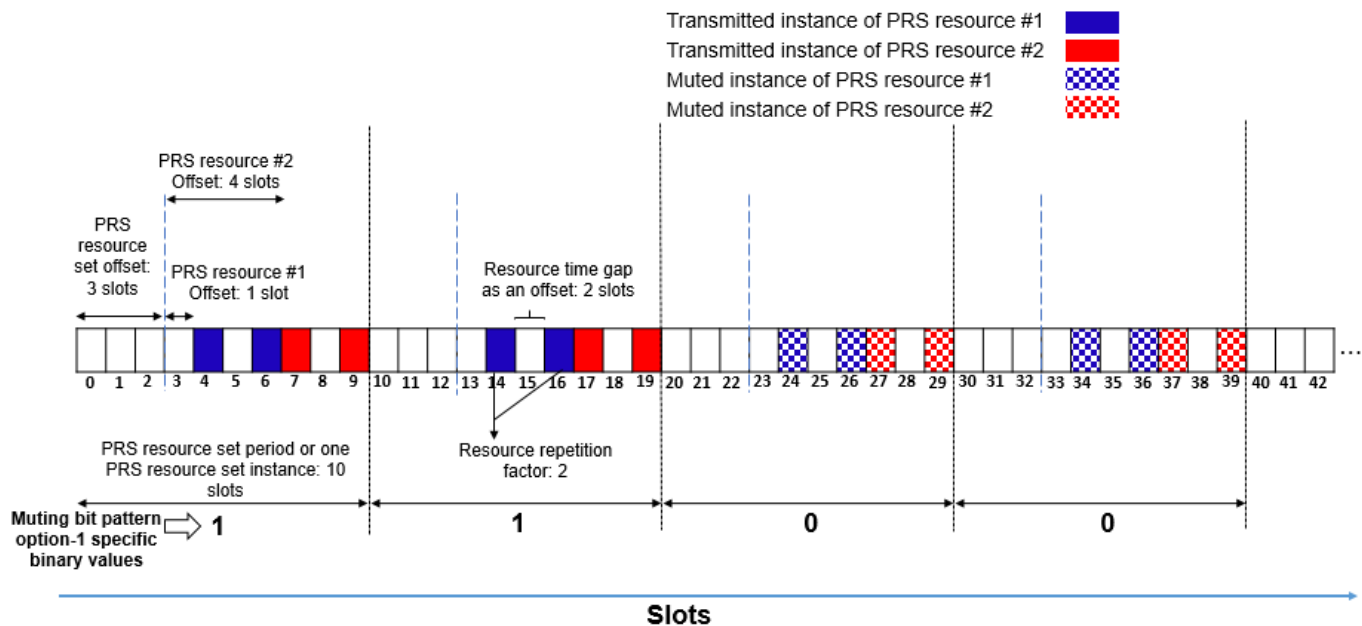


Figure 3: Muting Bit Pattern Option-1 with Muting Bit Repetition Factor Configuration

MutingPattern2: A binary vector that controls the muting of PRS resource repetition indices in all active PRS resource set instances. The first element in the binary vector corresponds to the first repetition index of a PRS resource, the second element corresponds to the second repetition index of a PRS resource, and so on. The length of the binary vector is equal to the value of the **PRSResourceRepetition** property and the same binary vector is applicable to all PRS resources in a PRS resource set.

The Figure 4 illustrates the case of muting bit pattern option-2 as [0 1] in addition to the previous PRS slot configuration which is shown in Figure 1. In this case, the effective muting bit pattern option-2 at PRS resource repetition index level is [0 1 0 1 0 1 ...], which is the repeated pattern of **MutingPattern2**.

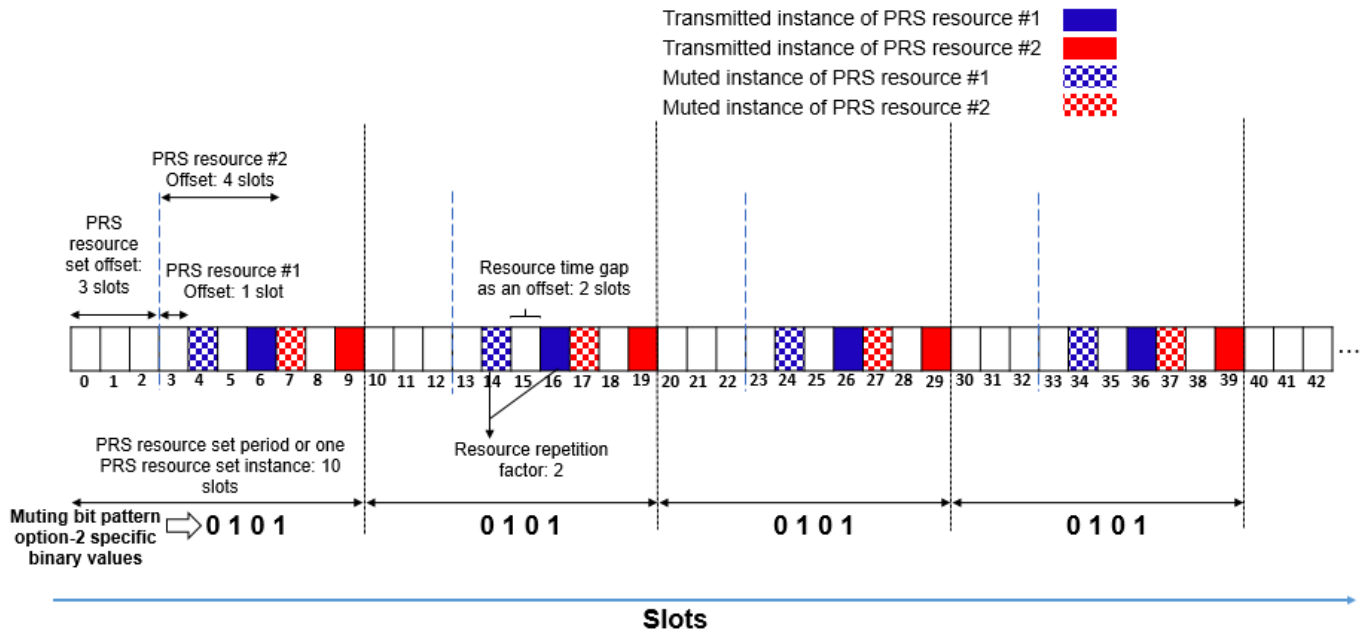


Figure 4: Muting Bit Pattern Option-2 Configuration

When you configure both the `MutingPattern1` and `MutingPattern2` properties, the effective muting bit pattern is equal to the bit-wise AND of muting bit pattern option-1 and muting bit pattern option-2.

The Figure 5 illustrates the case of muting bit pattern option-1 as [1 0], muting bit repetition factor as 2, and muting bit pattern option-2 as [0 1] in addition to the previous PRS slot configuration which is shown in Figure 1. With these parameters, the effective muting bit pattern option-1 at PRS resource set instance level is [1 1 0 0 1 1 ...] and the effective muting bit pattern option-2 at PRS resource repetition index level is [0 1 0 1 0 1 ...].

For the specified configuration, as the number of PRS resources is 2 and the PRS resource repetition factor is 2, one PRS resource set instance contains four resource instances. And below are the muting bit pattern option-1 and the muting bit pattern option-2 at PRS resource repetition index level:

Muting bit pattern option-1 at PRS resource repetition index level, $binaryVec1 = [1\ 1\ 1\ 1\ 1\ 1\ 1\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 1\ 1\ 1\ 1\ 1\ 1\ 1\ \dots]$.

Muting bit pattern option-2 at PRS resource repetition index level, $binaryVec2 = [0\ 1\ 0\ 1\ 0\ 1\ 0\ 1\ 0\ 1\ 0\ 1\ 0\ 1\ 0\ 1\ 0\ 1\ 0\ 1\ \dots]$.

Effective muting bit pattern at PRS resource repetition index level is the bit-wise AND of $binaryVec1$ and $binaryVec2$, which is equal to [0 1 0 1 0 1 0 1 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 1 0 1 0 1 0 1 ...]. You can observe this pattern in the Figure 5.

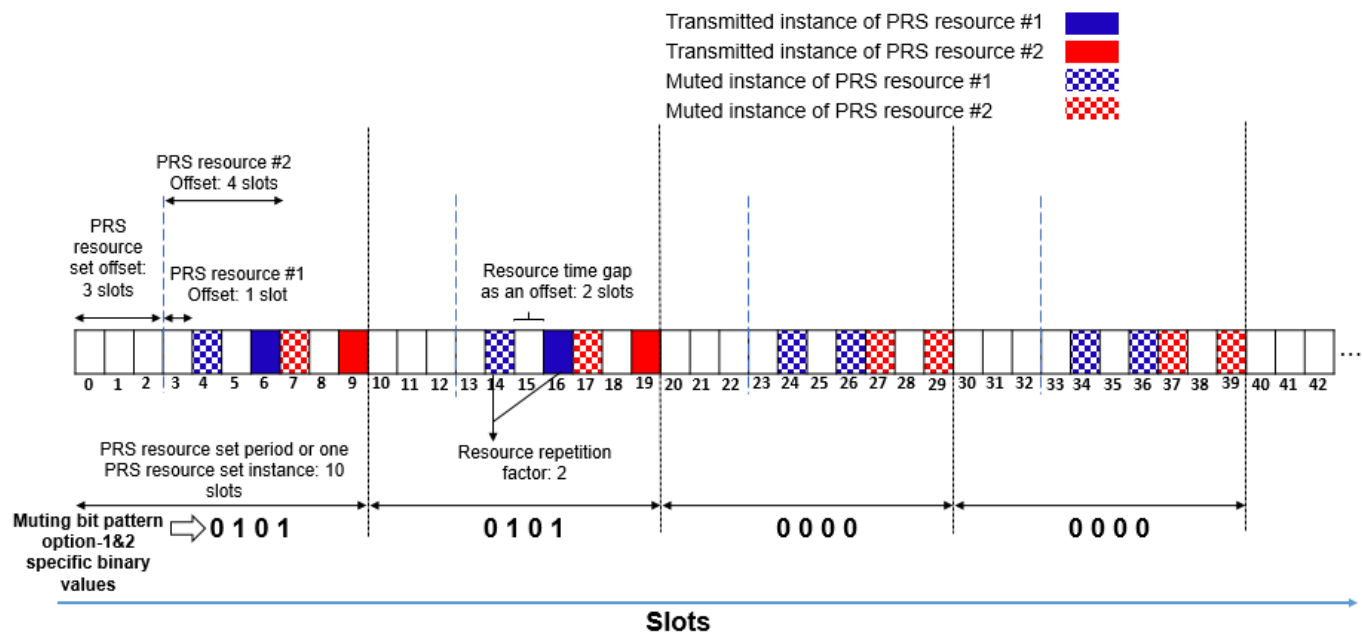


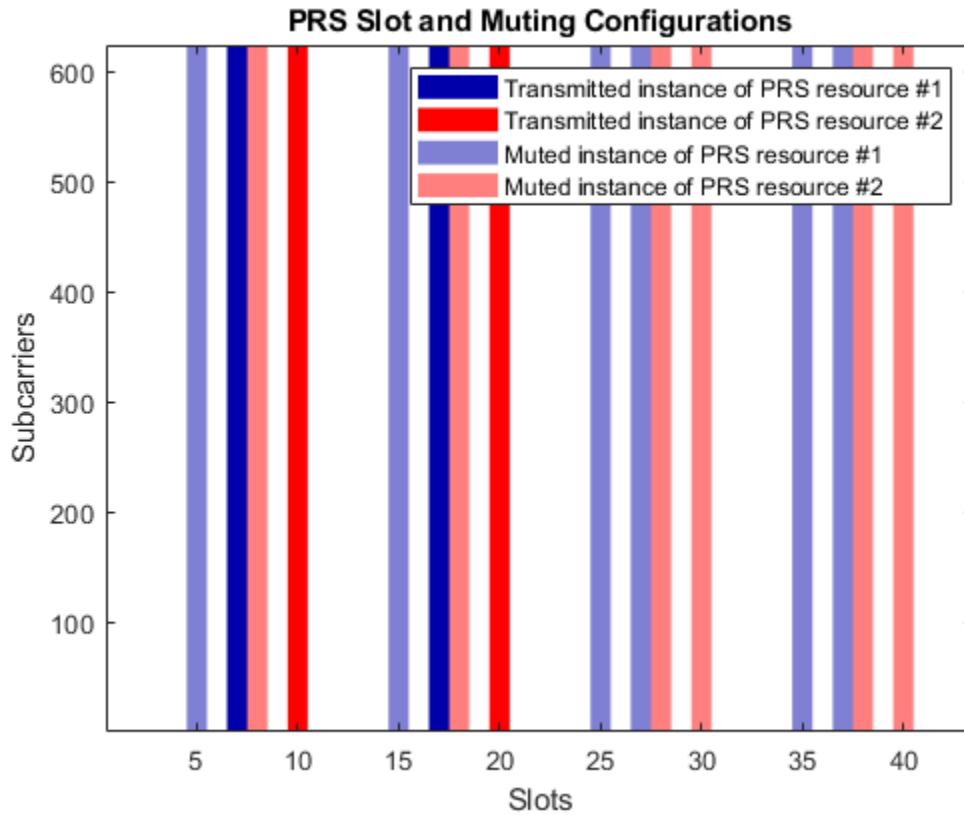
Figure 5: Muting Bit Pattern Option-1 and Option-2 Configuration

Configure the PRS muting patterns in addition to the previous PRS slot configuration in `prs`. MATLAB code generates the PRS resources as empty for the slots that are muted. This example highlights the muted slots with light shade in the generated plots for the easy comparison with the Figures 2 to 5.

```

prs.MutingPattern1 = [1 0]; % Use [] to disable the muting bit pattern
prs.MutingBitRepetition = 2;
prs.MutingPattern2 = [0 1]; % Use [] to disable the muting bit pattern
plotTitle = 'PRS Slot and Muting Configurations';
plotGrid(carrier,prs,numSlots,'SlotFill',plotTitle); % Slot numbers on the x-axis of the MATLAB

```



PRS Time-Domain and Frequency-Domain Allocation

These properties of the `nrPRSConfig` object control the time-domain allocation of a PRS resource.

- `NumPRSSymbols` (L_{PRS}): Number of consecutive OFDM symbols in a slot that are allocated for each PRS resource in a PRS resource set.
- `SymbolStart` ($l_{\text{start}}^{\text{PRS}}$): Starting OFDM symbol (0-based) of each PRS resource in a PRS resource set. This property is defined relative to the first OFDM symbol of the slot (symbol #0).

The OFDM symbols allocated for a PRS resource are defined as

$$l = l_{\text{start}}^{\text{PRS}}, l_{\text{start}}^{\text{PRS}} + 1, \dots, l_{\text{start}}^{\text{PRS}} + L_{\text{PRS}} - 1.$$

The Figure 6 illustrates the case, where the number of OFDM symbols allocated for a PRS resource is 6 and the starting OFDM symbol of PRS resource allocation is 3 (0-based).

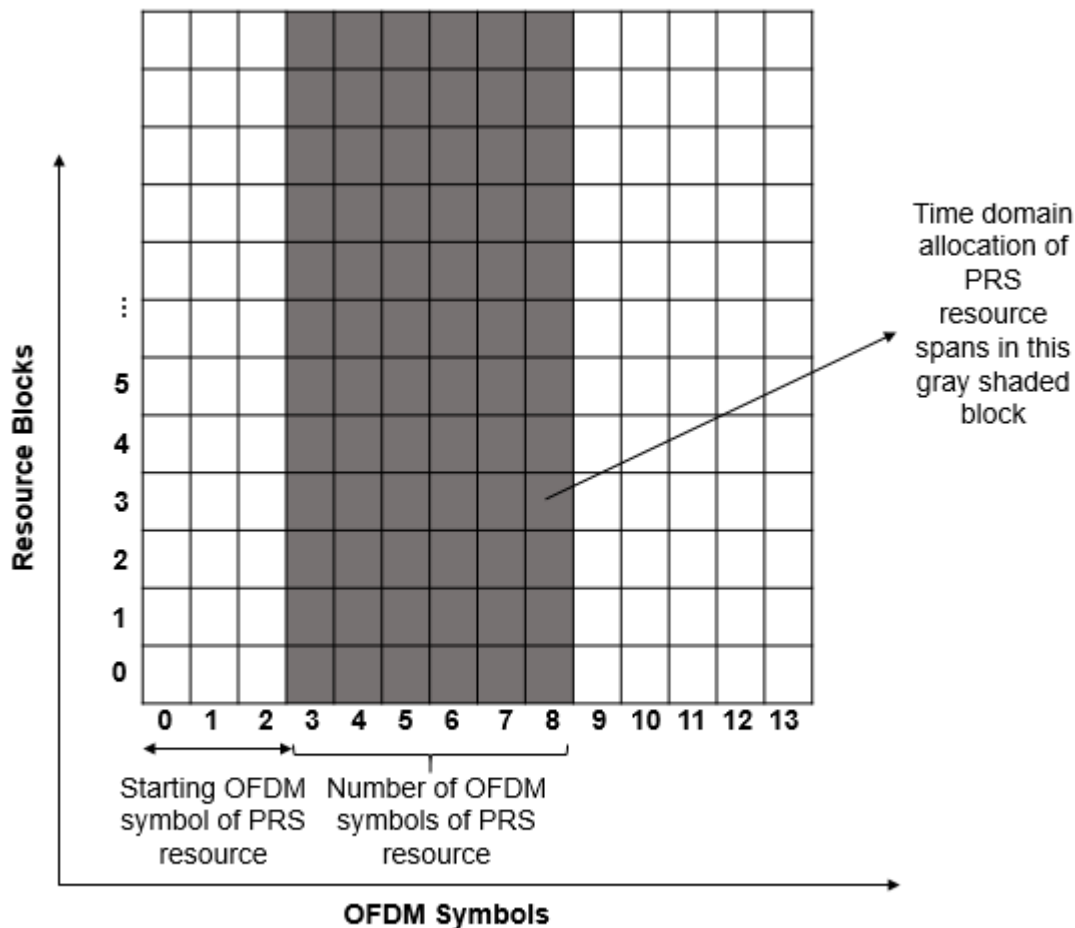


Figure 6: PRS OFDM Symbols Allocation

These properties of the `nrPRSCfg` object control the frequency-domain allocation of a PRS resource at RB level granularity.

- `NumRB`: Number of physical resource blocks (PRBs) allocated for all PRS resources in a PRS resource set.
- `RBOffset`: Starting PRB index (0-based) of all PRS resources in a PRS resource set. This property is defined relative to the carrier resource grid, but the specification defines this offset relative to common resource block 0 (CRB 0) (the Figure 7 highlights these notations).

The Figure 7 illustrates the frequency-domain allocation of a PRS resource and the carrier.

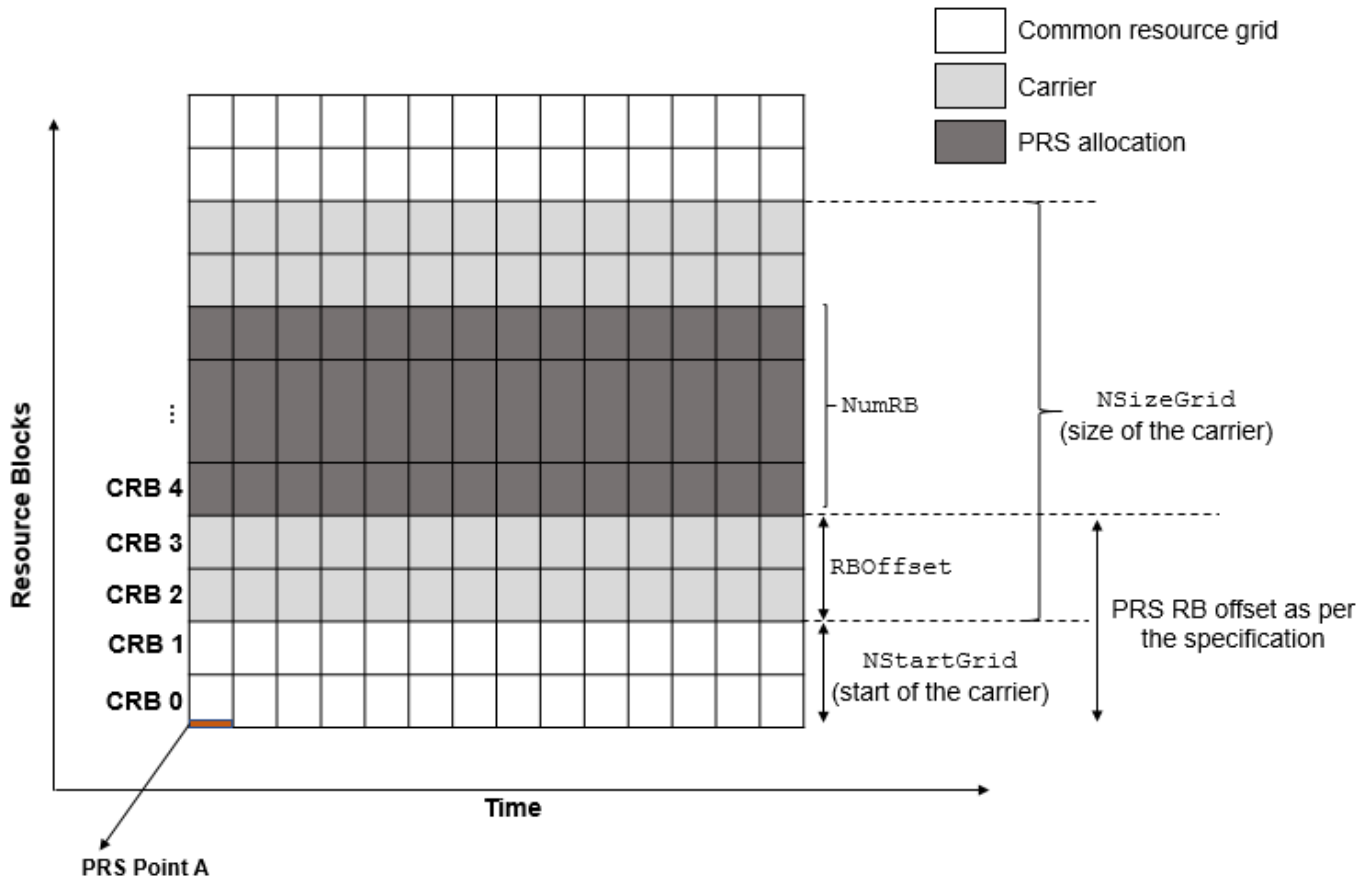


Figure 7: PRS Resource Blocks Allocation

These properties of the nrPRSConfig object control the frequency-domain allocation of a PRS resource at RE level granularity.

- CombSize (K_{comb}^{PRS}): RE density of all PRS resources in a PRS resource set. For example, if you configure the value as $i \in \{2, 4, 6, 12\}$, every i th RE in the PRB is allocated for the PRS.
- REOffset (k_{offset}^{PRS}): Starting RE offset (0-based) in the first OFDM symbol of each PRS resource in a PRS resource set. The relative RE offsets of the next or the following PRS OFDM symbols are defined relative to this REOffset value, as shown in the table in the Figure 8.

K_{comb}^{PRS}	Symbol Numbers within the Downlink PRS Resource Allocation: $(l - l_{start}^{PRS}) = 0, \dots, L_{PRS} - 1$											
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11
2	0	1	0	1	0	1	0	1	0	1	0	1
4	0	2	1	3	0	2	1	3	0	2	1	3
6	0	3	1	4	2	5	0	3	1	4	2	5
12	0	6	3	9	1	7	4	10	2	8	5	11

Figure 8: PRS Resource Element Offsets

Consider the number of OFDM symbols allocated for a PRS resource as 6, the starting OFDM symbol of PRS resource allocation as 3 (0-based), the PRS comb size as 4, and the RE offset in the first OFDM symbol as 2 (0-based). For PRS comb size 4, the relative RE offsets of the following PRS OFDM symbols are calculated based on row 2 from the table in the Figure 8.

For the specified configuration, the OFDM symbol numbers within the PRS resource allocation are $l - l_{\text{start}}^{\text{PRS}} = 0, \dots, 5$ (0-based).

From the table in the Figure 8, the relative RE offsets (k') in the PRS OFDM symbols are [0 2 1 3 0 2]. The arrows in the Figure 9 highlight these relative offsets. The figure shows a single PRB in one slot to highlight the RE level pattern.

Effective RE offsets (the second term of the k calculation, as defined in TS 38.211 Section 7.4.1.7.3 [2 on page 1-0]) in the PRS OFDM symbols are

$$\text{mod}(k_{\text{offset}}^{\text{PRS}} + k', K_{\text{comb}}^{\text{PRS}}) = \text{mod}([2\ 4\ 3\ 5\ 2\ 4], 4) = [2\ 0\ 3\ 1\ 2\ 0] \text{ (0-based)}.$$

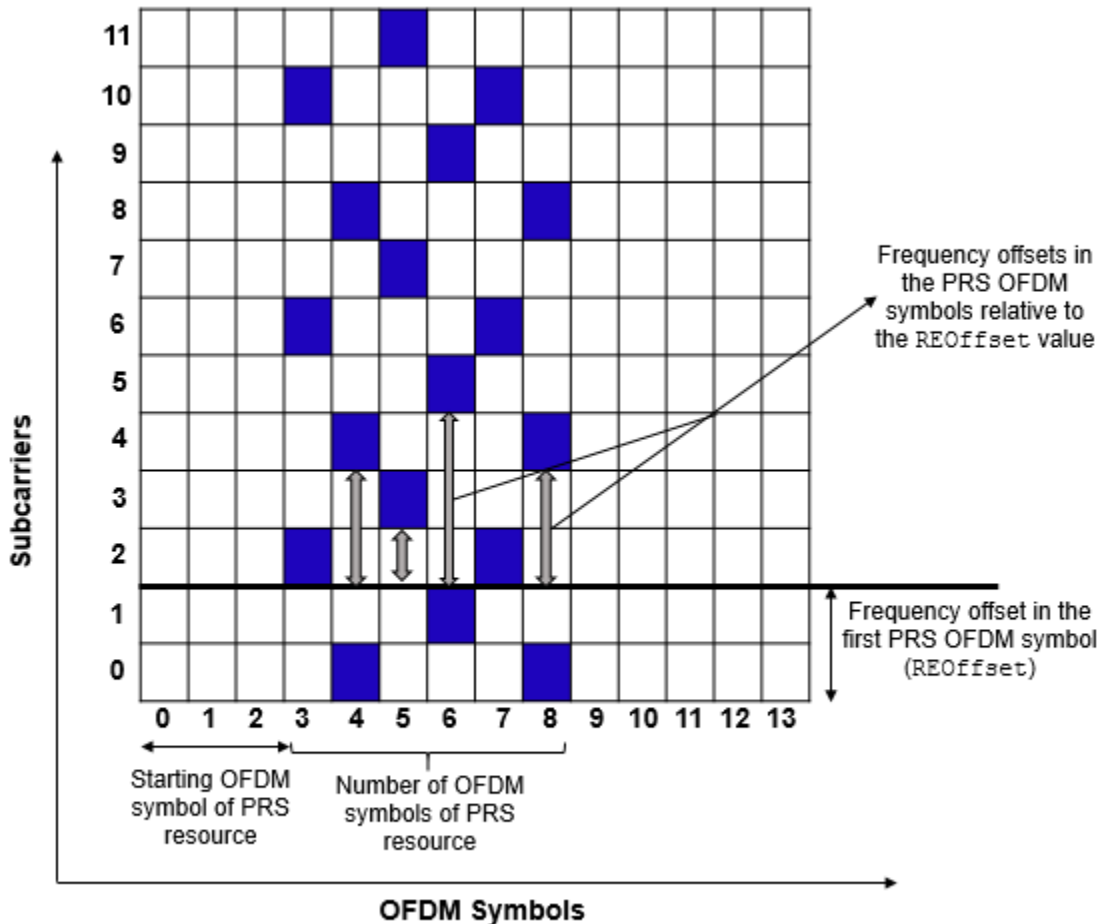


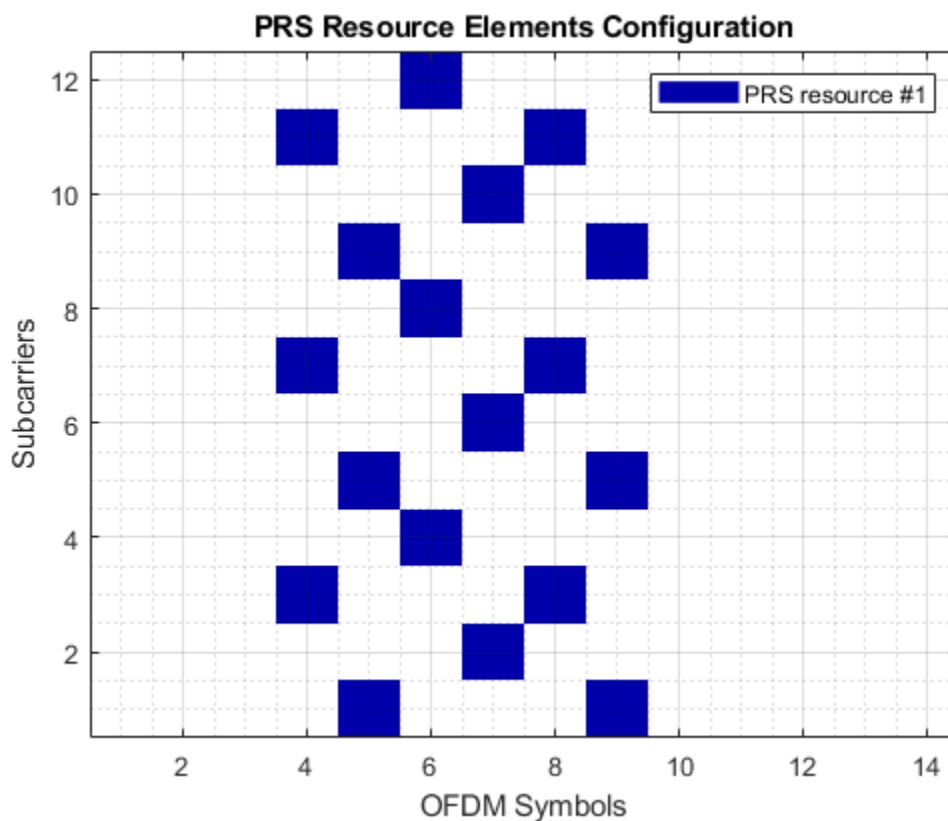
Figure 9: PRS Resource Elements Allocation

Configure the RE and symbol level allocation of the PRS. To observe the frequency-domain pattern at the RE level, this code uses a single PRB in one slot.

```

carrier.NSizeGrid = 1;
prs = nrPRSConfig;
prs.NumPRSSymbols = 6;
prs.SymbolStart = 3;
prs.NumRB = 1;
prs.RBOffset = 0;
prs.CombSize = 4;
prs.REOffset = 2;
numSlots = 1; % Consider one slot to highlight the RE pattern
plotTitle = 'PRS Resource Elements Configuration';
plotGrid(carrier,prs,numSlots,'REFill',plotTitle); % OFDM symbol and subcarrier numbers in the M
grid on;
grid minor;

```



PRs Sequence Identity

The NPRSID property of the nrPRSConfig object is used in the initialization of a pseudo-random binary sequence to generate the PRS symbols, as defined in TS 38.211 Section 7.4.1.7.2 [2 on page 1-0].

Summary and Further Exploration

The example shows how to configure the time-frequency aspects of the PRS and how different PRS resource set configurations affect the time-frequency structure of the PRS.

Configure multiple PRS resources with different time and frequency allocation aspects and slot configuration aspects, and then observe the variations in the slot allocation and RE positions. Try

different muting configurations (different combinations of muting bit pattern option-1 and option-2), and then see the variations in the grid.

References

- 1 3GPP TR 22.872. "Study on positioning use cases." *3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Services And System Aspects*.
- 2 3GPP TS 38.211. "NR; Physical channels and modulation (Release 16)." *3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Radio Access Network*.

Local functions

This example uses these local functions to plot the time-frequency aspects of all PRS resources configured in a PRS resource set.

```
function plotGrid(carrier,prs,numSlots,flag,imTitle)
% plotGrid(CARRIER,PRS,NUMSLOTS,FLAG,IMTITLE) plots the carrier grid by
% considering these inputs:
%
% CARRIER - Carrier specific configuration object
% PRS      - Positioning reference signal configuration object
% NUMSLOTS - Number of slots over which the function plots the
%           carrier grid
% FLAG     - Flag to consider the plot style, specified as
%           'SlotFill' or 'REFill'. The 'SlotFill' option highlights the
%           slots in which the PRS is present. The 'REFill' option
%           highlights the REs in which the PRS is present.
% IMTITLE  - Title for the plot

[transmittedSlots,mutedSlots] = getTransmittedAndMutedSlots(carrier,prs,numSlots); % Of size
numRes = size(transmittedSlots,2);
rng(37); % Set RNG state for repeatability
tempColors = reshape(rand((numRes-2)*3,1),[],3);
map = [1 1 1;... % White color
       0 0 0.6667;... % Blue color
       1 0 0;... % Red color
       tempColors];
resScalings = 1:numRes+1; % 1 for white color, 2 for blue color, and 3 for red color, and so
prsREGrid = zeros(carrier.NSizeGrid*12,carrier.SymbolsPerSlot*numSlots);
prsSlotGrid = resScalings(1)*ones(carrier.NSizeGrid*12,numSlots); % For whi

figure();
% Plot PRS slot grid
image(abs(prsSlotGrid));

% Apply colormap to image
colormap(map);

for slotIdx = 0:numSlots-1
    if strcmpi(flag,'REFill')
        carrier.NSlot = slotIdx;
        ind = nrPRSIndices(carrier,prs,'OutputResourceFormat','cell');
        sym = nrPRS(carrier,prs,'OutputResourceFormat','cell');
        slotGrid = nrResourceGrid(carrier);
        for resIdx = 1:numel(ind)
            slotGrid(ind{resIdx}) = resScalings(resIdx+1)*abs(sym{resIdx});
        end
    end
end
```



```

    prsREGrid(:,(1:carrier.SymbolsPerSlot)+carrier.SymbolsPerSlot*slotIdx) = slotGrid;

    % Replace all zero values of carrier grid with proper scaling
    % for white background
    prsREGrid(prsREGrid == 0) = resScalings(1);

    % Plot carrier grid
    image(abs(prsREGrid));
    axis xy;

    % Apply colormap to image
    colormap(map);

    % Add labels to x-axis and y-axis
    xlabel('OFDM Symbols');
    ylabel('Subcarriers');

    % Generate lines
    L = line(ones(numRes),ones(numRes),'LineWidth',8);
    % Index color map and associate selected colors with lines
    set(L,{'color'},mat2cell(map(resScalings(2:end),:),ones(1,numRes),3));
    % Create legend
    legendNames = cell(1,numRes);
    for resIdx = 1:numRes
        legendNames{resIdx} = ['PRS resource #' num2str(resIdx)];
    end
    legend(legendNames{:});
else % 'SlotFill'
    axis xy;
    hold on;
    for resIdx = 1:numRes
        ismuted = mutedSlots(slotIdx+1,resIdx);
        isTransmitted = transmittedSlots(slotIdx+1,resIdx);
        temp = [slotIdx+1 slotIdx+1];
        color = map(resIdx+1,:);
        if isTransmitted
            hT(resIdx) = patch([temp(1)-0.5 temp(1)-0.5 temp(end)+0.5 temp(end)+0.5],[1 0.5 0.5 1],
                color,'LineStyle','none'); %#ok<AGROW>
        end
        if ismuted
            hM(resIdx) = patch([temp(1)-0.5 temp(1)-0.5 temp(end)+0.5 temp(end)+0.5],[1 0.5 0.5 1],
                color,'LineStyle','none','FaceAlpha',0.5); %#ok<AGROW>
        end
    end
end
end

% Add title to image
title(imTitle);
if strcmpi(flag,'SlotFill')
    % Add labels to x-axis and y-axis
    xlabel('Slots');
    ylabel('Subcarriers');

    % Create legend
    legendNames = cell(1,numRes);
    legendNamesTxRes = cell(1,numRes);
    legendNamesMutedRes = cell(1,numRes);

```

```

    for resIdx = 1:numRes
        legendNames{resIdx} = ['PRS resource #' num2str(resIdx)];
        legendNamesTxRes{resIdx} = ['Transmitted instance of PRS resource #' num2str(resIdx)];
        legendNamesMutedRes{resIdx} = ['Muted instance of PRS resource #' num2str(resIdx)];
    end
    if sum(mutedSlots(:)) > 0
        legend([hT hM],[legendNamesTxRes legendNamesMutedRes]);
    else
        legend(hT,legendNames);
    end
end
end

function [transmittedSlots,mutedSlots] = getTransmittedAndMutedSlots(carrier,prs,numSlots)
% [TRANSMITTEDSLOTS,MUTEDSLOTS] = getTransmittedAndMutedSlots(CARRIER,PRS,NUMSLOTS)
% returns logical arrays to give information about transmitted slots
% TRANSMITTEDSLOTS and muted slots MUTEDSLOTS for all PRS resources by
% considering these inputs:
%
% CARRIER - Carrier specific configuration object
% PRS      - Positioning reference signal configuration object
% NUMSLOTS - Number of slots for which the output is returned

% Take copy of input PRS configuration to retain input muting
% configuration unchanged for further processing
prs1 = prs;

% Extract PRS configuration without considering muting aspects
prs1.MutingPattern1 = [];
prs1.MutingBitRepetition = 2;
prs1.MutingPattern2 = [];
numResOffVal = numel(prs1.PRSResourceOffset);
numSymStartVal = numel(prs1.SymbolStart);
numPRSSymVal = numel(prs1.NumPRSSymbols);
numREOffVal = numel(prs1.REOffset);
numNPRSIDVal = numel(prs1.NPRSID);

% Calculate the number of PRS resources configured in a PRS
% resource set
numRes = max([numResOffVal, numSymStartVal, numPRSSymVal, ...
    numREOffVal, numNPRSIDVal]);
PRSPresenceWithoutMuting = zeros(numSlots,numRes);
for slotIdx = 0:numSlots-1
    carrier.NSlot = slotIdx;
    [~,PRSPresence] = nr5g.internal.validateAndSchedulePRS(carrier,prs1);
    PRSPresenceWithoutMuting(slotIdx+1,:) = PRSPresence;
end

% Consider PRS configuration with muting aspects
prs1.MutingPattern1 = prs.MutingPattern1;
prs1.MutingBitRepetition = prs.MutingBitRepetition;
prs1.MutingPattern2 = prs.MutingPattern2;
PRSPresenceWithMuting = zeros(numSlots,numRes);
for slotIdx = 0:numSlots-1
    carrier.NSlot = slotIdx;
    [~,PRSPresence] = nr5g.internal.validateAndSchedulePRS(carrier,prs1);
    PRSPresenceWithMuting(slotIdx+1,:) = PRSPresence;
end

```

```
    % Identify transmitted and muted slots based on PRS scheduling
    transmittedSlots = PRSPresenceWithMuting;           % Of size numSlots
    mutedSlots = PRSPresenceWithOutMuting ~= PRSPresenceWithMuting; % Of size numSlots
end
```

See Also

Objects

nrCarrierConfig | nrPRSConfig

Functions

nrPRS | nrPRSIndices

Uplink Channels

5G NR Uplink Vector Waveform Generation

This example shows how to configure and generate a 5G NR uplink vector waveform with PUSCH and SRS for a baseband component carrier by using the `nrWaveformGenerator` function.

Introduction

This example shows how to parameterize and generate a 5G New Radio (NR) uplink waveform by using the `nrWaveformGenerator` function. The generated waveform contains these channels and signals:

- PUSCH and its associated DM-RS and PT-RS
- SRS

This example demonstrates how to parameterize and generate a baseband component carrier waveform characterized by multiple subcarrier spacing (SCS) carriers and bandwidth parts (BWP). You can generate multiple instances of the physical uplink shared channel (PUSCH) and the sounding reference signal (SRS) over the different BWPs.

The example also shows how to parameterize and generate uplink control information (UCI) on PUSCH with CG-UCI and SRS for positioning.

Waveform and Carrier Configuration

The baseband waveform generation is parameterized by the `nrULCarrierConfig` object and a set of additional objects associated with the waveform channels and signals.

With the `nrULCarrierConfig` object, you can set these uplink carrier configuration parameters.

- Label for this UL carrier configuration
- SCS carrier bandwidth in resource blocks
- Carrier cell ID
- Length of the generated waveform in subframes
- Windowing
- Sample rate of the OFDM modulated waveform
- Carrier frequency for symbol phase compensation

You can control SCS carrier bandwidths and guardbands using the `NStartGrid` and `NSizeGrid` properties of the `nrSCSCarrierConfig` object.

```

waveconfig = nrULCarrierConfig(); % Create an instance of the waveform's parameter object
waveconfig.Label = 'UL carrier 1'; % Label for this uplink waveform configuration
waveconfig.NCellID = 0; % Cell identity
waveconfig.ChannelBandwidth = 50; % Channel bandwidth (MHz)
waveconfig.FrequencyRange = 'FR1'; % 'FR1' or 'FR2'
waveconfig.NumSubframes = 10; % Number of lms subframes in generated waveform (1,2,4,8 slots)
waveconfig.WindowingPercent = 0; % Percentage of windowing relative to FFT length
waveconfig.SampleRate = []; % Sample rate of the OFDM modulated waveform
waveconfig.CarrierFrequency = 0; % Carrier frequency in Hz. This property is used for symbol phase
% compensation before OFDM modulation, not for upconversion

% Define a set of SCS specific carriers, using the maximum sizes for a
% 50 MHz NR channel. See TS 38.101-1 for more information on defined

```

```

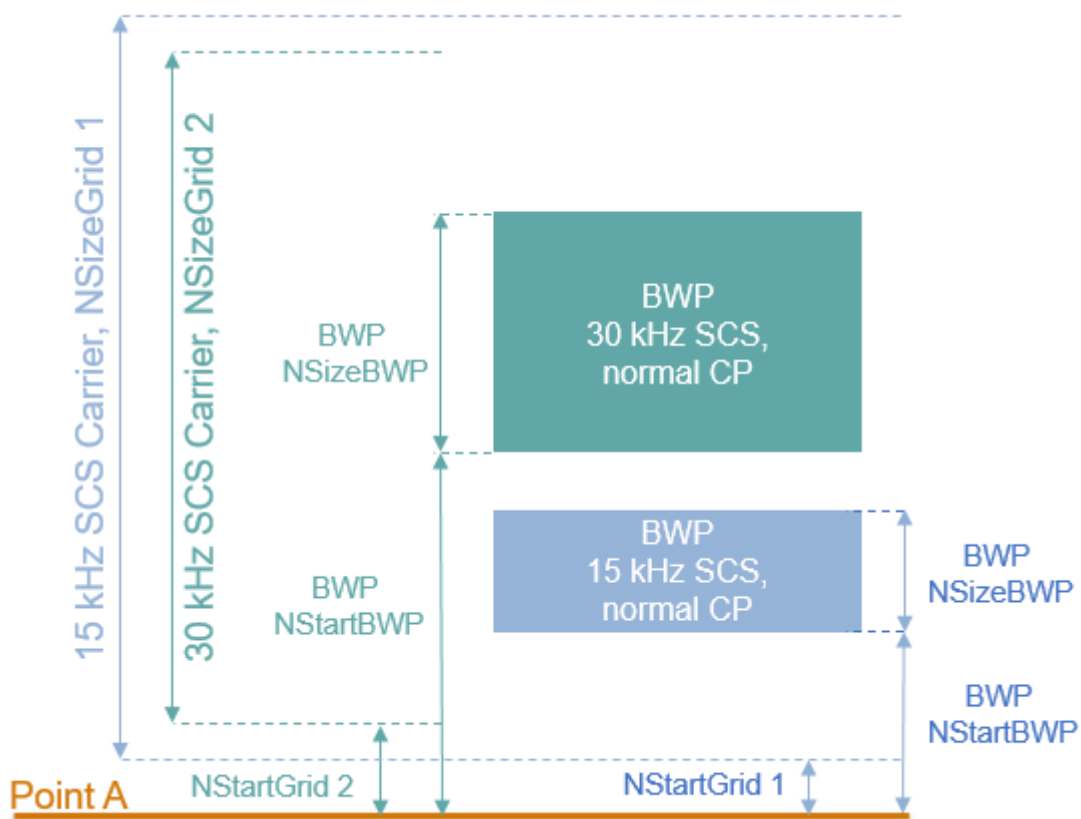
% bandwidths and guardband requirements
scscarriers = {nrSCSCarrierConfig(),nrSCSCarrierConfig()};
scscarriers{1}.SubcarrierSpacing = 15;
scscarriers{1}.NSizeGrid = 270;
scscarriers{1}.NStartGrid = 0;

scscarriers{2}.SubcarrierSpacing = 30;
scscarriers{2}.NSizeGrid = 133;
scscarriers{2}.NStartGrid = 1;

```

Bandwidth Parts

A BWP is formed by a set of contiguous resources sharing a numerology on a given carrier. You can define multiple BWPs using a cell array. Each element in the cell array of `nrWavegenBWPCConfig` objects defines a BWP. For each BWP, you can specify the SCS, the cyclic prefix (CP) length and the bandwidth. The `SubcarrierSpacing` property maps the BWP to one of the SCS specific carriers defined earlier. The `NStartBWP` property controls the location of the BWP in the carrier, relative to point A. This is expressed in common resource blocks (CRB) in terms of the BWP numerology. Different BWPs can overlap with each other.



```

% Bandwidth parts configurations
bwp = {nrWavegenBWPCConfig(),nrWavegenBWPCConfig()};
bwp{1}.BandwidthPartID = 1;           % Bandwidth part ID
bwp{1}.Label = 'BWP @ 15 kHz';       % Label for this BWP
bwp{1}.SubcarrierSpacing = 15;       % BWP subcarrier spacing

```

```

bwp{1}.CyclicPrefix = 'Normal';    % BWP cyclic prefix for 15 kHz
bwp{1}.NSizeBWP = 25;              % Size of BWP in PRBs
bwp{1}.NStartBWP = 10;             % Position of BWP, relative to point A (i.e. CRB)

bwp{2}.BandwidthPartID = 2;        % Bandwidth part ID
bwp{2}.Label = 'BWP @ 30 kHz';     % Label for this BWP
bwp{2}.SubcarrierSpacing = 30;     % BWP subcarrier spacing
bwp{2}.CyclicPrefix = 'Normal';    % BWP cyclic prefix for 30 kHz
bwp{2}.NSizeBWP = 51;              % Size of BWP in PRBs
bwp{2}.NStartBWP = 40;             % Position of BWP, relative to point A (i.e. CRB)

```

PUSCH Instances Configuration

This section specifies the set of PUSCH instances in the waveform by using a cell array. Each element in the cell array of `nrWavegenPUSCHConfig` objects defines a sequence of PUSCH instances. This example defines two PUSCH sequences.

General Parameters

Set these parameters for each PUSCH sequence:

- Enable or disable this PUSCH sequence
- Specify a label for this PUSCH sequence
- Specify the BWP carrying the PUSCH. The PUSCH uses the SCS specified for this BWP
- Power scaling in dB
- Enable or disable the UL-SCH transport channel coding
- RNTI
- NID for scrambling the PUSCH bits
- Transform precoding. When transform precoding is `true`, the transform precoding is enabled and the resultant waveform is DFT-s-OFDM. When transform precoding is `false`, the resultant waveform is CP-OFDM
- Target code rate used to calculate the transport block sizes
- Overhead parameter
- Transmission scheme. When the transmission scheme is `'codebook'`, the MIMO precoding is enabled and a precoding matrix is selected based on the number of layers, number of antenna ports and the transmitted precoding matrix indicator. When the transmission is set to `'nonCodebook'`, an identity matrix is used, leading to no MIMO precoding
- Symbol modulation
- Number of layers. The number of layers is restricted to a maximum of 4 in uplink as there is only one code word transmission. Nominally, the number of layers is set to 1 when transform precoding is enabled. This value is ignored, when the `DMRS.PortSet` property is specified
- Number of antenna ports. It is used when codebook transmission is enabled. The number of antenna ports must be greater than or equal to number of DM-RS ports configured
- Transmitted precoding matrix indicator
- Redundancy version (RV) sequence
- Frequency hopping
- Resource block offset for second hop
- Transport block data source. You can use an array of bits or one of these standard PN sequences: `'PN9-ITU'`, `'PN9'`, `'PN11'`, `'PN15'`, `'PN23'`. The seed for the generator can be specified using

a cell array in the form {'PN9', seed}. If no seed is specified, the generator is initialized with all ones

```

pusch = {nrWavegenPUSCHConfig()};
pusch{1}.Enable = 1; % Enable PUSCH sequence
pusch{1}.Label = 'PUSCH @ 15 kHz'; % Label for this PUSCH sequence
pusch{1}.BandwidthPartID = 1; % Bandwidth part of PUSCH transmission
pusch{1}.Power = 0; % Power scaling in dB
pusch{1}.Coding = 1; % Enable the UL-SCH transport channel coding
pusch{1}.NID = 1; % Scrambling for data part
pusch{1}.RNTI = 0; % RNTI
pusch{1}.TransformPrecoding = false; % Transform precoding
pusch{1}.TargetCodeRate = 0.47; % Code rate used to calculate transport block sizes
pusch{1}.XOverhead = 0; % Rate matching overhead

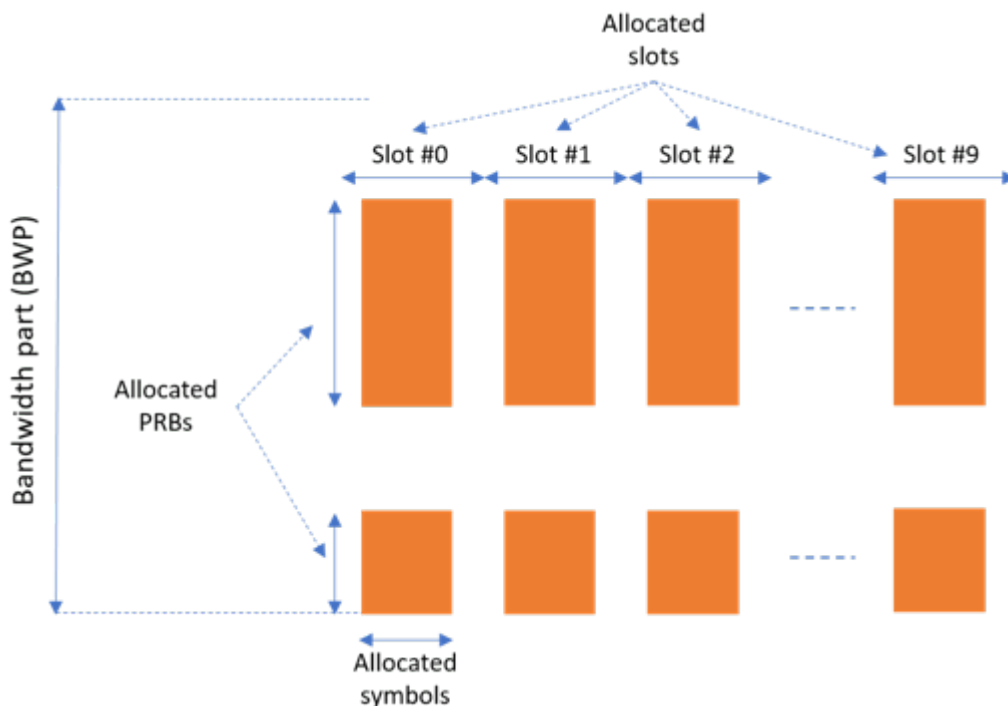
% Transmission settings
pusch{1}.TransmissionScheme = 'codebook'; % 'codebook', 'nonCodebook'
pusch{1}.Modulation = 'QPSK'; % 'pi/2-BPSK', 'QPSK', '16QAM', '64QAM', '256QAM'
pusch{1}.NumLayers = 2; % Number of PUSCH layers
pusch{1}.NumAntennaPorts = 4; % Number of antenna ports
pusch{1}.TPMI = 0; % Transmitted precoding matrix indicator (0...27)
pusch{1}.RVSequence = [0,2,3,1]; % RV sequence to be applied cyclically across the PUSCH
pusch{1}.FrequencyHopping = 'interSlot'; % Intra-slot frequency hopping ('enabled', 'disabled')
pusch{1}.SecondHopStartPRB = 10; % Resource block offset for second hop

% Data source
pusch{1}.DataSource = 'PN9'; % Channel data source

```

Allocation

This diagram represents some of the parameters used in the PUSCH allocation.



You can set the following parameters to control the PUSCH allocation. These parameters are relative to the BWP.

- PUSCH mapping type
- Symbols in a slot allocated to each PUSCH instance. For PUSCH mapping type 'A', the start symbol within a slot must be zero and the length can be from 4 to 14 (for normal CP) and up to 12 (for extended CP). For PUSCH mapping type 'B', the start symbol can be from any symbol in the slot
- Slots in a frame used for the sequence of PUSCH
- Period of the allocation in slots. Empty period indicates no repetition
- The allocated PRBs relative to the BWP

```
pusch{1}.MappingType = 'A';           % PUSCH mapping type ('A'(slot-wise),'B'(non slot-wise))
pusch{1}.SymbolAllocation = [0,14];   % First symbol and length
pusch{1}.SlotAllocation = [0 1];      % Allocated slots indices for PUSCH sequence
pusch{1}.Period = 5;                  % Allocation period in slots
pusch{1}.PRBSet = 0:10;                % PRB allocation
```

PUSCH DM-RS Configuration

Set the DM-RS parameters.

```
% Antenna port and DM-RS configuration (TS 38.211 section 6.4.1.1)
pusch{1}.DMRSPower = 0;                % Additional power boosting in dB

pusch{1}.DMRS.DMRSConfigurationType = 1; % DM-RS configuration type (1,2)
pusch{1}.DMRS.NumCDMGroupsWithoutData = 2; % Number of DM-RS CDM groups without data. The value of
pusch{1}.DMRS.DMRSPortSet = [0 2];      % DM-RS antenna ports used ([ ] gives port numbers 0:N)
pusch{1}.DMRS.DMRSTypeAPosition = 2;    % Mapping type A only. First DM-RS symbol position (2)
pusch{1}.DMRS.DMRSLength = 1;          % Number of front-loaded DM-RS symbols (1(single symbol)
pusch{1}.DMRS.DMRSAdditionalPosition = 2; % Additional DM-RS symbol positions (max range 0...3)
pusch{1}.DMRS.NIDNSCID = 1;            % Scrambling identity for CP-OFDM (0...65535). Use empty
pusch{1}.DMRS.NSCID = 0;                % Scrambling initialization for CP-OFDM (0,1)
pusch{1}.DMRS.NRSID = 0;                % Scrambling identity for DFT-s-OFDM DM-RS (0...1007)

pusch{1}.DMRS.GroupHopping = true;      % Group hopping configuration. This property is used only
pusch{1}.DMRS.SequenceHopping = false;  % Sequence hopping configuration. This property is used only
```

The GroupHopping property is used in DM-RS sequence generation when transform precoding is enabled. You can set GroupHopping to:

- 'enable' to indicate the presence of group hopping. It is configured by higher-layer parameter *sequenceGroupHopping*
- 'disable' to indicate the presence of sequence hopping. It is configured by higher-layer parameter *sequenceHopping*
- 'neither' to indicate both group hopping and sequence hopping are not present

The number of DM-RS CDM groups without data depends on the configuration type. The maximum number of DM-RS CDM groups can be 2 for DM-RS configuration type 1 and it can be 3 for DM-RS configuration type 2.

PUSCH PT-RS Configuration

Set the PT-RS parameters.

```

% PT-RS configuration (TS 38.211 section 6.4.1.2)
pusch{1}.EnablePTRS = 0;           % Enable or disable the PT-RS (1 or 0)
pusch{1}.PTRSPower = 0;           % Additional PT-RS power boosting in dB for CP-OFDM

pusch{1}.PTRS.TimeDensity = 1;    % Time density (L_PT-RS) of PT-RS (1,2,4)
pusch{1}.PTRS.FrequencyDensity = 2; % Frequency density (K_PT-RS) of PT-RS for CP-OFDM (2,4)
pusch{1}.PTRS.NumPTRSSamples = 2; % Number of PT-RS samples (NGroupSamp) for DFT-s-OFDM (2,4)
pusch{1}.PTRS.NumPTRSGroups = 2;  % Number of PT-RS groups (NPTRSGroup) for DFT-s-OFDM (2,4,8)
pusch{1}.PTRS.REOffset = '00';    % PT-RS resource element offset for CP-OFDM ('00','01','10')
pusch{1}.PTRS.PTRSPortSet = 0;    % PT-RS antenna ports must be a subset of DM-RS ports for CP
pusch{1}.PTRS.NID = 0;            % PT-RS scrambling identity for DFT-s-OFDM (0...1007)

```

When PT-RS is enabled for CP-OFDM, the DM-RS ports must be in the range from 0 to 3 for DM-RS configuration type 1, and in the range from 0 to 5 for DM-RS configuration type 2. When PT-RS is enabled for DFT-s-OFDM and the number of PT-RS groups is set to 8, the number of PT-RS samples must be set to 4.

UCI on PUSCH

You can set these parameters to configure the transmission of UCI on PUSCH:

- Enable or disable the transmission of HARQ-ACK, CSI part 1, CSI part2, and CG-UCI
- Number of HARQ-ACK, CSI part 1, CSI part 2, and CG-UCI bits
- BetaOffsetACK, BetaOffsetCSI1, BetaOffsetCSI2, and BetaOffsetCGUCI can be set from the tables 9.3-1 and 9.3-2 of TS 38.213
- Data source for HARQ-ACK, CSI part 1, CSI part 2, and CG-UCI. You can use an array of bits or one of these standard PN sequences: 'PN9-ITU', 'PN9', 'PN11', 'PN15', 'PN23'. The seed for the generator can be specified using a cell array in the form {'PN9', seed}. If no seed is specified, the generator is initialized with all ones
- Enable UL-SCH transmission with UCI
- UCIScaling is provided by higher layer parameter *scaling*, as per TS 38.212, Section 6.3.2.4

```

pusch{1}.EnableACK = true;        % Enable or disable HARQ-ACK
pusch{1}.NumACKBits = 5;         % Number of HARQ-ACK bits
pusch{1}.BetaOffsetACK = 1;      % Power factor of HARQ-ACK
pusch{1}.DataSourceACK = 'PN9'; % HARQ-ACK data source
pusch{1}.EnableCSI1 = true;      % Enable or disable CSI part 1
pusch{1}.NumCSI1Bits = 10;       % Number of CSI part 1 bits
pusch{1}.BetaOffsetCSI1 = 2;     % Power factor of CSI part 1
pusch{1}.DataSourceCSI1 = 'PN9'; % CSI part 1 data source
pusch{1}.EnableCSI2 = true;      % Enable or disable CSI part 2
pusch{1}.NumCSI2Bits = 10;       % Number of CSI part 2 bits
pusch{1}.BetaOffsetCSI2 = 2;     % Power factor of CSI part 2
pusch{1}.DataSourceCSI2 = 'PN9'; % CSI part 2 data source
pusch{1}.EnableCGUCI = false;    % Enable or disable CG-UCI
pusch{1}.NumCGUCIBits = 10;      % Number of CG-UCI bits
pusch{1}.BetaOffsetCGUCI = 2;    % Power factor of CG-UCI
pusch{1}.DataSourceCGUCI = 'PN9'; % CG-UCI data source
pusch{1}.EnableULSCH = true;     % Enable or disable UL-SCH when there is UCI transmission on P
pusch{1}.UCIScaling = 1;         % Scaling factor (0.5, 0.65, 0.8, 1)

```

When both HARQ-ACK and CG-UCI are enabled, Section 6.3.2.1.4 of TS 38.212 specifies the UCI bit sequence as the union of the CG-UCI bits and the HARQ-ACK bits. Therefore, the processing of UCI on PUSCH considers any active CG-UCI source as an extension to HARQ-ACK and only the value of BetaOffsetACK is used in this case.

Specifying Multiple PUSCH Sequences

Specify the second PUSCH sequence for the second BWP.

```
pusch{2} = pusch{1};
pusch{2}.Enable = 1;
pusch{2}.Label = 'PUSCH @ 30 kHz';
pusch{2}.BandwidthPartID = 2;           % PUSCH mapped to 2nd BWP
pusch{2}.SymbolAllocation = [0,12];
pusch{2}.SlotAllocation = [5 6 7 8];
pusch{2}.PRBSet = 5:10;                 % PRB allocation, relative to BWP
pusch{2}.Period = 10;
pusch{2}.TransformPrecoding = 1;
pusch{2}.FrequencyHopping = 'interSlot';
pusch{2}.NumLayers = 1;
pusch{2}.RNTI = 0;

pusch{2}.DMRS.GroupHopping = false;
pusch{2}.DMRS.DMRSPortSet = 1;
```

SRS Instances Configuration

This section configures SRS in the waveform. Each element in the cell array of `nrWavegenSRSConfig` objects defines a sequence of SRS instances associated with a BWP. This example defines two SRS sequences that are disabled.

General Parameters

Set these parameters for each SRS sequence:

- Enable or disable this SRS sequence
- Specify a label for this SRS sequence
- Specify the BWP carrying this SRS sequence. The SRS sequence configuration uses the SCS specified for this BWP
- Specify the power scaling in dB

```
srs = {nrWavegenSRSConfig()};
srs{1}.Enable = 0;
srs{1}.Label = 'SRS @ 15 kHz';
srs{1}.BandwidthPartID = 1;
srs{1}.Power = 3; % Power scaling in dB
```

SRS Configuration

You can configure these parameters for each SRS sequence:

- Number of SRS antenna ports
- Symbols in a slot allocated to each SRS sequence
- Slots within a period used for SRS transmission
- Period of the allocation in slots. Empty period indicates no repetition
- Starting position of the SRS sequence in the BWP in RBs
- Additional frequency offset from the starting position in 4-PRB blocks
- Bandwidth and frequency hopping configuration. The occupied bandwidth depends on the properties CSRS, BSRS, and BHop. Set BHop < BSRS to enable frequency hopping

- Transmission comb to specify the SRS frequency density in subcarriers
- Offset of the transmission comb in subcarriers
- Cyclic shift rotating the low-PAPR base sequence. The maximum number of cyclic shifts, 8 or 12, depends on the transmission comb number, 2 or 4. For 4 SRS antenna ports, the subcarrier set allocated to the SRS in the first and third antenna ports depends on the cyclic shift
- Number of repeated SRS symbols within a slot. It disables frequency hopping in blocks of Repetition symbols. Set Repetition = 1 for no repetition
- Group or sequence hopping. It can be 'neither', 'groupHopping' or 'sequenceHopping'
- Scrambling identity. It initializes the pseudo-random binary sequence when group or sequence hopping are enabled

```

srs{1}.NumSRSPorts = 1;           % Number of SRS ports (1,2,4)
srs{1}.NumSRSSymbols = 4;        % Number of SRS symbols in a slot (1,2,4)
srs{1}.SymbolStart = 10;        % Time-domain position of the SRS in the slot. (8...13) for 12
srs{1}.SlotAllocation = 2;      % Allocated slots indices
srs{1}.Period = 5;              % Allocation period in slots
srs{1}.FrequencyStart = 0;      % Frequency position of the SRS in BWP in RBs
srs{1}.NRRC = 0;                % Additional offset from FreqStart specified in blocks of 4 RBs
srs{1}.CSRS = 13;               % Bandwidth configuration C_SRS (0...63). It controls the allocation
srs{1}.BSRS = 2;                % Bandwidth configuration B_SRS (0...3). It controls the allocation
srs{1}.BHop = 1;                % Frequency hopping configuration (0...3). Set BHop < BSRS to enable
srs{1}.KTC = 2;                 % Comb number (2,4). It indicates the allocation of the SRS comb
srs{1}.KBarTC = 0;              % Subcarrier offset of the SRS sequence (0...KTC-1)
srs{1}.CyclicShift = 0;         % Cyclic shift number (0...NCSmax-1). NCSmax = 8 for KTC = 2
srs{1}.Repetition = 1;          % Repetition factor (1,2,4). It indicates the number of equal
srs{1}.GroupSeqHopping = 'neither'; % Group or sequence hopping ('neither', 'groupHopping', 'sequenceHopping')
srs{1}.NSRSID = 0;              % Scrambling identity (0...1023)
srs{1}.SRSPositioning = false;  % Enable SRS for user positioning

```

Specifying Multiple SRS Sequences

Specify the second SRS sequence for the second BWP.

```

srs{2} = srs{1};
srs{2}.Enable = 0;
srs{2}.Label = 'SRS @ 30 kHz';
srs{2}.BandwidthPartID = 2;
srs{2}.NumSRSSymbols = 2;
srs{2}.SymbolStart = 12;
srs{2}.SlotAllocation = [5 6 7 8];
srs{2}.Period = 10;
srs{2}.BSRS = 0;
srs{2}.BHop = 0;

```

Waveform Generation

This section assigns all the channel and signal parameters to the main carrier configuration object nrULCarrierConfig, then generates and plots the waveform.

```

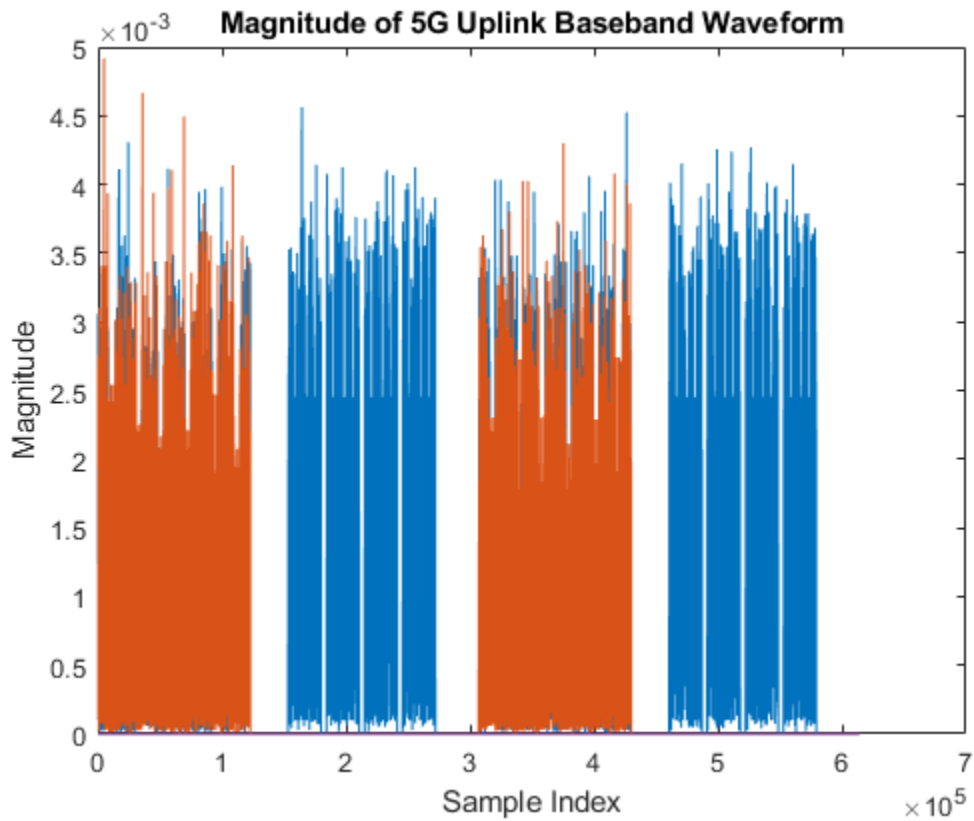
waveconfig.SCSCarriers = scscarriers;
waveconfig.BandwidthParts = bwp;
waveconfig.PUSCH = pusch;
waveconfig.SRS = srs;

% Generate complex baseband waveform
[waveform,info] = nrWaveformGenerator(waveconfig);

```

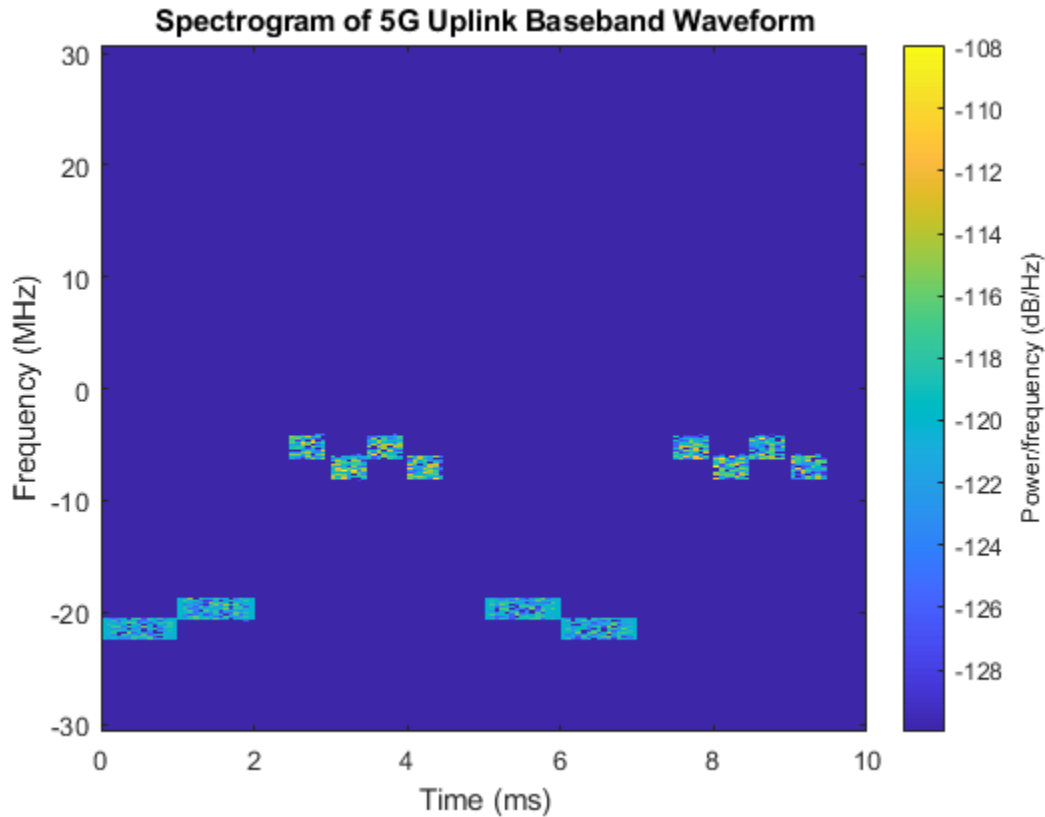
Plot the magnitude of the baseband waveform for the set of antenna ports defined.

```
figure;
plot(abs(waveform));
title('Magnitude of 5G Uplink Baseband Waveform');
xlabel('Sample Index');
ylabel('Magnitude');
```



Plot spectrogram of waveform for first antenna port.

```
samplerate = info.ResourceGrids(1).Info.SampleRate;
nfft = info.ResourceGrids(1).Info.Nfft;
figure;
spectrogram(waveform(:,1),ones(nfft,1),0,nfft,'centered',samplerate,'yaxis','MinThreshold',-130)
title('Spectrogram of 5G Uplink Baseband Waveform');
```



The waveform generator function returns the time-domain waveform and a structure `info`, which contains the underlying resource element grid and a breakdown of the resources used by all the PUSCH and SRS instances in the waveform.

The `ResourceGrids` field is structure array, which contains these fields:

- The resource grid corresponding to each BWP
- The resource grid of the overall bandwidth containing the channels and signals in each BWP
- An info structure with information corresponding to each BWP. The contents of this info structure for the first BWP are shown below.

```
disp('Modulation information associated with BWP 1:')
disp(info.ResourceGrids(1).Info)
```

```
Modulation information associated with BWP 1:
      Nfft: 4096
      SampleRate: 61440000
      CyclicPrefixLengths: [1x14 double]
      SymbolLengths: [1x14 double]
      Windowing: 0
      SymbolPhases: [0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0]
      SymbolsPerSlot: 14
      SlotsPerSubframe: 1
      SlotsPerFrame: 10
      k0: 0
```

Note that the generated resource grid is a 3D matrix where the different planes represent the antenna ports. For the different physical channels and signals the lowest port is mapped to the first plane of the grid.

See Also

Functions

`nrWaveformGenerator`

Objects

`nrSCSCarrierConfig` | `nrULCarrierConfig` | `nrWavegenBWPCConfig` | `nrWavegenPUSCHConfig`

More About

- “5G NR Downlink Vector Waveform Generation” on page 1-2
- “5G NR Uplink with PUCCH Vector Waveform Generation” on page 2-13

5G NR Uplink with PUCCH Vector Waveform Generation

This example implements a 5G NR uplink with PUCCH vector waveform generator using 5G Toolbox™ to create a baseband component carrier waveform.

Introduction

This example shows how to parameterize and generate a 5G New Radio (NR) uplink waveform. These channels and signals can be generated:

- PUSCH and its associated DM-RS and PT-RS
- PUCCH and its associated DM-RS
- SRS

This example supports the parameterization and generation of multiple bandwidth parts (BWP). Multiple instances of PUSCH, PUCCH and SRS can be generated over the different BWPs. The example allows to configure PUCCH, PUSCH and SRS for a specific UE categorized by RNTI and transmits only PUSCH for that specific RNTI when both PUCCH and PUSCH overlap in a slot. The example focuses on the configuration of multiple instances of PUCCH for several formats.

To generate a 5G uplink waveform with PUSCH or SRS, including Release 16 CG-UCI and SRS for positioning, see the “5G NR Uplink Vector Waveform Generation” on page 2-2 example.

Waveform and Carrier Configuration

This section sets the subcarrier spacing (SCS) specific carrier bandwidths in resource blocks, the physical layer cell identity `NCellID`, and the length of the generated waveform in subframes. You can visualize the generated resource grids by setting the `DisplayGrids` field to 1. The channel bandwidth and frequency range parameters are used to display the associated minimum guardbands on a schematic diagram of the SCS carrier alignment. The schematic diagram is displayed in one of the output plots of the example.

```

waveconfig = [];
waveconfig.NCellID = 0;           % Cell identity
waveconfig.ChannelBandwidth = 50; % Channel bandwidth (MHz)
waveconfig.FrequencyRange = 'FR1'; % 'FR1' or 'FR2'
waveconfig.NumSubframes = 10;    % Number of 1ms subframes in generated waveform
                                   % (1,2,4,8 slots per 1ms subframe, depending on SCS)
waveconfig.DisplayGrids = 1;     % Display the resource grids after signal generation

% Define a set of SCS specific carriers, using the maximum sizes for a 50
% MHz NR channel. See TS 38.101-1 for more information on defined
% bandwidths
carriers = [];
carriers(1).SubcarrierSpacing = 15;
carriers(1).NRB = 270;
carriers(1).RBStart = 0;

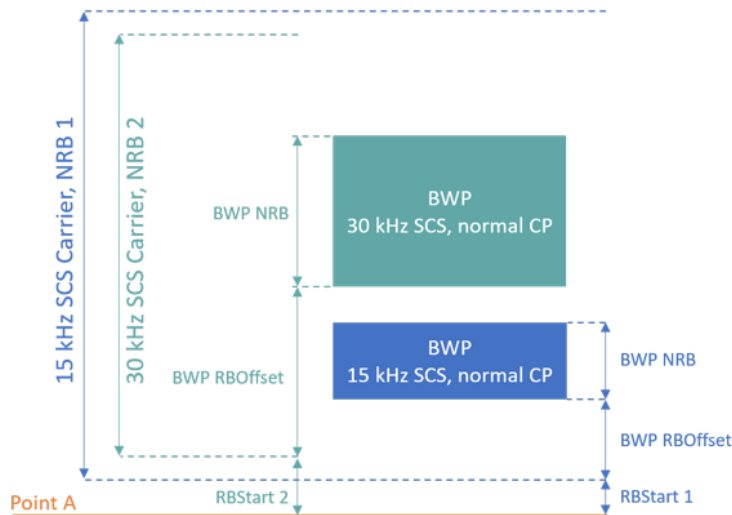
carriers(2).SubcarrierSpacing = 30;
carriers(2).NRB = 133;
carriers(2).RBStart = 1;

```

Bandwidth Parts

A BWP is formed by a set of contiguous resources sharing a numerology on a given SCS specific carrier. This example supports the use of multiple BWPs using a struct array. Each entry in the array

represents a BWP. For each BWP you can specify the subcarrier spacing (SCS), the cyclic prefix (CP) length and the bandwidth. The `SubcarrierSpacing` parameter maps the BWP to one of the SCS specific carriers defined earlier. The `RBOffset` parameter controls the location of the BWP in the carrier. This is expressed in terms of the BWP numerology. Different BWPs can overlap with each other.



`% Bandwidth parts configurations`

```
bwp = [];
```

```
bwp(1).SubcarrierSpacing = 15;
bwp(1).CyclicPrefix = 'Normal';
bwp(1).NRB = 25;
bwp(1).RBOffset = 10;
```

```
% BWP1 Subcarrier Spacing
% BWP1 cyclic prefix
% Size of BWP1
% Position of BWP1 in carrier
```

```
bwp(2).SubcarrierSpacing = 30;
bwp(2).CyclicPrefix = 'Normal';
bwp(2).NRB = 51;
bwp(2).RBOffset = 40;
```

```
% BWP2 Subcarrier Spacing
% BWP2 cyclic prefix
% Size of BWP2
% Position of BWP2 in carrier
```

PUCCH Instances Configuration

This section specifies the parameters for the set of PUCCH instances in the waveform. Each element in the structure array defines a PUCCH sequence instance. The following parameters can be set:

- Enable/disable the PUCCH sequence
- Specify the BWP carrying the PUCCH
- PUCCH instance power in dB
- Slots within a period used for PUCCH
- Periodicity of the allocation. Use empty to indicate no repetition
- DM-RS power boosting in dB

```
pucch = [];
pucch(1).Enable = 1;
pucch(1).BWP = 1;
pucch(1).Power = 0;
pucch(1).AllocatedSlots = [3 4];
```

```
% Enable PUCCH sequence
% Bandwidth part
% Power scaling in dB
% Allocated slots within a period
```

```
pucch(1).AllocatedPeriod = 6;           % Allocation slot period (empty implies no repetition)
pucch(1).PowerDMRS = 1;                % Additional power boosting in dB
```

PUCCH Resource Configuration

This section specifies the PUCCH sequence resource related parameters. The parameters can be categorized into the following sections:

- Enable/Disable the PUCCH dedicated resource. If this is disabled, it uses common resource as per TS 38.213 Section 9.2.1
- Provide the resource index value (0...15), when dedicated resource is disabled and the cyclic prefix of BWP transmitting PUCCH is normal. In this case, the resource and format parameters for the PUCCH transmission are filled up directly based on the resource index. All the other parameters that are provided for resource and format configurations are not considered.

When the dedicated resource is enabled or when the dedicated resource is disabled with the cyclic prefix of BWP transmitting PUCCH is extended, the following resource parameters need to be provided:

- Specify the index of first PRB prior to frequency hopping or for no frequency hopping within the BWP
- Specify the index of first PRB after frequency hopping within the BWP
- Intra-slot frequency hopping configuration ('enabled','disabled')
- Group hopping configuration ('neither','enable','disable')

and the following format specific parameters need to be provided:

- PUCCH format configuration in the resource (0...4)
- Starting symbol index allocated for PUCCH transmission
- Number of OFDM symbols allocated for PUCCH transmission. For PUCCH formats 1, 3 and 4, the number of OFDM symbols allocated are in range 4 to 14, and for formats 0 and 2, it is either 1 or 2
- Initial cyclic shift for formats 0 and 1. The value is in range 0 to 11
- Modulation scheme for formats 3 and 4 ('QPSK','pi/2-BPSK')
- Number of resource blocks allocated for format 2 and 3. The nominal value is one of the set {1,2,3,4,5,6,8,9,10,12,15,16}
- Spreading factor for format 4. The value is either 2 or 4
- Orthogonal cover code index for formats 1 and 4. For format 1, the value is in range 0 to 6. For format 4, the value is less than spreading factor and greater than or equal to 0
- Indicate the presence of additional DM-RS for formats 3 and 4. The value is either 0 or 1

Scrambling identities to be used for different formats

- RNTI for formats 2/3/4. It is used for sequence generation. It is in range 0 to 65535
- Scrambling identity (NID) for PUCCH formats 2/3/4. It is in range 0 to 1023. Use empty ([]) to use physical layer cell identity. It is used in sequence generation. This parameter is provided by higher-layer parameter *dataScramblingIdentityPUSCH*
- PUCCH hopping identity for formats 0/1/3/4. Use empty ([]) to use physical layer cell identity. The value is used in sequence generation for format 0, both sequence and DM-RS generation for format 1 and only for DM-RS generation for formats 3 and 4

- DM-RS scrambling NID for PUCCH format 2. It is in range 0 to 65535. Use empty ([]) to use physical layer cell identity

Irrespective of dedicated resource configuration, the following parameters are to be provided for slot repetitions:

- Specify the number of slot repetitions for formats 1,3,4 (2 or 4 or 8). For no slot repetition, the value can be specified as 1
- Specify the inter-slot frequency hopping for formats 1,3,4 ('enabled','disabled'). If this is enabled and the number of slot repetitions is more than one, then intra-slot frequency hopping is disabled
- Specify the maximum code rate. The nominal value is one of the set {0.08, 0.15, 0.25, 0.35, 0.45, 0.6, 0.8}

```

% Dedicated resource parameters
pucch(1).DedicatedResource = 1;           % Enable/disable the dedicated resource configuration
% Provide the resource index value when dedicated resource is disabled. The
% PUCCH resource is configured based on the resource index value, as per
% the table 9.2.1-1 of Section 9.2.1, TS 38.213.
pucch(1).ResourceIndex = 0;              % Resource index for PUCCH dedicated resource (0...1)

% When dedicated resource is enabled or when the dedicated resource is
% disabled with the cyclic prefix of BWP transmitting PUCCH is extended,
% the resource index value is ignored and the parameters specified below
% for the resource and format configurations are considered.

% Resource parameters
pucch(1).StartPRB = 0;                   % Index of first PRB prior to frequency hopping or f
pucch(1).SecondHopPRB = 1;              % Index of first PRB after frequency hopping
pucch(1).IntraSlotFreqHopping = 'enabled'; % Indication for intra-slot frequency hopping ('enab
pucch(1).GroupHopping = 'enable';      % Group hopping configuration ('enable','disable','ne

% Format specific parameters
pucch(1).PUCCHFormat = 3;               % PUCCH format 0/1/2/3/4
pucch(1).StartSymbol = 3;               % Starting symbol index
pucch(1).NrOfSymbols = 11;              % Number of OFDM symbols allocated for PUCCH
pucch(1).InitialCS = 3;                 % Initial cyclic shift for format 0 and 1
pucch(1).OCCI = 0;                      % Orthogonal cover code index for format 1 and 4
pucch(1).Modulation = 'QPSK';           % Modulation for format 3/4 ('pi/2-BPSK','QPSK')
pucch(1).NrOfRB = 9;                   % Number of resource blocks for format 2/3
pucch(1).SpreadingFactor = 4;           % Spreading factor for format 4, value is either 2 or
pucch(1).AdditionalDMRS = 1;            % Additional DM-RS (0/1) for format 3/4

% Scrambling identities of PUCCH and PUCCH DM-RS
pucch(1).RNTI = 0;                      % RNTI (0...65535) for formats 2/3/4
pucch(1).NID = 1;                       % PUCCH scrambling identity (0...1023) for formats 2
pucch(1).HoppingId = 1;                 % PUCCH hopping identity (0...1023) for formats 0/1/3
pucch(1).NIDDMRS = 1;                  % DM-RS scrambling identity (0...65535) for PUCCH fo

% Multi-slot configuration parameters
pucch(1).NrOfSlots = 1;                 % Number of slots for PUCCH repetition (1/2/4/8). One
pucch(1).InterSlotFreqHopping = 'disabled'; % Indication for inter-slot frequency hopping ('enab

% Code rate - This parameter is used when there is multiplexing of UCI part
% 1 (HARQ-ACK, SR, CSI part 1) and UCI part 2 (CSI part 2) to get the rate
% matching lengths of each UCI part
pucch(1).MaxCodeRate = 0.15;           % Maximum code rate (0.08, 0.15, 0.25, 0.35, 0.45, 0

```

UCI payload configuration

Configure the UCI payload based on the format configuration

- Enable or disable the UCI coding for formats 2/3/4
- Number of HARQ-ACK bits. For formats 0 and 1, value can be at most 2. Set the value to 0, for no HARQ-ACK transmission
- Number of SR bits. For formats 0 and 1, value can be at most 1. Set the value to 0, for no SR transmission
- Number of CSI part 1 bits for formats 2/3/4. Set value to 0, for no CSI part 1 transmission
- Number of CSI part 2 bits for formats 3/4. Set value to 0, for no CSI part 2 transmission. The value is ignored when there are no CSI part 1 bits

Note that the generator in the example transmits UCI information on PUSCH whenever there is a overlap between PUCCH and PUSCH for a specific RNTI in a BWP. The parameters to be configured for UCI transmission on PUSCH are provided in the section UCI on PUSCH. It requires the lengths of UCI and UL-SCH to be transmitted on PUSCH.

```
pucch(1).EnableCoding = 1;           % Enable UCI coding
pucch(1).LenACK = 5;                 % Number of HARQ-ACK bits
pucch(1).LenSR = 5;                  % Number of SR bits
pucch(1).LenCSI1 = 10;               % Number of CSI part 1 bits (for formats 2/3/4)
pucch(1).LenCSI2 = 10;               % Number of CSI part 2 bits (for formats 3/4)

pucch(1).DataSource = 'PN9';        % UCI data source

% UCI message data source. You can use one of the following standard PN
% sequences: 'PN9-ITU', 'PN9', 'PN11', 'PN15', 'PN23'. The seed for the
% generator can be specified using a cell array in the form |{'PN9',seed}|.
% If no seed is specified, the generator is initialized with all ones
```

Specifying Multiple PUCCH Instances

A second PUCCH sequence instance is specified next using the second BWP.

```
% PUCCH sequence instance specific to second BWP
pucch(2) = pucch(1);
pucch(2).BWP = 2;
pucch(2).StartSymbol = 10;
pucch(2).NrOfSymbols = 2;
pucch(2).PUCCHFormat = 2;
pucch(2).AllocatedSlots = 0:2;
pucch(2).AllocatedPeriod = [];
pucch(2).RNTI = 10;
```

PUSCH Instances Configuration

This section specifies the set of PUSCH instances in the waveform using a struct array. This example defines two PUSCH sequence instances.

General Parameters

The following parameters are set for each instance:

- Enable/disable this PUSCH sequence

- Specify the BWP this PUSCH maps to. The PUSCH will use the SCS specified for this BWP
- Power scaling in dB
- Enable/disable the UL-SCH transport coding
- Scrambling identity (NID) for PUSCH bits. It is in range 0 to 1023. Use empty ([]) to use physical layer cell identity
- RNTI
- Transform precoding (0,1). The value of 1, enables the transform precoding and the resultant waveform is DFT-s-OFDM. When the value is 0, the resultant waveform is CP-OFDM
- Target code rate used to calculate the transport block sizes.
- Overhead parameter. It is used to calculate the length of transport block size. It is one of the set {0, 6, 12, 18}
- Transmission scheme ('codebook','nonCodebook'). When the transmission scheme is 'codebook', the MIMO precoding is enabled and a precoding matrix is selected based on the number of layers, number of antenna ports and the transmitted precoding matrix indicator. When the transmission is set to 'nonCodebook', an identity matrix is used, leading to no MIMO precoding
- Modulation scheme ('pi/2-BPSK', 'QPSK', '16QAM', '64QAM', '256QAM'). Nominally, the modulation scheme 'pi/2-BPSK' is used when transform precoding is enabled
- Number of layers (1...4). The number of layers is restricted to a maximum of 4 in uplink as there is only one code word transmission. Nominally, the number of layers is set to 1 when transform precoding is enabled. This value is ignored, when PortSet field is specified
- Number of antenna ports (1,2,4). It is used when codebook transmission is enabled. The number of antenna ports must be greater than or equal to number of DM-RS ports configured
- Transmitted precoding matrix indicator (0...27). It depends on the number of layers and the number of antenna ports
- Redundancy version (RV) sequence
- Intra-slot frequency hopping ('enabled','disabled')
- Resource block offset for second hop. It is used when frequency (Intra-slot/Inter-slot) hopping is enabled
- Inter-slot frequency hopping ('enabled','disabled'). If this is enabled, intra-slot frequency hopping is disabled, the starting position of resource block in the allocated PRB of PUSCH in the bandwidth part depends on the whether the slot is even-numbered or odd-numbered
- Transport block data source. You can use one of the following standard PN sequences: 'PN9-ITU', 'PN9', 'PN11', 'PN15', 'PN23'. The seed for the generator can be specified using a cell array in the form {'PN9', seed}. If no seed is specified, the generator is initialized with all ones

```

pusch = [];
pusch(1).Enable = 1;           % Enable PUSCH config
pusch(1).BWP = 1;             % Bandwidth part
pusch(1).Power = 0;           % Power scaling in dB
pusch(1).EnableCoding = 1;    % Enable the UL-SCH transport coding
pusch(1).NID = 1;             % Scrambling for data part (0...1023)
pusch(1).RNTI = 0;            % RNTI
pusch(1).TransformPrecoding = 0; % Transform precoding flag (0 or 1)
pusch(1).TargetCodeRate = 0.47; % Code rate used to calculate transport block sizes
pusch(1).Xoh_PUSCH = 0;       % Overhead. It is one of the set {0,6,12,18}

% Transmission settings
pusch(1).TxScheme = 'codebook'; % Transmission scheme ('codebook','nonCodebook')

```

```

pusch(1).Modulation = 'QPSK'; % 'pi/2-BPSK','QPSK','16QAM','64QAM','256QAM'
pusch(1).NLayers = 2; % Number of PUSCH layers (1...4)
pusch(1).NAntennaPorts = 4; % Number of antenna ports (1,2,4). It must not be less than 2
pusch(1).TPMI = 0; % Transmitted precoding matrix indicator (0...27)
pusch(1).RVSequence = [0 2 3 1]; % RV sequence to be applied cyclically across the PUSCH
pusch(1).IntraSlotFreqHopping = 'disabled'; % Intra-slot frequency hopping ('enabled','disabled')
pusch(1).RBOffset = 10; % Resource block offset for second hop

% Multi-slot transmission
pusch(1).InterSlotFreqHopping = 'enabled'; % Inter-slot frequency hopping ('enabled','disabled')

% Data source
pusch(1).DataSource = 'PN9'; % Transport block data source

```

Allocation

You can set the following parameters to control the PUSCH allocation.

- PUSCH mapping type. It can be either 'A' or 'B'.
- Symbols in a slot where the PUSCH is mapped to. It needs to be a contiguous allocation. For PUSCH mapping type 'A', the start symbol within a slot must be zero and the length can be from 4 to 14 (for normal CP) and up to 12 (for extended CP). For PUSCH mapping type 'B', the start symbol can be from any symbol in the slot
- Slots in a frame used for the PUSCH
- Period of the allocation in slots. If this is empty it indicates no repetition
- The allocated PRBs are relative to the BWP

```

pusch(1).PUSCHMappingType = 'A'; % PUSCH mapping type ('A'(slot-wise),'B'(non slot-wise))
pusch(1).AllocatedSymbols = 0:13; % Range of symbols in a slot
pusch(1).AllocatedSlots = [0 1]; % Allocated slots indices
pusch(1).AllocatedPeriod = 5; % Allocation period in slots (empty implies no repetition)
pusch(1).AllocatedPRB = 0:10; % PRB allocation

```

DM-RS Configuration

Set the DM-RS parameters

```

% DM-RS configuration (TS 38.211 section 6.4.1.1)
pusch(1).DMRSConfigurationType = 1; % DM-RS configuration type (1,2)
pusch(1).NumCDMGroupsWithoutData = 2; % Number of DM-RS CDM groups without data. The value can be 1 or 2
pusch(1).PortSet = [0 2]; % DM-RS antenna ports to use for the layers, when field is not present
pusch(1).DMRSTypeAPosition = 2; % Mapping type A only. First DM-RS symbol position (2,3)
pusch(1).DMRSLength = 1; % Number of front-loaded DM-RS symbols (1(single symbol),2,3)
pusch(1).DMRSAdditionalPosition = 2; % Additional DM-RS symbol positions (max range 0...3)
pusch(1).NIDNSCID = 1; % Scrambling identity for CP-OFDM (0...65535). Use empty for CP-OFDM
pusch(1).NSCID = 0; % Scrambling initialization for CP-OFDM (0,1)
pusch(1).NRSID = 0; % Scrambling identity for DFT-s-OFDM DM-RS (0...1007). Use empty for DFT-s-OFDM
pusch(1).PowerDMRS = 0; % Additional power boosting in dB
pusch(1).GroupHopping = 'enable'; % {'enable','disable','neither'}. This parameter is used only for CP-OFDM

```

The parameter GroupHopping is used in DM-RS sequence generation when transform precoding is enabled. This can be set to

- 'enable' to indicate the presence of group hopping. It is configured by higher-layer parameter *sequenceGroupHopping*

- 'disable' to indicate the presence of sequence hopping. It is configured by higher-layer parameter *sequenceHopping*
- 'neither' to indicate both group hopping and sequence hopping are not present

Note: The number of DM-RS CDM groups without data depends on the configuration type. The maximum number of DM-RS CDM groups can be 2 for DM-RS configuration type 1 and it can be 3 for DM-RS configuration type 2.

PT-RS Configuration

Set the PT-RS parameters

```
% PT-RS configuration (TS 38.211 section 6.4.1.2)
pusch(1).EnablePTRS = 0;           % Enable or disable the PT-RS (1 or 0)
pusch(1).PTRSTimeDensity = 1;      % Time density (L_PT-RS) of PT-RS (1,2,4)
pusch(1).PTRSFrequencyDensity = 2; % Frequency density (K_PT-RS) of PT-RS for CP-OFDM (2,4)
pusch(1).PTRSNumSamples = 2;      % Number of PT-RS samples (NGroupSamp) for DFT-s-OFDM (2,4)
pusch(1).PTRSNumGroups = 2;       % Number of PT-RS groups (NPTRSGroup) for DFT-s-OFDM (2,4,8)
pusch(1).PTRSREOffset = '00';     % PT-RS resource element offset for CP-OFDM ('00', '01', '10',
pusch(1).PTRSPortSet = 0;         % PT-RS antenna ports must be a subset of DM-RS ports for CP
pusch(1).PTRSNID = 0;             % PT-RS scrambling identity for DFT-s-OFDM (0...1007)
pusch(1).PowerPTRS = 0;           % Additional PT-RS power boosting in dB for CP-OFDM

% When PT-RS is enabled for CP-OFDM, the DM-RS ports must be in range from
% 0 to 3 for DM-RS configuration type 1, and in the range from 0 to 5 for
% DM-RS configuration type 2.
% When PT-RS is enabled for DFT-s-OFDM and the number of PT-RS groups is
% set to 8, the number of PT-RS samples must be set to 4.
```

UCI on PUSCH

The following parameters must be set to transmit UCI on PUSCH in overlapping slots:

- Disable UL-SCH transmission on the overlapping slots of PUSCH (1/0). When set to 1, UL-SCH transmission is disabled on PUSCH. The example considers there is UL-SCH transmission all the time on PUSCH. A provision is provided to disable the UL-SCH transmission on the overlapping slots of PUSCH and PUCCH
- BetaOffsetACK, BetaOffsetCSI1 and BetaOffsetCSI2 can be set from the tables 9.3-1, 9.3-2 TS 38.213 Section 9.3
- ScalingFactor is provided by higher layer parameter *scaling*, as per TS 38.212, Section 6.3.2.4. The possible value is one of the set {0.5, 0.65, 0.8, 1}. This is used to limit the number of resource elements assigned to UCI on PUSCH

```
pusch(1).DisableULSCH = 1;         % Disable UL-SCH on overlapping slots of PUSCH and PUCCH
pusch(1).BetaOffsetACK = 1;        % Power factor of HARQ-ACK
pusch(1).BetaOffsetCSI1 = 2;       % Power factor of CSI part 1
pusch(1).BetaOffsetCSI2 = 2;       % Power factor of CSI part 2
pusch(1).ScalingFactor = 1;        % Scaling factor (0.5, 0.65, 0.8, 1)
```

Specifying Multiple PUSCH Instances

A second PUSCH sequence instance is specified next using the second BWP.

```
pusch(2) = pusch(1);
pusch(2).Enable = 1;
pusch(2).BWP = 2;
```



```

pusch(2).AllocatedSymbols = 0:11;
pusch(2).AllocatedSlots = [5 6 7 8];
pusch(2).AllocatedPRB = 5:10;
pusch(2).AllocatedPeriod = 10;
pusch(2).TransformPrecoding = 1;
pusch(2).IntraSlotFreqHopping = 'disabled';
pusch(2).GroupHopping = 'neither';
pusch(2).NLayers = 1;
pusch(2).PortSet = 1;
pusch(2).RNTI = 0;

```

SRS Instances Configuration

This section specifies the parameters for the set of SRS instances in the waveform. Each element in the structure array defines an SRS sequence instance. This example defines two SRS sequence instances that are disabled. The following parameters can be set:

- Enable/Disable this SRS sequence
- BWP carrying the SRS
- Number of SRS antenna ports (1,2,4).
- Number of OFDM symbols allocated for SRS transmission (1,2,4)
- Starting OFDM symbol of the SRS transmission within a slot. It must be (8...13) for normal CP and (6...11) for extended CP
- Slots within a period used for SRS transmission
- Periodicity of the allocation. Use empty to indicate no repetition
- Starting position of the SRS sequence in the BWP in RBs
- Additional frequency offset from the starting position in 4-PRB blocks
- Bandwidth and frequency hopping configuration. The occupied bandwidth depends on the parameters CSRS, BSRS, and BHop. Set BHop < BSRS to enable frequency hopping.
- Transmission comb to specify the SRS frequency density in subcarriers (2,4)
- Offset of the transmission comb in subcarriers
- Cyclic shift rotating the low-PAPR base sequence. The maximum number of cyclic shifts, 8 or 12, depends on the transmission comb number, 2 or 4. For 4 SRS antenna ports, the subcarrier set allocated to the SRS in the first and third antenna ports depends on the cyclic shift.
- Number of repeated SRS symbols within a slot. It disables frequency hopping in blocks of Repetition symbols. Set Repetition = 1 for no repetition.
- Group or sequence hopping. It can be 'neither', 'groupHopping' or 'sequenceHopping'
- Scrambling identity. It initializes the pseudo-random binary sequence when group or sequence hopping are enabled.

```

srs = struct();
srs(1).Enable = 0;           % Enable SRS config
srs(1).BWP = 1;             % BWP Index
srs(1).NumSRSPorts = 1;     % Number of SRS ports (1,2,4)
srs(1).NumSRSSymbols = 4;   % Number of SRS symbols in a slot (1,2,4)
srs(1).SymbolStart = 10;    % Time-domain position of the SRS in the slot. (8...13) for normal CP
srs(1).AllocatedSlots = 2;  % Allocated slots indices
srs(1).AllocatedPeriod = 5; % Allocation period in slots (empty implies no repetition)
srs(1).FreqStart = 0;       % Frequency position of the SRS in BWP in RBs
srs(1).NRRC = 0;           % Additional offset from FreqStart specified in blocks of 4 PRBs

```

```
srs(1).CSRS = 13; % Bandwidth configuration C_SRS (0...63). It controls the all
srs(1).BSRS = 2; % Bandwidth configuration B_SRS (0...3). It controls the all
srs(1).BHop = 1; % Frequency hopping configuration (0...3). Set BHop < BSRS to
srs(1).KTC = 2; % Comb number (2,4). It indicates the allocation of the SRS
srs(1).KBarTC = 0; % Subcarrier offset of the SRS sequence (0...KTC-1)
srs(1).CyclicShift = 0; % Cyclic shift number (0...NCSmax-1). NCSmax = 8 for KTC = 2
srs(1).Repetition = 1; % Repetition factor (1,2,4). It indicates the number of equa
srs(1).GroupSeqHopping = 'neither'; % Group or sequence hopping ('neither', 'groupHopping', 'sequ
srs(1).NSRSID = 0; % Scrambling identity (0...1023)
```

Specifying Multiple SRS Instances

A second SRS sequence instance is specified next using the second BWP.

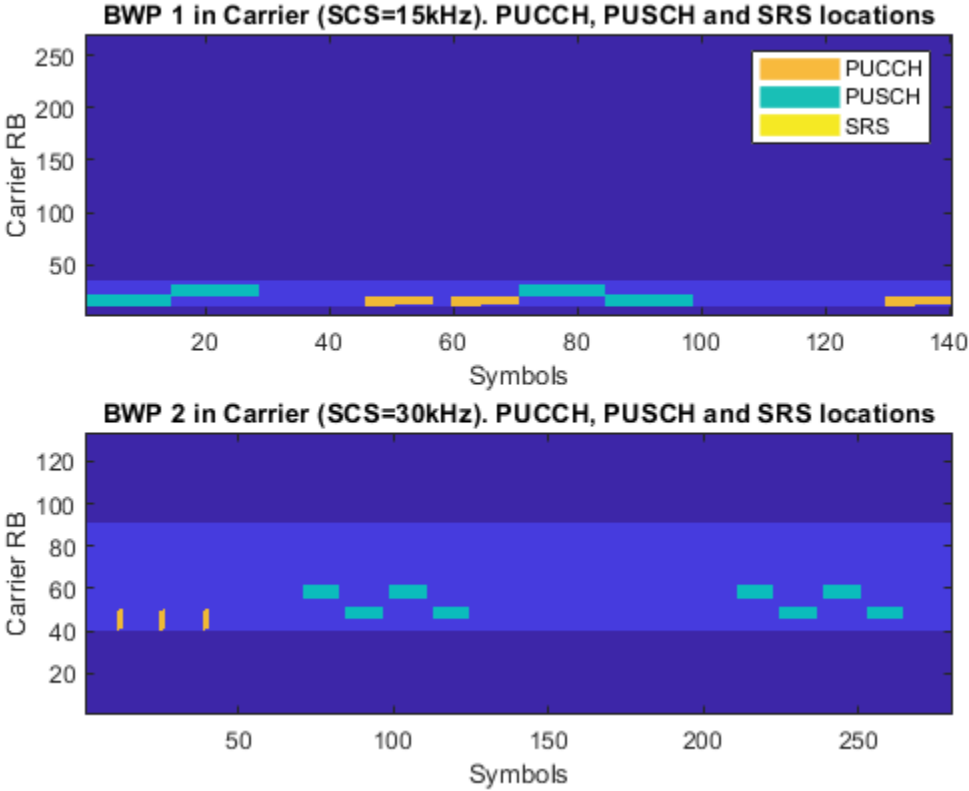
```
srs(2) = srs(1);
srs(2).Enable = 0;
srs(2).BWP = 2;
srs(2).NumSRSSymbols = 2;
srs(2).SymbolStart = 12;
srs(2).AllocatedSlots = [5 6 7 8];
srs(2).AllocatedPeriod = 10;
srs(2).BSRS = 0;
srs(2).BHop = 0;
```

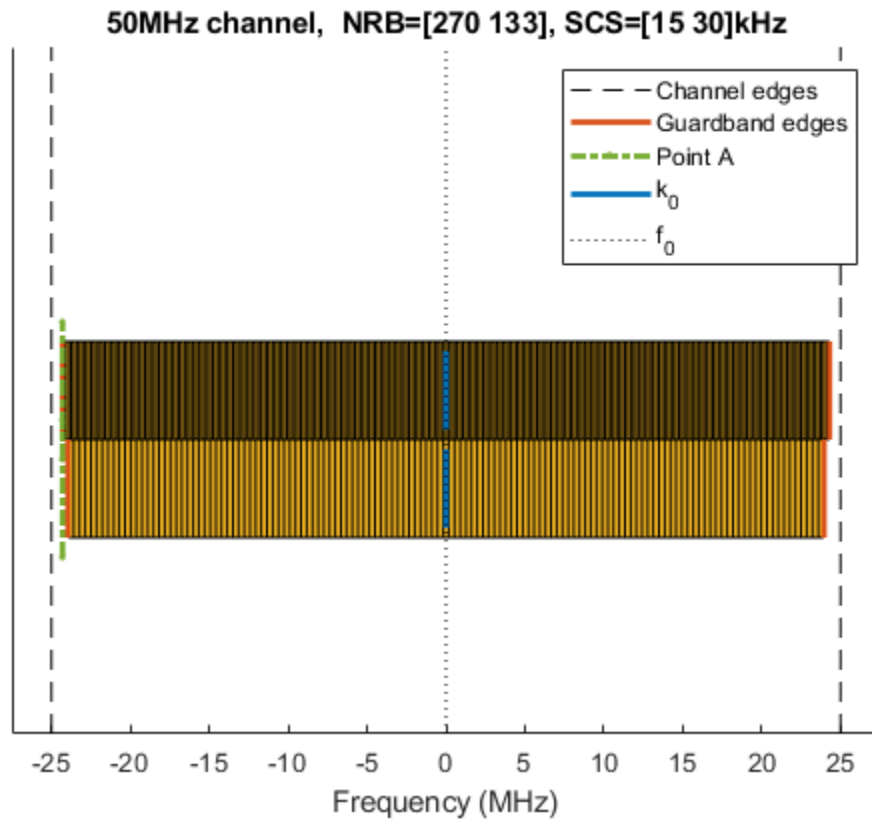
Waveform Generation

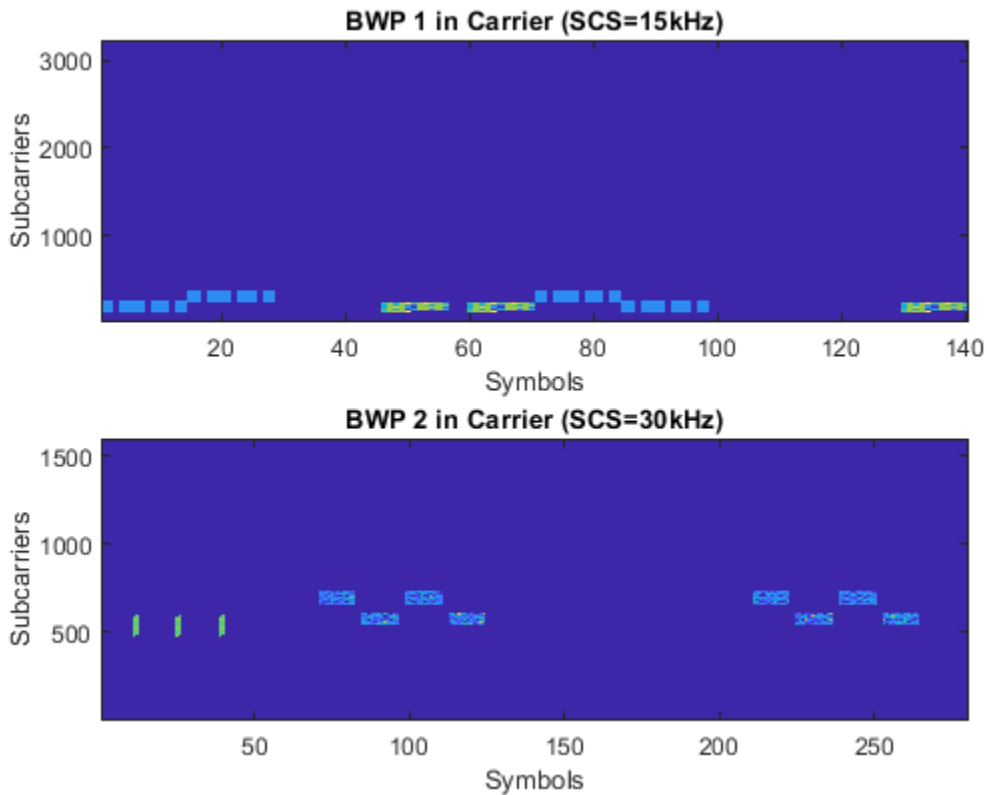
This section collects all the parameters into the carrier configuration and generates the waveform.

```
% Collect together channel oriented parameter sets into a single
% configuration
waveconfig.Carriers = carriers;
waveconfig.BWP = bwp;
waveconfig.PUCCH = pucch;
waveconfig.PUSCH = pusch;
waveconfig.SRS = srs;

% Generate complex baseband waveform
[waveform,bwpset] = hNRUplinkWaveformGenerator(waveconfig);
```







The waveform generator also plots the SCS carrier alignment and the resource grids for the bandwidth parts (this is controlled by the field `DisplayGrids` in the carrier configuration). The following plots are generated:

- Resource grid showing the location of the components (PUCCH, PUSCH and SRS) in each BWP. This does not plot the power of the signals, just their location in the grid
- Schematic diagram of SCS carrier alignment with the associated guardbands
- Generated waveform in the frequency domain for each BWP. This includes the PUCCH, PUSCH and SRS instances

The waveform generator function returns the time domain waveform and a struct array `bwpsset`, which contains the following fields:

- The resource grid corresponding to this BWP
- The resource grid of the overall bandwidth containing the channels and signals in this BWP
- An info structure with information corresponding to the BWP. The contents of this info structure for the first BWP are shown below:

```
disp('Information associated to BWP 1:')
disp(bwpsset(1).Info)
```

```
Information associated to BWP 1:
      Nfft: 4096
      SampleRate: 61440000
      CyclicPrefixLengths: [1x14 double]
```

```
SymbolLengths: [1x14 double]
Windowing: 144
SymbolPhases: [0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0]
SymbolsPerSlot: 14
SlotsPerSubframe: 1
SlotsPerFrame: 10
NSubcarriers: 3240
SubcarrierSpacing: 15
SymbolsPerSubframe: 14
SamplesPerSubframe: 61440
SubframePeriod: 1.0000e-03
k0: 0
SamplingRate: 61440000
```

Note that the generated resource grid is a 3D matrix where the different planes represent the antenna ports. For the different physical channels and signals the lowest port is mapped to the first plane of the grid.

See Also

Functions

nrPUCCH0 | nrPUCCH1 | nrPUCCH2 | nrPUCCH3 | nrPUCCH4 | nrPUSCH | nrULSCH

More About

- “5G NR Uplink Vector Waveform Generation” on page 2-2

NR PUSCH Resource Allocation and DM-RS and PT-RS Reference Signals

This example shows the time-frequency aspects of the new radio (NR) physical uplink shared channel (PUSCH), the associated demodulation reference signal (DM-RS), and phase tracking reference signal (PT-RS). The example shows how PUSCH resource allocation affects the time-frequency structure of DM-RS and PT-RS.

Introduction

In 5G NR, PUSCH is the physical uplink channel that carries user data. DM-RS and PT-RS are the reference signals associated with PUSCH. DM-RS is used for channel estimation as part of coherent demodulation of PUSCH. To compensate for the common phase error (CPE), 3GPP 5G NR introduced PT-RS. Phase noise produced in local oscillators introduces a significant degradation at mmWave frequencies. It produces CPE and inter-carrier interference (ICI). CPE leads to an identical rotation of a received symbol in each subcarrier. ICI leads to a loss of orthogonality between the subcarriers. PT-RS is used mainly to estimate and minimize the effect of CPE on system performance.

The time-frequency structure of reference signals depends on the type of waveform configured for PUSCH, as defined in TS 38.211 Sections 6.4.1.1 and 6.4.1.2 [1] on page 2-0 . When transform precoding is disabled, the waveform configured is cyclic-prefix-orthogonal frequency division multiplexing (CP-OFDM). When transform precoding is enabled, the waveform configured is discrete-fourier-transform-spread orthogonal frequency division multiplexing (DFT-s-OFDM).

The 5G Toolbox™ provides the functions for physical (PHY) layer modeling with varying levels of granularity. The levels of granularity range from PHY channel level functions that perform the transport and physical channel processing to individual channel processing stage functions performing cyclic redundancy check (CRC) coding, code block segmentation, low density parity check (LDPC) channel coding, and so on. The toolbox provides reference signals functionality associated with the PUSCH as functions `nrPUSCHDMRS`, `nrPUSCHDMRSIndices`, `nrPUSCHPTRS`, and `nrPUSCHPTRSIndices`.

PUSCH

PUSCH is the physical channel that carries the user data. The resources allocated for PUSCH are within the bandwidth part (BWP) of the carrier, as defined in TS 38.214 Section 6.1.2 [2] on page 2-0 . The resources in time domain for PUSCH transmission are scheduled by downlink control information (DCI) in the field *Time domain resource assignment*. This field indicates the slot offset K_0 , starting symbol S , the allocation length L , and the mapping type of PUSCH. The valid combinations of S and L are shown in Table 1.

PUSCH Mapping Type	Normal Cyclic Prefix			Extended Cyclic Prefix		
	S	L	$S+L$	S	L	$S+L$
Type A	0	{4,...,14}	{4,...,14}	0	{4,...,12}	{4,...,12}
Type B	{0,...,13}	{1,...,14}	{1,...,14}	{0,...,11}	{1,...,12}	{1,...,12}

Table 1: Valid S and L Combinations

The resources in the frequency domain for PUSCH transmission are scheduled by a DCI in the field *Frequency domain resource assignment*. This field indicates whether the resource allocation of resource blocks (RBs) is contiguous or noncontiguous, based on the allocation type. The RBs allocated are within the BWP.

The 5G Toolbox™ provides the `nrCarrierConfig` and `nrPUSCHConfig` objects to set the parameters related to the PUSCH within the BWP.

```
% Setup the carrier with 15 kHz subcarrier spacing and 10 MHz bandwidth
carrier = nrCarrierConfig;
carrier.SubcarrierSpacing = 15;
carrier.CyclicPrefix = 'normal';
carrier.NSizeGrid = 52;
carrier.NStartGrid = 0;

% Configure the physical uplink shared channel parameters
pusch = nrPUSCHConfig;
pusch.NSizeBWP = []; % Empty implies that the value is equal to NSizeGrid
pusch.NStartBWP = []; % Empty implies that the value is equal to NStartGrid
pusch.PRBSets = 0:25; % Allocate half of the carrier bandwidth
pusch.SymbolAllocation = [0 14]; % Symbol allocation [S L]
pusch.MappingType = 'A'; % PUSCH mapping type ('A' or 'B')
pusch.TransmissionScheme = 'nonCodebook'; % ('codebook' or 'nonCodebook')
% The following parameters are applicable when TransmissionScheme is set
% to 'codebook'
pusch.NumAntennaPorts = 4;
pusch.TPMI = 0;
```

DM-RS for CP-OFDM

DM-RS is used to estimate the radio channel. DM-RS is present only in the RBs scheduled for PUSCH. The DM-RS structure is designed to support different deployment scenarios and use cases.

Parameters That Control Time Resources

The parameters that control the time resources of DM-RS are:

- PUSCH symbol allocation
- Mapping type
- Intra-slot frequency hopping
- DM-RS type A position
- DM-RS length
- DM-RS additional position

Symbol allocation of PUSCH indicates the OFDM symbol locations allocated for the PUSCH transmission in a slot. The mapping type indicates the first DM-RS OFDM symbol location and the duration of OFDM symbols (l_d). For mapping type A, l_d is the duration between the first OFDM symbol of the slot and the last OFDM symbol of the allocated PUSCH resources. For mapping type B, l_d is the duration of the allocated PUSCH resources. When intra-slot frequency hopping is enabled, l_d is the duration per hop. The DM-RS symbols are present in each hop when intra-slot frequency hopping is enabled. When intra-slot frequency hopping is enabled, DM-RS is single-symbol with the maximum number of additional positions either 0 or 1. The DM-RS symbol locations is given by TS 38.211 Tables 6.4.1.1.3-3, 6.4.1.1.3-4, and 6.4.1.1.3-6. Figure 1 shows the DM-RS symbol locations for PUSCH occupying 14 symbols with PUSCH mapping type A, intra-slot frequency hopping enabled,

and number of DM-RS additional positions as 1. The figure shows DM-RS is present in each hop. The locations of DM-RS symbols in each hop depends on the number of OFDM symbols allocated for PUSCH in each hop.

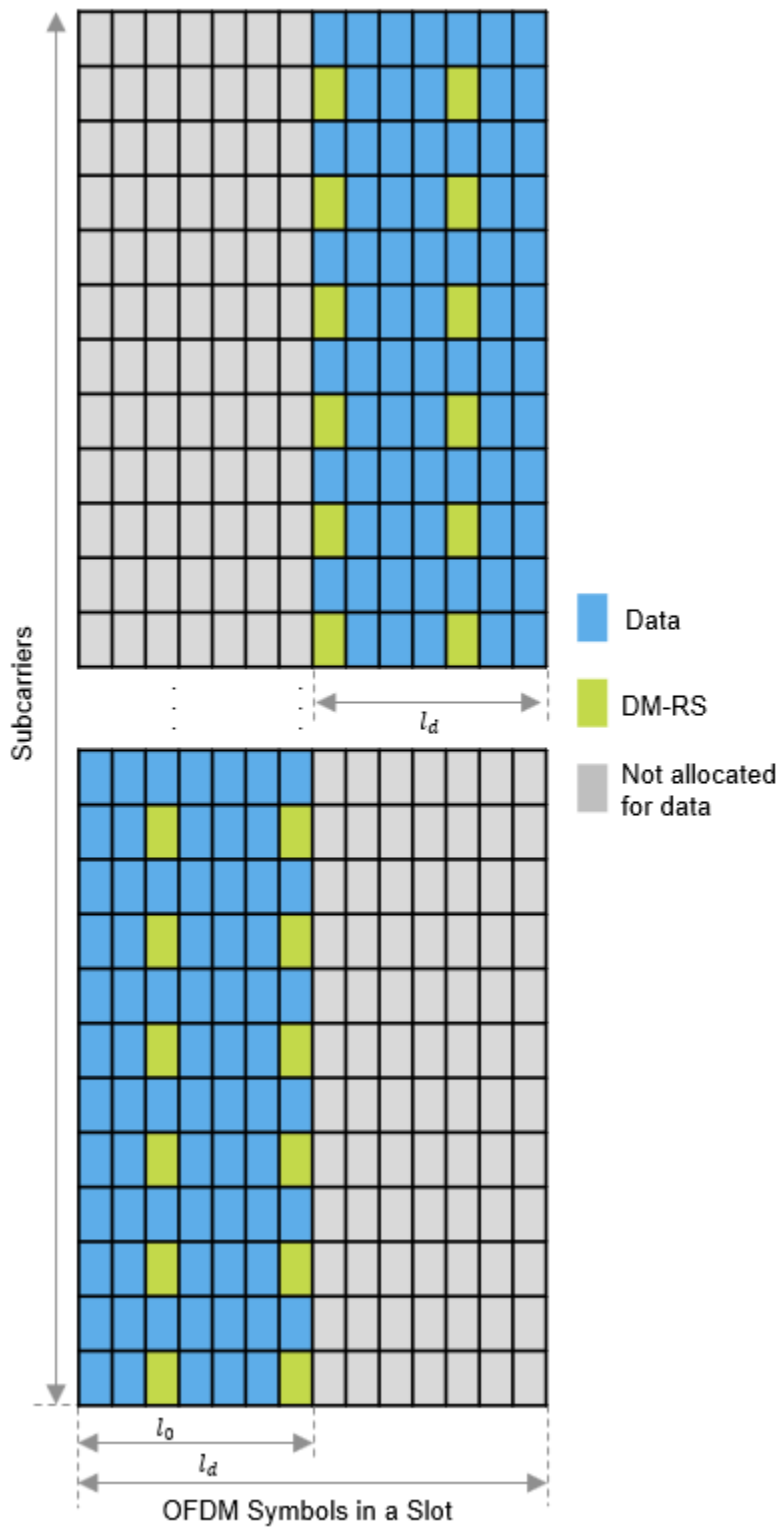


Figure 1: DM-RS Symbol Locations Based on Intra-Slot Frequency Hopping

For details on other DM-RS parameters, see “NR PDSCH Resource Allocation and DM-RS and PT-RS Reference Signals” on page 1-15.

```
% Assign intra-slot frequency hopping for PUSCH
pusch.FrequencyHopping = 'intraSlot'; % 'neither', 'intraSlot', 'interSlot'
pusch.SecondHopStartPRB = 26;

% Set the parameters that control the time resources of DM-RS
pusch.DMRS.DMRSTypeAPosition = 2; % 2 or 3
pusch.DMRS.DMRSLength = 1; % 1 or 2 (single-symbol or double-symbol)
pusch.DMRS.DMRSAdditionalPosition = 1; % 0...3 (Number of additional DM-RS positions)
```

Parameters That Control Frequency Resources

The parameters that control the frequency resources of DM-RS are:

- DM-RS configuration type
- DM-RS antenna ports

The configuration type indicates the frequency density of DM-RS and is signaled by the RRC message *dms-Type*. Configuration type 1 defines six subcarriers per physical resource block (PRB) per antenna port, comprising alternate subcarriers. Configuration type 2 defines four subcarriers per PRB per antenna port, consisting of two groups of two consecutive subcarriers. Different delta shifts are applied to the sets of subcarriers used, depending on the associated antenna port or code division multiplexing (CDM) group. For configuration type 1, there are two possible CDM groups/shifts across eight possible antenna ports ($p=0\dots7$). For configuration type 2, there are three possible CDM groups/shifts across twelve antenna ports ($p=0\dots11$). For more details, see “NR PDSCH Resource Allocation and DM-RS and PT-RS Reference Signals” on page 1-15.

In the case of codebook-based PUSCH processing, the union of DM-RS subcarrier locations present in each layer are projected to all the antenna ports.

```
% Set the parameters that control the frequency resources of DM-RS
pusch.DMRS.DMRSConfigurationType = 1; % 1 or 2
pusch.DMRS.DMRSPortSet = 0;

% The read-only properties DeltaShifts and DMRSSubcarrierLocations of DMRS
% property of pusch object provides the values of delta shift(s) and DM-RS
% subcarrier locations in an RB for each antenna port configured.
pusch.DMRS.DeltaShifts

ans = 0

pusch.DMRS.DMRSSubcarrierLocations

ans = 6x1

    0
    2
    4
    6
    8
   10
```

Sequence Generation

The pseudorandom sequence used for DM-RS is $2^{31} - 1$ length gold sequence. The sequence is generated across all the common resource blocks (CRBs) and is transmitted only in the RBs allocated for data because the sequence is not required to estimate the channel outside the frequency region in which data is not transmitted. Generating the reference signal sequence across all the CRBs ensures that the same underlying pseudorandom sequence is used for multiple UEs on overlapping time-frequency resources in the case of a multi-user MIMO. The parameters that control the sequence generation are:

- DM-RS scrambling identity ($N_{ID}^{n_{SCID}}$)
- DM-RS scrambling initialization (n_{SCID})
- Number of OFDM symbols in a slot
- Slot number in a radio frame
- DM-RS symbol locations
- PRBs allocation

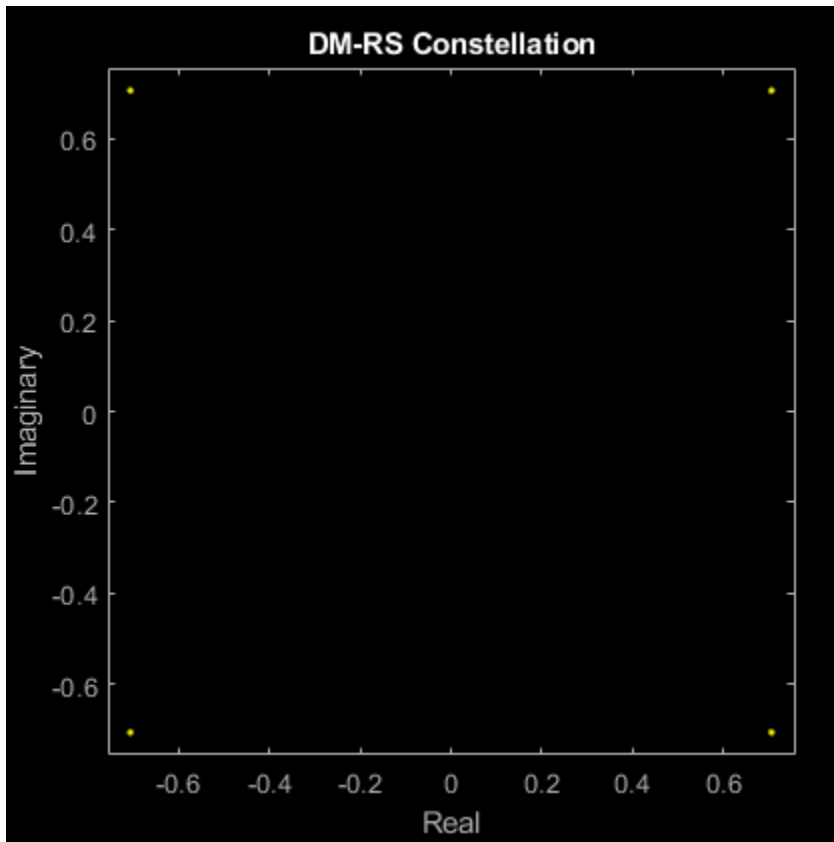
The CyclicPrefix property of the carrier object controls the number of OFDM symbols in a slot. The NSlot property of the carrier object controls the slot number.

In the case of codebook-based PUSCH processing, the sequence is multiplied with a precoder matrix, which depends on the number of layers, number of antenna ports, and the transmitted precoder matrix indicator (TPMI).

```
% Set the parameters that only control the DM-RS sequence generation
pusch.DMRS.NIDNSCID = 1; % Use empty to set it to NCellID of the carrier
pusch.DMRS.NSCID = 0;    % 0 or 1

% Generate DM-RS symbols
pusch.NumLayers = numel(pusch.DMRS.DMRSPortSet);
dmrsSymbols = nrPUSCHDMRS(carrier,pusch);

% Plot the constellation
scatterplot(dmrsSymbols)
title('DM-RS Constellation')
xlabel('Real')
ylabel('Imaginary')
```



```
% The read-only properties TimeWeights and FrequencyWeights of DMRS
% property of pusch object provides the values of time and frequency
% weights applied to the DM-RS symbols.
```

```
pusch.DMRS.TimeWeights
```

```
ans = 2x1
```

```
1
1
```

```
pusch.DMRS.FrequencyWeights
```

```
ans = 2x1
```

```
1
1
```

```
% Generate DM-RS indices
```

```
dmrsIndices = nrPUSCHDMRSIndices(carrier, pusch);
```

```
% Map the DM-RS symbols to the grid with the help of DM-RS indices
```

```
if strcmpi(pusch.TransmissionScheme, 'codebook')
```

```
    nports = pusch.NumAntennaPorts;
```

```
else
```

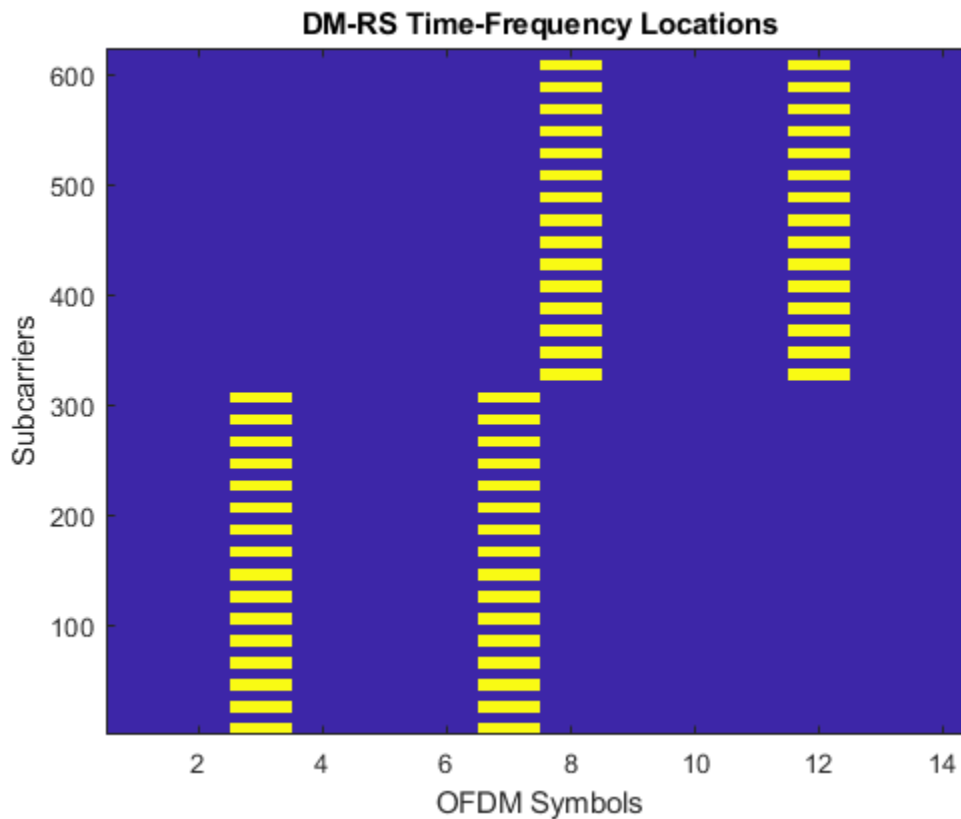
```
    nports = pusch.NumLayers;
```

```
end
```

```

grid = zeros([12*carrier.NSizeGrid carrier.SymbolsPerSlot nports]);
grid(dmrsIndices) = dmrsSymbols;
figure
imagesc(abs(grid(:,:,1)));
axis xy;
xlabel('OFDM Symbols');
ylabel('Subcarriers');
title('DM-RS Time-Frequency Locations');

```



PT-RS for CP-OFDM

PT-RS is the phase tracking reference signal. PT-RS is used mainly to estimate and minimize the effect of CPE on system performance. Due to the phase noise properties, the PT-RS signal has low density in the frequency domain and high density in the time domain. PT-RS always occurs in combination with DM-RS and only when the network has configured PT-RS to be present.

Parameters That Control Time Resources

PT-RS is configured through the higher layer parameter *DMRS-UplinkConfig* for uplink. The parameters that control the time resources of PT-RS are:

- DM-RS symbol locations
- Time density of PT-RS (L_{PT-RS})

L_{PT-RS} depends on the scheduled modulation and coding scheme. The value must be one of {1, 2, 4}. For the parameters that control DM-RS symbol locations, refer to Parameters that Control DM-RS Time Resources (CP-OFDM) on page 2-0 .

```
% Set the EnablePTRS property in pusch to 1
pusch.EnablePTRS = 1;

% Set the parameters that control the time resources of PT-RS
pusch.PTRS.TimeDensity = 2;
```

Parameters That Control Frequency Resources

PT-RS occupies only one subcarrier in an RB for one OFDM symbol. The parameters that control the frequency resources of PT-RS are:

- PRB allocation
- DM-RS configuration type
- Frequency density of PT-RS ($K_{\text{PT-RS}}$)
- Radio network temporary identifier (n_{RNTI})
- Resource element offset
- PT-RS antenna ports

$K_{\text{PT-RS}}$ depends on the scheduled bandwidth. The value is either 2 or 4. The value indicates whether PT-RS is present in every two RBs or every four RBs.

For more details, see “NR PDSCH Resource Allocation and DM-RS and PT-RS Reference Signals” on page 1-15.

```
% Set the parameters that control PT-RS subcarrier locations
pusch.RNTI = 1;
pusch.DMRS.DMRSConfigurationType = 1;
pusch.DMRS.DMRSPortSet = 0;
% Set the PT-RS parameters
pusch.PTRS.FrequencyDensity = 2; % 2 or 4
pusch.PTRS.REOffset = '10'; % '00', '01', '10', '11'
pusch.PTRS.PTRSPortSet = min(pusch.DMRS.DMRSPortSet);
```

Sequence Generation

The sequence used for generating PT-RS is the same pseudorandom sequence used for the DM-RS sequence generation. In the absence of intra-slot frequency hopping, the values of PT-RS sequence depend on the first DM-RS symbol position. In the presence of intra-slot frequency hopping, the values of PT-RS sequence depend on first DM-RS symbol positions in each hop. For more details, refer the section DM-RS Sequence Generation (CP-OFDM) on page 2-0 .

In the case of codebook-based PUSCH processing, the sequence is multiplied with a precoder matrix, which depends on the number of layers, number of antenna ports, and the transmitted precoder matrix indicator (TPMI).

```
% Set the parameters that control the PT-RS sequence generation
pusch.DMRS.NIDNSCID = 1; % Use empty to set it to NCellID of the carrier
pusch.DMRS.NSCID = 0; % 0 or 1
```

Generate the resource element (RE) indices of PUSCH, DM-RS, and PT-RS. Also, generate DM-RS and PT-RS symbols.

```
% Control the resource elements available for data in DM-RS OFDM symbol
% locations
```

```

pusch.DMRS.NumCDMGroupsWithoutData = 1;

% PUSCH, DM-RS and PT-RS indices
pusch.NumLayers = numel(pusch.DMRS.DMRSPortSet);
[puschIndices, puschInfo] = nrPUSCHIndices(carrier,pusch);
dmrsIndices = nrPUSCHDMRSIndices(carrier,pusch);
ptrsIndices = nrPUSCHPTRSIndices(carrier,pusch);

% DM-RS and PT-RS symbols
dmrsSymbols = nrPUSCHDMRS(carrier,pusch);
ptrsSymbols = nrPUSCHPTRS(carrier,pusch);

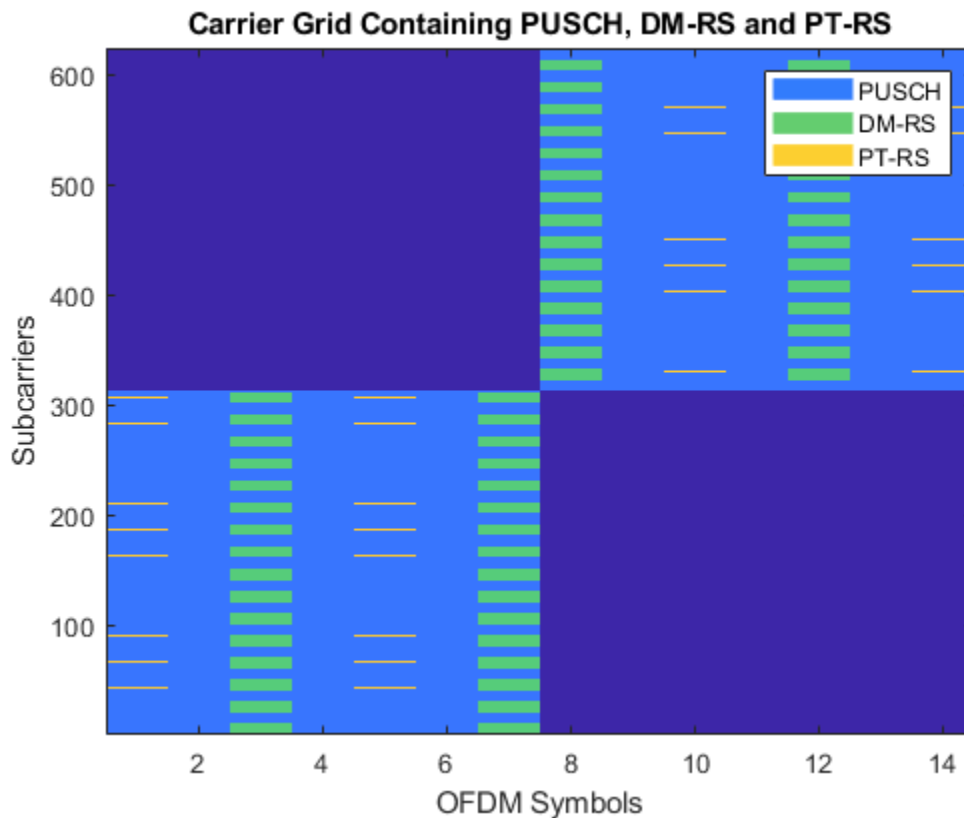
```

Map PUSCH, DM-RS, and PT-RS RE indices to the grid with scaled values to visualize the respective locations on the grid.

```

chpLevel = struct;
chpLevel.PUSCH = 0.4;
chpLevel.DMRS = 1;
chpLevel.PTRS = 1.4;
gridCPOFDM = complex(zeros([carrier.NSizeGrid*12 carrier.SymbolsPerSlot nports]));
gridCPOFDM(puschIndices) = chpLevel.PUSCH;
dmrsFactor = chpLevel.DMRS*(1/(max(abs(dmrsSymbols))));
gridCPOFDM(dmrsIndices) = dmrsFactor*dmrsSymbols;
ptrsFactor = chpLevel.PTRS*(1/(max(abs(ptrsSymbols))));
gridCPOFDM(ptrsIndices) = ptrsFactor*ptrsSymbols;
plotGrid(gridCPOFDM,1,chpLevel)

```



In the preceding figure, PT-RS is located from the start of the OFDM symbol in the physical uplink shared channel allocation. The symbols are present at every $L_{\text{PT-RS}}$ hop interval from each other or from DM-RS symbols. The difference in consecutive subcarrier locations of PT-RS is 24, which is the number of subcarriers in an RB (12) times the frequency density of PT-RS (2).

DM-RS for DFT-s-OFDM

DFT-s-OFDM supports only single layer transmission and is primarily used for low coverage scenarios. The time-frequency resources of DM-RS in DFT-s-OFDM are structured in a way to achieve low cubic metric and high power amplifier efficiency. The transmission of a reference signal frequency multiplexed with other uplink data transmissions highly impacts the power amplifier efficiency due to the increased cubic metric. The reference signals are time-multiplexed with uplink transmissions, thereby blocking all the resource elements for data transmission in the OFDM symbols carrying DM-RS.

Parameters That Control Time Resources

The parameters that control the time resources of DM-RS in DFT-s-OFDM are:

- PUSCH symbol allocation
- Mapping type
- Intra-slot frequency hopping
- DM-RS type A position
- DM-RS length
- DM-RS additional position

These parameters are the same parameters that control the time resources of DM-RS in CP-OFDM. For more details, refer to Parameters that Control DM-RS Time Resources (CP-OFDM) on page 2-0 .

```
% Set the TransformPrecoding property in pusch to 1
pusch.TransformPrecoding = 1;
```

```
% Parameters that control the time resources
pusch.DMRS.DMRSTypeAPosition = 2;
pusch.DMRS.DMRSLength = 1;
pusch.DMRS.DMRSAdditionalPosition = 0;
```

Parameters That Control Frequency Resources

The parameters that control the frequency resources of DM-RS in DFT-s-OFDM are:

- DM-RS configuration type
- DM-RS antenna port

These two parameters are the same as the parameters of CP-OFDM. The DM-RS configuration type is always set to 1. The DM-RS antenna port is nominally a scalar with value 0.

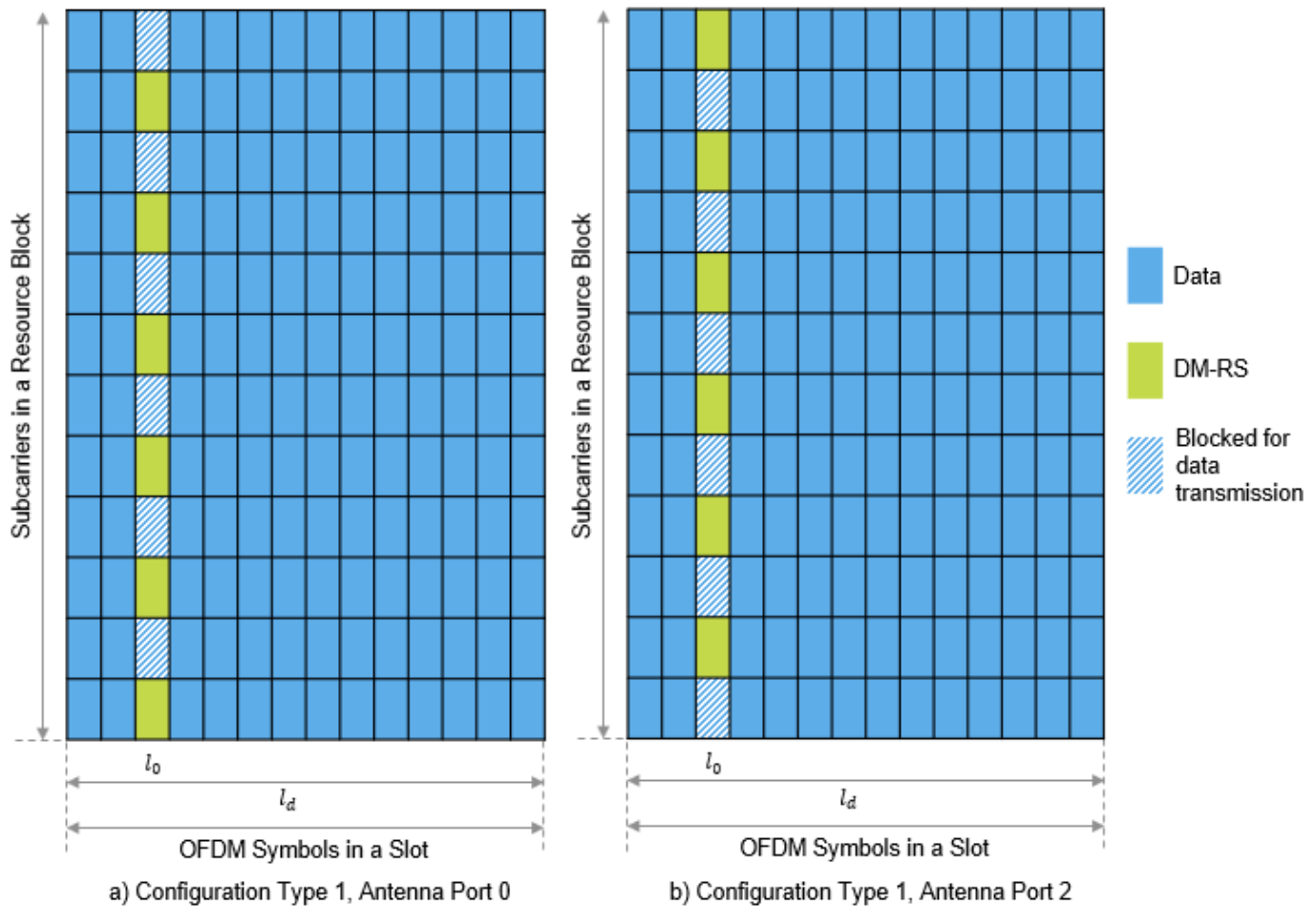


Figure 2: DM-RS Subcarrier Locations for DFT-s-OFDM

There is no need to support multi-user MIMO situations because DFT-s-OFDM is for coverage-limited scenarios. With no MIMO situations, the reference signal is generated only for the transmitted PRBs rather than CRBs as in OFDM. Due to the single layer and single configuration type allowed in DFT-s-OFDM, the number of subcarrier locations used for DM-RS in an RB is constant. Figure 2 illustrates the DM-RS subcarrier locations in DFT-s-OFDM for mapping type A with OFDM symbols allocated for PUSCH spanning over the complete slot.

```
% Set the DM-RS antenna port
pusch.DMRS.DMRSPortSet = 0;
```

Sequence Generation

The DM-RS sequence is the ZadoffChu sequence in DFT-s-OFDM. The orthogonal sequences are generated with different cyclic shifts for a group number and sequence number. The parameters that control the sequence generation are:

- PRB allocation
- Group hopping
- Sequence hopping

- DM-RS scrambling identity (N_{ID}^{RS})
- DM-RS symbol locations

```

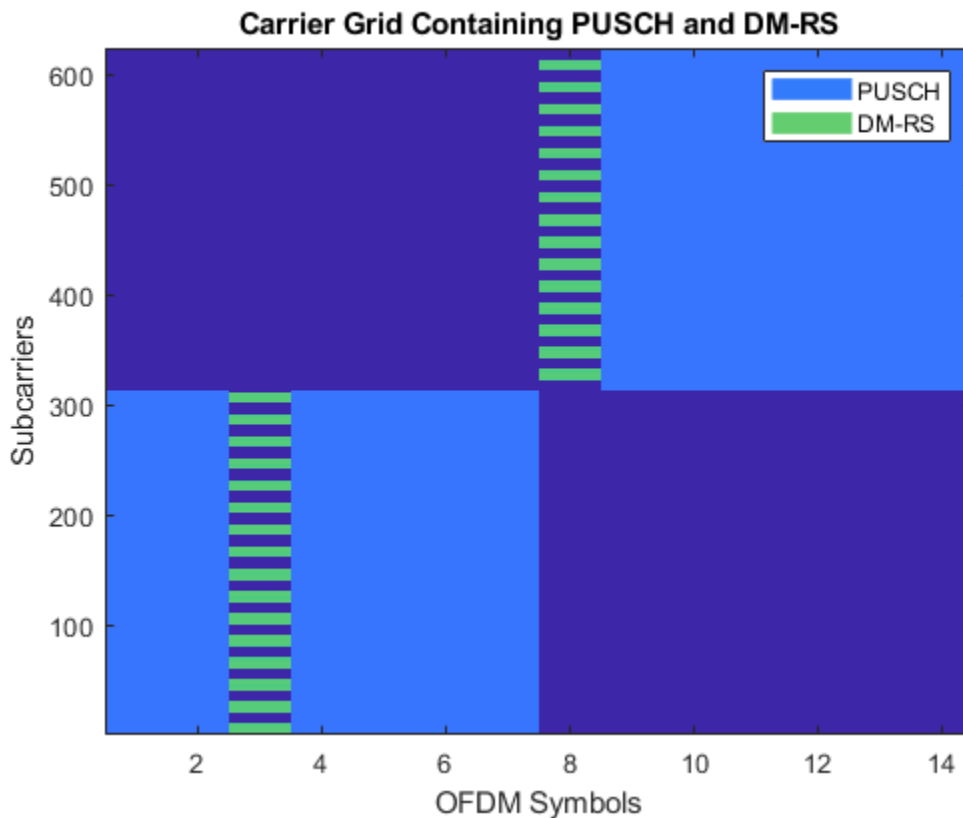
% Parameters that control the sequence generation
pusch.DMRS.SequenceHopping = 0; % Sequence hopping (0 or 1)
pusch.DMRS.GroupHopping = 1;   % Group hopping (0 or 1)
pusch.DMRS.NRSID = 1;         % Use empty to set it to NCellID of carrier

% Generate the DM-RS symbols and indices
pusch.NumLayers = numel(pusch.DMRS.DMRSPortSet);
dmrsSymbols = nrPUSCHDMRS(carrier,pusch);
dmrsIndices = nrPUSCHDMRSIndices(carrier,pusch);
dmrsFactor = chpLevel.DMRS*(1/(max(abs(dmrsSymbols))));
% Map DM-RS onto the grid
grid = complex(zeros([12*carrier.NSizeGrid carrier.SymbolsPerSlot nports]));
grid(dmrsIndices) = dmrsFactor*dmrsSymbols;

% Generate PUSCH indices and map onto the grid
puschIndices = nrPUSCHIndices(carrier,pusch);
grid(puschIndices) = chpLevel.PUSCH;

% Plot the grid
titleText = 'Carrier Grid Containing PUSCH and DM-RS';
plotGrid(grid,1,struct('PUSCH',chpLevel.PUSCH,'DMRS',chpLevel.DMRS),titleText,{'PUSCH','DM-RS'})

```



The subcarrier locations in the OFDM symbols occupying DM-RS are not allocated for PUSCH.

PT-RS for DFT-s-OFDM

PT-RS in DFT-s-OFDM is inserted with data in the transform precoding stage.

Parameters That Control Time Resources

The parameters that control the time resources of PT-RS in DFT-s-OFDM are same as the parameters that control the time resources of PT-RS in CP-OFDM. The value of L_{PT-RS} is either 1 or 2 in DFT-s-OFDM. For more details, refer to Parameters that Control PT-RS Time Resources (CP-OFDM) on page 2-0 .

```
% Generate a grid with shared channel allocation for an RB in a single slot
% with complete symbol allocation of 14 symbols for a single layer

% Set the carrier resource grid with one RB
carrier.NSizeGrid = 1;

% Configure PUSCH with DFT-s-OFDM and no frequency hopping
pusch.TransformPrecoding = 1;
pusch.FrequencyHopping = 'neither';

% Set the parameter that control PT-RS time resources
pusch.EnablePTRS = 1;
pusch.PTRS.TimeDensity = 2;
```

Parameters That Control Frequency Resources

The PT-RS pattern in the frequency domain is quite different from CP-OFDM. The PT-RS samples are inserted as chunks or groups ($N_{\text{group}}^{\text{PT-RS}}$). Each group consists of a finite number of samples ($N_{\text{samp}}^{\text{group}}$) in the scheduled bandwidth for each OFDM symbol where PT-RS is present.

The parameters that control the frequency resources of PT-RS in DFT-s-OFDM are:

- PRB allocation
- Number of PT-RS samples in a group ($N_{\text{samp}}^{\text{group}}$)
- Number of PT-RS groups ($N_{\text{group}}^{\text{PT-RS}}$)

The valid combinations of PT-RS sample density ($[N_{\text{samp}}^{\text{group}} N_{\text{group}}^{\text{PT-RS}}]$) are $\{[2\ 2], [2\ 4], [4\ 2], [4\ 4], [4\ 8]\}$. The number of PT-RS samples in an OFDM symbol is fixed in DFT-s-OFDM, based on the number of PT-RS samples in all the PT-RS groups. This number is different from CP-OFDM in which the number of PT-RS samples increase based on the number of RBs in PUSCH.

Figure 3 shows the subcarrier locations of PT-RS symbols for an RB with the number of PT-RS samples set to 2 and the number of PT-RS groups set to 2 for an OFDM symbol carrying PT-RS.

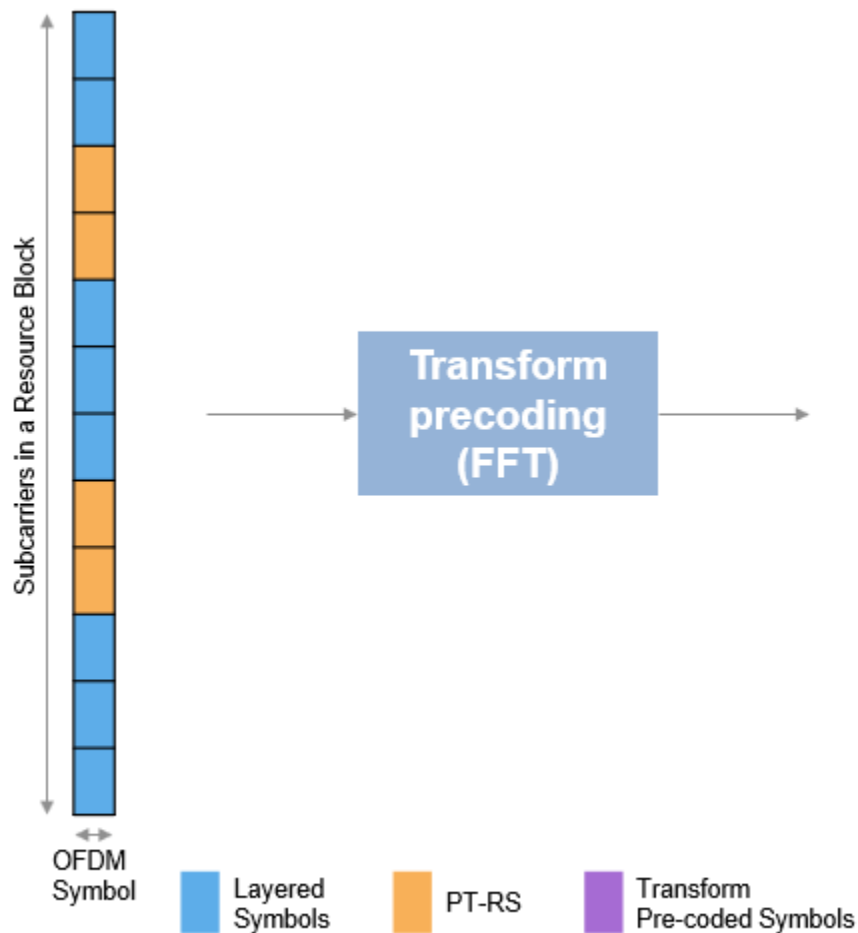


Figure 3: PT-RS Insertion in DFT-s-OFDM

PT-RS sample density [2 2] implies that there are two PT-RS groups in a scheduled bandwidth with two symbols each.

PT-RS is inserted with layered symbols at the input of transform precoding. After transform precoding, both layered symbols and PT-RS are treated as data. Therefore, the PT-RS is not visible in the grid directly.

```
% Set the parameters that control PT-RS frequency resources
pusch.PRBSets = 0:carrier.NSizeGrid-1;
pusch.PTRS.NumPTRSSamples = 2; % 2, 4
pusch.PTRS.NumPTRSGroups = 2; % 2, 4, 8
```

Sequence Generation

The PT-RS sequence in DFT-s-OFDM is a modified $\pi/2$ -BPSK sequence. The parameters that control the sequence generation are:

- Starting OFDM symbol of PUSCH allocation
- Number of OFDM symbols in a slot

- Slot number in a radio frame
- PT-RS scrambling identity (N_{ID})
- PT-RS subcarrier locations

`% Set the parameters that control PT-RS sequence generation`

```
pusch.DMRS.NRSID = 1;
pusch.PTRS.NID = 10; % Use empty to set it to NRSID of DMRS configuration
```

Generate PUSCH and PT-RS RE indices.

`% PUSCH, and PT-RS indices`

```
[puschIndices, puschInfoDFTsOFDM] = nrPUSCHIndices(carrier, pusch);
ptrsIndices = nrPUSCHPTRSIndices(carrier, pusch);
```

Set PUSCH and PT-RS resource elements to constant values.

`% Insert PT-RS along with the PUSCH data`

```
GdPTRS = size(reshape(ptrsIndices, [], pusch.NumLayers), 1);
dataWithPTRS = chpLevel.PUSCH*ones(puschInfoDFTsOFDM.Gd+GdPTRS, 1);
dataWithPTRS(ptrsIndices(:, 1)) = chpLevel.PTRS;
```

Plot PT-RS projections onto the grid.

```
gridDFTsOFDM = zeros(numel(pusch.PRBSets)*12, carrier.SymbolsPerSlot);
```

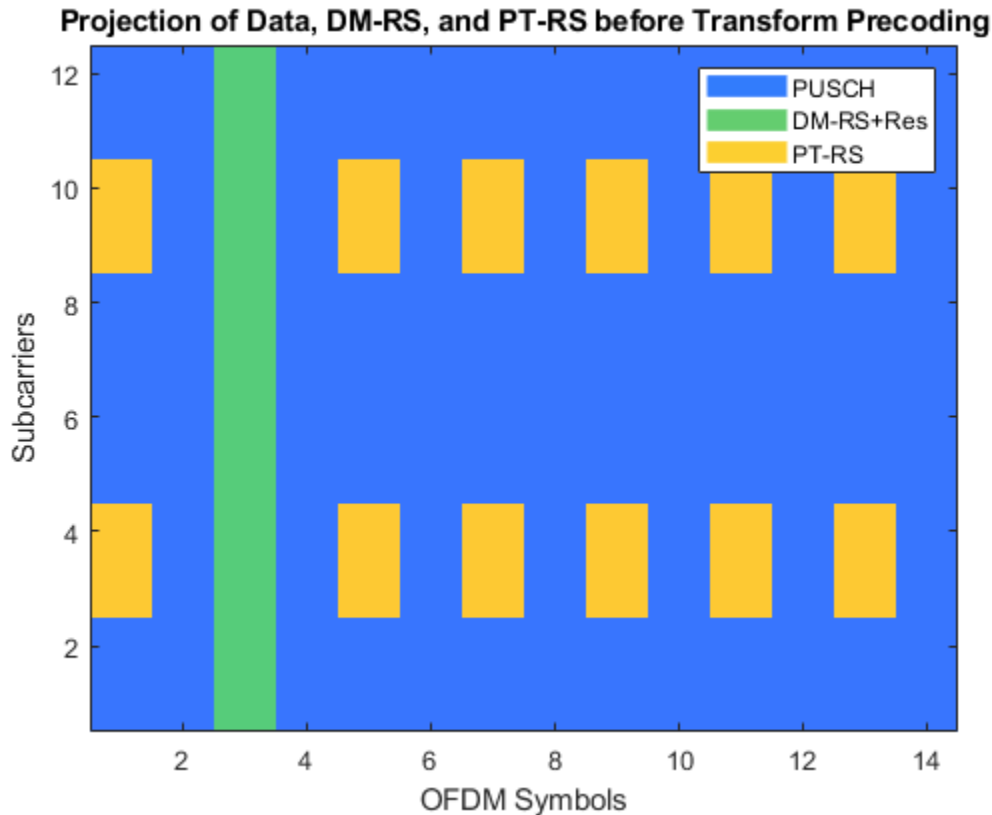
`% Map the grid with data and reference signals`

```
gridDFTsOFDM(:, puschInfoDFTsOFDM.DMRSSymbolSet+1) = chpLevel.DMRS;
gridDFTsOFDM(~(gridDFTsOFDM==chpLevel.DMRS)) = dataWithPTRS;
```

`% Plot the projections of data, DM-RS and PT-RS on grid before transform`

`% precoding`

```
fNames = {'PUSCH', 'DM-RS+Res', 'PT-RS'};
titleText = 'Projection of Data, DM-RS, and PT-RS before Transform Precoding';
plotGrid(gridDFTsOFDM, 1, chpLevel, titleText, fNames)
```



Further Exploration

You can try changing the parameters that affect the time and frequency resources of reference signals and observe the variations in the RE positions for the respective signals.

Try changing the number of antenna ports configured for DM-RS and PT-RS, then observe the variations of reference signals and data across the ports. For example, try to configure DM-RS for two antenna ports 0 and 2, configuration type 1, and PT-RS for antenna port 0. Generate the PUSCH indices, DM-RS signal (indices and symbols), and PT-RS signal (indices and symbols). Map them to a grid and visualize the grid for both the ports.

Try performing channel estimation and phase tracking using the PT-RS symbols and indices. Compute the throughput by following the steps outlined in “NR PUSCH Throughput” on page 2-45.

This example shows how to generate the DM-RS and PT-RS sequences and how to map the sequences to the OFDM carrier resource grid. It highlights the properties that control the time-frequency structure of reference signals for different waveforms. For example, the time-frequency pattern for reference signals in CP-OFDM and DFT-s-OFDM and the variation in the sequences generated for reference signals in different waveforms.

References

- 1 3GPP TS 38.211. "NR; Physical channels and modulation (Release 15)." *3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Radio Access Network*.
- 2 3GPP TS 38.214. "NR; Physical layer procedures for data (Release 15)." *3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Radio Access Network*.

- 3** 3GPP TS 38.212. "NR; Multiplexing and channel coding (Release 15)." *3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Radio Access Network.*

Local Functions

```
function plotGrid(grid,nLayer,chpLevel,titleText, names)
% plotGrid Display resource grid GRID of the layer number NLAYER with the
% legend containing physical channel and associated reference signals, at
% different power levels CHPLEVEL with title TITLETEXT. Legend is created
% using a cell array of character vectors NAMES.

    if nargin < 4
        titleText = 'Carrier Grid Containing PUSCH, DM-RS and PT-RS';
    end

    if nargin < 5
        names = {'PUSCH', 'DM-RS', 'PT-RS'};
    end

    map = parula(64);
    cscaling = 40;
    im = image(1:size(grid,2),1:size(grid,1),cscaling*abs(grid(:,:,nLayer)));
    colormap(im.Parent,map);

    % Add legend to the image
    chpval = struct2cell(chpLevel);
    clevels = cscaling*[chpval{:}];
    N = length(clevels);
    L = line(ones(N),ones(N), 'LineWidth',8); % Generate lines
    % Index the color map and associated the selected colors with the lines
    set(L,{'color'},mat2cell(map( min(1+cleveles,length(map) ),:),ones(1,N),3)); % Set the colors
    % Create legend
    legend(names{:});
    axis xy;
    ylabel('Subcarriers');
    xlabel('OFDM Symbols');
    title(titleText);
end
```

See Also

Functions

nrPUSCHDMRS | nrPUSCHDMRSIndices | nrPUSCHIndices | nrPUSCHPTRS |
nrPUSCHPTRSIndices

Objects

nrCarrierConfig | nrPUSCHConfig

Related Examples

- “NR PDSCH Resource Allocation and DM-RS and PT-RS Reference Signals” on page 1-15

NR PUSCH Throughput

This example shows how to measure the physical uplink shared channel (PUSCH) throughput of a 5G New Radio (NR) link, as defined by the 3GPP NR standard. The example implements PUSCH and uplink transport channel (UL-SCH). The transmitter model includes PUSCH demodulation reference symbols (DM-RS). The example supports both clustered delay line (CDL) and tapped delay line (TDL) propagation channels. You can perform perfect or practical synchronization and channel estimation. To reduce the total simulation time, you can execute the SNR points in the SNR loop in parallel by using the Parallel Computing Toolbox™.

Introduction

This example measures the PUSCH throughput of a 5G link, as defined by the 3GPP NR standard [1], [2], [3], [4].

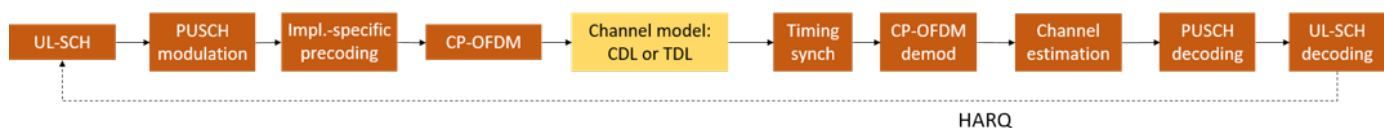
The following 5G NR features are modeled:

- UL-SCH transport channel coding
- PUSCH and PUSCH DM-RS generation
- Variable subcarrier spacing and frame numerologies ($2^n * 15\text{kHz}$)
- Normal and extended cyclic prefix
- TDL and CDL propagation channel models

Other features of the simulation are:

- Codebook and non-codebook based PUSCH transmission schemes
- Optional PUSCH transform precoding
- Slot wise and non slot wise PUSCH and DM-RS mapping
- Perfect or practical synchronization and channel estimation
- HARQ operation with 16 processes

The figure below shows the processing chain implemented. For clarity, the DM-RS generation has been omitted.



Note that this example does not include closed-loop adaptation of the MIMO precoding according to channel conditions. The PUSCH MIMO precoding used in the example is as follows:

- For codebook based transmission, the MIMO precoding matrix used inside the PUSCH modulation can be selected using the TPMI parameter.
- The implementation-specific MIMO precoding matrix (for non-codebook based transmission, or MIMO precoding between transmission antenna ports and antennas for codebook based transmission) is an identity matrix.

To reduce the total simulation time, you can use the Parallel Computing Toolbox to execute the SNR points of the SNR loop in parallel.

Simulation Length and SNR Points

Set the length of the simulation in terms of the number of 10ms frames. A large number of NFrames should be used to produce meaningful throughput results. Set the SNR points to simulate. The SNR is defined per RE and applies to each receive antenna.

```
simParameters = []; % Clear simParameters variable
simParameters.NFrames = 2; % Number of 10ms frames
simParameters.SNRIn = [-5 0 5]; % SNR range (dB)
```

The variable `displaySimulationInformation` controls the display of simulation information such as the HARQ process ID used for each subframe. In case of CRC error, the value of the index to the RV sequence is also displayed.

```
displaySimulationInformation = true;
```

Channel Estimator Configuration

The logical variable `perfectChannelEstimator` controls channel estimation and synchronization behavior. When set to `true`, perfect channel estimation and synchronization is used. Otherwise, practical channel estimation and synchronization is used, based on the values of the received PUSCH DM-RS.

```
perfectChannelEstimator = true;
```

Carrier and PUSCH Configuration

Set the key parameters of the simulation. These include:

- The bandwidth in resource blocks (12 subcarriers per resource block)
- Subcarrier spacing: 15, 30, 60, 120, 240 (kHz)
- Cyclic prefix length: normal or extended
- Cell ID
- Number of transmit and receive antennas

A substructure containing the UL-SCH and PUSCH parameters is also specified. This includes:

- Target code rate
- Allocated resource blocks (PRBSet)
- Modulation scheme: 'pi/2-BPSK', 'QPSK', '16QAM', '64QAM', '256QAM'
- Number of layers
- Transform precoding (enable/disable)
- PUSCH transmission scheme and MIMO precoding matrix indication (TPMI)
- Number of antenna ports
- PUSCH mapping type
- DM-RS configuration parameters

Other simulation wide parameters are:

- Propagation channel model: 'TDL' or 'CDL'

Note that if transform precoding is enabled, the number of layers should be set to 1.

```

% Bandwidth, numerology (SCS and CP type) and other general parameters
simParameters.NRB = 52; % Bandwidth in number of resource blocks (52RBs at 15kHz)
simParameters.SubcarrierSpacing = 15; % 15, 30, 60, 120, 240 (kHz)
simParameters.CyclicPrefix = 'Normal'; % 'Normal' or 'Extended'
simParameters.NCellID = 0; % Cell identity
simParameters.NTxAnts = 1; % Number of transmit antennas
simParameters.NRxAnts = 2; % Number of receive antennas

% UL-SCH/PUSCH parameters
simParameters.PUSCH.TargetCodeRate = 193 / 1024; % Code rate used to calculate transport block size
simParameters.PUSCH.PRBSet = (0:simParameters.NRB-1); % PUSCH PRB allocation
simParameters.PUSCH.SymbolSet = 0:13; % PUSCH symbol allocation in each slot
simParameters.PUSCH.NohPRB = 0; % Additional RE overhead per PRB
simParameters.PUSCH.EnableHARQ = true; % Enable/disable HARQ, if disabled, single transmission
simParameters.PUSCH.Modulation = 'QPSK'; % 'pi/2-BPSK', 'QPSK', '16QAM', '64QAM', '256QAM'
simParameters.PUSCH.NLayers = 1; % Number of PUSCH layers
simParameters.PUSCH.RNTI = 1; % Radio Network Temporary Identifier
simParameters.PUSCH.TransformPrecoding = false; % Enable/disable transform precoding
simParameters.PUSCH.TxScheme = 'nonCodebook'; % Transmission scheme ('nonCodebook','codebook')
simParameters.PUSCH.NAntennaPorts = 1; % Number of antenna ports for codebook based precoding
simParameters.PUSCH.TPMI = 0; % Precoding matrix indicator for codebook based precoding
% PUSCH DM-RS configuration
simParameters.PUSCH.PUSCHMappingType = 'A'; % PUSCH mapping type ('A'(slot-wise),'B'(non slot-wise))
simParameters.PUSCH.DMRSTypeAPosition = 2; % Mapping type A only. First DM-RS symbol position
simParameters.PUSCH.DMRSLength = 1; % Number of front-loaded DM-RS symbols (1(single),2(dual))
simParameters.PUSCH.DMRSAdditionalPosition = 1; % Additional DM-RS symbol positions (max range 0..13)
simParameters.PUSCH.DMRSConfigurationType = 1; % DM-RS configuration type (1,2)
simParameters.PUSCH.NumCDMGroupsWithoutData = 2; % CDM groups without data
simParameters.PUSCH.NIDNSCID = 0; % Scrambling identity (0..65535)
simParameters.PUSCH.NSCID = 0; % Scrambling initialization (0,1)
simParameters.PUSCH.NRSID = 0; % Scrambling ID for low-PAPR sequences (0..100)
simParameters.PUSCH.GroupHopping = 'Disable'; % Hopping type ('Enable','Disable')

% Define the propagation channel type
simParameters.ChannelType = 'TDL'; % 'CDL' or 'TDL'

```

Create carrier configuration object carrier and PUSCH configuration structure pusch.

```

carrier = nrCarrierConfig;
carrier.SubcarrierSpacing = simParameters.SubcarrierSpacing;
carrier.CyclicPrefix = simParameters.CyclicPrefix;
carrier.NSizeGrid = simParameters.NRB;
carrier.NCellID = simParameters.NCellID;
pusch = simParameters.PUSCH;

```

For key simulation parameters, define local variables for convenience.

```

snrIn = simParameters.SNRIn;
nTxAnts = simParameters.NTxAnts;
nRxAnts = simParameters.NRxAnts;
channelType = simParameters.ChannelType;

```

Propagation Channel Model Configuration

Create the channel model object. Both CDL and TDL channel models are supported [5].

```

if strcmpi(channelType, 'CDL')

```

```
channel = nrCDLChannel;  
channel.DelayProfile = 'CDL-A';  
[txsize,rxsize] = hArrayGeometry(nTxAnts,nRxAnts,'uplink');  
channel.TransmitAntennaArray.Size = txsize;  
channel.ReceiveAntennaArray.Size = rxsize;  
  
else  
  
channel = nrTDLChannel;  
channel.DelayProfile = 'TDL-A';  
channel.NumTransmitAntennas = nTxAnts;  
channel.NumReceiveAntennas = nRxAnts;  
  
end  
  
channel.DelaySpread = 30e-9; % in seconds  
channel.MaximumDopplerShift = 10; % in Hz
```

The sample rate for the channel model is set using the value returned from nrOFDMInfo.

```
waveformInfo = nrOFDMInfo(carrier);  
channel.SampleRate = waveformInfo.SampleRate;
```

Get the maximum number of delayed samples by a channel multipath component. This is calculated from the channel path with the largest delay and the implementation delay of the channel filter. This is required later to flush the channel filter to obtain the received signal.

```
chInfo = info(channel);  
maxChDelay = ceil(max(chInfo.PathDelays*channel.SampleRate));  
maxChDelay = maxChDelay + chInfo.ChannelFilterDelay;
```

Processing Loop

To determine the throughput at each SNR point, the PUSCH data is analyzed per transmission instance using the following steps:

- *Update current HARQ process.* Check the CRC of the previous transmission for the given HARQ process. Determine whether a retransmission is required. If that is not the case generate new data.
- *Generate resource grid.* Channel coding is performed by nrULSCH. It operates on the input transport block provided. Internally, it keeps a copy of the transport block in case a retransmission is required. The coded bits are modulated by nrPUSCH. Implementation-specific MIMO precoding is applied to the resulting signal. Note that if TxScheme='codebook', codebook based MIMO precoding will already have been applied inside nrPUSCH and the implementation-specific MIMO precoding is an additional stage of MIMO precoding.
- *Generate waveform.* The generated grid is then OFDM modulated.
- *Model noisy channel.* The waveform is passed through a CDL or TDL fading channel. AWGN is added. The SNR for each layer is defined per RE and per receive antenna.
- *Perform synchronization and OFDM demodulation.* For perfect synchronization, the channel impulse response is reconstructed and used to synchronize the received waveform. For practical synchronization, the received waveform is correlated with the PUSCH DM-RS. The synchronized signal is then OFDM demodulated.
- *Perform channel estimation.* If perfect channel estimation is used, the channel impulse response is reconstructed and OFDM demodulated to provide a channel estimate. For practical channel estimation, the PUSCH DM-RS is used.

- *Extract PUSCH and perform equalization.* The resource elements corresponding to the PUSCH allocation are extracted from the received OFDM resource grid and the channel estimate using `nrExtractResources`. The received PUSCH resource elements are then MMSE equalized using `nrEqualizeMMSE`.
- *Decode the PUSCH.* The equalized PUSCH symbols, along with a noise estimate, are demodulated and descrambled by `nrPUSCHDecode` to obtain an estimate of the received codewords.
- *Decode the Uplink Shared Channel (UL-SCH) and store the block CRC error for a HARQ process.* The vector of decoded soft bits is passed to `nrULSCHDecoder` which decodes the codeword and returns the block CRC error used to determine the throughput of the system.

```

% Array to store the maximum throughput for all SNR points
maxThroughput = zeros(length(snrIn),1);
% Array to store the simulation throughput for all SNR points
simThroughput = zeros(length(snrIn),1);

% Set up Redundancy Version (RV) sequence, number of HARQ processes and
% the sequence in which the HARQ processes are used
if pusch.EnableHARQ
    % From PUSCH demodulation requirements in RAN WG4 meeting #88bis
    % (R4-1814062)
    rvSeq = [0 2 3 1];
else
    % HARQ disabled - single transmission with RV=0, no retransmissions
    rvSeq = 0;
end

% Create UL-SCH encoder System object
encodeULSCH = nrULSCH;
encodeULSCH.MultipleHARQProcesses = true;
encodeULSCH.TargetCodeRate = pusch.TargetCodeRate;

% Create UL-SCH decoder System object
% Use layered belief propagation for LDPC decoding, with half the number of
% iterations as compared to the default for belief propagation decoding
decodeULSCH = nrULSCHDecoder;
decodeULSCH.MultipleHARQProcesses = true;
decodeULSCH.TargetCodeRate = pusch.TargetCodeRate;
decodeULSCH.LDPCDecodingAlgorithm = 'Layered belief propagation';
decodeULSCH.MaximumLDPCIterationCount = 6;

% The temporary variables 'carrier_init', 'pusch_init' and
% 'decodeULSCH_init' are used to create the temporary variables 'carrier',
% 'pusch' and 'decodeULSCH' within the SNR loop to create independent
% instances in case of parallel simulation
carrier_init = carrier;
pusch_init = pusch;
decodeULSCH_init = clone(decodeULSCH);

% Get the values of 'NFrames' to avoid overhead in case of parallel
% simulation
NFrames = simParameters.NFrames;

for snrIdx = 1:numel(snrIn) % comment out for parallel computing
% parfor snrIdx = 1:numel(snrIn) % uncomment for parallel computing
% To reduce the total simulation time, you can execute this loop in
% parallel by using the Parallel Computing Toolbox. Comment out the 'for'

```

```
% statement and uncomment the 'parfor' statement. If the Parallel Computing
% Toolbox is not installed, 'parfor' defaults to normal 'for' statement.
% Because parfor-loop iterations are executed in parallel in a
% nondeterministic order, the simulation information displayed for each SNR
% point can be intertwined. To switch off simulation information display,
% set the 'displaySimulationInformation' variable above to false

    % Reset the random number generator and channel, so that each SNR point
    % will experience the same noise and channel realizations
    rng('default');
    reset(channel);

    % Initialize variables for this SNR point, required for initialization
    % of variables when using the Parallel Computing Toolbox
    carrier = carrier_init;
    pusch = pusch_init;
    pathFilters = [];

    % Specify the order in which we cycle through the HARQ processes
    NHARQProcesses = 16;
    harqSequence = 1:NHARQProcesses;

    % Initialize the state of all HARQ processes and reset the UL-SCH
    % decoder
    harqProcesses = hNewHARQProcesses(NHARQProcesses,rvSeq,1);
    harqProcCntr = 0; % HARQ process counter
    decodeULSCH = clone(decodeULSCH_init);

    SNRdB = snrIn(snrIdx);
    fprintf('\nSimulating %s-based transmission scheme (%dx%d) and SCS=%dkHz with %s channel at %s\n',
        harqSequence, carrier.NSubcarriers, carrier.SubcarrierSpacing, harqSequence, harqSequence);

    % Total number of slots in the simulation period
    NSlots = NFrames * carrier.SlotsPerFrame;

    % Create 'ue' structure
    ue = struct();
    ue.NRB = carrier.NSizeGrid;
    ue.CyclicPrefix = carrier.CyclicPrefix;
    ue.SubcarrierSpacing = carrier.SubcarrierSpacing;
    ue.NCellID = carrier.NCellID;

    % Timing offset, updated in every slot for perfect synchronization and
    % when the correlation is strong for practical synchronization
    offset = 0;

    % Loop over the entire waveform length
    for nslot = 0:NSlots-1

        % Update the carrier and PUSCH slot numbers to account for a new
        % PUSCH transmission
        carrier.NSlot = nslot;
        pusch.NSlot = nslot;

        % Calculate the transport block size for this slot
        [puschIndices,dmrsIndices,dmrsSymbols,puschIndicesInfo] = hPUSCHResources(ue,pusch);
        MRB = numel(pusch.PRBSet);
        TBS = nrTBS(pusch.Modulation,pusch.NLayers,MRB,puschIndicesInfo.NREPerPRB,pusch.TargetCo
```

```

% Get HARQ process index for the current PUSCH from the HARQ index
% table
harqProcIdx = harqSequence(mod(harqProcCntr,length(harqSequence))+1);

% Update current HARQ process information (this updates the RV
% depending on CRC pass or fail in the previous transmission for
% this HARQ process)
harqProcesses(harqProcIdx) = hUpdateHARQProcess(harqProcesses(harqProcIdx),1);

% HARQ: check CRC from previous transmission, i.e. is a
% retransmission required?
NDI = false;
if harqProcesses(harqProcIdx).blkerr % errored
    if (harqProcesses(harqProcIdx).RVIdx==1) % end of rvSeq
        resetSoftBuffer(decodeULSCH,harqProcIdx-1);
        NDI = true;
    end
else % no error
    NDI = true;
end
if NDI
    trBlk = randi([0 1],TBS,1);
    setTransportBlock(encodeULSCH,trBlk,harqProcIdx-1);
end

% UL-SCH encoding
codedTrBlock = encodeULSCH(pusch.Modulation,pusch.NLayers,puschIndicesInfo.G,harqProcesses

% PUSCH modulation, including codebook based MIMO precoding if
% TxScheme = 'codebook'
puschSymbols = nrPUSCH(codedTrBlock,pusch.Modulation,pusch.NLayers,carrier.NCellID,pusch

% Create resource grid associated with PUSCH transmission period
puschGrid = nrResourceGrid(carrier,nTxAnts);

% Implementation-specific PUSCH MIMO precoding and mapping. This
% MIMO precoding step is in addition to any codebook based
% MIMO precoding done during PUSCH modulation above
if (strcmpi(pusch.TxScheme,'codebook'))
    % codebook based MIMO precoding, F precodes between PUSCH
    % transmit antenna ports and transmit antennas
    F = eye(pusch.NAntennaPorts,nTxAnts);
else
    % non-codebook based MIMO precoding, F precodes between PUSCH
    % layers and transmit antennas
    F = eye(pusch.NLayers,nTxAnts);
end
[~,puschAntIndices] = nrExtractResources(puschIndices,puschGrid);
puschGrid(puschAntIndices) = puschSymbols * F;

% Implementation-specific PUSCH DM-RS MIMO precoding and mapping.
% The DM-RS creation in hPUSCHResources above includes codebook
% based MIMO precoding if applicable
for p = 1:size(dmrsSymbols,2)
    [~,dmrsAntIndices] = nrExtractResources(dmrsIndices(:,p),puschGrid);
    puschGrid(dmrsAntIndices) = puschGrid(dmrsAntIndices) + dmrsSymbols(:,p) * F(p,:);
end

```

```

% OFDM modulation
txWaveform = nrOFDMModulate(carrier,puschGrid);

% Pass data through channel model. Append zeros at the end of the
% transmitted waveform to flush channel content. These zeros take
% into account any delay introduced in the channel. This is a mix
% of multipath delay and implementation delay. This value may
% change depending on the sampling rate, delay profile and delay
% spread
txWaveform = [txWaveform; zeros(maxChDelay,size(txWaveform,2))]; %#ok<AGROW>
[rxWaveform,pathGains,sampleTimes] = channel(txWaveform);

% Add AWGN to the received time domain waveform
% Normalize noise power by the IFFT size used in OFDM modulation,
% as the OFDM modulator applies this normalization to the
% transmitted waveform. Also normalize by the number of receive
% antennas, as the default behaviour of the channel model is to
% apply this normalization to the received waveform
SNR = 10^(SNRdB/20);
N0 = 1/(sqrt(2.0*nRxAnts*double(waveformInfo.Nfft))*SNR);
noise = N0*complex(randn(size(rxWaveform)),randn(size(rxWaveform)));
rxWaveform = rxWaveform + noise;

if (perfectChannelEstimator)
    % Perfect synchronization. Use information provided by the
    % channel to find the strongest multipath component
    pathFilters = getPathFilters(channel);
    [offset,mag] = nrPerfectTimingEstimate(pathGains,pathFilters);
else
    % Practical synchronization. Correlate the received waveform
    % with the PUSCH DM-RS to give timing offset estimate 't' and
    % correlation magnitude 'mag'. The function
    % hSkipWeakTimingOffset is used to update the receiver timing
    % offset. If the correlation peak in 'mag' is weak, the current
    % timing estimate 't' is ignored and the previous estimate
    % 'offset' is used
    [t,mag] = nrTimingEstimate(carrier,rxWaveform,dmrsIndices,dmrsSymbols); %#ok<UNRCH>
    offset = hSkipWeakTimingOffset(offset,t,mag);
end
rxWaveform = rxWaveform(1+offset:end,:);

% Perform OFDM demodulation on the received data to recreate the
% resource grid, including padding in the event that practical
% synchronization results in an incomplete slot being demodulated
rxGrid = nrOFDMDemodulate(carrier,rxWaveform);
[K,L,R] = size(rxGrid);
if (L < carrier.SymbolsPerSlot)
    rxGrid = cat(2,rxGrid,zeros(K,carrier.SymbolsPerSlot-L,R));
end

if (perfectChannelEstimator)
    % Perfect channel estimation, use the value of the path gains
    % provided by the channel
    estChannelGrid = nrPerfectChannelEstimate(carrier,pathGains,pathFilters,offset,sampleTimes);
else
    % Get perfect noise estimate (from the noise realization)
    noiseGrid = nrOFDMDemodulate(carrier,noise(1+offset:end,:));
    noiseEst = var(noiseGrid(:));
end

```



```

% Apply MIMO deprecoding to estChannelGrid to give an estimate
% per transmission layer
K = size(estChannelGrid,1);
estChannelGrid = reshape(estChannelGrid,K*carrier.SymbolsPerSlot*nRxAnts,nTxAnts);
estChannelGrid = estChannelGrid * F.';
if (strcmpi(pusch.TxScheme,'codebook'))
    W = nrPUSCHCodebook(pusch.NLayers,pusch.NAntennaPorts,pusch.TPMI,pusch.TransformPrecoding);
    estChannelGrid = estChannelGrid * W.';
end
estChannelGrid = reshape(estChannelGrid,K,carrier.SymbolsPerSlot,nRxAnts,[]);
else
% Practical channel estimation between the received grid and
% each transmission layer, using the PUSCH DM-RS for each layer
[~,dmrsLayerIndices,dmrsLayerSymbols] = hPUSCHResources(ue,setfield(pusch,'TxScheme',pusch.TxScheme));
[estChannelGrid,noiseEst] = nrChannelEstimate(carrier,rxGrid,dmrsLayerIndices,dmrsLayerSymbols);
end

% Get PUSCH resource elements from the received grid
[puschRx,puschHest] = nrExtractResources(puschIndices,rxGrid,estChannelGrid);

% Equalization
[puschEq,csi] = nrEqualizeMMSE(puschRx,puschHest,noiseEst);

% Decode PUSCH physical channel
[ulschLLRs,rxSymbols] = nrPUSCHDecode(puschEq,pusch.Modulation,carrier.NCellID,pusch.RNTI,rxSymbols);

% Apply channel state information (CSI) produced by the equalizer,
% including the effect of transform precoding if enabled
if (pusch.TransformPrecoding)
    MSC = MRB * 12;
    csi = nrTransformDeprecode(csi,MRB) / sqrt(MSC);
    csi = repmat(csi(1:MSC:end).',1,MSC).';
    csi = reshape(csi,size(rxSymbols));
end
csi = nrLayerDemap(csi);
Qm = length(ulschLLRs) / length(rxSymbols);
csi = reshape(repmat(csi{1}.',Qm,1),[],1);
ulschLLRs = ulschLLRs .* csi;

% Decode the UL-SCH transport channel
decodeULSCH.TransportBlockLength = TBS;
[decbits,harqProcesses(harqProcIdx).blkerr] = decodeULSCH(ulschLLRs,pusch.Modulation,pusch.RNTI,rxSymbols);

% Store values to calculate throughput
simThroughput(snrIdx) = simThroughput(snrIdx) + (~harqProcesses(harqProcIdx).blkerr * TBS);
maxThroughput(snrIdx) = maxThroughput(snrIdx) + TBS;

% Display transport block error information
if (displaySimulationInformation)
    fprintf('\n(%3.2f%%) HARQ Proc %d: ',100*(nslot+1)/NSlots,harqProcIdx);
    estrings = {'passed','failed'};
    rvi = harqProcesses(harqProcIdx).RVIdx;
    if rvi == 1
        ts = sprintf('Initial transmission (RV=%d)',rvSeq(rvi));
    else
        ts = sprintf('Retransmission #%d (RV=%d)',rvi-1,rvSeq(rvi));
    end
end

```

```

        fprintf('%s %s. ',ts,estrings{1+harqProcesses(harqProcIdx).blkerr});
    end

    % Update HARQ process counter
    harqProcCntr = harqProcCntr + 1;

end

% Display the results dynamically in the command window
if (displaySimulationInformation)
    fprintf('\n');
end
fprintf(['\nThroughput(Mbps) for ' num2str(NFrames) ' frame(s) '],'.4f\n'], 1e-6*simThrou
fprintf(['Throughput(%%) for ' num2str(NFrames) ' frame(s) '],simThroughput(snrIdx)*
end

```

Simulating nonCodebook-based transmission scheme (1x2) and SCS=15kHz with TDL channel at -5dB SNR

```

(5.00%) HARQ Proc 1: Initial transmission (RV=0) failed.
(10.00%) HARQ Proc 2: Initial transmission (RV=0) failed.
(15.00%) HARQ Proc 3: Initial transmission (RV=0) failed.
(20.00%) HARQ Proc 4: Initial transmission (RV=0) failed.
(25.00%) HARQ Proc 5: Initial transmission (RV=0) failed.
(30.00%) HARQ Proc 6: Initial transmission (RV=0) failed.
(35.00%) HARQ Proc 7: Initial transmission (RV=0) failed.
(40.00%) HARQ Proc 8: Initial transmission (RV=0) failed.
(45.00%) HARQ Proc 9: Initial transmission (RV=0) failed.
(50.00%) HARQ Proc 10: Initial transmission (RV=0) failed.
(55.00%) HARQ Proc 11: Initial transmission (RV=0) failed.
(60.00%) HARQ Proc 12: Initial transmission (RV=0) failed.
(65.00%) HARQ Proc 13: Initial transmission (RV=0) failed.
(70.00%) HARQ Proc 14: Initial transmission (RV=0) failed.
(75.00%) HARQ Proc 15: Initial transmission (RV=0) failed.
(80.00%) HARQ Proc 16: Initial transmission (RV=0) failed.
(85.00%) HARQ Proc 1: Retransmission #1 (RV=2) passed.
(90.00%) HARQ Proc 2: Retransmission #1 (RV=2) passed.
(95.00%) HARQ Proc 3: Retransmission #1 (RV=2) passed.
(100.00%) HARQ Proc 4: Retransmission #1 (RV=2) passed.

```

Throughput(Mbps) for 2 frame(s) = 0.5712

Throughput(%) for 2 frame(s) = 20.0000

Simulating nonCodebook-based transmission scheme (1x2) and SCS=15kHz with TDL channel at 0dB SNR

```

(5.00%) HARQ Proc 1: Initial transmission (RV=0) passed.
(10.00%) HARQ Proc 2: Initial transmission (RV=0) passed.
(15.00%) HARQ Proc 3: Initial transmission (RV=0) passed.
(20.00%) HARQ Proc 4: Initial transmission (RV=0) passed.
(25.00%) HARQ Proc 5: Initial transmission (RV=0) passed.
(30.00%) HARQ Proc 6: Initial transmission (RV=0) passed.
(35.00%) HARQ Proc 7: Initial transmission (RV=0) passed.
(40.00%) HARQ Proc 8: Initial transmission (RV=0) passed.
(45.00%) HARQ Proc 9: Initial transmission (RV=0) passed.
(50.00%) HARQ Proc 10: Initial transmission (RV=0) passed.
(55.00%) HARQ Proc 11: Initial transmission (RV=0) passed.
(60.00%) HARQ Proc 12: Initial transmission (RV=0) passed.

```

```
(65.00%) HARQ Proc 13: Initial transmission (RV=0) passed.
(70.00%) HARQ Proc 14: Initial transmission (RV=0) passed.
(75.00%) HARQ Proc 15: Initial transmission (RV=0) passed.
(80.00%) HARQ Proc 16: Initial transmission (RV=0) passed.
(85.00%) HARQ Proc 1: Initial transmission (RV=0) passed.
(90.00%) HARQ Proc 2: Initial transmission (RV=0) passed.
(95.00%) HARQ Proc 3: Initial transmission (RV=0) passed.
(100.00%) HARQ Proc 4: Initial transmission (RV=0) passed.
```

```
Throughput(Mbps) for 2 frame(s) = 2.8560
Throughput(%) for 2 frame(s) = 100.0000
```

Simulating nonCodebook-based transmission scheme (1x2) and SCS=15kHz with TDL channel at 5dB SNR

```
(5.00%) HARQ Proc 1: Initial transmission (RV=0) passed.
(10.00%) HARQ Proc 2: Initial transmission (RV=0) passed.
(15.00%) HARQ Proc 3: Initial transmission (RV=0) passed.
(20.00%) HARQ Proc 4: Initial transmission (RV=0) passed.
(25.00%) HARQ Proc 5: Initial transmission (RV=0) passed.
(30.00%) HARQ Proc 6: Initial transmission (RV=0) passed.
(35.00%) HARQ Proc 7: Initial transmission (RV=0) passed.
(40.00%) HARQ Proc 8: Initial transmission (RV=0) passed.
(45.00%) HARQ Proc 9: Initial transmission (RV=0) passed.
(50.00%) HARQ Proc 10: Initial transmission (RV=0) passed.
(55.00%) HARQ Proc 11: Initial transmission (RV=0) passed.
(60.00%) HARQ Proc 12: Initial transmission (RV=0) passed.
(65.00%) HARQ Proc 13: Initial transmission (RV=0) passed.
(70.00%) HARQ Proc 14: Initial transmission (RV=0) passed.
(75.00%) HARQ Proc 15: Initial transmission (RV=0) passed.
(80.00%) HARQ Proc 16: Initial transmission (RV=0) passed.
(85.00%) HARQ Proc 1: Initial transmission (RV=0) passed.
(90.00%) HARQ Proc 2: Initial transmission (RV=0) passed.
(95.00%) HARQ Proc 3: Initial transmission (RV=0) passed.
(100.00%) HARQ Proc 4: Initial transmission (RV=0) passed.
```

```
Throughput(Mbps) for 2 frame(s) = 2.8560
Throughput(%) for 2 frame(s) = 100.0000
```

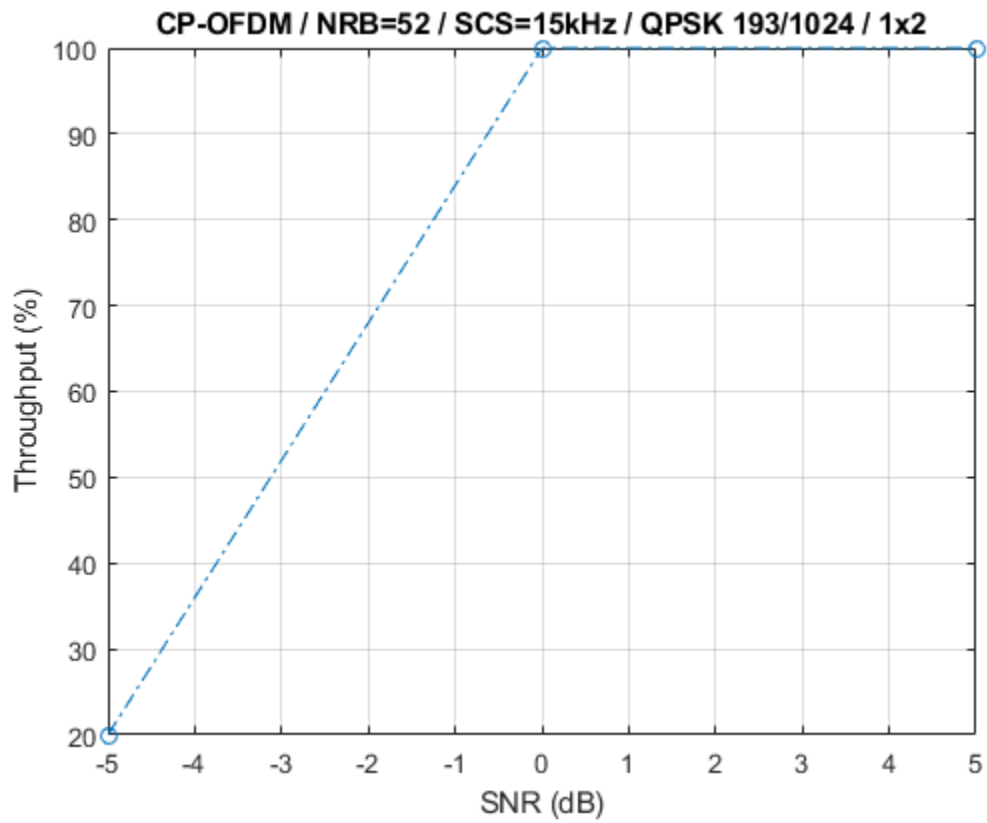
Results

Display the measured throughput. This is calculated as the percentage of the maximum possible throughput of the link given the available resources for data transmission.

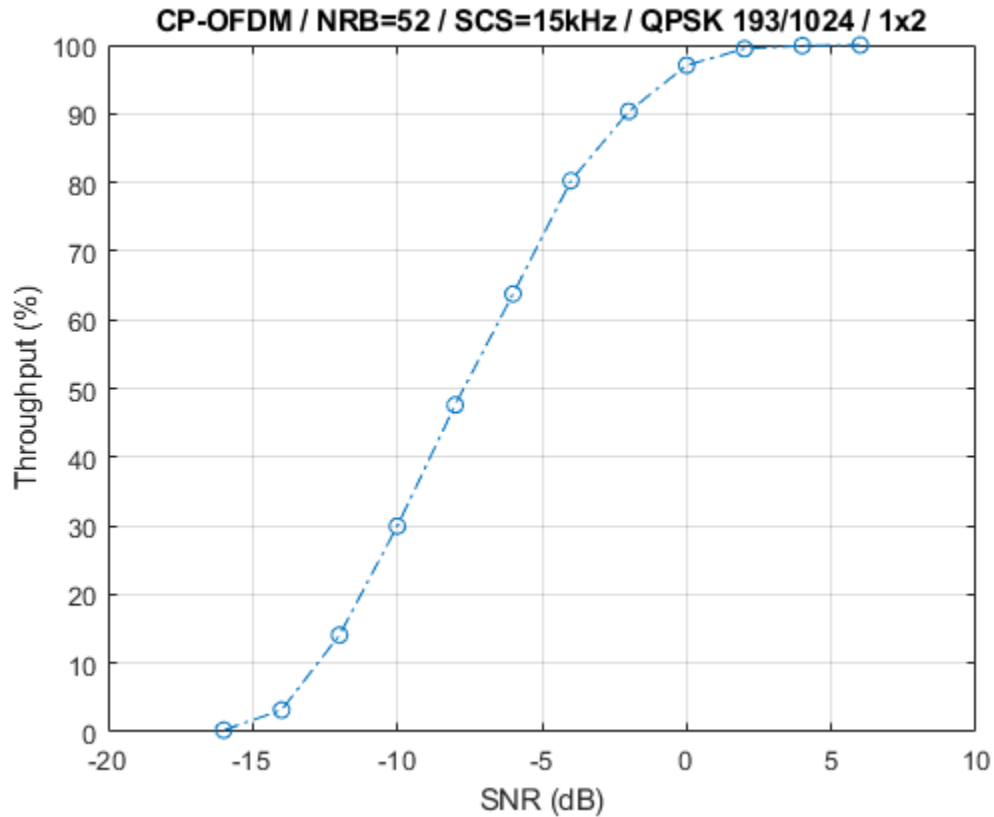
```
figure;
plot(snrIn,simThroughput*100./maxThroughput,'o-.')
xlabel('SNR (dB)'); ylabel('Throughput (%)'); grid on;
if (pusch_init.TransformPrecoding)
    ofdmType = 'DFT-s-OFDM';
else
    ofdmType = 'CP-OFDM';
end
title(sprintf('%s / NRB=%d / SCS=%dkHz / %s %d/1024 / %dx%d', ...
    ofdmType,carrier_init.NSizeGrid,carrier_init.SubcarrierSpacing, ...
    pusch_init.Modulation, ...
    round(pusch_init.TargetCodeRate*1024),nTxAnts,nRxAnts));

simResults.simParameters = simParameters;
```

```
simResults.simThroughput = simThroughput;  
simResults.maxThroughput = maxThroughput;
```



The figure below shows throughput results obtained simulating 10000 subframes (NFrames = 1000, SNRIn = -16:2:6).



Appendix

This example uses the following helper functions:

- hArrayGeometry.m
- hNewHARQProcesses.m
- hPUSCHResources.m
- hSkipWeakTimingOffset.m
- hUpdateHARQProcess.m

Selected Bibliography

- 1 3GPP TS 38.211. "NR; Physical channels and modulation (Release 15)." 3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Radio Access Network.
- 2 3GPP TS 38.212. "NR; Multiplexing and channel coding (Release 15)." 3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Radio Access Network.
- 3 3GPP TS 38.213. "NR; Physical layer procedures for control (Release 15)." 3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Radio Access Network.
- 4 3GPP TS 38.214. "NR; Physical layer procedures for data (Release 15)." 3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Radio Access Network.

- 5 3GPP TR 38.901. "Study on channel model for frequencies from 0.5 to 100 GHz (Release 15)."
3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Radio Access Network.

See Also

Objects

[nrCDLChannel](#) | [nrTDLChannel](#) | [nrULSCH](#) | [nrULSCHDecoder](#)

Functions

[nrPUSCH](#) | [nrPUSCHDecode](#) | [nrULSCHInfo](#) | [parfor](#)

NR SRS Configuration

This example shows how to generate sounding reference signals (SRS), as defined in TS 38.211 Section 6.4.1.4 [1 on page 2-0], including SRS configuration, symbol and indices generation, OFDM resource grid mapping, and SRS waveform generation. The example demonstrates how to select the appropriate parameters to position the SRS in frequency and to setup:

- *Full-band transmissions*: Generate an SRS spanning all the available bandwidth.
- *Frequency-hopping transmissions*: Generate periodic and aperiodic SRS transmissions with different frequency-hopping patterns.
- *Multi-user transmissions*: Generate orthogonal SRS using time, frequency, and cyclic shifts.

Introduction

Sounding reference signals are uplink physical signals employed by user equipment (UE) for uplink channel sounding, including channel quality estimation and synchronization. Unlike demodulation reference signals (DM-RS), SRS are not associated to any physical uplink channels and they support uplink channel-dependent scheduling and link adaptation. SRS assist in:

- Codebook-based closed-loop spatial multiplexing.
- Control uplink transmit timing.
- Reciprocity-based downlink precoding in multi-user MIMO setups.
- Quasi co-location of physical channels and reference signals.

Frequency Positioning

This section shows how to configure the SRS position in frequency domain and determine the bandwidth allocated to the SRS.

Configure a 15 MHz bandwidth carrier with 15 kHz subcarrier spacing (SCS).

```
carrier = nrCarrierConfig;
carrier.NSizeGrid = 79; % Bandwidth in RB
carrier.SubcarrierSpacing = 15 kHz;
```

The bandwidth configuration parameters CSRS and BSRS control the bandwidth allocated to the SRS, which normally increases with CSRS and decreases with BSRS. Use these interactive controls to configure the SRS bandwidth.

```
srs = nrSRSConfig;
srs.CSRS = 10; % Bandwidth configuration C_SRS (0...63)
srs.BSRS = 1; % Bandwidth configuration B_SRS (0...3)
```

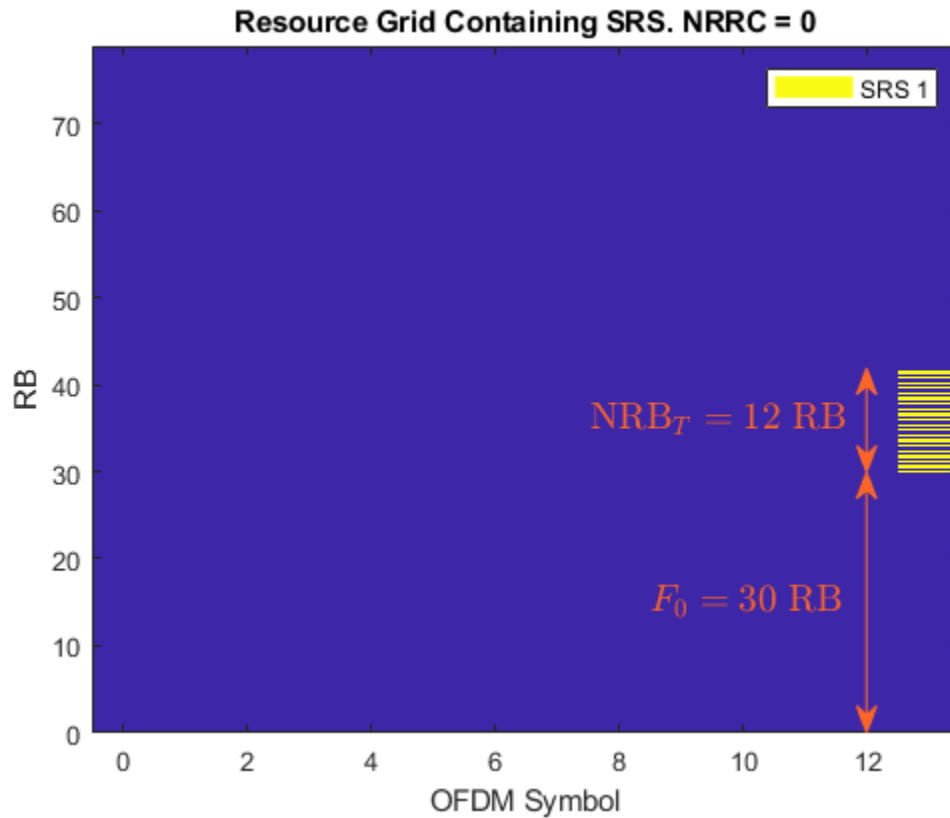
To modify the frequency position of the SRS, change the values of FrequencyStart and NRRC. FrequencyStart specifies the frequency origin of the SRS in RBs with respect to the carrier origin when NRRC = 0.

```
srs.FrequencyStart = 30; % Frequency position of the SRS in carrier in RB
srs.NRRC = 0; % Frequency domain position in blocks of 4 PRB
```

```

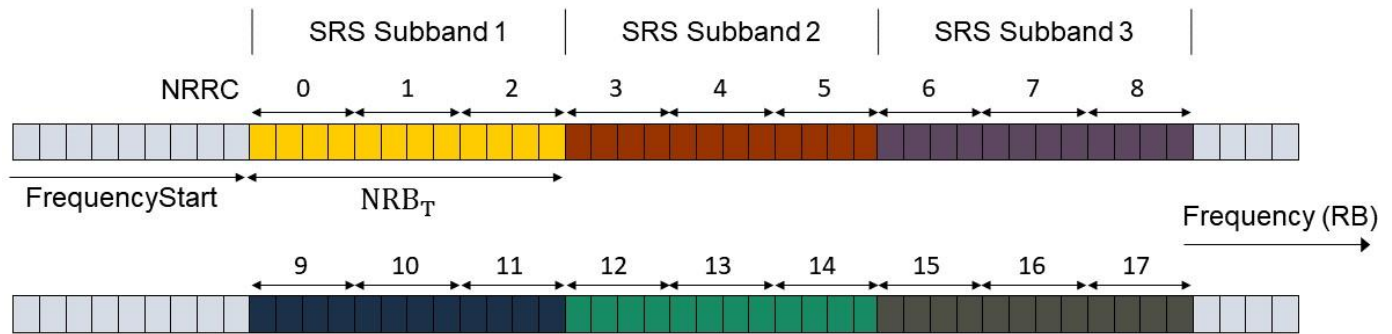
hSRSGrid(carrier,srs,1,true); % Create and display a single-slot resource grid containing SRS
title(['Resource Grid Containing SRS. NRRC = ' num2str(srs.NRRC)]);
hSRSAnnotations(carrier,srs);

```



This figure displays a single-slot OFDM resource grid containing an SRS. For $CSRS = 10$ and $BSRS = 1$, the frequency position of the SRS (F_0) shifts by NRB_T when $NRRC$ is in the range (3...5) and by $2NRB_T$ when $NRRC$ is in the range (6...8). The SRS returns to the initial position (FrequencyStart) when $NRRC$ is 9. NRB_T is the number of resource blocks (RBs) allocated to the SRS per transmission.

This figure illustrates the concepts introduced above for $CSRS = 10$ and $BSRS = 1$.



F_0 for NRRC = (0, 1, 2, 9, 10, 11, 18 ...)

F_0 for NRRC = (3, 4, 5, 12, 13, 14, 21, ...)

NRRC is an additional frequency offset specified as a number of 4 RBs and it corresponds to the higher layer parameter *freqDomainPosition* (see TS 38.331 Section 6.3.2 SRS-Config [2 on page 2-0]). For values of NRRC between $k \cdot (\text{NRB}_T/4)$ and $(k + 1) \cdot (\text{NRB}_T/4) - 1$, the frequency position of the SRS is shifted by $k \cdot \text{NRB}_T$, where k is an integer. TS 38.211 Section 6.4.1.4 refers to NRB_T as $m_{\text{SRS},b}$ with $b = \text{BSRS}$. For more information, see the *nrSRSConfig* configuration object.

This equation determines the origin of the SRS in frequency:

$$F_0 = \text{FrequencyStart} + \text{NRB}_T \cdot \text{mod}\left(\left\lfloor 4 \frac{\text{NRRC}}{\text{NRB}_T} \right\rfloor, \text{NSB}\right)$$

NSB denotes the number of SRS subbands (frequency bands of size NRB_T) where the SRS can be positioned through the parameter NRRC. To calculate NSB, you can use the SRS bandwidth configuration table (see TS 38.211 Table 6.4.1.4.3-1). You can also access this table through the *BandwidthConfigurationTable* property of the *nrSRSConfig* object.

```
csrs = srs.CSRS;
disp(nrSRSConfig.BandwidthConfigurationTable(csrs+(0:2) + (csrs==0),:));
```

C_SRS	m_SRS_0	N_0	m_SRS_1	N_1	m_SRS_2	N_2	m_SRS_3	N_3
9	32	1	16	2	8	2	4	2
10	36	1	12	3	4	3	4	1
11	40	1	20	2	4	5	4	1

The first column contains possible values of the parameter CSRS. For CSRS = 10 and BSRS = 1, the number of unique SRS subbands is $\text{NSB} = N_0 \cdots N_{\text{BSRS}} = 3$, where $N_0 = 1$ and $N_1 = 3$.

```
% Calculate and display the number of SRS subbands configurable by NRRC
```

```
NSBTable = hSRSNumberOfSubbandsOrHoppingPatterns(srs);
```

```
fprintf('Number of SRS subbands (NRRC < %d): %d', NSBTable*srs.NRBPerTransmission/4,NSBTable);
```

```
Number of SRS subbands (NRRC < 9): 3
```

```
% Calculate the frequency origin of the first SRS symbol
f0 = hSRSSFrequencyOrigin(srs);
fprintf('The frequency origin of the SRS is F0 = %d RB.', f0);
```

The frequency origin of the SRS is F0 = 30 RB.

Confirm the frequency position of the SRS using the info output of nrSRSIndices

```
[~,info] = nrSRSIndices(carrier,srs);
display(info.PRBSets(1))
```

30

For a given value of CSRS, the frequency band where the SRS can be allocated using NRRC is $\text{FrequencyStart} + (0 \dots \text{NSB} \cdot \text{NRB}_T - 1)$. For $\text{CSRS} = 10$, the SRS wraps around when $\text{NRRC} = \text{NSB} \cdot \text{NRB}_T / 4 = N_0 \dots N_{B_{\text{SRS}}} \cdot m_{\text{SRS},b} / 4 = m_{\text{SRS},0} / 4 = 9$, which results into the same frequency position as that of $\text{NRRC} = 0$.

```
fprintf('The SRS frequency range is limited to the range (%d,%d) RB for the current value of CSRS
```

The SRS frequency range is limited to the range (30,66) RB for the current value of CSRS (10).

When intra-slot frequency hopping is enabled, the calculation of FrequencyOrigin is only valid for the first SRS symbol in the slot. For frequency-hopping SRS, use the outputs info.PRBSets or info.SubcarrierOffset of the nrSRSIndices function to determine the frequency position of subsequent symbols.

```
fprintf('The frequency origin of the SRS is F0 = %d RB.',info.PRBSets(1));
```

The frequency origin of the SRS is F0 = 30 RB.

Full-Bandwidth Configuration

This section shows how to configure and generate a full-band SRS transmission by calculating the appropriate SRS bandwidth parameters for a carrier.

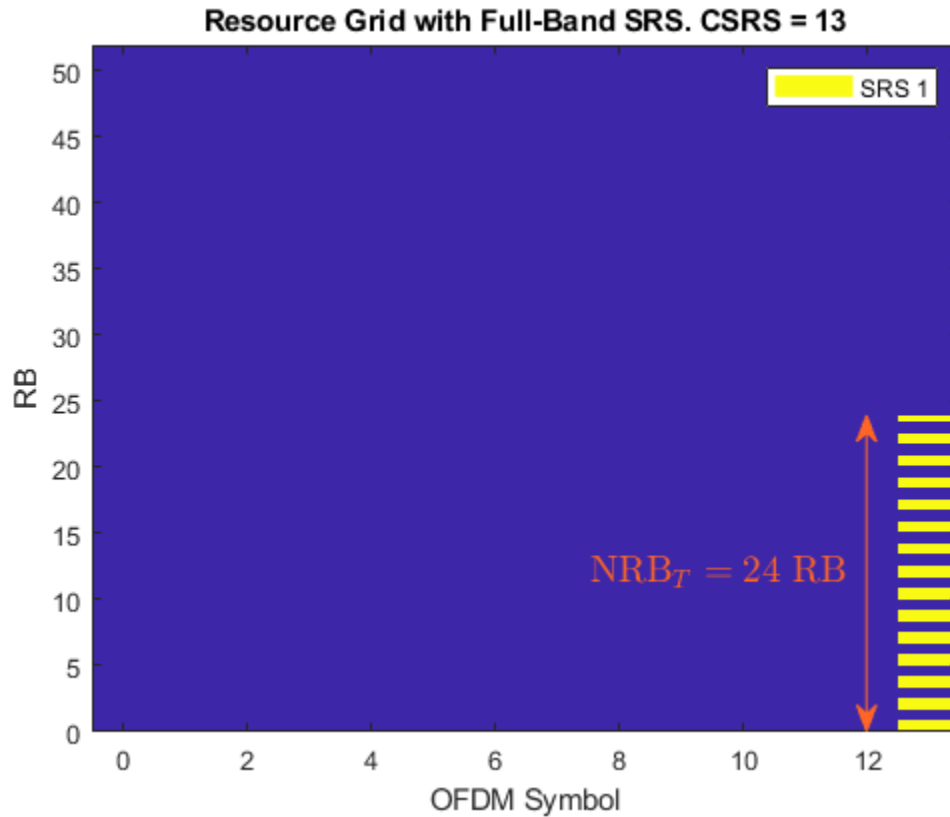
Configure a 10 MHz bandwidth carrier with 15 kHz SCS.

```
carrier = nrCarrierConfig;
carrier.NSizeGrid = ;
carrier.SubcarrierSpacing = 
```

The bandwidth configuration parameters CSRS, BSRS, and BHop control the bandwidth allocated to the SRS. To configure a full-band SRS, set $\text{CSRS} = 14$ and $\text{BSRS} = 0$.

```
srs = nrSRSConfig;
srs.CSRS = 13  ; % Bandwidth configuration C_SRS (0...63)
srs.BSRS = 1  ; % Bandwidth configuration B_SRS (0...3)
```

```
hSRSGrid(carrier,srs, 1, true); % Create and display a single-slot resource grid containing SRS
title(['Resource Grid with Full-Band SRS. CSRS = ' num2str(srs.CSRS)]);
hSRSAnnotations(carrier,srs);
```



For an SRS frequency allocation, you can find the appropriate values of CSRS, BSRS, and BHop in the SRS bandwidth configuration table (see TS 38.211 Table 6.4.1.4.3-1). Alternatively, `nrSRSConfig.BandwidthConfigurationTable` provides an easy way to access and display this table.

```
% To display relevant rows of the bandwidth configuration table, calculate the value of CSRS for
[csrs,bsrs] = hSRSSBandwidthConfiguration(srs,carrier.NSizeGrid);
```

```
% Display bandwidth configuration table
disp(nrSRSConfig.BandwidthConfigurationTable(csrs+(0:2) + 1*(csrs==0),:));
```

C_SRS	m_SRS_0	N_0	m_SRS_1	N_1	m_SRS_2	N_2	m_SRS_3	N_3
13	48	1	24	2	12	2	4	3
14	52	1	4	13	4	1	4	1
15	56	1	28	2	4	7	4	1

The columns labeled as `m_SRS_b` with `b = 0...3` contain the number of RBs allocated to the SRS for the parameter `b = BSRS` and non-hopping configurations. The row corresponding to `C_SRS = 14` contains a number of RBs `m_SRS_0 = 52`, which is the closest value to the carrier bandwidth. Therefore, the parameters `CSRS = 14` and `BSRS = 0` configure a full-band SRS transmission for the current carrier configuration. This example uses the bandwidth configuration table to calculate the values of CSRS and BSRS that maximize the SRS bandwidth within the carrier.

```
fprintf('For a full-band SRS in a carrier bandwidth of %d RB, set CSRS = %d and BSRS = %d.',carrier.NSizeGrid,csrs,bsrs);
```

```
For a full-band SRS in a carrier bandwidth of 52 RB, set CSRS = 14 and BSRS = 0.
```

You can use the SRS read-only property `NRBPerTransmission` to confirm that the generated SRS fits into the carrier bandwidth.

```
fprintf('The SRS bandwidth (%d RB) is lower than or equal to the carrier bandwidth (%d RB).',srs
```

```
The SRS bandwidth (24 RB) is lower than or equal to the carrier bandwidth (52 RB).
```

Frequency-Hopping Configuration

You can configure intra-slot and inter-slot frequency hopping for multi-symbol and multi-slot SRS transmissions, respectively. The instantaneous bandwidth per OFDM symbol is constant across SRS OFDM symbols and is smaller than the bandwidth over which the SRS hops.

Configure a 15 MHz bandwidth carrier with 15 kHz SCS.

```
carrier = nrCarrierConfig;
carrier.NSizeGrid = 79;
carrier.SubcarrierSpacing = 15 kHz;
```

Create a four-symbol SRS located at the end of the slot. Select the repetition factor to indicate the number of equal consecutive SRS transmissions (OFDM symbols) in a slot. For frequency-hopping configurations, `Repetition` must be lower than the number of SRS symbols.

```
srs = nrSRSConfig;
srs.NumSRSSymbols = 4;
srs.Repetition = 1;
srs.SymbolStart = 10; % Time-domain position of the SRS in the slot.
```

Downlink control information (DCI) can trigger aperiodic SRS transmissions using the higher layer parameter `resourceType` (see TS 38.331 Section 6.3.2 SRS-Config). As the frequency hopping pattern is reset for aperiodic SRS resource types at each slot, select `periodic` or `semi-persistent` SRS resource types to enable inter-slot frequency hopping or `aperiodic` to disable it. You can configure the slot-wise periodicity and offset of the SRS transmissions by using the property `SRSPeriod`. For aperiodic resource types, the parameter `SRSPeriod` controls the periodicity and offset of DCI signals triggering aperiodic SRS transmissions.

```
srs.ResourceType = periodic;
srs.SRSPeriod = [2 0]; % Periodicity in slots (1,2,4,5,8,10,...)
srs.SRSPeriod(2) = 0; % Offset in slots must be smaller than the period
```

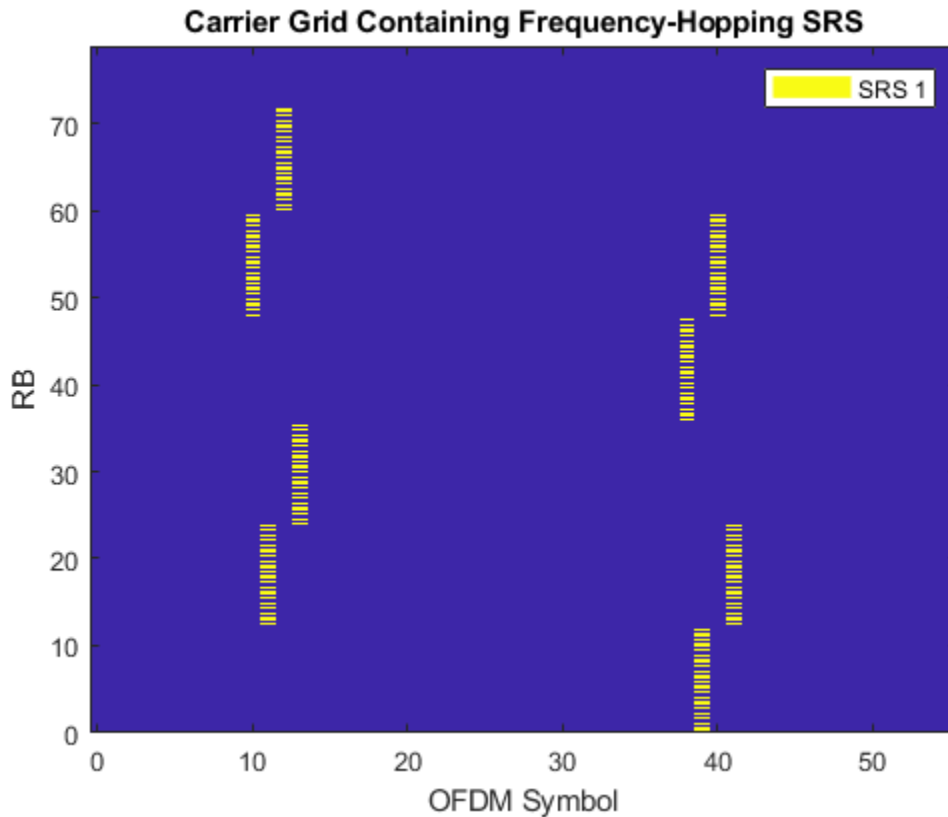
Use these interactive controls to select a hopping configuration and observe the changes to the OFDM resource grid.

```
srs.CSRS = 19; % Bandwidth configuration C_SRS (0...63)
srs.BSRS = 2; % Bandwidth configuration B_SRS (0...3)
srs.BHop = 0; % Frequency hopping configuration (0...3). Set BHop >= BS
srs.NRRC = 14; % Frequency domain position in blocks of 4 PRB (0...67)
```

```

% Create and display a multi-slot resource grid containing SRS
duration = 2*srs.SRSPeriod(1); % Transmission length in slots
hSRSGrid(carrier,srs, duration, true);
title('Carrier Grid Containing Frequency-Hopping SRS')

```



The bandwidth over which the SRS symbols hop increases with the value of CSRS and decreases with BHop (until BHop = BSRS disables hopping). Increasing BSRS reduces the allocated bandwidth per OFDM symbol (property NRBPPerTransmission) and can reduce the intra-slot frequency hopping as well. To disable frequency hopping, set BHop >= BSRS. For non-hopping configurations, the roles of CSRS and BSRS are analogous, as the allocated bandwidth increases with CSRS and decreases with BSRS.

You can use the bandwidth configuration table (TS 38.211 Table 6.4.1.4.3-1) to calculate the number of different frequency-hopping patterns configurable by the SRS parameter NRRC as $N_{FHP} = N_{BHop} + 1 \cdots N_{BSRS}$. The frequency-hopping patterns repeat when $NRRC > N_{FHP} \cdot NRB_T/4$.

```
N = hSRSNumberOfSubbandsOrHoppingPatterns(srs);
```

```

if srs.BHop < srs.BSRS && srs(1).NRB > 16 % Number of unique frequency-hopping patterns
    fprintf('Number of unique frequency-hopping patterns (configurable by NRRC < %d): %d.',N*srs
else % Number of unique SRS subbands
    fprintf('Number of unique SRS subbands (configurable by NRRC < %d): %d.',N*srs.NRBPerTransm
end

```

```
Number of unique frequency-hopping patterns (configurable by NRRC < 18): 6.
```

Set the bandwidth configurations parameters as $CSRS = 20$, $BSRS = 2$, and $BHop = 1$. The condition $BHop < BSRS$ does not guarantee frequency hopping. However, the opposite is true: $BHop \geq BSRS$ always disables frequency hopping. You can determine when an SRS bandwidth configuration ($CSRS, BSRS, BHop$) produces frequency hopping using the N_b parameter from the bandwidth configuration table and evaluating the condition $NFHP = N_{BHop} + 1 \cdots N_{BSRS} > 1$.

```
isFreqHoppingConfiguration = hSRSNumberOfSubbandsOrHoppingPatterns(srs) > 1;
disp(['Frequency hopping is' repmat(' not',1,~isFreqHoppingConfiguration) ' enabled.'])
```

Frequency hopping is enabled.

In frequency-hopping cases, the read-only property `NRB` specifies the bandwidth over which the SRS hops and `NRBPerTransmission` specifies the instantaneous bandwidth allocated per SRS OFDM symbol.

```
t = table([srs.NRB; srs.NRBPerTransmission], 'RowNames', {'Freq-Hopping bandwidth', 'Instantaneous
disp(t)
```

	NRB
Freq-Hopping bandwidth	72
Instantaneous bandwidth	12

Multi-User Configurations

This section explains how to configure multiple SRS transmissions suitable for multi-user setups. You can use time-domain, frequency-domain, and sequence-domain parameters to create sets of orthogonal (interference-free) SRS transmissions.

Time-Domain Orthogonal SRS

You can create time-domain orthogonal SRS transmissions in multiple ways, for example:

- Configure different slot periodicity and offset for different SRS by using the property `SRSPeriod`.
- Configure different symbol-wise time domain allocations for different SRS by using the property `SymbolStart`.

Configure a 10 MHz bandwidth carrier with 15 kHz SCS.

```
carrier = nrCarrierConfig;
carrier.NSizeGrid = 52;
carrier.SubcarrierSpacing = 15 kHz;
```

Specify the slot periodicity and offset to create orthogonal SRS transmissions.

First SRS configuration:

```
srs = nrSRSConfig;
srs(1).SRSPeriod = [1 0];
srs(1).SRSPeriod(1) = 4; % Slot periodicity and offset
srs(1).SRSPeriod(2) = 0; % Slot offset of first SRS
```

Second SRS configuration:

```

srs(2) = srs(1); % Create a copy of the configured SRS
srs(2).SRSPeriod(1) = 2; % Periodicity in slots
srs(2).SRSPeriod(2) = 1; % Offset in slots

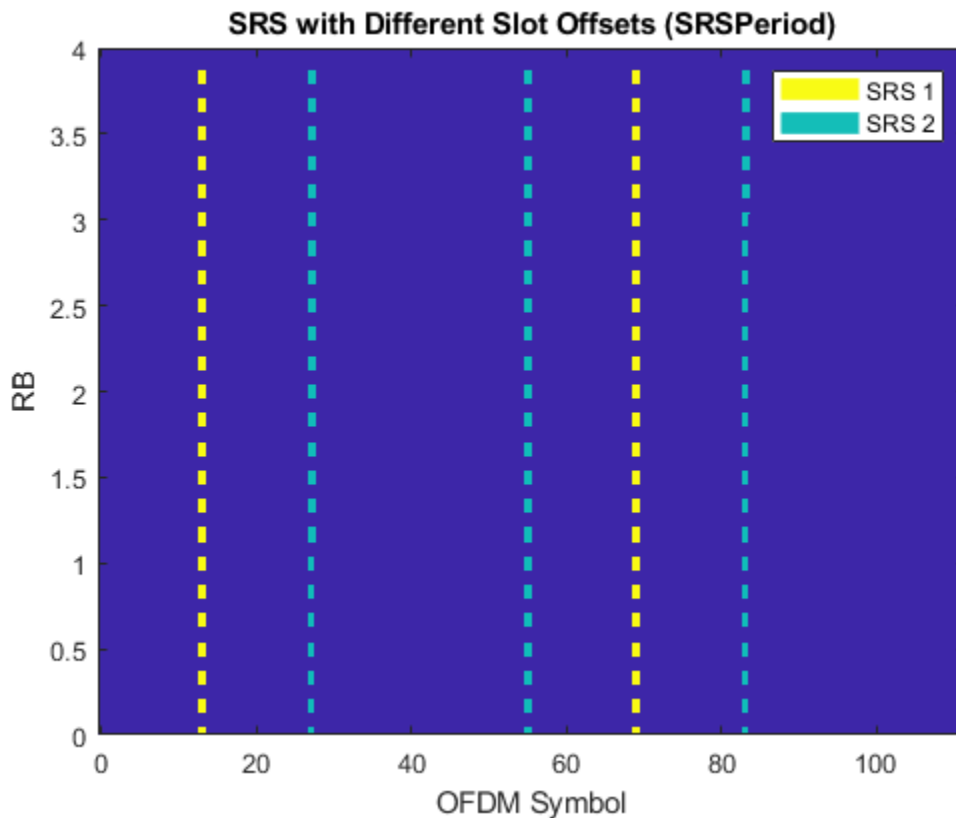
```

This figure displays an OFDM resource grid containing the configured SRS transmissions.

```

hSRSGrid(carrier,srs,srs(1).SRSPeriod(1)*2, true); % Generate a multi-slot resource grid containin
title('SRS with Different Slot Offsets (SRSPeriod)')
ylim([0 srs(1).NRBPerTransmission]);

```



Specify the number of SRS symbols and location in the slot to create orthogonal SRS transmissions.

First SRS configuration:

```

srs = nrSRSConfig;
srs(1).NumSRSSymbols = 1; % Number of SRS symbols in a slot (1,2,4)
srs(1).SymbolStart = 12; % Time-domain position of the SRS in the slot.

```

Second SRS configuration:

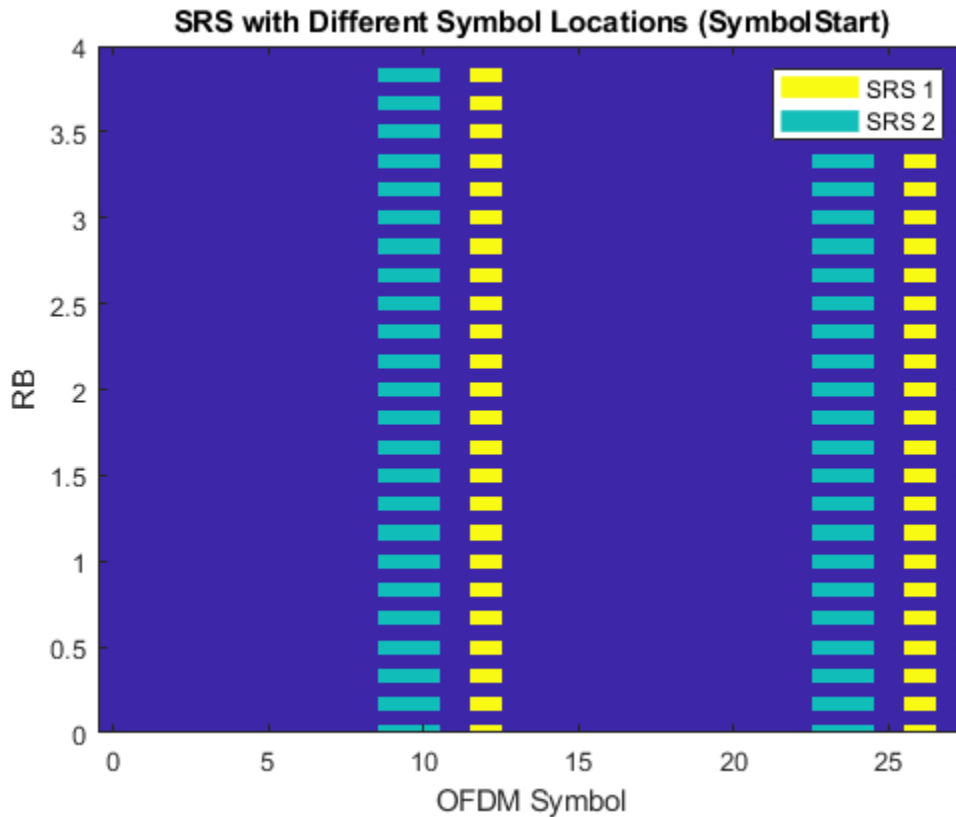
```

srs(2) = srs(1); % Create a copy of the configured SRS
srs(2).NumSRSSymbols = 2;
srs(2).SymbolStart = 9;

```

This figure displays the OFDM resource grid containing the SRS transmissions.

```
hSRSGrid(carrier,srs, 2, true); % Generate and display a 2-slot resource grid containing SRS
title('SRS with Different Symbol Locations (SymbolStart)');
ylim([0 srs(1).NRBPerTransmission]);
```



Frequency-Domain Orthogonal SRS

You can create frequency-domain orthogonal SRS transmissions in multiple ways:

- Configure different comb offsets for different SRS by using the property KBarTC.
- Configure different frequency-hopping patterns using CSRS, BSRS, BHop and NRRC.

Configure a 10 MHz bandwidth carrier with 15 kHz SCS.

```
carrier = nrCarrierConfig;
carrier.NSizeGrid = 52;
carrier.SubcarrierSpacing = 15 kHz;
```

Specify the comb numbers and offsets to create orthogonal SRS transmissions.

First SRS configuration:


```

srs = nrSRSConfig;
srs(1).KTC = 2; % Comb number (2,4). It indicates the allocation of the S
srs(1).KBarTC = 1; % Comb offset (0...KTC-1)

```

Second SRS configuration:

```

srs(2) = srs(1); % Create a copy of the configured SRS
srs(2).KTC = 4;
srs(2).KBarTC = 0;

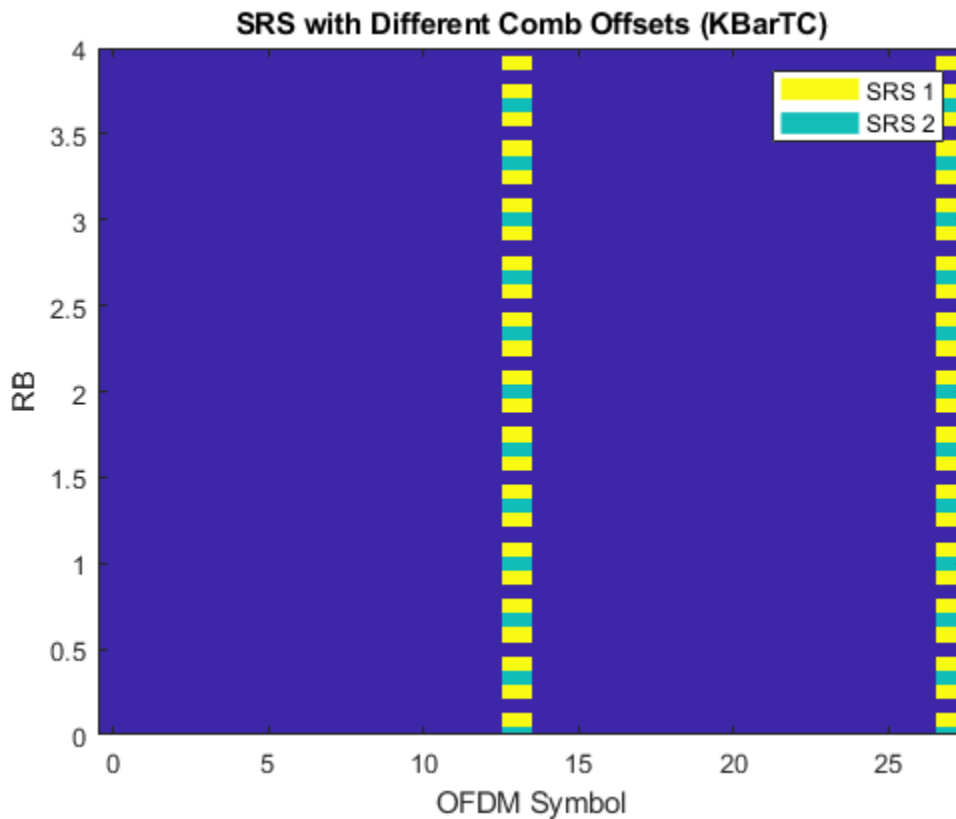
```

This figure displays the OFDM resource grid containing the SRS transmissions.

```

hSRSGrid(carrier,srs,2,true);
title('SRS with Different Comb Offsets (KBarTC)')
ylim([0 srs(1).NRBPerTransmission]);

```



Create frequency-domain orthogonal SRS configurations using different frequency-hopping patterns.

```

srs = nrSRSConfig;
srs.NumSRSSymbols = 4; % Number of SRS symbols in a slot
srs.SymbolStart = 8; % Allocate SRS in OFDM symbols 10:13

```

Select the desired bandwidth configuration parameters, resource type and repetition factor.

```

srs.CSRS = 10 ; % Bandwidth configuration C_SRS (0...63)
srs.BSRS = 2 ; % Bandwidth configuration B_SRS (0...3)
srs.BHop = 0 ; % Frequency hopping configuration (0...3). Set BHop >= B
srs.ResourceType = periodic ; % ('periodic','semi-persistent','aperiodic')
srs.Repetition = 1 ; % Number of equal consecutive SRS transmissions (1,2,4

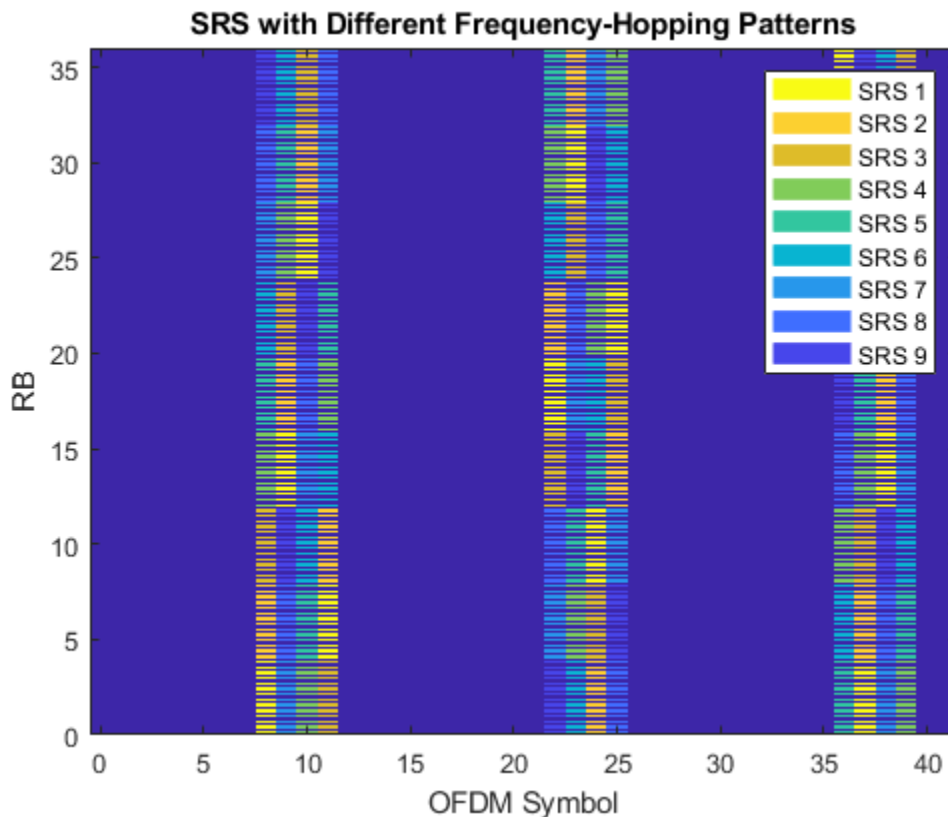
```

This example calculates the number of orthogonal SRS sequences that can be configured by NRRC and creates frequency non-overlapping SRS configurations. The figure displays the OFDM resource grid containing the SRS transmissions.

```

NRRC = num2cell(hNRRCSet(srs));
srs(2:length(NRRC)) = srs(1); % Create N-1 copies of the configured SRS
[srs(:).NRRC] = deal(NRRC{:}); % Assign the appropriate NRRC to each SRS configuration
hSRSGrid(carrier,srs, 3, true); % Generate and display a 3-slot resource grid containing SRS
title('SRS with Different Frequency-Hopping Patterns');
ylim([0 srs(1).NRBPerTransmission*hSRSNumberOfSubbandsOrHoppingPatterns(srs(1))]);

```



```

N = hSRSNumberOfSubbandsOrHoppingPatterns(srs(1));
if srs(1).BHop < srs(1).BSRS % Frequency-hopping cases
    fprintf('Number of unique frequency-hopping patterns (configurable by NRRC < %d): %d.', N*srs(1).NRBPerTransmission, N*srs(1).NRBPerTransmission)
else

```

```
    fprintf('Number of unique subbands (configurable by NRRC < %d): %d.', N*srs(1).NRBPerTransm,
end
```

Number of unique frequency-hopping patterns (configurable by NRRC < 9): 9.

Note that the SRS transmissions are never overlapping regardless of the Repetition factor and ResourceType (aperiodic disables inter-slot frequency hopping). Disable frequency hopping by setting BHop >= BSRS and observe that the different SRS are still allocated to different subbands.

Cyclic-Shift Orthogonal SRS

This section generates multiple SRS allocated to the same time and frequency resources (OFDM symbols and subcarriers) but different time-domain cyclic shifts. Due to the properties of Zadoff-Chu sequences, this configuration produces orthogonal SRS. To demonstrate the orthogonality among the configured SRS, this section performs CP-OFDM modulation and calculates the cross-correlation of the time-domain waveforms.

```
% Configure a 10 MHz bandwidth carrier with 15 kHz SCS.
carrier = nrCarrierConfig;
carrier.NSizeGrid = 52;
carrier.SubcarrierSpacing = 15;

% Create a full-band SRS
srs = nrSRSConfig;
srs.CSRS = hSRSSBandwidthConfiguration(srs,carrier.NSizeGrid);

% All SRS share the same physical resources, but they are configured with
% different cyclic shifts.
for i = 1:8
    srs(i) = srs(1);
    srs(i).CyclicShift = i-1;
end

% Create a resource grid containing SRS
numSlots = 1; % Number of slots to generate
for ich = length(srs):-1:1
    slotGrid{ich} = hSRSGrid(carrier,srs(ich),numSlots);
end

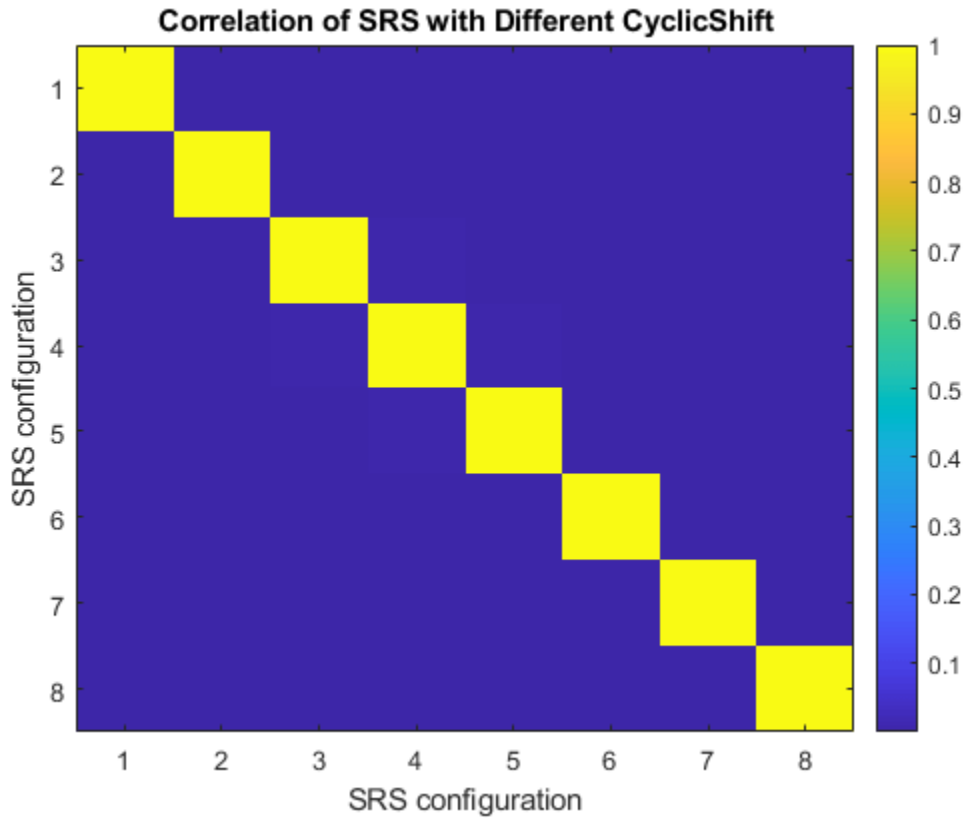
% Get OFDM modulation related information
ofdmInfo = nrOFDMInfo(carrier);

% OFDM modulation
nsrs = length(srs); % Number of SRS waveforms
numSamples = numSlots*ofdmInfo.SampleRate/1000/carrier.SlotsPerSubframe;
txWaveform = zeros(numSamples,srs(1).NumSRSPorts,nsrs);
for i = 1:nsrs
    txWaveform(:,:,i) = nrOFDMModulate(carrier,slotGrid{i});
end

% Cross correlation of SRS waveforms generated with different cyclic shifts
txWaveform = reshape(txWaveform,[],nsrs*srs(1).NumSRSPorts);
C = txWaveform'*txWaveform;
srsCorr = C./diag(C);
```

This figure shows the time-domain cross-correlation of the SRS waveforms with different cyclic shifts.

```
imagesc(abs(srsCorr))
title('Correlation of SRS with Different CyclicShift')
xlabel('SRS configuration'); ylabel('SRS configuration');
colorbar
```



The low correlations among SRS waveforms generated using different time-domain cyclic shifts show their orthogonality.

```
disp('Absolute value of correlation matrix: '); disp(' '); disp(abs(srsCorr));
```

Absolute value of correlation matrix:

Columns 1 through 7

```
1.0000    0.0027    0.0021    0.0008    0.0003    0.0010    0.0007
0.0027    1.0000    0.0030    0.0006    0.0006    0.0001    0.0006
0.0021    0.0030    1.0000    0.0041    0.0007    0.0008    0.0003
0.0008    0.0006    0.0041    1.0000    0.0040    0.0004    0.0009
0.0003    0.0006    0.0007    0.0040    1.0000    0.0039    0.0002
0.0010    0.0001    0.0008    0.0004    0.0039    1.0000    0.0039
0.0007    0.0006    0.0003    0.0009    0.0002    0.0039    1.0000
0.0038    0.0005    0.0008    0.0000    0.0009    0.0003    0.0039
```

Column 8

```
0.0038
0.0005
0.0008
```

```

0.0000
0.0009
0.0003
0.0039
1.0000

```

Summary and Further Exploration

This example describes how to generate and map SRS sequences into an OFDM carrier resource grid, and how to generate the corresponding waveform for multiple carrier and SRS configurations. The example highlights the relationship between SRS configuration parameters and their effects on both the resource grid and SRS waveform properties. For example:

- The bandwidth allocated to the SRS generally increases with CSRS and decreases with BSRS. For frequency-hopping configurations, the instantaneous bandwidth and hopping bandwidth decrease with BSRS and BHop, respectively.
- The frequency position of the SRS depends on the FrequencyStart and NRRC parameters. NRRC allows to select different SRS subbands and frequency-hopping patterns.
- BHop < BSRS generally produces frequency hopping, but it is not guaranteed. However, BHop >= BSRS is sufficient to disable frequency hopping.
- Inter-slot frequency hopping is active only for periodic and semi-persistent resource types.
- Time-, frequency-, and sequence-related parameters can be used to create orthogonal SRS transmissions.

The example also demonstrates how to extract useful information from both the SRS bandwidth configuration table and read-only properties, such as, the number of unique SRS subbands and frequency-hopping patterns configurable by NRRC.

The SRS sequence generation for multiport configurations employs the orthogonalization mechanism presented in Cyclic-Shift Orthogonal SRS on page 2-0 . To verify the orthogonality across multiple ports, configure a multi-port SRS, generate the symbols and indices, map the symbols into a resource grid, generate the SRS waveforms, and compute the cross-correlation between waveforms generated for different ports.

References

- [1] 3GPP TS 38.211. "NR; Physical channels and modulation." *3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Radio Access Network*.
- [2] 3GPP TS 38.331. "NR; Radio Resource Control (RRC) protocol specification." *3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Radio Access Network*.

Local functions

This example uses these local functions:

```

function [csrs,bsrs] = hSRSBandwidthConfiguration(srs, NRB)
% [CSRS,BSRS] = hBandwidthConfiguration(SRS, NRB) returns the SRS
% bandwidth configuration parameters CSRS and BSRS required to transmit an
% SRS in a bandwidth specified by NRB. The function calculates CSRS and
% BSRS considering the SRS properties FrequencyStart and NRRC, so the
% available bandwidth NRB is reduced by the frequency origin of the SRS.
% For frequency hopping cases, the value of BSRS returned is equal to that
% of the BSRS property in the input SRS configuration object.

```

```

f0 = hSRSSFrequencyOrigin(srs);
NRB = NRB - f0;
if NRB < 4
    error('The available bandwidth is not sufficient to allocate an SRS transmission. Increase bandwidth.')
end

% For frequency hopping configurations
if srs.BHop >= srs.BSRS && nargout == 2 % No frequency hopping and BSRS is requested
    BSRS = 0:3;
else
    BSRS = 0;
end

% Initialize gap between SRS frequency allocation and carrier bandwidth
NRBGap = NRB;

% Find the appropriate CSRS for each BSRS that minimizes the gap only
% in non-hopping cases. For freq. hopping, find the value of CSRS only.
for b = BSRS
    % NRB allocated to the SRS for BSRS = b and all CSRS
    srsNRBb = srs.BandwidthConfigurationTable{:,2*(b+1)};
    mSRSbMax = max( srsNRBb( srsNRBb <= NRB ) );

    % Calculate gap between SRS allocation and carrier bandwidth
    gap = NRB - mSRSbMax;
    if gap < NRBGap
        csrs = srs.BandwidthConfigurationTable{ srsNRBb == mSRSbMax ,1};
        bsrs = b;
        NRBGap = gap;
    end
end
csrs = csrs(1);

if srs.BHop < bsrs
    bsrs = srs.BSRS;
end
end

function out = hSRSNumberOfSubbandsOrHoppingPatterns(srs)
% N = hSRSNumberOfSubbandsOrHoppingPatterns(SRS) returns the number of
% unique SRS subbands or frequency-hopping patterns N configurable by the
% SRS property NRRC. An SRS subband is the frequency band allocated for SRS
% in a given OFDM symbol (See SRS property NRBCPerTransmission). N is
% calculated using TS 38.211 Table 6.4.1.4.3-1 for the bandwidth
% configuration parameters CSRS, BSRS, and BHop specified in the SRS
% configuration object SRS.

bwct = nrSRSConfig.BandwidthConfigurationTable{:, :};
if srs.BHop < srs.BSRS % Number of unique frequency-hopping patterns
    b0 = srs.BHop+1;
else % Number of unique SRS subbands
    b0 = 0;
end
out = prod(bwct(srs.CSRS+1,2*(b0:srs.BSRS)+3));
end

function [Grid,dispGrid] = hSRSGrid(carrier,srs,Duration,displayGrid,chplevels)

```

```

% [GRID,DISPGRID] = hSRSGrid(CARRIER,SRS,DURATION,DISPLAYGRID,CHPLEVELS)
% returns a multi-slot OFDM resource grid GRID containing a set of sounding
% reference signals in a carrier, as specified by the configuration objects
% CARRIER and SRS. This function also returns a scaled version of the grid
% used for display purposes. The optional input DURATION (Default 1)
% specifies the number of slots of the generated grid. The resource grid
% can be displayed using the optional input DISPLAYGRID (Default false).
% CHPLEVELS specifies the channel power levels for display purposes only
% and it must be of the same size as SRS.

numSRS = length(srs);
if nargin < 5
    chplevels = 1:-1/numSRS:1/numSRS;
    if nargin < 4
        displayGrid = false;
        if nargin < 3
            Duration = 1;
        end
    end
end
end

SymbolsPerSlot = carrier.SymbolsPerSlot;
emptySlotGrid = nrResourceGrid(carrier,max([srs(:).NumSRSPorts])); % Initialize slot grid

% Create the SRS symbols and indices and populate the grid with the SRS symbols
Grid = repmat(emptySlotGrid,1,Duration);
dispGrid = repmat(emptySlotGrid,1,Duration); % Frame-size grid for display
for ns = 0:Duration-1
    slotGrid = emptySlotGrid;
    dispSlotGrid = emptySlotGrid; % Slot-size grid for display
    for ich = 1:numSRS
        srsIndices = nrSRSIndices(carrier,srs(ich));
        srsSymbols = nrSRS(carrier,srs(ich));
        slotGrid(srsIndices) = srsSymbols;
        dispSlotGrid(srsIndices) = chplevels(ich)*srsSymbols; % Scale the SRS for display on
    end
    OFDMSymIdx = ns*SymbolsPerSlot + (1:SymbolsPerSlot);
    Grid(:,OFDMSymIdx,:) = slotGrid;
    dispGrid(:,OFDMSymIdx,:) = dispSlotGrid;
    carrier.NSlot = carrier.NSlot+1;
end

if displayGrid
    plotGrid(dispGrid(:,:,1),chplevels,"SRS " + (1:numSRS)');
end
end

function varargout = plotGrid(Grid,chplevels,leg)
% plotGrid(GRID, CHPLEVEL,LEG) displays a resource grid GRID containing
% channels or signals at different power levels CHPLEVEL and create a
% legend for these using a cell array of character vector LEG

if nargin < 3
    leg = {'SRS'};
    if nargin < 2
        chplevels = 1;
    end
end
end

```

```

cmap = colormap(gcf);
chpscale = length(cmap); % Scaling factor

h = figure;
image(0:size(Grid,2)-1,(0:size(Grid,1)-1)/12,chpscale*abs(Grid(:,:,1))); % Multiplied with s
axis xy;

title('Carrier Grid Containing SRS')
xlabel('OFDM Symbol'); ylabel('RB');

clevels = chpscale*chplevels(:);
N = length(clevels);
L = line(ones(N),ones(N),'LineWidth',8); % Generate lines

% Index the color map and associate the selected colors with the lines
set(L,{'color'},mat2cell(cmap( min(1+fix(clevels),length(cmap) ),:),ones(1,N),3)); % Set the

% Create legend
legend(log(:));

if nargin > 0
    varargout = {h};
end
end

function hSRSAnnotations(carrier,srs)
% hSRSAnnotations(carrier,srs) adds annotation to the current figure
% indicating the frequency origin of the SRS and the number of RB used per
% OFDM symbol for the configuration objects CARRIER and SRS.

% Calculate the frequency origin of the first SRS symbol
f0 = hSRSFrequencyOrigin(srs);

hold on;
hfig = gcf;
set(hfig,'Units','Normalized');
Sym0 = srs.SymbolStart-0.5;
if isnumeric(srs.SRSPeriod)
    Sym0 = srs.SRSPeriod(2)*carrier.SymbolsPerSlot + srs.SymbolStart-0.5;
end

IP = get(gca,'Position');

% Y-coordinate in the current axes of the SRS freq position f0
Yf0 = f0/carrier.NSizeGrid*IP(4)+IP(2);
Xc = Sym0/((carrier.NSlot+1)*carrier.SymbolsPerSlot)*IP(3)+IP(1);

% Add annotation to the figure including f0 in RB
if f0/carrier.NSizeGrid > 0.08 % Only plot f0 when there is enough space in the y-axis
    % Create doublearrow for F0
    YMin = IP(2);
    annotation(hfig,'doublearrow',Xc*[1 1], [YMin Yf0],...
        'Color',[1 0.4 0.15]);

    % Text for F0
    str = sprintf('$$F_0 = %d $$ RB', f0);
    Ystr = f0/carrier.NSizeGrid/2;

```



```

        text(gca,(Xc-IP(1))/IP(3)-0.25, Ystr,str,...
            'Color',[1 0.4 0.15],'FontSize',14, ...
            'Units','Normalized','Interpreter','latex');
    end

    % Create doublearrow from f0 and spanning the SRS bandwidth
    Yf1 = Yf0 + srs.NRBPerTransmission/carrier.NSizeGrid*IP(4);
    annotation(hfig,'doublearrow',Xc*[1 1], [Yf0 Yf1],...
        'Color',[1 0.4 0.15]);

    % Text for NRBT
    str = sprintf('$\text{NRB}_T = %d$ RB', srs.NRBPerTransmission);
    Ystr = (f0 + 0.5*srs.NRBPerTransmission)/carrier.NSizeGrid;
    text(gca,(Xc-IP(1))/IP(3)-0.32, Ystr ,str,...
        'Color',[1 0.4 0.15],'FontSize',14, ...
        'Units','Normalized','Interpreter','latex');
end

function f0 = hSRSEFrequencyOrigin(srs)
% Calculate the frequency origin of the first SRS symbol in a slot

    NSBTable = hSRSNumberOfSubbandsOrHoppingPatterns(srs);
    NRBT = srs.NRBPerTransmission;

    % Origin of the SRS in frequency in RB
    f0 = srs.FrequencyStart + NRBT*mod(floor(4*srs.NRRC/NRBT),NSBTable);
end

function [NRRC,NRB] = hNRRCSet(srs)
% Calculate the values of NRRC that generate a unique set of orthogonal SRS in frequency
    if srs.BHop < srs.BSRS % Frequency-hopping cases
        NRB = srs(1).NRB; % Hopping bandwidth
    else
        NRB = nrSRSConfig.BandwidthConfigurationTable{srs(1).CSRS+1,2};
    end

    % Number of frequency-hopping patterns or SRS subbands depending on the values of BSRS and B
    N = hSRSNumberOfSubbandsOrHoppingPatterns(srs);

    NRRC = NRB/4*(0:N-1)/N;
end

```

References

- [1] 3GPP TS 38.211. “NR; Physical channels and modulation.” *3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Radio Access Network.*

See Also

Functions

nrSRS | nrSRSIndices

Objects

nrSRSConfig

Related Examples

- “NR Uplink Channel State Information Estimation Using SRS” on page 2-79

NR Uplink Channel State Information Estimation Using SRS

This example shows how to use sounding reference signals (SRS) for synchronization, channel estimation, and uplink channel state information (CSI) estimation.

Introduction

Sounding reference signals are uplink physical signals used by user equipment (UE) for uplink channel sounding, including synchronization and CSI estimation. CSI comprises channel quality indicator (CQI), rank indicator (RI), and precoder matrix indicator (PMI). This example demonstrates how to use SRS to select the appropriate PMI under frequency-selective time-varying noisy channels. Uplink codebook-based transmissions use PMIs, as defined in TS 38.211 Section 6.3.1.5 [1].

This example performs a simulation including:

- SRS configuration and transmission
- Perfect and practical synchronization and channel estimation
- Signal-to-noise ratio (SNR) estimation
- PMI selection
- PMI selection performance assessment

Simulation Length and SNR

Set the length of the simulation in terms of the number of 10 ms frames. Set the SNR points to simulate. The SNR is defined per RE and applies to each receive antenna.

```
numFrames = 1; % 10 ms frames
snr = 20; % SNR in dB
```

UE and SRS Configuration

Set the key parameters of the simulation. These include:

- The bandwidth in resource blocks (12 subcarriers per resource block)
- Subcarrier spacing: 15, 30, 60, 120, 240 (kHz)
- Cyclic prefix length: normal or extended
- Number of transmit and receive antennas: 1, 2 or 4.
- Number of layers. It must be lower than or equal to the number of transmit and receive antennas.

The SRS parameters specified include:

- Number of SRS antenna ports: 1,2,4
- Number of OFDM symbols allocated for SRS per slot: 1,2,4
- Starting OFDM symbol of the SRS transmission within a slot. It must be (8...13) for normal CP and (6...11) for extended CP.
- Starting position of the SRS in frequency specified in RBs
- Bandwidth and frequency hopping configuration CSRS, BSRS, and BHop. Set BHop >= BSRS to disable frequency hopping.
- Transmission comb to specify the SRS frequency density in subcarriers: 2,4

- Number of repeated SRS symbols within a slot. It disables frequency hopping in blocks of Repetition symbols. Set Repetition = 1 for no repetition.
- Periodicity and offset of the SRS in slots.
- Resource type can be 'periodic', 'semi-persistent', and 'aperiodic'. The frequency hopping pattern is reset for aperiodic SRS resource types in every slot.

```

% Create UE/carrier configuration
ue = nrCarrierConfig;
ue.NSizeGrid = 52;           % Bandwidth in number of resource blocks (52RBs at 15kHz SCS for 10MHz)
ue.SubcarrierSpacing = 15;  % 15, 30, 60, 120, 240 (kHz)
ue.CyclicPrefix = 'Normal'; % 'Normal' or 'Extended'

nTxAnts = 2; % Number of transmit antennas (1,2,4)
nRxAnts = 2; % Number of receive antennas
nLayers = min(nTxAnts,nRxAnts);

% Configure a periodic multi-port SRS and enable frequency hopping
srs = nrSRSConfig;
srs.NumSRSSymbols = 4;      % Number of OFDM symbols allocated per slot (1,2,4)
srs.SymbolStart = 8;        % Starting OFDM symbol within a slot
srs.NumSRSPorts = nTxAnts;  % Number of SRS antenna ports (1,2,4).
srs.FrequencyStart = 0;     % Frequency position of the SRS in BWP in RBs
srs.NRRC = 0;               % Additional offset from FreqStart specified in blocks of 4 PRBs
srs.CSRS = 14;              % Bandwidth configuration C_SRS (0...63). It controls the allocated
srs.BSRS = 0;               % Bandwidth configuration B_SRS (0...3). It controls the allocated
srs.BHop = 0;               % Frequency hopping configuration (0...3). Set BHop < BSRS to enable
srs.KTC = 2;                % Comb number (2,4). Frequency density in subcarriers
srs.Repetition = 2;         % Repetition (1,2,4). It disables frequency hopping in blocks of
srs.SRSPeriod = [2 0];     % Periodicity and offset in slots. SRSPeriod(2) must be < SRSPer
srs.ResourceType = 'periodic'; % Resource type ('periodic', 'semi-persistent','aperiodic'). Use

```

Synchronization, Channel Estimation and CSI Measurement Configuration

This example performs synchronization and channel estimation in SRS candidate slots. Timing and channel estimates are updated only in slots containing SRS transmissions. In frequency-hopping SRS setups, channel estimates are only updated in those resource blocks containing SRS symbols. When there is no SRS transmission, timing and channel estimates from previous slots are held and used for CSI acquisition. Similarly, noise power estimates are updated only in SRS candidate slots.

The logical variable `practicalSynchronization` controls channel synchronization behavior. When set to `true`, the example performs practical synchronization based on the values of the received SRS. When set to `false`, the example performs perfect synchronization. Synchronization is performed only in slots where the SRS is transmitted to keep perfect and practical channel estimates synchronized.

```
practicalSynchronization = true;
```

This example estimates CSI by splitting the carrier bandwidth into a number of subbands. Specify the size of the frequency subbands in RB

```
csiSubbandSize = 4; % Number of RBs per subband
```

Propagation Channel Model Configuration

Create a TDL channel model object and specify its propagation characteristics. Select the channel delay spread and maximum Doppler shift to create a time-varying and frequency-selective channel within the simulation duration and carrier bandwidth.

```

channel = nrTDLChannel;
channel.DelayProfile = 'TDL-C';
channel.DelaySpread = 40e-9;
channel.MaximumDopplerShift = 30;
channel.NumTransmitAntennas = nTxAnts;
channel.NumReceiveAntennas = nRxAnts;
channel.Seed = 5;

% Set channel sample rate
ofdmInfo = nrOFDMInfo(ue);
channel.SampleRate = ofdmInfo.SampleRate;

```

Get the maximum number of delayed samples by a channel multipath component. This is calculated from the channel path with the largest delay and the implementation delay of the channel filter. This is required later to flush the channel filter to obtain the received signal.

```

chInfo = info(channel);
maxChDelay = ceil(max(chInfo.PathDelays*channel.SampleRate));
maxChDelay = maxChDelay + chInfo.ChannelFilterDelay;

```

```

% Reset random generator for reproducibility
rng('default');

```

Processing Loop

Measure the CSI per slot. The CSI is obtained using the following steps:

- *Generate resource grid.* Use SRS symbols and indices to create a resource element (RE) grid.
- *Generate waveform.* The generated grid is then OFDM modulated.
- *Model noisy channel.* The waveform is passed through a TDL fading channel. AWGN is added. The SNR for each layer is defined per RE and per receive antenna.
- *Perform synchronization and OFDM demodulation.* For perfect synchronization, the channel impulse response is reconstructed and used to synchronize the received waveform. For practical synchronization, the received waveform is correlated with the SRS. The synchronized signal is then OFDM demodulated.
- *Perform channel estimation.* For perfect channel estimation, the channel impulse response is reconstructed and OFDM demodulated to provide a channel estimate. For practical channel estimation, the transmitted SRS is used.
- *PMI selection.* The SRS-based channel estimate is used to select the best PMI in each CSI estimation subband. The PMI selection criterion maximizes the average signal-to-interference-plus-noise-ratio (SINR) after precoding.
- *PMI selection SINR loss.* The SINR loss is calculated by comparing the SINR after precoding with the estimated and ideal PMIs. Ideal PMIs are selected using perfect channel estimates.

```

% Number of slots to simulate
numSlots = numFrames*ue.SlotsPerFrame;

% Total number of subcarriers and symbols per slot
K = ue.NSizeGrid * 12;
L = ue.SymbolsPerSlot;

% Initialize arrays storing channel estimates
allTxGrid = zeros([K L*numSlots nTxAnts]);

```

```

slotGridSize = [K L nRxAnts nTxAnts];
hEst = zeros(slotGridSize);
hestInterp = zeros(slotGridSize);
hEstUpdate = zeros(slotGridSize);

totalGridSize = [K L*numSlots nRxAnts nTxAnts];
allHest = zeros(totalGridSize);
allHestPerfect = zeros(totalGridSize);
allHestInterp = zeros(totalGridSize);

% Initialize noise power estimate
nvar = 0;

% Calculate the number of CSI subbands for the carrier
numCSISubbands = ceil(ue.NSizeGrid/csiSubbandSize);

% Initialize SINR per subband, slot, and PMI
maxPMI = hMaxPUSCHPrecodingMatrixIndicator(nLayers,nTxAnts);
sinrSubband = zeros([numCSISubbands numSlots maxPMI+1]);

% Initialize PMI matrix and SINR loss
pmi = NaN(numCSISubbands,numSlots);
pmiPerfect = pmi;
loss = zeros(size(pmi));

% Initialize timing estimation offset
offset = chInfo.ChannelFilterDelay;

% Calculate SRS CDM lengths
cdmLengths = hSRSCDMLengths(srs);

% OFDM symbols used for CSI acquisition
csiSelectSymbols = srs.SymbolStart + (1:srs.NumSRSSymbols);

for nSlot = 0:numSlots-1

    % Update slot counter
    ue.NSlot = nSlot;

    % Generate SRS and map to slot grid
    [srsIndices,srsIndInfo] = nrSRSIndices(ue,srs);
    srsSymbols = nrSRS(ue,srs);

    % Create a slot-wise resource grid empty grid and map SRS symbols
    txGrid = nrResourceGrid(ue,nTxAnts);
    txGrid(srsIndices) = srsSymbols;

    % Determine if the slot contains SRS
    isSRSSlot= ~isempty(srsSymbols);

    % OFDM Modulation
    [txWaveform,waveformInfo] = nrOFDMModulate(ue,txGrid);

    txWaveform = [txWaveform; zeros(maxChDelay, size(txWaveform,2))]; % required later to flush

    % Transmission through channel
    [rxWaveform,pathGains] = channel(txWaveform);

```

```

% Add AWGN to the received time domain waveform
% Normalize noise power to take account of sampling rate, which is
% a function of the IFFT size used in OFDM modulation. The SNR
% is defined per RE for each receive antenna (TS 38.101-4).
SNR = 10^(snr/20); % Calculate linear noise gain
N0 = 1/(sqrt(2.0*nRxAnts*double(waveformInfo.Nfft))*SNR);
noise = N0*complex(randn(size(rxWaveform)),randn(size(rxWaveform)));

rxWaveform = rxWaveform + noise;

% Perform timing offset estimation
pathFilters = getPathFilters(channel);

% Timing estimation is only performed in the slots where the SRS is
% transmitted to keep the perfect and practical channel estimation
% synchronized.
if isSRSSlot
    if practicalSynchronization
        % Practical synchronization. Correlate the received waveform
        % with the SRS to give timing offset estimate
        offset = nrTimingEstimate(ue,rxWaveform,srsIndices,srsSymbols);
    else
        offset = nrPerfectTimingEstimate(pathGains,pathFilters);
    end
end

% Perform OFDM demodulation
rxGrid = nrOFDMDemodulate(ue,rxWaveform(1+offset:end,:));

% Perform practical channel estimation
% Update channel estimates only in the symbols and RBs containing SRS
% in this slot and hold the estimates from the previous slot in other
% locations. nvar is not updated when there is no SRS transmission. Use
% a time-averaging window that covers all the SRS symbols transmitted.
if isSRSSlot % this slot contains an SRS transmission
    [hEst,nvar] = nrChannelEstimate(ue,rxGrid,srsIndices,srsSymbols,'AveragingWindow',[0 7],
    % Use channel estimate from previous slot for OFDM symbols before the first SRS symbol
    hestInterp = repmat(hestInterp(:,end,:,:),1,ue.SymbolsPerSlot);

    % Update channel estimate in OFDM symbols and RB where the SRS is
    % present and hold all channel estimates until the end of the slot
    firstSymbol = srs.SymbolStart+1;
    lastSymbol = srs.SymbolStart + srs.NumSRSSymbols;
    hEstUpdate(:,firstSymbol:lastSymbol,:,:) = hEst(:,firstSymbol:lastSymbol,:,:);
    hEstUpdate(:,lastSymbol:L,:,:) = repmat(hEst(:,lastSymbol,:,:),1,ue.SymbolsPerSlot-lastSymbol);

    idxHEstUpdate = hEstUpdate ~= 0; % Indices of updated channel estimates
    hestInterp(idxHEstUpdate) = hEstUpdate(idxHEstUpdate);
else % Hold previous channel estimates if this slot does not contain SRS
    hestInterp = repmat(hestInterp(:,end,:,:),1,ue.SymbolsPerSlot);
end

% PMI Selection
% Select the precoder matrix indicators for a number of layers using
% the interpolated channel estimates in the OFDM symbols specified by
% csiSelectSymbols. The PMIs are estimated per CSI subband
[pmi(:,nSlot+1),sinrSubband(:,nSlot+1,:),subbandIndices] = hPMISelect(nLayers, hestInterp(:,end,:,:),csiSelectSymbols);

```

```

% PMI selection SINR loss
% Calculate the performance loss as a ratio of the SINR after precoding
% with PMIs selected using a practical channel estimate and the SINR
% after precoding with PMIs selected using a perfect channel estimate.

% Calculate perfect channel estimate for perfect PMI selection
hEstPerfect = nrPerfectChannelEstimate(ue,pathGains,pathFilters,offset);

% Perfect noise estimate from noise realization
noiseGrid = nrOFDMDemodulate(ue,noise(1+offset:end,:));
nvarPerfect = var(noiseGrid(:));

[loss(:,nSlot+1),pmiPerfect(:,nSlot+1)] = hPMISelectionSINRLoss(pmi(:,nSlot+1), nLayers, hEstPerfect, nvarPerfect);

% Save a copy of all transmitted OFDM grids and channel estimates for
% display purposes
thisSlot = nSlot*L + (1:L); % Symbols of the current slot
allTxGrid(:,thisSlot,:) = txGrid;
allHest(:,thisSlot,:,:) = hEst;
allHestInterp(:,thisSlot,:,:) = hestInterp;
allHestPerfect(:,thisSlot,:,:) = hEstPerfect;
end

```

Results

This section displays these results for all configured frames:

- Transmitted OFDM grid containing SRS
- Perfect and practical channel estimates, and channel estimation error. The error is calculated as the absolute value of the difference between the perfect and practical channel estimates.
- Selected PMI using perfect and practical channel estimates, and the PMI absolute error.
- Average SINR per subband after precoding with best estimated PMI
- SINR performance loss

```

% Create x-axis and y-axis vectors
symbols = 0:(ue.NSlot+1)*ue.SymbolsPerSlot-1;
slots = 0:ue.NSlot;
subcarriers = 1:ue.NSizeGrid*12;
resourceBlocks = 1:ue.NSizeGrid;

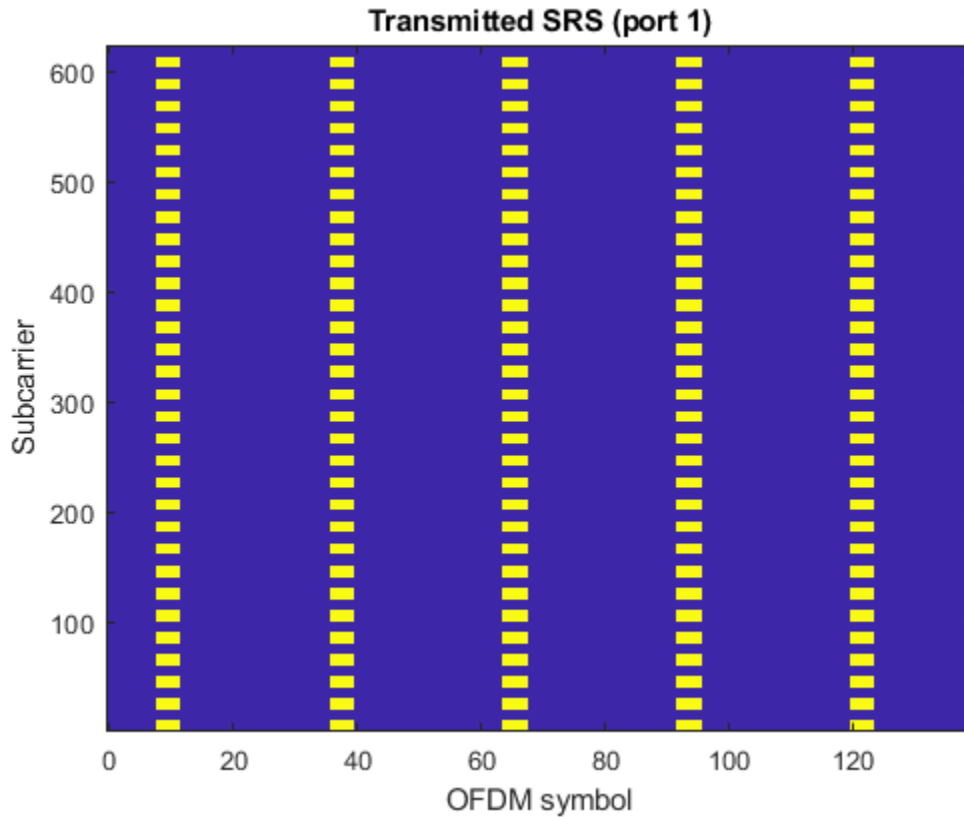
```

Display the transmitted OFDM grid containing SRS

```

figure
imagesc(symbols,subcarriers,abs(allTxGrid(:,:,1,1)));
xlabel('OFDM symbol'); ylabel('Subcarrier'); axis xy;
title('Transmitted SRS (port 1)');

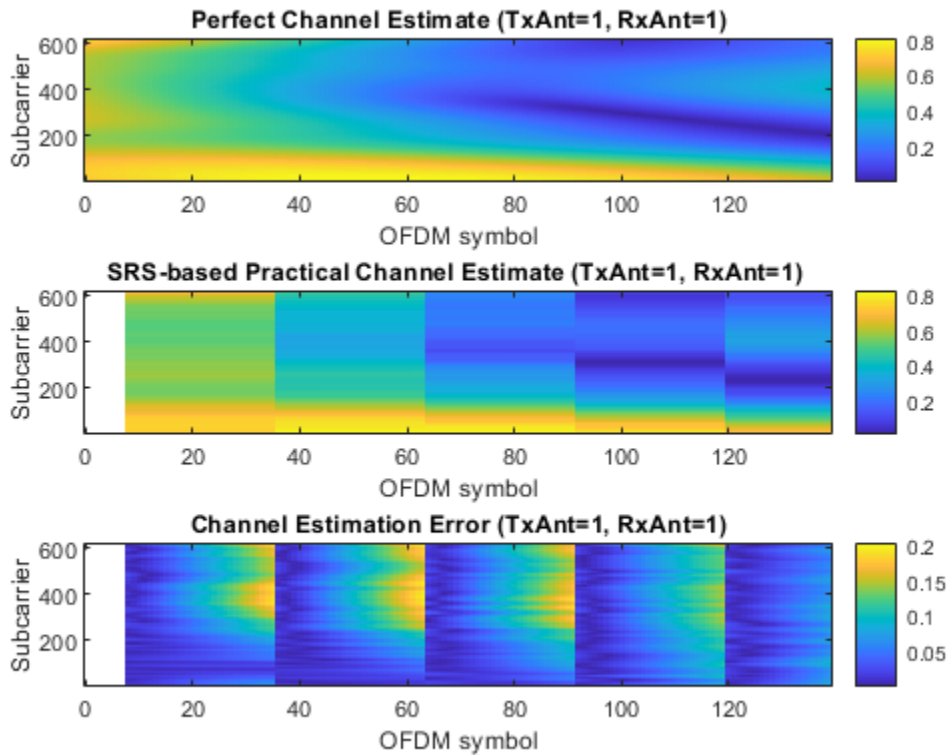
```

Display perfect and practical channel estimates, and channel estimation error per slot and RB. The channel estimation error is defined as the absolute value of the difference between the perfect and practical channel estimates.

```
% Remove first OFDM symbols not containing SRS to improve visualization of
% channel estimation error
hEstInterp = allHestInterp;
idx = 1:(srs.SRSPeriod(2)*ue.SymbolsPerSlot + srs.SymbolStart);
hEstInterp(:,idx, :, :) = NaN;
hEstInterp((srs.NRB*12+1):end, :, :, :) = NaN;

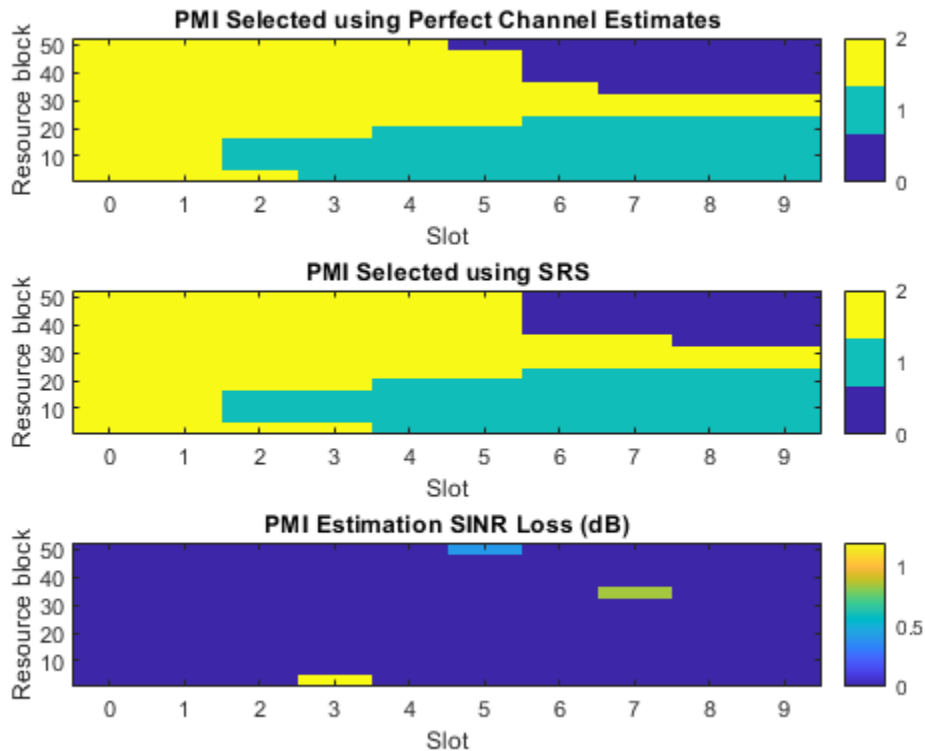
hChannelEstimationPlot(symbols, subcarriers, allHestPerfect, hEstInterp);
```



Display the selected PMI using perfect and practical channel estimates, and the PMI selection SINR loss per slot and RB. The SINR loss is defined as a ratio of the SINR after precoding with estimated and perfect PMIs. Estimated PMIs are obtained using a practical channel estimate and perfect PMIs are selected using a perfect channel estimate.

```
% First expand loss from subbands into RBs for display purposes
pmiRB = hExpandSubbandToRB(pmi, csiSubbandSize, ue.NSizeGrid);
pmiPerfectRB = hExpandSubbandToRB(pmiPerfect, csiSubbandSize, ue.NSizeGrid);
lossRB = hExpandSubbandToRB(loss, csiSubbandSize, ue.NSizeGrid);

hPMIPlot(slots, resourceBlocks, pmiRB, pmiPerfectRB, lossRB);
```



Next, compare the PMIs obtained using both perfect and practical channel estimates. This indicates the ratio of correct to total PMIs and the location in the resource grid where errors have occurred.

```

numLayers = min(size(allHestInterp,[3 4]));
if numLayers ~= 1
    pmiErr = sum( abs(pmi - pmiPerfect) > 0, [1 2])./ sum( ~isnan(pmi), [1 2]);

    TotPMIEst = sum(~isnan(pmi),[1 2]);
    fprintf('Number of estimated PMI: %d \n', TotPMIEst);
    fprintf('    Number of wrong PMI: %d \n', ceil(pmiErr*TotPMIEst));
    fprintf('    Relative error: %.1f (%) \n', pmiErr*100);
else
    fprintf('For a single layer, PMI is always 0.\n');
end

```

```

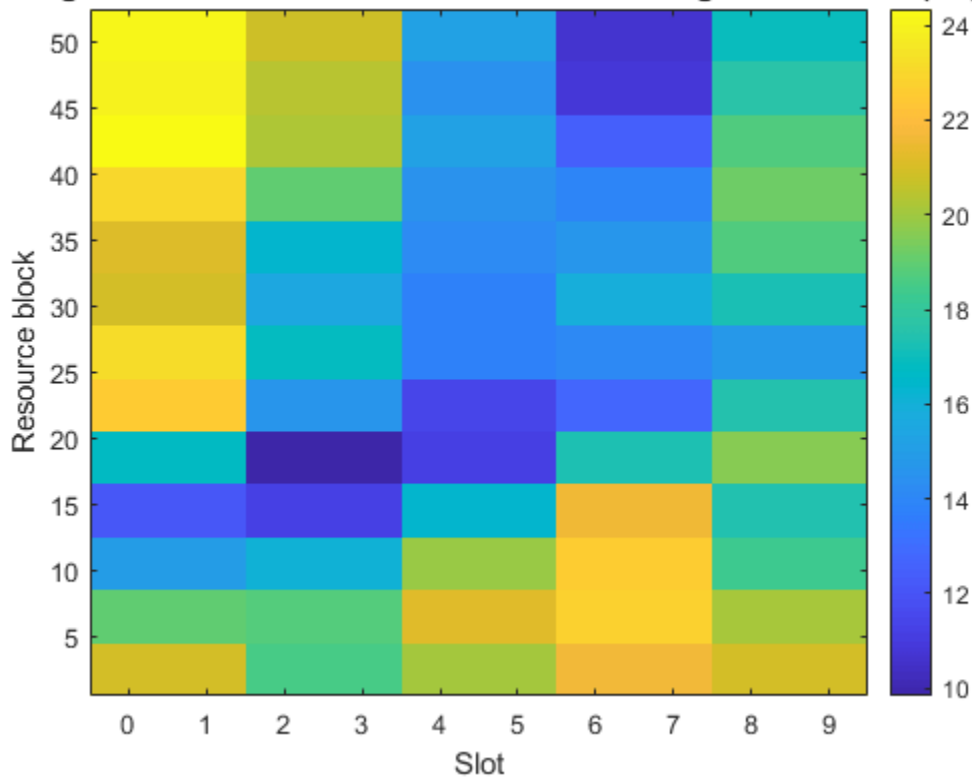
Number of estimated PMI: 130
Number of wrong PMI: 3
Relative error: 2.3 (%)

```

Display the SINR per slot and RB obtained after precoding with the PMI that maximizes the SINR per subband.

```
hBestSINRPlot(slots,resourceBlocks,sinrSubband,pmi,csiSubbandSize);
```

Average SINR Per Subband and Slot After Precoding with Best PMI (dB)



Summary and Further Exploration

This example shows how to use SRS for synchronization, channel estimation and PMI selection commonly employed in codebook-based uplink transmission modes. The example also evaluates the channel estimation and PMI selection performance loss using the SINR after precoding.

You can investigate the performance of the channel estimation and PMI selection in more complex settings. Increase the SRS periodicity and observe how the channel estimates aging introduces a delay and worsens the SINR after precoding. In addition, you can investigate the performance under frequency hopping conditions by setting the SRS parameters $B_{Hop} < B_{SRS}$. In this setup, channel estimates aging is not uniform in frequency.

Appendix

This example uses the following helper functions:

- hMaxPUSCHPrecodingMatrixIndicator.m
- hPMISelect.m
- hPMISelectionSINRLoss.m
- hPrecodedSINR.m
- hSINRPerSubband.m
- hSRSCDMLengths.m

References

- 1 3GPP TS 38.211. "NR; Physical channels and modulation (Release 15)." 3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Radio Access Network.
- 2 3GPP TS 38.101-4. "NR; User Equipment (UE) radio transmission and reception. Part 4: Performance requirements (Release 15)." 3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Radio Access Network.

Local functions

```
% Displays perfect and practical channel estimates and the channel
% estimation error for the first transmit and receive ports. The channel
% estimation error is defined as the absolute value of the difference
% between the perfect and practical channel estimates.
function hChannelEstimationPlot(symbols,subcarriers,allHestPerfect,allHestInterp)
```

```
    figure
    subplot(311)
    imagesc(symbols, subcarriers, abs(allHestPerfect(:,:,1,1)));
    axis xy; xlabel('OFDM symbol'); ylabel('Subcarrier');
    colorbar;
    title('Perfect Channel Estimate (TxAnt=1, RxAnt=1)');

    subplot(312)
    imagesc(symbols, subcarriers, abs(allHestInterp(:,:,1,1)), ...
            'AlphaData',~isnan(allHestInterp(:,:,1,1)))
    axis xy; xlabel('OFDM symbol'); ylabel('Subcarrier');
    colorbar;
    title('SRS-based Practical Channel Estimate (TxAnt=1, RxAnt=1) ');

    % Display channel estimation error, defined as the difference between the
    % SRS-based and perfect channel estimates
    subplot(313)
    hestErr = abs(allHestInterp - allHestPerfect);
    imagesc(symbols, subcarriers, hestErr(:,:,1,1),...
            'AlphaData',~isnan(hestErr(:,:,1,1)));
    axis xy; xlabel('OFDM symbol'); ylabel('Subcarrier');
    colorbar;
    title('Channel Estimation Error (TxAnt=1, RxAnt=1)');
```

```
end
```

```
% Displays the PMI evolution and PMI estimation SINR loss over time and
% frequency. The SINR loss is defined as a ratio of the SINR after
% precoding with estimated and perfect PMIs. Estimated PMIs are
% obtained using a practical channel estimate and perfect PMIs are
% selected using a perfect channel estimate.
```

```
function hPMIPlot(slots,resourceBlocks,pmiRB,pmiPerfectRB,lossRB)
```

```
    figure
    subplot(311)
    imagesc(slots,resourceBlocks,pmiPerfectRB,'AlphaData',~isnan(pmiPerfectRB)); axis xy;
    c = caxis;
    cm = colormap;
    colormap( cm(1:floor(size(cm,1)/(c(2)-c(1)) -1):end,:) ); % Adjust colormap to PMI discrete v
    colorbar
    xlabel('Slot'); ylabel('Resource block'), title('PMI Selected using Perfect Channel Estimates
```

```

subplot(312)
imagesc(slots,resourceBlocks,pmiRB,'AlphaData',~isnan(pmiRB)); axis xy;
colorbar,
xlabel('Slot'); ylabel('Resource block'), title('PMI Selected using SRS')

subplot(313)
imagesc(slots,resourceBlocks,lossRB,'AlphaData',~isnan(lossRB));
colormap(gca,cm)
xlabel('Slot'); ylabel('Resource block'); axis xy; colorbar;
title('PMI Estimation SINR Loss (dB)')

end

% Displays the SINR per resource block obtained after precoding with the
% PMI that maximizes the SINR per subband.
function hBestSINRPlot(slots,resourceBlocks,sinrSubband,pmi,csiBandSize)

    % Display SINR after precoding with best PMI
    bestSINRPerSubband = nan(size(sinrSubband,[1 2]));

    % Get SINR per subband and slot using best PMI
    [sb,nslot] = find(~isnan(pmi));
    for i = 1:length(sb)
        bestSINRPerSubband(sb(i),nslot(i)) = sinrSubband(sb(i),nslot(i),pmi(sb(i),nslot(i))+1);
    end

    % First expand SINR from subbands into RBs for display purposes
    bestSINRPerRB = hExpandSubbandToRB(bestSINRPerSubband, csiBandSize, length(resourceBlocks));

    figure
    sinrdb = 10*log10(abs(bestSINRPerRB));
    imagesc(slots,resourceBlocks,sinrdb,'AlphaData',~isnan(sinrdb));
    axis xy; colorbar;
    xlabel('Slot');
    ylabel('Resource block')
    title('Average SINR Per Subband and Slot After Precoding with Best PMI (dB)')

end

% Expands a 2D matrix of values per subband in the first dimension into a
% matrix of values per resource block.
function rbValues = hExpandSubbandToRB(subbandValues, bandSize, NRB)

    lastBandSize = mod(NRB,bandSize);
    lastBandSize = lastBandSize + bandSize*(lastBandSize==0);

    rbValues = [kron(subbandValues(1:end-1,:),ones(bandSize,1));...
                subbandValues(end,:).*ones(lastBandSize,1)];

end

```

See Also

Functions

nrSRS | nrSRSIndices

Objects

nrSRSCfg

Related Examples

- “NR SRS Configuration” on page 2-59

5G NR PRACH Configuration

This example shows how to configure the 5G New Radio (NR) physical random access channel (PRACH), as defined in TS 38.211 Sections 5.3.2 and 6.3.3 [1 on page 2-0]. You can learn about PRACH time resources, their relation to PRACH preambles, and learn how to generate PRACH preambles without the need to look up configuration tables. This example also shows how to map PRACH symbols to the resource grid, and how to generate a time-domain waveform for a single PRACH preamble.

Configure Carrier and PRACH

Supported Combinations of Subcarrier Spacing

Table 6.3.3.2-1 in TS 38.211 lists the supported combinations of subcarrier spacing for the PRACH and the physical uplink shared channel (PUSCH) during initial access. You can access this table directly from the PRACH configuration object.

```
disp(nrPRACHConfig.Tables.SupportedSCSCCombinations)
```

LRA	PRACHSubcarrierSpacing	PUSCHSubcarrierSpacing	NRBAallocation	kbar
839	1.25	15	6	7
839	1.25	30	3	1
839	1.25	60	2	133
839	5	15	24	12
839	5	30	12	10
839	5	60	6	7
139	15	15	12	2
139	15	30	6	2
139	15	60	3	2
139	30	15	24	2
139	30	30	12	2
139	30	60	6	2
139	60	60	12	2
139	60	120	6	2
139	120	60	24	2
139	120	120	12	2

The system information block 1 (SIB1) contains the radio resource control (RRC) information element *UplinkConfigCommonSIB* (TS 38.331 Section 6.3.2 [2 on page 2-0]) that defines the subcarrier spacing for the PUSCH. The user equipment (UE) needs this information to transmit the PRACH preamble during the random-access procedure.

Carrier Configuration

Because the PUSCH is not defined at the PRACH preamble transmission, to configure the PUSCH subcarrier spacing and the frequency-domain dimensions of the resource grid, use the `nrCarrierConfig` object.

```
carrier = nrCarrierConfig;
carrier.SubcarrierSpacing = 15; % Subcarrier spacing in kHz (15, 30, 60, 120)
```

Because the PRACH preamble is modulated with respect to the carrier, changing the carrier subcarrier spacing leads to a different PRACH waveform. To see how a different carrier affects the generated waveform, check the Information associated with PRACH OFDM modulation

output for several carriers in the Generate Waveform for Single PRACH Preamble on page 2-0 section, .

PRACH Configuration

You can configure PRACH parameters by setting property values of the `nrPRACHConfig` object. According to TS 38.211, not all PRACH parameter combinations are valid. For more information on how the properties of `nrPRACHConfig` reflect these limitations, see `nrPRACHConfig`.

```
prach = nrPRACHConfig;
prach.FrequencyRange = 'FR1';           % Frequency range ('FR1', 'FR2')
prach.DuplexMode = 'FDD';               % Duplex mode ('FDD', 'TDD', 'SUL')
prach.ConfigurationIndex = 27;          % Configuration index (0..255). This value is automati
prach.SubcarrierSpacing = 15;           % Subcarrier spacing in kHz (1.25, 5, 15, 30, 60, 120)
prach.SequenceIndex = 0;                % Logical root sequence index (0..837)
prach.PreambleIndex = 0;                % Scalar preamble index within the cell (0..63)
prach.RestrictedSet = 'UnrestrictedSet'; % Type of restricted set ('UnrestrictedSet', 'Restricted
prach.ZeroCorrelationZone = 0;          % Cyclic shift configuration index (0..15)
prach.RBOffset = 0;                     % Starting resource block index of the initial uplink ba
prach.FrequencyStart = 0;                % Frequency offset of lowest PRACH transmission occasio
prach.FrequencyIndex = 0;                % Index of the PRACH transmission occasions in frequenc
prach.TimeIndex = 0;                     % Index of the PRACH transmission occasions in time doma
% For formats B2 and B3, this value is automatically up
prach.ActivePRACHSlot = 0;               % Active PRACH slot number within a subframe or a 60 kHz
prach.NPRACHSlot = 0;                   % PRACH slot number
```

The `ConfigurationIndex` and `TimeIndex` properties depend on the PRACH format. The `SubcarrierSpacing`, `ActivePRACHSlot`, and `NPRACHSlot` properties determine whether the PRACH preamble is active. The next two sections discuss how to set these properties.

How to Set ConfigurationIndex Based on Preferred Format

Tables 6.3.3.2-2 to 6.3.3.2-4 in TS 38.211 define all possible PRACH configurations in the time domain. The combination of frequency range and duplex mode specifies which configuration table to use. Valid combinations are:

- FR1 and FDD (paired spectrum): Table 6.3.3.2-2
- FR1 and SUL (supplementary uplink): Table 6.3.3.2-2
- FR1 and TDD (unpaired spectrum): Table 6.3.3.2-3
- FR2 and TDD (unpaired spectrum): Table 6.3.3.2-4

For more information on how paired and unpaired spectrums relate to duplex mode, see the field `FDD-OrSUL` of the RRC information element `FrequencyInfoUL` in TS 38.331 Section 6.3.2.

You can access these configuration tables through the `Tables` property of the `nrPRACHConfig` object. For example:

```
nrPRACHConfig.Tables.ConfigurationsFR1PairedSUL % TS 38.211 Table 6.3.3.2-2
nrPRACHConfig.Tables.ConfigurationsFR1Unpaired % TS 38.211 Table 6.3.3.2-3
nrPRACHConfig.Tables.ConfigurationsFR2         % TS 38.211 Table 6.3.3.2-4
```

TS 38.211 defines 13 PRACH formats and categorizes them as long or short preambles. Long preambles have a sequence of length $L_{RA} = 839$, whereas short preambles have a sequence of length $L_{RA} = 139$. The formats associated with long preambles are: 0, 1, 2, 3. The formats associated with short preambles are: A1, A2, A3, B1, B2, B3, B4, C0, C2, including mixed formats A1/B1, A2/B2, and A3/B3.

The configuration indices in Tables 6.3.3.2-2 to 6.3.3.2-4 define the time resources in which each preamble format can be transmitted. Each preamble format is associated with several configuration indices. You can choose a PRACH format without the need to look up the configuration tables by setting the value of `ConfigurationIndex` based on the preferred format. This value corresponds to the largest range of time resources in which you can transmit the preferred preamble format.

```
format =  ; % PRACH preamble format ('0','1','2','3','A1','A2','A3','B1','B2')
```

Select the configuration table based on `FrequencyRange` and `DuplexMode`.

```
if strcmpi(prach.FrequencyRange, 'FR1')
    if strcmpi(prach.DuplexMode, 'TDD') % TS 38.211 Table 6.3.3.2-3
        configTable = nrPRACHConfig.Tables.ConfigurationsFR1Unpaired;
    else % TS 38.211 Table 6.3.3.2-2
        configTable = nrPRACHConfig.Tables.ConfigurationsFR1PairedSUL;
    end
else % TS 38.211 Table 6.3.3.2-4
    configTable = nrPRACHConfig.Tables.ConfigurationsFR2;
end
```

Among all configurations corresponding to the same short preamble format in Table 6.3.3.2-2, the second to last configuration has the largest number of time resources for transmitting the PRACH preamble. In all the other cases, including mixed formats in Table 6.3.3.2-2, the last configuration has the largest number of time resources for transmitting the PRACH preamble. This example uses this information to set the value of the `ConfigurationIndex` property. If you select format B2 or B3, this example sets the maximum value of `TimeIndex`.

```
if strcmpi(prach.FrequencyRange, 'FR1') && strcmpi(prach.DuplexMode, 'FDD') && ...
    any(strcmpi(format, {'A1', 'A2', 'A3', 'B1', 'B4', 'C0', 'C2'}))
    prach.ConfigurationIndex = find(strcmpi(configTable.PreambleFormat, format), 1, 'last') - 2;
else
    if ~any(strcmpi(format, {'B2', 'B3'}))
        prach.ConfigurationIndex = find(strcmpi(configTable.PreambleFormat, format), 1, 'last') - 1;
    else
        % Format B2 and B3 only appear in mixed formats, so select an
        % appropriate mixed format and set the maximum value of TimeIndex
        prach.ConfigurationIndex = find(endsWith(configTable.PreambleFormat, format), 1, 'last') - 1;
        prach.TimeIndex = prach.NumTimeOccurrences - 1;
    end
end
```

How to Select SubcarrierSpacing, ActivePRACHSlot, and NPRACHSlot to Generate Active PRACH Preamble

Tables 6.3.3.2-2 to 6.3.3.2-4 in TS 38.211 describe which PRACH slot corresponds to an active PRACH preamble. The third and fourth columns of these tables represent the system frame numbers that correspond to an active PRACH preamble. Depending on the selected frequency range, FR1 or FR2, the fifth column represents the slot numbers for 15 kHz or 60 kHz subcarrier spacing, respectively, corresponding to an active PRACH preamble. If a PRACH preamble is not active in the current time resources, no time transmission can take place.

For example, the selected PRACH configuration is active in any system frame and subframe if PRACH subcarrier spacing is set to 15 kHz, as shown in Table 6.3.3.2-2.

```
disp(configTable(prach.ConfigurationIndex+1, :))
```

ConfigurationIndex	PreambleFormat	x	y	SubframeNumber	StartingSymbol
146	{'A2/B2'}	1	{[0]}	{[0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9]}	0

To verify that the PRACH preamble is active in the current slot, check the `prachSymbols` output of the `nrPRACH` function. This output is empty if the PRACH preamble is not active in the current slot. To generate an active PRACH preamble, loop through the values of the `NPRACHSlot` property until `prachSymbols` becomes nonempty.

The cases presented in this section show how to check whether the current PRACH short preamble is active. Both cases consider a PRACH short preamble format B2. If you change the format, the PRACH preamble may be active for values of the `NPRACHSlot` and `ActivePRACHSlot` properties different from those shown in this example.

Case 1: Typical PRACH subcarrier spacing configuration

Set up a PRACH preamble for the selected format with a typical subcarrier spacing configuration. This example considers a 15 kHz subcarrier spacing, which is the typical value for short preambles in FR1. If you change the value of the subcarrier spacing or the format, you may need to change the values of `ActivePRACHSlot` and `NPRACHSlot` to get an active PRACH slot.

```
% Store the user-defined configuration
subcarrierSpacing = prach.SubcarrierSpacing;
activePRACHSlot = prach.ActivePRACHSlot;
nPRACHSlot = prach.NPRACHSlot;

% Set values of SubcarrierSpacing, ActivePRACHSlot, and NPRACHSlot for this
% case
if any(strcmpi(format,{'0','1','2'}))
    prach.SubcarrierSpacing = 1.25;
elseif strcmpi(format,'3')
    prach.SubcarrierSpacing = 5;
else % Short preambles
    if strcmpi(prach.FrequencyRange,'FR1')
        prach.SubcarrierSpacing = 15; % Valid values are (15, 30)
    else % FR2
        prach.SubcarrierSpacing = 60; % Valid values are (60, 120)
    end
end
prach.ActivePRACHSlot = 0;
prach.NPRACHSlot = 0;
```

According to Table 6.3.3.2-2 in TS 38.211, the UE can transmit PRACH in any slot.

```
prachSymbols = nrPRACH(carrier,prach);
active = ~isempty(prachSymbols);
disp(['active: ' num2str(active)])

active: 1
```

Case 2: Alternative PRACH subcarrier spacing configuration

The PRACH subcarrier spacing is set to 30 kHz, whereas the carrier subcarrier spacing is set to the default value of 15 kHz. This means that each carrier slot contains two PRACH slots. This case does not consider PRACH long preambles and frequency range FR2 because they are not compatible with 30 kHz subcarrier spacing.

In the case of 30 kHz PRACH subcarrier spacing, only one of the two PRACH slots within a 15 kHz subcarrier spacing can be active. According to Table 6.3.3.2-2 in TS 38.211, either the first or the second PRACH slots can be active for PRACH preamble format B2. The value of `prach.ActivePRACHSlot` property defines which PRACH slot is active within the current carrier subframe. This property is the n_{slot}^{RA} parameter defined in TS 38.211 Section 5.3.2.

This case shows four combinations of the `NPRACHSlot` and `ActivePRACHSlot` property values and tests whether the PRACH preamble is active. This case displays the plot of the time-domain structure of the PRACH preamble for both combinations. The plot shows that the active PRACH preamble occupies the first half of the carrier slot when `ActivePRACHSlot` is 0 and occupies the second half of the carrier slot when `ActivePRACHSlot` is 1. For more details on this plot, see the Plot Time-Domain Structure of Selected PRACH Preamble on page 2-0 section.

```

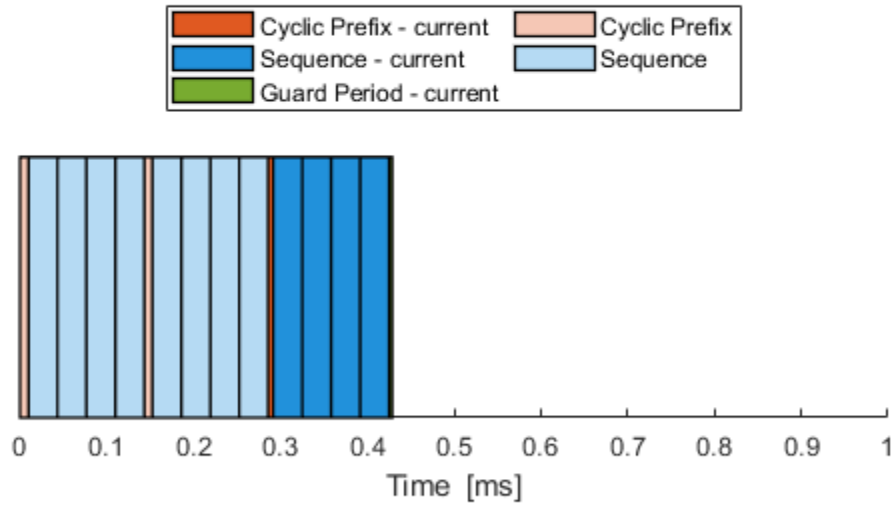
if ~any(strcmpi(format,{'0','1','2','3'})) && strcmpi(prach.FrequencyRange,'FR1') % Short preamble
    % Set subcarrier spacing to 30 kHz for this case
    prach.SubcarrierSpacing = 30;

    % Define all combinations of NPRACHSlot and ActivePRACHSlot to check
    nPRACHSlotCase2 = [0, 1, 2];
    activePRACHSlotCase2 = [0, 1];
    [NPRACHSlotCase2, ActivePRACHSlotCase2] = meshgrid(nPRACHSlotCase2,activePRACHSlotCase2);
    prachActivityTable = table(NPRACHSlotCase2(:),ActivePRACHSlotCase2(:),false*ones(numel(NPRACHSlotCase2),numel(ActivePRACHSlotCase2)),
        'VariableNames',{'NPRACHSlot','ActivePRACHSlot','active'});

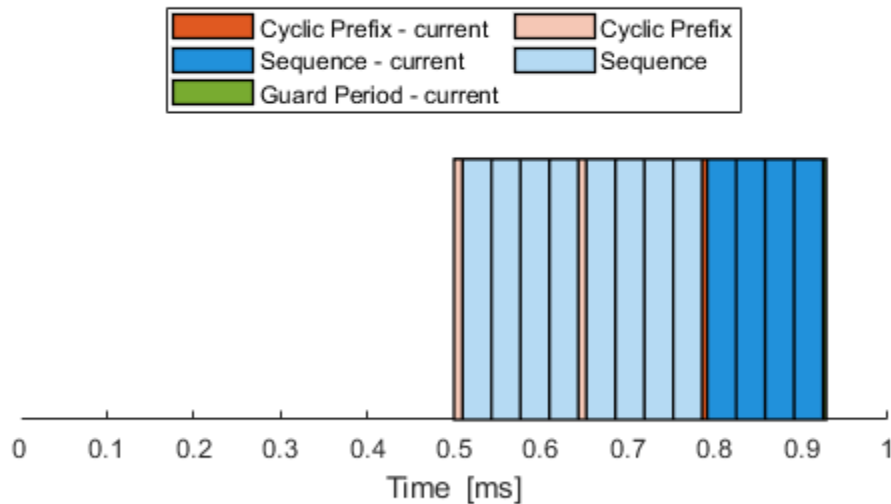
    % Loop over all combinations
    for i = 1:numel(NPRACHSlotCase2)
        prach.NPRACHSlot = NPRACHSlotCase2(i);
        prach.ActivePRACHSlot = ActivePRACHSlotCase2(i);
        prachSymbols = nrPRACH(carrier,prach);
        active = ~isempty(prachSymbols); % Check if the PRACH preamble is active in the current slot
        prachActivityTable.active(i) = active;
        if active && prach.NPRACHSlot < 2
            % Plot the time-domain structure of the PRACH preamble for
            % active PRACH preambles in the first two slots
            hPRACHPreamblePlot(carrier,prach);
        end
    end
else
    % Display a message for the filtered cases
    if any(strcmpi(format,{'0','1','2','3'}))
        disp(['PRACH long preamble format ' format ' is not compatible with 30 kHz subcarrier spacing.'])
    else % FR2
        disp('Frequency range FR2 is not compatible with 30 kHz subcarrier spacing.')
    end
end
end

```

**Time-Domain Structure of PRACH Preamble Format A2/B2
within One 15 kHz Carrier Slot (NPRACHSlot = [0, 1])**



Time-Domain Structure of PRACH Preamble Format A2/B2 within One 15 kHz Carrier Slot (NPRACHSlot = [0, 1])



For short preamble formats with a 30 kHz subcarrier spacing, this table shows whether the PRACH preamble is active for each combination of the chosen values of the NPRACHSlot and ActivePRACHSlot properties.

```
if ~any(strcmpi(format,{'0','1','2','3'})) && strcmpi(prach.FrequencyRange,'FRI') % Short preamble
    disp(prachActivityTable)
end
```

NPRACHSlot	ActivePRACHSlot	active
0	0	1
0	1	0
1	0	0
1	1	1
2	0	1
2	1	0

Set the PRACH configuration object back to the user-defined configuration

```
prach.SubcarrierSpacing = subcarrierSpacing;
prach.ActivePRACHSlot = activePRACHSlot;
prach.NPRACHSlot = nPRACHSlot;
```

Inspect PRACH Configuration

The PRACH configuration object also has read-only properties that provide additional information about the current configuration:

- Preamble format: `Format`
- Length of the Zadoff-Chu preamble sequence: `LRA`
- Maximum number of allowed PRACH time occasions: `NumTimeOccasions`
- Number of OFDM symbols in the PRACH slot grid corresponding to one transmission occasion: `PRACHDuration`
- Location of the first OFDM symbol of the current PRACH occasion: `SymbolLocation`

`disp(prach)`

`nrPRACHConfig` with properties:

```

    FrequencyRange: 'FR1'
      DuplexMode: 'FDD'
    ConfigurationIndex: 146
    SubcarrierSpacing: 15
      SequenceIndex: 0
      PreambleIndex: 0
      RestrictedSet: 'UnrestrictedSet'
    ZeroCorrelationZone: 0
      RBOffset: 0
    FrequencyStart: 0
    FrequencyIndex: 0
      TimeIndex: 2
    ActivePRACHSlot: 0
      NPRACHSlot: 0

```

Read-only properties:

```

    Format: 'B2'
      LRA: 139
    NumTimeOccasions: 3
      PRACHDuration: 4
      SymbolLocation: 8
    SubframesPerPRACHSlot: 1
    PRACHSlotsPerPeriod: 10

```

Constant properties:

```

    Tables: [1x1 struct]

```

Plot Time-Domain Structure of Selected PRACH Preamble

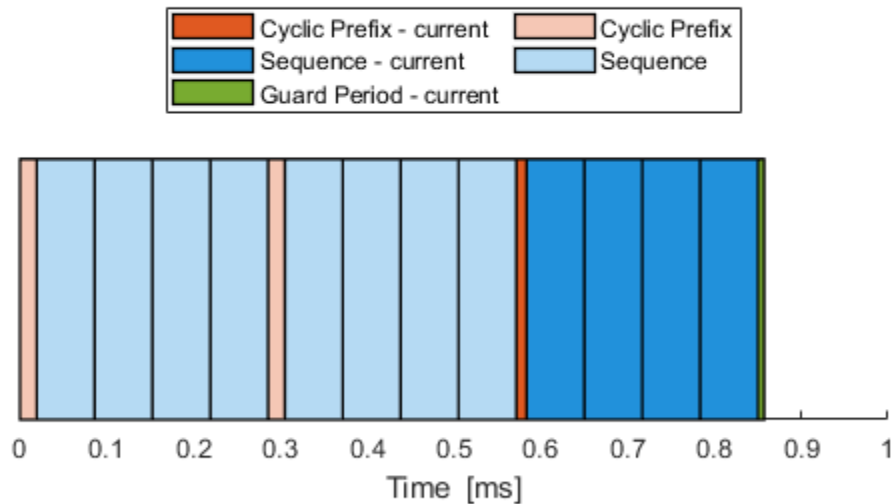
This plot shows all the possible PRACH occasions (in the current carrier slot) in light colors and the current PRACH occasion (corresponding to the selected `TimeIndex`) in dark colors. This plot contains the cyclic prefix (CP), the PRACH active sequence periods, and a final guard period (GP) in red, blue, and green, respectively. If the PRACH preamble is not active in the current slot, the plot is empty. The plot shows time-related properties of the selected PRACH configuration and the PRACH position in the carrier slot. If the PRACH subcarrier spacing is smaller than the carrier subcarrier spacing, the plot shows the minimum number of carrier slots needed to transmit the PRACH preamble. The last PRACH occasion in time does not always correspond to the end of the carrier slot. The plot is empty for those time values in which no PRACH transmission is allowed for the current PRACH configuration.

```

hPRACHPreamblePlot(carrier,prach);

```

Time-Domain Structure of PRACH Preamble Format A2/B2 within One 15 kHz Carrier Slot (NPRACHSlot = 0)



Generate and Map PRACH Symbols to Resource Grid

The PRACH resource grid shows the location of the PRACH preamble in both time and frequency domain. Using this resource grid, you can:

- Inspect the PRACH preamble visually in both time and frequency domain
- Generate the PRACH waveform, which is obtained by modulating the resource grid

The PRACH resource grid generation consists of these steps:

- 1 Generate an empty grid
- 2 Generate the symbols to be transmitted in the PRACH waveform
- 3 Generate the frequency indices and time indices in which the PRACH symbols are located
- 4 Map the PRACH symbols to the PRACH resource grid

Generate an empty PRACH resource grid.

```
prachGrid = nrPRACHGrid(carrier,prach);
size(prachGrid)
```

```
ans = 1×2
```

```
624 14
```


Generate the PRACH symbols. The number of symbols depends on the PRACH configuration. The `prachSymbols` output is empty if the PRACH preamble is not active in the current slot.

```
prachSymbols = nrPRACH(carrier,prach);
```

Generate the PRACH indices. The value in each element of `prachIndices` is the linear index of the location of each element of `prachSymbols` in the PRACH resource grid.

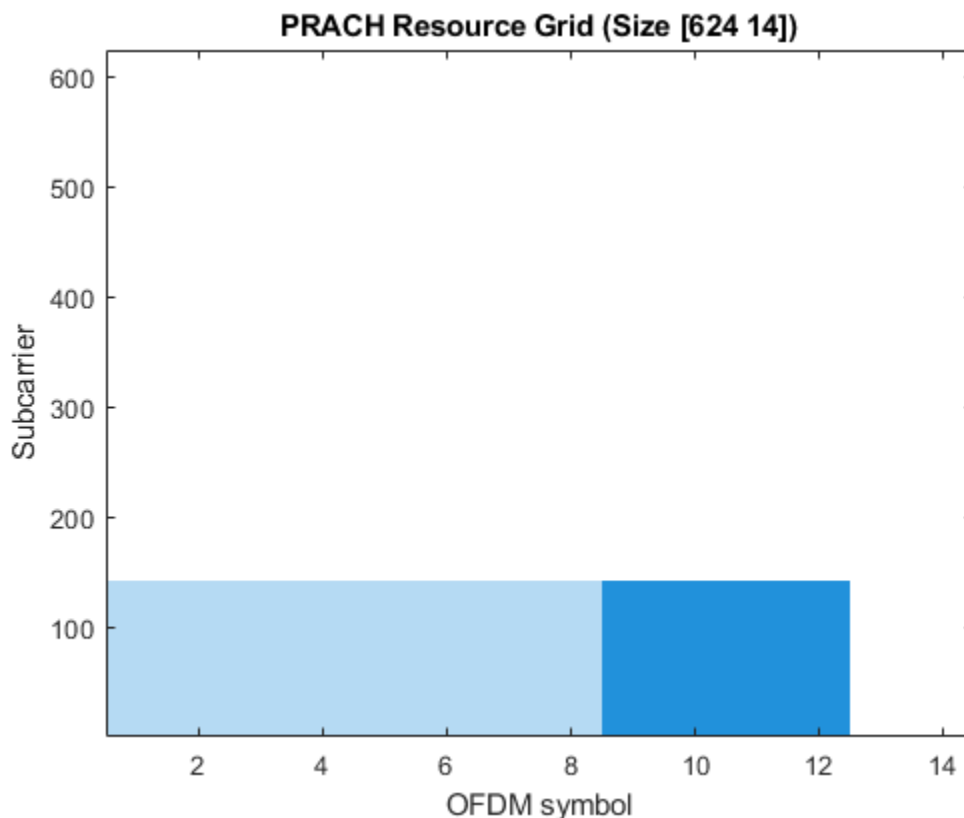
```
prachIndices = nrPRACHIndices(carrier,prach);
```

Map the PRACH symbols to the PRACH resource grid using the indices. To represent β_{PRACH} in TS 38.211 Section 6.3.3.2, the mapping applies a scaling factor of 1 to the PRACH symbols.

```
prachGrid(prachIndices) = 1 * prachSymbols;
```

The `hPRACHResourceGridPlot` helper function plots the PRACH resource grid to show the location of the active PRACH. The plot shows all the time occasions in which the PRACH can be transmitted. The plot shows all the possible PRACH occasions in the current carrier slot in light blue and the current PRACH occasion (corresponding to the selected `TimeIndex`) in dark blue. The plot is empty for OFDM symbols not used by any PRACH occasion for the current configuration. If the PRACH preamble is not active in the current slot, the plot is empty.

```
hPRACHResourceGridPlot(carrier,prach);
```



The PRACH resource grid contains 14 OFDM symbols except for these cases:

- For long preamble format 0, each preamble has one active sequence period that spans one subframe. Therefore, the slot grid related to format 0 has one OFDM symbol.

- For long preamble format 1, each preamble has two active sequence periods that span two subframes. Therefore, the slot grid related to format 1 has two OFDM symbols.
- For long preamble format 2, each preamble has four active sequence periods that span four subframes. Therefore, the slot grid related to format 2 has four OFDM symbols.
- For long preamble format 3, each preamble has four active sequence periods that span one subframe. Therefore, the slot grid related to format 3 has four OFDM symbols.
- For short preamble format C0, each preamble has one active sequence period. However, because of the guard and the cyclic prefix, the preamble spans two OFDM symbols. Therefore, the slot grid related to format C0 has seven OFDM symbols.

You can retrieve the number of active sequence periods from the value of the `PRACHDuration` property of the PRACH configuration object.

Generate Waveform for Single PRACH Preamble

Generate a time-domain waveform for a single PRACH preamble by modulating the PRACH resource grid. To set the number of time-domain samples over which to apply windowing and overlapping of OFDM symbols, use `windowing`. This example uses the default value for windowing. For more details about windowing, see `nrPRACHOFDMModulate`.

```
windowing = [];
[prachWaveform,prachInfo] = nrPRACHOFDMModulate(carrier,prach,prachGrid,'Windowing',windowing);
```

The output `prachWaveform` is a column vector corresponding to the time-domain waveform. The output `prachInfo` is a structure that provides dimensional information related to the PRACH. This example displays this information by using the `hPRACHInfoDisplay` helper function. The function displays the information related to the number of samples corresponding to CP, PRACH active sequence period T_{SEQ} , and GP for each OFDM symbol in a tabular format. The table lists all the OFDM symbols that fit in the resource grid. For short preamble formats, the values marked with * correspond to all possible PRACH occasions except the current one (marked light blue in the resource grid plot). For short preamble formats, the values within angle brackets represent OFDM symbols not used by any PRACH occasion for the current configuration (corresponding to an empty space in time in the resource grid plot).

Check the information related to the OFDM symbols against the `PRACHDuration`, `SymbolLocation`, and `NumTimeOccasions` properties. These properties show that:

- Each PRACH occasion lasts 4 OFDM symbols
- The current PRACH occasion starts at OFDM symbol 8
- 3 PRACH occasions are possible in time

```
hPRACHInfoDisplay(carrier,prach>windowing);
```

```
Information associated with PRACH:
  SubcarrierSpacing:    15 kHz
  Number of subcarriers: 624
```

```
Information associated with PRACH OFDM modulation:
  Nfft:                1024
  Windowing:           72
  Offset:              0 samples
```

```
Symbol   TCP   TSEQ   GP
-----
```

0*	296*	1024*	0*
1*	0*	1024*	0*
2*	0*	1024*	0*
3*	0*	1024*	0*
4*	296*	1024*	0*
5*	0*	1024*	0*
6*	0*	1024*	0*
7*	0*	1024*	0*
8	180	1024	0
9	0	1024	0
10	0	1024	0
11	0	1024	108
<12>	< 0>	<1024>	< 0>
<13>	< 0>	<1024>	< 0>

* : OFDM symbols for unused PRACH time occasions
 <#> : OFDM symbols not used by any PRACH time occasion
 for the current configuration

Total samples: 15360
 Sample rate: 15.360 MHz
 Duration: 1.000 ms
 Total number of subframes: 1

Summary and Further Exploration

This example shows how to configure the PRACH, set the configuration index based on the selected format, and determine whether a PRACH preamble is active in the current time resources. This example guides you through PRACH resource grid and time-domain waveform generation. Plotting the time-domain structure of the PRACH preamble displays all the available PRACH occasions for the selected configuration within one subframe. Plotting the resource grid displays all the available PRACH occasions for the selected configuration in both the time and frequency domain.

This example shows how to generate a waveform for a single PRACH preamble. For an example that generates a waveform for multiple PRACH preambles, see “5G NR PRACH Waveform Generation” on page 2-105.

Appendix

This example uses these helper functions:

- hPRACHInfoDisplay
- hPRACHPreamblePlot
- hPRACHResourceGridPlot

Selected Bibliography

- 1 3GPP TS 38.211. "NR; Physical channels and modulation." *3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Radio Access Network.*

- 2 3GPP TS 38.331. "NR; Radio Resource Control (RRC); Protocol specification." *3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Radio Access Network.*

See Also

Functions

nrPRACH | nrPRACHGrid | nrPRACHIndices

Objects

nrPRACHConfig

Related Examples

- "5G NR PRACH Waveform Generation" on page 2-105
- "5G NR PRACH Detection Test" on page 2-109

5G NR PRACH Waveform Generation

This example implements a 5G NR PRACH waveform generator using 5G Toolbox™. The example shows how to parameterize and generate a 5G New Radio (NR) physical random access channel (PRACH) waveform, as defined in TS 38.211 [1]. The example demonstrates the parameterization and generation of one PRACH configuration in a single carrier, and displays the positions of the PRACH preambles in the resource grid. You can define the length of the waveform, in terms of subframes, and set the pattern of the active PRACH preambles in the generated waveform.

Waveform and Carrier Configuration

Configure one carrier and set the length of the generated waveform in terms of 1 ms subframes. Visualize the generated resource grid by setting the `DisplayGrids` field to 1.

Use the `waveconfig` structure to store configuration parameters needed for the PRACH waveform generation. The `waveconfig` structure contains these fields:

- `NumSubframes`: Number of 1 ms subframes in generated waveform.
- `DisplayGrids`: If set to 1, the example displays the resource grid.
- `Windowing`: Number of time-domain samples over which to apply windowing and overlapping of OFDM symbols. For more information, see `nrPRACHOFDMModulate`.
- `Carriers`: Carrier-specific configuration object, as described in `nrCarrierConfig`.
- `PRACH`: Structure containing the PRACH-related configuration, as described in detail in the PRACH Configuration section.

```
waveconfig = [];
waveconfig.NumSubframes = 10; % Number of 1 ms subframes in generated waveform
waveconfig.DisplayGrids = 1; % Display the resource grid
waveconfig.Windowing = []; % Use the default windowing

% Define a carrier configuration object
carrier = nrCarrierConfig;
carrier.SubcarrierSpacing = 15;
carrier.NSizeGrid = 52;

% Store the carrier into the waveconfig structure
waveconfig.Carriers = carrier;
```

PRACH Configuration

Set the parameters for the PRACH, taking into account that the numerology of the PRACH can be different from that of the carrier. This example sets the PRACH configuration corresponding to a PRACH short preamble format B2 with 15 kHz subcarrier spacing.

You can also set additional PRACH parameters. For more information, see `nrPRACHConfig`.

Add the field `PRACH` to the `waveconfig` structure to store the PRACH configuration and related parameters. The field `PRACH` is a structure containing these fields:

- `Config`: PRACH configuration object
- `AllocatedPreambles`: Index (0-based) of the allocated PRACH preambles to transmit. This field considers only the active PRACH preambles. Set this value to 'all' to include all the active PRACH preambles in the waveform.

- Power: PRACH power scaling in dB. This parameter represents β_{PRACH} (in dB) in TS 38.211 Section 6.3.3.2.

```

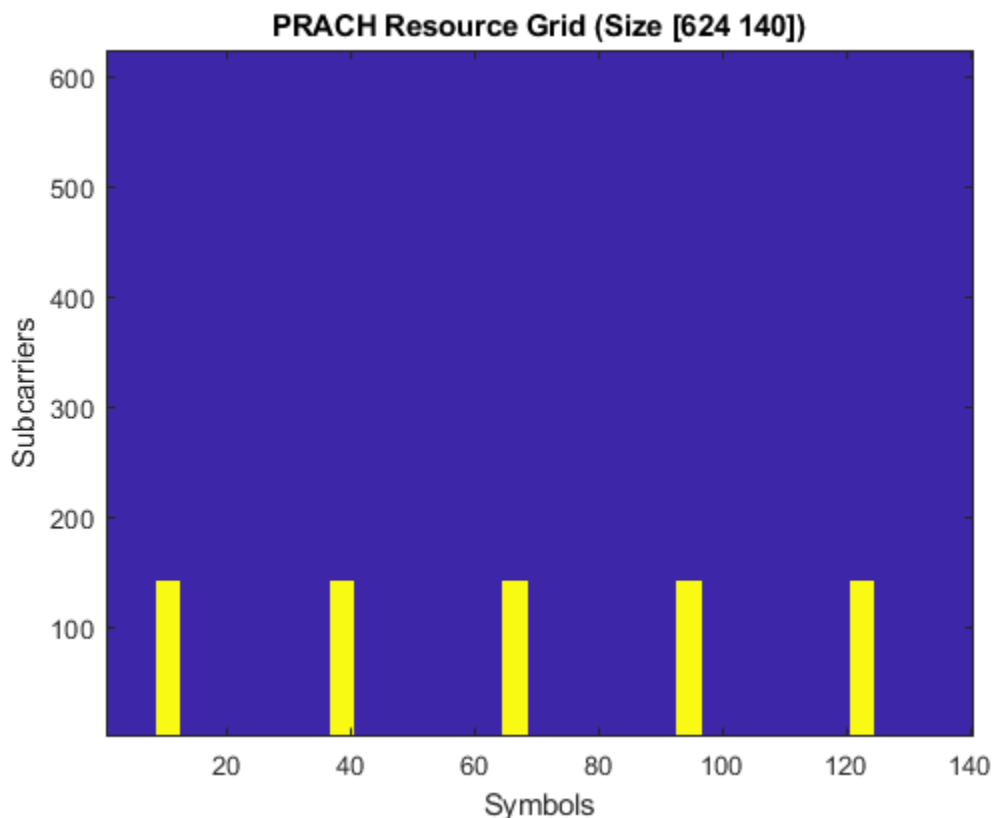
% PRACH configuration
prach = nrPRACHConfig;
prach.FrequencyRange = 'FR1'; % Frequency range ('FR1', 'FR2')
prach.DuplexMode = 'FDD'; % Duplex mode ('FDD', 'TDD', 'SUL')
prach.ConfigurationIndex = 145; % Configuration index (0...255)
prach.SubcarrierSpacing = 15; % Subcarrier spacing (1.25, 5, 15, 30, 60, 120)
prach.FrequencyIndex = 0; % Index of the PRACH transmission occasions in frequency domain
prach.TimeIndex = 2; % Index of the PRACH transmission occasions in time domain (0...6)
prach.ActivePRACHSlot = 0; % Active PRACH slot number within a subframe or a 60 kHz slot (0...1)

% Store the PRACH configuration and additional parameters in the
% waveconfig structure
waveconfig.PRACH.Config = prach;
waveconfig.PRACH.AllocatedPreambles = 'all'; % Index of the allocated PRACH preambles
waveconfig.PRACH.Power = 0; % PRACH power scaling in dB
    
```

Waveform Generation

Generate the PRACH complex baseband waveform by using the parameters stored in the waveconfig structure.

```
[waveform,gridset,winfo] = hNRPRACHWaveformGenerator(waveconfig);
```



When `waveconfig.DisplayGrids` is set to 1, the waveform generator also plots the PRACH resource grid, in PRACH numerology. For more information on the number of OFDM symbols in the resource grid, see 5G NR PRACH Configuration.

The waveform generator function returns the time domain waveform, and two structures: `gridset` and `winfo`.

The structure `winfo` contains these fields:

- `NPRACHSlot`: PRACH slot numbers of each allocated PRACH preamble
- `PRACHSymbols`: PRACH symbols corresponding to each allocated PRACH slot
- `PRACHSymbolsInfo`: Additional information associated with PRACH symbols
- `PRACHIndices`: PRACH indices corresponding to each allocated PRACH slot
- `PRACHIndicesInfo`: Additional information associated with PRACH indices

The structure `gridset` contains these fields:

- `ResourceGrid`: Resource grid corresponding to this carrier
- `Info`: Structure with information corresponding to the PRACH OFDM modulation. If the PRACH is configured for FR2 or the PRACH slot for the current configuration spans more than one subframe, some of the OFDM-related information may be different between PRACH slots. In this case, the info structure is an array of the same length as the number of PRACH slots in the waveform.

```
disp('Information associated with PRACH OFDM modulation for the first PRACH slot:')
disp(gridset.Info(1))
```

```
Information associated with PRACH OFDM modulation for the first PRACH slot:
      Nfft: 1024
      SampleRate: 15360000
      CyclicPrefixLengths: [188 0 0 0 188 0 0 0 180 0 0 0 0 0]
      GuardLengths: [0 0 0 108 0 0 0 108 0 0 0 108 0 144]
      SymbolLengths: [1x14 double]
      OffsetLength: 0
      Windowing: 72
```

Summary and Further Exploration

This example shows how to generate a time-domain waveform for a single PRACH configuration on a single carrier. You can set the length of the generated waveform in terms of number of subframes. You can also set the pattern of PRACH preambles in the generated waveform. The example also shows the OFDM-related information for the PRACH.

To generate a waveform containing multiple PRACH configurations in the same carrier, run this example for several PRACH configurations and add the generated waveforms together.

For more information about the PRACH configuration and the PRACH resource grid, see “5G NR PRACH Configuration” on page 2-92.

Appendix

This example uses these helper functions:

- hNRPRACHWaveformGenerator.m

Selected Bibliography

- 1 3GPP TS 38.211. "NR; Physical channels and modulation." *3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Radio Access Network.*

See Also

Functions

nrPRACH | nrPRACHGrid | nrPRACHIndices

Objects

nrPRACHConfig

Related Examples

- "5G NR PRACH Configuration" on page 2-92
- "5G NR PRACH Detection Test" on page 2-109

5G NR PRACH Detection Test

This example shows how to model the physical random access channel (PRACH) missed detection conformance test, as defined in TS 38.141-1 [1]. You can learn how to measure the probability of correct detection of the PRACH preamble in the presence of a preamble signal.

Introduction

The PRACH is an uplink transmission used by User Equipment (UE) to initiate synchronization with the gNodeB. TS 38.141-1 Section 8.4.1.5 defines the probability of PRACH detection to be greater than or equal to 99% at specific SNR values for a set of PRACH configurations and propagation conditions. There are several detection error cases:

- Detecting an incorrect preamble
- Not detecting a preamble
- Detecting the correct preamble but with the wrong timing estimation

TS 38.141-1 states that a correct detection is achieved when the estimation error of the timing offset of the strongest path is less than the time error tolerance given in Table 8.4.1.1-1. For channel propagation conditions TDLC300-100 and PRACH preamble format 0, the time error tolerance is 2.55 microseconds.

In this example, a PRACH waveform is configured and passed through an appropriate channel. At the receiver side, the example performs PRACH detection and calculates the PRACH detection probability. The example considers the parameters defined in TS 38.141-1 Table 8.4.1.5-1 and Table A.6-1. These are: normal mode (i.e., unrestricted set), 2 receive antennas, TDLC300-100 channel, normal cyclic prefix, burst format 0, SNR -6.0 dB. If you change the PRACH configuration to use one of the other PRACH preamble formats listed in Table A.6-1, you need to update the values of the time error tolerance and the SNR, according to TS 38.141-1 Table 8.4.1.1-1 and Tables 8.4.1.5-1 to 8.4.1.5-3, respectively.

Simulation Configuration

The example considers 10 subframes at a number of SNRs. You should use a large number of numSubframes to produce meaningful results. You can set SNRdB as an array of values or a scalar. Table 8.4.1.5-1 in TS 38.141-1 specifies the frequency offset foffset that is modeled between transmitter and receiver.

```
numSubframes = 10;           % Number of 1 ms subframes to simulate at each SNR
SNRdB = [-21, -16, -11, -6, -1]; % SNR range in dB
foffset = 400.0;           % Frequency offset in Hz
timeErrorTolerance = 2.55; % Time error tolerance in microseconds
```

Carrier Configuration

Use the nrCarrierConfig configuration object carrier to specify the carrier settings. The example considers a carrier characterized by a subcarrier spacing of 15 kHz and a bandwidth of 5 MHz. That is, the carrier spans 25 resource blocks, according to Table 5.3.2-1 in TS 38.104 [2].

```
carrier = nrCarrierConfig;
carrier.SubcarrierSpacing = 15;
carrier.NSizeGrid = 25;
```

PRACH Configuration

Table A.6-1 in TS 38.141-1 specifies the PRACH configurations to use for the PRACH detection conformance test.

Set the PRACH configuration by using the `nrPRACHConfig` configuration object `prach`, according to Table A.6-1 and Section 8.4.1.4.2 in TS 38.141-1.

```
% Define the value of ZeroCorrelationZone using the NCS table stored in
% the |nrPRACHConfig| object
ncsTable = nrPRACHConfig.Tables.NCSFormat012;
NCS = 13;
zeroCorrelationZone = ncsTable.ZeroCorrelationZone(ncsTable.UnrestrictedSet==NCS);

% Set PRACH configuration
prach = nrPRACHConfig;
prach.FrequencyRange = 'FR1'; % Frequency range
prach.DuplexMode = 'FDD'; % Frequency Division Duplexing (FDD)
prach.ConfigurationIndex = 27; % Configuration index for format 0
prach.SubcarrierSpacing = 1.25; % Subcarrier spacing
prach.SequenceIndex = 22; % Logical sequence index
prach.PreambleIndex = 32; % Preamble index
prach.RestrictedSet = 'UnrestrictedSet'; % Normal mode
prach.ZeroCorrelationZone = zeroCorrelationZone; % Cyclic shift index
prach.FrequencyStart = 0; % Frequency location

% Compute the OFDM-related information for this PRACH configuration
windowing = [];
ofdmInfo = nrPRACHOFDMInfo(carrier,prach,'Windowing',windowing);
```

Propagation Channel Configuration

Use the `nrTDLChannel` object to configure the tapped delay line (TDL) propagation channel model `channel` as described in TS 38.141-1 Table 8.4.1.1-1.

```
channel = nrTDLChannel;
channel.DelayProfile = "TDL-C"; % Delay profile
channel.DelaySpread = 300e-9; % Delay spread in seconds
channel.MaximumDopplerShift = 100.0; % Maximum Doppler shift in Hz
channel.SampleRate = ofdmInfo.SampleRate; % Input signal sample rate in Hz
channel.MIMOCorrelation = "Low"; % MIMO correlation
channel.TransmissionDirection = "Uplink"; % Uplink transmission
channel.NumTransmitAntennas = 1; % Number of transmit antennas
channel.NumReceiveAntennas = 2; % Number of receive antennas
channel.NormalizePathGains = true; % Normalize delay profile power
channel.Seed = 42; % Channel seed. Change this for different channel realizations
channel.NormalizeChannelOutputs = true; % Normalize for receive antennas
```

Loop for SNR Values

Use a loop to run the simulation for the set of SNR points given by the vector `SNRdB`. The SNR vector configured here is a range of SNR points including a point at -6.0 dB, the SNR at which the test requirement for PRACH detection rate (99%) is to be achieved for preamble format 0, as discussed in Table 8.4.1.5-1 in TS 38.141-1.

`hNRPRACHWaveformGenerator` generates an output signal normalized to the same transmit power as for an uplink data transmission within the 5G Toolbox™. Therefore, the same normalization must

take place on the noise added to the PRACH. The noise added before OFDM demodulation will be amplified by the IFFT by a factor equal to the square root of the size of the IFFT (N_{FFT}). To ensure that the power of the noise added is normalized after demodulation, and thus to achieve the desired SNR, the desired noise power is divided by N_{FFT} . In addition, as real and imaginary parts of the noise are created separately before being combined into complex additive white Gaussian noise, the noise amplitude is scaled by $1/\sqrt{2}$ so the generated noise power is 1.

At each SNR test point, calculate the probability detection on a subframe by subframe basis using these steps:

- *PRACH Transmission:* Use `hNRPRACHWaveformGenerator` to generate a PRACH waveform. Send the PRACH preambles with the timing offsets defined in TS 38.141-1 Figure 8.4.1.4.2-2. Set a timing offset base value to 50% of the number of cyclic shifts for PRACH generation. This offset is increased for each preamble, adding a step value of 0.1 microseconds, until the end of the tested range, which is 0.9 microseconds for PRACH preamble format 0. This pattern then repeats.
- *Noisy Channel Modeling:* Pass the waveform through a TDL channel and add additive white Gaussian noise. Add additional samples to the end of the waveform to cover the range of delays expected from the channel modeling (a combination of implementation delay and channel delay spread). This implementation delay is then removed to ensure the implementation delay is interpreted as an actual timing offset in the preamble detector.
- *Application of Frequency Offset:* Apply the frequency offset to the received waveform as defined by the specification.
- *PRACH Detection:* Perform PRACH detection using `hPRACHDetect` for all cell preamble indices (0-63). Use the detected PRACH index and offset returned by `hPRACHDetect` to determine where a detection was successful according to the constraints discussed in the Introduction section.

```
% Initialize variables storing probability of detection at each SNR
pDetection = zeros(size(SNRdB));
```

```
% Get the maximum number of delayed samples by a channel multipath
% component. This is calculated from the channel path with the largest
% delay and the implementation delay of the channel filter. The example
% requires this to flush the channel filter to obtain the received signal.
channelInfo = info(channel);
maxChDelay = ceil(max(channelInfo.PathDelays*channel.SampleRate)) + channelInfo.ChannelFilterDel;
```

```
% Total number of PRACH slots in the simulation period
numPRACHSlots = floor(numSubframes / prach.SubframesPerPRACHSlot);
```

```
% Store the configuration parameters needed to generate the PRACH waveform
waveconfig.NumSubframes = prach.SubframesPerPRACHSlot;
waveconfig.Windowing = windowing;
waveconfig.Carriers = carrier;
waveconfig.PRACH.Config = prach;
```

```
% The temporary variables 'prach_init', 'waveconfig_init', 'ofdmInfo_init',
% and 'channelInfo_init' are used to create the temporary variables
% 'prach', 'waveconfig', 'ofdmInfo', and 'channelInfo' within the SNR loop
% to create independent instances in case of parallel simulation
prach_init = prach;
waveconfig_init = waveconfig;
ofdmInfo_init = ofdmInfo;
channelInfo_init = channelInfo;
```

```

for snrIdx = 1:numel(SNRdB) % comment out for parallel computing
% parfor snrIdx = 1:numel(SNRdB) % uncomment for parallel computing
% To reduce the total simulation time, you can execute this loop in
% parallel by using the Parallel Computing Toolbox. Comment out the 'for'
% statement and uncomment the 'parfor' statement. If the Parallel Computing
% Toolbox(TM) is not installed, 'parfor' defaults to normal 'for' statement

    % Set the random number generator settings to default values
    rng('default');

    % Initialize variables for this SNR point, required for initialization
    % of variables when using the Parallel Computing Toolbox
    prach = prach_init;
    waveconfig = waveconfig_init;
    ofdmInfo = ofdmInfo_init;
    channelInfo = channelInfo_init;

    % Reset the channel so that each SNR point will experience the same
    % channel realization
    reset(channel);

    % Normalize noise power to take account of sampling rate, which is a
    % function of the IFFT size used in OFDM modulation. The SNR is defined
    % per resource element for each receive antenna.
    SNR = 10^(SNRdB(snrIdx)/20);
    N0 = 1/(sqrt(2.0*channel.NumReceiveAntennas*double(ofdmInfo.Nfft))*SNR);

    % Detected preamble count
    detectedCount = 0;

    % Loop for each PRACH slot
    numActivePRACHSlots = 0;
    for nSlot = 0:numPRACHSlots-1

        prach.NPRACHSlot = nSlot;

        % Generate PRACH waveform for the current slot
        waveconfig.PRACH.Config.NPRACHSlot = nSlot;
        [waveform,~,winfo] = hNRPRACHWaveformGenerator(waveconfig);

        % Skip this slot if the PRACH is inactive
        if (isempty(winfo.WaveformResources.PRACH))
            continue;
        end

        numActivePRACHSlots = numActivePRACHSlots + 1;

        % Set PRACH timing offset in microseconds as per TS 38.141-1 Figure 8.4.1.4.2-2
        baseOffset = ((winfo.WaveformResources.PRACH.Resources.PRACHSymbolsInfo.NumCyclicShifts/2);
        timingOffset = baseOffset + mod(nSlot,10)/10; % (microseconds)
        sampleDelay = fix(timingOffset / 1e6 * ofdmInfo.SampleRate);

        % Generate transmit waveform
        txwave = [zeros(sampleDelay,1); waveform(1:(end-sampleDelay))];

        % Pass data through channel model. Append zeros at the end of the
        % transmitted waveform to flush channel content. These zeros take
        % into account any delay introduced in the channel. This is a mix

```

```

% of multipath delay and implementation delay. This value may
% change depending on the sampling rate, delay profile and delay
% spread
rxwave = channel([txwave; zeros(maxChDelay, size(txwave,2))]);

% Add noise
noise = N0*complex(randn(size(rxwave)), randn(size(rxwave)));
rxwave = rxwave + noise;

% Remove the implementation delay of the channel modeling
rxwave = rxwave((channelInfo.ChannelFilterDelay + 1):end, :);

% Apply frequency offset
t = ((0:size(rxwave, 1)-1)/channel.SampleRate).';
rxwave = rxwave .* repmat(exp(1i*2*pi*foffset*t), 1, size(rxwave, 2));

% PRACH detection for all cell preamble indices
[detected, offsets] = hPRACHDetect(carrier, prach, rxwave, (0:63).');

% Test for preamble detection
if (length(detected)==1)

    % Test for correct preamble detection
    if (detected==prach.PreambleIndex)

        % Calculate timing estimation error
        trueOffset = timingOffset/1e6; % (s)
        measuredOffset = offsets(1)/channel.SampleRate;
        timingerror = abs(measuredOffset-trueOffset);

        % Test for acceptable timing error
        if (timingerror<=timeErrorTolerance/1e6)
            detectedCount = detectedCount + 1; % Detected preamble
        else
            disp('Timing error');
        end
    else
        disp('Detected incorrect preamble');
    end
else
    disp('Detected multiple or zero preambles');
end

end % of nSlot loop

% Compute final detection probability for this SNR
pDetection(snrIdx) = detectedCount/numActivePRACHSlots;

end % of SNR loop

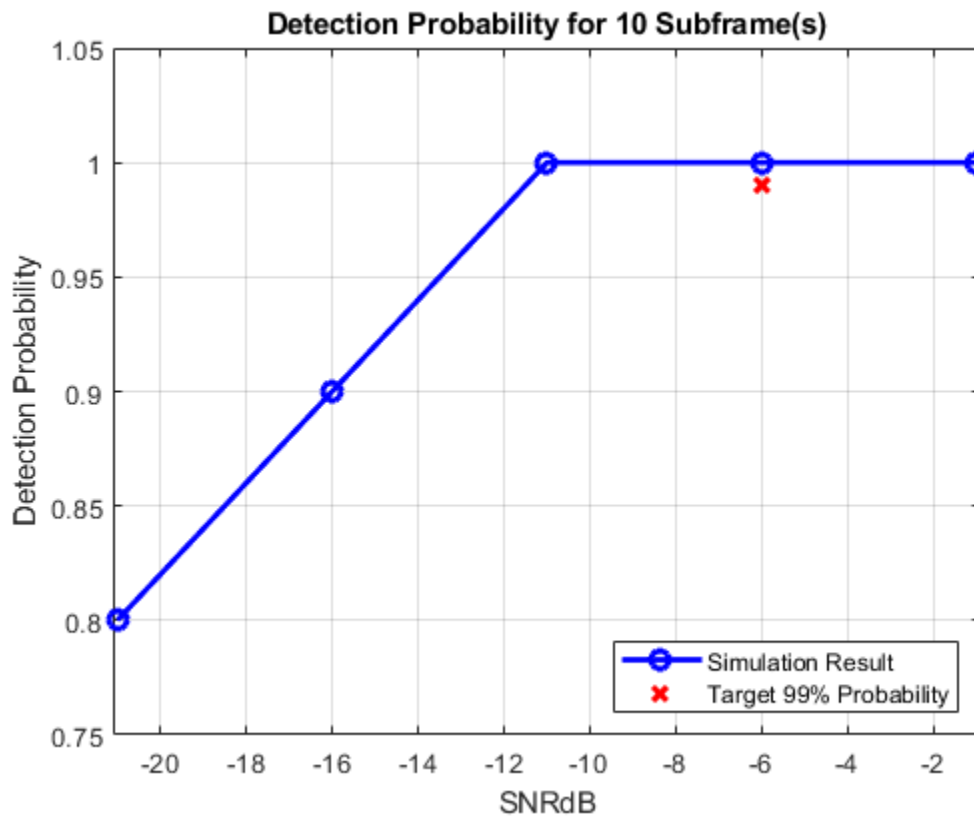
Detected multiple or zero preambles
Detected multiple or zero preambles
Detected multiple or zero preambles

```

Results

At the end of the SNR loop, the example plots the calculated detection probabilities for each SNR value against the target probability.

```
hPRACHDetectionResults(SNRdB, numSubframes, pDetection);
```



Appendix

This example uses these helper functions:

- hNRPRACHWaveformGenerator.m
- hPRACHDetect.m
- hPRACHDetectionResults.m

References

- 1 3GPP TS 38.141-1. "NR; Base Station (BS) conformance testing. Part 1: Conducted conformance testing." *3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Radio Access Network*.
- 2 3GPP TS 38.104. "NR; Base Station (BS) radio transmission and reception." *3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Radio Access Network*.

See Also

Functions

nrPRACH | nrPRACHGrid | nrPRACHIndices

Objects

nrPRACHConfig

Related Examples

- “5G NR PRACH Configuration” on page 2-92
- “5G NR PRACH Waveform Generation” on page 2-105

NR UCI Multiplexing on PUSCH

This example shows the different processing steps involved in the data and control multiplexing to form a codeword associated with a physical uplink shared channel (PUSCH) using 5G Toolbox™ features.

Introduction

Uplink control information (UCI) messages consist of a hybrid automatic repeat request acknowledgment (HARQ-ACK), channel state information (CSI), and a scheduling request (SR). These UCI messages are encoded and transmitted through the physical uplink control channel (PUCCH) or are multiplexed on the PUSCH. The CSI reporting configuration can be aperiodic (using a PUSCH), periodic (using a PUCCH), or semi-persistent (using a PUCCH or DCI-activated PUSCH). A CSI report comprises of two parts. CSI part 1 has a fixed payload size and is used to identify the number of information bits in CSI part 2. CSI part 1 must be transmitted completely before the transmission of CSI part 2. The HARQ-ACK (if any) and CSI (if any) is encoded and multiplexed with or without encoded UL-SCH data, and then transmitted on a PUSCH.

Data and Control Multiplexing

The encoded data, encoded HARQ-ACK, encoded CSI part 1, and encoded CSI part 2 are multiplexed to form a codeword with the steps outlined in TS 38.212 Section 6.2.7 [1] on page 2-0 .

The UCI information is transmitted in only the OFDM symbols that are unused for demodulation reference signal (DM-RS) transmission. In any OFDM symbol used for UCI transmission for a UCI type, the mapping of that UCI type depends on the number of resource elements (REs) available for UCI transmission and the remaining REs required for that UCI type. If the number of remaining REs required for that UCI type in an OFDM symbol is greater than half of the available REs for the UCI transmission, the mapping of the UCI type is contiguous. Otherwise, the mapping is uniformly distributed across available REs in an OFDM symbol to achieve the diversity gain. The number of coded bits that are occupied in an RE for UCI or data transmission, is equal to the product of the modulation order and the number of layers.

The coded HARQ-ACK bits are placed from the OFDM symbol, after the first consecutive DM-RS OFDM symbols. The coded CSI part 1 or part 2 bits are placed at the starting OFDM symbol that is unused for DM-RS in the shared channel symbol allocation. The multiplexing operation depends on the number of HARQ-ACK bits. When the number of HARQ-ACK bits is less than or equal to 2, the coded HARQ-ACK bits are punctured. Otherwise, the coded HARQ-ACK bits are rate-matched.

Multiplexing involves these processing steps.

- Step 1: When the number of HARQ-ACK bits is less than or equal to 2, find the reserved HARQ-ACK locations.
- Step 2: When the number of HARQ-ACK bits is greater than 2, map the coded HARQ-ACK bits (if any).
- Step 3: Map the coded CSI part 1 and CSI part 2 bits (if any).
- Step 4: Map the coded UL-SCH bits (if any).
- Step 5: When the number of HARQ-ACK bits is less than or equal to 2, map the coded HARQ-ACK bits (if any).
- Step 6: Form the codeword.

This example shows steps 1 to 6 for two separate cases for the PUSCH, with one resource block occupying all of the OFDM symbols in a slot, a single layer, a $\pi/2$ -BPSK modulation scheme, and DM-

RS symbols occupying OFDM symbols 2, 7, and 11 (0-based). The REs other than DM-RS REs in the DM-RS OFDM symbols are used for data transmission. For the first case, the number of HARQ-ACK bits is less than or equal to 2. For the second case, the number of HARQ-ACK bits is greater than 2. This figure shows the grid with only the DM-RS symbol locations. This grid is populated with the coded types UL-SCH, HARQ-ACK, CSI part 1, and CSI part 2, according to the multiplexing operation for each case. The transport block size is set to 24, and the target code rate is set to 314/1024. The number of payload bits of each CSI part is set to 10, and all of the associated beta factors are set to 1.

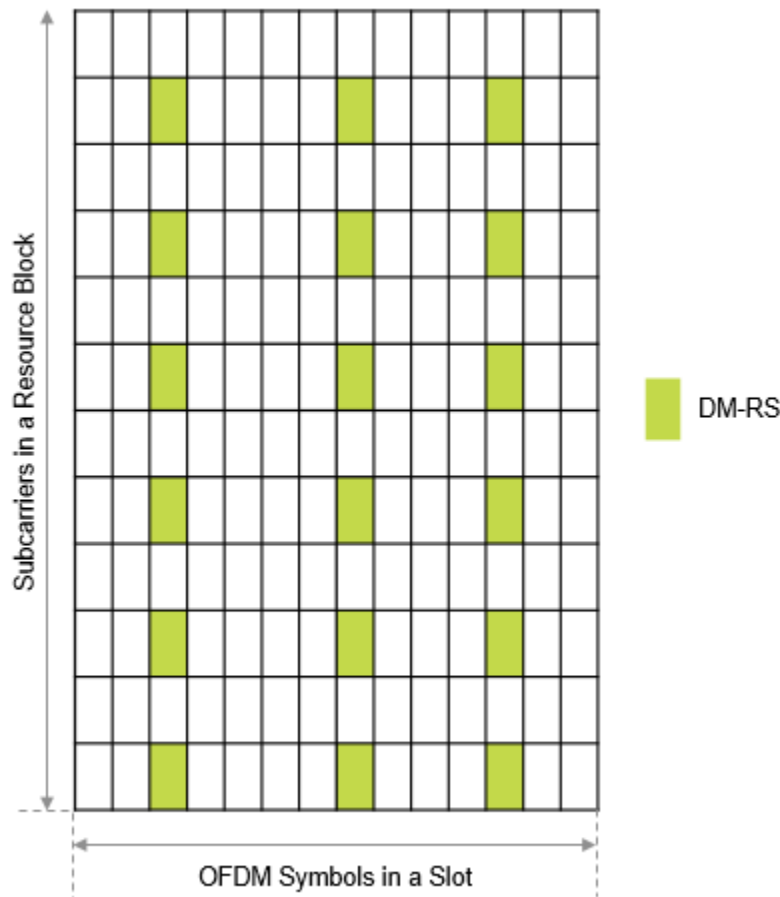


Figure 1: DM-RS Locations

Configure Carrier Resource Grid and PUSCH

Configure an `nrCarrierConfig` object to create a 15 kHz carrier resource grid with one resource block. Configure an `nrPUSCHConfig` object to get the respective DM-RS locations as shown in the previous figure. Also, configure the UCI parameters (`BetaOffsetACK`, `BetaOffsetCSI1`, `BetaOffsetCSI2`, and `UCIScaling`). The property `BetaOffsetACK` determines the number of resources for multiplexing HARQ-ACK in a PUSCH. The properties `BetaOffsetCSI1` and `BetaOffsetCSI2` determine the number of resources for multiplexing CSI reports in a PUSCH. The property `UCIScaling` limits the number of REs assigned to the UCI on PUSCH.

```
% Set the carrier configuration
carrier = nrCarrierConfig;
carrier.SubcarrierSpacing = 15; % Subcarrier spacing in kHz (15, 30, 60, 120, 240)
```

```

carrier.CyclicPrefix = 'normal'; % Cyclic prefix ('normal' or 'extended')
carrier.NSizeGrid = 1;           % Number of resource blocks in carrier resource grid (1...275)

% Set the PUSCH configuration
pusch = nrPUSCHConfig;
pusch.Modulation = 'pi/2-BPSK'; % Modulation scheme ('pi/2-BPSK', 'QPSK', '16QAM', '64QAM', ...)
pusch.NumLayers = 1;           % Number of layers (1, 2, 3, or 4)
pusch.SymbolAllocation = [0 14]; % OFDM symbol allocation [S L]
pusch.PRBSets = 0;             % Vector of PRB allocated with values in the range [0, 274]
pusch.MappingType = 'A';      % Mapping type ('A' or 'B')
pusch.FrequencyHopping = 'neither'; % Frequency hopping configuration ('neither', 'interSlot', ...)
pusch.SecondHopStartPRB = 0;   % Second hop start PRB in the range [0, 274], ensure the comb
pusch.TransformPrecoding = 0; % Transform precoding (0 or 1)

% Set the UCI parameters
pusch.BetaOffsetACK = 1; % Beta offset for HARQ-ACK
pusch.BetaOffsetCSI1 = 1; % Beta offset for CSI part 1
pusch.BetaOffsetCSI2 = 1; % Beta offset for CSI part 2
pusch.UCIScaling = 1; % UCI scaling factor

% Set the DM-RS parameters
pusch.DMRS.DMRSConfigurationType = 1; % DM-RS configuration type (1 or 2)
pusch.DMRS.DMRSTypeAPosition = 2; % DM-RS type A position (2 or 3)
pusch.DMRS.DMRSLength = 1; % DM-RS length (1 or 2)
pusch.DMRS.DMRSAdditionalPosition = 2; % Number of DM-RS additional positions (0, 1, 2, or 3)
pusch.DMRS.NumCDMGroupsWithoutData = 1; % Number of CDM groups without data (1, 2, or 3)

% Set the PT-RS parameters
pusch.EnablePTRS = 0; % Disable or Enable PT-RS (0 or 1)
pusch.PTRS.FrequencyDensity = 2; % PT-RS frequency density (2 or 4)
pusch.PTRS.TimeDensity = 1; % PT-RS time density (1, 2, or 4)
pusch.PTRS.REOffset = '00'; % PT-RS resource element offset ('00', '01', '10', or '11')
pusch.PTRS.NumPTRSSamples = 2; % Number of PT-RS samples (2 or 4)
pusch.PTRS.NumPTRSGroups = 2; % Number of PT-RS groups (2, 4, or 8)

% Set the target code rate, transport block size, payload lengths of CSI part 1 and CSI part 2
tcr = 314/1024; % Target code rate in the range (0, 1)
tbs = 24; % Transport block size
ocsi1 = 10; % Number of CSI part 1 bits
ocsi2 = 10; % Number of CSI part 2 bits

```

Case 1: Number of HARQ-ACK Bits Less Than or Equal to 2

For illustration purposes, the number of HARQ-ACK bits is set to 1 in this example. To obtain the information about the number of coded bits of each type, use the `nrULSCHInfo` function. For the specified PUSCH configuration, target code rate, and payload values, the number of coded HARQ-ACK bits is 2, the number of coded CSI part 1 and CSI part 2 bits is 19 each, and the number of coded UL-SCH bits is 94.

Step 1: When the number of HARQ-ACK bits is less than or equal to 2, find the **reserved HARQ-ACK** locations and mark them on the grid.

The number of reserved HARQ-ACK locations is achieved by calculating the rate-matching length of the HARQ-ACK with number of HARQ-ACK bits set to 2. With the specified PUSCH configuration, target code rate, and transport block size, the number of reserved HARQ-ACK locations is 4. The HARQ-ACK is mapped to the REs in the OFDM symbol that is available after the first consecutive DM-RS OFDM symbols. This figure shows the locations of reserved HARQ-ACK.

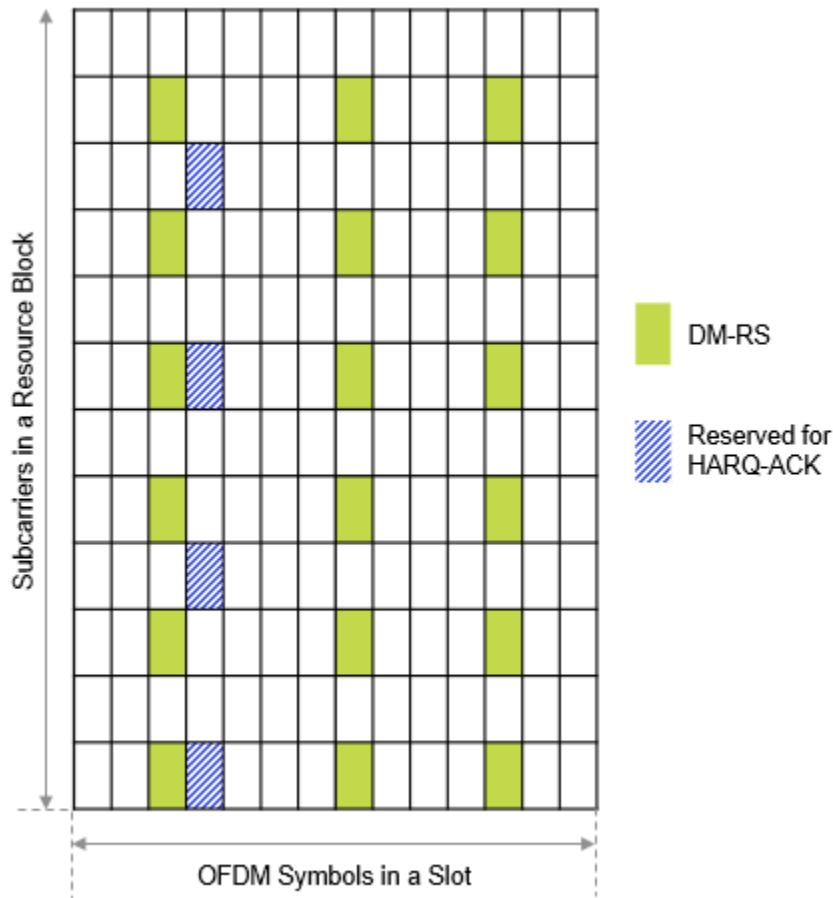


Figure 2: Reserved HARQ-ACK Locations

Step 2: When the number of HARQ-ACK bits is greater than 2, map the coded **HARQ-ACK** bits.

Because the number of HARQ-ACK bits is less than or equal to 2 in this case, skip this step.

Step 3: Map the coded **CSI part 1** and **CSI part 2** bits

The CSI mapping (CSI part 1 followed by CSI part 2) starts from the first non-DMRS OFDM symbol available in the PUSCH allocation. For the configured setup, the mapping starts from OFDM symbol 0 (0-based). The mapping locations are determined based on the number of REs available and the number of REs required for CSI part 1 transmission. CSI part 1 transmission required 19 REs. Because only 12 REs are available for transmission, every RE is occupied in this case for CSI part 1 in OFDM symbol 0. For the transmission of the remaining CSI part 1 symbols, the mapping goes to the next OFDM symbol not used for DM-RS (that is, OFDM symbol 1). In OFDM symbol 1, 12 REs are available, but CSI part 1 requires only 7 REs. Because the remaining REs required for CSI part 1 are more than half of the REs available for UCI transmission, CSI part 1 is mapped to contiguous REs. This figure shows this scenario.

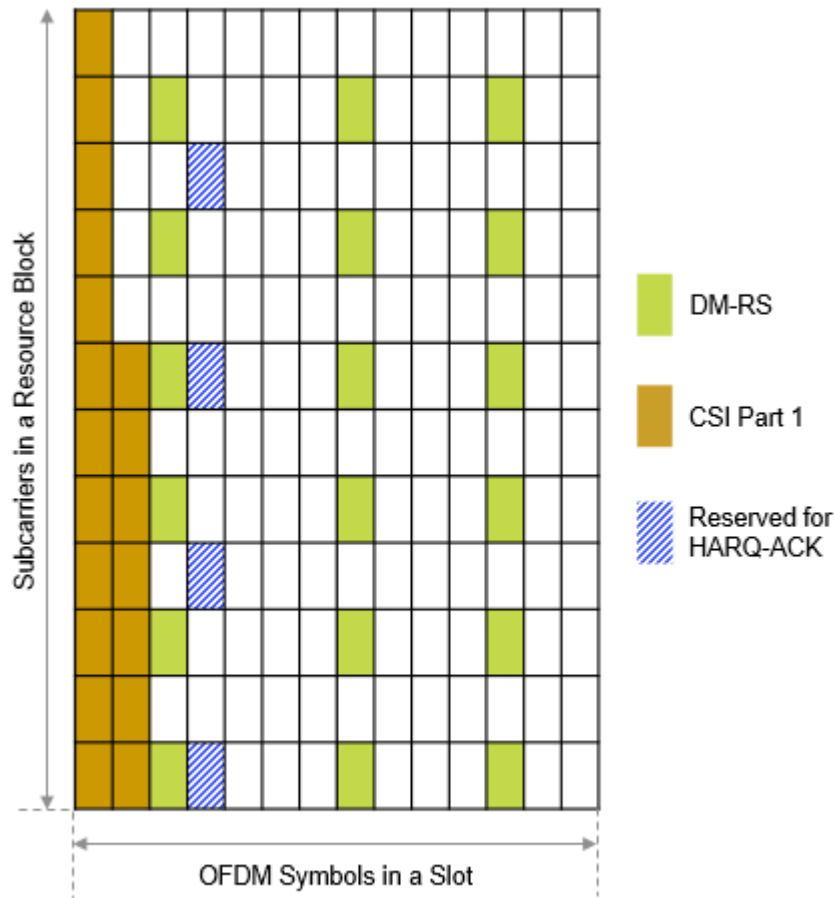


Figure 3: CSI Part 1 Locations

Once the coded CSI part 1 is completely mapped, the mapping of coded CSI part 2 starts. The mapping starts from the first non-DMRS OFDM symbol that is used for PUSCH transmission (that is, OFDM symbol 0). In OFDM symbol 0, no REs are available for UCI transmission, this OFDM symbol is skipped. As a result, mapping moves to the next OFDM symbol (that is, OFDM symbol 1). In OFDM symbol 1, 5 REs are available for UCI transmission, and 19 REs are required for CSI part 2 transmission. This scenario leads to mapping 5 REs with CSI part 2 and then continuing with the same mapping rule as in CSI part 1 for the next OFDM symbols other than DM-RS. Except the coded CSI part 1, the coded CSI part 2 and UL-SCH data can map to the reserved HARQ-ACK locations. This figure shows the mapping of CSI part 2. The reserved HARQ-ACK locations are covered by CSI part 2 in OFDM symbol 3. Also, in OFDM symbol 4, CSI part 2 is distributed because the number of REs required for the remaining CSI part 2 transmission is less than half of the REs available for the UCI transmission.

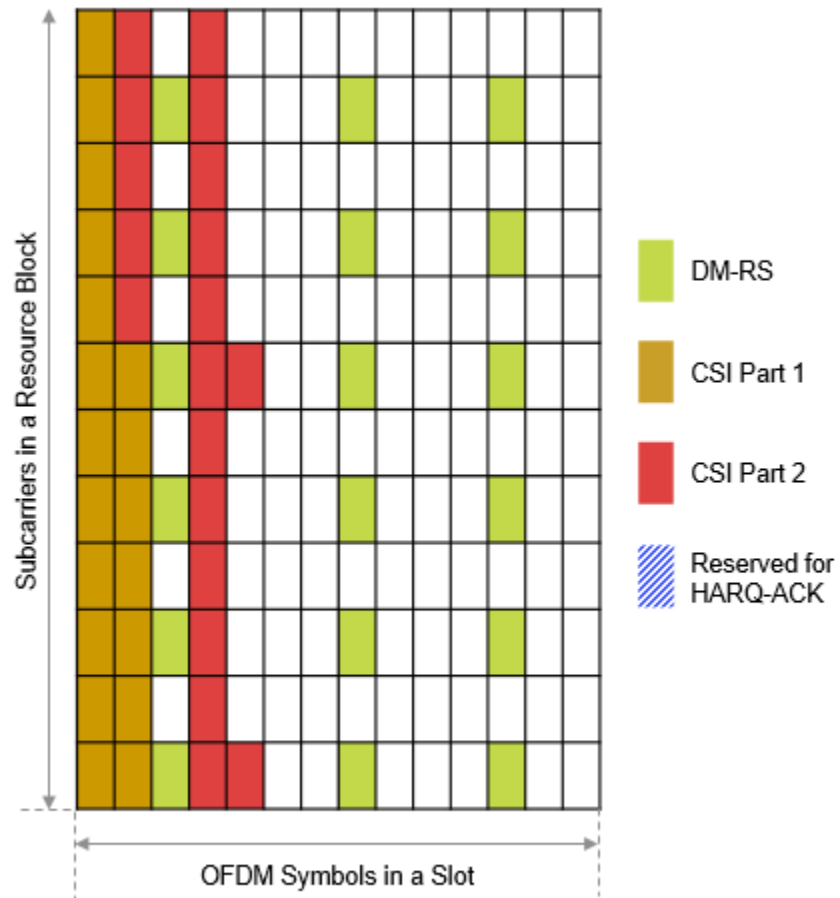


Figure 4: CSI Part 2 Locations

Step 4: Map the coded **UL-SCH** data bits.

This figure shows how the UL-SCH data is mapped to the remaining locations in the grid.

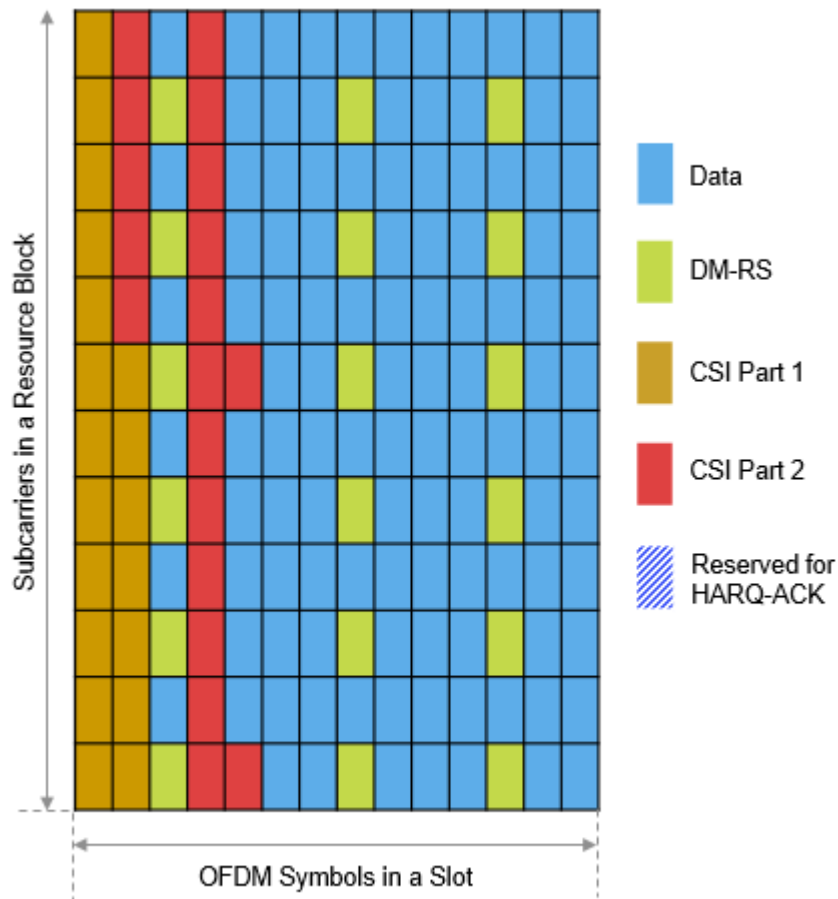


Figure 5: UL-SCH Data Locations

Step 5: When the number of HARQ-ACK bits is less than or equal to 2, map the coded **HARQ-ACK** bits.

The HARQ-ACK bits are mapped within the reserved HARQ-ACK locations in a distributed pattern. This figure indicates the HARQ-ACK mapping to the grid. The HARQ-ACK punctures the CSI part 2 that occupied the reserved HARQ-ACK locations.

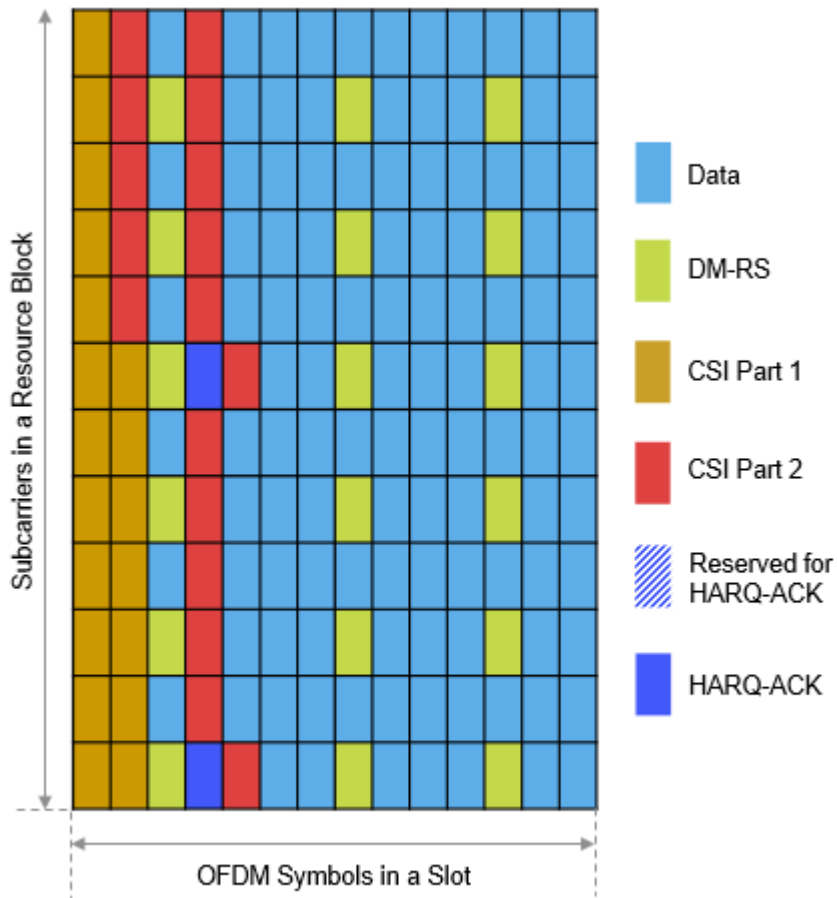


Figure 6: HARQ-ACK Locations

Step 6: Form the **codeword** by reading the bits frequency first and time next approach at each RE other than DM-RS REs.

Use the `nrULSCHMultiplex` function to get the codeword, performing the steps 1 to 6.

```
% Set the payload size of the HARQ-ACK to a value less than or equal to 2
oack = 1; % Number of HARQ-ACK bits

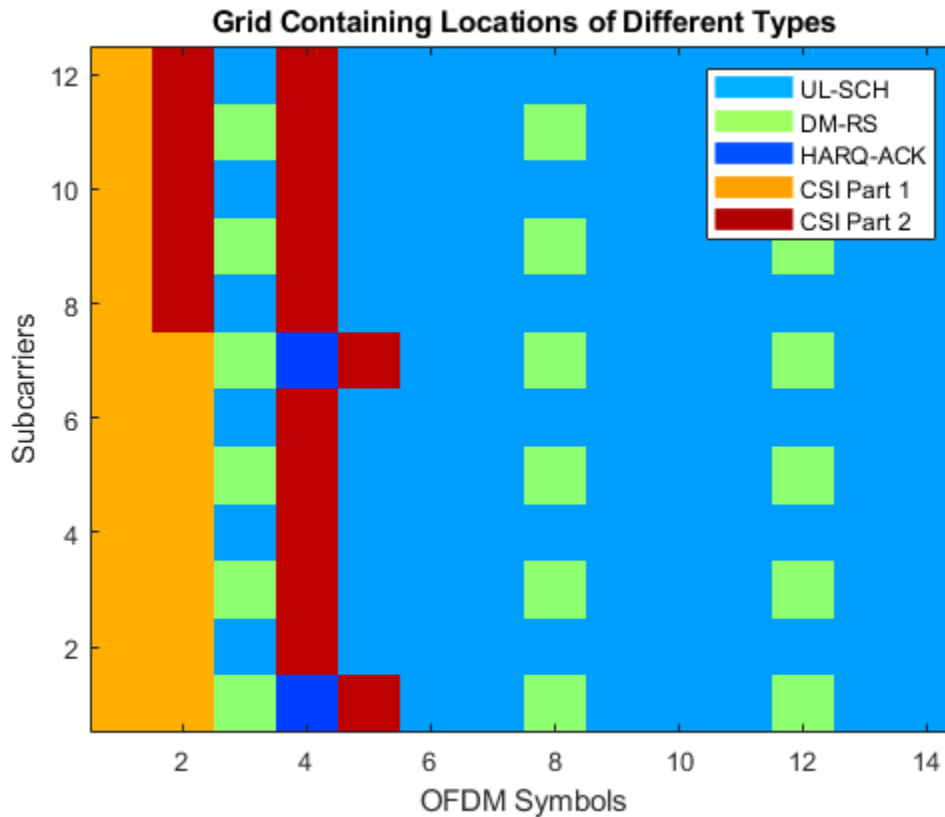
% Get the UL-SCH coding information
info = nrULSCHInfo(pusch,tcr,tbs,oack,ocsi1,ocsi2);

% Set random coded UL-SCH, HARQ-ACK, CSI part 1, and CSI part 2 bits
culsch = randi([0 1],info.GULSCH,1);
cack = randi([0 1],info.GACK,1);
ccsi1 = randi([0 1],info.GCSI1,1);
ccsi2 = randi([0 1],info.GCSI2,1);

% Get the codeword and locations of each type (data and UCI)
[cw,indInfo] = nrULSCHMultiplex(pusch,tcr,tbs,culsch,cack,ccsi1,ccsi2);

% Create and plot the output grid for the first layer with predefined symbol
```

```
% values for the different types
createAndPlotGrid(carrier,pusch,cw,indInfo)
```



Case 2: Number of HARQ-ACK Bits Greater Than 2

For the same configuration setup mentioned in case 1, change the number of HARQ-ACK bits from 1 to 3. For this setup, the number of coded HARQ-ACK bits is 6, the number of coded CSI part 1 and part 2 bits is 19 each, and the number of coded UL-SCH bits is 106.

Step 1: When the number of HARQ-ACK bits is less than or equal to 2, find the **reserved HARQ-ACK** locations and mark them on the grid.

Because the number of HARQ-ACK bits is greater than 2 in this case, skip this step.

Step 2: Map the coded **HARQ-ACK** bits.

The HARQ-ACK is mapped to the REs in the OFDM symbol that is available after the first consecutive DM-RS OFDM symbols. The number of REs required for HARQ-ACK is 6. Because this value is not greater than half of the number of REs available for UCI transmission, the mapping of the HARQ-ACK is distributed as shown in this figure.

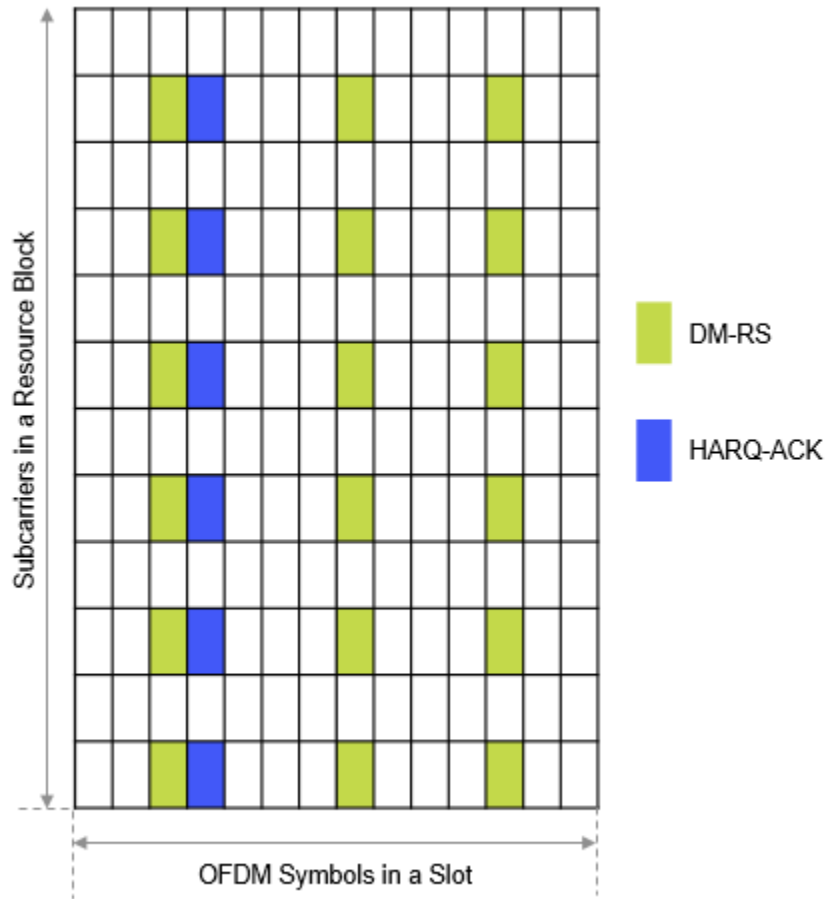


Figure 7: HARQ-ACK Locations

Step 3: Map the coded **CSI part 1** and coded **CSI part 2** bits similar to case 1.

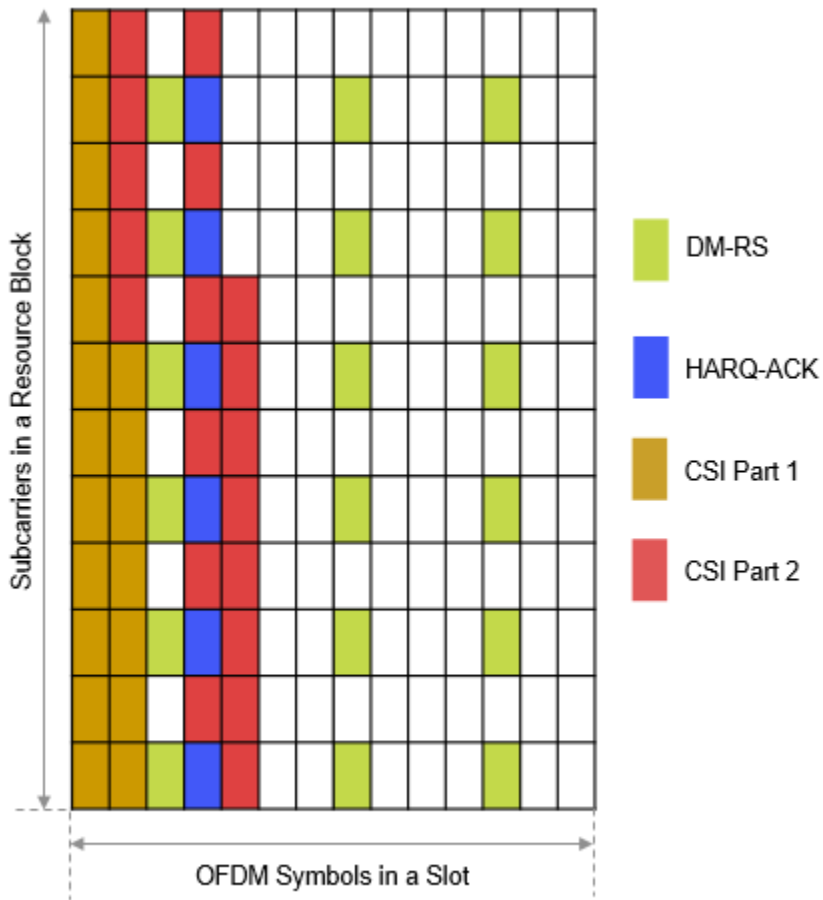


Figure 8: CSI Part 1 and CSI Part 2 Locations

Step 4: Map the coded **UL-SCH** data bits similar to case 1.

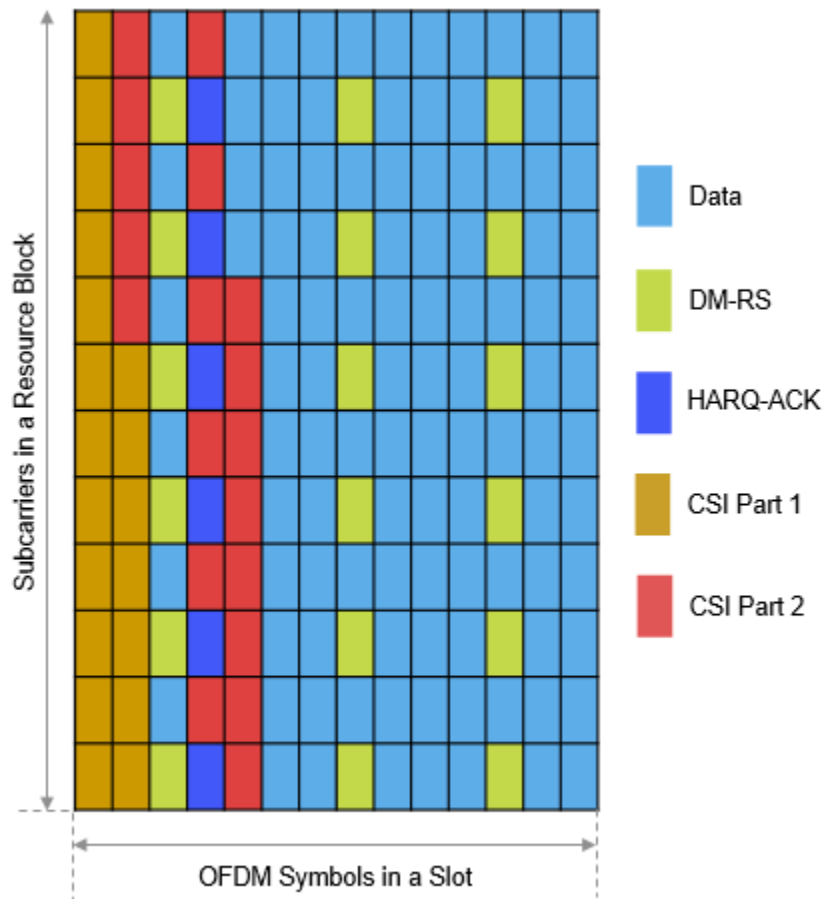


Figure 9: UL-SCH Locations

Step 5: When the number of HARQ-ACK bits is less than or equal to 2, map the coded **HARQ-ACK** bits.

Because the number of HARQ-ACK bits is greater than 2 in this case, skip this step.

Step 6: Form the **codeword**.

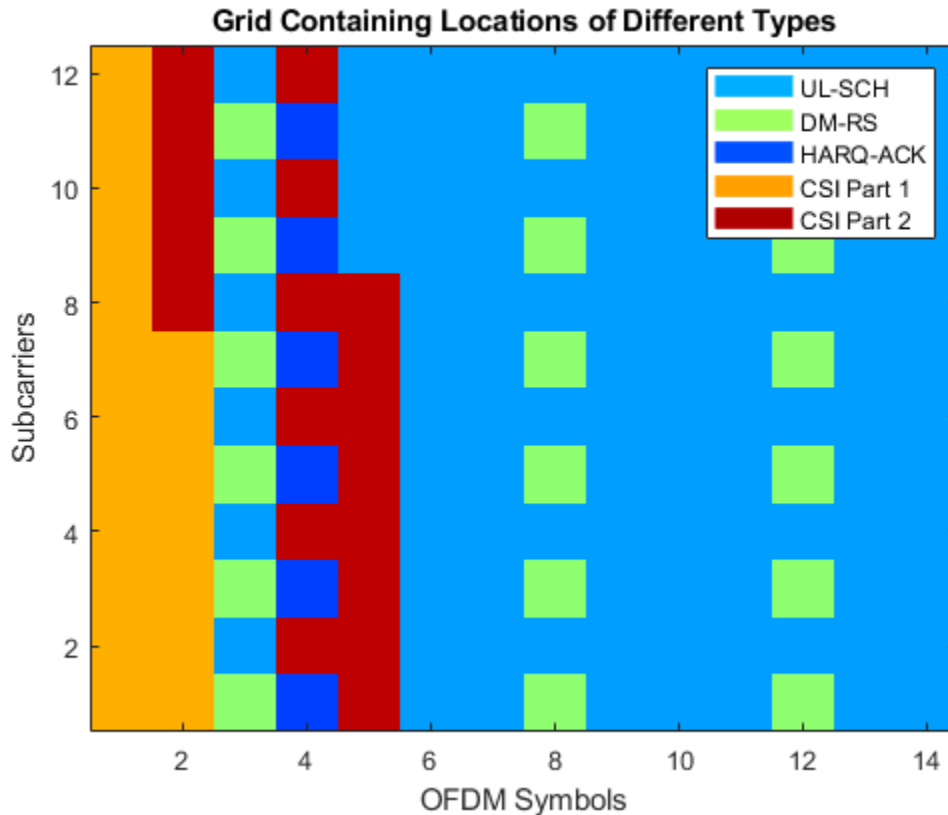
```
% Set the payload size of the HARQ-ACK bits to a value greater than 2
oack = 3; % Number of HARQ-ACK bits

% Get the UL-SCH coding information
info = nrULSCHInfo(pusch,tcr,tbs,oack,ocsi1,ocsi2);

% Set random coded UL-SCH, HARQ-ACK, CSI part 1, and CSI part 2 bits
culsch = randi([0 1],info.GULSCH,1);
cack = randi([0 1],info.GACK,1);
ccsi1 = randi([0 1],info.GCSI1,1);
ccsi2 = randi([0 1],info.GCSI2,1);

% Get the codeword and locations of each type (data and UCI)
[cw,indInfo] = nrULSCHMultiplex(pusch,tcr,tbs,culsch,cack,ccsi1,ccsi2);
```

```
% Create and plot the output grid for the first layer with predefined symbol
% values for the different types
createAndPlotGrid(carrier,pusch,cw,indInfo)
```



Further Exploration

Change the different parameters affecting the time or frequency allocation of the PUSCH and the number of payload bits of each UCI type to vary the RE positions of the UCI types.

Enable PT-RS to vary the bit capacities of the UCI types in the codeword.

Enable intra-slot frequency hopping to observe the mapping of different UCI types in each hop.

This example shows how to generate the bit capacities of respective UCI types and perform multiplexing to generate a codeword associated with a PUSCH. The example highlights the different steps involved in multiplexing when the number of HARQ-ACK bits is less than or equal to 2 and greater than 2.

References

- 1 3GPP TS 38.212. "NR; Multiplexing and channel coding (Release 15)." *3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Radio Access Network*.

Local Function

```
function createAndPlotGrid(carrier,pusch,cw,indInfo)
```

```

% Initialize the grid
qm = strcmpi(pusch.Modulation,{'pi/2-BPSK','QPSK','16QAM','64QAM','256QAM'})*[1 2 4 6 8]';
gridOFDM = complex(zeros([carrier.NSizeGrid*12 carrier.SymbolsPerSlot double(pusch.NumLayers

% Specify predefined values for each entity to get the desired visualization
chpLevel = struct;
chpLevel.PUSCH = 0.6;
chpLevel.DMRS = 1.1;
chpLevel.ACK = 0.4;
chpLevel.CSI1 = 1.5;
chpLevel.CSI2 = 2;

% Assign the codeword with predefined values
cw1 = zeros(size(cw));
cw1(indInfo.ULSCHIndices) = chpLevel.PUSCH;
cw1(indInfo.ACKIndices) = chpLevel.ACK ;
cw1(indInfo.CSI1Indices) = chpLevel.CSI1 ;
cw1(indInfo.CSI2Indices) = chpLevel.CSI2 ;

% Legend labels for the plot
labelStr = {'UL-SCH','DM-RS','HARQ-ACK','CSI Part 1','CSI Part 2'};

% Get the PUSCH and DM-RS indices
puschIndices = nrPUSCHIndices(carrier,pusch);
dmrsIndices = nrPUSCHDMRSIndices(carrier,pusch);

% Get the PT-RS indices
if pusch.EnablePTRS
    labelStr{end+1} = 'PT-RS';
    chpLevel.PTRS = 1.6;
    ptrsIndices = nrPUSCHPTRSIndices(carrier,pusch);
end

% Map the DM-RS, PT-RS, and PUSCH indices to the grid
[~,puschExtInd] = nrExtractResources(puschIndices,gridOFDM);
gridOFDM(dmrsIndices) = chpLevel.DMRS;
if pusch.TransformPrecoding
    % DFT-s-OFDM
    titleStr = "Projections of Different Types Before Transform Precoding";
    cwLen = zeros(size(puschIndices,1),pusch.NumLayers*qm);
    if pusch.EnablePTRS
        cwLen(ptrsIndices) = chpLevel.PTRS;
    end
    cwLen(cwLen==0) = cw1;
    gridOFDM(reshape(puschExtInd',[],1)) = cwLen;
else
    % CP-OFDM
    titleStr = "Grid Containing Locations of Different Types";
    if pusch.EnablePTRS
        gridOFDM(ptrsIndices) = chpLevel.PTRS;
    end
    gridOFDM(reshape(puschExtInd',[],1)) = cw1;
end

% Plot the grid
figure
map = jet(64);
cscaling = 30;

```

```
im = image(1:size(gridOFDM,2),1:size(gridOFDM,1),cscaling*abs(gridOFDM(:,:,1)));
colormap(im.Parent,map)

% Add a legend to the image
chpval = struct2cell(chpLevel);
clevels = cscaling*[chpval{:}];
N = length(clevels);
L = line(ones(N),ones(N), 'LineWidth',8); % Generate lines
% Index the color map and associate the selected colors with the lines
set(L,{'color'},mat2cell(map(min(1+clevels,length(map)),:),ones(1,N),3)) % Set the colors acc
% Create the legend
legend(labelStr{:})
axis xy
ylabel('Subcarriers')
xlabel('OFDM Symbols')
title(titleStr)

end
```

See Also

Functions

[nrULSCHInfo](#) | [nrULSCHMultiplex](#)

Objects

[nrCarrierConfig](#) | [nrPUSCHConfig](#)

Related Examples

- “NR PUSCH Resource Allocation and DM-RS and PT-RS Reference Signals” on page 2-27

Signal Reception

Extract PBCH Symbols and Channel Estimates for Decoding

Extract physical broadcast channel (PBCH) symbols from a received grid and associated channel estimates in preparation for decoding a beamformed PBCH.

PBCH Coding and Beamforming

Create a random sequence of binary values corresponding to a BCH codeword. The length of the codeword is 864, as specified in TS 38.212 Section 7.1.5. Using the codeword, create symbols and indices for a PBCH transmission. Specify the physical layer cell identity number.

```
E = 864;
cw = randi([0 1],E,1);
ncellid = 17;
v = 0;
pbchTxSym = nrPBCH(cw,ncellid,v);
pbchInd = nrPBCHIndices(ncellid);
```

Use `nrExtractResources` to create indices for the two transmit antennas of a beamformed PBCH. Use these indices to map the beamformed PBCH into the transmitter resource array.

```
carrier = nrCarrierConfig('NSizeGrid',20);
P = 2;
txGrid = nrResourceGrid(carrier,P);
F = [1 1i];
[~,bfInd] = nrExtractResources(pbchInd,txGrid);
txGrid(bfInd) = pbchTxSym*F;
```

OFDM modulate the PBCH symbols mapped into the transmitter resource array.

```
txWaveform = nrOFDMModulate(carrier,txGrid);
```

PBCH Transmission and Decoding

Create and apply a channel matrix to the waveform. Receive the transmitted waveforms.

```
R = 3;
H = dfmtx(max([P R]));
H = H(1:P,1:R);
H = H/norm(H);
rxWaveform = txWaveform*H;
```

Create channel estimates including beamforming.

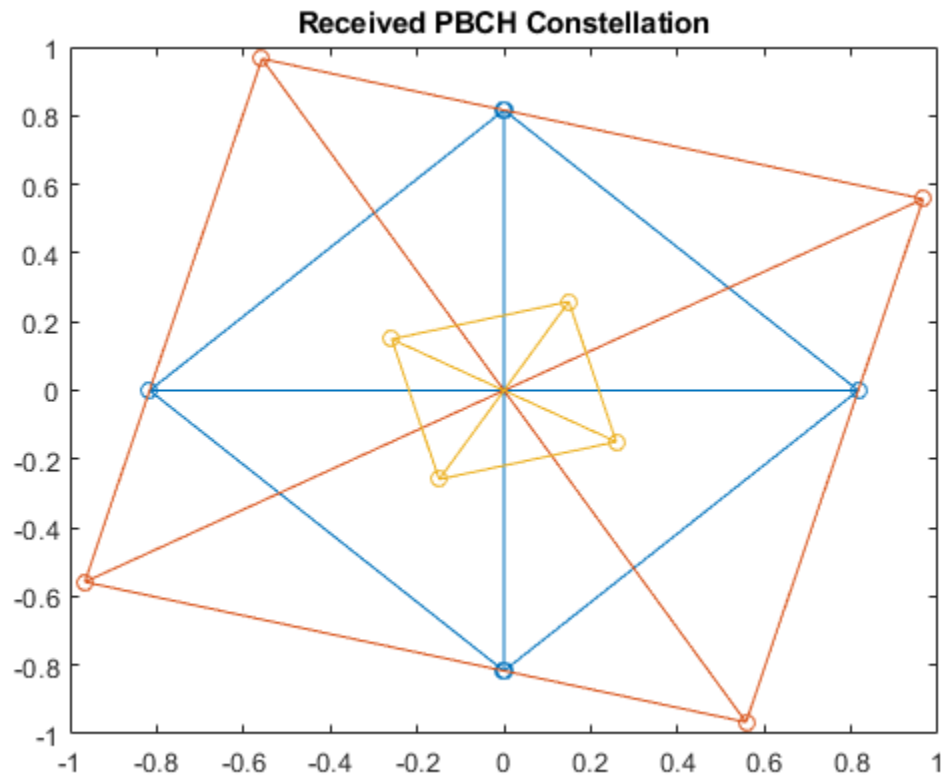
```
hEstGrid = repmat(permute(H.*F',[3 4 1 2]),[240 4]);
nEst = 0;
```

Demodulate the received waveform using orthogonal frequency division multiplexing (OFDM).

```
rxGrid = nrOFDMDemodulate(carrier,rxWaveform);
```

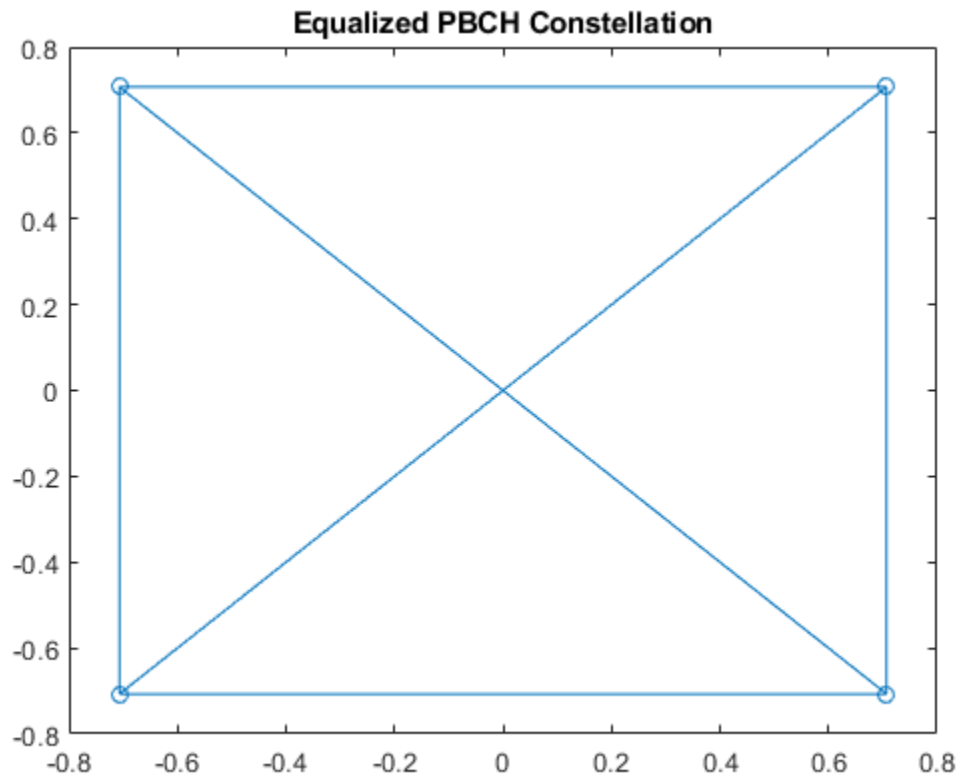
In preparation for PBCH decoding, extract symbols from the received grid and the channel estimate grid.

```
[pbchRxSym,pbchHestSym] = nrExtractResources(pbchInd,rxGrid,hEstGrid);
figure;
plot(pbchRxSym,'o:');
title('Received PBCH Constellation');
```

Equalize the symbols by performing MMSE equalization on the extracted resources. Plot the results.

```
pbchEqSym = nrEqualizeMMSE(pbchRxSym,pbchHestSym,nEst);  
figure;  
plot(pbchEqSym,'o:');  
title('Equalized PBCH Constellation');
```



Retrieve soft bits by performing PBCH decoding on the equalized symbols.

```
pbchBits = nrPBCHDecode(pbchEqSym,ncellid,v)
```

```
pbchBits = 864×1  
1010 ×
```

```
-2.0000  
-2.0000  
2.0000  
-2.0000  
-2.0000  
2.0000  
2.0000  
-2.0000  
-2.0000  
-2.0000  
⋮
```

See Also

Functions

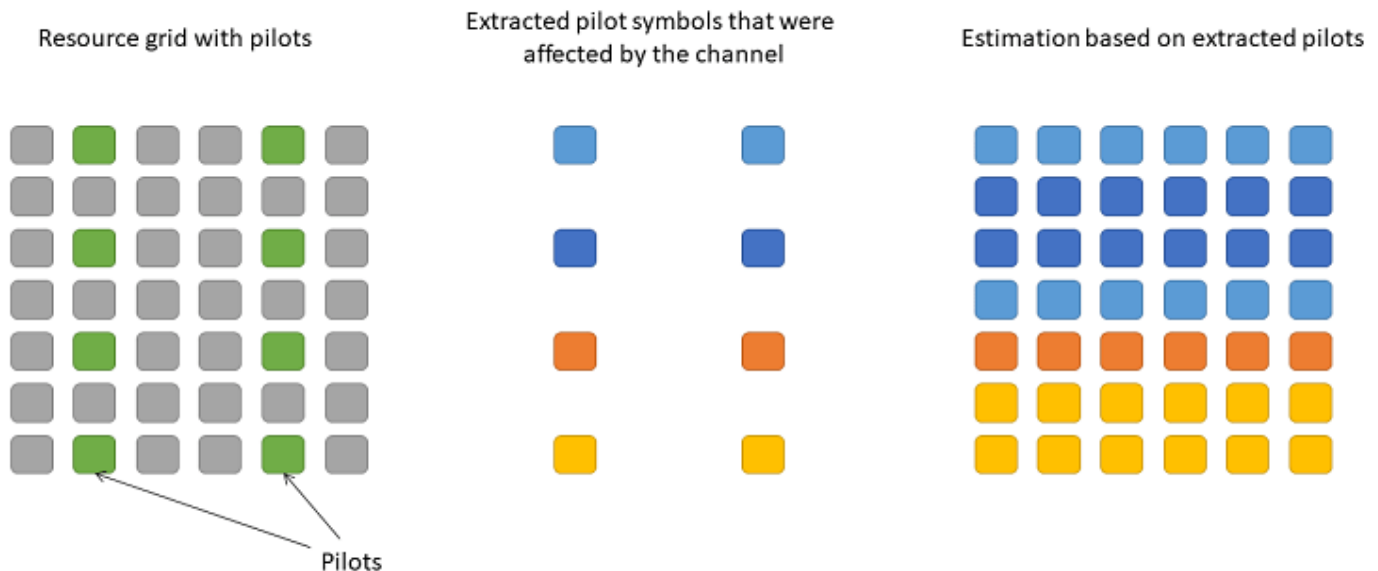
[nrEqualizeMMSE](#) | [nrExtractResources](#)

Deep Learning Data Synthesis for 5G Channel Estimation

This example shows how to train a convolutional neural network (CNN) for channel estimation using Deep Learning Toolbox™ and data generated with 5G Toolbox™. Using the trained CNN, you perform channel estimation in single-input single-output (SISO) mode, utilizing the physical downlink shared channel (PDSCH) demodulation reference signal (DM-RS).

Introduction

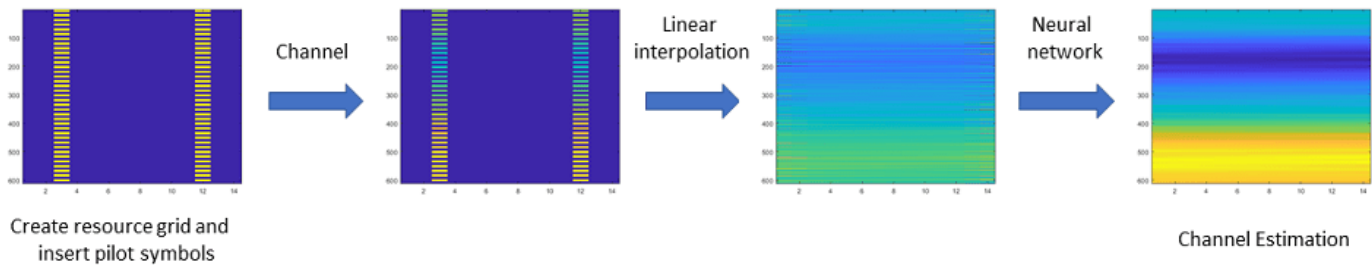
The general approach to channel estimation is to insert known reference pilot symbols into the transmission and then interpolate the rest of the channel response by using these pilot symbols.



For an example showing how to use this channel estimation approach, see “NR PDSCH Throughput” on page 1-56.

You can also use deep learning techniques to perform channel estimation. For example, by viewing the PDSCH resource grid as a 2-D image, you can turn the problem of channel estimation into an image processing problem, similar to denoising or super-resolution, where CNNs are effective.

Using 5G Toolbox, you can customize and generate standard-compliant waveforms and channel models to use as training data. Using Deep Learning Toolbox, you can use this training data to train a channel estimation CNN. This example shows how to generate such training data and how to train a channel estimation CNN. The example also shows how to use the channel estimation CNN to process images that contain linearly interpolated received pilot symbols. The example concludes by visualizing the results of the neural network channel estimator in comparison to practical and perfect estimators.



Neural Network Training

Neural network training consists of these steps:

- Data generation
- Splitting the generated data into training and validation sets
- Defining the CNN architecture
- Specifying the training options, optimizer, and learning rate
- Training the network

Due to the large number of signals and possible scenarios, training can take several minutes. By default, training is disabled, a pretrained model is used. You can enable training by setting `trainModel` to true.

```
trainModel = false;
```

If you have Parallel Computing Toolbox™ installed and a supported CUDA-enabled NVIDIA® GPU set up, the network training uses GPU acceleration by default. The `trainNetwork` (Deep Learning Toolbox) function allows you to override this default behaviour. For a list of supported GPUs, see “GPU Support by Release” (Parallel Computing Toolbox).

Data generation is set to produce 256 training examples or training data sets. This amount of data is sufficient to train a functional channel estimation network on a CPU in a reasonable time. For comparison, the pretrained model is based on 16,384 training examples.

Training data of the CNN model has a fixed size dimensionality, the network can only accept 612-by-14-by-1 grids, i.e. 612 subcarriers, 14 OFDM symbols and 1 antenna. Therefore, the model can only operate on a fixed bandwidth allocation, cyclic prefix length, and a single receive antenna.

The CNN treats the resource grids as 2-D images, hence each element of the grid must be a real number. In a channel estimation scenario, the resource grids have complex data. Therefore, the real and imaginary parts of these grids are input separately to the CNN. In this example, the training data is converted from a complex 612-by-14 matrix into a real-valued 612-by-14-by-2 matrix, where the third dimension denotes the real and imaginary components. Because you have to input the real and imaginary grids into the neural network separately when making predictions, the example converts the training data into 4-D arrays of the form 612-by-14-by-1-by-2N, where N is the number of training examples.

To ensure that the CNN does not overfit the training data, the training data is split into validation and training sets. The validation data is used for monitoring the performance of the trained neural network at regular intervals, as defined by `valFrequency`, approximately 5 per epoch. Stop training when the validation loss stops improving. In this instance, the validation data size is the same as the size of a single mini-batch due to the small size of the data set.

The returned channel estimation CNN is trained on various channel configurations based on different delay spreads, doppler shifts, and SNR ranges between 0 and 10 dB.

```

% Set the random seed for reproducibility (this has no effect if a GPU is
% used)
rng(42)

if trainModel
    % Generate the training data
    [trainData,trainLabels] = hGenerateTrainingData(256);

    % Set the number of examples per mini-batch
    batchSize = 32;

    % Split real and imaginary grids into 2 image sets, then concatenate
    trainData = cat(4,trainData(:,:,1,:),trainData(:,:,2,:));
    trainLabels = cat(4,trainLabels(:,:,1,:),trainLabels(:,:,2,:));

    % Split into training and validation sets
    valData = trainData(:,:,1:batchSize);
    valLabels = trainLabels(:,:,1:batchSize);

    trainData = trainData(:,:,batchSize+1:end);
    trainLabels = trainLabels(:,:,batchSize+1:end);

    % Validate roughly 5 times every epoch
    valFrequency = round(size(trainData,4)/batchSize/5);

    % Define the CNN structure
    layers = [ ...
        imageInputLayer([612 14 1],'Normalization','none')
        convolution2dLayer(9,64,'Padding',4)
        reluLayer
        convolution2dLayer(5,64,'Padding',2,'NumChannels',64)
        reluLayer
        convolution2dLayer(5,64,'Padding',2,'NumChannels',64)
        reluLayer
        convolution2dLayer(5,32,'Padding',2,'NumChannels',64)
        reluLayer
        convolution2dLayer(5,1,'Padding',2,'NumChannels',32)
        regressionLayer
    ];

    % Set up a training policy
    options = trainingOptions('adam', ...
        'InitialLearnRate',3e-4, ...
        'MaxEpochs',5, ...
        'Shuffle','every-epoch', ...
        'Verbose',false, ...
        'Plots','training-progress', ...
        'MiniBatchSize',batchSize, ...
        'ValidationData',{valData, valLabels}, ...
        'ValidationFrequency',valFrequency, ...
        'ValidationPatience',5);

    % Train the network. The saved structure trainingInfo contains the
    % training progress for later inspection. This structure is useful for
    % comparing optimal convergence speeds of different optimization

```

```

% methods.
[channelEstimationCNN,trainingInfo] = trainNetwork(trainData, ...
    trainLabels, layers, options);

else
% Load pretrained network if trainModel is set to false
load('trainedChannelEstimationNetwork.mat')
end

```

Inspect the composition and individual layers of the model. The model has 5 convolutional layers. The input layer expects matrices of size 612-by-14, where 612 is the number of subcarriers and 14 is the number of OFDM symbols. Each element is a real number, since the real and imaginary parts of the complex grids are input separately.

```
channelEstimationCNN.Layers
```

```
ans =
```

```
11x1 Layer array with layers:
```

1	'imageinput'	Image Input	612x14x1 images
2	'conv_1'	Convolution	64 9x9x1 convolutions with stride [1 1] and padding [0 0]
3	'relu_1'	ReLU	ReLU
4	'conv_2'	Convolution	64 5x5x64 convolutions with stride [1 1] and padding [0 0]
5	'relu_2'	ReLU	ReLU
6	'conv_3'	Convolution	64 5x5x64 convolutions with stride [1 1] and padding [0 0]
7	'relu_3'	ReLU	ReLU
8	'conv_4'	Convolution	32 5x5x64 convolutions with stride [1 1] and padding [0 0]
9	'relu_4'	ReLU	ReLU
10	'conv_5'	Convolution	1 5x5x32 convolutions with stride [1 1] and padding [0 0]
11	'regressionoutput'	Regression Output	mean-squared-error with response 'Response'

Create Channel Model for Simulation

Set the simulation noise level in dB.

```
SNRdB = 10;
```

Load the predefined simulation parameters, including the PDSCH parameters and DM-RS configuration. The returned object `carrier` is a valid carrier configuration object and `pdsch` is a PDSCH configuration structure set for a SISO transmission.

```
[gnb, carrier, pdsch] = hDeepLearningChanEstSimParameters();
```

Create a TDL channel model and set channel parameters. To compare different channel responses of the estimators, you can change these parameters later.

```
channel = nrTDLChannel;
channel.Seed = 0;
channel.DelayProfile = 'TDL-A';
channel.DelaySpread = 3e-7;
channel.MaximumDopplerShift = 50;
```

```
% This example supports only SISO configuration
channel.NumTransmitAntennas = 1;
channel.NumReceiveAntennas = 1;
```

```

waveformInfo = nrOFDMInfo(carrier);
channel.SampleRate = waveformInfo.SampleRate;

```

Get the maximum number of delayed samples by a channel multipath component. This number is calculated from the channel path with the largest delay and the implementation delay of the channel filter. This number is needed to flush the channel filter when obtaining the received signal.

```

chInfo = info(channel);
maxChDelay = ceil(max(chInfo.PathDelays*channel.SampleRate))+chInfo.ChannelFilterDelay;

```

Simulate PDSCH Transmission

Simulate a PDSCH transmission by performing these steps:

- Generate PDSCH resource grid
- Insert DM-RS symbols
- Perform OFDM modulation
- Send modulated waveform through the channel model
- Add white Gaussian noise
- Perform perfect timing synchronization
- Perform OFDM demodulation

```

% Generate DM-RS indices and symbols
[~,dmrsIndices,dmrsSymbols,pdschIndicesInfo] = hPDSCHResources(gnb,pdsch);

```

```

% Create PDSCH resource grid
pdschGrid = nrResourceGrid(carrier);

```

```

% Map PDSCH DM-RS symbols to the grid
pdschGrid(dmrsIndices) = pdschGrid(dmrsIndices)+dmrsSymbols;

```

```

% OFDM-modulate associated resource elements
txWaveform = nrOFDMModulate(carrier,pdschGrid);

```

To flush the channel content, append zeros at the end of the transmitted waveform. These zeros take into account any delay introduced in the channel, such as multipath and implementation delay. The number of zeros depends on the sampling rate, delay profile, and delay spread.

```

txWaveform = [txWaveform; zeros(maxChDelay,size(txWaveform,2))];

```

Send data through the TDL channel model.

```

[rxWaveform,pathGains,sampleTimes] = channel(txWaveform);

```

Add additive white Gaussian noise (AWGN) to the received time-domain waveform. To take into account sampling rate, normalize the noise power. The SNR is defined per resource element (RE) for each receive antenna (3GPP TS 38.101-4).

```

SNR = 10^(SNRdB/20); % Calculate linear noise gain
N0 = 1/(sqrt(2.0*gnb.NRxAnts*double(waveformInfo.Nfft))*SNR);
noise = N0*complex(randn(size(rxWaveform)),randn(size(rxWaveform)));
rxWaveform = rxWaveform + noise;

```

Perform perfect synchronization. To find the strongest multipath component, use the information provided by the channel.

```

% Get path filters for perfect channel estimation
pathFilters = getPathFilters(channel);
[offset,~] = nrPerfectTimingEstimate(pathGains,pathFilters);

rxWaveform = rxWaveform(1+offset:end, :);

OFDM-demodulate the received data to recreate the resource grid.

rxGrid = nrOFDMDemodulate(carrier,rxWaveform);

% Pad the grid with zeros in case an incomplete slot has been demodulated
[K,L,R] = size(rxGrid);
if (L < carrier.SymbolsPerSlot)
    rxGrid = cat(2,rxGrid,zeros(K,carrier.SymbolsPerSlot-L,R));
end

```

Compare and Visualize Various Channel Estimations

You can perform and compare the results of perfect, practical, and neural network estimations of the same channel model.

To perform perfect channel estimation, use the `nrPerfectChannelEstimate` function using the value of the path gains provided by the channel.

```

estChannelGridPerfect = nrPerfectChannelEstimate(carrier,pathGains, ...
    pathFilters,offset,sampleTimes);

```

To perform practical channel estimation, use the `nrChannelEstimate` function.

```

[estChannelGrid,~] = nrChannelEstimate(carrier,rxGrid,dmrsIndices, ...
    dmrsSymbols,'CDMLengths',pdschIndicesInfo.CDMLengths);

```

To perform channel estimation using the neural network, you must interpolate the received grid. Then split the interpolated image into its real and imaginary parts and input these images together into the neural network as a single batch. Use the `predict` (Deep Learning Toolbox) function to make predictions on the real and imaginary images. Finally, concatenate and transform the results back into complex data.

```

% Interpolate the received resource grid using pilot symbol locations
interpChannelGrid = hPreprocessInput(rxGrid,dmrsIndices,dmrsSymbols);

% Concatenate the real and imaginary grids along the batch dimension
nnInput = cat(4,real(interpChannelGrid),imag(interpChannelGrid));

% Use the neural network to estimate the channel
estChannelGridNN = predict(channelEstimationCNN,nnInput);

% Convert results to complex
estChannelGridNN = complex(estChannelGridNN(:,:,,1),estChannelGridNN(:,:,,2));

```

Calculate the mean squared error (MSE) of each estimation method.

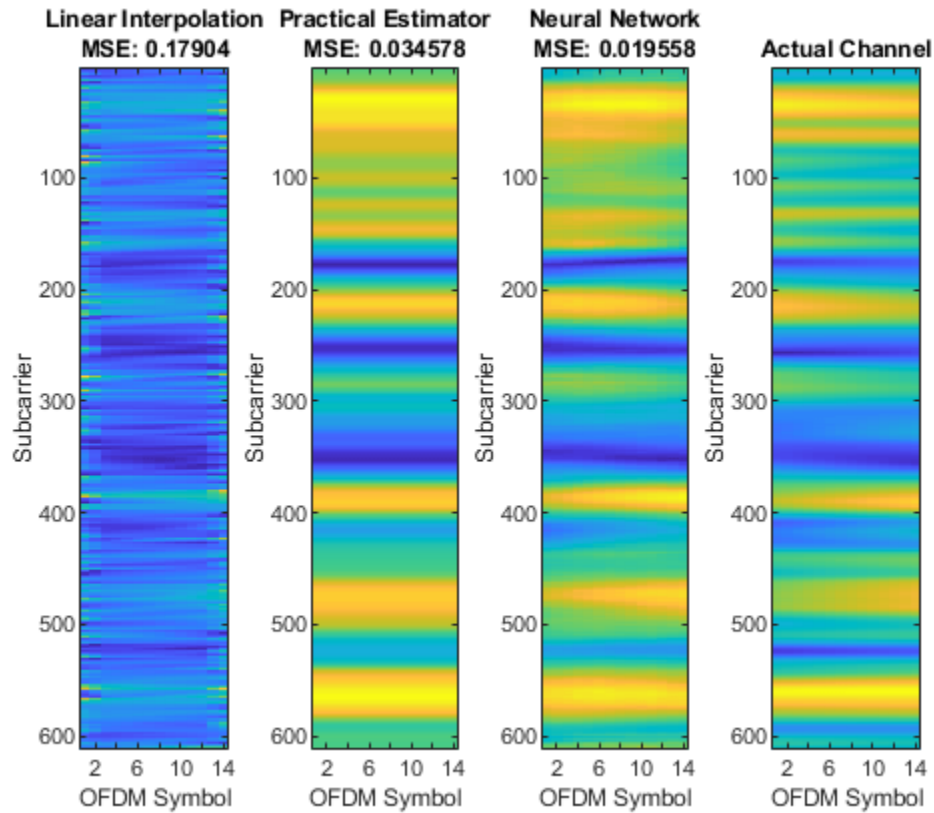
```

neural_mse = mean(abs(estChannelGridPerfect(:) - estChannelGridNN(:)).^2);
interp_mse = mean(abs(estChannelGridPerfect(:) - interpChannelGrid(:)).^2);
practical_mse = mean(abs(estChannelGridPerfect(:) - estChannelGrid(:)).^2);

```


Plot the individual channel estimations and the actual channel realization obtained from the channel filter taps. Both the practical estimator and the neural network estimator outperform linear interpolation.

```
plotChEstimates(interpChannelGrid,estChannelGrid,estChannelGridNN,estChannelGridPerfect,...
    interp_mse,practical_mse,neural_mse);
```



References

- 1 van de Beek, Jan-Jaap, Ove Edfors, Magnus Sandell, Sarah Kate Wilson, and Per Ola Borjesson. "On Channel Estimation in OFDM Systems." In 1995 IEEE 45th Vehicular Technology Conference. Countdown to the Wireless Twenty-First Century, 2:815-19, July 1995.
- 2 Ye, Hao, Geoffrey Ye Li, and Biing-Hwang Juang. "Power of Deep Learning for Channel Estimation and Signal Detection in OFDM Systems." IEEE Wireless Communications Letters 7, no. 1 (February 2018): 114-17.
- 3 Soltani, Mehran, Vahid Pourahmadi, Ali Mirzaei, and Hamid Sheikhzadeh. "Deep Learning-Based Channel Estimation." Preprint, submitted October 13, 2018.

Local Functions

```
function hest = hPreprocessInput(rxGrid,dmrsIndices,dmrsSymbols)
% Perform linear interpolation of the grid and input the result to the
% neural network This helper function extracts the DM-RS symbols from
% dmrsIndices locations in the received grid rxGrid and performs linear
% interpolation on the extracted pilots.
```

```

% Obtain pilot symbol estimates
dmrsRx = rxGrid(dmrsIndices);
dmrsEsts = dmrsRx .* conj(dmrsSymbols);

% Create empty grids to fill after linear interpolation
[rxDMRSGrid, hest] = deal(zeros(size(rxGrid)));
rxDMRSGrid(dmrsIndices) = dmrsSymbols;

% Find the row and column coordinates for a given DMRS configuration
[rows,cols] = find(rxDMRSGrid ~= 0);
dmrsSubs = [rows,cols,ones(size(cols))];
[l_hest,k_hest] = meshgrid(1:size(hest,2),1:size(hest,1));

% Perform linear interpolation
f = scatteredInterpolant(dmrsSubs(:,2),dmrsSubs(:,1),dmrsEsts);
hest = f(l_hest,k_hest);

end

function [trainData,trainLabels] = hGenerateTrainingData(dataSize)
% Generate training data examples for channel estimation
% Run dataSize number of iterations to create random channel configurations
% and pass an OFDM-modulated fixed PDSCH grid with only the DM-RS symbols
% inserted. Perform perfect timing synchronization and OFDM demodulation,
% extracting the pilot symbols and performing linear interpolation at each
% iteration. Use perfect channel information to create the
% label data. The function returns 2 arrays - the training data and labels.

fprintf('Starting data generation...\n')

% List of possible channel profiles
delayProfiles = {'TDL-A', 'TDL-B', 'TDL-C', 'TDL-D', 'TDL-E'};

[simParameters, carrier, pdsch] = hDeepLearningChanEstSimParameters();

% Create the channel model object
nTxAnts = simParameters.NTxAnts;
nRxAnts = simParameters.NRxAnts;

channel = nrTDLChannel; % TDL channel object
channel.NumTransmitAntennas = nTxAnts;
channel.NumReceiveAntennas = nRxAnts;

% Use the value returned from <matlab:edit('nrOFDMInfo') nrOFDMInfo> to
% set the channel model sample rate
waveformInfo = nrOFDMInfo(carrier);
channel.SampleRate = waveformInfo.SampleRate;

% Get the maximum number of delayed samples by a channel multipath
% component. This number is calculated from the channel path with the largest
% delay and the implementation delay of the channel filter, and is required
% to flush the channel filter to obtain the received signal.
chInfo = info(channel);
maxChDelay = ceil(max(chInfo.PathDelays*channel.SampleRate)) + chInfo.ChannelFilterDelay;

% Return DM-RS indices and symbols
[~,dmrsIndices,dmrsSymbols,~] = hPDSCHResources(simParameters,pdsch);

```

```

% PDSCH mapping in grid associated with PDSCH transmission period
pdschGrid = nrResourceGrid(carrier,nTxAnts);

% PDSCH DM-RS precoding and mapping
[~,dmrsAntIndices] = nrExtractResources(dmrsIndices,pdschGrid);
pdschGrid(dmrsAntIndices) = pdschGrid(dmrsAntIndices) + dmrsSymbols;

% OFDM modulation of associated resource elements
txWaveform_original = nrOFDMModulate(carrier,pdschGrid);

% Acquire linear interpolator coordinates for neural net preprocessing
[rows,cols] = find(pdschGrid ~= 0);
dmrsSubs = [rows, cols, ones(size(cols))];
hest = zeros(size(pdschGrid));
[l_hest,k_hest] = meshgrid(1:size(hest,2),1:size(hest,1));

% Preallocate memory for the training data and labels
numExamples = dataSize;
[trainData, trainLabels] = deal(zeros([612 14 2 numExamples]));

% Main loop for data generation, iterating over the number of examples
% specified in the function call. Each iteration of the loop produces a
% new channel realization with a random delay spread, doppler shift,
% and delay profile. Every perturbed version of the transmitted
% waveform with the DM-RS symbols is stored in trainData, and the
% perfect channel realization in trainLabels.
for i = 1:numExamples
    % Release the channel to change nontunable properties
    channel.release

    % Pick a random seed to create different channel realizations
    channel.Seed = randi([1001 2000]);

    % Pick a random delay profile, delay spread, and maximum doppler shift
    channel.DelayProfile = string(delayProfiles(randi([1 numel(delayProfiles)])));
    channel.DelaySpread = randi([1 300])*1e-9;
    channel.MaximumDopplerShift = randi([5 400]);

    % Send data through the channel model. Append zeros at the end of
    % the transmitted waveform to flush channel content. These zeros
    % take into account any delay introduced in the channel, such as
    % multipath delay and implementation delay. This value depends on
    % the sampling rate, delay profile, and delay spread
    txWaveform = [txWaveform_original; zeros(maxChDelay, size(txWaveform_original,2))];
    [rxWaveform,pathGains,sampleTimes] = channel(txWaveform);

    % Add additive white Gaussian noise (AWGN) to the received time-domain
    % waveform. To take into account sampling rate, normalize the noise power.
    % The SNR is defined per RE for each receive antenna (3GPP TS 38.101-4).
    SNRdB = randi([0 10]); % Random SNR values between 0 and 10 dB
    SNR = 10^(SNRdB/20); % Calculate linear noise gain
    N0 = 1/(sqrt(2.0*nRxAnts*double(waveformInfo.Nfft))*SNR);
    noise = N0*complex(randn(size(rxWaveform)),randn(size(rxWaveform)));
    rxWaveform = rxWaveform + noise;

    % Perfect synchronization. Use information provided by the channel
    % to find the strongest multipath component
    pathFilters = getPathFilters(channel); % Get path filters for perfect channel estimation

```

```

[offset,~] = nrPerfectTimingEstimate(pathGains,pathFilters);

rxWaveform = rxWaveform(1+offset:end, :);

% Perform OFDM demodulation on the received data to recreate the
% resource grid, including padding in case practical
% synchronization results in an incomplete slot being demodulated
rxGrid = nrOFDMDemodulate(carrier,rxWaveform);
[K,L,R] = size(rxGrid);
if (L < carrier.SymbolsPerSlot)
    rxGrid = cat(2,rxGrid,zeros(K,carrier.SymbolsPerSlot-L,R));
end

% Perfect channel estimation, using the value of the path gains
% provided by the channel. This channel estimate does not
% include the effect of transmitter precoding
estChannelGridPerfect = nrPerfectChannelEstimate(carrier,pathGains, ...
    pathFilters,offset,sampleTimes);

% Linear interpolation
dmrsRx = rxGrid(dmrsIndices);
dmrsEsts = dmrsRx .* conj(dmrsSymbols);
f = scatteredInterpolant(dmrsSubs(:,2),dmrsSubs(:,1),dmrsEsts);
hest = f(l_hest,k_hest);

% Split interpolated grid into real and imaginary components and
% concatenate them along the third dimension, as well as for the
% true channel response
rx_grid = cat(3, real(hest), imag(hest));
est_grid = cat(3, real(estChannelGridPerfect), ...
    imag(estChannelGridPerfect));

% Add generated training example and label to the respective arrays
trainData(:,:, :,i) = rx_grid;
trainLabels(:,:, :,i) = est_grid;

% Data generation tracker
if mod(i,round(numExamples/25)) == 0
    fprintf('%3.2f%% complete\n',i/numExamples*100);
end
end
fprintf('Data generation complete!\n')
end

function plotChEstimates(interpChannelGrid,estChannelGrid,estChannelGridNN,estChannelGridPerfect
    interp_mse,practical_mse,neural_mse)
% Plot the different channel estimates and display the measured MSE

figure

subplot(1,4,1)
imagesc(abs(interpChannelGrid));
xlabel('OFDM Symbol');
ylabel('Subcarrier');
title({'Linear Interpolation', ['MSE: ', num2str(interp_mse)]});

subplot(1,4,2)
imagesc(abs(estChannelGrid));

```

```
xlabel('OFDM Symbol');
ylabel('Subcarrier');
title({'Practical Estimator', ['MSE: ', num2str(practical_mse)]});

subplot(1,4,3)
imagesc(abs(estChannelGridNN));
xlabel('OFDM Symbol');
ylabel('Subcarrier');
title({'Neural Network', ['MSE: ', num2str(neural_mse)]});

subplot(1,4,4)
imagesc(abs(estChannelGridPerfect));
xlabel('OFDM Symbol');
ylabel('Subcarrier');
title({'Actual Channel'});
end
```

See Also

Functions

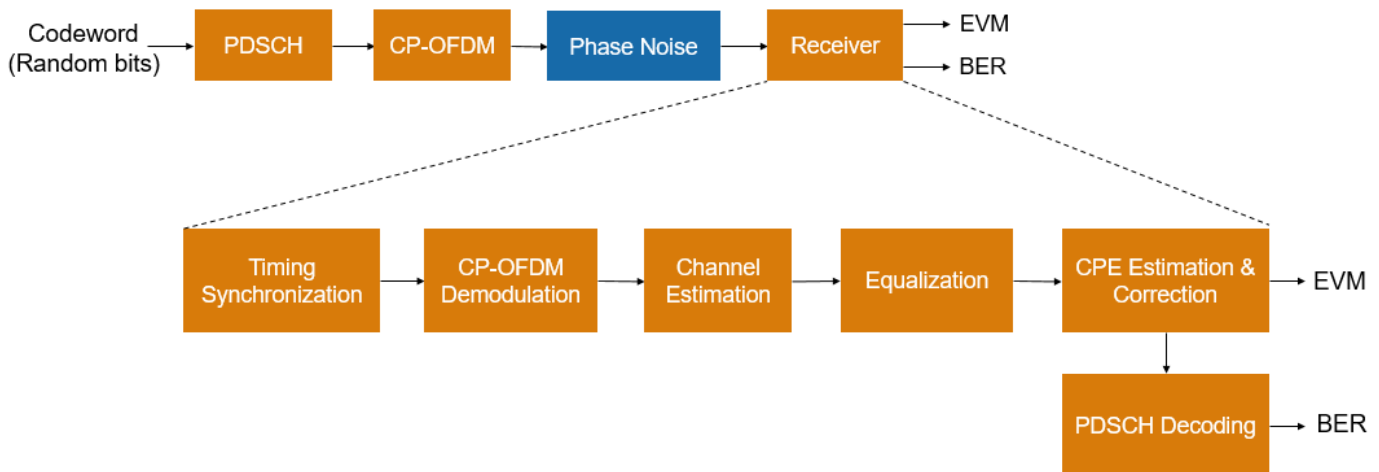
`nrPerfectChannelEstimate` | `nrChannelEstimate` | `predict` | `trainNetwork`

NR Phase Noise Modeling and Compensation

This example demonstrates the impact of phase noise in a 5G OFDM system and shows how to use phase tracking reference signal (PT-RS) in compensating the common phase error (CPE). The example measures error vector magnitude (EVM) and bit error rate (BER) with and without CPE compensation.

Introduction

In 5G NR, 3GPP introduces a new reference signal, named phase tracking reference signal (PT-RS), to deal with oscillator noise. The noise incurred in the oscillators results in phase modulation of the information signal, leading to significant changes in the frequency spectrum and timing properties of the information signal. This phenomenon related to oscillators is called phase noise. Phase noise produced in local oscillators introduces a significant degradation at millimeter wave (mmWave) frequencies, depending on the power spectral density of phase noise. Phase noise leads to CPE and intercarrier interference (ICI). CPE leads to an identical rotation of a received symbol in each subcarrier. ICI leads to a loss of orthogonality between the subcarriers. Due to the distributed structure of PT-RS in frequency domain, the example primarily uses PT-RS to estimate and minimize the effect of CPE on system performance. The example applies phase noise on the waveform consisting of physical downlink shared channel (PDSCH) and shows the change in EVM and BER without and with CPE compensation. This figure shows the processing chain implemented in this example.



Phase Noise Modeling

The oscillator power spectral density models the phase noise. This example uses a multipole zero model to approximate the power spectral density of the oscillator. Use the `PNModel` field of the `simParameters` structure to select the phase noise model: 'A', 'B', or 'C'. Parameter sets 'A' and 'B' are obtained from practical oscillators operating at 30 GHz and 60 GHz, respectively, as described in TDoc R1-163984. The parameter set 'C' is obtained from the practical oscillator operating at 29.55 GHz, as described in TR 38.803 Section 6.1.10.

The example uses a carrier with a subcarrier spacing of 60 kHz for a transmission bandwidth of 50 MHz.

```
% Configure carrier
carrier = nrCarrierConfig;
```

```
carrier.SubcarrierSpacing = 60;
carrier.CyclicPrefix = 'normal';
carrier.NSizeGrid = 66;

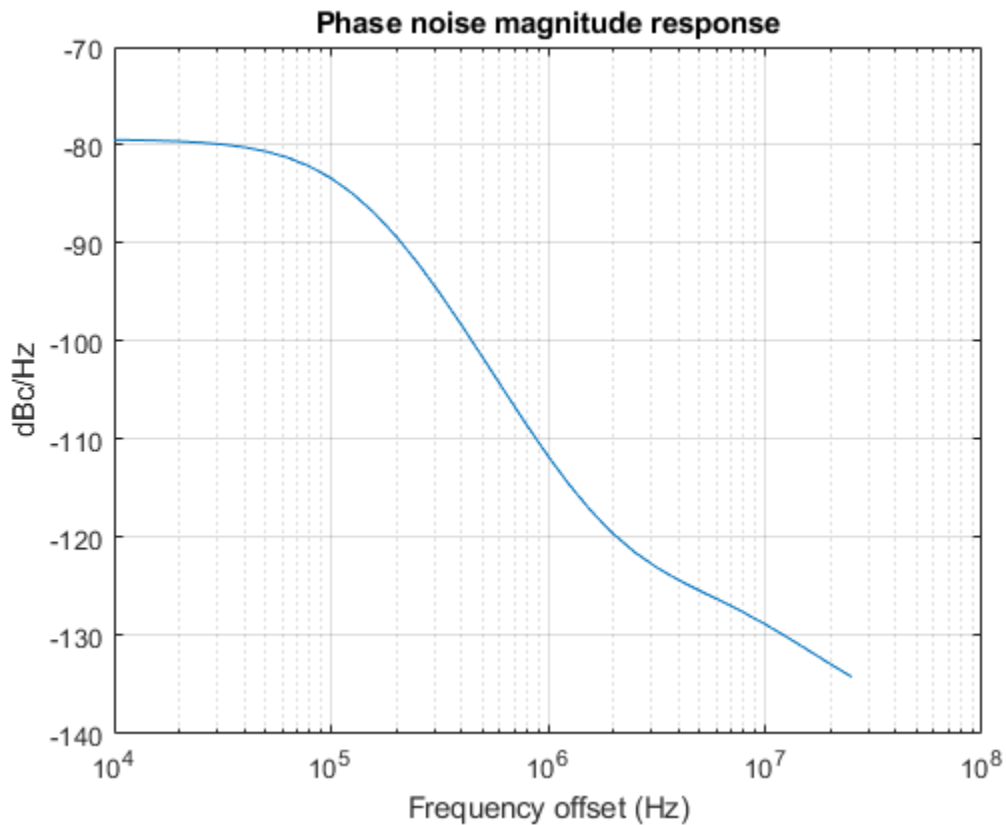
% Set the operating frequency and choose the phase noise model
simParameters = [];
simParameters.Fc = 30e9; % Frequency in Hz
simParameters.PNModel = 'A'; % 'A' (TDoc R1-163984 Set A), 'B' (TDoc R1-163984 Set B), 'C' (TR 38.101-13.4.1)

% Get the sample rate
ofdmInfo = nrOFDMInfo(carrier);
sr = ofdmInfo.SampleRate;

% Phase noise level
foffsetLog = (4:0.1:log10(sr/2)); % Model offset from 1e4 Hz to sr/2 Hz
foffset = 10.^foffsetLog; % Linear frequency offset
pn_PSD = hPhaseNoisePoleZeroModel(foffset,simParameters.Fc,simParameters.PNModel); % dBc/Hz

% Set phase noise level
pnoise = comm.PhaseNoise('FrequencyOffset',foffset,'Level',pn_PSD,'SampleRate',sr);
pnoise.RandomStream = "mt19937ar with seed";

% Visualize spectrum mask of phase noise
figure
semilogx(foffset,pn_PSD)
xlabel('Frequency offset (Hz)')
ylabel('dBc/Hz')
title('Phase noise magnitude response')
grid on
```



Configure PDSCH

The example configures PDSCH occupying the complete carrier with modulation scheme set to '64QAM' and number of layers set to 1. The example defaults to a single layer and a single codeword of random uncoded bits.

```
% Set PDSCH parameters
pdsch = nrPDSCHConfig;
pdsch.PRBSets = 0:carrier.NSizeGrid-1;
pdsch.SymbolAllocation = [0 14];
pdsch.Modulation = '64QAM';
pdsch.NumLayers = 1;
pdsch.MappingType = 'A';
pdsch.NID = 1;
pdsch.RNTI = 2;

% Set DM-RS parameters
pdsch.DMRS.DMRSConfigurationType = 1;
pdsch.DMRS.DMRSTypeAPosition = 2;
pdsch.DMRS.DMRSAdditionalPosition = 0;
pdsch.DMRS.DMRSLength = 1;
pdsch.DMRS.DMRSPortSet = [];
pdsch.DMRS.NumCDMGroupsWithoutData = 1;
pdsch.DMRS.NIDNSCID = 1;
pdsch.DMRS.NSCID = 0;

% Set PT-RS parameters
```



```

pdsch.EnablePTRS = 1;
pdsch.PTRS.TimeDensity = 1;
pdsch.PTRS.FrequencyDensity = 2;
pdsch.PTRS.REOffset = '00';
pdsch.PTRS.PTRSPortSet = [];

```

Generate Waveform

The waveform is generated for 2 frames and the field NumFrames of simParameters structure controls the number of frames of the waveform. The steps involved are:

- Generate random codeword with the bit capacity of PDSCH
- Get the PDSCH symbols for the random codeword and map them to grid
- Generate and map DM-RS symbols to grid
- Generate and map PTRS symbols to grid
- Perform OFDM modulation for the complete grid of all frames

```

% Number of frames to generate the waveform
simParameters.NumFrames = 2;

% Get the number of slots in the waveform and number of symbols in a slot
numSlots = carrier.SlotsPerFrame*simParameters.NumFrames;
nSlotSymb = carrier.SymbolsPerSlot;

% Initialize the grid for specified number of frames
txGrid = zeros(carrier.NSizeGrid*12,nSlotSymb*numSlots,pdsch.NumLayers);

% Processing loop
txbits = [];
rng('default')
for slotIdx = 0:numSlots - 1
    % Set slot number
    carrier.NSlot = slotIdx;

    % Get PDSCH indices and structural information
    [pdschInd,pdschIndicesInfo] = nrPDSCHIndices(carrier,pdsch);

    % Generate random codeword(s)
    numCW = pdsch.NumCodewords; % Number of codewords
    data = cell(1,numCW);
    for i = 1:numCW
        data{i} = randi([0 1],pdschIndicesInfo.G(i),1);
        txbits = [txbits; data{i}]; %#ok<AGROW>
    end

    % Get modulated symbols
    pdschSym = nrPDSCH(carrier,pdsch,data);

    % Get DM-RS symbols and indices
    dmrsSym = nrPDSCHDMRS(carrier,pdsch);
    dmrsInd = nrPDSCHDMRSIndices(carrier,pdsch);

    % Get PT-RS symbols and indices
    ptrsSym = nrPDSCHPTRS(carrier,pdsch);
    ptrsInd = nrPDSCHPTRSIndices(carrier,pdsch);

```

```

% Resource element mapping to slot grid
slotGrid = nrResourceGrid(carrier,pdsch.NumLayers);
slotGrid(pdschInd) = pdschSym;
slotGrid(dmrsInd) = dmrsSym;
slotGrid(ptrsInd) = ptrsSym;

% Generate txGrid for all frames by mapping slotGrid at respective
% locations
txGrid(:,slotIdx*nSlotSymb+1:(slotIdx+1)*(nSlotSymb),:) = slotGrid;
end

% Perform OFDM modulation
carrier.NSlot = 0; % Reset the slot number to 0 for OFDM modulation
txWaveform = nrOFDMModulate(carrier,txGrid);

```

Apply Phase Noise

Apply phase noise to the transmitted waveform. To clearly observe the impact of phase noise, the example does not apply any thermal noise or channel model in addition to phase noise. The example applies the same phase noise to all the layers.

```

rxWaveform = zeros(size(txWaveform),'like',txWaveform);
for i = 1:size(txWaveform,2)
    rxWaveform(:,i) = pnoise(txWaveform(:,i));
    release(pnoise)
end

```

Receiver

Before returning the equalized PDSCH symbols and decoded bits, the receiver performs these steps:

- Timing synchronization
- OFDM demodulation
- Channel estimation
- Equalization
- CPE estimation and correction
- PDSCH decoding

For the CPE estimation and correction step, the receiver uses the logical field `CompensateCPE` of the `simParameters` structure. Because the example does not use a propagation channel, the steps of timing synchronization, channel estimation, and equalization are not strictly necessary. However, these steps help investigate the phase noise effects if you introduce a channel.

The example shows the equalized constellation symbols, EVM, and bit error rate, with and without CPE compensation.

Case 1: Without CPE Compensation

To disable the CPE compensation, set the field `CompensateCPE` of `simParameters` structure to 0.

```

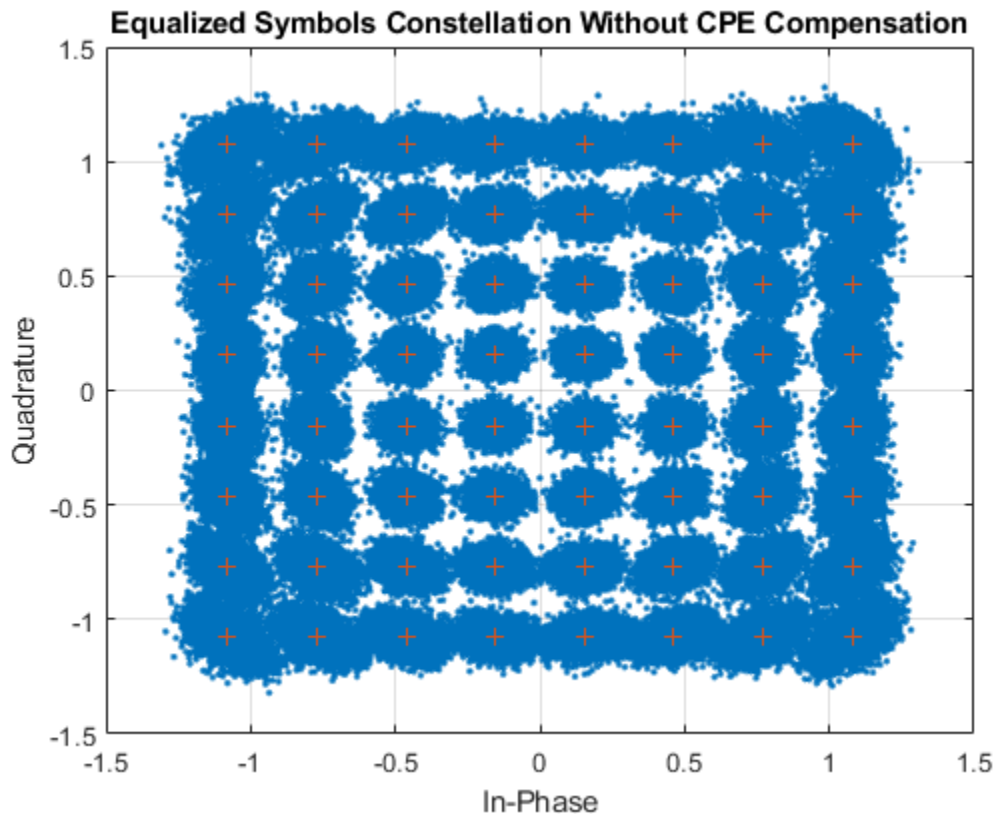
simParameters.CompensateCPE = 0;
[eqSymbols,rxbits] = practicalReceiver(carrier,pdsch,simParameters,rxWaveform);
refSymbols = getConstellationPoints(pdsch);
% Display the constellation diagram
figure

```

```

plot(eqSymbols, '.')
hold on
plot(refSymbols, '+')
title('Equalized Symbols Constellation Without CPE Compensation')
grid on
xlabel('In-Phase')
ylabel('Quadrature')

```



```

% Display RMS EVM
evm = comm.EVM('ReferenceSignalSource','Estimated from reference constellation','ReferenceConstellation',eqSymbols);
fprintf('RMS EVM (in percent) for equalized symbols without CPE compensation: %f%% \n',evm(eqSymbols));

```

RMS EVM (in percent) for equalized symbols without CPE compensation: 5.926056%

```

% Display bit error rate
errorRate = nnz(rxbits-txbits)/numel(txbits);
fprintf('Bit error rate without CPE compensation: %f \n',errorRate)

```

Bit error rate without CPE compensation: 0.000495

Case 2: With CPE Compensation

To enable the CPE compensation, set the field `CompensateCPE` of `simParameters` structure to 0. Use PT-RS to estimate the CPE at all the OFDM symbol locations in a slot. Correct the CPE in the OFDM symbol locations within the range of PT-RS OFDM symbols.

```

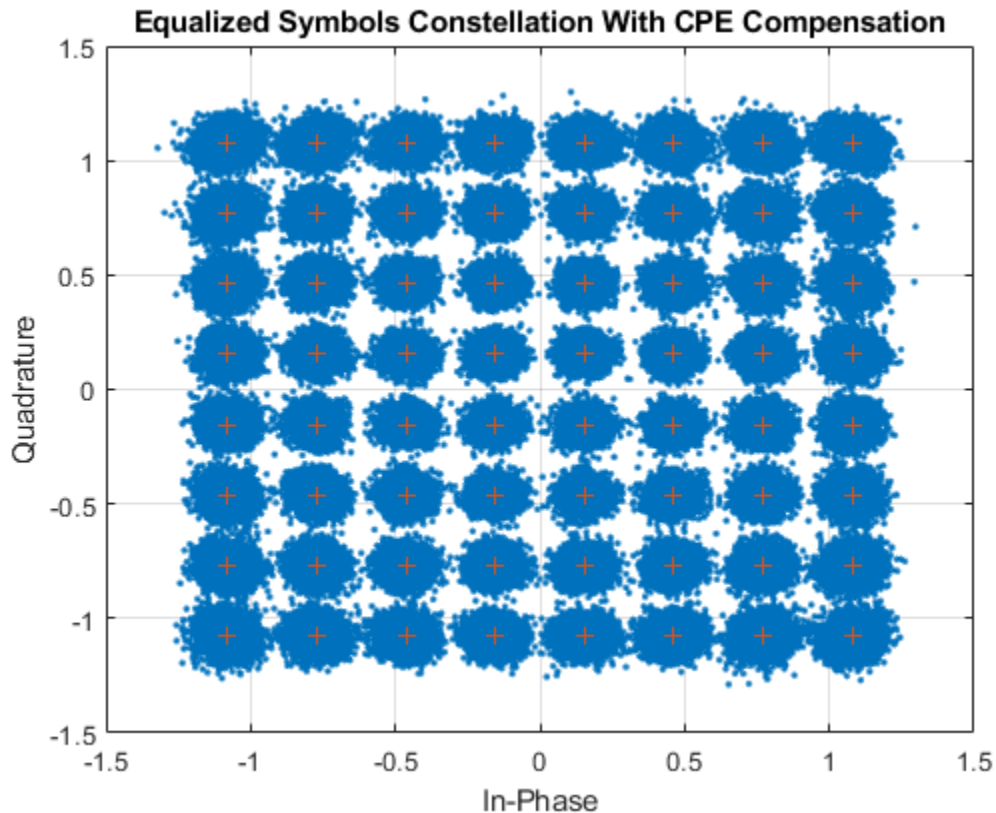
simParameters.CompensateCPE = 1;
[eqSymbolsCPE,rxbitsCPE] = practicalReceiver(carrier,pdsch,simParameters,rxWaveform);

```

```

% Display the constellation diagram
figure
plot(eqSymbolsCPE, '.')
hold on
plot(refSymbols, '+')
title('Equalized Symbols Constellation With CPE Compensation')
grid on
xlabel('In-Phase')
ylabel('Quadrature')

```



```

% Display RMS EVM
fprintf('RMS EVM (in percent) for equalized symbols with CPE compensation: %f%% \n', evm(eqSymbolsCPE))

RMS EVM (in percent) for equalized symbols with CPE compensation: 4.794181%

% Display bit error rate
errorRateCPE = nnz(rxbitsCPE-txbits)/numel(txbits);
fprintf('Bit error rate with CPE compensation: %f \n', errorRateCPE)

Bit error rate with CPE compensation: 0.000066

```

Further Exploration

- To visualize the impact of phase noise, change the carrier frequency, subcarrier spacing, number of resource blocks, modulation scheme, and the number of frames.
- To see the effects of phase noise on the constellation, change the phase noise model.
- To analyze the effect of CPE compensation with different configurations, change the time and frequency density of PTRS.

- Visualize the impacts of phase noise by including thermal noise and channel models.

Summary

This example demonstrates the impact of phase noise and shows how to estimate and correct CPE with PT-RS. The example also shows that CPE compensation reduces the EVM and improves bit error rate. The displayed constellation plot shows huge ICI in mmWave frequencies, indicating that ICI compensation needs to be performed in addition to CPE compensation.

Local Functions

```
function [eqSymbols,rxbits] = practicalReceiver(carrier,pdsch,params,rxWaveform)
% Returns equalized modulated symbols after performing the timing
% estimation, OFDM demodulation, channel estimation, MMSE equalization,
% CPE estimation and correction, and PDSCH decoding.

% Get the current slot number, number of slots, number of symbols
% per slot, and total number of symbols
nSlot = carrier.NSlot;
numSlots = carrier.SlotsPerFrame*params.NumFrames;
nSlotSymb = carrier.SymbolsPerSlot;
numTotalSymbols = numSlots*nSlotSymb;

% Get reference grid with DM-RS symbols
dmrsSymCell = cell(1,numSlots);
dmrsIndCell = cell(1,numSlots);
refGrid = zeros(carrier.NSizeGrid*12,numTotalSymbols,pdsch.NumLayers);
for NSlot = 0:numSlots-1
    carrier.NSlot = NSlot;
    slotGrid = nrResourceGrid(carrier,pdsch.NumLayers);
    dmrsSymCell{NSlot+1} = nrPDSCHDMRS(carrier,pdsch);
    dmrsIndCell{NSlot+1} = nrPDSCHDMRSIndices(carrier,pdsch);
    slotGrid(dmrsIndCell{NSlot+1}) = dmrsSymCell{NSlot+1};
    refGrid(:,NSlot*nSlotSymb+1:(NSlot+1)*(nSlotSymb),:) = slotGrid;
end

% Perform timing estimation and correction
carrier.NSlot = nSlot;
offset = nrTimingEstimate(carrier,rxWaveform,refGrid);
waveformSync = rxWaveform(1+offset:end,:);

% Perform OFDM demodulation on the received data to recreate the
% resource grid, including padding in the event that practical
% synchronization results in an incomplete slots being demodulated
rxGrid = nrOFDMDemodulate(carrier,waveformSync);
[K,L,R] = size(rxGrid);
if (L < numTotalSymbols)
    rxGrid = cat(2,rxGrid,zeros(K,numTotalSymbols-L,R));
end

% Declare storage variables
eqSymbols = []; % equalized symbols for constellation plot
rxbits = [];

for NSlot = 0:numSlots-1
    % Extract grid for current slot
    currentGrid = rxGrid(:,NSlot*nSlotSymb+(1:nSlotSymb),:);
```

```

% Get the PDSCH resources
carrier.NSlot = NSlot;
dmrsSymbols = dmrsSymCell{NSlot+1};
dmrsIndices = dmrsIndCell{NSlot+1};
ptrsSymbols = nrPDSCHPTRS(carrier,pdsch);
ptrsIndices = nrPDSCHPTRSIndices(carrier,pdsch);
[pdschIndices,pdschIndicesInfo] = nrPDSCHIndices(carrier,pdsch);

% Channel estimation
[estChannelGrid,noiseEst] = nrChannelEstimate(currentGrid,dmrsIndices,dmrsSymbols,"CDMLen");

% Get PDSCH resource elements from the received grid
[pdschRx,pdschHest] = nrExtractResources(pdschIndices,currentGrid,estChannelGrid);

% Equalization
pdschEq = nrEqualizeMMSE(pdschRx,pdschHest,noiseEst);

% Common phase error (CPE) estimation and correction
if params.CompensateCPE
    % Initialize temporary grid to store equalized symbols
    tempGrid = nrResourceGrid(carrier,pdsch.NumLayers);

    % Extract PT-RS symbols from received grid and estimated
    % channel grid
    [ptrsRx,ptrsHest,~,~,~,ptrsLayerIndices] = nrExtractResources(ptrsIndices,currentGrid,estChannelGrid);

    % Equalize PT-RS symbols and map them to tempGrid
    ptrsEq = nrEqualizeMMSE(ptrsRx,ptrsHest,noiseEst);
    tempGrid(ptrsLayerIndices) = ptrsEq;

    % Estimate the residual channel at the PT-RS locations in
    % tempGrid
    cpe = nrChannelEstimate(tempGrid,ptrsIndices,ptrsSymbols);

    % Sum estimates across subcarriers, receive antennas, and
    % layers. Then, get the CPE by taking the angle of the
    % resultant sum
    cpe = angle(sum(cpe,[1 3 4]));

    % Map the equalized PDSCH symbols to tempGrid
    tempGrid(pdschIndices) = pdschEq;

    % Correct CPE in each OFDM symbol within the range of reference
    % PT-RS OFDM symbols
    if numel(pdschIndicesInfo.PTRSSymbolSet) > 0
        symLoc = pdschIndicesInfo.PTRSSymbolSet(1)+1:pdschIndicesInfo.PTRSSymbolSet(end);
        tempGrid(:,symLoc,:) = tempGrid(:,symLoc,:).*exp(-1i*cpe(symLoc));
    end

    % Extract PDSCH symbols
    pdschEq = tempGrid(pdschIndices);
end

% Store the equalized symbols and output them for all the slots
eqSymbols = [eqSymbols; pdschEq]; %#ok<AGROW>

% Decode the PDSCH symbols and get the hard bits
eqbits = nrPDSCHDecode(carrier,pdsch,pdschEq);

```

```

    for i = 1:numel(eqbits)
        rxbits = [rxbits; double(eqbits{i}<0)]; %#ok<AGROW>
    end

end

end

function sym = getConstellationPoints(pdsch)
%getConstellationPoints Constellation points
% SYM = getConstellationPoints(PDSCH) returns the constellation points
% SYM based on modulation schemes provided in PDSCH configuration object.

sym = [];
modulation = string(pdsch.Modulation); % Convert modulation scheme to string type
ncw = pdsch.NumCodewords; % Number of codewords
if ncw == 2 && (numel(modulation) == 1)
    modulation(end+1) = modulation(1);
end
% Get the constellation points
for cwIndex = 1:ncw
    qm = strcmpi(modulation(cwIndex),{'QPSK','16QAM','64QAM','256QAM'})*[2 4 6 8]';
    sym = [sym; nrSymbolModulate(reshape(de2bi(0:2^qm-1,qm,'left-msb'),[],1),modulation(cwIndex))];
end

end

end

```

See Also

More About

- “EVM Measurement of 5G NR PDSCH Waveforms” on page 6-59

End-To-End Simulation

Transmission Over MIMO Channel Model with Delay Profile TDL

Display the waveform spectrum received through a tapped delay line (TDL) multi-input/multi-output (MIMO) channel model from TR 38.901 Section 7.7.2 using an `nrTDLChannel` System object.

Define the channel configuration structure using an `nrTDLChannel` System object. Use delay profile TDL-C from TR 38.901 Section 7.7.2, a delay spread of 300 ns, and UE velocity of 30 km/h:

```
v = 30.0; % UE velocity in km/h
fc = 4e9; % carrier frequency in Hz
c = physconst('lightspeed'); % speed of light in m/s
fd = (v*1000/3600)/c*fc; % UE max Doppler frequency in Hz
```

```
tdl = nrTDLChannel;
tdl.DelayProfile = 'TDL-C';
tdl.DelaySpread = 300e-9;
tdl.MaximumDopplerShift = fd;
```

Create a random waveform of 1 subframe duration with 1 antenna.

```
SR = 30.72e6;
T = SR * 1e-3;
tdl.SampleRate = SR;
tdlinfo = info(tdl);
Nt = tdlinfo.NumTransmitAntennas;

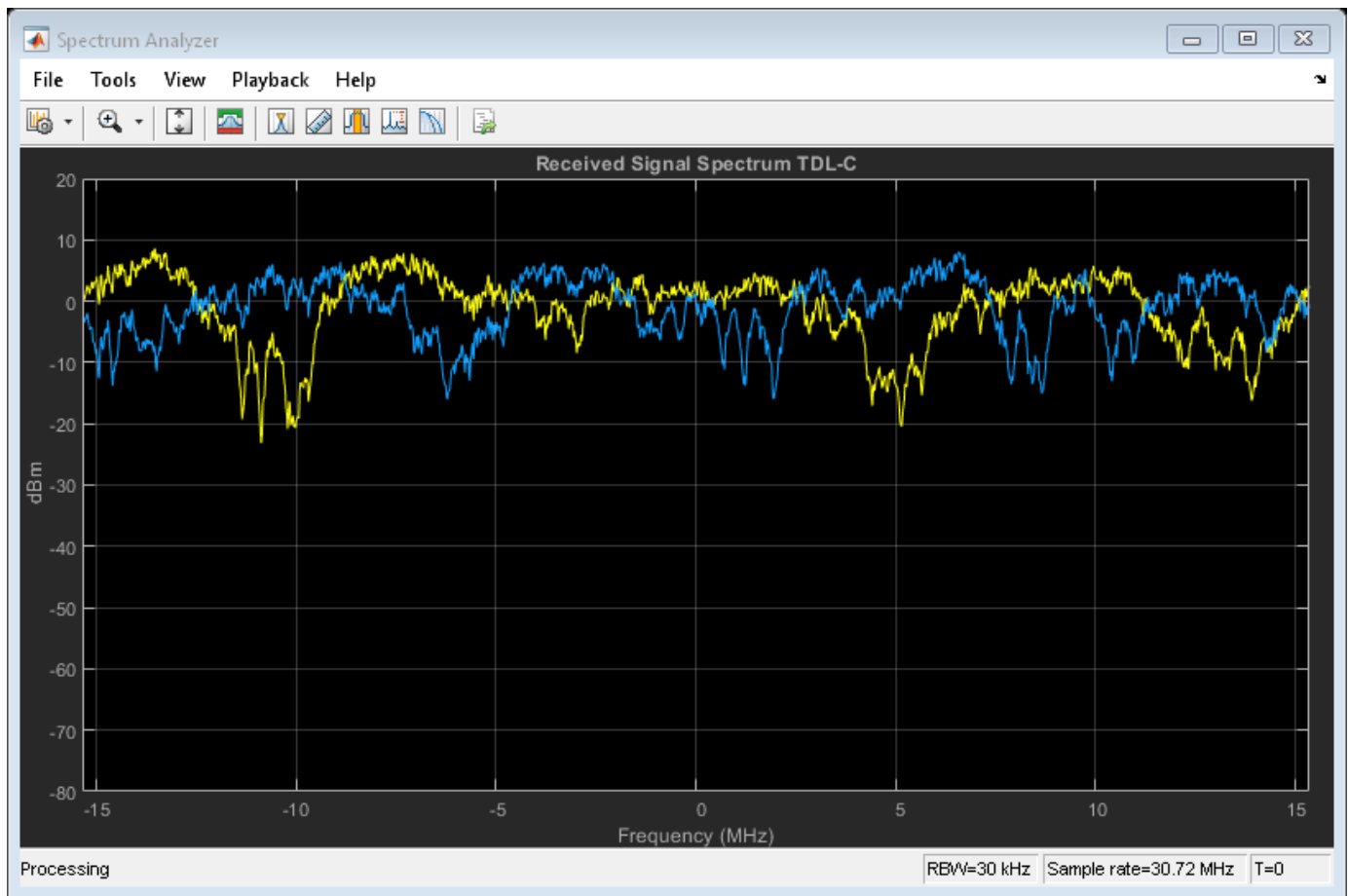
txWaveform = complex(randn(T,Nt),randn(T,Nt));
```

Transmit the input waveform through the channel.

```
rxWaveform = tdl(txWaveform);
```

Plot the received waveform spectrum.

```
analyzer = dsp.SpectrumAnalyzer('SampleRate',tdl.SampleRate,...
    'AveragingMethod','Exponential','ForgettingFactor',0.99 );
analyzer.Title = ['Received Signal Spectrum ' tdl.DelayProfile];
analyzer(rxWaveform);
```



See Also

Objects

nrTDLChannel

Plot Path Gains for TDL-E Delay Profile with SISO

Plot the path gains of a tapped delay line (TDL) single-input/single-output (SISO) channel using an `nrTDLChannel` System object.

Configure a channel with delay profile TDL-E from TR 38.901 Section 7.7.2. Set the maximum Doppler shift to 70 Hz and enable path gain output.

```
tdl = nrTDLChannel;  
tdl.SampleRate = 500e3;  
tdl.MaximumDopplerShift = 70;  
tdl.DelayProfile = 'TDL-E';
```

Configure the transmit and receive antenna arrays for SISO operation.

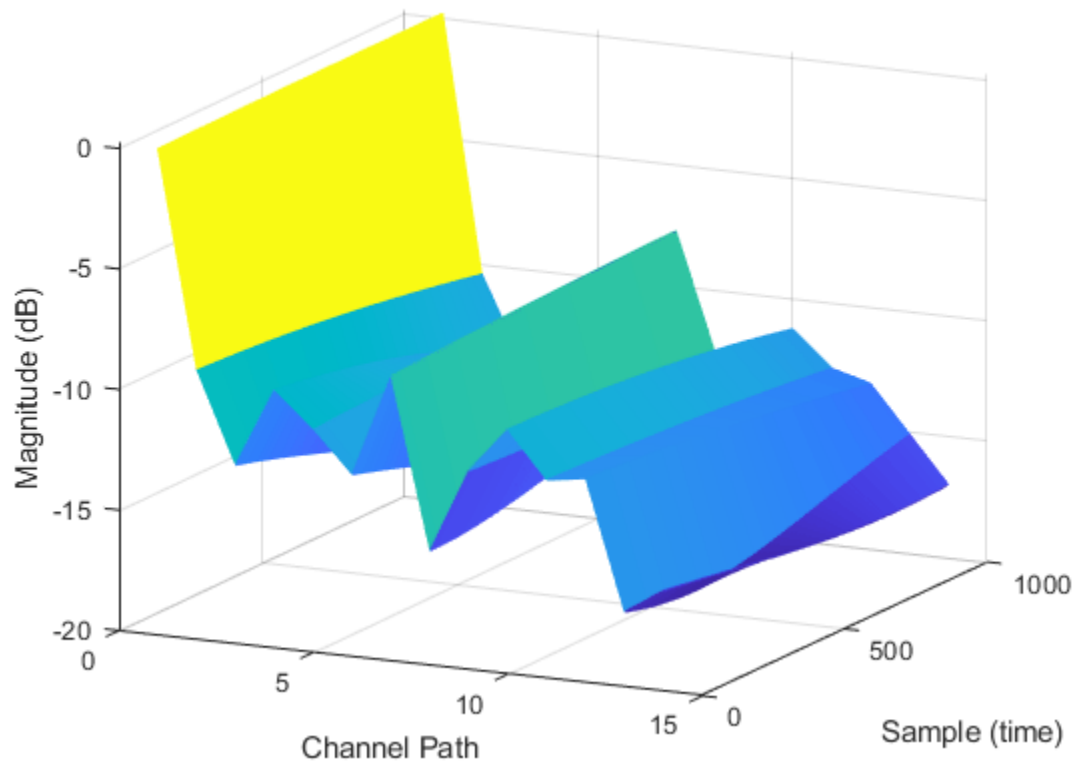
```
tdl.NumTransmitAntennas = 1;  
tdl.NumReceiveAntennas = 1;
```

Create a dummy input signal. The length of the input determines the time samples of the generated path gain.

```
in = zeros(1000,tdl.NumTransmitAntennas);
```

To generate the path gains, call the channel on the input. Plot the results.

```
[~, pathGains] = tdl(in);  
mesh(10*log10(abs(pathGains)));  
view(26,17); xlabel('Channel Path');  
ylabel('Sample (time)'); zlabel('Magnitude (dB)');
```



See Also

Objects

nrTDLChannel

Reconstruct Channel Impulse Response Using CDL Channel Path Filters

Reconstruct the channel impulse response and perform timing offset estimation using path filters of a Clustered Delay Line (CDL) channel model with delay profile CDL-D from TR 38.901 Section 7.7.1.

Define the channel configuration structure using an `nrCDLChannel` System object. Use delay profile CDL-D, a delay spread of 10 ns, and UE velocity of 15 km/h:

```
v = 15.0; % UE velocity in km/h
fc = 4e9; % carrier frequency in Hz
c = physconst('lightspeed'); % speed of light in m/s
fd = (v*1000/3600)/c*fc; % UE max Doppler frequency in Hz

cdl = nrCDLChannel;
cdl.DelayProfile = 'CDL-D';
cdl.DelaySpread = 10e-9;
cdl.CarrierFrequency = fc;
cdl.MaximumDopplerShift = fd;
```

Configure the transmit array as $[M \ N \ P \ M_g \ N_g] = [2 \ 2 \ 2 \ 1 \ 1]$, representing 1 panel ($M_g=1$, $N_g=1$) with a 2-by-2 antenna array ($M=2$, $N=2$) and $P=2$ polarization angles. Configure the receive antenna array as $[M \ N \ P \ M_g \ N_g] = [1 \ 1 \ 2 \ 1 \ 1]$, representing a single pair of cross-polarized co-located antennas.

```
cdl.TransmitAntennaArray.Size = [2 2 2 1 1];
cdl.ReceiveAntennaArray.Size = [1 1 2 1 1];
```

Create a random waveform of 1 subframe duration with 8 antennas.

```
SR = 15.36e6;
T = SR * 1e-3;
cdl.SampleRate = SR;
cdlinfo = info(cdl);
Nt = cdlinfo.NumTransmitAntennas;

txWaveform = complex(randn(T,Nt),randn(T,Nt));
```

Transmit the input waveform through the channel.

```
[rxWaveform,pathGains] = cdl(txWaveform);
```

Obtain the path filters used in channel filtering.

```
pathFilters = getPathFilters(cdl);
```

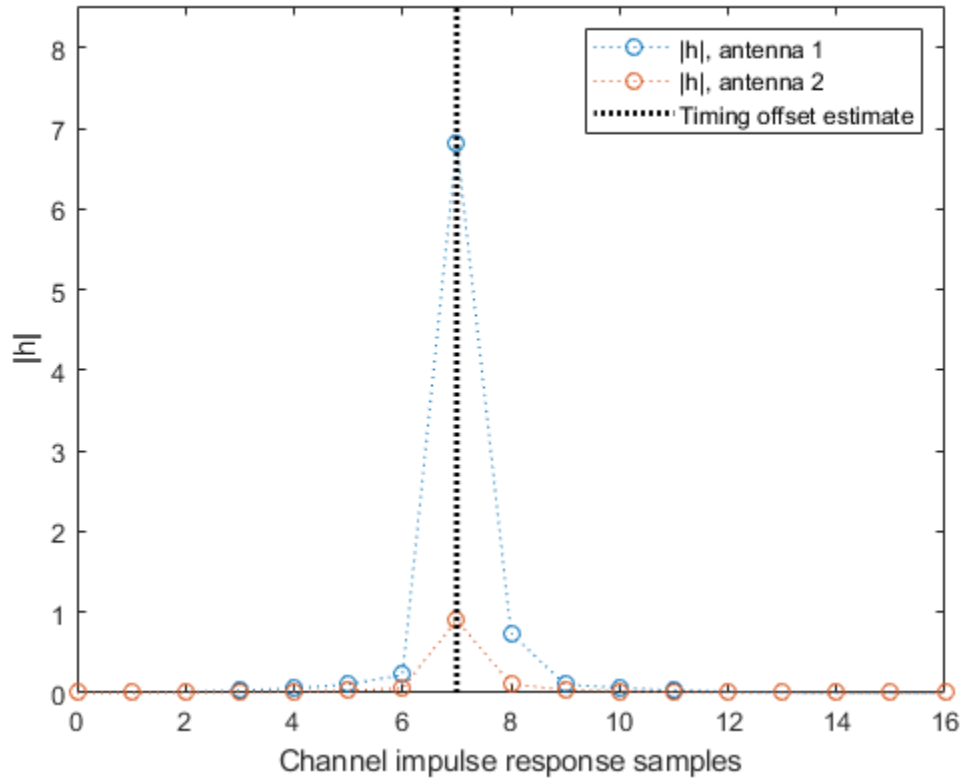
Perform timing offset estimation using `nrPerfectTimingEstimate`.

```
[offset,mag] = nrPerfectTimingEstimate(pathGains,pathFilters);
```

Plot the magnitude of the channel impulse response.

```
[Nh,Nr] = size(mag);
plot(0:(Nh-1),mag,'o:');
hold on;
plot([offset offset],[0 max(mag(:))*1.25],'k:','LineWidth',2);
axis([0 Nh-1 0 max(mag(:))*1.25]);
```

```
legends = "|h|, antenna " + num2cell(1:Nr);  
legend([legends "Timing offset estimate"]);  
ylabel('|h|');  
xlabel('Channel impulse response samples');
```



See Also

Functions

nrPerfectTimingEstimate

Visualize CDL Channel Model Characteristics

This example shows how to visualize CDL channel characteristics and explore channel information about the antenna element, element pattern, and cluster paths.

Define the channel configuration structure by using an `nrCDLChannel` System object. Specify the delay profile as CDL-D.

```
cdl = nrCDLChannel;
cdl.DelayProfile = 'CDL-D';
```

Configure the transmit array size as a vector of the form $[M N P M_g N_g] = [4 3 2 1 2]$, which specifies two rectangular panels ($M_g = 1$ and $N_g = 2$) of a 4-by-3 antenna array ($M = 4$ and $N = 3$) and two polarizations ($P = 2$). The total number of polarized elements in the array is $M \times N \times P \times M_g \times N_g = 48$.

```
txSize = [4 3 2 1 2];
cdl.TransmitAntennaArray.Size = txSize;
```

Configure the vertical and horizontal element spacing and the vertical and horizontal panel spacing, in wavelength, as a vector of the form $[\lambda_v \lambda_h dg_v dg_h]$. Because panel spacing is measured from the center of the panels, to avoid panel overlapping, set dg_h to a value greater than 1 wavelength. To ensure uniform antenna element spacing across vertically and horizontally separated panels, configure panel spacings as $dg_v = \lambda_v \times M$ and $dg_h = \lambda_h \times N$, respectively.

```
lambda_v = 0.5;
lambda_h = 0.5;
dg_v = lambda_v*txSize(1); % lambda_v * M
dg_h = lambda_h*txSize(2); % lambda_h * N
cdl.TransmitAntennaArray.ElementSpacing = [lambda_v lambda_h dg_v dg_h];
```

Configure the mechanical orientation of the array as $[\alpha \beta \gamma]^T = [0 15 0]^T$, which specifies 0 degrees bearing, 15 degrees downtilt, and 0 degrees slant.

```
cdl.TransmitArrayOrientation = [0 15 0]';
```

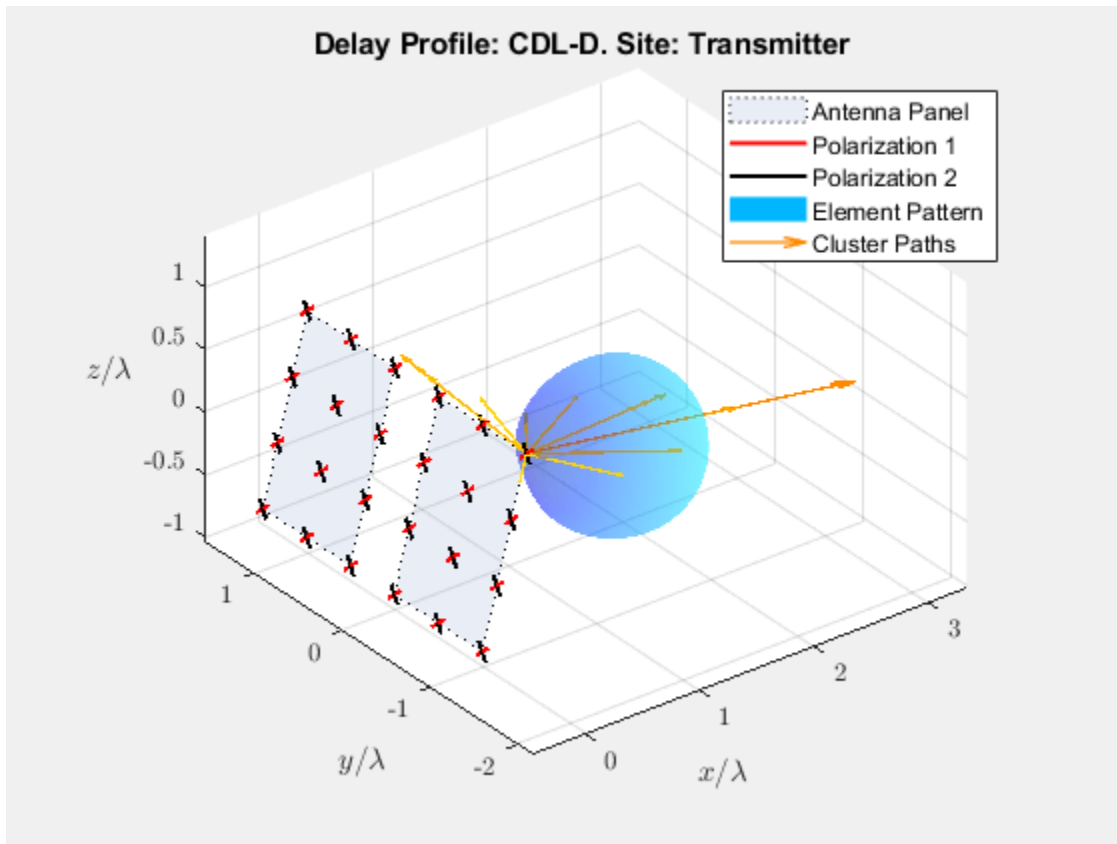
For an overview of all other transmit antenna array properties, see the “`TransmitAntennaArray`” property of the `nrCDLChannel` System object.

Display the channel characteristics at the transmitter end.

```
figTx = displayChannel(cdl, 'LinkEnd', 'Tx');
```

The generated figure supports customized data tips. Add data tips in the current figure by enabling the data cursor mode.

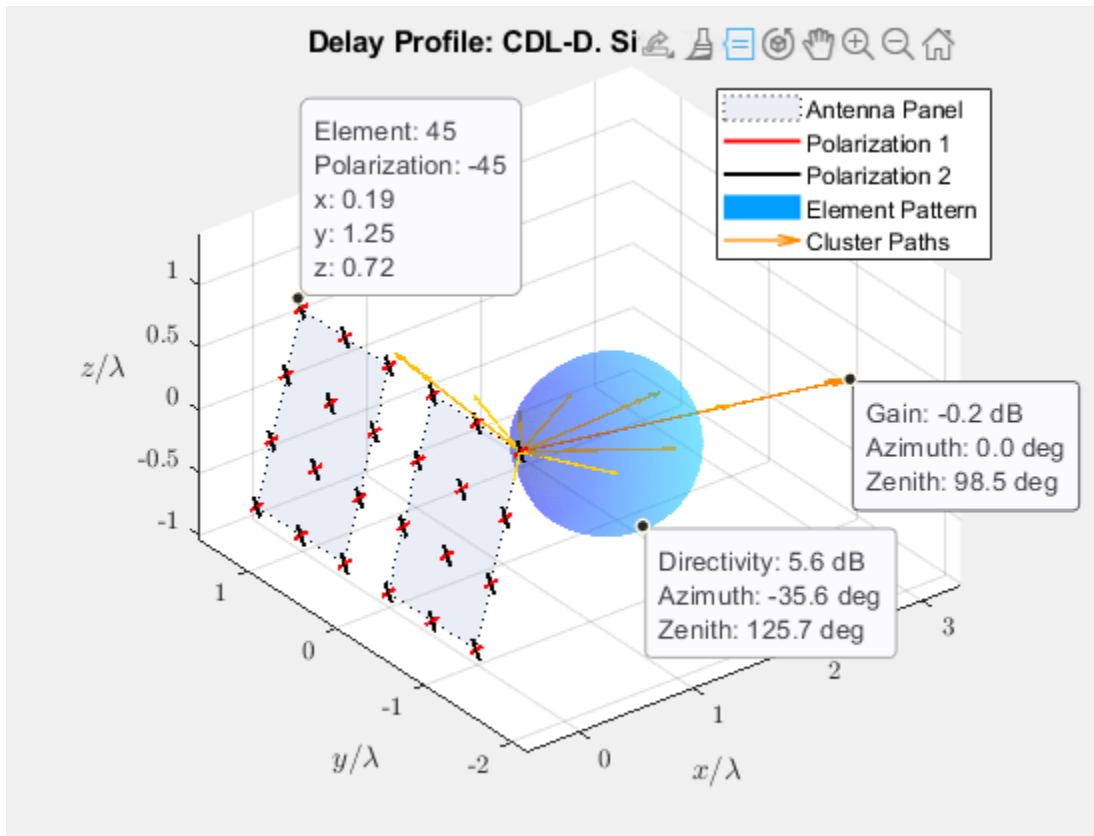
```
datacursormode on;
```

With data cursor mode enabled, explore channel characteristics by adding data tips. To create a data tip, click a data point. To create multiple data tips, press the **Shift** key while clicking the data points.

For example, this figure shows data tips added to the antenna element, element pattern, and cluster paths at the transmitter end.

- Antenna element data tips include information about the position, polarization angle, and element number of each antenna element. The element numbers indicate the order in which the channel model maps input signals column-wise to antenna elements. For more details, see the `TransmitAntennaArray.size` property of the `nrCDLChannel` System object.
- Element pattern data tips include the directivity corresponding to any azimuth and zenith angles.
- Cluster path data tips include the average path gain and azimuth and zenith angles of the cluster path.

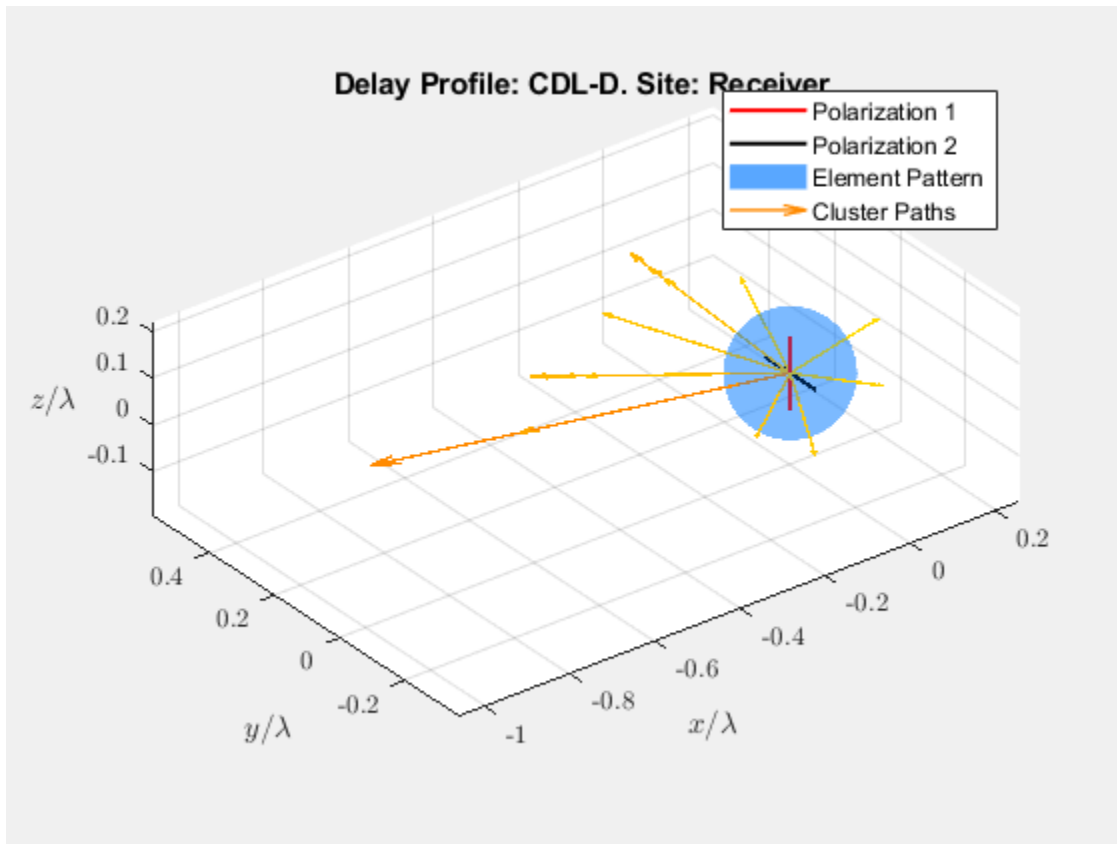


Visualize and explore channel characteristics at the receiver end. To customize the receive antenna array, use the “ReceiveAntennaArray” property of the `nrCDLChannel` System object. Then, display the channel characteristics at the receiver end by calling the `displayChannel` function with the ‘LinkEnd’, ‘Rx’ name-value pair argument.

```
figRx = displayChannel(cdl, 'LinkEnd', 'Rx');
```

Explore channel information about the antenna element, element pattern, and cluster paths at the receiver end by enabling data cursor mode for the current figure.

```
datacursormode on;
```



See Also

Functions

`displayChannel` | `info`

Objects

`nrCDLChannel`

More About

- “Interactively Explore Plotted Data”

NR PUCCH Block Error Rate

This example shows how to measure the block error rate (BLER) of uplink control information (UCI) transmitted on the physical uplink control channel (PUCCH) in a 5G NR link using 5G Toolbox™ features.

Introduction

This example measures the BLER of UCI transmitted on PUCCH format 3 of a 5G link.

The UCI BLER is defined as the probability of incorrectly decoding the UCI when the UCI is transmitted.

$$\text{BLER}_{\text{UCI}} = \frac{\#(\text{false UCI})}{\#(\text{UCI})}$$

- $\#(\text{false UCI})$ is the number of instances when transmitted UCI is incorrectly decoded.
- $\#(\text{UCI})$ is the number of instances when UCI is transmitted.

These 5G NR features are modeled in this example.

- UCI encoding and decoding
- PUCCH and associated demodulation reference signal (DM-RS)
- OFDM modulation and demodulation
- Tapped delay line (TDL) propagation channel

Other features of the simulation in this example are:

- Perfect or practical synchronization and channel estimation
- Equalization

To reduce the total simulation time, you can use Parallel Computing Toolbox™ features to execute the signal to noise ratio (SNR) points of the SNR loop in parallel.

Simulation Length and SNR Points

Set the length of the simulation in terms of the number of 10 ms frames. A large number for `NFrames` must be used to produce meaningful throughput results. Set the SNR points to simulate. The SNR is defined per resource element (RE) and applies to each receive antenna.

```
simParameters = struct;           % Create simParameters structure
simParameters.NFrames = 5;       % Number of 10 ms frames
simParameters.SNRIn = -14:2:-4; % SNR range (dB)
```

Set the `displaySimulationInformation` variable to `true` to display the information of BLER simulation at each SNR point.

```
displaySimulationInformation =  ;
```

Carrier and PUCCH Configuration

Set carrier with these properties:

- Physical layer cell identity
- Subcarrier spacing (SCS) in kHz
- Cyclic prefix
- Bandwidth in resource blocks (RBs). Each RB contains 12 subcarriers
- Starting RB of the carrier with respect to the common resource block 0 (CRB 0)

Set PUCCH format 3 configuration with these properties:

- Allocated set of RBs
- Symbol allocation ([S L])
- Modulation scheme
- Frequency hopping configuration
- Second hop starting RB
- Group hopping configuration
- Scrambling identities
- Additional DM-RS configuration

Set these additional simulation-wide parameters:

- Number of transmit antennas
- Number of receive antennas

`% Set carrier resource grid properties (15 kHz SCS and 10 MHz bandwidth)`

```
carrier = nrCarrierConfig;
```

```
carrier.NCellID = 0;
```

```
carrier.SubcarrierSpacing = 15 kHz;
```

```
carrier.CyclicPrefix = normal;
```

```
carrier.NSizeGrid = 52;
```

```
carrier.NStartGrid = 0;
```

`% Set PUCCH format 3 properties`

```
pucch = nrPUCCH3Config;
```

```
pucch.PRBSets = 0;
```

```
pucch.SymbolAllocation = [0 14];
```

```
pucch.Modulation = QPSK;
```

```
pucch.FrequencyHopping = intraSlot;
```

```
pucch.SecondHopStartPRB = (carrier.NSizeGrid-1) - (numel(pucch.PRBSets)-1);
```

```
pucch.GroupHopping = neither;
```

```
pucch.HoppingID = 0;
```

```
pucch.NID = [];
```

```
pucch.RNTI = 1;
```

```
pucch.AdditionalDMRS = 0;
```

`% Set number of transmit and receive antennas`

```
simParameters.NTxAnts = 1;
simParameters.NRxAnts = 2;
```

UCI Configuration

The field `NumUCIBits` indicates the number of random UCI bits used for generation of the UCI payload. The number of UCI bits must be in the range from 3 to 1706.

```
simParameters.NumUCIBits = 16; % Number of UCI bits
```

Channel Estimator Configuration

The logical variable `perfectChannelEstimator` controls the channel estimation and synchronization behavior. When you set the value to `true`, the perfect channel estimation and synchronization is used. Otherwise, practical channel estimation and synchronization is used, based on the values of the received PUCCH DM-RS.

```
perfectChannelEstimator = true;
```

Propagation Channel Model Configuration

Create the TDL channel model with the configuration of 'TDLC300-100 Low', specified in Annex G, Table G.2.1.1-4 of TS 38.104.

```
% Set up TDL channel
channel = nrTDLChannel;
channel.DelayProfile = 'Custom';
channel.MaximumDopplerShift = 100; % in Hz
channel.MIMOCorrelation = 'low';
channel.TransmissionDirection = 'Uplink';
delay = [0 65e-9 70e-9 190e-9 195e-9 200e-9 240e-9 325e-9 520e-9 1045e-9 1510e-9 2595e-9];
gain = [-6.9 0 -7.7 -2.5 -2.4 -9.9 -8 -6.6 -7.1 -13 -14.2 -16];
channel.PathDelays = delay;
channel.AveragePathGains = gain;
channel.NumTransmitAntennas = simParameters.NTxAnts;
channel.NumReceiveAntennas = simParameters.NRxAnts;
```

Set the sampling rate for the channel model by using the value returned from the `nrOFDMInfo` function.

```
waveformInfo = nrOFDMInfo(carrier);
channel.SampleRate = waveformInfo.SampleRate;
```

Calculate the maximum number of delayed samples from the channel path with the largest delay and the implementation delay of the channel filter. This maximum delay is required later to flush the channel filter to obtain the received signal.

```
chInfo = info(channel);
maxChDelay = ceil(max(chInfo.PathDelays*channel.SampleRate));
maxChDelay = maxChDelay + chInfo.ChannelFilterDelay;
```

Processing Loop and Results

To determine the BLER of UCI at each SNR point, the UCI transmitted on the PUCCH is analyzed per transmission instance using these steps.

- 1 **Generate the resource grid:** The `nrUCIEncode` function encodes the UCI. The `nrPUCCH` function modulates the encoded UCI. An implementation-specific multiple-input-multiple-output (MIMO) precoding is applied to the modulated symbols. These modulated symbols along with reference signal are mapped to the resource grid.
- 2 **Generate the waveform:** The `nrOFDMModulate` function OFDM-modulates the generated grid to get the time domain waveform.
- 3 **Model and apply a noisy channel:** The generated waveform is passed through a TDL fading channel to get the faded waveform. Then, additive white Gaussian noise (AWGN) is added to the faded waveform. The SNR for each layer is defined per RE and per receive antenna.
- 4 **Perform synchronization and OFDM demodulation:** For perfect synchronization, the path gains and path filters of the channel are used. For practical synchronization, the received waveform is correlated with the PUCCH DM-RS. The `nrOFDMDemodulate` function then OFDM-demodulates the synchronized signal.
- 5 **Perform channel estimation:** For perfect channel estimation, the path gains, path filters, and the sample times of channel snapshots are used. For practical channel estimation, the PUCCH DM-RS is used.
- 6 **Extract the PUCCH and perform equalization:** The `nrExtractResources` function extracts the REs corresponding to the PUCCH allocation from the received OFDM resource grid and the estimated channel grid. The `nrEqualizeMMSE` function then equalizes the received PUCCH REs.
- 7 **Decode the PUCCH:** The equalized PUCCH symbols, along with a noise estimate, are demodulated and descrambled to obtain an estimate of the received codeword.
- 8 **Decode the UCI:** The decoded codeword is passed through the `nrUCIDecode` function, and the number of instances of incorrect UCI decoding is recorded.

```
% Specify array to store output(s) for all SNR points
```

```
blerUCI = zeros(length(simParameters.SNRIn),1);
```

```
% Assign temporary variables for parallel simulation
```

```
nTxAnts = simParameters.NTxAnts;
nRxAnts = simParameters.NRxAnts;
snrIn = simParameters.SNRIn;
nFrames = simParameters.NFrames;
ouci = simParameters.NumUCIBits;
nFFT = waveformInfo.Nfft;
symbolsPerSlot = carrier.SymbolsPerSlot;
slotsPerFrame = carrier.SlotsPerFrame;
```

```
% Validate number of frames
```

```
validateattributes(nFrames,{'double'},{'scalar','positive','integer'},','simParameters.NFrames')
```

```
% Validate SNR range
```

```
validateattributes(snrIn,{'double'},{'real','vector','finite'},','simParameters.SNRIn')
```

```
% Validate PUCCH configuration
```

```
classPUCCH = validatestring(class(pucch),{'nrPUCCH2Config','nrPUCCH3Config','nrPUCCH4Config'},'formatPUCCH = classPUCCH(8);
```

```
% The temporary variables carrier_init and pucch_init are used to
% create the temporary variables carrier and pucch in the SNR loop
% to create independent instances in case of parallel simulation.
carrier_init = carrier;
pucch_init = pucch;
```

```
for snrIdx = 1:numel(snrIn) % Comment out for parallel computing
% parfor snrIdx = 1:numel(snrIn) % Uncomment for parallel computing
% To reduce the total simulation time, you can execute this loop in
% parallel by using Parallel Computing Toolbox features. Comment out the
% for-loop statement and uncomment the parfor-loop statement. If
% Parallel Computing Toolbox is not installed, parfor-loop defaults to
% a for-loop statement. Because the parfor-loop iterations are executed
% in parallel in a nondeterministic order, the simulation information
% displayed for each SNR point can be intertwined. To switch off the
% simulation information display, set the displaySimulationInformation
% variable (defined earlier in this example) to false.

% Reset the random number generator and channel so that each SNR point
% experiences the same noise and channel realizations.
rng('default')
reset(channel)

% Initialize variables for this SNR point (required when using
% Parallel Computing Toolbox)
carrier = carrier_init;
pucch = pucch_init;
pathFilters = [];

% Get operating SNR value
SNRdB = snrIn(snrIdx);

% Get total number of slots in the simulation period
NSlots = nFrames*slotsPerFrame;

% Set timing offset, which is updated in every slot for perfect
% synchronization and when correlation is strong for practical
% synchronization
offset = 0;

% Set variable to store block errors for each SNR point with 0
ucierr = 0;
for nslot = 0:NSlots-1

    % Update carrier slot number to account for new slot transmission
    carrier.NSlot = nslot;

    % Get PUCCH resources
    [pucchIndices,pucchIndicesInfo] = nrPUCCHIndices(carrier,pucch);
    dmrsIndices = nrPUCCHDMRSIndices(carrier,pucch);
    dmrsSymbols = nrPUCCHDMRS(carrier,pucch);

    % Create random UCI bits
    uci = randi([0 1],ouci,1);

    % Perform UCI encoding
    codedUCI = nrUCIEncode(uci,pucchIndicesInfo.G);

    % Perform PUCCH modulation
    pucchSymbols = nrPUCCH(carrier,pucch,codedUCI);

    % Create resource grid associated with PUCCH transmission antennas
    pucchGrid = nrResourceGrid(carrier,nTxAnts);
```



```

% Perform implementation-specific PUCCH MIMO precoding and mapping
F = eye(1,nTxAnts);
[~,pucchAntIndices] = nrExtractResources(pucchIndices,pucchGrid);
pucchGrid(pucchAntIndices) = pucchSymbols*F;

% Perform implementation-specific PUCCH DM-RS MIMO precoding and mapping
[~,dmrsAntIndices] = nrExtractResources(dmrsIndices,pucchGrid);
pucchGrid(dmrsAntIndices) = dmrsSymbols*F;

% Perform OFDM modulation
txWaveform = nrOFDMModulate(carrier,pucchGrid);

% Pass data through the channel model. Append zeros at the end of
% the transmitted waveform to flush the channel content. These
% zeros take into account any delay introduced in the channel. This
% delay is a combination of the multipath delay and implementation
% delay. This value can change depending on the sampling rate,
% delay profile, and delay spread.
txWaveformChDelay = [txWaveform; zeros(maxChDelay,size(txWaveform,2))];
[rxWaveform,pathGains,sampleTimes] = channel(txWaveformChDelay);

% Add AWGN to the received time domain waveform. Normalize the
% noise power by the size of the inverse fast Fourier transform
% (IFFT) used in OFDM modulation, because the OFDM modulator
% applies this normalization to the transmitted waveform. Also,
% normalize the noise power by the number of receive antennas,
% because the default behavior of the channel model is to apply
% this normalization to the received waveform.
SNR = 10^(SNRdB/20);
N0 = 1/(sqrt(2.0*nRxAnts*nFFT)*SNR);
noise = N0*complex(randn(size(rxWaveform)),randn(size(rxWaveform)));
rxWaveform = rxWaveform + noise;

% Perform synchronization
if perfectChannelEstimator == 1
    % For perfect synchronization, use the information provided by
    % the channel to find the strongest multipath component.
    pathFilters = getPathFilters(channel);
    [offset,mag] = nrPerfectTimingEstimate(pathGains,pathFilters);
else
    % For practical synchronization, correlate the received
    % waveform with the PUCCH DM-RS to give timing offset estimate
    % t and correlation magnitude mag. The function hSkipWeakTimingOffset
    % is used to update the receiver timing offset. If the correlation
    % peak in mag is weak, the current timing estimate t is ignored
    % and the previous estimate offset is used.
    [t,mag] = nrTimingEstimate(carrier,rxWaveform,dmrsIndices,dmrsSymbols);
    offset = hSkipWeakTimingOffset(offset,t,mag);
end
rxWaveform = rxWaveform(1+offset:end,:);

% Perform OFDM demodulation on the received data to recreate the
% resource grid. Include zero padding in the event that practical
% synchronization results in an incomplete slot being demodulated.
rxGrid = nrOFDMDemodulate(carrier,rxWaveform);
[K,L,R] = size(rxGrid);
if (L < symbolsPerSlot)
    rxGrid = cat(2,rxGrid,zeros(K,symbolsPerSlot-L,R));

```

```

end

% Perform channel estimation
if perfectChannelEstimator == 1
    % For perfect channel estimation, use the value of the path
    % gains provided by the channel.
    estChannelGrid = nrPerfectChannelEstimate(carrier,pathGains,pathFilters,offset,sampL

    % Get the perfect noise estimate (from the noise realization).
    noiseGrid = nrOFDMDemodulate(carrier,noise(1+offset:end,:));
    noiseEst = var(noiseGrid(:));

    % Apply MIMO decoding to estChannelGrid to give an
    % estimate per transmission layer.
    K = size(estChannelGrid,1);
    estChannelGrid = reshape(estChannelGrid,K*symbolsPerSlot*nRxAnts,nTxAnts);
    estChannelGrid = estChannelGrid*F.';
    estChannelGrid = reshape(estChannelGrid,K,symbolsPerSlot,nRxAnts,[]);
else
    % For practical channel estimation, use PUCCH DM-RS.
    [estChannelGrid,noiseEst] = nrChannelEstimate(carrier,rxGrid,dmrsIndices,dmrsSymbols
end

% Get PUCCH REs from received grid and estimated channel grid
[pucchRx,pucchHest] = nrExtractResources(pucchIndices,rxGrid,estChannelGrid);

% Perform equalization
[pucchEq,csi] = nrEqualizeMMSE(pucchRx,pucchHest,noiseEst);

% Decode PUCCH symbols
[uciLLRs,rxSymbols] = hPUCCHDecode(carrier,pucch,pucchEq,noiseEst);

% Decode UCI
decucibits = nrUCIDecode(uciLLRs{1},ouci);

% Store values to calculate BLER
ucierr = ucierr + (~isequal(decucibits,uci));

end

% Calculate UCI BLER for each SNR point
blerUCI(snrIdx) = ucierr/NSlots;

% Display results dynamically
if displaySimulationInformation == 1
    fprintf(['UCI BLER of PUCCH format ' formatPUCCH ' for ' num2str(nFrames) ' frame(s) at S
end
end
end

UCI BLER of PUCCH format 3 for 5 frame(s) at SNR -14 dB: 0.74
UCI BLER of PUCCH format 3 for 5 frame(s) at SNR -12 dB: 0.44
UCI BLER of PUCCH format 3 for 5 frame(s) at SNR -10 dB: 0.28
UCI BLER of PUCCH format 3 for 5 frame(s) at SNR -8 dB: 0.1
UCI BLER of PUCCH format 3 for 5 frame(s) at SNR -6 dB: 0.06
UCI BLER of PUCCH format 3 for 5 frame(s) at SNR -4 dB: 0.02

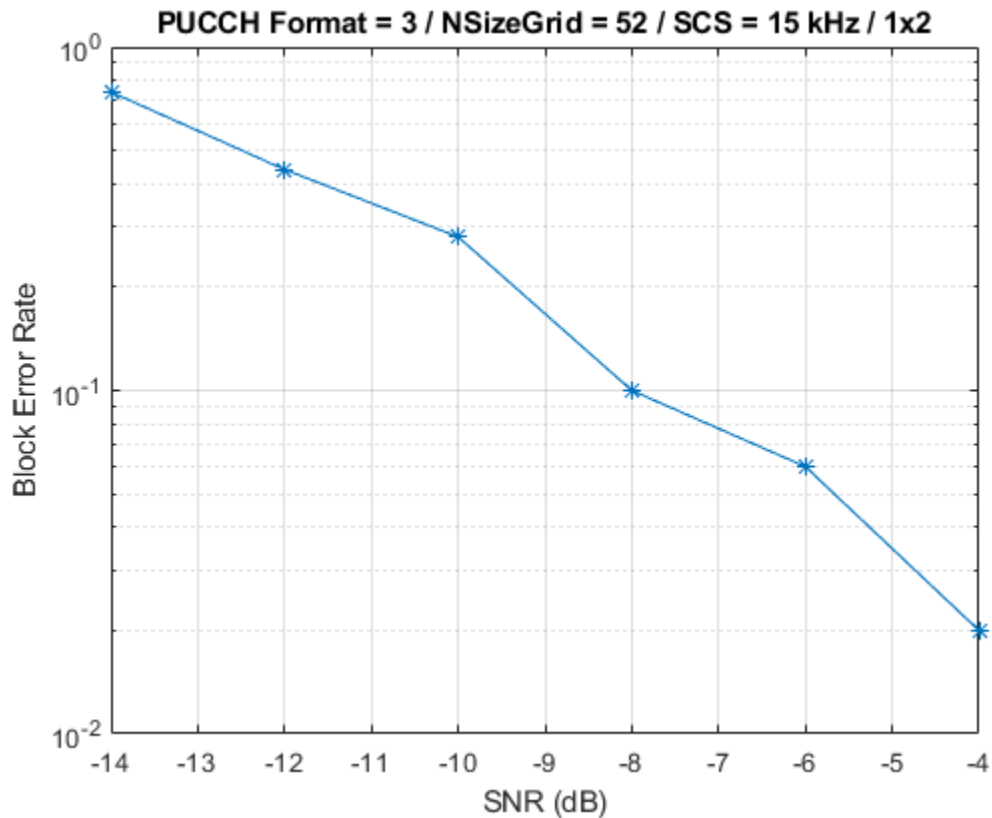
% Plot results
figure

```

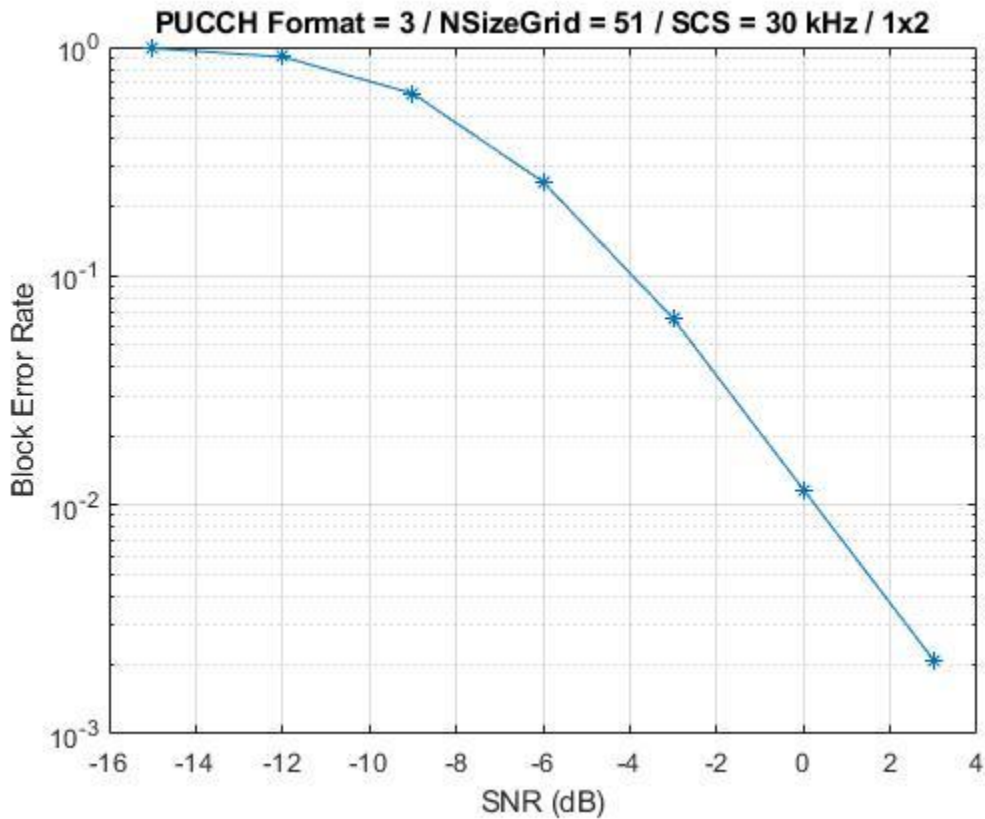
```

semilogy(snrIn,blerUCI,'-*')
grid on
xlabel('SNR (dB)')
ylabel('Block Error Rate')
title(sprintf('PUCCH Format = %s / NSizeGrid = %d / SCS = %d kHz / %dx%d',...
    formatPUCCH,carrier_init.NSizeGrid,carrier_init.SubcarrierSpacing,nTxAnts,nRxAnts))

```



This next figure shows the BLER results obtained by simulating 1500 frames ($N_{\text{Frames}} = 1500$, $\text{SNR}_{\text{In}} = -15:3:3$) for a carrier with 30 kHz SCS occupying a 20 MHz transmission bandwidth. The simulation setup includes the default PUCCH format 3 configuration placed in the example with the number of UCI bits set to 16 and the `perfectChannelEstimator` variable set to false.



Further Exploration

- To analyze the UCI BLER at each SNR point, toggle the value of `perfectChannelEstimator` variable and change the range of SNR values.
- To check the BLER performance of different scenarios, change the carrier numerology, the number of transmit and receive antennas, and the channel model.
- To observe the BLER performance of PUCCH formats 2 and 4, use the `nrPUCCH2Config` object and the `nrPUCCH4Config` object, respectively, for the `pucch` variable in section Carrier and PUCCH Configuration on page 4-0 .

Summary

The example demonstrates how to measure the UCI BLER when UCI is transmitted on PUCCH format 3. The example also displays and plots the BLER as a function of SNR.

Appendix

The example uses this helper file.

- `hSkipWeakTimingOffset`

References

- 1 3GPP TS 38.211. "NR; Physical channels and modulation (Release 15)." *3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Radio Access Network*.

- 2 3GPP TS 38.212. "NR; Multiplexing and channel coding (Release 15)." *3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Radio Access Network.*
- 3 3GPP TS 38.104. "NR; Base Station (BS) radio transmission and reception (Release 15)." *3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Radio Access Network.*

Local Functions

This example uses these local functions to support PUCCH decoding of formats 2, 3, and 4.

```
function [cw,symbols] = hPUCCHDecode(carrier,pucch,sym,nVar)
%hPUCCHDecode Perform PUCCH decoding for formats 2, 3, and 4

    % Perform transform deprecoding for PUCCH formats 3 and 4
    tfdpcde = sym;
    modulation = 'QPSK';
    if ~isa(pucch,'nrPUCCH2Config')
        mRB = unique(numel(pucch.PRBSets(:)));
        tfdpcde = nrTransformDeprecode(sym,mRB);
        modulation = pucch.Modulation;
    end

    % Perform block-wise despreading for PUCCH format 4
    symbols = tfdpcde;
    if isa(pucch,'nrPUCCH4Config')
        mSC = mRB*12;
        tfdpcde = reshape(tfdpcde,mSC,[]);
        sf = double(pucch.SpreadingFactor);
        wn = getOrthogonalSeqFormat4(sf,pucch.OCCI);
        % Multiply tfdpcde with conjugate of wn
        temp = tfdpcde.*conj(wn);
        symbols = zeros(mSC/sf,size(temp,2),'like',temp);
        for i = 1:(mSC/sf)
            % Average all symbols representing same modulation symbol
            symbols(i,:) = mean(temp(i:mSC/sf:mSC,:));
        end
    end

    % Perform symbol demodulation
    symdemod = nrSymbolDemodulate(symbols(:),modulation,nVar);

    % Perform descrambling
    opts = struct;
    opts.MappingType = 'signed';
    opts.OutputDataType = class(sym);
    if isempty(pucch.NID)
        % Update scrambling identity with cell identity when scrambling
        % identity is empty
        pucch.NID = carrier.NCellID;
    end

    c = nrPUCCHPRBS(pucch.NID,pucch.RNTI,length(symdemod),opts);
    cw = {symdemod.*c};

end

function wn = getOrthogonalSeqFormat4(sf,occi)
% WN = getOrthogonalSeqFormat4(SF,OCCI) returns the orthogonal cover code
% sequence WN as per TS 38.211 Section 6.3.2.6.3.
```

```
% SF - Spreading factor for PUCCH format 4, specified as 2 or 4.
% OCCI - Orthogonal cover code sequence index, specified as a value greater
%       than or equal to 0 and less than SF.

if sf == 2
    % TS 38.211 Table 6.3.2.6.3-1
    w = [1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1; % occi equals 0
         1 1 1 1 1 1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1]; % occi equals 1
else
    % TS 38.211 Table 6.3.2.6.3-2
    w = [1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1; % occi equals 0
         1 1 1 -1j -1j -1j -1 -1 -1 1j 1j 1j; % occi equals 1
         1 1 1 -1 -1 -1 1 1 1 -1 -1 -1; % occi equals 2
         1 1 1 1j 1j 1j -1 -1 -1 -1j -1j -1j]; % occi equals 3
end
% Extract orthogonal cover code sequence based on index occi
wn = w(occi+1,:).';

end
```

See Also

Functions

nrOFDMDemodulate | nrOFDMModulate | nrUCIDecode | nrUCIEncode

Objects

nrCarrierConfig | nrTDLChannel

CDL Channel Model Customization with Ray Tracing

This example shows how to customize the CDL channel model parameters by using the output of a ray tracing analysis. The example shows how to:

- Specify the location of a transmitter and a receiver in a 3D environment.
- Use ray tracing to calculate the geometric aspects of the channel: number of rays, angles, delays and attenuations.
- Configure the CDL channel model with the result of ray tracing analysis.
- Specify the channel antenna arrays using Phased Array System Toolbox™.
- Visualize the transmit and receive array radiation patterns based on singular value decomposition of a perfect channel estimate.

Base Station and UE Configuration

The example assumes that both the base station and the UE use rectangular arrays. The array orientations are specified as a pair of values representing azimuth and elevation. Both angles are in degrees.

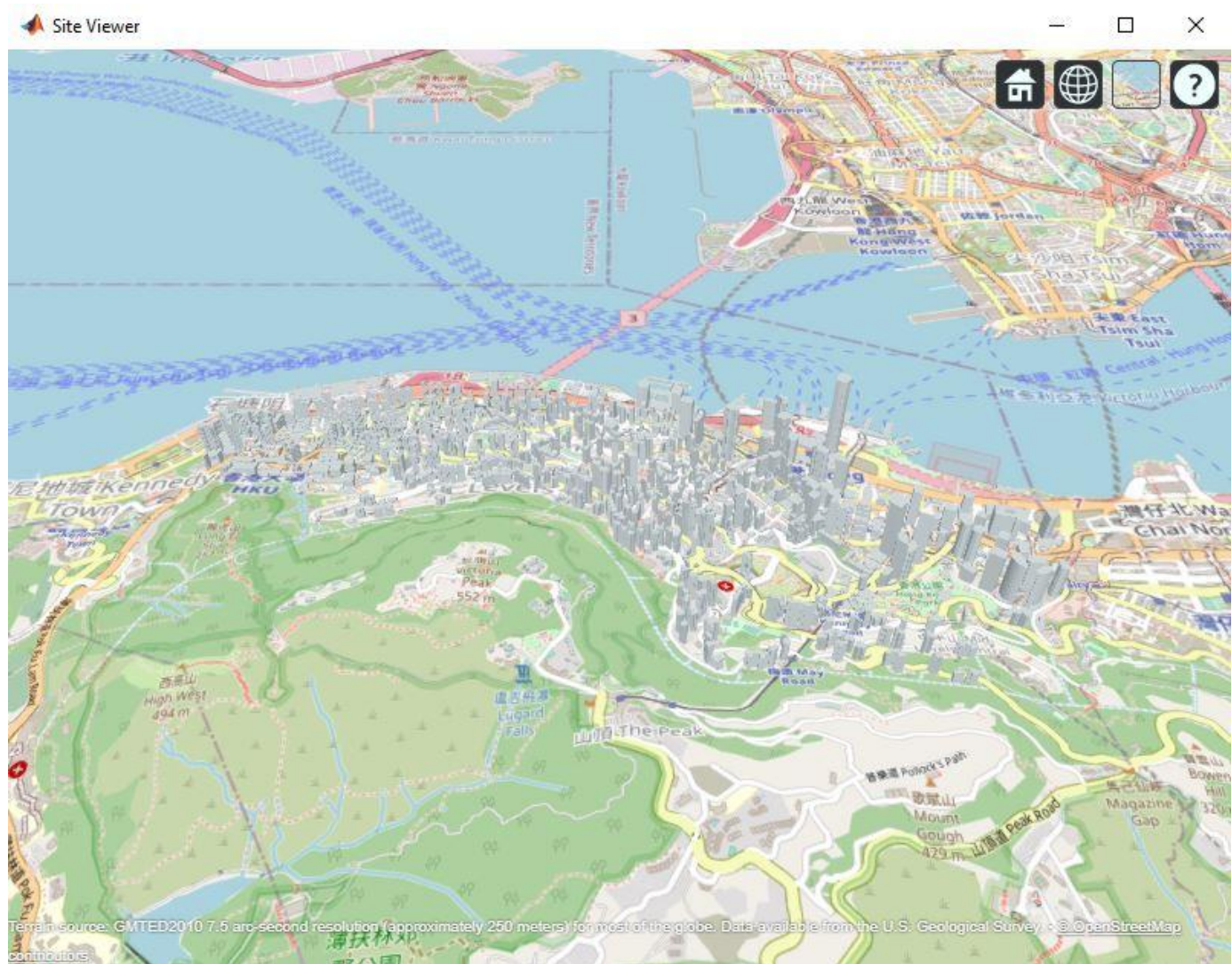
```
fc = 28e9; % carrier frequency (Hz)
bsPosition = [22.287495, 114.140706]; % Lat, lon
bsAntSize = [8 8]; % number of rows and columns in rectangular array (base sta
bsArrayOrientation = [-30 0].'; % azimuth (0 deg is East, 90 deg is North) and elevation (
uePosition = [22.287323, 114.140859]; % Lat, lon
ueAntSize = [2 2]; % number of rows and columns in rectangular array (UE).
ueArrayOrientation = [180 45].'; % azimuth (0 deg is East, 90 deg is North) and elevation (
reflectionsOrder = 1; % number of reflections for ray tracing analysis (0 for LOS)

% Bandwidth configuration, required to set the channel sampling rate and for perfect channel est.
SCS = 15; % subcarrier spacing
NRB = 52; % number of resource blocks, 10 MHz bandwidth
```

Import and Visualize 3-D Environment with Buildings for Ray Tracing

Launch Site Viewer with buildings in Hong Kong. For more information about the osm file, see [1] on page 4-0 .

```
if exist('viewer','var') && isvalid(viewer) % viewer handle exists and viewer window is open
    viewer.clearMap();
else
    viewer = siteviewer("Basemap","openstreetmap","Buildings","hongkong.osm");
end
```



Create Base Station and UE

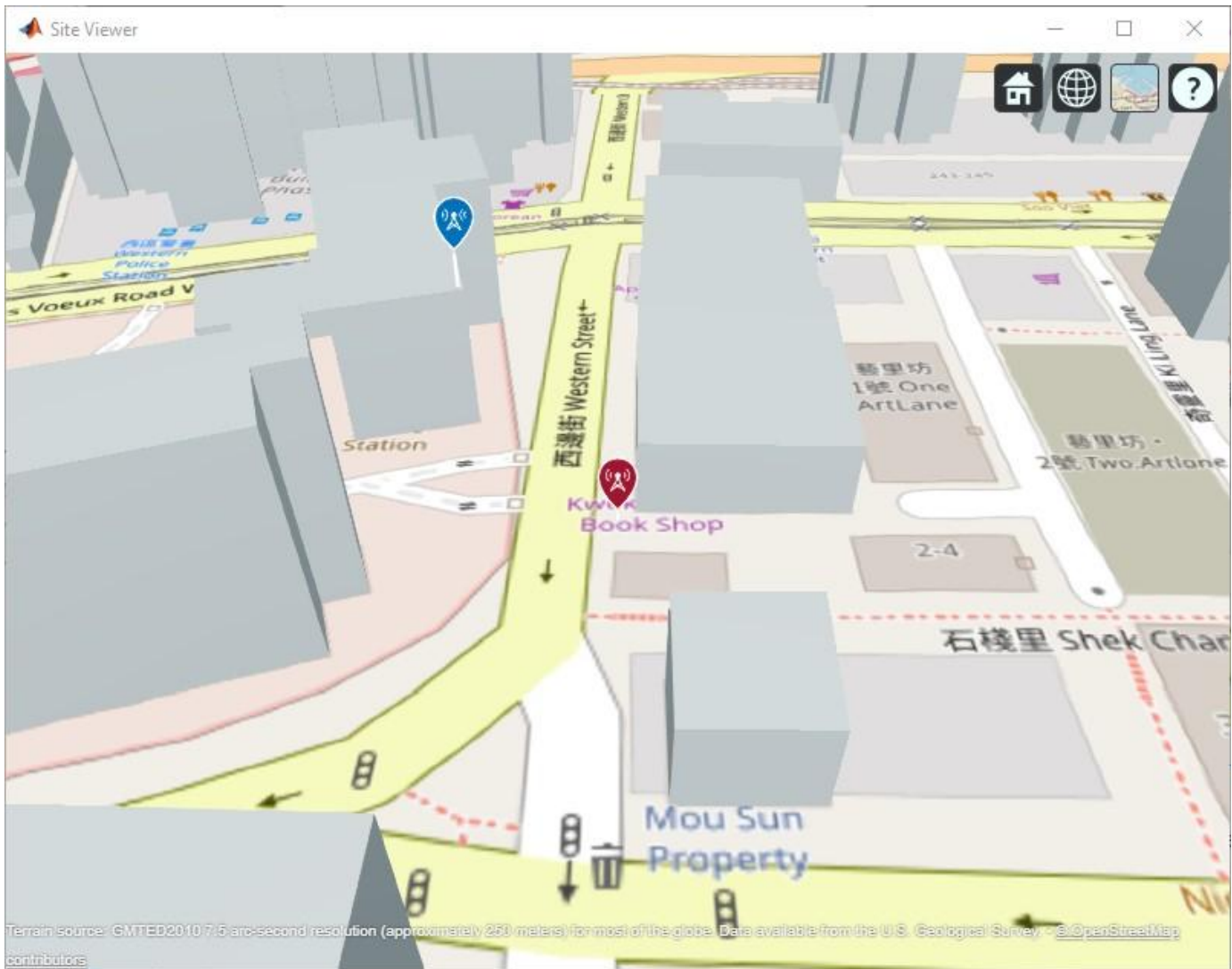
Locate the base station and the UE on the map.

```
bsSite = txsite("Name","Base station", ...
    "Latitude",bsPosition(1),"Longitude",bsPosition(2),...
    "AntennaAngle",bsArrayOrientation(1:2),...
    "AntennaHeight",4,... % in m
    "TransmitterFrequency",fc);

ueSite = rxsite("Name","UE", ...
    "Latitude",uePosition(1),"Longitude",uePosition(2),...
    "AntennaHeight",1,... % in m
    "AntennaAngle",ueArrayOrientation(1:2));
```

Visualize the location of the base station and the UE. The base station is on top of a building.

```
bsSite.show();
ueSite.show();
```

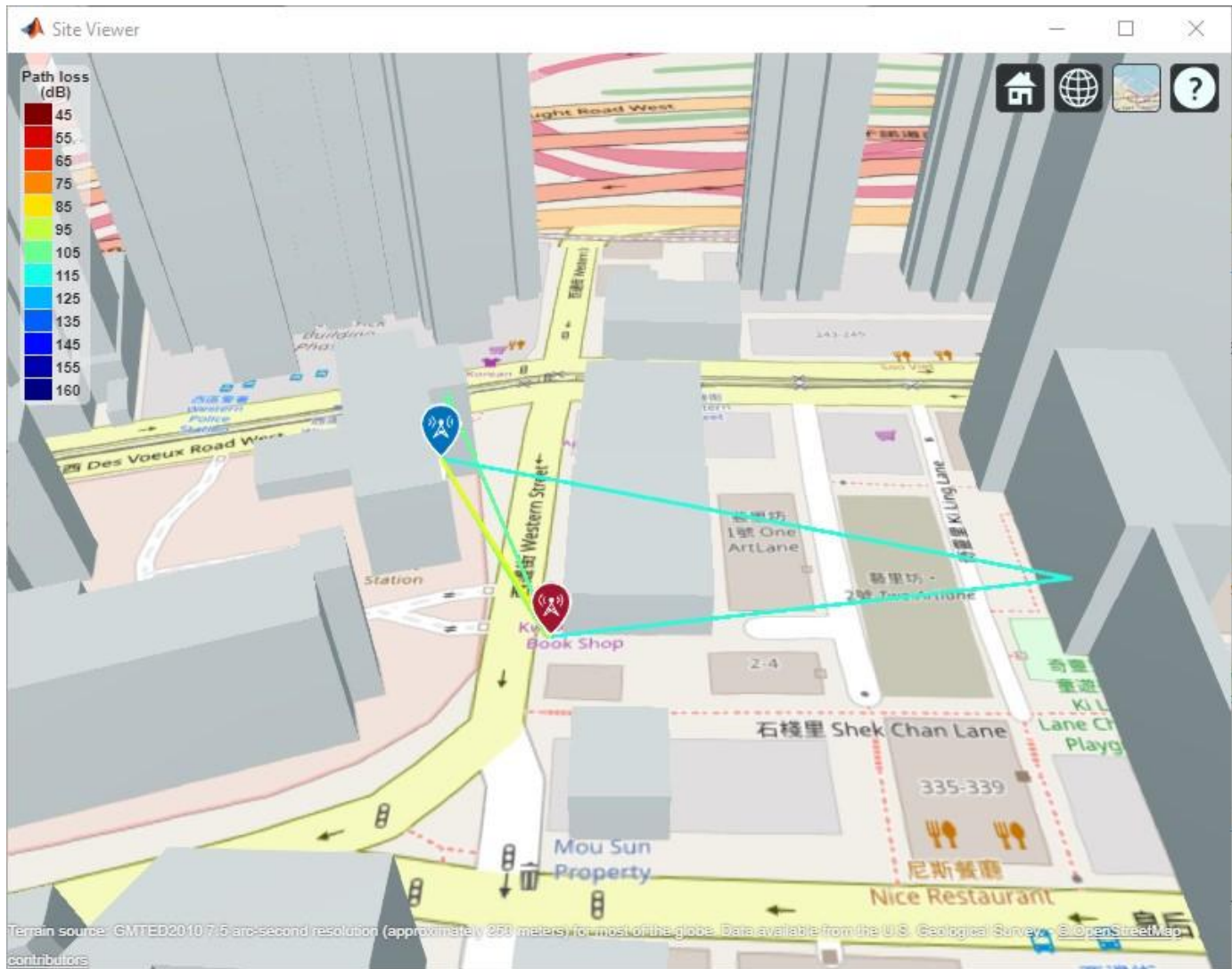
Ray Tracing Analysis

Perform ray tracing analysis using the method of images. This method models surface specular reflections but does not include effects from refraction, diffraction, scattering, or transmission through buildings.

```
rays = raytrace(bsSite,ueSite,"NumReflections",0:reflectionsOrder,"Type","pathloss");
```

Display the rays in Site Viewer.

```
plot(rays{1})
```



From the obtained rays, get the times of arrival, the average path gains, and the angles of departure and arrival. For simplicity, normalize the propagation delay so that the first path occurs at time 0 sec, corresponding to no delay. Use the path loss to obtain the average path gains.

```
pathToAs = [rays{1}.PropagationDelay]-min([rays{1}.PropagationDelay]); % Time of arrival of each ray
avgPathGains = -[rays{1}.PathLoss]; % Average path gains of each ray
pathAoDs = [rays{1}.AngleOfDeparture]; % AoD of each ray
pathAoAs = [rays{1}.AngleOfArrival]; % AoA of each ray
isLOS = any([rays{1}.LineOfSight]); % Line of sight flag
```

Set Up CDL Channel Model

Configure the CDL channel model with the information generated by the ray tracing analysis. Set the DelayProfile property to 'Custom' to specify the path delays, the average path gains and the angles of arrival and departure (both in azimuth and zenith).

When configuring the channel model, take into account that:

- The ray tracer finds individual rays between the base station and the UE, while the CDL channel models clusters of rays whose properties are determined by the cluster average path gain (AveragePathGains), average angles of arrival and departure (AnglesAoA, AnglesZoA, AnglesAoD and AnglesZoD), and the spread of the rays in the cluster (AngleSpreads). The information retrieved from the ray tracing analysis for individual rays configures the cluster average values of the CDL channel.
- The ray tracer performs a static analysis, while the CDL channel models UE movement. Therefore, the CDL channel introduces small-scale fading.
- The path gains obtained from ray tracing are considered as average path gains. Therefore, because of fading, instantaneous channel path gains will differ from the average values, but over long simulations their mean value will match the specified average path gains when using isotropic antennas.
- The CDL channel uses zenith angles, while the ray tracing analysis returns elevation angles, therefore you must convert between the two.
- If any of the calculated rays is a line of sight (LOS) ray (no reflection), set the HasLOScluster CDL channel property to true. For LOS cases, the CDL model splits the first path into two components, one being LOS and the other having a Rayleigh fading characteristic. This results in a combined Ricean fading characteristic. Therefore, in LOS cases, when you specify N rays, the CDL channel models $N+1$ paths internally.

```
channel = nrCDLChannel;
channel.DelayProfile = 'Custom';
channel.PathDelays = pathToAs;
channel.AveragePathGains = avgPathGains;
channel.AnglesAoD = pathAoDs(1,:); % azimuth of departure
channel.AnglesZoD = 90-pathAoDs(2,:); % channel uses zenith angle, rays use elevation
channel.AnglesAoA = pathAoAs(1,:); % azimuth of arrival
channel.AnglesZoA = 90-pathAoAs(2,:); % channel uses zenith angle, rays use elevation
channel.HasLOScluster = isLOS;
channel.CarrierFrequency = fc;
channel.NormalizeChannelOutputs = false; % do not normalize by the number of receive antennas, the
channel.NormalizePathGains = false; % set to false to retain the path gains
```

Specify the channel antenna arrays by using Phased Array System Toolbox array objects. The array orientation properties of the CDL channel model use azimuth and downtilt while the ueArrayOrientation and bsArrayOrientation objects use azimuth and elevation. Therefore, convert the elevation to downtilt by changing the sign.

```
c = physconst('LightSpeed');
lambda = c/fc;

% UE array
ueArray = phased.URA('Size',ueAntSize(1:2),'ElementSpacing', 0.5*lambda*[1 1]); % isotropic
channel.ReceiveAntennaArray = ueArray;
channel.ReceiveArrayOrientation = [ueArrayOrientation(1); (-1)*ueArrayOrientation(2); 0]; % the

% Base station array
bsArray = phased.URA('Size',bsAntSize(1:2),'ElementSpacing', 0.5*lambda*[1 1],'Element',phased.NR
channel.TransmitAntennaArray = bsArray;
channel.TransmitArrayOrientation = [bsArrayOrientation(1); (-1)*bsArrayOrientation(2); 0]; % the
```

Set Channel Sampling Rate

The signal going through the channel determines the channel sampling rate. Consider a signal with subcarrier spacing of 15 kHz and 52 resource blocks (RBs), equivalent to a bandwidth of 10 MHz. To obtain the sampling rate, call the `nrOFDMInfo` function.

```
ofdmInfo = nrOFDMInfo(NRB,SCS);
channel.SampleRate = ofdmInfo.SampleRate;
```

Channel Estimation

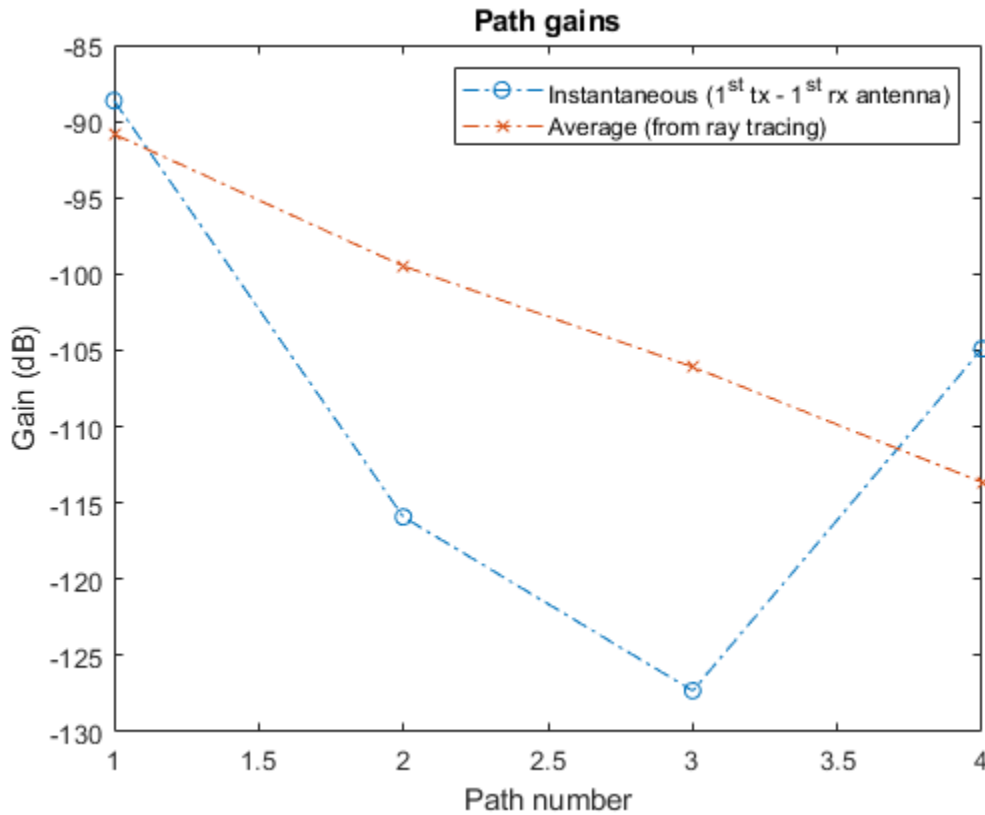
For simplicity, this example assumes perfect channel estimation. Setting the `ChannelFiltering` property to `false` allows you to get the channel path gains without sending a signal through the channel.

```
channel.ChannelFiltering = false;
[pathGains,sampleTimes] = channel();
```

Plot the path gains returned by the channel. Compare the results with the specified average path gains obtained from the ray attenuation values.

- For LOS cases, because the first two paths correspond to the first ray, the first two paths must be added together.
- The CDL channel model is a statistical channel model and considers UE motion. Therefore, the returned path gains are the instantaneous gains. The path gains from the ray tracing analysis are interpreted as average path gains by the channel model.
- The instantaneous path gains returned by the channel model include the gain of the antenna element in the direction of each ray. The custom path gains obtained from the ray tracing analysis do not include the antenna element gain. Therefore, in the mean, the channel path gains match the average gains only for isotropic antenna elements.

```
pg=permute(pathGains,[2 1 3 4]); % first dimension is the number of paths
if isLOS
    % in LOS cases sum the first to paths, they correspond to the LOS ray
    pg = [sum(pg(1:2,:,:,:)); pg(3:end,:,:,:)];
end
pg = abs(pg).^2;
plot(pow2db(pg(:,1,1,1)), 'o-.');hold on
plot(avgPathGains,'x-.');hold off
legend("Instantaneous (1^{st} tx - 1^{st} rx antenna)","Average (from ray tracing)")
xlabel("Path number"); ylabel("Gain (dB)")
title('Path gains')
```

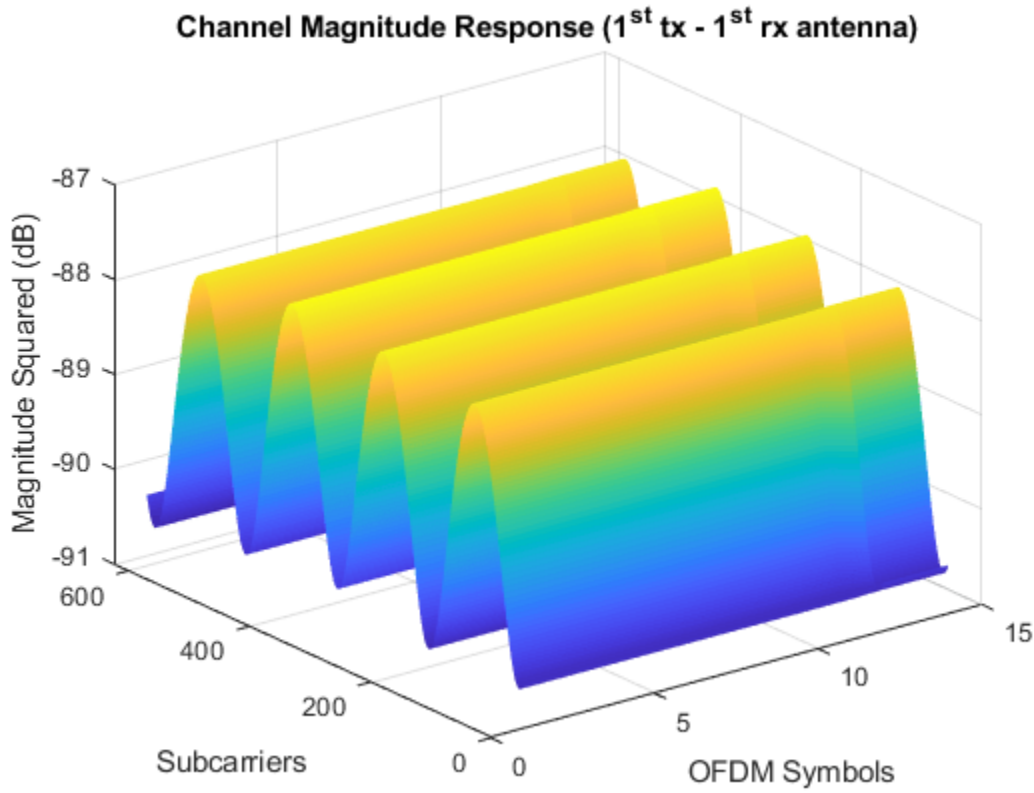


Obtain a perfect channel estimate for slot 0.

```
pathFilters = getPathFilters(channel);
nSlot = 0;
[offset,~] = nrPerfectTimingEstimate(pathGains,pathFilters);
hest = nrPerfectChannelEstimate(pathGains,pathFilters,NRB,SCS,nSlot,offset,sampleTimes);
```

Plot the channel response in time and frequency between the first transmit and the first receive antenna. This plot shows the frequency selectivity of the channel, highlighting how the channel changes with time. For low Doppler shifts, the channel doesn't change much during the observation period of one slot.

```
surf(pow2db(abs(hest(:,:,1,1)).^2));
shading('flat');
xlabel('OFDM Symbols');ylabel('Subcarriers');zlabel('Magnitude Squared (dB)');
title('Channel Magnitude Response (1st tx - 1st rx antenna)');
```



Get Beamforming Weights

Calculate the beamforming weights using singular value decomposition (SVD). Assume 1 layer. The `getBeamformingWeights` function averages the channel conditions over a number of resource blocks, starting at an offset from the edge of the band (first subcarrier), enabling subband beamforming.

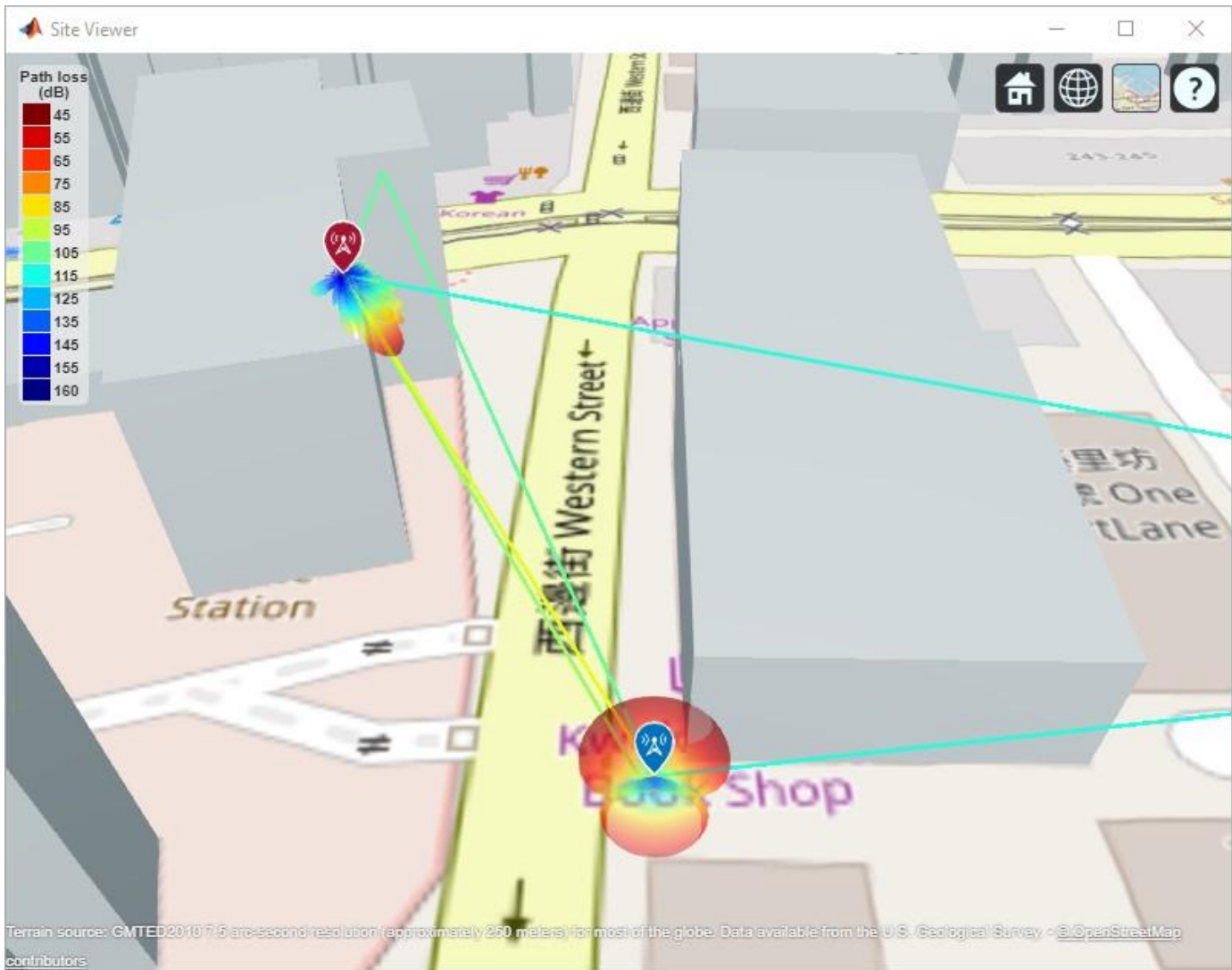
```
nLayers = 1;
scOffset = 0; % no offset
noRBs = 1; % average channel conditions over 1 RB to calculate beamforming weights
[wbs,wue,~] = getBeamformingWeights(hest,nLayers,scOffset,noRBs);
```

Plot Radiation Patterns

Plot the radiation patterns obtained for the UE and the base station.

```
% Plot UE radiation pattern
ueSite.Antenna = clone(channel.ReceiveAntennaArray); % need a clone, otherwise setting the Taper
ueSite.Antenna.Taper = wue;
pattern(ueSite,fc,"Size",4);

% Plot BS radiation pattern
bsSite.Antenna = clone(channel.TransmitAntennaArray); % need a clone, otherwise setting the Taper
bsSite.Antenna.Taper = wbs;
pattern(bsSite,fc,"Size",5);
```



References

[1] The osm file is downloaded from <https://www.openstreetmap.org>, which provides access to crowd-sourced map data all over the world. The data is licensed under the Open Data Commons Open Database License (ODbL), <https://opendatacommons.org/licenses/odbl/>.

Local Functions

```
function [wtx,wrx,D] = getBeamformingWeights(hEst,nLayers,scOffset,noRBs)
% Get beamforming weights given a channel matrix hEst and the number of
% layers nLayers. One set of weights is provided for the whole bandwidth.
% The beamforming weights are calculated using singular value (SVD)
% decomposition.
%
% Only part of the channel estimate is used to get the weights, this is
% indicated by an offset SCOFFSET (offset from the first subcarrier) and a
% width in RBs (NORBS).
%
% Average channel estimate
```

```
[~,~,R,P] = size(hEst);  
%H = permute(mean(reshape(hEst,[],R,P)),[2 3 1]);  
  
scNo = scOffset+1;  
hEst = hEst(scNo:scNo+(12*noRBs-1),:,:);  
H = permute(mean(reshape(hEst,[],R,P)),[2 3 1]);  
  
% SVD decomposition  
[U,D,V] = svd(H);  
wtx = V(:,1:nLayers).';  
wrx = U(:,1:nLayers)';  
end
```

See Also

Functions

nrOFDMInfo | nrPerfectChannelEstimate

Objects

nrCDLChannel | phased.URA

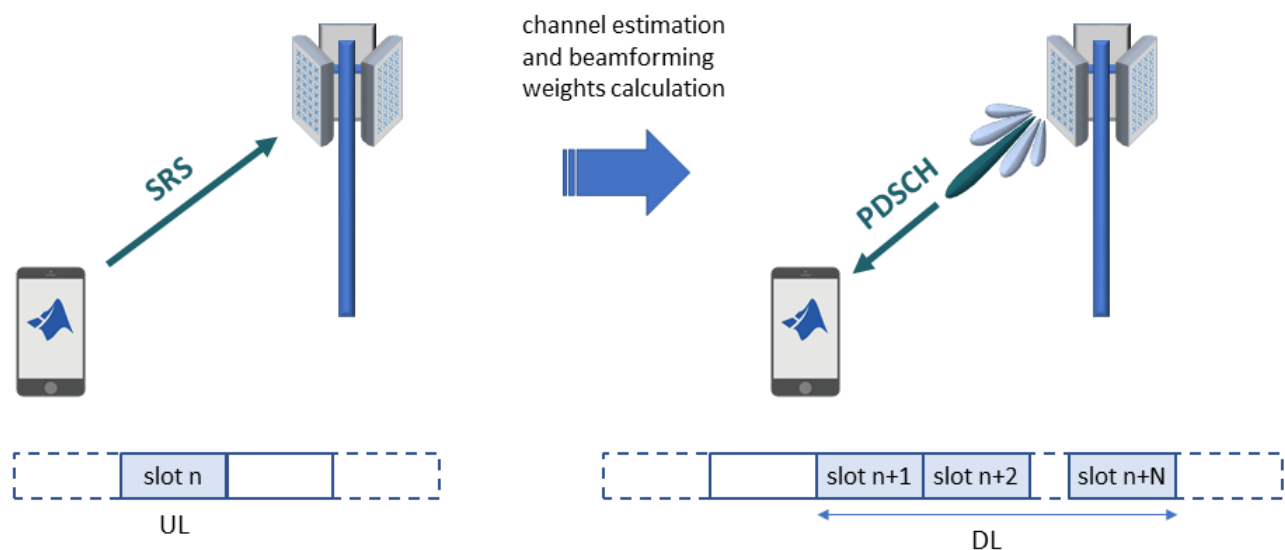
TDD Reciprocity-Based PDSCH Beamforming Using SRS

This example shows how to exploit channel reciprocity to calculate the physical downlink shared channel (PDSCH) beamforming weights in a time division duplex (TDD) scenario. The beamforming weights calculation uses a channel estimate based on uplink sounding reference signal (SRS). Using these beamforming weights, the example uses the same channel for a downlink PDSCH transmission.

Introduction

TDD systems use the same frequency band for uplink (UL) and downlink (DL) transmissions. The radio channel is reciprocal because it has the same characteristics in both UL and DL directions. Exploiting this reciprocity, you can use a UL transmission to obtain a channel estimate and then use this channel estimate to calculate parameters for a DL transmission.

The TDD operation in this example calculates the channel estimate based on an SRS and then uses this channel estimate to calculate the downlink beamforming weights. This method is also known as reciprocity-based beamforming. Using these weights, the example then beamforms the PDSCH for the DL slots. Finally, the example measures the throughput of the link.



Simulation Parameters

Specify the number of frames to simulate, the SNR, and the carrier frequency.

```
NFrames = 2;           % Total number of frames to simulate
SNRdB = 5;             % SNR in dB
fc = 6e9;              % Carrier freq. (Hz)
```

Specify the antenna array sizes for the base station (BS) and user equipment (UE). Assume rectangular arrays. The number of SRS antenna ports is limited to 1, 2 or 4. Therefore, for simplicity, the total number of UE antennas must be one of these values.

```

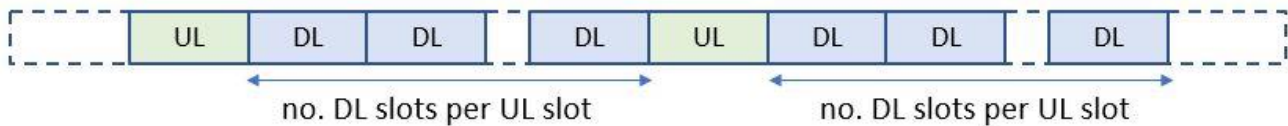
bsAntSize = [4 4]; % number of rows and columns in rectangular array (base station)
ueAntSize = [2 2]; % number of rows and columns in rectangular array (UE). Total number of anten

% Reset random generator for reproducibility
rng('default');

```

TDD Configuration

The example considers a UL slot followed by one or more DL slots. For simplicity, assume an uplink slot at the start of transmission to ensure that there is a channel estimate and a set of beamforming weights before the transmission of any DL slots.



```

noDLSlotsPerULSlot = 4; % number of DL slots per UL slot

% Cyclic uplink/downlink pattern. One uplink slot followed by one or some
% downlink slots
ULDLpattern = [false true(1,noDLSlotsPerULSlot)]; % false: UL, true: DL
ULDLstring(ULDLpattern) = "DL";
ULDLstring(~ULDLpattern) = "UL";
disp("Uplink/Downlink cyclic pattern:")

Uplink/Downlink cyclic pattern:
disp("Slot " + string((0:length(ULDLstring)-1)') + ": " + ULDLstring(:))

"Slot 0: UL"
"Slot 1: DL"
"Slot 2: DL"
"Slot 3: DL"
"Slot 4: DL"

```

Carrier Configuration

Set the carrier parameters.

```

% Numerology
SCS = 30; % subcarrier spacing: 15, 30, 60, 120, 240 (kHz)
NRB = 24; % bandwidth in number of resource blocks (24RBs at 30kHz SCS for 10MHz BW)

carrier = nrCarrierConfig;
carrier.NSizeGrid = NRB;
carrier.SubcarrierSpacing = SCS;
carrier.CyclicPrefix = 'Normal'; % 'Normal' or 'Extended'

% Get OFDM related information (sampling rate, symbol lengths, symbols
% per slot, slots per subframe/frame, FFT size)
ofdmInfo = nrOFDMInfo(carrier);

```

PDSCH and DL-SCH Configuration

Configure the PDSCH. Assume one layer and allocate the whole bandwidth for the PDSCH.

```

modulation = "16QAM";           % PDSCH modulation scheme
numLayers = 1;

pdsch = nrPDSCHConfig;
pdsch.NumLayers = numLayers;
pdsch.Modulation = modulation;
pdsch.PRBSets = 0:NRB-1;       % assume full band allocation
pdsch.DMRS.DMRSAdditionalPosition = 1; % one additional DMRS position to deal better with changing
                                % channel conditions

verifyNumLayers(numLayers,bsAntSize,ueAntSize);

```

Specify the DL-SCH parameters and create the DL-SCH encoder and decoder objects. This example does not consider HARQ, therefore the redundancy value (RV) is fixed.

```

% DL-SCH parameters
codeRate = 490/1024;
RV = 0;

% Create DL-SCH encoder object
encodeDLSCH = nrDLSCH;
encodeDLSCH.TargetCodeRate = codeRate;

% Create DL-SCH decoder object
decodeDLSCH = nrDLSCHDecoder;
decodeDLSCH.TargetCodeRate = codeRate;
decodeDLSCH.LDPCDecodingAlgorithm = 'Normalized min-sum';
decodeDLSCH.MaximumLDPCIterationCount = 6;

```

Set Up CDL Channel Model

Create the CDL channel model object. This object is bidirectional and can model both DL and UL directions.

```

channel = nrCDLChannel;
channel.DelayProfile = 'CDL-A';
channel.DelaySpread = 300e-9;
channel.CarrierFrequency = fc;
channel.MaximumDopplerShift = 100;
channel.SampleRate = ofdmInfo.SampleRate;

```

Set the antenna arrays. Initially, the channel operates in the DL direction, therefore the transmit antenna array corresponds to the BS, while the receive antenna array corresponds to the UE.

```

channel.TransmitAntennaArray.Size = [bsAntSize 1 1 1]; % Assume only 1 polarization and 1 panel
channel.ReceiveAntennaArray.Size = [ueAntSize 1 1 1]; % Assume only 1 polarization and 1 panel

chInfo = channel.info();
nBSAnts = chInfo.NumTransmitAntennas; % Number of BS antennas
nUEAnts = chInfo.NumReceiveAntennas; % Number of UE antennas

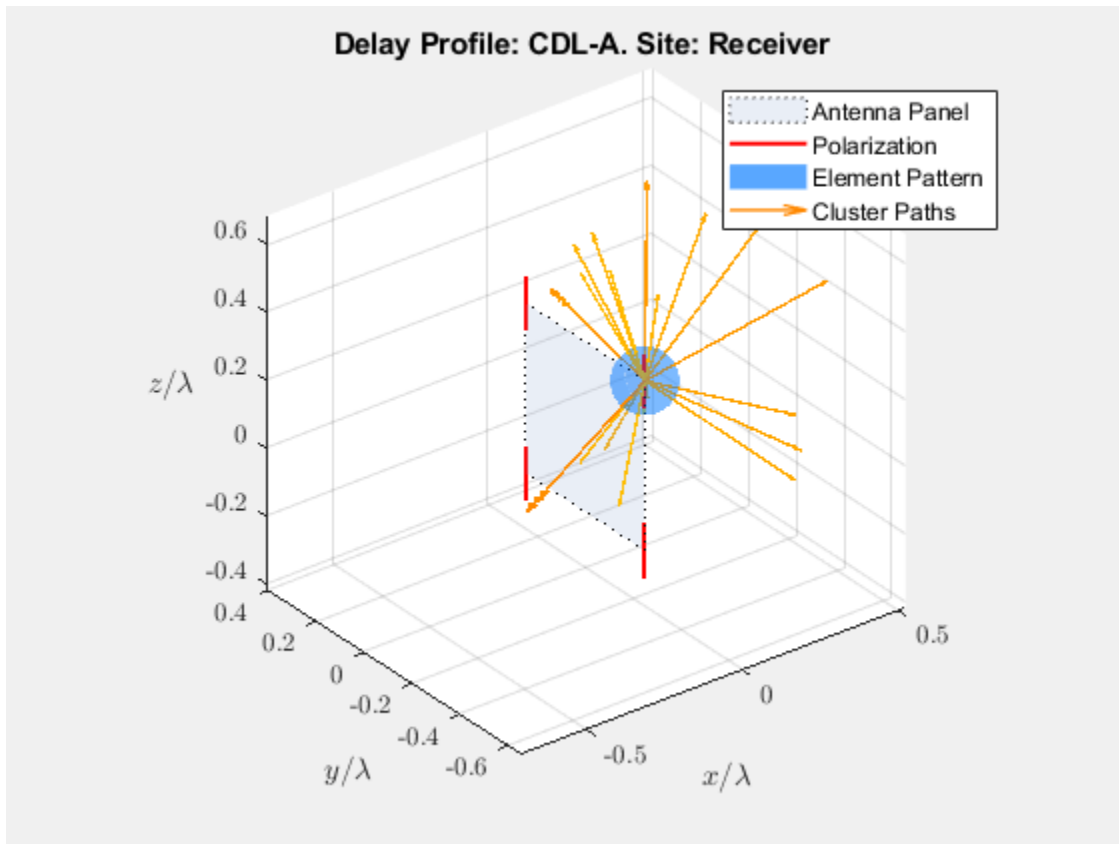
```

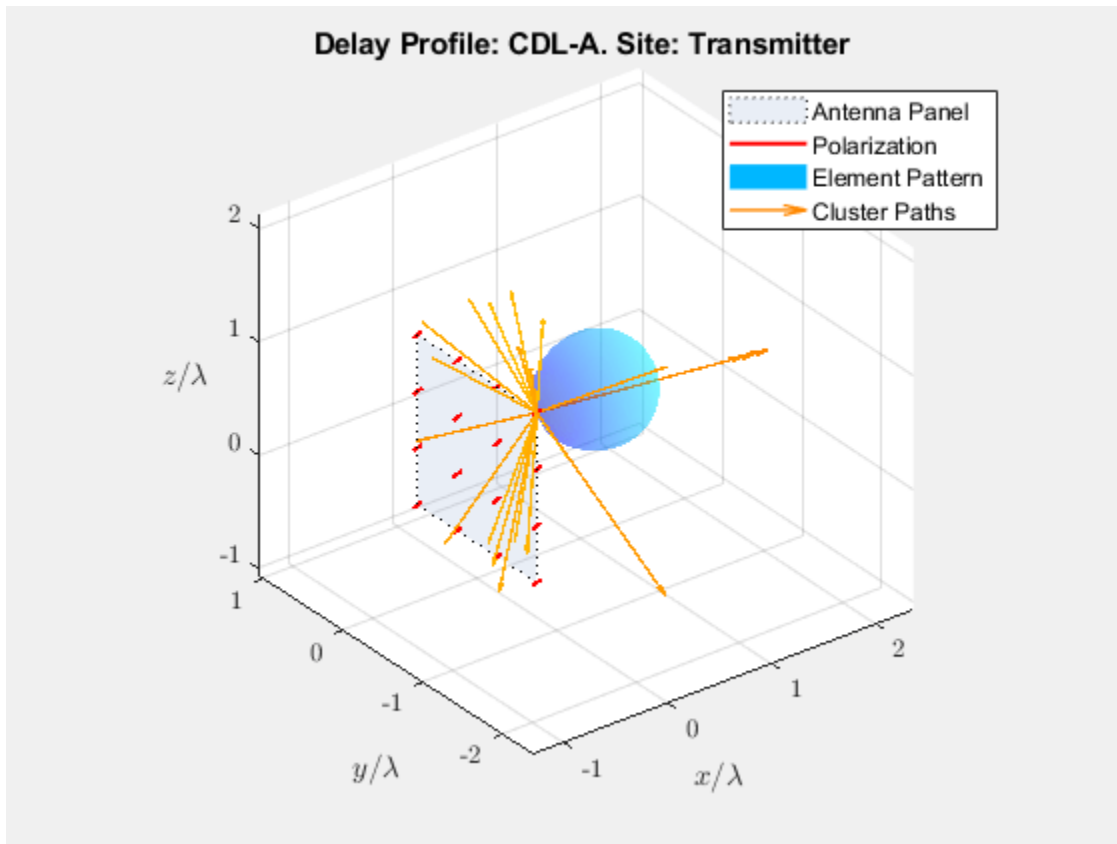
Display array configuration, element radiation pattern, and cluster path directions.

```

channel.displayChannel();

```





SRS Configuration

Configure the UE carrier and SRS. The number of SRS antenna ports is 1, 2, or 4, therefore the number of UE antennas must be one of these values. For more information on SRS parameterization, see “NR SRS Configuration” on page 2-59. To ensure that regardless of the TDD configuration there is an SRS for all UL slots, set the SRS period to one.

```
% SRS configuration, configure a multi-port SRS
srs = nrSRSSConfig;
srs.NumSRSSymbols = 4;           % Number of OFDM symbols allocated per slot (1,2,4)
srs.SymbolStart = 8;            % Starting OFDM symbol within a slot
srs.NumSRSPorts = nUEAnts;     % Number of SRS antenna ports (1,2,4).
srs.FrequencyStart = 0;        % Frequency position of the SRS in RBs
srs.NRRC = 0;                  % Additional offset from FreqStart specified in blocks of 4 PRBs
srs.CSRS = 7;                  % Bandwidth configuration C_SRS (0...63). It controls the allocated
srs.BSRS = 0;                  % Bandwidth configuration B_SRS (0...3). It controls the allocated
srs.BHop = 0;                  % Frequency hopping configuration (0...3). Set BHop < BSRS to enable
srs.KTC = 2;                   % Comb number (2,4). Frequency density in subcarriers
srs.SRSPeriod = [1 0];        % Periodicity and offset in slots. SRSPeriod(2) must be < SRSPeriod(1)
srs.ResourceType = 'periodic'; % Resource type ('periodic','semi-persistent','aperiodic'). Use
```

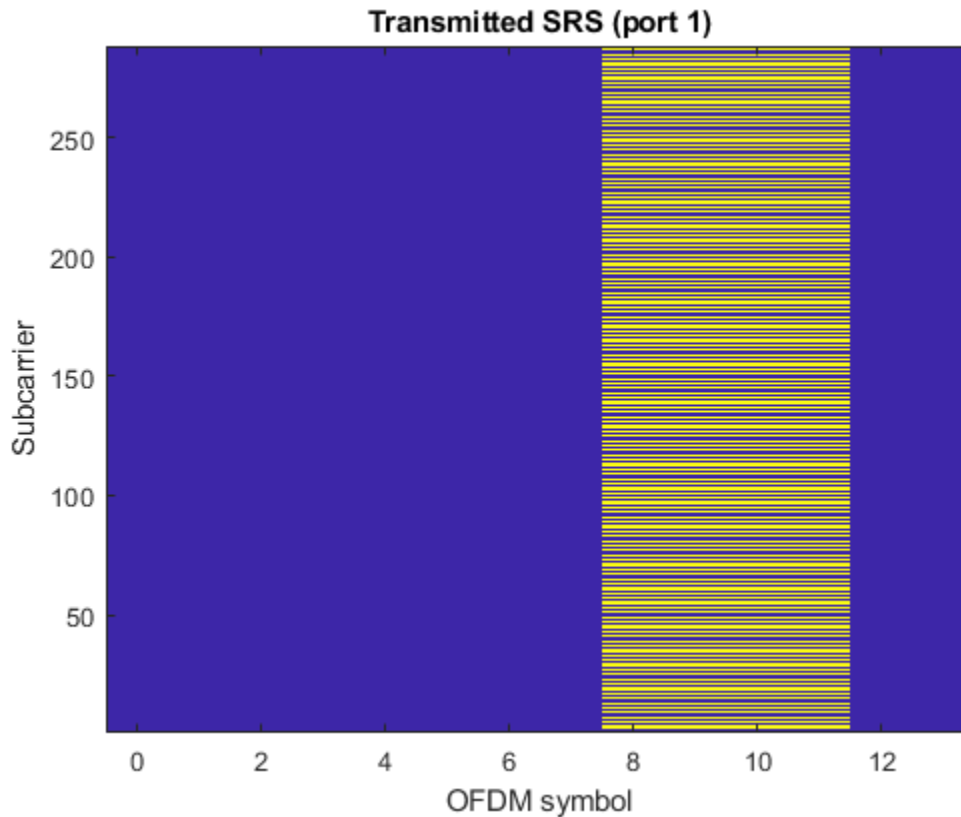
Visualize the SRS configuration.

```
% Generate uplink SRS waveform.
[srsWaveform,srsGrid,srsWaveformInfo,srsIndices,srsSymbols] = generateULSRSWaveform(carrier,srs)
% Display the transmitted OFDM grid containing SRS
% Create x-axis and y-axis vectors
```

```

symbols = 0:(carrier.NSlot+1)*carrier.SymbolsPerSlot-1;
subcarriers = 1:carrier.NSizeGrid*12;
figure;imagesc(symbols,subcarriers,abs(srsGrid(:,:,1)));
xlabel('OFDM symbol'); ylabel('Subcarrier'); axis xy;
title('Transmitted SRS (port 1)');

```



Throughput Simulation Using Reciprocity-Based Beamforming

This section simulates these steps:

For UL slots:

- Exploit channel reciprocity by swapping transmit and receive antennas.
- Generate and send the SRS through the channel.
- Perform channel estimation and calculate the beamforming weights using singular value decomposition (SVD). Assume wideband beamforming in the downlink, that is, assume one set of weights for the whole bandwidth. For more information on SRS-based channel estimation, see “NR Uplink Channel State Information Estimation Using SRS” on page 2-79.
- This example assumes that a DL slot follows an UL slot, therefore swap transmit and receive antennas.

For DL slots:

- Generate and beamform the PDSCH using the weights calculated in the latest UL slot.
- Send this signal through the fading channel, add noise and decode the resulting signal. Use the result to calculate the throughput.

The `diagnosticsOn` flag stores and displays the error vector magnitude (EVM) information for all slots per layer. The EVM gives an indication of the quality of the received signal throughout the simulation.

```

% Initialize result arrays
bitTput = []; % Number of successfully received bits per transmission
txedTrBlkSizes = []; % Number of transmitted info bits per transmission
evmPerSlot = zeros(ofdmInfo.SlotsPerFrame*NFrames,pdsch.NumLayers);
calculateEVM = comm.EVM();

diagnosticsOn = true;

for nSlot = 0:ofdmInfo.SlotsPerFrame*NFrames-1

    if ~ULDLpattern(mod(nSlot,length(ULDLpattern))+1)

        if diagnosticsOn
            disp("Slot "+string(nSlot)+" , UL slot");
        end

        % Reverse channel direction to swap the roles of the transmit and
        % receive arrays. Initially the channel is configured for the DL.
        % Assume there is always a DL slot before any UL slot.
        if ~channel.TransmitAndReceiveSwapped
            channel.swapTransmitAndReceive();
        end

        % New slot
        carrier.NSlot = nSlot;

        % Generate srsWaveform
        [srsWaveform,srsGrid,srsWaveformInfo,srsIndices,srsSymbols] = generateULSRSWaveform(carrier);

        % Send uplink signal through the channel and add AWGN.
        % Pad UL waveforms with zeros to flush the channel filter
        chInfo = info(channel);
        maxChDelay = ceil(max(chInfo.PathDelays*channel.SampleRate));
        maxChDelay = maxChDelay + chInfo.ChannelFilterDelay;
        srsWaveform = [srsWaveform; zeros(maxChDelay, size(srsWaveform,2))]; % required later to

        % Transmission through channel
        rxWaveform = channel(srsWaveform);

        % Add AWGN to the received time domain waveform
        noise = generateAWGN(SNRdB,ofdmInfo.Nfft,size(rxWaveform));
        rxWaveform = rxWaveform + noise;
        % Use SRS for timing estimation
        offset = nrTimingEstimate(carrier,rxWaveform,srsIndices,srsSymbols);

        % Perform OFDM demodulation
        rxGrid = nrOFDMDemodulate(carrier,rxWaveform(1+offset:end,:));

        % Perform practical channel estimation
        cdmLengths = hSRSCDMLengths(srs); % Calculate SRS CDM lengths
        hEst = nrChannelEstimate(carrier,rxGrid,srsIndices,srsSymbols,'AveragingWindow',[0 7], 'CI

        % Get Beamforming Weights
        % Calculate these weights for the maximum number of layers the

```

```

% system can theoretically support, i.e. min(nBSAnts,nUEAnts).
% Later we can select a smaller number of layers.
nUplinkLayers = min(nBSAnts,nUEAnts); % number of layers used in the uplink transmission
[wue,wbs,~] = getBeamformingWeights(hEst,nUplinkLayers);
wbs = wbs(1:pdsch.NumLayers,:); % for precoding only use weights corresponding to the number of layers
wbs = wbs /sqrt(pdsch.NumLayers);

% The SRS channel estimate was obtained with an uplink transmission. Switch
% the channel direction to model the downlink. This switches the roles of the
% transmit and receive arrays, i.e. the transmit array becomes the receive array
% and vice versa.
if channel.TransmitAndReceiveSwapped
    channel.swapTransmitAndReceive();
end

else % DL slot
% New slot
carrier.NSlot = nSlot;

% Generate PDSCH waveform and precode using the beamforming weights
% obtained from SRS channel estimation
[txWaveform,waveformInfo,pdschResources,dmrsResources,trBlkSizes] = ...
    generatePDSCHWaveform(carrier,pdsch,encodeDLSCH,RV,wbs);

pdschSymbolsTx = pdschResources.pdschSymbolsTx;
pdschIndices = pdschResources.pdschIndices;

dmrsSymbols = dmrsResources.dmrsSymbols;
dmrsIndices = dmrsResources.dmrsIndices;

% Send signal through the CDL channel and add noise
chInfo = info(channel);
% Pad with zeros to flush the channel filter and obtain the received signal
maxChDelay = ceil(max(chInfo.PathDelays*channel.SampleRate)) + chInfo.ChannelFilterDelay;
txWaveform = [txWaveform; zeros(maxChDelay, size(txWaveform,2))];

rxWaveform = channel(txWaveform);

% Add AWGN to the received time-domain waveform
noise = generateAWGN(SNRdB,ofdmInfo.Nfft,size(rxWaveform));
rxWaveform = rxWaveform + noise;

% Synchronize to received signal using the DM-RS
[offset,mag] = nrTimingEstimate(carrier,rxWaveform,dmrsIndices,dmrsSymbols);
rxWaveform = rxWaveform(1+offset:end,:);

% OFDM demodulation
rxGrid = nrOFDMDemodulate(carrier,rxWaveform);

% Channel estimation
[estChannelGrid,noiseEst] = nrChannelEstimate(carrier,rxGrid,dmrsIndices,dmrsSymbols,'CDL');

% Equalization and PDSCH decoding
[pdschRx,pdschHest] = nrExtractResources(pdschIndices,rxGrid,estChannelGrid);
[pdschEq,csi] = nrEqualizeMMSE(pdschRx,pdschHest,noiseEst);
[dlschLLRs,rxSymbols] = nrPDSCHDecode(carrier,pdsch,pdschEq,noiseEst);

% Scale LLRs by CSI

```



```

csi = nrLayerDemap(csi); % CSI layer demapping
for cwIdx = 1:pdsch.NumCodewords
    Qm = length(dlschLLRs{cwIdx})/length(rxSymbols{cwIdx}); % bits per symbol
    csi{cwIdx} = repmat(csi{cwIdx}.',Qm,1); % expand by each bit per symbol
    dlschLLRs{cwIdx} = dlschLLRs{cwIdx} .* csi{cwIdx}(:); % scale
end

% Decode the DL-SCH transport channel
decodeDLSCH.TransportBlockLength = trBlkSizes;
[decbits,blkerr] = decodeDLSCH(dlschLLRs,pdsch.Modulation,pdsch.NumLayers,RV);
reset(decodeDLSCH); % reset internal soft buffers, assume no retransmissions

% Store values to calculate throughput (only for active PDSCH instances)
if(any(trBlkSizes ~= 0))
    bitTput = [bitTput trBlkSizes.*(1-bkerr)];
    txedTrBlkSizes = [txedTrBlkSizes trBlkSizes];
end

if diagnosticsOn
    if blkerr
        disp("Error in DL slot "+string(nSlot));
    else
        disp("Slot "+string(nSlot)+", successful DL reception");
    end
    evmPerSlot(nSlot+1,:)=calculateEVM(pdschSymbolsTx,pdschEq);
end
end
end

```

Slot 0, UL slot

Slot 1, successful DL reception

Slot 2, successful DL reception

Slot 3, successful DL reception

Slot 4, successful DL reception

Slot 5, UL slot

Slot 6, successful DL reception

Slot 7, successful DL reception

Slot 8, successful DL reception

Slot 9, successful DL reception

Slot 10, UL slot

Slot 11, successful DL reception

Slot 12, successful DL reception

Slot 13, successful DL reception

Slot 14, successful DL reception

Slot 15, UL slot

Slot 16, successful DL reception

Slot 17, successful DL reception

Slot 18, successful DL reception

Slot 19, successful DL reception

Slot 20, UL slot

Slot 21, successful DL reception

Slot 22, successful DL reception

```
Slot 23, successful DL reception
Slot 24, successful DL reception

Slot 25, UL slot

Slot 26, successful DL reception
Slot 27, successful DL reception
Slot 28, successful DL reception
Slot 29, successful DL reception

Slot 30, UL slot

Slot 31, successful DL reception
Slot 32, successful DL reception
Slot 33, successful DL reception
Slot 34, successful DL reception

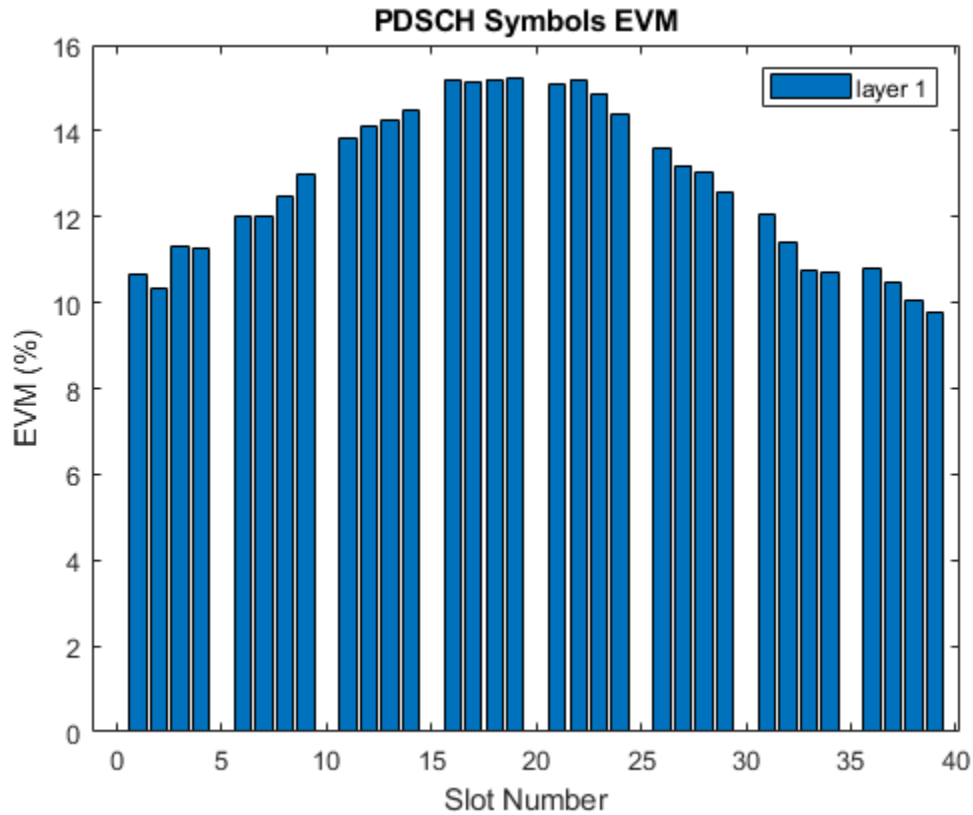
Slot 35, UL slot

Slot 36, successful DL reception
Slot 37, successful DL reception
Slot 38, successful DL reception
Slot 39, successful DL reception
```

Throughput Results

Plot the EVM per slot and calculate the throughput in Mbps and as a percentage of the overall number of bits transmitted. There is no EVM measurement for UL slots, therefore there are gaps in the EVM figure corresponding to UL slots.

```
if diagnosticsOn
    tlegendTxt =cell(pdsch.NumLayers,1);
    for n=1:pdsch.NumLayers
        tlegendTxt{n} = "layer "+string(n);
    end
    figure;bar(0:ofdmInfo.SlotsPerFrame*NFrames-1,evmPerSlot)
    xlabel("Slot Number");ylabel("EVM (%)")
    title("PDSCH Symbols EVM")
    legend(tlegendTxt);
end
```



```

% Calculate maximum and simulated throughput
maxThroughput = sum(txedTrBlkSizes); % Max possible throughput
simThroughput = sum(bitTput,2);      % Simulated throughput

% Display the results dynamically in the command window
fprintf(['\n\nThroughput(Mbps) for ', num2str(NFrames) ' frame(s) '],...
        '%.4f Mbps\n'], 1e-6*simThroughput/(NFrames*10e-3));

Throughput(Mbps) for 2 frame(s) = 10.4448 Mbps

fprintf(['Throughput(%) for ', num2str(NFrames) ' frame(s) = %.4f %%\n'],...
        simThroughput*100/maxThroughput);

Throughput(%) for 2 frame(s) = 100.0000 %

```

Local functions

```

function noise = generateAWGN(SNRdB,Nfft,sizeRxWaveform)
% Generate AWGN for a given value of SNR in dB (SNRDB). This is the
% receiver SNR per resource element and antenna assuming the channel does
% not affect the power of the signal. NFFT is the FFT size used in OFDM
% demodulation. SIZERXWAVEFORM is the size of the receive waveform used to
% calculate the size of the noise matrix.

% Normalize noise power to take account of sampling rate, which is
% a function of the IFFT size used in OFDM modulation. The SNR
% is defined per RE for each receive antenna (TS 38.101-4).
nRxAnts = sizeRxWaveform(2);

```

```

    SNR = 10^(SNRdB/20); % Calculate linear noise gain
    N0 = 1/(sqrt(2.0*nRxAnts*double(Nfft))*SNR);
    noise = N0*complex(randn(sizeRxWaveform),randn(sizeRxWaveform));
end

function [wtx,wrx,D] = getBeamformingWeights(hEst,nLayers)
% Get beamforming weights given a channel matrix HEST and the number of
% layers NLAYERS. One set of weights is provided for the whole bandwidth.
% The beamforming weights are calculated using singular value (SVD)
% decomposition.
%
% This function returns the beamforming weights for the transmitter and the
% receiver (WTX and WRX) and the singular value matrix (D).

    % Average channel estimate
    [~,~,R,P] = size(hEst);
    H = permute(mean(reshape(hEst,[],R,P)),[2 3 1]);

    % SVD decomposition
    [U,D,V] = svd(H);
    wtx = V(:,1:nLayers)';
    wrx = U(:,1:nLayers)';
end

function [srsWaveform,srsGrid,srsWaveformInfo,srsIndices,srsSymbols] = generateULSRSWaveform(ue,
% Generate the SRS symbols, map to slot grid and OFDM modulate. This
% function returns the time and frequency domain waveforms (SRSWAVEFORM and SRSGRID),
% associated information (SRSWAVEFORMINFO), and the SRS symbols and its
% mapping indices (SRSSYMBOLS and SRSINDICES).
%
% The function inputs are the UE carrier and the SRS configuration object.

    [srsIndices,~] = nrSRSIndices(ue,srs);
    srsSymbols = nrSRS(ue,srs);

    % Create a slot-wise resource grid empty grid and map SRS symbols
    srsGrid = nrResourceGrid(ue,srs.NumSRSPorts);
    srsGrid(srsIndices) = srsSymbols;

    % Determine if the slot contains SRS
    isSRSSlot= ~isempty(srsSymbols);
    if ~isSRSSlot
        error("nr5g:TDDReciprocityExample:NoSRS","Slot "+ string(ue.NSlot) + ": No SRS present")
    end

    % OFDM Modulation
    [srsWaveform,srsWaveformInfo] = nrOFDMModulate(ue,srsGrid);
end

function [txWaveform,waveformInfo,pdschResources,dmrsResources,trBlkSizes] = ...
    generatePDSCHWaveform(carrier,pdsch,encodeDLSCH,RV,wbs)
% For a given slot, generate transport block, apply DL-SCH encoding and
% PDSCH modulate. Generate the PDSCH DM-RS. Precode resulting signal and
% OFDM modulate. This function returns the time-domain signal TXWAVEFORM and
% associated information WAVEFORMINFO. The resource structures
% PDSCHRESOURCES and DMRSRESOURCES include the PDSCH and DM-RS symbols and
% their respective mapping indices. The function also returns the transport
% block sizes (TRBLKSIZES).

```

```

%
% The function inputs include the CARRIER and PDSCH configuration objects,
% the DL-SCH encoder object (ENCODEDLSCH), the redundancy version (RV), and
% the precoding weights (WBS).

% Generate PDSCH indices
[pdschIndices,pdschInfo] = nrPDSCHIndices(carrier,pdsch);

% Calculate transport block sizes
Xoh_PDSCH = 0;
codeRate = encodeDLSCHEncoder.TargetCodeRate;
trBlkSizes = nrTBS(pdsch.Modulation,pdsch.NumLayers,numel(pdsch.PRBSets),pdschInfo.NREPerPRB,

for cwIdx = 1:pdsch.NumCodewords
    trBlk = randi([0 1],trBlkSizes(cwIdx),1);
    setTransportBlock(encodeDLSCHEncoder,trBlk,cwIdx-1);
end

% Encode the DL-SCH transport blocks
codedTrBlock = encodeDLSCHEncoder(pdsch.Modulation,pdsch.NumLayers,pdschInfo.G,RV);

% Generate PDSCH symbols and precode
pdschSymbolsTx = nrPDSCH(carrier,pdsch,codedTrBlock);
pdschSymbolsTxPrecoded = pdschSymbolsTx*wbs;

pdschResources.pdschSymbolsTx = pdschSymbolsTx;
pdschResources.pdschIndices = pdschIndices;

% Create an empty resource grid and map the PDSCH symbols. The PDSCH
% indices are calculated for a single antenna port. After precoding,
% map the resulting signal to multiple antennas. The function
% nrExtractResources() helps to convert the single-port PDSCH indices
% to multiple antennas
nBSAnts = size(wbs,2);
pdschGrid = nrResourceGrid(carrier,nBSAnts);
[~,pdschAntIndices] = nrExtractResources(pdschIndices,pdschGrid);
pdschGrid(pdschAntIndices) = pdschSymbolsTxPrecoded;

% Generate DM-RS symbols and indices
dmrsSymbols = nrPDSCHDMRS(carrier,pdsch);
dmrsIndices = nrPDSCHDMRSIndices(carrier,pdsch);

dmrsResources.dmrsSymbols = dmrsSymbols;
dmrsResources.dmrsIndices = dmrsIndices;

% PDSCH DM-RS precoding and mapping. Similarly to the PDSCH, the DM-RS
% indices are calculated for a single port, the function
% nrExtractResources() helps to convert these to multi-antenna indices
for p = 1:size(dmrsSymbols,2)
    [~,dmrsAntIndices] = nrExtractResources(dmrsIndices(:,p),pdschGrid);
    pdschGrid(dmrsAntIndices) = pdschGrid(dmrsAntIndices) + dmrsSymbols(:,p)*wbs(p,:);
end

% Perform OFDM modulation of the resource grid
[txWaveform,waveformInfo] = nrOFDMModulate(carrier,pdschGrid);
end

function cdmLengths = hSRSCDMLengths(srs)

```

```
% Get CDM lengths for the SRS configuration SRS.
%
% SRS is an SRS-specific configuration object with properties:
% NumSRSPorts      - Number of SRS antenna ports (1,2,4)
% KTC              - Transmission comb number (2,4)
% CyclicShift      - Cyclic shift number offset (0..NCSmax-1).
%                  NCSmax = 12 if KTC = 4 and NCSmax = 8 if KTC = 2
if srs.NumSRSPorts == 1
    cdmLengths = [1 1];
elseif srs.NumSRSPorts == 2
    cdmLengths = [2 1];
elseif (srs.KTC == 2 && srs.CyclicShift >= 4) || (srs.KTC == 4 && srs.CyclicShift >= 6)
    cdmLengths = [2 1];
else
    cdmLengths = [4 1];
end
end

function verifyNumLayers(numLayers,bsAntSize,ueAntSize)
    if numLayers>min(prod(bsAntSize),prod(ueAntSize))
        error("nr5g:TDDReciprocityExample:InvalidNumLayers",...
            'The number of layers (%d) must satisfy NLayers <= min(num BS ants,num UE ants) = mi
            numLayers,prod(bsAntSize),prod(ueAntSize),min(prod(bsAntSize),prod(ueAntSize)));
    end
end
```

See Also

Functions

nrPDSCHDMRS | nrPDSCHDMRSIndices

Objects

nrCarrierConfig | nrDLSCH | nrDLSCHDecoder

More About

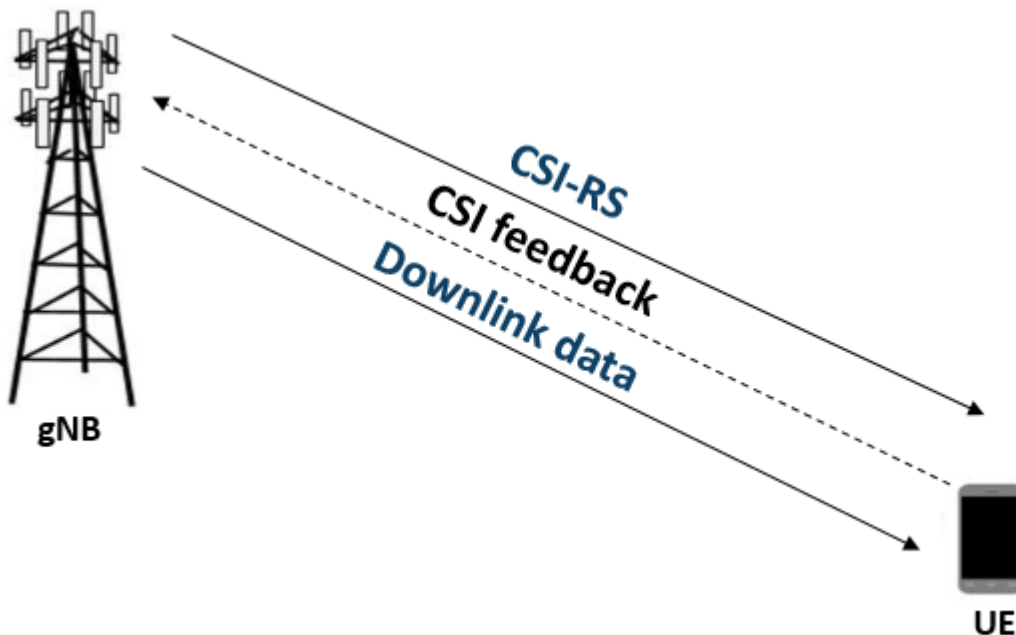
- “NR Uplink Channel State Information Estimation Using SRS” on page 2-79
- “NR SRS Configuration” on page 2-59

5G NR Downlink CSI Reporting

The example shows how to compute the downlink channel state information (CSI) parameters such as the channel quality indicator (CQI) and precoding matrix indicator (PMI) for multiple input multiple output (MIMO) scenarios considering type-1 single panel codebooks, as defined in TS 38.214 Section 5.2.2, over a tapped delay line (TDL) channel.

Introduction

CSI parameters are the quantities related to the state of a channel that are reported by the user equipment (UE) to the access network node (gNB) as a feedback. The CSI feedback includes several parameters, such as the CQI, the PMI with different codebook sets, and the rank indicator (RI). The channel state information reference signal (CSI-RS) is used to measure the CSI feedback. When the gNB receives the CSI parameters, it can schedule the downlink data transmissions (such as modulation scheme, code rate, number of transmission layers, and MIMO precoding) accordingly. The figure shows the overview of CSI-RS transmission, CSI computation and feedback, and the transmission of downlink data that is scheduled based on the CSI parameters.



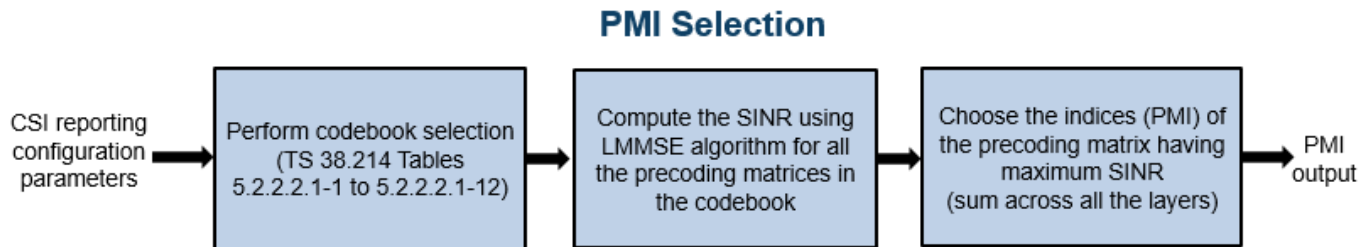
RI Selection

The RI defines the number of possible transmission layers for the downlink transmission under specific channel conditions. It is also termed as the maximum number of uncorrelated paths that can be used for the downlink transmission. Other CSI parameters like the PMI and CQI are computed based on the rank provided by the RI. The current example does not support RI computation. The CQI and PMI parameters are computed in the example assuming a known rank.

PMI Selection

The PMI is a set of indices corresponding to a precoding matrix that can be used for the downlink data transmission. A codebook is selected from a set of possible codebooks, defined in TS 38.214

Tables 5.2.2.2.1-1 to 5.2.2.2.1-12, based on the possible number of transmission layers for the downlink transmission and CSI reporting configuration parameters such as antenna panel dimensions and the codebook mode. The codebook consists of a set of precoding matrices. For given channel conditions, the signal to interference and noise ratio (SINR) is computed at the receiver side by considering all precoding matrices from the selected codebook. The indices of the precoding matrix, which gives the maximum SINR, are reported as the PMI (constituting the two indices set i_1, i_2 , as defined in TS 38.214 Section 5.2.2.2.1). The figure shows the procedure for PMI selection.



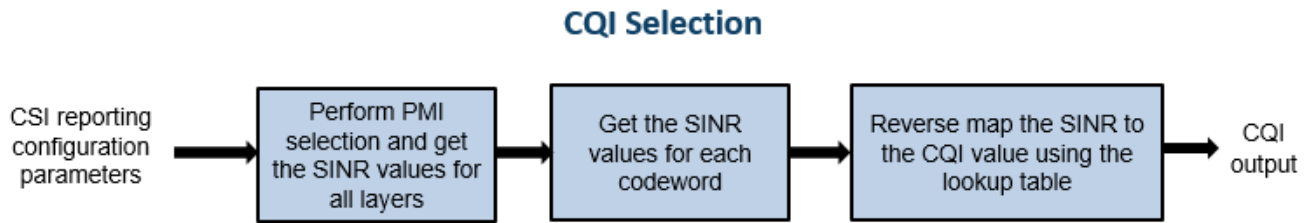
CQI Selection

The CQI is an indicator of channel quality. The CQI index is a scalar value from 0 to 15. It provides the information about the highest modulation scheme and the code rate (MCS) suitable for the downlink transmission to achieve the required block error rate (BLER) for a given channel conditions. The highest CQI index is selected when a single physical downlink shared channel (PDSCH) transport block with a combination of modulation scheme, target code rate, and transport block size that correspond to the CQI index and that occupy a group of downlink physical resource blocks termed the CSI reference resource, can be received with a transport block error probability not exceeding:

- 0.1 for '*cqi-Table*' as '*table1*' or '*table2*'
- 0.00001 for '*cqi-Table*' as '*table3*'

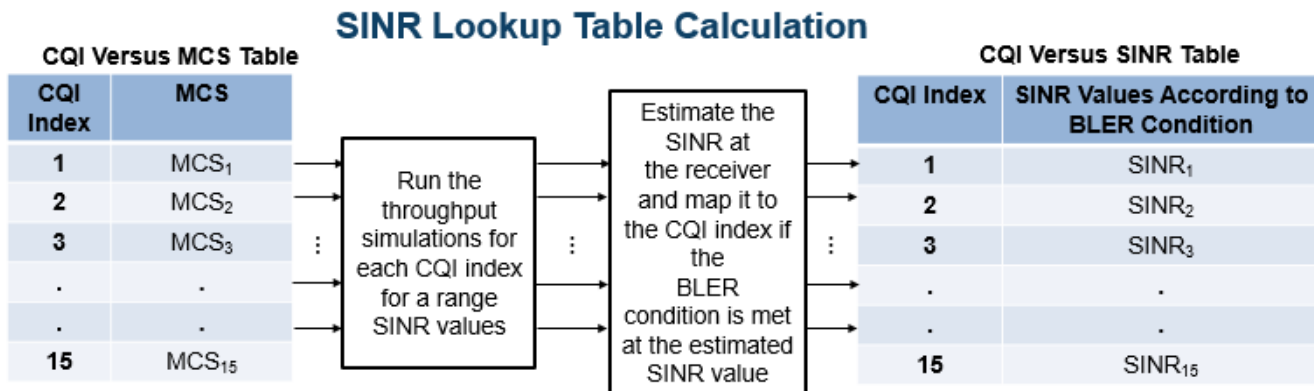
The '*cqi-Table*' is a higher layer parameter that corresponds to the CQI versus MCS table, and SINR lookup table is computed for this table. This example uses a 0.1 BLER (corresponding to a 90 percent throughput) and '*cqi-Table*' as '*table1*' (TS 38.214 Table 5.2.2.1-2). The relationship between the CQI indices, the modulation scheme, and the code rate (from which the transport block size is derived) is described in TS 38.214 Tables 5.2.2.1-2 to 5.2.2.1-4. The CSI reference resource is defined in TS 38.214 Section 5.2.2.5.

The CQI value is computed by considering the SINR values that correspond to the reported PMI, using the precalculated lookup table of the CQI index versus SINR_i , as a reference. The SINR values across all layers (corresponding to the reported PMI) are mapped to each codeword. For each codeword, the respective SINR is compared with the SINR_i values from the table and then, the CQI value against the maximum SINR, which is less than the codeword SINR is selected. The CQI value is selected such that the BLER is less than or equal to 0.1 when operated at SINR_i . If a CQI index of 1 does not satisfy the BLER condition, then the CQI index is considered as 0. The figure shows the procedure for CQI selection.



CQI Versus SINR Table

The lookup tables can be created by updating the `NewRadioPDSCHThroughputExample` to configure the CSI reference resource, as defined in TS 38.214 Section 5.2.2.5. Simulations for PDSCH throughput are performed by considering the modulation scheme and code rate corresponding to each CQI, considering certain channel conditions and across a finite range of SINR values with zero interference. The SINR value observed at the receiver, where the target BLER is achieved, gets mapped against each CQI index. The figure shows the procedure for CQI versus SINR table creation.



Outline of Example

This example shows how to compute the CQI and PMI indices for a 4-by-4 MIMO scenario over a TDL channel with delay profile TDL-C, a delay spread of $300e-9$ seconds, and a maximum doppler shift of 50 Hz. It compares the time-domain and frequency-domain variations of CQI values against the time-domain and frequency-domain variations of SINR values for both practical and perfect channel estimation scenarios. The example also highlights the variations of PMI values across time-domain and frequency-domain for practical and perfect channel estimation scenarios.

Simulation Length and SNR Point

Set the length of the simulation in terms of the number of 10 ms frames. The SNR (SINR with zero interference) is defined per resource element (RE) and applies to each receive antenna.

```

nFrames = 5; % Number of 10 ms frames
SNRdB = 0; % SNR in dB
  
```

Carrier, Bandwidth Part, and CSI-RS Configuration

Create a carrier configuration object representing a 10 MHz carrier with a subcarrier spacing of 15 kHz.

```
carrier = nrCarrierConfig;  
carrier.SubcarrierSpacing = 15;  
carrier.NSizeGrid = 52;
```

Configure the size of the bandwidth part (BWP) and the start of the BWP relative to common resource block 0 (CRB 0).

```
NStartBWP = 0;  
NSizeBWP = 52;
```

Create a CSI-RS configuration object representing a non-zero-power CSI-RS (NZP-CSI-RS) resource set with a set of NZP-CSI-RS resources. Make sure that the NZP-CSI-RS resources that are configured in this example have the same code division multiplexing (CDM) types and the same number of CSI-RS ports, as defined in TS 38.214 Section 5.2.2.3.1.

```
csirs = nrCSIRSConfig;  
csirs.CSIRSType = {'nzp', 'nzp', 'nzp'};  
csirs.RowNumber = [4 4 4];  
csirs.NumRB = 52;  
csirs.RBOffset = 0;  
csirs.CSIRSPeriod = [4 0];  
csirs.SymbolLocations = {0, 0, 0};  
csirs.SubcarrierLocations = {0, 4, 8};  
csirs.Density = {'one', 'one', 'one'};
```

Other Simulation-wide Parameters

Configure the number of transmit and receive antennas. The number of transmit antennas must be greater than or equal to the number of CSI-RS ports.

```
nTxAnts = 4;  
nRxAnts = 4;
```

Validate the CSI-RS configuration object.

```
validateCSIRSConfig(carrier, csirs, nTxAnts);
```

Configure the number of transmission layers. Number of layers from 1 to 4 corresponds to one codeword and the number of layers from 5 to 8 corresponds to two codewords. The number of transmission layers must be less than or equal to the minimum of the `nTxAnts` and `nRxAnts`.

```
numLayers = 4;
```

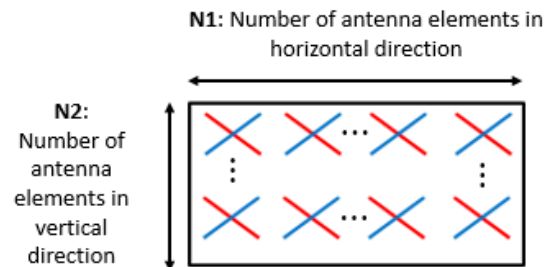
CSI Reporting Configuration

These are the parameters required for the CQI and PMI computation and are specified as a structure with fields:

- `NSizeBWP`: Size of the BWP in terms of the number of physical resource blocks (PRBs)
- `NStartBWP`: Starting PRB index of the BWP relative to CRB 0
- `PanelDimensions`: The antenna panel dimensions as [N1 N2] according to TS 38.214 Table 5.2.2.2-2, as shown in the figure

Supported configurations of (N1, N2)

Number of CSI-RS ports	(N1,N2)	(O1,O2) DFT oversampling factors
4	(2,1)	(4,1)
8	(2,2)	(4,4)
	(4,1)	(4,1)
12	(3,2)	(4,4)
	(6,1)	(4,1)
16	(4,2)	(4,4)
	(8,1)	(4,1)
24	(4,3)	(4,4)
	(6,2)	(4,4)
	(12,1)	(4,1)
32	(4,4)	(4,4)
	(8,2)	(4,4)
	(16,1)	(4,1)



Note: Number of CSI-RS ports = $2 * N1 * N2$

- CQIMode: The mode of CQI reporting ('Subband', 'Wideband')
- PMIMode: The mode of PMI reporting ('Subband', 'Wideband')
- SubbandSize: The size of the subband, as defined in TS 38.214 Table 5.2.1.4-2 (required only when CQIMode or PMIMode is 'Subband')
- PRGSize: The precoding resource block group (PRG) size for the CQI calculation (required only when the reporting must be done for the report quantity '*cri-RI-i1-CQI*' as defined in TS 38.214 Section 5.2.1.4.2)
- CodebookMode: The codebook mode (required only when the number of transmission layers is 1 or 2 and the number of CSI-RS ports is greater than 2)
- CodebookSubsetRestriction: Restriction parameter pertaining to the codebook index set i_1 , that is, v_{lm} or $v_{bar_{lm}}$ restriction parameter, as defined in TS 38.214 Section 5.2.2.2.1. This field denotes the set of i_1 indices (i_1 is a three element vector of the form $[i_{11}, i_{12}, i_{13}]$) that are restricted from the consideration for the PMI computation.
- i_2 Restriction: Restriction parameter pertaining to the codebook index i_2 . This field denotes the set of i_2 indices that are restricted from the consideration for the PMI computation.

```
% Configure CSI reporting configuration parameters
reportConfig.NStartBWP = NStartBWP;
reportConfig.NSizeBWP = NSizeBWP;
reportConfig.PanelDimensions = [2 1];
reportConfig.CQIMode = 'Subband';
reportConfig.PMIMode = 'Subband';
reportConfig.SubbandSize = 4;
reportConfig.PRGSize = [];
reportConfig.CodebookMode = 1;
reportConfig.CodebookSubsetRestriction = [];
reportConfig.i2Restriction = [];
```

Propagation Channel Model Configuration

Consider a TDL channel with delay profile TDL-C, a delay spread of $300\text{e-}9$ seconds, and a maximum doppler shift of 50 Hz.

```
% Create channel object
channel = nrTDLChannel;
channel.NumTransmitAntennas = nTxAnts;
channel.NumReceiveAntennas = nRxAnts;
channel.DelayProfile = 'TDL-C';
channel.MaximumDopplerShift = 50;
channel.DelaySpread = 300e-9;
```

Set the sampling rate for the channel model by using the value returned from the `nrOFDMInfo` function.

```
waveformInfo = nrOFDMInfo(carrier);
channel.SampleRate = waveformInfo.SampleRate;
```

Get the maximum number of delayed samples by a channel multipath component. The maximum number of delayed samples is calculated from the channel path with the largest delay and the implementation delay of the channel filter. The number of samples that correspond to the maximum channel delay is required later to flush the channel filter to obtain the received signal.

```
chInfo = info(channel);
maxChDelay = ceil(max(chInfo.PathDelays*channel.SampleRate)) + chInfo.ChannelFilterDelay;
```

Processing Loop

For each slot, the CSI-RS is generated, transmitted through the channel, and then processed at the receiver side to compute the CQI and PMI values. The transmit to receive end processing for each slot follows these steps:

- 1 **Generate the resource grid:** Generate the slot grid that is populated with the CSI-RS and map the slot grid from CSI-RS ports to transmit antennas.
- 2 **Generate the waveform:** OFDM modulate the generated grid by using the `nrOFDMModulate` function.
- 3 **Model and apply a noisy channel:** Pass the waveform through a TDL-C fading channel, and then add the additive white Gaussian noise (AWGN). The SNR is defined per RE and applies to each receive antenna.
- 4 **Perform timing synchronization and OFDM demodulation:** For practical synchronization, correlate the received waveform with the CSI-RS. For perfect synchronization, use the path gains and path filters of the channel are used. The synchronized signal is then OFDM demodulated with the `nrOFDMDemodulate` function.
- 5 **Perform channel estimation:** For practical channel estimation, use the CSI-RS. For perfect channel estimation, use the path gains, the path filters, and the sample times of channel snapshots.
- 6 **Compute CQI and PMI values:** Compute CQI and PMI values using practical and perfect channel estimations.

```
% Initialize variables to store CQI, PMI, and subband SINR values for
% practical and perfect channel estimation scenarios
cqiPracticalPerSlot = [];
subbandCQIPractical = [];
```

```

pmiPracticalPerSlot = struct('i1',[],'i2',[]);
SINRPerSubbandPerCWPractical = [];
cqiPerfectPerSlot = [];
subbandCQIPerfect = [];
pmiPerfectPerSlot = struct('i1',[],'i2',[]);
SINRPerSubbandPerCWPerfect = [];

% Calculate total number of slots
totSlots = nFrames*carrier.SlotsPerFrame;

% Get number of CSI-RS ports
csirsPorts = csirs.NumCSIRSPorts(1);

% Get CDM lengths corresponding to configured CSI-RS resources
cdmLengths = getCDMLengths(csirs);

% Loop over all slots
for slotIdx = 0:totSlots - 1
    % Create carrier resource grid for one slot
    csirsSlotGrid = nrResourceGrid(carrier,csirsPorts);

    % Update slot number in carrier configuration object
    carrier.NSlot = slotIdx;

    % Generate CSI-RS indices and symbols
    csirsInd = nrCSIRSIndices(carrier,csirs);
    csirsSym = nrCSIRS(carrier,csirs);

    % Map CSI-RS to slot grid
    csirsSlotGrid(csirsInd) = csirsSym;

    % Map CSI-RS ports to transmit antennas
    wtx = eye(csirsPorts,nTxAnts);
    txGrid = reshape(reshape(csirsSlotGrid,[],csirsPorts)*wtx,size(csirsSlotGrid,1),size(csirsSlotGrid,2));

    % Perform OFDM modulation to generate time-domain waveform
    txWaveform = nrOFDMModulate(carrier,txGrid);

    % Append zeros at the end of the transmitted waveform to flush channel
    % content. These zeros take into account any delay introduced in the
    % channel. The channel delay is a mix of multipath delay and
    % implementation delay. This value may change depending on the sampling
    % rate, delay profile, and delay spread.
    txWaveform = [txWaveform; zeros(maxChDelay,size(txWaveform,2))]; %#ok<AGROW>

    % Transmit waveform through channel
    [rxWaveform,pathGains,sampleTimes] = channel(txWaveform);

    % Generate and add AWGN to received waveform
    SNR = 10^(SNRdB/20);
    N0 = 1/(sqrt(2.0*nRxAnts*double(waveformInfo.Nfft))*SNR);
    rng('default');
    noise = N0*complex(randn(size(rxWaveform)),randn(size(rxWaveform)));
    rxWaveform = rxWaveform + noise;
    % Linear SNR value
    % Noise standard deviation
    % Set RNG state for repeatability

    % Perform practical timing estimation
    offsetPractical = nrTimingEstimate(carrier,rxWaveform,csirsInd,csirsSym);
    if offsetPractical > maxChDelay

```

```

        offsetPractical = 0;
    end

    % Get path filters
    pathFilters = getPathFilters(channel);
    % Perform perfect timing estimation
    offsetPerfect = nrPerfectTimingEstimate(pathGains,pathFilters);

    % Perform time-domain offset correction for practical and
    % perfect timing estimation scenarios
    rxWaveformPractical = rxWaveform(1+offsetPractical:end,:);
    rxWaveformPerfect = rxWaveform(1+offsetPerfect:end,:);

    % Perform OFDM demodulation on previously synchronized waveforms
    rxGridPractical = nrOFDMDemodulate(carrier,rxWaveformPractical);
    rxGridPerfect = nrOFDMDemodulate(carrier,rxWaveformPerfect);

    % Consider only the NZP-CSI-RS symbols for channel estimation
    nzpCSIRSSym = csirsSym(csirsSym ~= 0);
    % Consider only the NZP-CSI-RS indices for channel estimation
    nzpCSIRSInd = csirsInd(csirsSym ~= 0);
    % Calculate practical channel estimate using 'AveragingWindow' as [5 1]
    [PracticalHest,nVarPractical] = nrChannelEstimate(carrier,rxGridPractical, ...
        nzpCSIRSInd,nzpCSIRSSym,'CDMLengths',cdmLengths,'AveragingWindow',[5 1]);

    % Perform perfect channel estimation
    PerfectHest = nrPerfectChannelEstimate(carrier,pathGains,pathFilters,offsetPerfect,sampleTime);

    % Get perfect noise estimate value from noise realization
    noiseGrid = nrOFDMDemodulate(carrier,noise(1+offsetPerfect:end,:));
    nVarPerfect = var(noiseGrid(:));

    % Calculate CQI and PMI values using practical channel estimate
    [cqiPractical,pmiPractical,cqiInfoPractical] = hCQISelect(carrier,csirs, ...
        reportConfig,numLayers,PracticalHest,nVarPractical);

    % Store CQI, PMI, and subband SINR values of each slot for
    % practical channel estimation scenario
    cqiPracticalPerSlot(:,:,slotIdx+1) = cqiPractical; %#ok<SAGROW>
    pmiPracticalPerSlot(slotIdx+1) = pmiPractical;
    subbandCQIPractical(:,:,slotIdx+1) = cqiInfoPractical.SubbandCQI; %#ok<SAGROW>
    SINRPerSubbandPerCWPractical(:,:,slotIdx+1) = cqiInfoPractical.SINRPerSubbandPerCW; %#ok<SAGROW>

    % Calculate CQI and PMI values using perfect channel estimate
    [cqiPerfect,pmiPerfect,cqiInfoPerfect] = hCQISelect(carrier,csirs, ...
        reportConfig,numLayers,PerfectHest,nVarPerfect);

    % Store CQI, PMI, and subband SINR values of each slot for
    % perfect channel estimation scenario
    cqiPerfectPerSlot(:,:,slotIdx+1) = cqiPerfect; %#ok<SAGROW>
    subbandCQIPerfect(:,:,slotIdx+1) = cqiInfoPerfect.SubbandCQI; %#ok<SAGROW>
    pmiPerfectPerSlot(slotIdx+1) = pmiPerfect;
    SINRPerSubbandPerCWPerfect(:,:,slotIdx+1) = cqiInfoPerfect.SINRPerSubbandPerCW; %#ok<SAGROW>
end

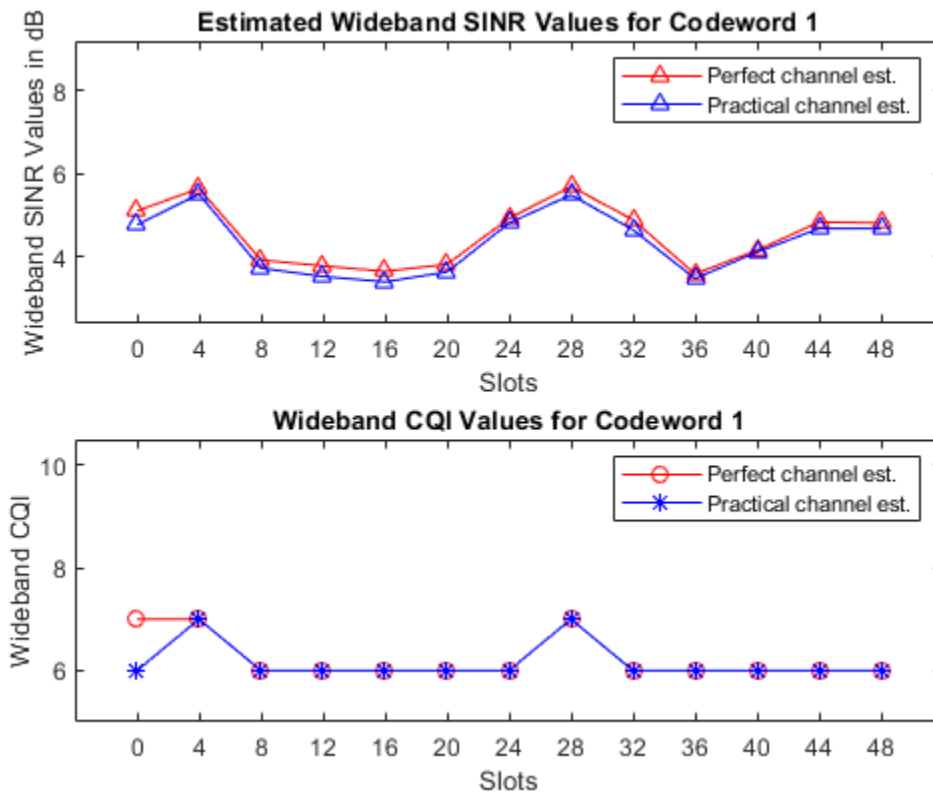
```

Compare CQI and PMI Values Reported in Practical and Perfect Channel Estimation Scenarios

Plot CQI Indices

Plot the wideband SINR values and wideband CQI values for each codeword for practical and perfect channel estimation scenarios. The plot highlights only the slots in which the CSI-RS is transmitted, or the CQI is calculated. The figure shows how the SINR and the corresponding reported CQI vary across the slots due to channel fading.

```
plotWidebandCQIAndSINR(cqiPracticalPerSlot,cqiPerfectPerSlot,SINRPerSubbandPerCWPractical,SINRPer
```

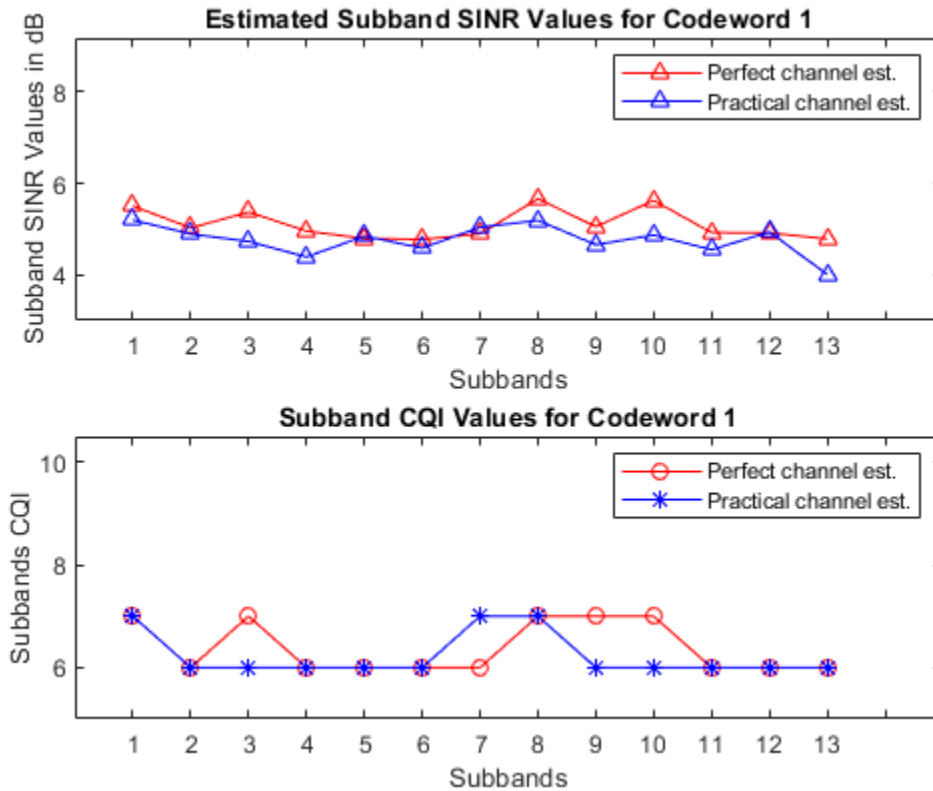


Plot the subband SINR values and subband CQI values for each codeword for both practical and perfect channel estimation scenarios. The plot highlights the variations of SINR and CQI values across the subbands for a specified slot number (1-based) if CQI is reported in that slot. Otherwise, no plot is generated because the CQI is not reported.

The `plotSubbandCQIAndSINR` function plots the CQI values across all subbands only when the CQI mode is configured as 'Subband'.

```
% Provide slot number for which subband CQI values and PMI i2 indices must be plotted
slotNum = 1; % Consider slot number as 1 (1-based) here, because CSI (CQI and PMI) is
% reported in that slot for the configured CSI-RS resource(s)
```

```
plotSubbandCQIAndSINR(subbandCQIPractical,subbandCQIPerfect,SINRPerSubbandPerCWPractical,SINRPer
```

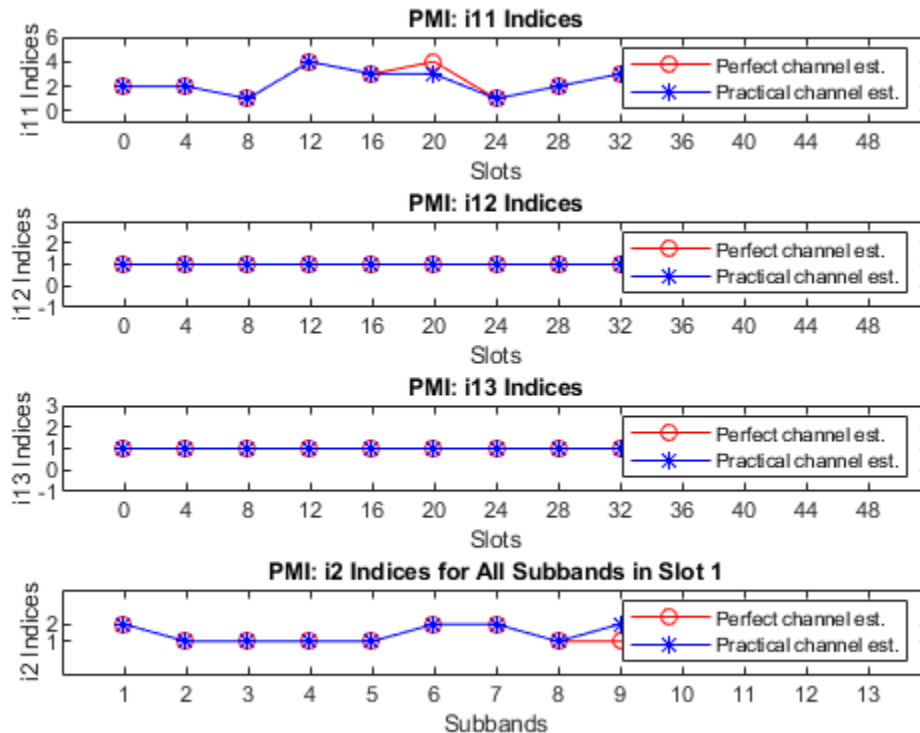


Plot PMI Indices

This section shows the plots of PMI indices ($i_1: [i_{1,1}, i_{1,2}, i_{1,3}]$ and i_2). The plot highlights only the slots in which the CSI-RS is transmitted, or the PMI is calculated. The plot highlights the variations in the i_1 indices across the slots due to channel fading. The plot also highlights the variation in i_2 indices across:

- The slots, if the PMIMode is configured as 'Wideband'
- The subbands in the specified slot, if the PMIMode is configured as 'Subband'

```
plotPMI(pmiPracticalPerSlot,pmiPerfectPerSlot,slotNum);
```

Summary and Further Exploration

The example shows how to compute downlink CSI parameters such as the CQI and PMI from type-1 single panel codebooks for a MIMO scenario with a TDL channel.

You can modify carrier, channel, CSI-RS resource configurations, and CSI reporting configuration parameters (such as the mode of CQI and PMI reporting, and the subband size) and observe the variations in the computed CQI and PMI values across the time (slots) and frequency (subbands).

References

- 1 3GPP TS 38.214. "NR; Physical layer procedures for data." *3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Radio Access Network.*

Local Functions

The example uses these local functions to validate the CSI-RS configuration object, and to plot the computed CQI and PMI values

```
function validateCSIRSConfig(carrier,csirs,nTxAnts)
% validateCSIRSConfig(CARRIER,CSIRS,NTXANTS) validates the CSI-RS
% configuration, given the carrier specific configuration object CARRIER,
% CSI-RS configuration object CSIRS, and the number of transmit antennas
% NTXANTS.

% Validate the number of CSI-RS ports
if ~isscalar(unique(csirs.NumCSIRSPorts))
```

```

        error('nr5g:InvalidCSIRSPorts',...
            'All the CSI-RS resources must be configured to have the same number of CSI-RS ports
end
% Validate the CDM lengths
if ~iscell(csirs.CDMType)
    cdmType = {csirs.CDMType};
else
    cdmType = csirs.CDMType;
end
if (~all(strcmpi(cdmType,cdmType{1})))
    error('nr5g:InvalidCSIRSCDMTypes',...
        'All the CSI-RS resources must be configured to have the same CDM lengths.');
```

```

end
if nTxAnts < csirs.NumCSIRSPorts(1)
    error('nr5g:InvalidNumTxAnts',['Number of transmit antennas (' num2str(nTxAnts)...
        ') must be greater than or equal to the number of CSI-RS ports (' num2str(csirs.NumCS
end

% Check for the overlap between the CSI-RS indices
csirsInd = nrCSIRSIndices(carrier,csirs,"OutputResourceFormat",'cell');
numRes = numel(csirsInd);
csirsIndAll = cell(1,numRes);
ratioVal = csirs.NumCSIRSPorts(1)/prod(getCDMLengths(csirs));
for resIdx = 1:numRes
    if ~isempty(csirsInd{resIdx})
        grid = nrResourceGrid(carrier,csirs.NumCSIRSPorts(1));
        [~,tempInd] = nrExtractResources(csirsInd{resIdx},grid);
        if numel(tempInd)/numel(csirsInd{resIdx}) ~= ratioVal
            error('nr5g:OverlappedCSIRSREsSingleResource',['CSI-RS indices of resource '...
                num2str(resIdx) ' must be unique. Try changing the symbol or subcarrier loca
        end
        csirsIndAll{resIdx} = tempInd(:);
        for idx = 1:resIdx-1
            overlappedInd = ismember(csirsIndAll{idx},csirsIndAll{resIdx});
            if any(overlappedInd)
                error('nr5g:OverlappedCSIRSREsMultipleResources',['The resource elements of '
                    'configured CSI-RS resources must not overlap. Try changing the symbol or
                    'subcarrier locations of CSI-RS resource ' num2str(idx) ' and resource '
            end
        end
    end
end
end
end
end

function cdmLengths = getCDMLengths(csirs)
% CDMLENGTHS = getCDMLengths(CSIRS) returns the CDM lengths given the
% CSI-RS configuration object CSIRS.

CDMType = csirs.CDMType;
if ~iscell(csirs.CDMType)
    CDMType = {csirs.CDMType};
end
CDMTypeOpts = {'noCDM','fd-CDM2','CDM4','CDM8'};
CDMLengthOpts = {[1 1],[2 1],[2 2],[2 4]};
cdmLengths = CDMLengthOpts{strcmpi(CDMTypeOpts,CDMType{1})};
end

```

```

function plotWidebandCQIAndSINR(cqiPracticalPerSlot,cqiPerfectPerSlot,SINRPerSubbandPerCWPractical,SI
% plotWidebandCQIAndSINR(CQIPRACTICALPERSLOT,CQIPERFECTPERSLOT,SINRPERSUBBANDPERCWPRACTICAL,SI
% plots the wideband SINR and wideband CQI values for each codeword
% across all active slots (in which the CQI is reported as other
% than NaN) for practical and perfect channel estimation cases.

numCW = size(cqiPracticalPerSlot,2);
% Plot wideband CQI values
for cwIdx = 1:numCW
    cqiPracticalPerCW = permute(cqiPracticalPerSlot(1,cwIdx,:),[1 3 2]);
    cqiPerfectPerCW = permute(cqiPerfectPerSlot(1,cwIdx,:),[1 3 2]);
    SINRPerCWPractical = permute(SINRPerSubbandPerCWPractical(1,cwIdx,:),[1 3 2]);
    SINRPerCWPerfect = permute(SINRPerSubbandPerCWPerfect(1,cwIdx,:),[1 3 2]);

    % Get logical array to represent active slots in which CQI is
    % reported
    activeSlotsLogAry = ~isnan(cqiPracticalPerCW);

    % Get slot numbers (0-based) in which CQI is reported
    activeSlotNum = find(activeSlotsLogAry)-1;

    % Extract wideband CQI indices for slots where CQI is reported
    % as other than NaN
    cqiPracticalPerCWActiveSlots = cqiPracticalPerCW(activeSlotsLogAry);
    cqiPerfectPerCWActiveSlots = cqiPerfectPerCW(activeSlotsLogAry);
    widebandSINRPractical = 10*log10(SINRPerCWPractical(1,activeSlotsLogAry));
    widebandSINRPerfect = 10*log10(SINRPerCWPerfect(1,activeSlotsLogAry));
    xTickLables = num2cell(activeSlotNum(:));

    if isempty(cqiPracticalPerCWActiveSlots)
        disp('No CQI data to plot, because all CQI values are NaNs.');
```

```

        return;
    end

```

```

    figure();
    subplot(211)
    plot(widebandSINRPerfect,'r^-')
    hold on;
    plot(widebandSINRPractical,'b^-')
    title(['Estimated Wideband SINR Values for Codeword ' num2str(cwIdx)]);
    xlabel('Slots');
    ylabel('Wideband SINR Values in dB');
    xticks(1:numel(cqiPracticalPerCWActiveSlots));
    xticklabels(xTickLables);
    [lowerBound,upperBound] = bounds([widebandSINRPractical(:);widebandSINRPerfect(:)]);
    ylim([lowerBound-1 upperBound+3.5]);
    legend({'Perfect channel est.','Practical channel est.});

```

```

    subplot(212)
    plot(cqiPerfectPerCWActiveSlots,'r-o');
    hold on;
    plot(cqiPracticalPerCWActiveSlots,'b-*');
    xlabel('Slots');
    xticks(1:numel(cqiPracticalPerCWActiveSlots));
    xticklabels(xTickLables);
    ylabel('Wideband CQI');
    [lowerBound,upperBound] = bounds([cqiPracticalPerCWActiveSlots(:);cqiPerfectPerCWActiveSlots(:)]);
    ylim([lowerBound-1 upperBound+3.5]);

```

```

        title(['Wideband CQI Values for Codeword ' num2str(cwIdx)]);
        legend({'Perfect channel est.','Practical channel est.'});
    end
end

function plotSubbandCQIAndSINR(subbandCQIPractical,subbandCQIPerfect,SINRPerCWPractical,SINRPerCWPerfect)
% plotSUBBANDCQIAndSINR(SUBBANDCQIPRACTICAL,SUBBANDCQIPERFECT,SINRPERCWPRACTICAL,SINRPERCWPERFECT)
% plots the SINR and CQI values for each codeword across all subbands
% for practical and perfect channel estimation cases for the given slot
% NSLOT. The function does not plot the values if CQIMode is
% 'Wideband' or if the CQI and SINR values are all NaNs.

numCW = size(subbandCQIPractical,2);
numSubbands = size(subbandCQIPractical,1);
if numSubbands > 1
    Mode = 'Subband';
else
    Mode = 'Wideband';
end

% Plot subband CQI values
if strcmpi(Mode,'subband')
    for cwIdx = 1:numCW
        subbandCQIPerCWPractical = subbandCQIPractical(2:end,cwIdx,nslot);
        subbandCQIPerCWPerfect = subbandCQIPerfect(2:end,cwIdx,nslot);
        subbandSINRPerCWPractical = 10*log10(SINRPerCWPractical(2:end,cwIdx,nslot));
        subbandSINRPerCWPerfect = 10*log10(SINRPerCWPerfect(2:end,cwIdx,nslot));

        xTickLables = num2cell(1:numel(subbandCQIPerfect(2:end,cwIdx,1)));
        if all(isnan(subbandCQIPerCWPractical))
            disp(['For the specified slot ( ' num2str(nslot) '), CQI values are not reported.']);
        else
            figure();
            subplot(211)
            plot(subbandSINRPerCWPerfect,'r^-')
            hold on;
            plot(subbandSINRPerCWPractical,'b^-')
            title(['Estimated Subband SINR Values for Codeword ' num2str(cwIdx)]);
            xlabel('Subbands');
            ylabel('Subband SINR Values in dB');
            xticks(1:numSubbands);
            xticklabels(xTickLables);
            xlim([0 numSubbands+1]);
            [lowerBound,upperBound] = bounds([subbandSINRPerCWPerfect;subbandSINRPerCWPractical]);
            ylim([lowerBound-1 upperBound+3.5]);
            legend({'Perfect channel est.','Practical channel est.'});

            subplot(212)
            plot(subbandCQIPerCWPerfect,'r-o');
            hold on;
            plot(subbandCQIPerCWPractical,'b-*');
            title(['Subband CQI Values for Codeword ' num2str(cwIdx)]);
            xlabel('Subbands');
            ylabel('Subbands CQI');
            xticks(1:numSubbands);
            xticklabels(xTickLables);
            xlim([0 numSubbands+1]);
            [lowerBound,upperBound] = bounds([subbandCQIPerCWPerfect(:,1);subbandCQIPerCWPractical(:,1)]);

```

```

        ylim([lowerBound-1 upperBound+3.5]);
        legend({'Perfect channel est.','Practical channel est.'});
    end
end
end
end
end

function plotPMI(pmiPracticalPerSlot,pmiPerfectPerSlot,nslot)
% plotPMI(PMIPRACTICALPERSLOT,PMIPERFECTPERSLOT,NSLOT) plots the PMI i1
% indices across all active slots for practical and perfect
% channel estimation scenarios. The function also plots the i2 indices of
% practical and perfect channel estimation scenarios across all
% active slots, when the PMI mode is 'Wideband' or plots i2 indices
% across all subbands for the specified slot number NSLOT when the
% PMI mode is 'Subband'.

% Extract i1 values for slots where PMI is reported as other
% than NaN
i1PerfectVals = reshape([pmiPerfectPerSlot(:).i1],3,[]);
i1PracticalVals = reshape([pmiPracticalPerSlot(:).i1],3,[]);

% Get logical array to represent active slots in which PMI is
% reported
activeSlotsLogAry = ~isnan(i1PerfectVals(:,1));

% Get slot numbers (0-based) in which PMI is reported
activeSlotNum = find(activeSlotsLogAry)-1;

% Get number of active slots
numActiveSlots = numel(activeSlotNum);

% Extract wideband PMI indices for slots where PMI is reported
% as other than NaN
i1PerfectValsActiveSlots = i1PerfectVals(activeSlotsLogAry,:);
i1PracticalValsActiveSlots = i1PracticalVals(activeSlotsLogAry,:);

if isempty(i1PerfectValsActiveSlots)
    disp('No PMI data to plot, because all PMI values are NaNs.');
```

```

    return;
end
% Get i11 indices
i11PerfectVals = i1PerfectValsActiveSlots(:,1);
i11PracticalVals = i1PracticalValsActiveSlots(:,1);

% Plot i11 values
figure;
subplot(411)
plot(i11PerfectVals,'r-o');
hold on;
plot(i11PracticalVals,'b-*');
xlabel('Slots')
ylabel('i11 Indices');
xticks(1:numActiveSlots);
xTickLabels = num2cell(activeSlotNum(:));
xticklabels(xTickLabels);
[lowerBound,upperBound] = bounds([i11PerfectVals; i11PracticalVals]);
ylim([lowerBound-2 upperBound+2]);
title('PMI: i11 Indices')

```

```

legend({'Perfect channel est.', 'Practical channel est.'});

% Get i12 indices
i12PerfectVals = i1PerfectValsActiveSlots(:,2);
i12PracticalVals = i1PracticalValsActiveSlots(:,2);

% Plot i12 values
subplot(412)
plot(i12PerfectVals, 'r-o');
hold on;
plot(i12PracticalVals, 'b-*');
xlabel('Slots')
ylabel('i12 Indices');
xticks(1:numActiveSlots);
xticklabels(xTickLables);
[lowerBound,upperBound] = bounds([i12PerfectVals; i12PracticalVals]);
ylim([lowerBound-2 upperBound+2]);
title('PMI: i12 Indices')
legend({'Perfect channel est.', 'Practical channel est.'});

% Get i13 indices
i13PerfectVals = i1PerfectValsActiveSlots(:,3);
i13PracticalVals = i1PracticalValsActiveSlots(:,3);

% Plot i13 values
subplot(413)
plot(i13PerfectVals, 'r-o');
hold on;
plot(i13PracticalVals, 'b-*');
xlabel('Slots')
ylabel('i13 Indices');
xticks(1:numActiveSlots);
xticklabels(xTickLables);
[lowerBound,upperBound] = bounds([i13PerfectVals; i13PracticalVals]);
ylim([lowerBound-2 upperBound+2]);
title('PMI: i13 Indices')
legend({'Perfect channel est.', 'Practical channel est.'});

% Extract i2 values
numSlots = numel(pmiPracticalPerSlot);
i2PerfectVals = reshape([pmiPerfectPerSlot(:).i2],[],numSlots)'; % Of size NumSlots-by-N
i2PracticalVals = reshape([pmiPracticalPerSlot(:).i2],[],numSlots)'; % Of size NumSlots-by-N

% Extract i2 values for all active slots where PMI is reported as other than
% NaN
i2PerfectValsActiveSlots = i2PerfectVals(activeSlotsLogAry,:);
i2PracticalValsActiveSlots = i2PracticalVals(activeSlotsLogAry,:);

numSubbands = size(i2PracticalVals,2);
if numSubbands > 1
    mode = 'Subband';
else
    mode = 'Wideband';
end

% Plot i2 values
if strcmpi(mode, 'Wideband')
    subplot(414);

```

```

plot(i2PerfectValsActiveSlots,'r-o');
hold on;
plot(i2PracticalValsActiveSlots,'b-*');
title('PMI: i2 Indices')
xlabel('Slots')
ylabel('i2 Indices');
xticks(1:numActiveSlots);
xticklabels(xTickLables);
[lowerBound,upperBound] = bounds([i2PerfectValsActiveSlots; i2PracticalValsActiveSlots])
ylim([lowerBound-2 upperBound+2]);
legend({'Perfect channel est.','Practical channel est.});
else
if ~all(isnan(i2PerfectVals(nslot,:)))
subplot(414);
plot(i2PerfectVals(nslot,:),'r-o');
hold on;
plot(i2PracticalVals(nslot,:),'b-*');
title(['PMI: i2 Indices for All Subbands in Slot ' num2str(nslot)]);
xlabel('Subbands')
ylabel('i2 Indices');
xticks(1:numSubbands);
xticklabels(num2cell(1:numSubbands));
[lowerBound,upperBound] = bounds([i2PerfectVals(nslot,:) i2PracticalVals(nslot,:)]);
yticks(lowerBound:upperBound);
yticklabels(num2cell(lowerBound:upperBound));
xlim([0 size(i2PerfectVals,2)+1])
ylim([lowerBound-2 upperBound+2]);
legend({'Perfect channel est.','Practical channel est.});
else
disp(['For the specified slot (' num2str(nslot) '), PMI i2 indices are not reported.
end
end
end
end

```

See Also

Functions

nrCSIRS | nrCSIRSIndices | nrOFDMDemodulate | nrOFDMInfo | nrOFDMModulate | nrResourceGrid

Objects

nrCSIRSConfig | nrCarrierConfig | nrTDLChannel

Related Examples

- “NR PDSCH Throughput” on page 1-56

System-Level Simulation

NR Interference Modeling with Toroidal Wrap-Around

This example models a 19-cell cluster with toroidal wrap-around as described in ITU-R M.2101-0. The wrap-around provides uniform interference at the cluster edge. All the cells in the cluster operate in the same frequency band with the serving gNB at the center of the cell. You can enable or disable the wrap-around to observe that with wrap-around, the performance metrics of an edge cell becomes similar to the center cell.

Introduction

The example considers these operations within the gNB and user equipment (UE).

	Operations
gNB	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Run the scheduling algorithm to assign uplink and downlink resources • Send the uplink and downlink assignments to the UEs • Receive the physical uplink shared channel (PUSCH) transmissions from the UEs • Adhere to the downlink assignments for physical downlink shared channel (PDSCH) transmission • Receive the feedback of the PDSCHs from the UEs • Send the channel state information reference signals (CSI-RS) to the UEs
UEs	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Send the pending buffer status report to gNB • Receive the uplink and downlink assignments from the gNB • Adhere to the received uplink assignments from the gNB for PUSCH transmission • Receive the PDSCH transmission from the gNB • Send feedback for the received PDSCHs • Measure the channel quality on received CSI-RS and report it to gNB

This example models:

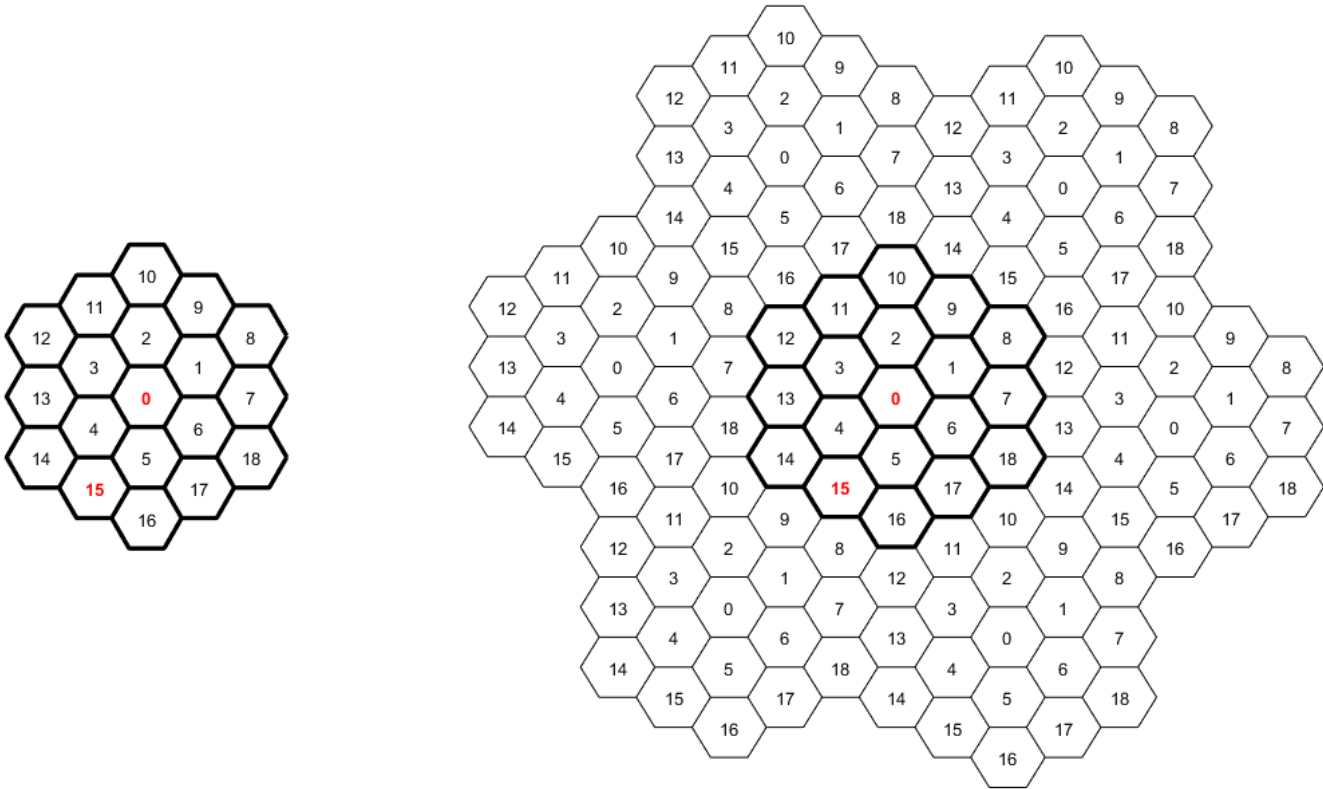
- Co-channel intercell interference with wrap-around modeling for removing edge effects
- PUSCH demodulation reference signal (DM-RS) and PDSCH DM-RS
- DL channel quality measurement by UEs based on the CSI-RS received from gNB.
- Single-input single-output (SISO) configuration with omnidirectional antennas.
- Free space path loss (FSPL), and additive white Gaussian noise (AWGN).

The example assumes that control packets such as UL assignment, DL assignment, buffer status report (BSR), PDSCH feedback, and channel quality indicator (CQI) report, are sent out of band, that is, without the need of resources for transmission and assured error-free reception.

Toroidal Wrap-around Modeling

To simulate the behavior of a cellular network without introducing edge effects, this example models an infinite cellular network by using toroidal wrap-around. This figure shows the network region of 19 cells. In the absence of wrap-around, cell 0 of the central cluster, shown in red, is uniformly surrounded and experiences interference from all sides. An edge cell like cell-15 experiences comparatively lesser interference. The wrap-around repeats the original cluster six times to uniformly surround the central cluster.

The entire network region relevant for simulations is a cluster of 19 cells (shown in bold).



Without wrap-around

With wrap-around

In the wrap-around model, the signal or interference from any UE to a cell is treated as if that UE is in the original cell cluster and the gNB in any of the seven clusters as specified in ITU-R M.2101-0. The distances used to compute the path loss from a transmitter node at (a, b) to a receiver node at (x, y) is the minimum of these seven distances.

- Distance between (x, y) and (a, b)
- Distance between (x, y) and $(a - \sqrt{3}D, b - 4D)$, where D is the distance between two adjacent gNBs (inter-site distance)
- Distance between (x, y) and $(a + \sqrt{3}D, b + 4D)$
- Distance between (x, y) and $(a - \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}D, b + \frac{7}{2}D)$
- Distance between (x, y) and $(a + \frac{3\sqrt{3}}{2}D, b - \frac{7}{2}D)$
- Distance between (x, y) and $(a - \frac{5\sqrt{3}}{2}D, b - \frac{1}{2}D)$
- Distance between (x, y) and $(a - \frac{5\sqrt{3}}{2}D, b - \frac{1}{2}D)$

To calculate the modified distances between nodes due to the wrap-around, the function uses the `hNRNodeDistanceCalculator` helper class. If you disable wrap-around, then the distance between nodes is the normal Euclidean distance.

NR Protocol Stack

A node (gNB or UE) consists of applications generating traffic, a radio link control (RLC) layer, a medium access control (MAC) layer, and a physical layer (PHY). The `hNRGNB` and `hNRUE` helper classes create gNB and UE nodes, respectively, containing RLC, MAC, and PHY layers. For more details on each layer, refer to the 'NR Protocol Stack' section in the “NR Cell Performance Evaluation with Physical Layer Integration” on page 5-92 example.

Scenario Configuration

Configure simulation parameters in the `simParameters` structure.

```
rng('default'); % Reset the random number generator
simParameters = []; % Clear the simParameters variable
simParameters.NumFramesSim = 5; % Simulation time, in number of 10 ms frames
simParameters.EnableWrapAround = true; % Enable wrap-around modeling
simParameters.SchedulingType = 0; % Slot-based scheduling
```

Specify the number of UEs in each cell, assuming that UEs have sequential radio network temporary identifiers (RNTIs) from 1 to `simParameters.NumUEsCell`. If you change the number of UEs, you must ensure that these simulation parameters are arrays of length equal to the value of `simParameters.NumUEsCell`: `simParameters.UEDistance`, `ulPacketPeriodicity`, `ulPacketSizes`, `dlPacketPeriodicity`, `dlPacketSizes`.

```
simParameters.NumUEsCell = 2; % Number of UEs in each cell
simParameters.UEDistance = [150; 250]; % Distance of UE from gNB in meters
simParameters.InterSiteDistance = 1732; % Distance between adjacent gNBs in meters
```

Set the channel bandwidth to 5 MHz and the subcarrier spacing (SCS) to 15 kHz as defined in section 5.3.2 of 3GPP TS 38.104.

```
simParameters.NumRBs = 25;
simParameters.SCS = 15; % kHz
simParameters.DLCarrierFreq = 2.635e9; % Hz
simParameters.ULCarrierFreq = 2.515e9; % Hz
```

Assume that the UL and DL carriers have the same channel bandwidth, and specify the transmit power and antenna gain.

```
simParameters.DLBandwidth = 5e6; % Hz
simParameters.ULBandwidth = 5e6; % Hz
simParameters.UETxPower = 23; % Tx power for all the UEs in dBm
simParameters.GNBTxPower = 32; % Tx power for gNBs in dBm
simParameters.GNBRxGain = 8; % Receiver antenna gain at gNB in dBi
```

Specify the signal-to-interference-plus-noise ratio (SINR) to CQI mapping table for a block error rate (BLER) of 0.1.

```
simParameters.SINR90pc = [-5.46 -0.46 4.54 9.05 11.54 14.04 15.54 18.04 ...
    20.04 22.43 24.93 25.43 27.43 30.43 33.43];
```

Specify the scheduling strategy and the maximum limit on the RBs allotted for PUSCH and PDSCH. The transmission limit applies only to new PUSCH and PDSCH assignments, and not to the retransmissions.

```
simParameters.SchedulerStrategy = 'PF'; % Supported scheduling strategies: 'PF', 'RR', and 'Best'
simParameters.RBAllocationLimitUL = 20; % For PUSCH
simParameters.RBAllocationLimitDL = 20; % For PDSCH
```

Logging and Visualization Configuration

Specify the ID of cell of interest as an integer between 1 and 18, inclusive. The example shows visualizations and metrics for this cell and the central cell, cell-0.

```
simParameters.CellOfInterest = 15; % Set a value from 1 to 18. Set the value to 0 to visualize cell-0
validateattributes(simParameters.CellOfInterest, {'numeric'}, {'integer', 'scalar', '>='}, 0, '<=')
```

The CQIVisualization and RBVisualization parameters control the display of the CQI visualization of RBs and the RB assignment visualization. To enable the RB visualization plot, set the RBVisualization field to true.

```
simParameters.CQIVisualization = true;
simParameters.RBVisualization = false;
```

Update the output metrics plots periodically, specifying NumMetricsSteps updates within the simulation.

```
simParameters.NumMetricsSteps = 10;
```

Write the logs to MAT-files. The example uses these logs for post-simulation analysis and visualization.

```
simParameters.ParametersLogFile = 'simParameters'; % For logging the simulation parameters
simParameters.SimulationLogFile = 'simulationLogs'; % For logging the simulation logs
```

Application traffic configuration

Set the periodic UL and DL application traffic pattern for UEs.

```
ulPacketPeriodicity = [10; 10]; % Periodicity, in ms, at which the UEs generate UL packets
ulPacketSize = [2e4; 2e4]; % Size of generated UL packets, in bytes
dlPacketPeriodicity = [10; 10]; % Periodicity, in ms, at which gNB generates DL packets
dlPacketSize = [2e4; 2e4]; % Size of generated DL packets, in bytes
```

Derived Parameters

Compute the derived parameters based on the primary configuration parameters specified in the previous section, and set some example-specific constants.

```
simParameters.DuplexMode = 0; % Frequency-division duplexing (FDD)
simParameters.NumClusters = 1;
simParameters.NumSitesPerCluster = 19; % Number of gNBs per cluster
```

Set the UE and gNB positions.

```
simParameters.GNBPositions = hMacrocellTopology(simParameters);
simParameters.UEPositions = cell(simParameters.NumSitesPerCluster, 1);
for idx = 1:simParameters.NumSitesPerCluster
    theta = rand(simParameters.NumUEsCell, 1)*(2*pi);
    % Set the UE position with respect to the gNB location
    simParameters.UEPositions{idx} = simParameters.GNBPositions(idx, :) + simParameters.UEDistance * [cos(theta); sin(theta)];
end
simParameters.NCellIDList = 0:simParameters.NumSitesPerCluster-1; % List of physical cell IDs
```

Specify the CSI-RS resource configuration, assuming that all UEs measure channel quality on the same CSI-RS resource.

```
simParameters.CSIRSRowNumber = 2; % Possible row numbers for single transmit antenna case are 1 and 2
simParameters.SubbandSize = 8; % Size of sub-band for CQI reporting in terms of number of RBs
```

Calculate the slot duration for the selected SCS and the number of slots in a 10 ms frame.

```
slotDuration = 1/(simParameters.SCS/15); % In ms
numSlotsFrame = 10/slotDuration; % Number of slots in a 10 ms frame
numSlotsSim = simParameters.NumFramesSim*numSlotsFrame; % Number of slots in the simulation
```

Set the interval at which the example updates metrics visualization, number of slots. Because this example uses a time granularity of one slot, the MetricsStepSize field must be an integer.

```
simParameters.MetricsStepSize = ceil(numSlotsSim / simParameters.NumMetricsSteps);
if mod(numSlotsSim, simParameters.NumMetricsSteps) ~= 0
    % Update the NumMetricsSteps parameter if it does not exactly divide NumSlotsSim
    simParameters.NumMetricsSteps = floor(numSlotsSim / simParameters.MetricsStepSize);
end
```

Specify one logical channel in each UE, and set the logical channel configuration for all nodes (UEs and gNBs) in the example.

```
numLogicalChannels = 1;
simParameters.LCHConfig.LCID = 4; % Logical channel ID (logical channel ID of data radio bearers)
```

Specify the RLC entity direction as 0 to specify DL only, 1 to specify UL only, or 2 to specify both UL and DL.

```
simParameters.RLCCConfig.EntityDir = 2;
```

Create RLC channel configuration structure.

```
rlcChannelConfigStruct.LCGID = 1; % Mapping between logical channel and logical channel group ID
rlcChannelConfigStruct.Priority = 1; % Priority of each logical channel
rlcChannelConfigStruct.PBR = 8; % Prioritized bitrate (PBR), in kilobytes per second, of each logical channel
rlcChannelConfigStruct.BSD = 10; % Bucket size duration (BSD), in ms, of each logical channel
rlcChannelConfigStruct.EntityType = simParameters.RLCCConfig.EntityDir;
rlcChannelConfigStruct.LogicalChannelID = simParameters.LCHConfig.LCID;
```

Set the maximum RLC service data unit (SDU) length, in bytes, as specified in 3GPP TS 38.323, and the total number of nodes in the simulation.

```
simParameters.maxRLCSDULength = 9000;
simParameters.MaxReceivers = simParameters.NumSitesPerCluster*(simParameters.NumUEsCell + 1);

if ~isfield(simParameters, 'SchedulingType') || simParameters.SchedulingType == 0 % No scheduling
    rbAssignmentPlotPeriodicity = numSlotsFrame; % Update RB assignment visualization every frame
    tickGranularity = 14;
    simParameters.PUSCHMappingType = 'A';
    simParameters.PDSCHMappingType = 'A';
else % Symbol-based scheduling
    rbAssignmentPlotPeriodicity = 1; % Update RB assignment visualization every slot
    tickGranularity = 1;
    simParameters.PUSCHMappingType = 'B';
    simParameters.PDSCHMappingType = 'B';
end
```

Multicell Setup

Set up the 19-cell topology with each cell consisting of one gNB and one UE. For each cell, create the gNB and UE objects, initialize the channel quality information for UEs, and set up the logical channel at gNB and UEs. The hNRGNB and hNRUE helper classes create gNB and UE nodes respectively, containing the RLC, MAC, and PHY layers.

```
gNB = cell(simParameters.NumSitesPerCluster, 1);
UEs = cell(simParameters.NumSitesPerCluster, simParameters.NumUEsCell);
```

Create DL and UL packet distribution objects, and initialize a wrap-around distance calculator object.

```
dlPacketDistributionObj = hNRPacketDistribution(simParameters, 0); % 0 for DL
ulPacketDistributionObj = hNRPacketDistribution(simParameters, 1); % 1 for UL
distCalc = hNRNodeDistanceCalculator(simParameters);
for siteIdx = 1:simParameters.NumSitesPerCluster
    simParameters.NCellID = simParameters.NCellIDList(siteIdx); % Cell ID
    simParameters.Position = simParameters.GNBPositions(siteIdx, :);
    simParameters.NumUEs = simParameters.NumUEsCell; % Number of UEs in a cell
    % Create scheduler
    switch(simParameters.SchedulerStrategy)
        case 'RR' % Round robin scheduler
            scheduler = hNRSchedulerRoundRobin(simParameters);
        case 'PF' % Proportional fair scheduler
            scheduler = hNRSchedulerProportionalFair(simParameters);
        case 'BestCQI' % Best CQI scheduler
            scheduler = hNRSchedulerBestCQI(simParameters);
    end

    % Create gNB
    gNB{siteIdx} = hNRGNB(simParameters);
    addScheduler(gNB{siteIdx}, scheduler); % Add scheduler to gNB
    gNB{siteIdx}.PhyEntity = hNRGNBPhy(simParameters); % Create PHY layer instance
    configurePhy(gNB{siteIdx}, simParameters); % Configure PHY layer
    % Register distance calculator for wrap-around distance computations
    gNB{siteIdx}.DistanceCalculatorFcn = @distCalc.getDistance;
    setPhyInterface(gNB{siteIdx}); % Set up the interface to PHY layer

    for ueIdx = 1:simParameters.NumUEsCell
        simParameters.Position = simParameters.UEPositions{siteIdx}(ueIdx, :); % Position of UE
        UEs{siteIdx, ueIdx} = hNRUE(simParameters, ueIdx);
        UEs{siteIdx, ueIdx}.PhyEntity = hNRUEPhy(simParameters, ueIdx); % Create PHY layer instance
        configurePhy(UEs{siteIdx, ueIdx}, simParameters); % Configure PHY layer
        % Register distance calculator for wrap-around distance computations
        UEs{siteIdx, ueIdx}.DistanceCalculatorFcn = @distCalc.getDistance;
        setPhyInterface(UEs{siteIdx, ueIdx}); % Set up the interface to PHY

        % Set up logical channel at gNB for the UE
        configureLogicalChannel(gNB{siteIdx}, ueIdx, rlcChannelConfigStruct);
        % Set up logical channel at UE
        configureLogicalChannel(UEs{siteIdx, ueIdx}, ueIdx, rlcChannelConfigStruct);

        % Add data traffic pattern generators to gNB and UE nodes
        % Calculate the data rate (in kbps) of On-Off traffic pattern using
        % packet size (in bytes) and packet interval (in ms)
        ulDataRate = ceil(1000/ulPacketPeriodicity(ueIdx)) * ulPacketSize(ueIdx) * 8e-3;
        % Limit the size of the generated application packet to the maximum RLC
        % SDU size. The maximum supported RLC SDU size is 9000 bytes
```

```

if ulPacketSize(ueIdx) > simParameters.maxRLCSDULength
    ulPacketSize(ueIdx) = simParameters.maxRLCSDULength;
end

% Create an object for On-Off network traffic pattern and add it to the
% specified UE. This object generates the uplink data traffic on the UE
ulApp = networkTrafficOnOff('PacketSize', ulPacketSize(ueIdx), 'GeneratePacket', true, .
    'OnTime', simParameters.NumFramesSim/100, 'OffTime', 0, 'DataRate', ulDataRate);
UEs{siteIdx, ueIdx}.addApplication(ueIdx, simParameters.LCHConfig.LCID, ulApp);
dlDataRate = ceil(1000/dlPacketPeriodicity(ueIdx)) * dlPacketSize(ueIdx) * 8e-3;
if dlPacketSize(ueIdx) > simParameters.maxRLCSDULength
    dlPacketSize(ueIdx) = simParameters.maxRLCSDULength;
end
% Create an object for On-Off network traffic pattern for the specified
% UE and add it to the gNB. This object generates the downlink data
% traffic on the gNB for the UE
dlApp = networkTrafficOnOff('PacketSize', dlPacketSize(ueIdx), 'GeneratePacket', true, .
    'OnTime', simParameters.NumFramesSim/100, 'OffTime', 0, 'DataRate', dlDataRate);
gNB{siteIdx}.addApplication(ueIdx, simParameters.LCHConfig.LCID, dlApp);
end
% Setup the UL and DL packet distribution mechanism
hNRSetupPacketDistribution(simParameters, gNB{siteIdx}, UEs(siteIdx, :), dlPacketDistribution
end

```

Set up logging and visualization, specifying the central cell (cell 0) and the cell of interest.

```

cellsOfInterest = unique([0; simParameters.CellOfInterest]);
numCellsOfInterest = length(cellsOfInterest); % Number of cells that the example logs and visual.

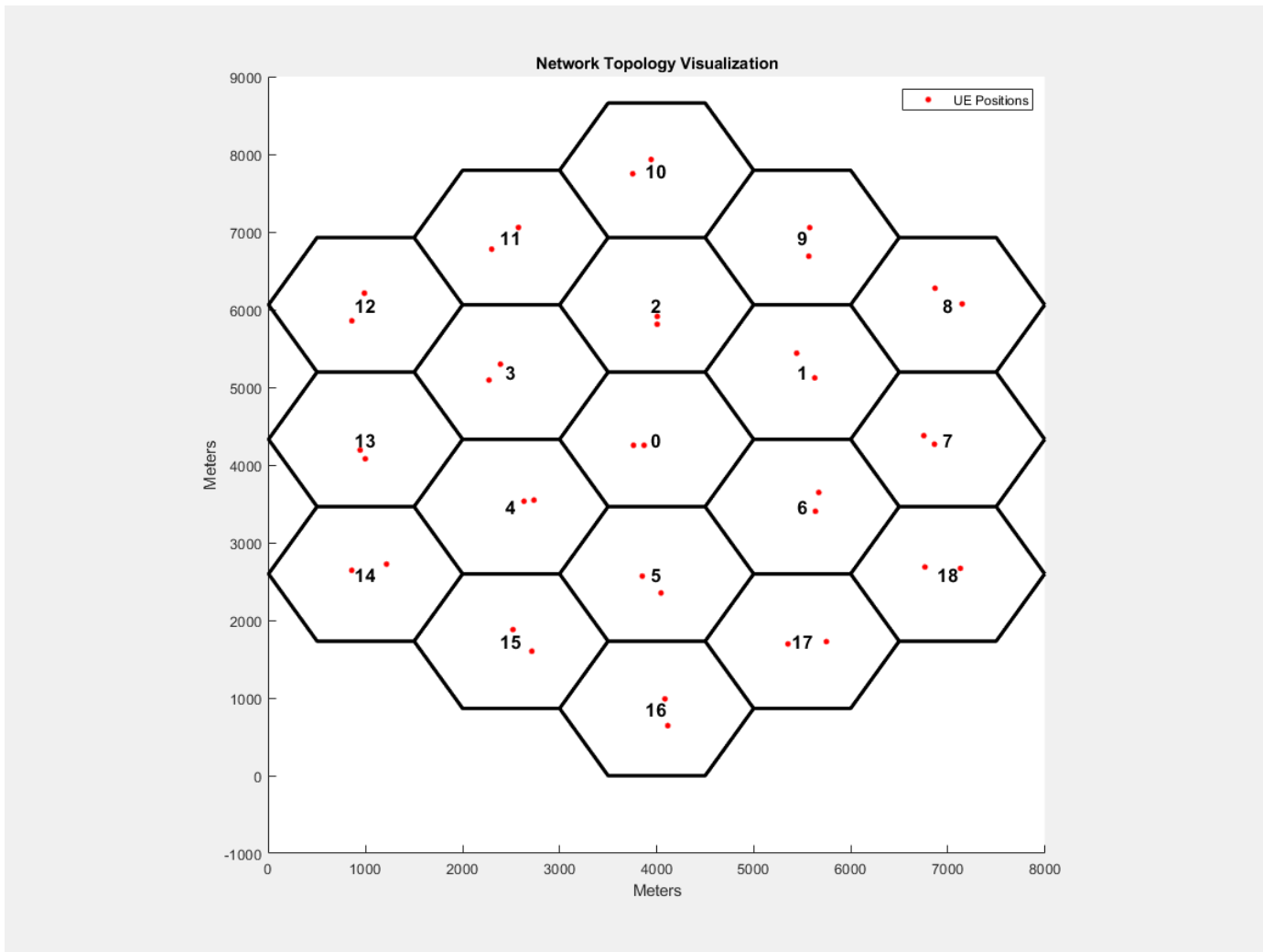
```

Visualize the network topology

```

hTopologyVisualizer(simParameters);

```

Log and visualize PHY and MAC metrics in cell arrays.

```

simSchedulingLogger = cell(numCellsOfInterest, 1);
% Cell array for PHY metrics logging and visualization
simPhyLogger = cell(numCellsOfInterest, 1);
visualizer = cell(numCellsOfInterest, 1);

for siteIdx = 1:numCellsOfInterest
    simParameters.NCellID = cellsOfInterest(siteIdx);
    simParameters.CellOfInterest = simParameters.NCellID;
    % Create an object for MAC scheduling information visualization and logging
    simSchedulingLogger{siteIdx} = hNRSchedulingLogger(simParameters);
    % Create an object for PHY layer metrics logging
    simPhyLogger{siteIdx} = hNRPhyLogger(simParameters);
    % Create visualization object for MAC and PHY metrics
    visualizer{siteIdx} = hNRMetricsVisualizer(simParameters, 'MACLogger', simSchedulingLogger{s
end

```

Processing Loop

Simulation is run slot by slot. For each cell, in each slot, these operations are executed:

- Run the MAC and PHY layers of gNB
- Run the MAC and PHY layers of UEs
- Log and visualize metrics for each layer
- Advance the timer for the nodes and send a trigger to application and RLC layers every millisecond. The application layer and RLC layer execute their scheduled operations based on a 1 ms timer trigger.

```

slotNum = 0;
numSymbolsSim = numSlotsSim * 14; % Simulation time in units of symbol duration
% Run processing loop
for symbolNum = 1 : tickGranularity : numSymbolsSim
    if mod(symbolNum - 1, 14) == 0
        slotNum = slotNum + 1;
    end
    % Because all the cells operate on the same SCS, slot durations do not vary
    for siteIdx = 1:simParameters.NumSitesPerCluster % For each site
        run(gNB{siteIdx});

        % Run MAC and PHY layers of UEs
        for ueIdx = 1:simParameters.NumUEsCell
            run(UEs{siteIdx, ueIdx});
        end

        cellIdx = find((siteIdx-1) == cellsOfInterest, 1);
        if ~isempty(cellIdx)
            % MAC logging
            logCellSchedulingStats(simSchedulingLogger{cellIdx}, symbolNum, gNB{siteIdx}, UEs(siteIdx, :));

            % PHY logging
            logCellPhyStats(simPhyLogger{cellIdx}, symbolNum, gNB{siteIdx}, UEs(siteIdx, :));
        end
    end
end

for siteIdx = 1:simParameters.NumSitesPerCluster
    % Advance timer ticks for gNB and UEs by the number of symbols per slot
    advanceTimer(gNB{siteIdx}, tickGranularity);
    for ueIdx = 1:simParameters.NumUEsCell
        advanceTimer(UEs{siteIdx, ueIdx}, tickGranularity);
    end
end

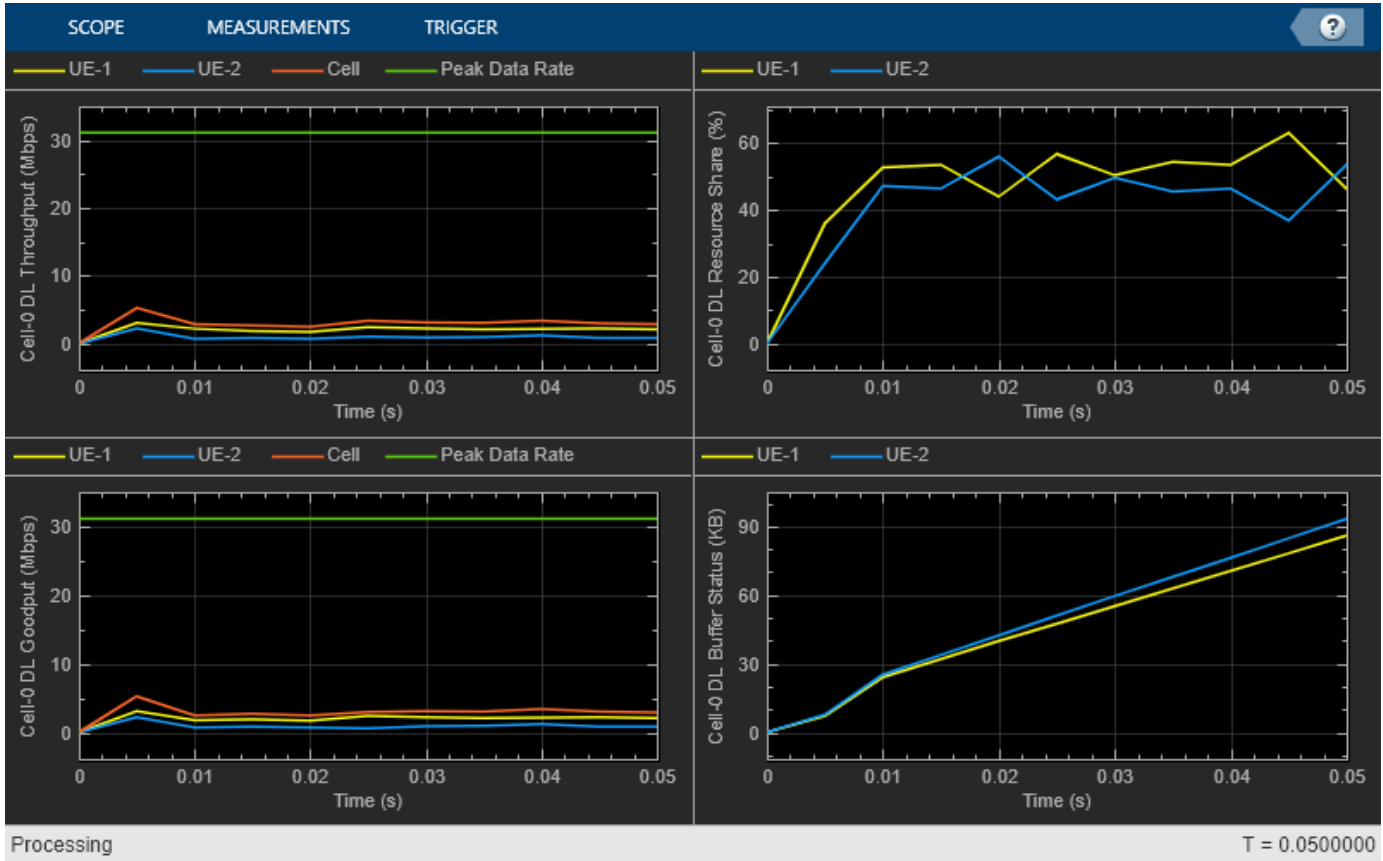
for idx = 1:numCellsOfInterest
    % Visualization
    % Check slot boundary
    if symbolNum > 1 && ((simParameters.SchedulingType == 1 && mod(symbolNum, 14) == 0) || (
        % RB assignment visualization (if enabled)
        if simParameters.RBVisualization
            if mod(slotNum, rbAssignmentPlotPeriodicity) == 0
                % Plot at slot boundary, if the update periodicity is reached
                plotRBGrids(simSchedulingLogger{idx});
            end
        end
        % CQI grid visualization (if enabled)
        if simParameters.CQIVisualization
            if mod(slotNum, numSlotsFrame) == 0 % Plot at frame boundary
                plotCQIRBGrids(simSchedulingLogger{idx});
            end
        end
    end
end

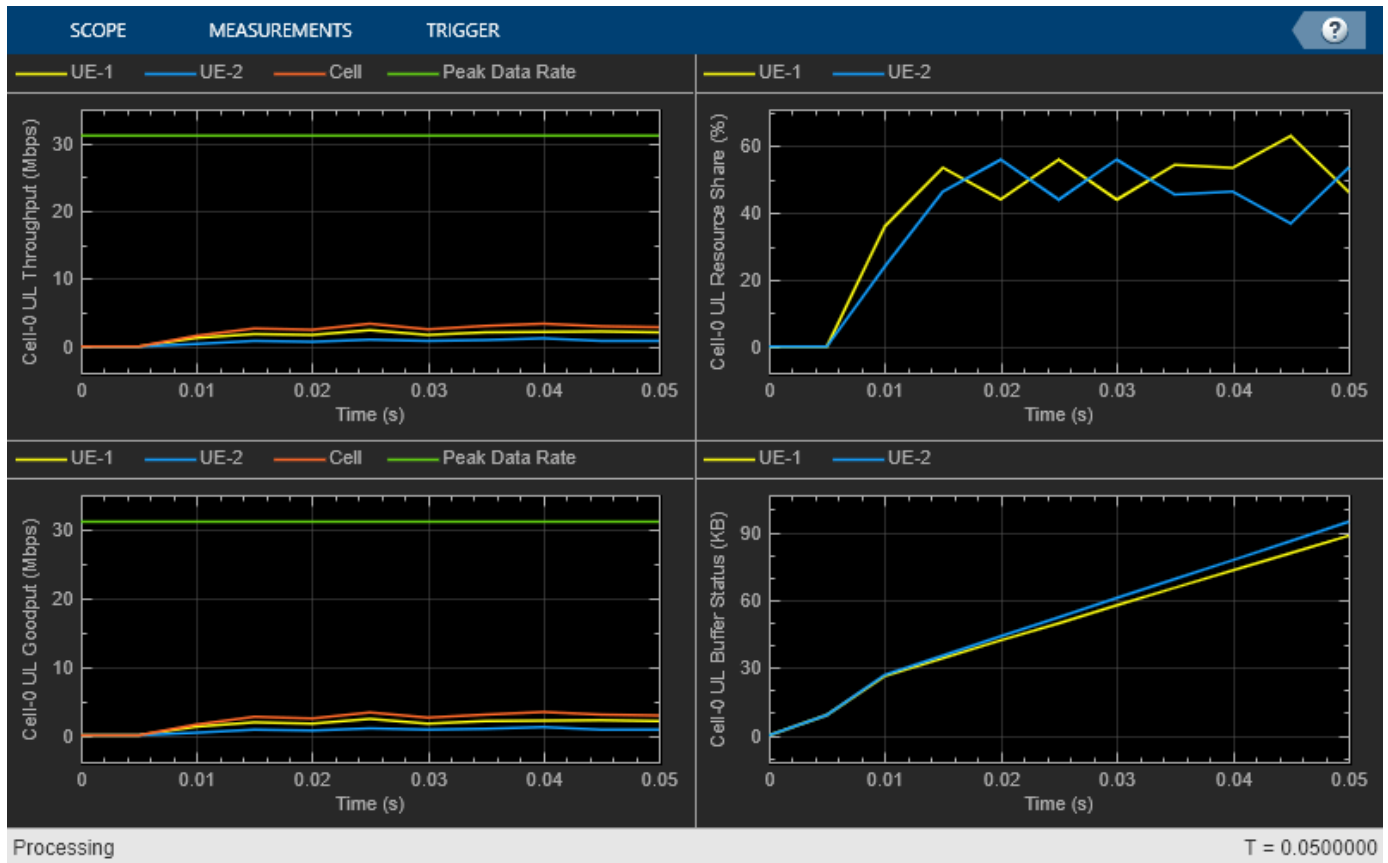
```

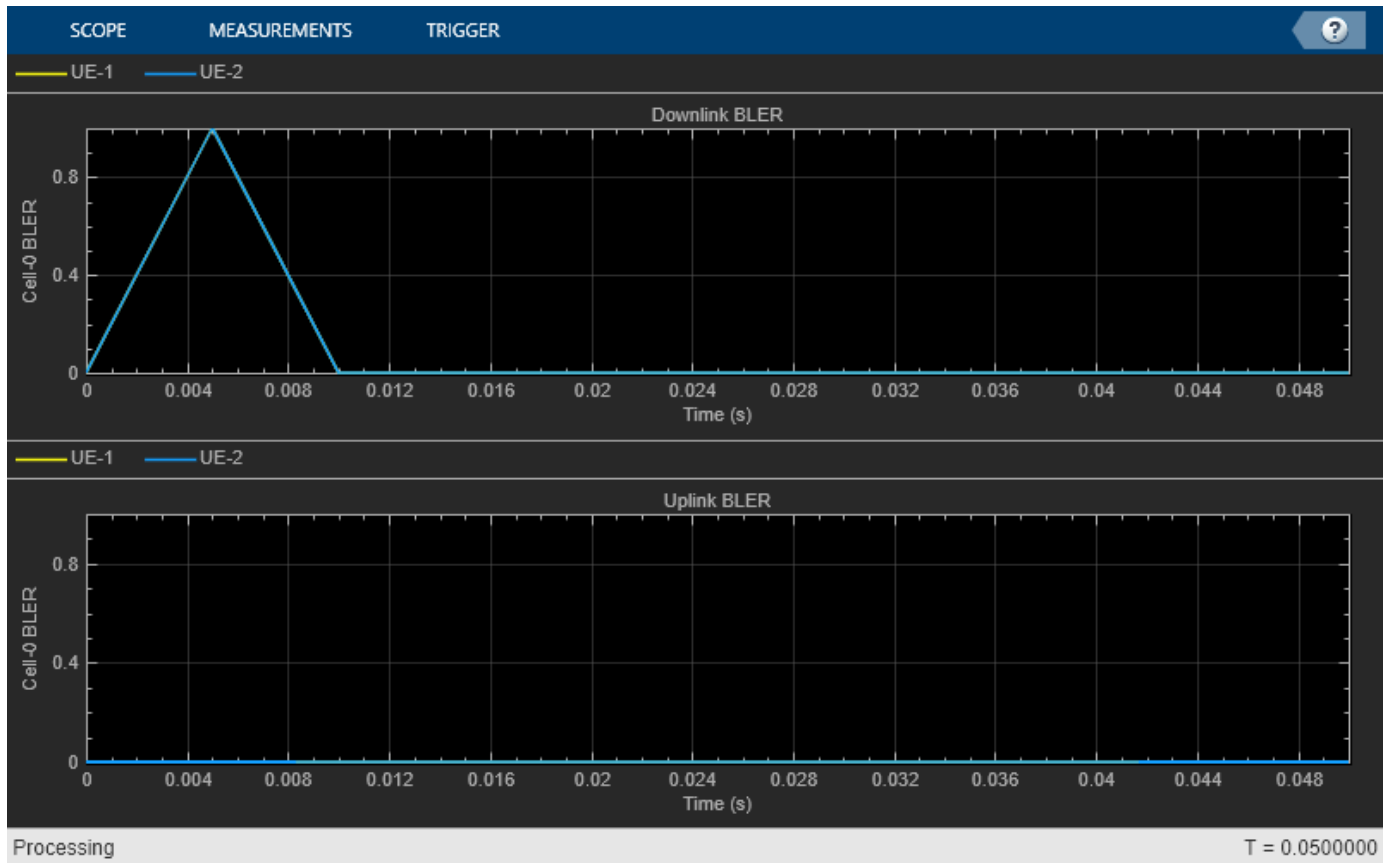
```

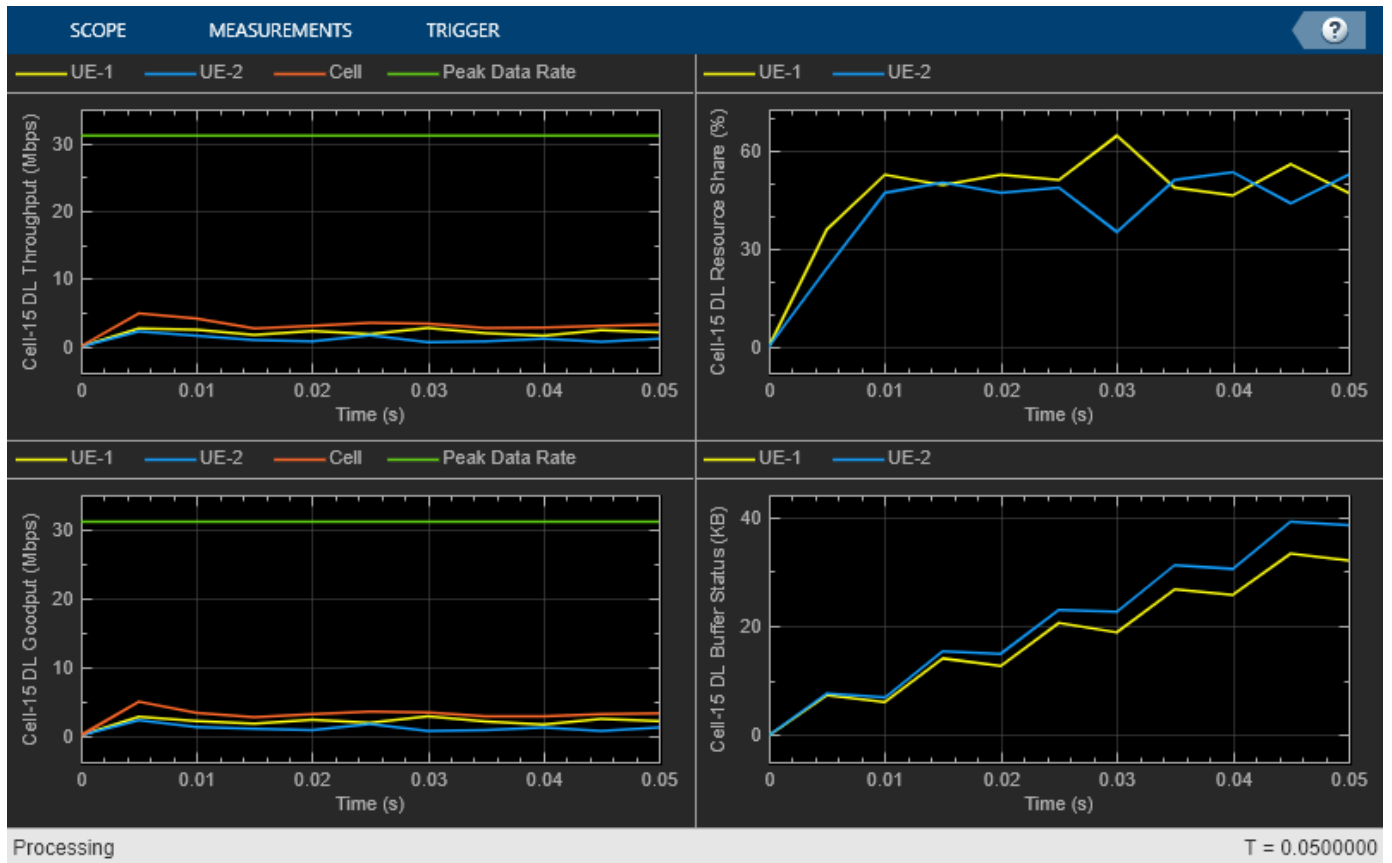
        end
    end
    % If the update periodicity is reached, plot scheduler metrics and PHY metrics visualizer
    % at slot boundary
    if mod(slotNum, simParameters.MetricsStepSize) == 0
        plotMetrics(visualizer{idx}, slotNum);
    end
end
end
end
end

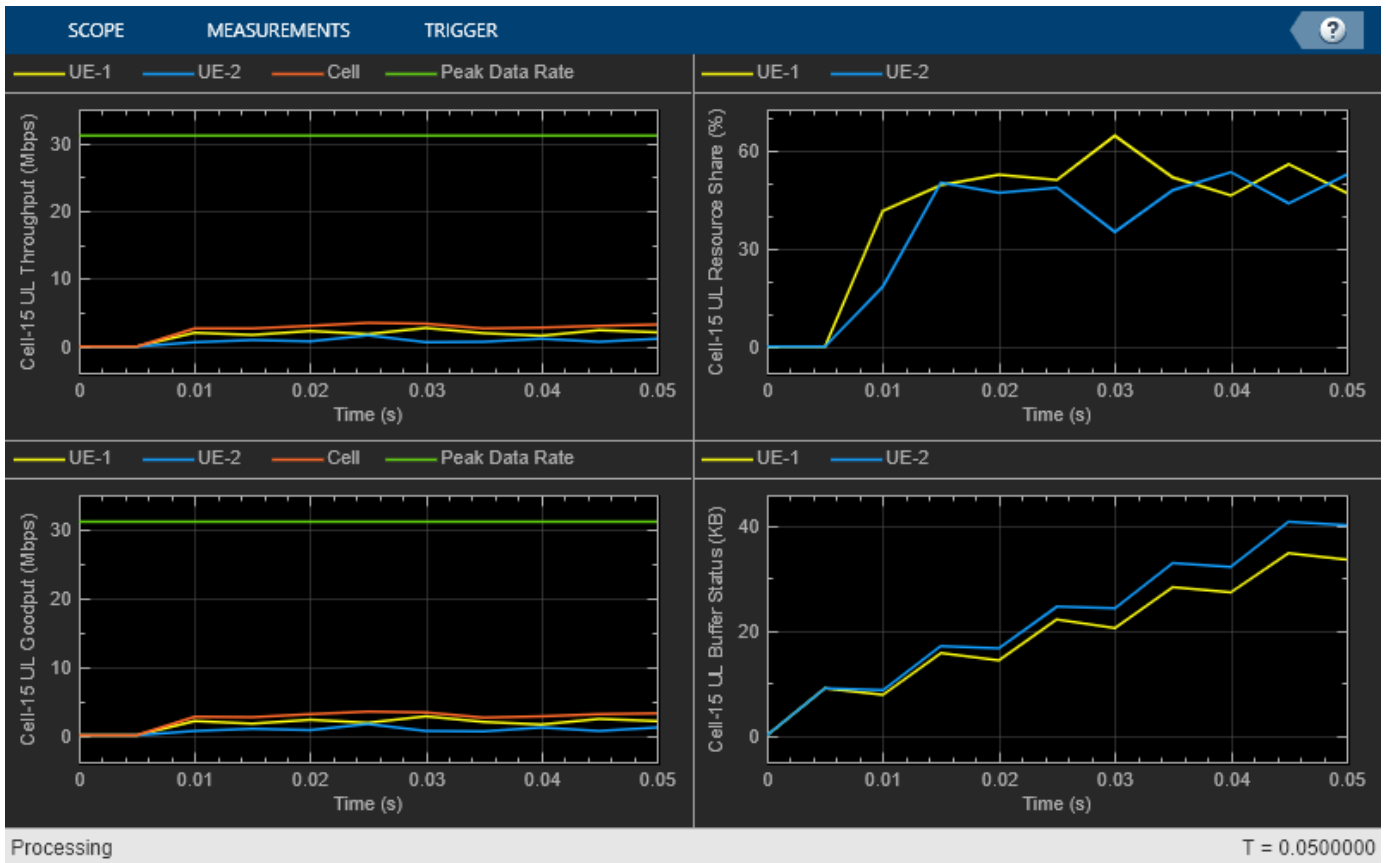
```

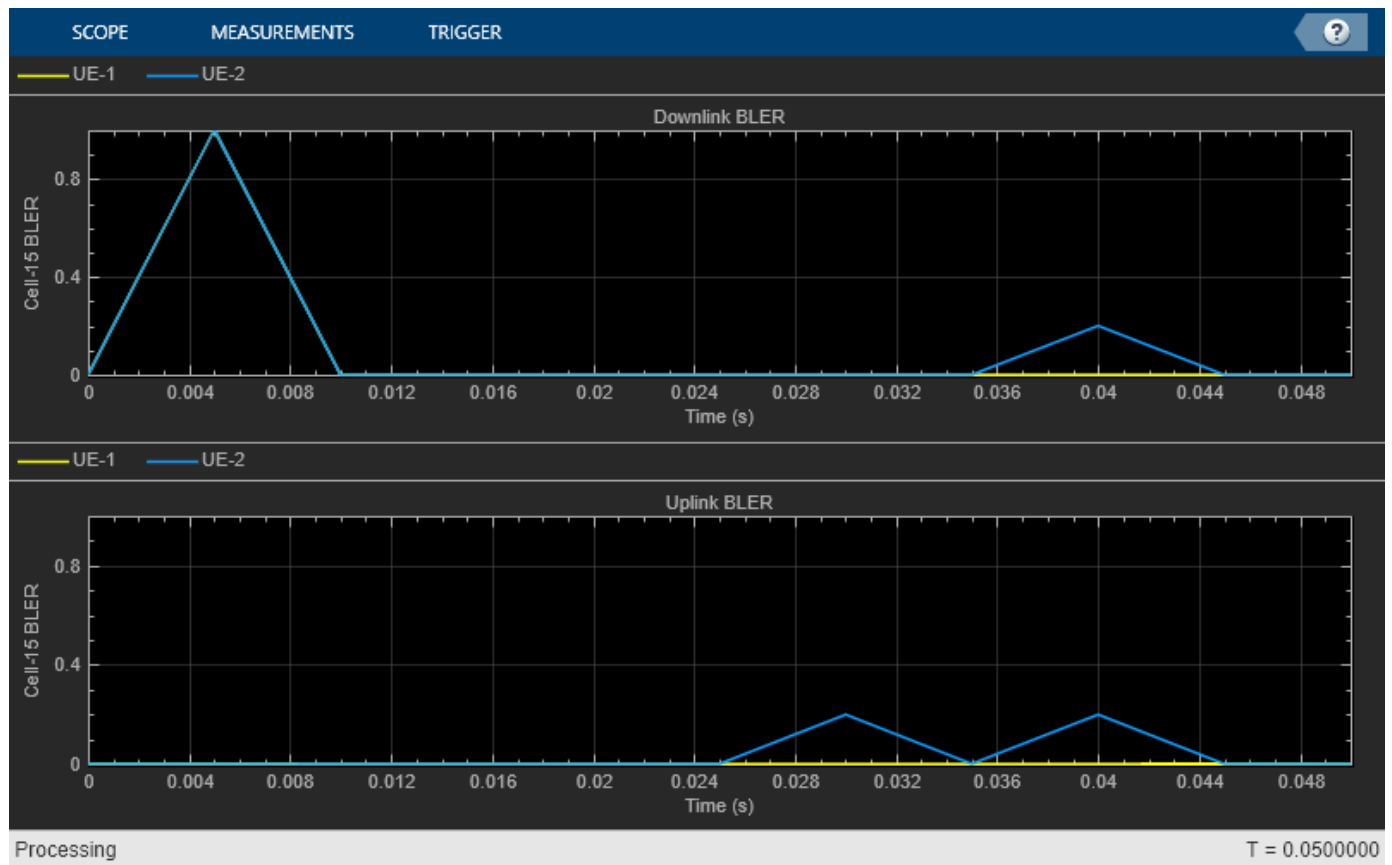


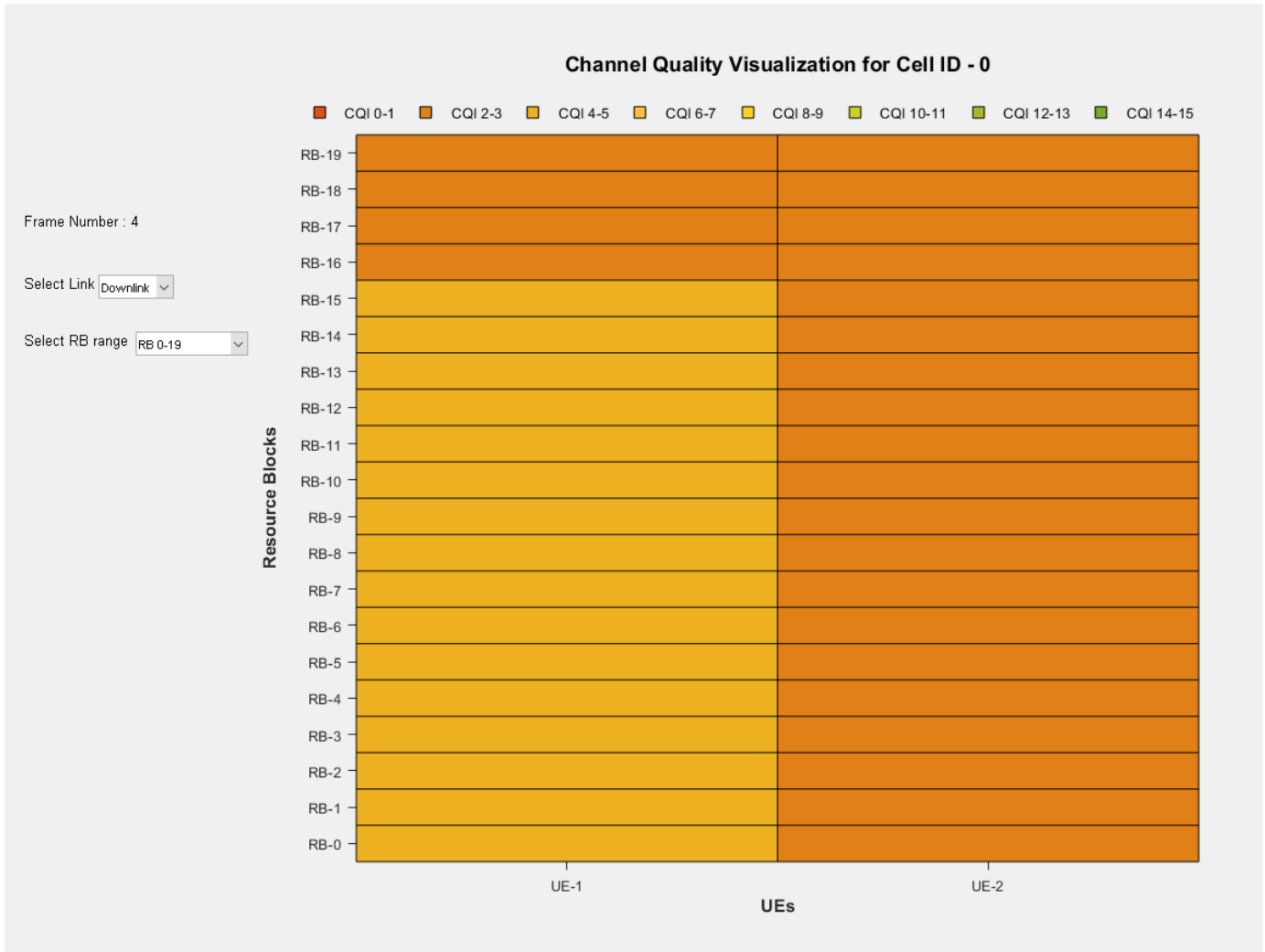


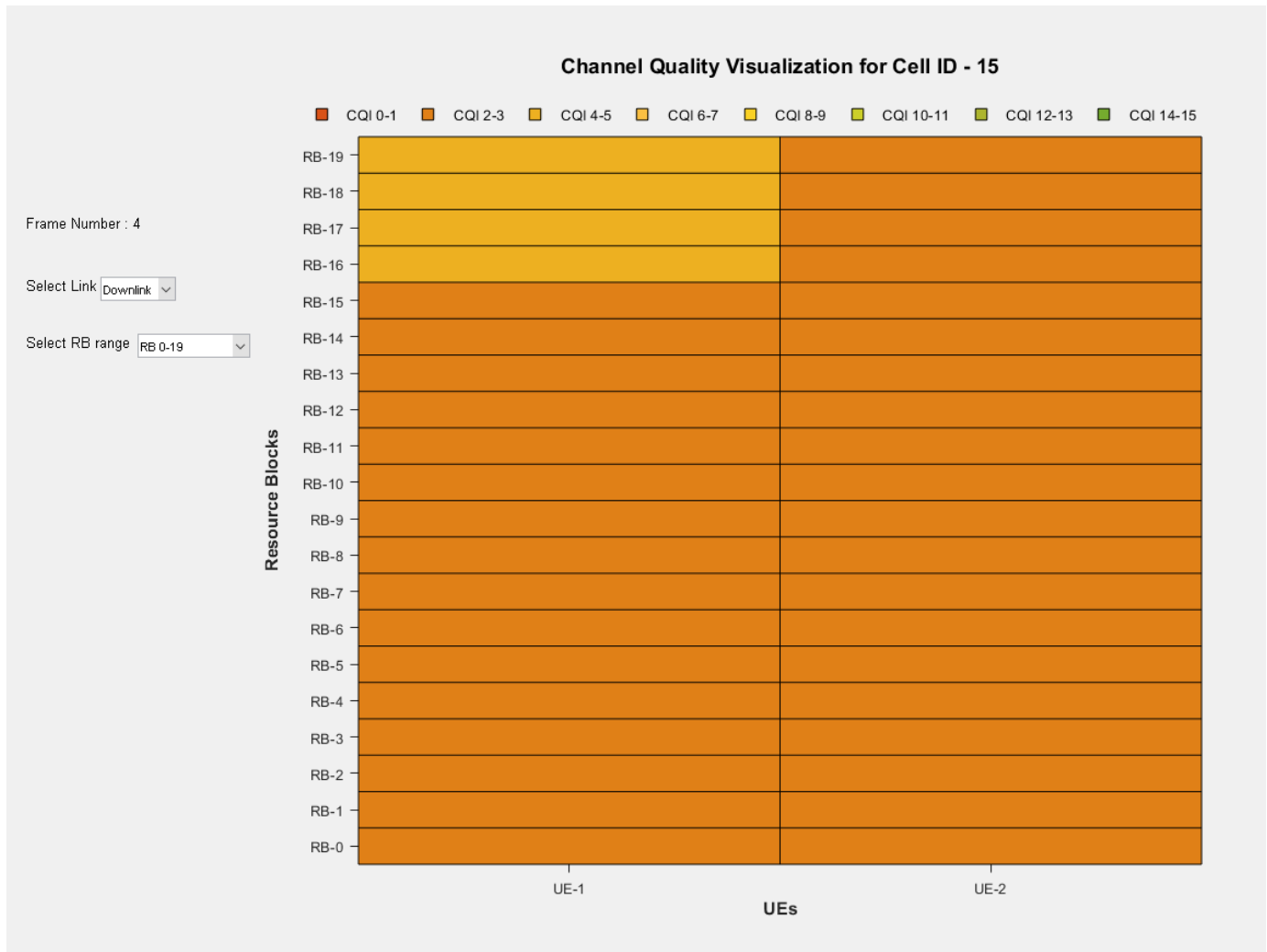












```

for idx = 1:numCellsOfInterest
    [dlStats, ulStats] = getPerformanceIndicators(simSchedulingLogger{idx});
    [logInfo.BLERLogs, logInfo.AvgBLERLogs] = getBLERLogs(simPhyLogger{idx}); % Block Error rate
    fprintf('\n\nMetrics for cell %d :\n\n', cellsOfInterest(idx));
    fprintf('Peak UL throughput: %0.2f Mbps. Achieved average UL Throughput: %0.2f Mbps', ulStats.PeakULThroughput, ulStats.AvgULThroughput);
    fprintf('\nPeak DL throughput: %0.2f Mbps. Achieved average DL Throughput: %0.2f Mbps', dlStats.PeakDLThroughput, dlStats.AvgDLThroughput);
    fprintf('\nAchieved average UL Goodput: %0.2f Mbps. Achieved average DL Goodput: %0.2f Mbps', ulStats.AvgULGoodput, dlStats.AvgDLGoodput);
    fprintf('\nPeak UL spectral efficiency: %0.2f bits/s/Hz. Achieved average UL spectral efficiency: %0.2f bits/s/Hz', ulStats.PeakULSpectralEfficiency, ulStats.AvgULSpectralEfficiency);
    fprintf('\nPeak DL spectral efficiency: %0.2f bits/s/Hz. Achieved average DL spectral efficiency: %0.2f bits/s/Hz', dlStats.PeakDLSpectralEfficiency, dlStats.AvgDLSpectralEfficiency);
    disp(['Block error rate for each UE in the uplink direction: [' num2str(round(logInfo.AvgBLERLogs))]);
    disp(['Block error rate for each UE in the downlink direction: [' num2str(round(logInfo.AvgBLERLogs))]);
end

```

Metrics for cell 0 :

Peak UL throughput: 31.11 Mbps. Achieved average UL Throughput: 2.48 Mbps

Peak DL throughput: 31.11 Mbps. Achieved average DL Throughput: 3.19 Mbps

Achieved average UL Goodput: 2.48 Mbps. Achieved average DL Goodput: 3.10 Mbps

Peak UL spectral efficiency: 6.22 bits/s/Hz. Achieved average UL spectral efficiency: 0.50 bits/s/Hz

Peak DL spectral efficiency: 6.22 bits/s/Hz. Achieved average DL spectral efficiency: 0.64 bits/s/Hz

Block error rate for each UE in the uplink direction: [0 0]

Block error rate for each UE in the downlink direction: [0.04 0.04]

Metrics for cell 15 :

Peak UL throughput: 31.11 Mbps. Achieved average UL Throughput: 2.69 Mbps

Peak DL throughput: 31.11 Mbps. Achieved average DL Throughput: 3.33 Mbps

Achieved average UL Goodput: 2.68 Mbps. Achieved average DL Goodput: 3.24 Mbps

Peak UL spectral efficiency: 6.22 bits/s/Hz. Achieved average UL spectral efficiency: 0.54 bits/s/Hz

Peak DL spectral efficiency: 6.22 bits/s/Hz. Achieved average DL spectral efficiency: 0.67 bits/s/Hz

Block error rate for each UE in the uplink direction: [0 0.05]

Block error rate for each UE in the downlink direction: [0.04 0.06]

Simulation Visualization

For the center cell (cell 0) and the cell of interest, the run time visualizations show:

- *Display of CQI values:* For details, see the 'Channel Quality Visualization' figure description in the "NR PUSCH FDD Scheduling" on page 5-37 example.
- *Display of resource grid assignment to UEs:* The 2D time-frequency grid shows the resource allocation to the UEs. You can enable this visualization in the Logging and Visualization Configuration on page 5-0 section. For details, see the 'Resource Grid Allocation' figure description in the "NR PUSCH FDD Scheduling" on page 5-37 example.
- *Display of DL and UL scheduling metrics plots:* For details, see the 'Downlink Scheduler Performance Metrics' figure description in the "NR FDD Scheduling Performance Evaluation" on page 5-55 example.
- *Display of DL and UL Block Error Rates:* For details, see the 'Block Error Rate (BLER) Visualization' figure description in the "NR Cell Performance Evaluation with Physical Layer Integration" on page 5-92 example.

The simulation results show that the center cell and edge cell have similar performance metrics with wrap around. Below are the simulation results with no wrap-around. You can observe significant performance difference between center cell and edge cell.

```

Metrics for cell 0 :
Peak UL throughput: 31.11 Mbps. Achieved average UL Throughput: 2.69 Mbps
Peak DL throughput: 31.11 Mbps. Achieved average DL Throughput: 3.35 Mbps
Achieved average UL Goodput: 2.69 Mbps. Achieved average DL Goodput: 3.27 Mbps
Peak UL spectral efficiency: 6.22 bits/s/Hz. Achieved average UL spectral efficiency: 0.54 bits/s/Hz
Peak DL spectral efficiency: 6.22 bits/s/Hz. Achieved average DL spectral efficiency: 0.67 bits/s/Hz
Block error rate for each UE in the uplink direction: [0 0]
Block error rate for each UE in the downlink direction: [0.04      0.04]
Metrics for cell 15 :
Peak UL throughput: 31.11 Mbps. Achieved average UL Throughput: 3.15 Mbps
Peak DL throughput: 31.11 Mbps. Achieved average DL Throughput: 3.78 Mbps
Achieved average UL Goodput: 3.15 Mbps. Achieved average DL Goodput: 3.69 Mbps
Peak UL spectral efficiency: 6.22 bits/s/Hz. Achieved average UL spectral efficiency: 0.63 bits/s/Hz
Peak DL spectral efficiency: 6.22 bits/s/Hz. Achieved average DL spectral efficiency: 0.76 bits/s/Hz
Block error rate for each UE in the uplink direction: [0 0]
Block error rate for each UE in the downlink direction: [0.04      0.06]

```

Simulation Logs

The parameters used for simulation and the simulation logs are saved in MAT-files for post simulation analysis and visualization. The simulation parameters are saved in a MAT-file with the file name as the value of configuration parameter `simParameters.ParametersLogFile`. For more details, see the “NR Intercell Interference Modeling” on page 5-108 example.

```

% Get the logs
if(simParameters.DuplexMode == 0) % FDD
    logInfo = struct('NCellID', [], 'DLTimeStepLogs', [], 'ULTimeStepLogs', [], 'SchedulingAssignm
else
    logInfo = struct('TimeStepLogs', [], 'SchedulingAssignmentLogs', [], 'BLERLogs', [], 'AvgBLER
end
simulationLogs = cell(simParameters.NumSitesPerCluster, 1);
for siteIdx = 1:numCellsOfInterest
    logInfo.NCellID = cellsOfInterest(siteIdx);
    if(simParameters.DuplexMode == 0) % FDD
        [logInfo.DLTimeStepLogs, logInfo.ULTimeStepLogs] = getSchedulingLogs(simSchedulingLogger-
    else % TDD
        logInfo.TimeStepLogs = getSchedulingLogs(simSchedulingLogger{siteIdx});
    end
    logInfo.SchedulingAssignmentLogs = getGrantLogs(simSchedulingLogger{siteIdx}); % Scheduling a
    [logInfo.BLERLogs, logInfo.AvgBLERLogs] = getBLERLogs(simPhyLogger{siteIdx}); % Block error
    simulationLogs{siteIdx, 1} = logInfo;
end
save(simParameters.ParametersLogFile, 'simParameters'); % Save simulation parameters in a MAT-fi
save(simParameters.SimulationLogFile, 'simulationLogs'); % Save simulation logs in a MAT-file

```

References

- [1] 3GPP TS 38.104. “NR; Base Station (BS) radio transmission and reception.” *3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Radio Access Network*.
- [2] 3GPP TS 38.214. “NR; Physical layer procedures for data.” *3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Radio Access Network*.

[3] 3GPP TS 38.321. "NR; Medium Access Control (MAC) protocol specification." *3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Radio Access Network.*

[4] 3GPP TS 38.322. "NR; Radio Link Control (RLC) protocol specification." *3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Radio Access Network.*

[5] 3GPP TS 38.323. "NR; Packet Data Convergence Protocol (PDCP) specification." *3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Radio Access Network.*

[6] 3GPP TS 38.331. "NR; Radio Resource Control (RRC) protocol specification." *3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Radio Access Network.*

[7] 3GPP TR 37.910. "Study on self evaluation towards IMT-2020 submission." *3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Radio Access Network.*

See Also

Related Examples

- "NR Cell Performance Evaluation with Physical Layer Integration" on page 5-92
- "NR Intercell Interference Modeling" on page 5-108

NR Cell Performance Evaluation with MIMO

This example models a 5G New Radio (NR) cell with multiple-input multiple-output (MIMO) antenna configuration and evaluates the network performance. You can customize the scheduling strategy to leverage the downlink MIMO capabilities and analyze the performance. The example performs measurement on multi-port channel state information reference signals (CSI-RS) which gNB uses to make MIMO scheduling decisions.

Introduction

MIMO improves network performance by improving the cell throughput and reliability. The example performs layer mapping and precoding to utilize MIMO in the downlink (DL) direction. The CSI report sent by UEs serves as an input to take MIMO scheduling decisions.

The example considers these operations within gNB and UEs that facilitate DL transmission and reception.

	Operations
gNB	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Run the scheduling algorithm to assign downlink resources • Send the downlink grants to the UEs • Adhere to the downlink grants for physical downlink shared channel (PDSCH) transmission • Receive the feedback of PDSCHs from the UEs • Send the channel state information reference signals (CSI-RS) to the UEs
UEs	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Receive the downlink grants from the gNB • Receive the PDSCH transmissions from the gNB • Send feedback for the received PDSCHs • Measure channel quality on CSI-RS

This example models:

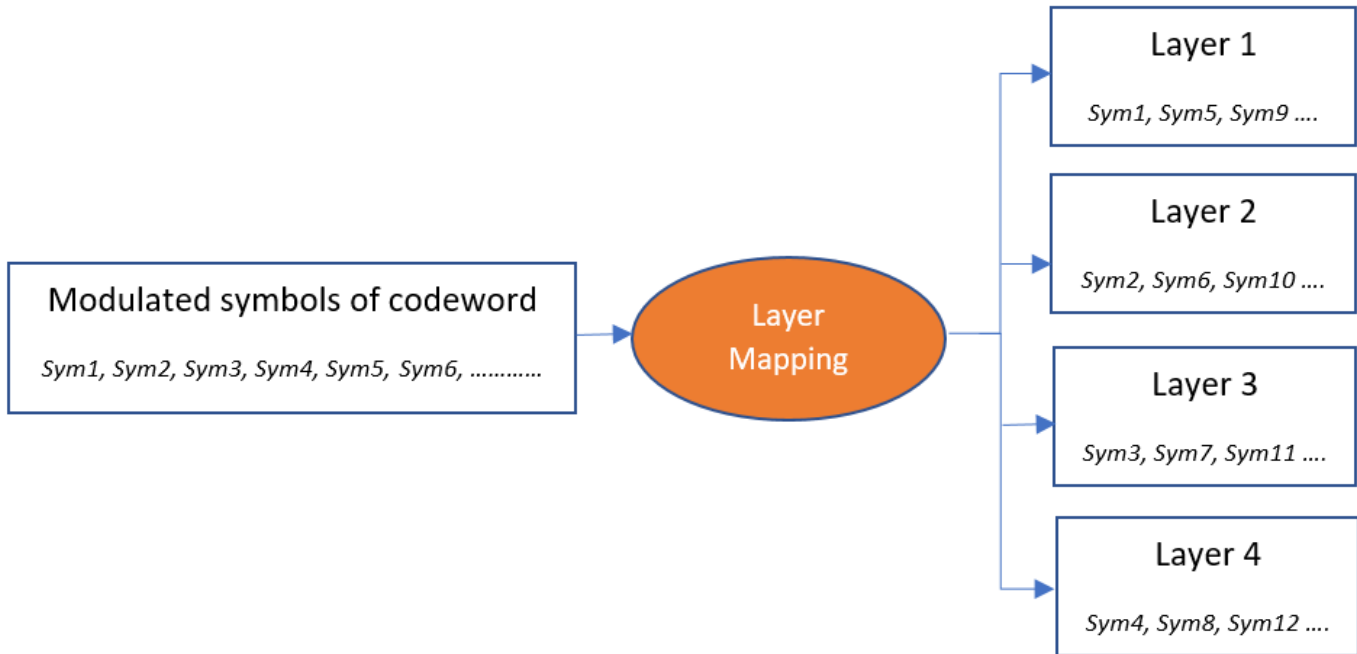
- Single-codeword DL spatial multiplexing to perform multi-layer transmission. Single-codeword limits the number of transmission layers to 4.
- DL precoding to map the transmission layers to antenna ports. The example assumes one-to-one mapping from antenna ports to physical antennas.
- DL channel quality measurement by UEs based on the multi-port CSI-RS received from the gNB. The same CSI-RS configuration applies to all the UEs.
- Precoding matrix indicator (PMI) and channel quality indicator (CQI) reporting by UEs. The example does not support rank estimation and provides the rank to be reported by a UE as a configuration parameter. A UE reports the PMI and CQI with respect to the configured rank. The example supports Type-1 single-panel codebook for PMI.
- PDSCH demodulation reference signal (DM-RS).
- Free space path loss (FSPL), additive white Gaussian noise (AWGN), and clustered delay line (CDL) propagation channel model.

Nodes send the control packets (DL assignment, PDSCH feedback, and CSI report) out of band, without the need of resources for transmission and assured error-free reception.

DL MIMO

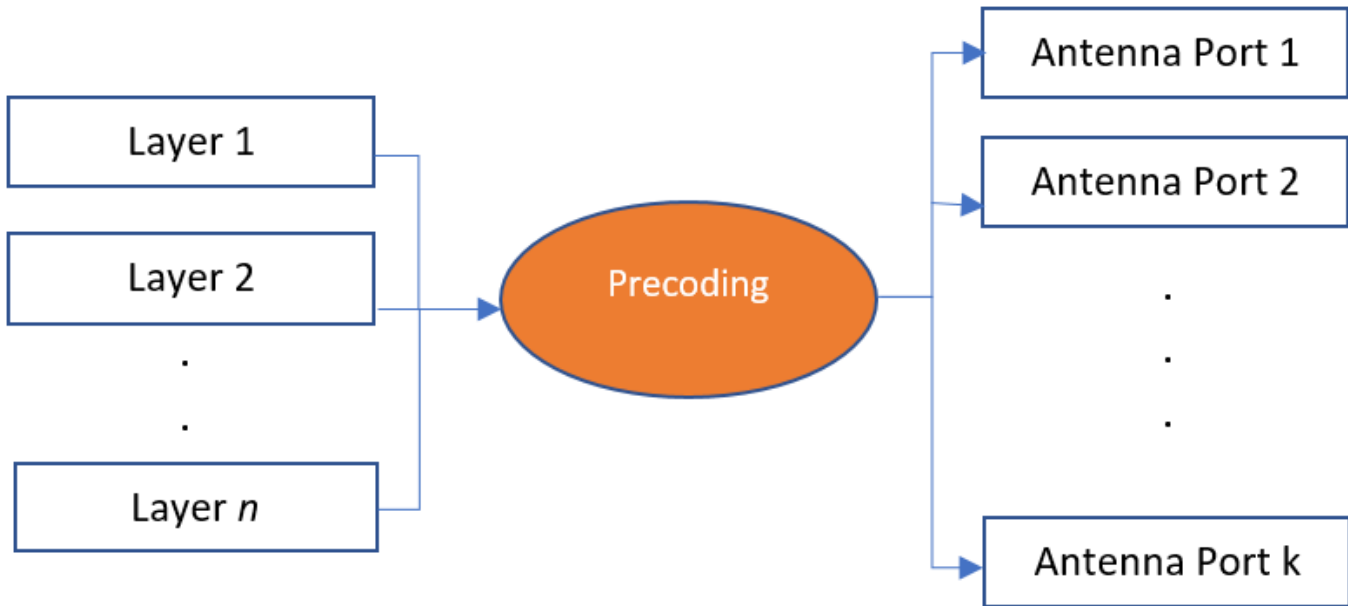
These are the key aspects of DL-MIMO.

Spatial multiplexing



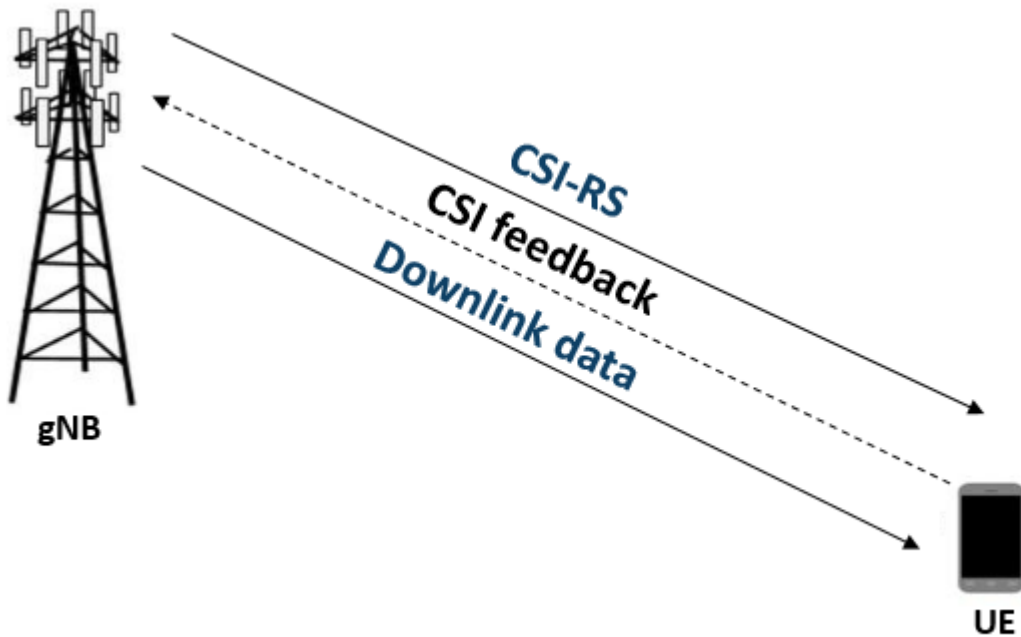
Spatial multiplexing utilizes MIMO to perform multi-layer transmission. The minimum of number of transmit and receive antennas limits the number of layers (or maximum rank). The layer mapping process maps the modulated symbols of the codeword onto different layers. It maps every n^{th} symbol of the codeword to n^{th} layer. For instance, this figure shows the mapping of a codeword onto four layers.

Precoding



Precoding, which follows the layer mapping, maps the transmission layers to antenna ports. Precoding applies a precoding matrix to the transmission layers and outputs data streams to the CSI-RS antenna ports.

CSI reporting

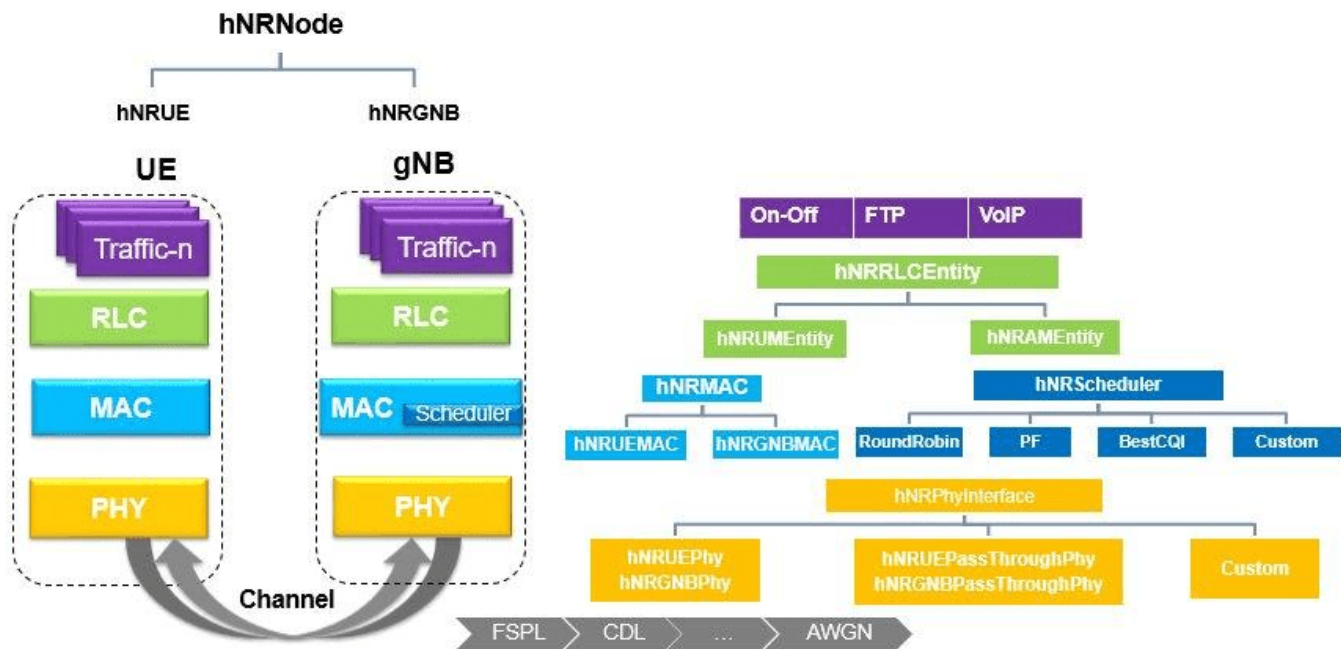


CSI reporting is the process by which a UE, for DL transmissions, advises a suitable number of transmission layers (rank), PMI, and CQI values to the gNB. The UE estimates these values by performing channel measurements on its configured CSI-RS resources. For more details, see the “5G NR Downlink CSI Reporting” on page 4-47 example. The gNB scheduler uses this advice to decide the number of DL transmission layers, precoding matrix, modulation and coding scheme (MCS).

NR Protocol Stack

A node (gNB or UE) is a composition of NR stack layers. The helper classes hNRGNB.m and hNRUE.m create gNB and UE nodes, respectively, containing the radio link control (RLC), medium access protocol (MAC), and physical layer (PHY). For more details, see the “NR Cell Performance Evaluation with Physical Layer Integration” on page 5-92 example.

5G Node Composition



Scenario Configuration

Configure simulation parameters in the simParameters structure.

```
rng('default'); % Reset the random number generator
simParameters = []; % Clear the simParameters variable
simParameters.NumFramesSim = 10; % Simulation time in terms of number of 10 ms frames
simParameters.SchedulingType = 0; % Set the value to 0 (slot based scheduling) or 1 (symbol based)
```

Specify the number of UEs in each cell, assuming that UEs have sequential radio network temporary identifiers (RNTIs) from 1 to simParameters.NumUEs. If you change the number of UEs, ensure that these simulation parameters are arrays of length equal to the value of simParameters.NumUEs: simParameters.UEDistance, simParameters.DLPacketPeriodicityUEs, simParameters.DLPacketSizesUEs, simParameters.UERxAnts.

```
simParameters.NumUEs = 4;
simParameters.UEDistance = [450; 600; 1000; 1500];
```

```
% Validate the distance of UEs from the gNB
validateattributes(simParameters.UEDistance, {'numeric'}, {'nonempty', 'vector', 'finite', 'nume
```

Specify the antenna counts at the gNB and UEs.

```
simParameters.GNBTxAnts = 16;
simParameters.UERxAnts = [2; 2; 2; 2];
```

Set the channel bandwidth to 10 MHz and the subcarrier spacing (SCS) to 15 kHz as defined in 3GPP TS 38.104 Section 5.3.2.

```
simParameters.NumRBs = 52;
simParameters.SCS = 15; % kHz
simParameters.DLBandwidth = 10e6; % Hz
simParameters.DLCarrierFreq = 2.635e9; % Hz
```

Specify the CSI-RS configuration.

```
simParameters.CSIRSRowNumber = 11; % CSI-RS row number as per 3GPP TS 38.211 Table 7.4.1.5.3-1
simParameters.CSIRSSubcarrierLocation = [1 3 5 7];
simParameters.CSIRSSymbolLocation = 0;
simParameters.CSIRSPeriod = [10 2]; % Slot periodicity and offset
```

Specify the CSI report configuration.

```
simParameters.PMIMode = 'Subband'; % 'Wideband' or 'Subband'
simParameters.CQIMode = 'Subband'; % 'Wideband' or 'Subband'
simParameters.PanelDimensions = [8 1]; % [N1 N2] as per 3GPP TS 38.214 Table 5.2.2.2.12
simParameters.SubbandSize = 4; % Refer TS 38.214 Table 5.2.1.4-2 for valid subband sizes
simParameters.CodebookMode = 1; % 1 or 2
```

Set the rank to be advised by UEs in CSI report. The example does not support rank estimation so the UEs use this rank to advice suitable PMI and CQI. For each UE, set a number less than or equal to the minimum of gNB's transmit antennas and UE's receive antennas. This is just the advised rank and you can customize the gNB scheduler to use a different rank for PDSCH transmission.

```
simParameters.RankIndicator = [2 2 2 2];
```

Specify the signal-to-interference-plus-noise ratio (SINR) to a CQI index mapping table for a block error rate (BLER) of 0.1.

```
simParameters.SINR90pc = [-7.46 -2.46 2.54 7.05 9.54 12.04 13.54 16.04 ...
    18.04 20.43 22.93 23.43 25.43 28.43 31.43];
```

Specify the transmit power.

```
simParameters.GNBTxPower = 35; % Tx power for gNB in dBm
```

Specify the scheduling strategy and the maximum limit on the RBs allotted for PDSCH. The transmission limit applies only to new PDSCH assignments, and not to the retransmissions.

```
simParameters.SchedulerStrategy = 'PF'; % Supported scheduling strategies: 'PF', 'RR', and 'Best'
simParameters.RBAllocationLimitDL = 25; % For PDSCH
```

Logging and Visualization Configuration

The CQIVisualization and RBVisualization parameters control the display of the CQI visualization of RBs and the RB assignment visualization. To enable the RB visualization plot, set the RBVisualization field to true.

```
simParameters.CQIVisualization = true;
simParameters.RBVisualization = false;
```

The example updates the metrics plots periodically. Set the number of updates during the simulation.

```
simParameters.NumMetricsSteps = 20;
```

Write the logs to MAT-files. The example uses these logs for post-simulation analysis and visualization.

```
simParameters.ParametersLogFile = 'simParameters'; % For logging the simulation parameters
simParameters.SimulationLogFile = 'simulationLogs'; % For logging the simulation logs
```

Application traffic configuration

Set the periodic DL application traffic pattern for UEs.

```
simParameters.DLPacketPeriodicityUEs = [2; 2; 3; 3]; % Periodicity (in ms) at which gNB generates
simParameters.DLPacketSizesUEs = [10000; 9000; 7500; 7500]; % Size of the generated DL packets (
% Validate the DL traffic periodicity
validateattributes(simParameters.DLPacketPeriodicityUEs, {'numeric'}, {'nonempty', 'integer', 'v
% Validate the size of DL packet generated by gNBs for UEs
validateattributes(simParameters.DLPacketSizesUEs, {'numeric'}, {'nonempty', 'integer', 'nrows',
```

Derived Parameters

Compute the derived parameters based on the primary configuration parameters specified in the previous section and set some example-specific constants.

```
simParameters.DuplexMode = 0; % FDD (Value as 0) or TDD (Value as 1)
simParameters.NCellID = 1; % Physical cell ID
simParameters.Position = [0 0 0]; % Position of gNB in (x,y,z) coordinates
simParameters.ChannelModelType = 'CDL'; % To model CDL propagation channel
simParameters.ULBandwidth = simParameters.DLBandwidth; % Hz
simParameters.ULCarrierFreq = 2.6454e9; % Hz
```

Compute the slot duration for the selected SCS and the number of slots in a 10 ms frame.

```
slotDuration = 1/(simParameters.SCS/15); % In ms
numSlotsFrame = 10/slotDuration; % Number of slots in a 10 ms frame
numSlotsSim = simParameters.NumFramesSim * numSlotsFrame; % Number of slots in the simulation
```

Set the interval at which the example updates metrics visualization in terms of number of slots. Because this example uses a time granularity of one slot, the `MetricsStepSize` field must be an integer.

```
simParameters.MetricsStepSize = ceil(numSlotsSim / simParameters.NumMetricsSteps);
if mod(numSlotsSim, simParameters.NumMetricsSteps) ~= 0
    % Update the NumMetricsSteps parameter if NumSlotsSim is not
    % completely divisible by it
    simParameters.NumMetricsSteps = floor(numSlotsSim / simParameters.MetricsStepSize);
end
```

Specify one logical channel for each UE, and set the logical channel configuration for all nodes (UEs and gNBs) in the example.

```
numLogicalChannels = 1;
simParameters.LCHConfig.LCID = 4;
```

Specify the RLC entity direction as 0 to specify DL only, 1 to specify UL only, or 2 to specify both UL and DL.

```
simParameters.RLCCConfig.EntityDir = 0;
```

Create RLC channel configuration structure.

```
rlcChannelConfigStruct.LCGID = 1; % Mapping between logical channel and logical channel group ID
rlcChannelConfigStruct.Priority = 1; % Priority of each logical channel
rlcChannelConfigStruct.PBR = 8; % Prioritized bitrate (PBR), in kilobytes per second, of each logical channel
rlcChannelConfigStruct.BSD = 10; % Bucket size duration (BSD), in ms, of each logical channel
rlcChannelConfigStruct.EntityType = simParameters.RLCCConfig.EntityDir;
rlcChannelConfigStruct.LogicalChannelID = simParameters.LCHConfig.LCID;
```

Set the maximum RLC service data unit (SDU) length, in bytes, as specified in 3GPP TS 38.323.

```
simParameters.maxRLCSDULength = 9000;
```

Set the simulation tick granularity (in terms of OFDM symbols) and the mapping type as per the configured scheduling type.

```
if ~isfield(simParameters, 'SchedulingType') || simParameters.SchedulingType == 0 % If no scheduling type is specified
    rbAssignmentPlotPeriodicity = numSlotsFrame; % Update RB assignment visualization every frame
    simParameters.PDSCHMappingType = 'A';
else % Symbol based scheduling
    rbAssignmentPlotPeriodicity = 1; % Update RB assignment visualization every slot
    simParameters.PDSCHMappingType = 'B';
end
```

gNB and UEs Setup

Create the gNB and UE objects, initialize the channel quality information for UEs, and set up the logical channel at the gNB and UE. The helper classes hNRGNB.m and hNRUE.m create the gNB node and the UE node, respectively, each containing the RLC, MAC and PHY.

```
gNB = hNRGNB(simParameters); % Create gNB node
% Create scheduler
switch(simParameters.SchedulerStrategy)
    case 'RR' % Round robin scheduler
        scheduler = hNRSchedulerRoundRobin(simParameters);
    case 'PF' % Proportional fair scheduler
        scheduler = hNRSchedulerProportionalFair(simParameters);
    case 'BestCQI' % Best CQI scheduler
        scheduler = hNRSchedulerBestCQI(simParameters);
end
addScheduler(gNB, scheduler); % Add scheduler to gNB

gNB.PhyEntity = hNRGNBPhy(simParameters); % Create the PHY instance
configurePhy(gNB, simParameters); % Configure the PHY
setPhyInterface(gNB); % Set the interface to PHY

% Create the set of UE nodes
UEs = cell(simParameters.NumUEs, 1);
for ueIdx=1:simParameters.NumUEs
    simParameters.Position = [simParameters.UEDistance(ueIdx) 0 0]; % Position of UE
    UEs{ueIdx} = hNRUE(simParameters, ueIdx);
    ueParam = simParameters;
    ueParam.UERxAnts = simParameters.UERxAnts(ueIdx);
end
```

```

ueParam.RankIndicator = simParameters.RankIndicator(ueIdx);
UEs{ueIdx}.PhyEntity = hNRUEPhy(ueParam, ueIdx); % Create the PHY instance
configurePhy(UEs{ueIdx}, ueParam); % Configure the PHY
setPhyInterface(UEs{ueIdx}); % Set up the interface to PHY

% Set up logical channel at gNB for the UE
configureLogicalChannel(gNB, ueIdx, rlcChannelConfigStruct);
% Set up logical channel at UE
configureLogicalChannel(UEs{ueIdx}, ueIdx, rlcChannelConfigStruct);
% Add DL data traffic pattern generators to gNB for the UEs
dlPacketSize = simParameters.DLPacketSizesUEs(ueIdx);
dlDataRate = ceil(1000/simParameters.DLPacketPeriodicityUEs(ueIdx)) * dlPacketSize *8e-3;
if dlPacketSize > simParameters.maxRLCSDULength
    dlPacketSize = simParameters.maxRLCSDULength;
end

% Create an object for on-off network traffic pattern for the specified
% UE and add it to the gNB. This object generates the downlink data
% traffic on the gNB for the UE
dlApp = networkTrafficOnOff('PacketSize', dlPacketSize, 'GeneratePacket', true, ...
    'OnTime', simParameters.NumFramesSim/100, 'OffTime', 0, 'DataRate', dlDataRate);
gNB.addApplication(ueIdx, simParameters.LCHConfig.LCID, dlApp);
end

```

Set up the packet distribution mechanism.

```

simParameters.MaxReceivers = simParameters.NumUEs;
% Create DL packet distribution object
dlPacketDistributionObj = hNRPacketDistribution(simParameters, 0); % 0 for DL
% Create UL packet distribution object
ulPacketDistributionObj = hNRPacketDistribution(simParameters, 1); % 1 for UL
hNRSetUpPacketDistribution(simParameters, gNB, UEs, dlPacketDistributionObj, ulPacketDistributionObj);

```

Processing Loop

Run the simulation slot by slot. In each slot, execute these operations.

- Run the gNB.
- Run the UEs.
- Log and visualize metrics for each layer.
- Advance the timer for the nodes and send a trigger to application and RLC layers every millisecond. The application and RLC layers execute their scheduled operations based on a 1 ms timer trigger.

Create objects for MAC and PHY logging and visualization.

```

simSchedulingLogger = hNRSchedulingLogger(simParameters, 0); % 0 for DL
simPhyLogger = hNRPhyLogger(simParameters, 0); % 0 for DL
visualizer = hNRMetricsVisualizer(simParameters, 'MACLogger', simSchedulingLogger, 'PhyLogger', ...

```

Run the processing loop.

```

slotNum = 0;
numSymbolsSim = numSlotsSim * 14; % Simulation time in units of symbol duration
tickGranularity = 1;
% Execute all the symbols in the simulation
for symbolNum = 1 : tickGranularity : numSymbolsSim

```

```

if mod(symbolNum - 1, 14) == 0
    slotNum = slotNum + 1;
end
% Run the gNB
run(gNB);

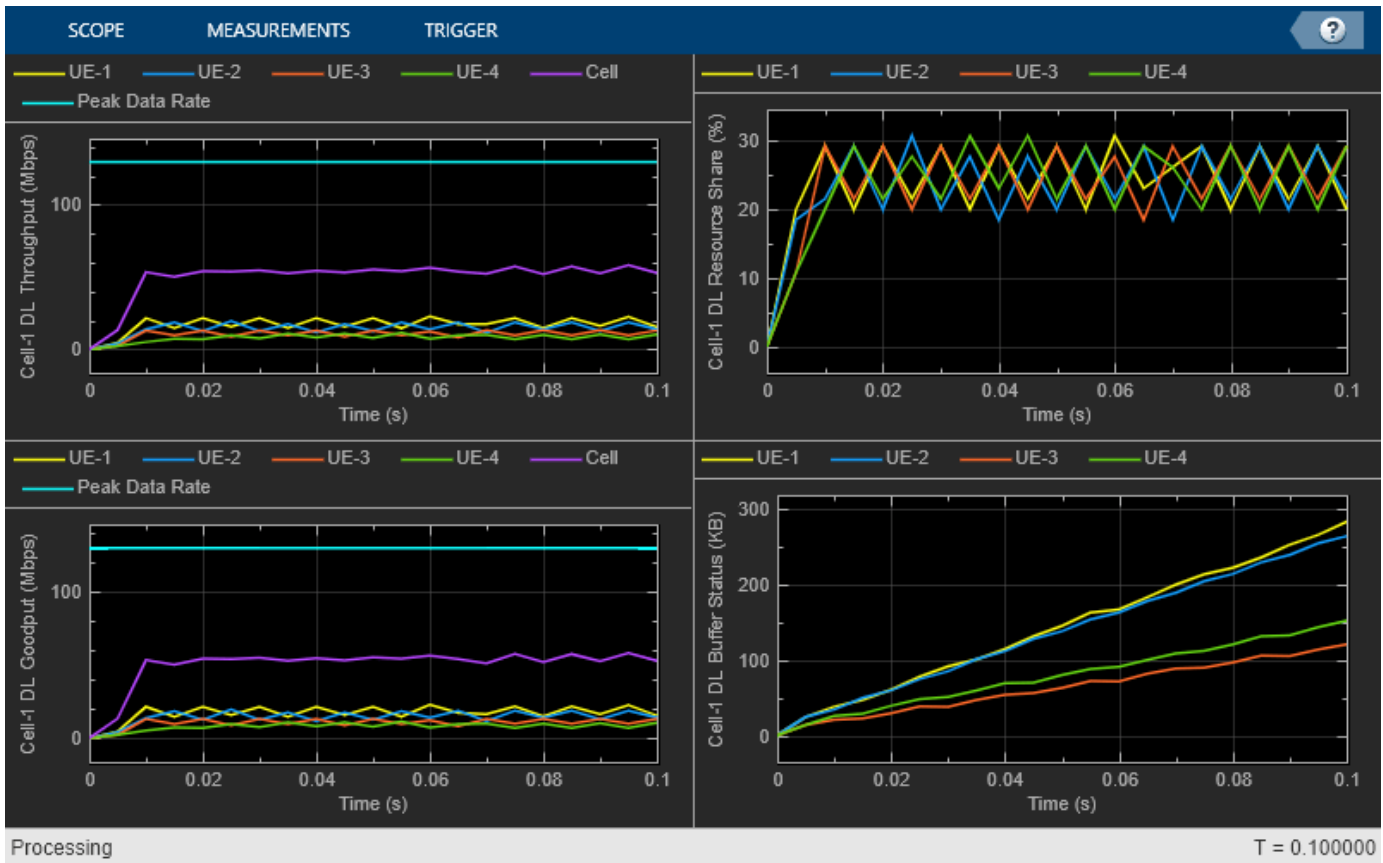
% Run the UEs
for ueIdx = 1:simParameters.NumUEs
    run(UEs{ueIdx});
end

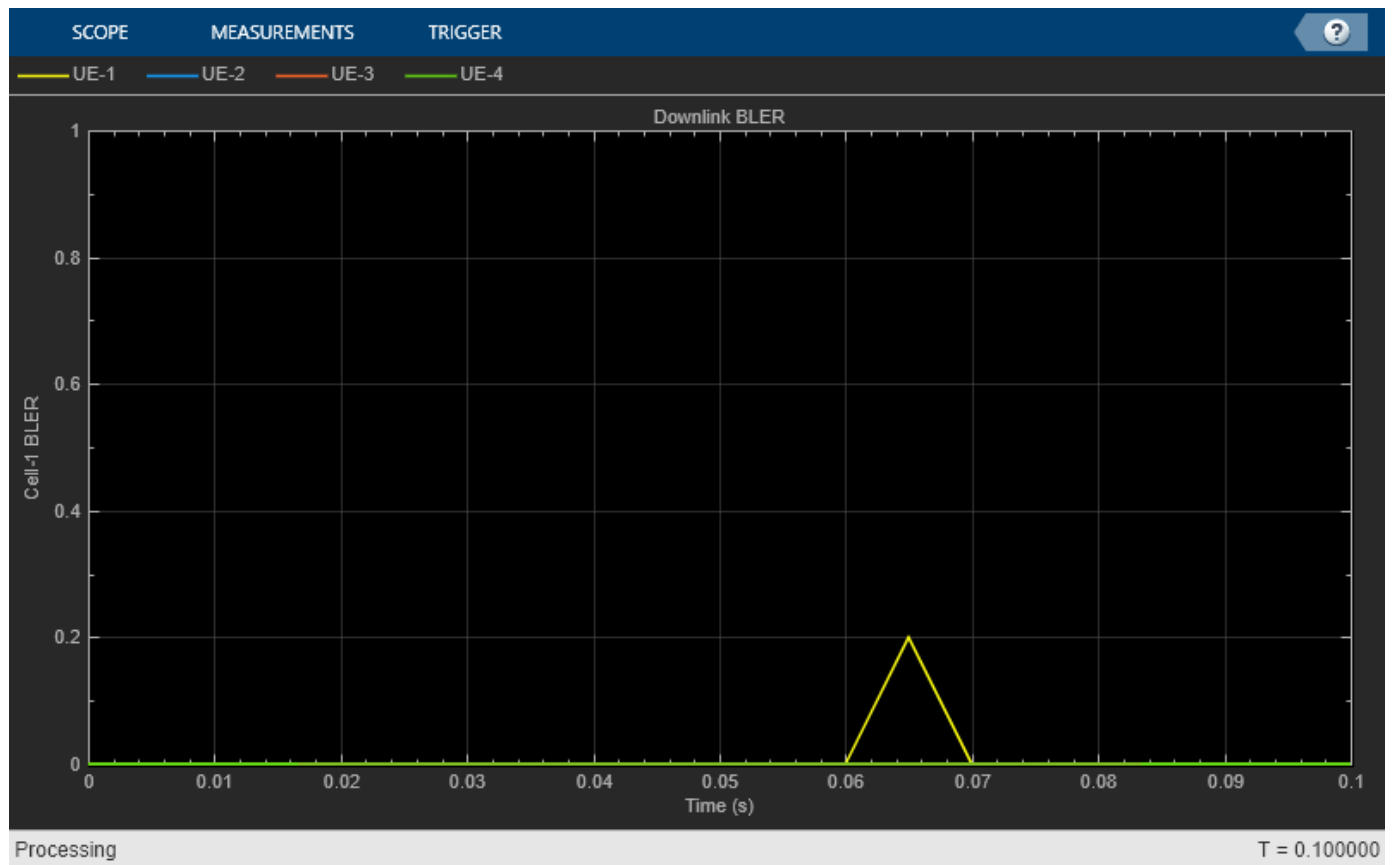
% MAC logging
logCellSchedulingStats(simSchedulingLogger, symbolNum, gNB, UEs, 0); % For DL
% PHY logging
logCellPhyStats(simPhyLogger, symbolNum, gNB, UEs);

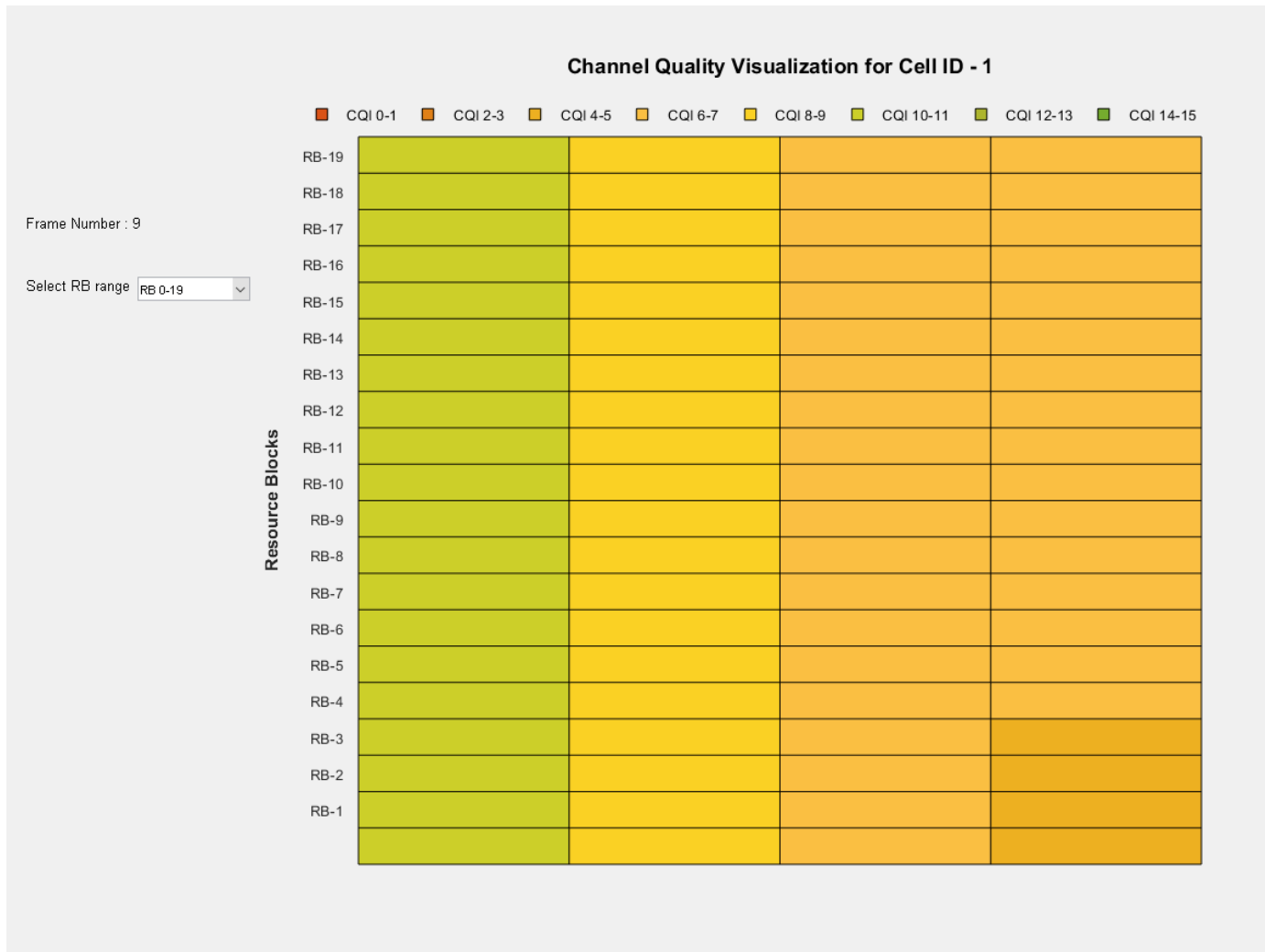
% Visualization
% Check slot boundary
if symbolNum > 1 && ((simParameters.SchedulingType == 1 && mod(symbolNum, 14) == 0) || (simP
    % RB assignment visualization (if enabled)
    if simParameters.RBVisualization
        if mod(slotNum, rbAssignmentPlotPeriodicity) == 0
            % Plot at slot boundary, if the update periodicity is reached
            plotRBGrids(simSchedulingLogger);
        end
    end
    % CQI grid visualization (if enabled)
    if simParameters.CQIVisualization
        if mod(slotNum, numSlotsFrame) == 0 % Plot at frame boundary
            plotCQIRBGrids(simSchedulingLogger);
        end
    end
    % If the update periodicity is reached, plot scheduler metrics and PHY metrics visualiza
    % at slot boundary
    if mod(slotNum, simParameters.MetricsStepSize) == 0
        plotMetrics(visualizer, slotNum);
    end
end

% Advance timer ticks for gNB and UEs
advanceTimer(gNB, tickGranularity);
for ueIdx = 1:simParameters.NumUEs
    advanceTimer(UEs{ueIdx}, tickGranularity);
end
end
end

```







Simulation Visualization

The example shows four runtime visualization:

- *Display of CQI values for UEs over the PDSCH bandwidth:* For details, see the "Channel Quality Visualization" figure description in the "NR PUSCH FDD Scheduling" on page 5-37 example.
- *Display of resource grid assignment to UEs:* The time-frequency grid shows the resource allocation to the UEs. You can enable this visualization in the Scenario Configuration on page 5-0 section. For details, see the "Resource Grid Allocation" figure description in the "NR PUSCH FDD Scheduling" on page 5-37 example.
- *Display of DL scheduling metrics plots:* For details, see the "Downlink Scheduler Performance Metrics" figure description in the "NR FDD Scheduling Performance Evaluation" on page 5-55 example.
- *Display of DL Block Error Rates:* For details, see the 'Block Error Rate (BLER) Visualization' figure description in the "NR Cell Performance Evaluation with Physical Layer Integration" on page 5-92 example.

Simulation Logs

The example saves the simulation parameters and logs as MAT-files for post-simulation analysis and visualization. The example saves the simulation parameters in a MAT-file with the file name as the value of configuration parameter, `simParameters.ParametersLogFile`. It also saves the per-time-step logs, scheduling assignment logs, and BLER logs in a MAT-file named as value of `simParameters.SimulationLogFile`. After the simulation, open the file to load `DLTimeStepLogs`, `SchedulingAssignmentLogs` in the workspace.

Time step logs: For details of log format, see the "Simulation Logs" section of the "NR PUSCH FDD Scheduling" on page 5-37 example.

Scheduling assignment logs: Information about all the scheduling assignments. For details about the log format, see the "Simulation Logs" section of the "NR FDD Scheduling Performance Evaluation" on page 5-55 example.

Block Error Rate logs: Block error information observed in the DL direction. For details of log format, see the 'Simulation Logs' section in the "NR Cell Performance Evaluation with Physical Layer Integration" on page 5-92 example.

At the end of the simulation, the example compares the achieved value for system performance indicators against their theoretical peak values (considering zero overheads). Performance indicators displayed are: achieved data rate, achieved spectral efficiency and BLER observed for UEs. The peak value calculations are as per 3GPP TR 37.910.

```
simulationLogs = cell(1,1);
if(simParameters.DuplexMode == 0) % FDD
    logInfo = struct('DLTimeStepLogs',[], 'SchedulingAssignmentLogs',[], 'BLERLogs',[]);
else
    logInfo = struct('TimeStepLogs',[], 'SchedulingAssignmentLogs',[], 'BLERLogs',[]);
end
dlStats = getPerformanceIndicators(simSchedulingLogger);
[logInfo.BLERLogs, logInfo.AvgBLERLogs] = getBLERLogs(simPhyLogger); % Block Error rate logs
fprintf('\nPeak DL throughput: %0.2f Mbps. Achieved average DL Throughput: %0.2f Mbps', dlStats(
Peak DL throughput: 129.40 Mbps. Achieved average DL Throughput: 52.01 Mbps
fprintf('\nAchieved average DL Goodput: %0.2f Mbps', dlStats(5, 1));
Achieved average DL Goodput: 51.95 Mbps
fprintf('\nPeak DL spectral efficiency: %0.2f bits/s/Hz. Achieved average DL spectral efficiency
Peak DL spectral efficiency: 12.94 bits/s/Hz. Achieved average DL spectral efficiency: 5.20 bits/s
disp(['Block error rate for each UE in the downlink direction: [' num2str(round(logInfo.AvgBLERL
Block error rate for each UE in the downlink direction: [0.01      0      0
```

You can get a post-simulation visualization of logs by running the script `NRPostSimVisualization`. For more details about the options to run this script, see the "NR FDD Scheduling Performance Evaluation" on page 5-55 example.

```
% Read the logs and save them in MAT-files
if(simParameters.DuplexMode == 0) % FDD
    logInfo.DLTimeStepLogs = getSchedulingLogs(simSchedulingLogger);
else % TDD
    logInfo.TimeStepLogs = getSchedulingLogs(simSchedulingLogger);
```

```

end
logInfo.SchedulingAssignmentLogs = getGrantLogs(simSchedulingLogger); % Scheduling assignments l
simulationLogs{1} = logInfo;
save(simParameters.ParametersLogFile, 'simParameters'); % Save simulation parameters in a MAT-fi
save(simParameters.SimulationLogFile, 'simulationLogs'); % Save simulation logs in a MAT-file

```

Further Exploration

You can use this example to further explore custom scheduling.

Custom scheduling

You can modify the existing scheduling strategy to implement a custom strategy. Follow the steps in 'Further Exploration' section of the “NR FDD Scheduling Performance Evaluation” on page 5-55 example, which explains the steps to write a custom scheduling strategy for single-input single-output (SISO) configuration. Additionally, MIMO configuration appends more fields to the scheduling assignment structure. Populate the fields of scheduling assignments with values for precoding matrix, number of layers as per your custom scheduling strategy. For more information about the information fields of a scheduling assignment, see the description of the `scheduledDLResourcesSlot` function in the `hNRScheduler.m` helper file.

The scheduler in the example selects the rank and precoding matrix which a UE reports in the CSI. You can also customize this behavior to select any rank and precoding matrix by overriding the function `selectRankAndPrecodingMatrix` in your custom scheduler. For more details, see the description of the `selectRankAndPrecodingMatrix` function in the `hNRScheduler.m` helper file

References

- [1] 3GPP TS 38.104. “NR; Base Station (BS) radio transmission and reception.” *3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Radio Access Network.*
- [2] 3GPP TS 38.214. “NR; Physical layer procedures for data.” *3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Radio Access Network.*
- [3] 3GPP TS 38.321. “NR; Medium Access Control (MAC) protocol specification.” *3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Radio Access Network.*
- [4] 3GPP TS 38.322. “NR; Radio Link Control (RLC) protocol specification.” *3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Radio Access Network.*
- [5] 3GPP TS 38.323. “NR; Packet Data Convergence Protocol (PDCP) specification.” *3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Radio Access Network.*
- [6] 3GPP TS 38.331. “NR; Radio Resource Control (RRC) protocol specification.” *3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Radio Access Network.*
- [7] 3GPP TR 37.910. “Study on self evaluation towards IMT-2020 submission.” *3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Radio Access Network.*

See Also

Related Examples

- “5G NR Downlink CSI Reporting” on page 4-47
- “NR Cell Performance Evaluation with Physical Layer Integration” on page 5-92
- “NR FDD Scheduling Performance Evaluation” on page 5-55

NR PUSCH FDD Scheduling

This example evaluates the throughput and resource share fairness performance of an uplink (UL) scheduling strategy in frequency division duplexing (FDD) mode with radio link control (RLC) layer integrated. The UL scheduling strategy assigns the physical uplink shared channel resources (PUSCH) resources to a set of user equipments (UEs) connected to a gNB. The example uses unacknowledged mode (UM) of RLC layer and a passthrough physical (PHY) layer. The passthrough PHY layer does not involve any physical layer processing and adopts a probability-based approach to model packet reception failures. The example logs the events in the simulation and also shows the run time visualizations to observe the network performance.

Introduction

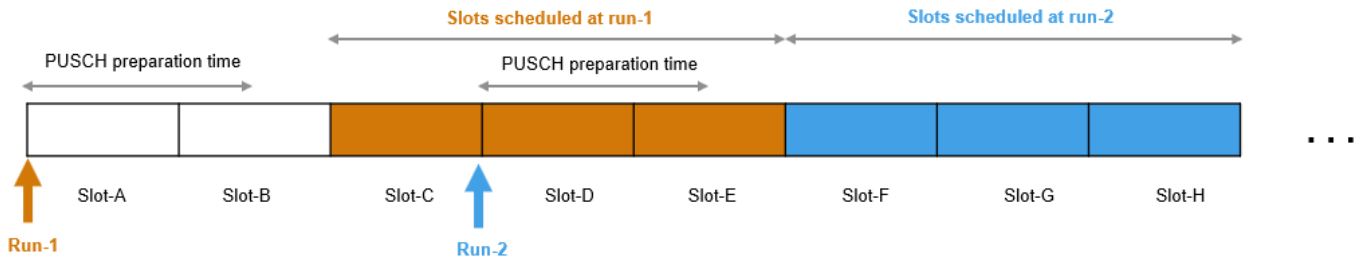
This example shows how a scheduling strategy (controlled by the gNB) assigns UL resources among the UEs. The example considers the following operations within the gNB and UEs that facilitate UL transmissions and receptions.

	Operations
gNB	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Run the scheduling algorithm to assign uplink resources • Send the uplink assignments to the UEs • Receive the PUSCH transmission from the UEs
UEs	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Send the pending buffer status report to the gNB • Receive the uplink assignments from the gNB • Adhere to the received uplink assignments from the gNB for PUSCH transmission

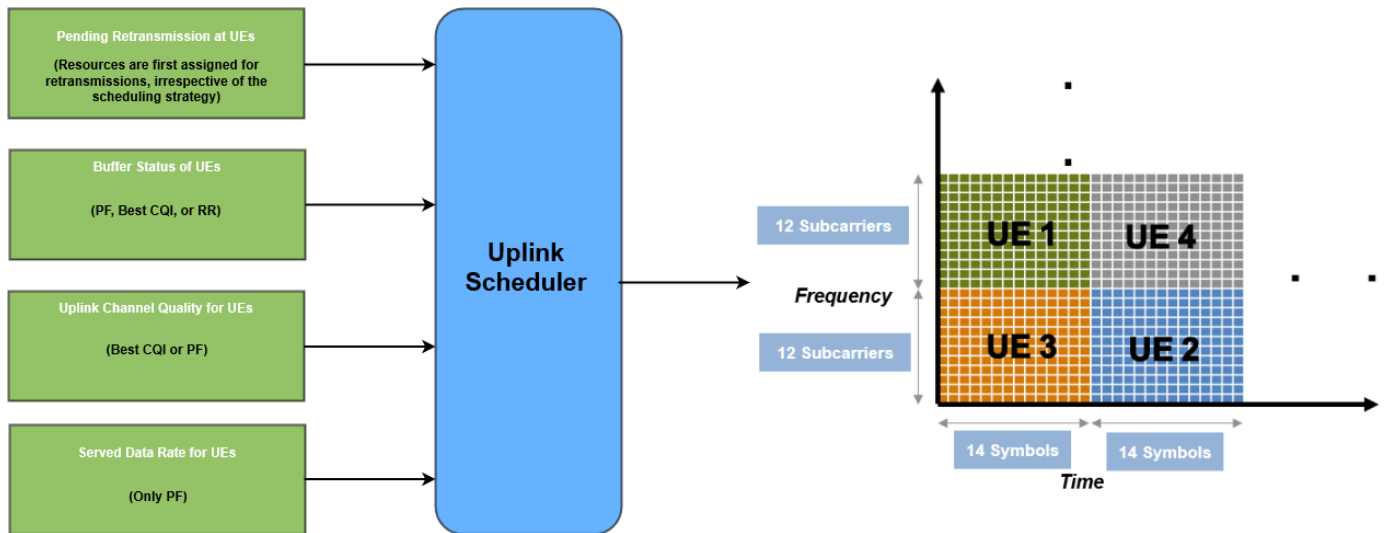
The complete PUSCH packet is transmitted in the first symbol of its allocated symbol set. Receiver processes the packet in the symbol just after the last symbol in the allocated symbol set.

The scheduler runs every p slots to assign the UL resources, where p is the configured periodicity of the scheduler. In each run, the number of slots scheduled is equal to the periodicity of scheduler run, p . The first slot, among the p slots to be scheduled in a run, is the next upcoming slot which satisfies the PUSCH preparation time capability of UEs. For example, the figure shows the way scheduler selects the slots during two consecutive runs. It assumes scheduler periodicity (p) of 3 slots. Hence, the scheduler runs after every 3 slots, and schedules resources for 3 slots. PUSCH preparation time capability for all the UEs is assumed as greater than 1 slot (14 symbols) but less than 2 slots (28 symbols).

- Run-1: When scheduler runs at the start of Slot-A, it schedules 3 slots starting from Slot-C, because for Slot-A and Slot-B the UEs do not get enough PUSCH preparation time (UEs gets a time of 0 symbols at start of Slot-A and 14 symbols at start of Slot-B). For Slot-C, UEs get 28 symbols for PUSCH preparation and this satisfies the PUSCH preparation time capability. Hence, Slot-C, D, and E are scheduled in this run.
- Run-2: When scheduler runs at the start of Slot-D, it schedules the next 3 contiguous slots starting from Slot-F (Slot-F, G, and H).



You can choose any one of the implemented scheduling strategies: proportional fair (PF), best CQI, or round robin (RR). The various supported inputs to the UL scheduler are listed along with the scheduling strategies that consider them.



The two control packets, the buffer status report (BSR) and UL assignment, are assumed to be sent out of band without the need of resources for transmission.

Demodulation reference signal (DM-RS) is not modeled in this example. However, one symbol is kept unused for it in the PUSCH assignments.

This example models:

- Slot based and symbol based UL scheduling. UL scheduler ensures that the UEs get the required PUSCH preparation time.
- Noncontiguous allocation of frequency-domain resources in terms of resource block groups (RBGs).
- Configurable subcarrier spacing resulting in different slot durations.
- Asynchronous UL hybrid automatic repeat request (HARQ) mechanism.
- UL reception success or failure detection by UEs using new data indicator (NDI) flag present in UL assignment.
- Multiple logical channels to support different application traffic patterns.
- Logical channel prioritization (LCP) at UE to distribute the received UL assignment among logical channels.

- Periodic UL application traffic pattern.
- RLC operating in UM mode.

Scenario Configuration

For the simulation, set these key configuration parameters:

- Simulation time
- Number of UEs
- Distance of UEs from gNB (affects the UL CQI values for UEs)
- Application traffic pattern at UEs to generate traffic
- RLC configuration for Tx and Rx entities at UEs and gNB respectively
- Logical channel configuration of UEs and gNB
- Scheduling strategy: PF, Best CQI, RR
- Periodicity of BSRs sent by UEs to inform gNB about pending buffer amount
- PUSCH preparation time for UEs
- PUSCH bandwidth in terms of number of resource blocks (RBs)
- Subcarrier spacing
- RBG size configuration type
- Initial UL channel quality and its update mechanism

```
rng('default'); % Reset the random number generator
simParameters = []; % Clear the simulation parameters
simParameters.NumFramesSim = 200; % Simulation time in terms of number of 10 ms frames
simParameters.SchedulingType = 0; % Set the value to 0 (slot based scheduling) or 1 (symbol based)

% Number of UEs in the simulation. UEs are assumed to have sequential radio
% network temporary identifiers (RNTIs) from 1 to NumUEs. If you change the
% number of UEs, ensure that the simulation parameters
% simParameters.UEDistance and simParameters.PacketPeriodicityUEs are
% array of length equal to NumUEs; and simParameters.PacketSizesUEs,
% properties of simParameters.RLCConfig, and simParameters.LCHConfig
% consists of number of rows equal to numUEs.
simParameters.NumUEs = 4;
% Number of logical channels in each UE. If you change the number of
% logical channels, ensure that the simulation parameters
% simParameters.PacketSizesUEs, properties of simParameters.RLCConfig, and
% simParameters.LCHConfig consists of number of columns equal to
% NumLogicalChannels. The logical channels associated to data radio bearers
% use logical channel identifiers (LCIDs) starting from 4. So, the
% logical channels are assumed to have LCIDs starting from 4 to NumLogicalChannels+3.
simParameters.NumLogicalChannels = 3;
simParameters.UEDistance = [100; 250; 700; 750]; % Distance of UEs from gNB (in meters)

% Set the application traffic pattern for UEs. For example, the vector
% element value 10 at index 4 represents that for each of the logical
% channels of UE-4, a packet is generated every 10 ms
simParameters.PacketPeriodicityUEs = [30; 20; 30; 10]; % Periodicity at which UEs generate packets
% The N-by-P matrix represents the size of packet generated by the UE in
% each logical channel, where 'N' represents the number of UEs and 'P'
% represents the number of logical channels. A matrix element at position (i, j)
% represents packet size (in bytes) generated by UE with RNTI 'i' for LCID 'j+3'.
```

```

% For example, the value 12000 at index (3, 1) represents a packet
% of size 12000 bytes generated by UE-3 for LCID 4
simParameters.PacketSizesUEs = [4000 6000 8000;
    500 8000 8000;
    12000 8000 4000;
    1000 8000 4000];

% RLC configuration
% Each property of RLCConfig must be an N-by-P matrix, where 'N' represents the number of UEs
% and 'P' represents the number of logical channels. A matrix element at position
% (i, j) corresponds to a property value of a UE with RNTI 'i' and LCID 'j+3'.
% Sequence number (SN) field length (in bits) to be used by each UE for their logical channels
simParameters.RLCConfig.SNFieldLength = [6 6 12;
    6 6 12;
    6 12 6;
    6 6 12];
% Reassembly timer to be used by each UE for their logical channels
simParameters.RLCConfig.ReassemblyTimer = [5 10 15;
    5 5 10;
    5 5 5;
    5 10 15];
% Max number of service data units (SDUs) in the Tx buffer of each logical channel (to model Tx
simParameters.RLCConfig.MaxTxBufferSDUs = [4 3 11;
    3 5 4;
    6 1 3;
    11 6 26];

% Logical channel (LCH) configuration
% Each property of LCHConfig must be an N-by-P matrix, where 'N' represents the number of UEs
% and 'P' represents the number of logical channels. A matrix element at position
% (i, j) corresponds to a property value of a UE with RNTI 'i' and LCID 'j+3'.
% Mapping between logical channel and logical channel group (LCG) ID
simParameters.LCHConfig.LCGID = [1 3 2;
    1 2 2;
    1 2 3;
    5 1 2];
% Priority of each logical channel
simParameters.LCHConfig.Priority = [1 5 8;
    1 1 6;
    4 10 4;
    10 11 13];
% Prioritized bit rate (PBR) of each logical channel (in kilo bytes per second)
simParameters.LCHConfig.PBR = [8 16 32;
    8 128 32;
    8 16 32;
    8 16 32];
% Bucket size duration (BSD) of each logical channel (in ms)
simParameters.LCHConfig.BSD = [5 10 50;
    5 20 20;
    5 5 5;
    5 10 20];

% Medium access control (MAC) configuration
% Set the scheduler run periodicity in terms of number of slots. Value must be
% less than the number of slots in a 10 ms frame
simParameters.SchedulerPeriodicity = 4;
simParameters.SchedulerStrategy = 'PF'; % Supported scheduling strategies: 'PF', 'RR' and 'BestC
% Moving average weight parameter within the range [0, 1] calculates

```



```

% average data rate for a UE. The value is used in the PF scheduling strategy.
% Parameter value closer to 1 implies more weight on the instantaneous
% data rate. Parameter value closer to 0 implies more weight on the past
% data rate
% AverageDataRate = ((1 - MovingAvgDataRateWeight) * PastDataRate) + (MovingAvgDataRateWeight *
simParameters.MovingAvgDataRateWeight = 0.5;
simParameters.BSRPeriodicity = 5; % In ms
simParameters.EnableHARQ = true; % Flag to enable or disable HARQ. If disabled, there are no retransmissions
simParameters.NumHARQ = 16; % Number of HARQ processes in each UE
% PUSCH preparation time. gNB ensures that PUSCH assignment is received at
% UEs PUSCHPrepTime ahead of the transmission time
simParameters.PUSCHPrepTime = 200; % In microseconds
% Maximum RBs allotted to a UE in a slot for a PUSCH transmission (limit is
% applicable for new PUSCH assignments and not for the retransmissions)
simParameters.RBAllocationLimitUL = 15;

% PHY layer and channel configuration
% RB count for 5 MHz band with 15 kHz subcarrier spacing (SCS). The complete
% UL bandwidth is assumed to be allotted for PUSCH
simParameters.NumRBs = 25;
simParameters.SCS = 15; % kHz
simParameters.ULBandwidth = 5e6; % Hz
simParameters.ULCarrierFreq = 2.515e9; % Hz
% Set the RBG size configuration to 1 (configuration-1 RBG table) or 2
% (configuration-2 RBG table) as defined in 3GPP TS 38.214 Section
% 5.1.2.2.1
simParameters.RBGSizeConfig = 1;

% Configure parameters to update channel conditions for the UEs. Channel
% quality is periodically improved or deteriorated by CQIDelta every
% channelUpdatePeriodicity seconds for all RBs of a UE. Whether channel
% conditions for a particular UE improve or deteriorate is randomly
% determined: RBCQI = RBCQI +/- CQIDelta
simParameters.ChannelUpdatePeriodicity = 0.5; % In sec
simParameters.CQIDelta = 1;
% Mapping between distance from gNB (first column in meters) and maximum
% achievable UL CQI value (second column). For example, if a UE is 700
% meters away from the gNB, it can achieve a maximum CQI value of 10 as the
% distance falls within the [501, 800] meters range, as per the mapping. Set
% the distance in increasing order and the achievable CQI value in decreasing
% order
simParameters.CQIvsDistance = [
    200 15;
    500 12;
    800 10;
    1000 8;
    1200 7];

% Logging and visualization configuration
% Flag to enable or disable run time CQI visualization
simParameters.CQIVisualization = true;
% Flag to enable or disable run time visualization of RB assignment. If enabled,
% then for slot based scheduling it updates every frame (10 ms) to show RB
% allocation to the UEs for different slots of the last frame.
simParameters.RBVisualization = true;

% The output metrics plots are updated NumMetricsSteps times during simulation
simParameters.NumMetricsSteps = 20;

```

```
% MAT-files used for post simulation visualization
simParameters.ParametersLogFile = 'simParameters'; % For logging the simulation parameters
simParameters.SimulationLogFile = 'simulationLogs'; % For logging the simulation logs
```

```
hNRULSchedulingValidateConfig(simParameters); % Validate the simulation configuration
```

Derived Parameters

Based on the primary configuration parameters, compute the derived parameters.

```
simParameters.NCellID = 1; % Physical cell ID
simParameters.DLCarrierFreq = 2.635e9; % Hz
simParameters.DLBandwidth = 10e6; % Hz
simParameters.GNBPosition = [0 0 0]; % Position of gNB in (x,y,z) coordinates
% Slot duration for the selected SCS and number of slots in a 10 ms frame
slotDuration = 1/(simParameters.SCS/15); % Slot duration in ms
numSlotsFrame = 10/slotDuration; % Number of slots in 10 ms frame
numSlotsSim = simParameters.NumFramesSim * numSlotsFrame; % Number of slots in the simulation

% Maximum RLC SDU length (in bytes)
simParameters.maxRLCSDULength = 9000;

% RLC entity direction. Value 0 represents downlink only, 1
% represents UL only and 2 represents both UL and downlink
% directions. Setting entity direction to have only UL
simParameters.RLCCConfig.EntityDir = ones(simParameters.NumUEs, simParameters.NumLogicalChannels)

% LCID (LCID of data radio bearers starts from 4)
simParameters.LCHConfig.LCID = ones(simParameters.NumUEs, simParameters.NumLogicalChannels) .* (

% Construct information for RLC logger and visualizer
lchInfo = repmat(struct('RNTI', [], 'LCID', [], 'EntityDir', []), [simParameters.NumUEs 1]);
for idx = 1:simParameters.NumUEs
    lchInfo(idx).RNTI = idx;
    lchInfo(idx).LCID = simParameters.LCHConfig.LCID(idx, :);
    lchInfo(idx).EntityDir = simParameters.RLCCConfig.EntityDir(idx, :);
end

% Find maximum achievable CQI value for UEs based on their distance from
% the gNB
maxUECQIs = zeros(simParameters.NumUEs, 1); % To store the maximum achievable CQI value for UEs
for ueIdx = 1:simParameters.NumUEs
    % Based on the distance of the UE from gNB, find matching row in
    % CQIvsDistance mapping
    matchingRowIdx = find(simParameters.CQIvsDistance(:, 1) > simParameters.UEDistance(ueIdx));
    if isempty(matchingRowIdx)
        maxUECQIs(ueIdx) = simParameters.CQIvsDistance(end, 2);
    else
        maxUECQIs(ueIdx) = simParameters.CQIvsDistance(matchingRowIdx(1), 2);
    end
end

% Define initial UL channel quality as an N-by-P matrix,
% where 'N' is the number of UEs and 'P' is the number of RBs in the carrier
% bandwidth. The initial value of CQI for each RB, for each UE, is given
% randomly and is limited by the maximum achievable CQI value corresponding
% to the distance of the UE from gNB
```

```

simParameters.InitialChannelQualityUL = zeros(simParameters.NumUEs, simParameters.NumRBs); % To
for ueIdx = 1:simParameters.NumUEs
    % Assign random CQI values for the RBs, limited by the maximum achievable CQI value
    simParameters.InitialChannelQualityUL(ueIdx, :) = randi([1 maxUECQIs(ueIdx)], 1, simParameters.NumRBs);
end

% Interval at which metrics visualization updates in terms of number of
% slots. Make sure that MetricsStepSize is an integer
simParameters.MetricsStepSize = ceil(numSlotsSim / simParameters.NumMetricsSteps);
if mod(numSlotsSim, simParameters.NumMetricsSteps) ~= 0
    % Update the NumMetricsSteps parameter if numSlotsSim is not
    % completely divisible by it
    simParameters.NumMetricsSteps = floor(numSlotsSim / simParameters.MetricsStepSize);
end

if ~isfield(simParameters, 'SchedulingType') || simParameters.SchedulingType == 0 % If no scheduling type is specified
    rbAssignmentPlotPeriodicity = numSlotsFrame; % Update RB assignment visualization every frame
    tickGranularity = 14;
    simParameters.PUSCHMappingType = 'A';
    simParameters.PDSCHMappingType = 'A';
else % Symbol based scheduling
    rbAssignmentPlotPeriodicity = 1; % Update RB assignment visualization every slot
    tickGranularity = 1;
    simParameters.PUSCHMappingType = 'B';
    simParameters.PDSCHMappingType = 'B';
end

```

gNB and UEs Setup

Create the gNB and UE objects, initialize the UL channel condition information for UEs at gNB, and set up the logical channels at gNB and UE. The helper classes hNRGNB.m and hNRUE.m create gNB and UE nodes respectively, containing the RLC and MAC layer. For MAC layer, hNRGNB.m uses the helper class hNRGNBMAC.m to implement the gNB MAC functionality and hNRUE.m uses hNRUEMAC.m to implement the UE MAC functionality. Schedulers are implemented in hNRSchedulerRoundRobin.m (Round robin), hNRSchedulerProportionalFair.m (Proportional fair), hNRSchedulerBestCQI.m (Best CQI). All the schedulers inherit from the base class hNRScheduler.m which contains the core scheduling functionality. For RLC layer, both hNRGNB.m and hNRUE.m use hNRUMEntity.m to implement the functionality of the RLC transmitter and receiver. Passthrough PHY layer for UE and gNB is implemented in hNRUEPassThroughPhy.m and hNRGNBPassThroughPhy.m, respectively.

```

simParameters.Position = simParameters.GNBPosition;
gNB = hNRGNB(simParameters); % Create gNB node
% Create and add scheduler
switch(simParameters.SchedulerStrategy)
    case 'RR' % Round robin scheduler
        scheduler = hNRSchedulerRoundRobin(simParameters);
    case 'PF' % Proportional fair scheduler
        scheduler = hNRSchedulerProportionalFair(simParameters);
    case 'BestCQI' % Best CQI scheduler
        scheduler = hNRSchedulerBestCQI(simParameters);
end
addScheduler(gNB, scheduler); % Add scheduler to gNB

gNB.PhyEntity = hNRGNBPassThroughPhy(simParameters); % Create passthrough PHY
configurePhy(gNB, simParameters);
setPhyInterface(gNB); % Set the interface to PHY layer

```

```

% Create the set of UE nodes
UEs = cell(simParameters.NumUEs, 1);
for ueIdx = 1:simParameters.NumUEs
    simParameters.Position = [simParameters.UEDistance(ueIdx) 0 0]; % Position of UE
    UEs{ueIdx} = hNRUE(simParameters, ueIdx);
    simParameters.InitialChannelQualityDL = simParameters.InitialChannelQualityUL;
    UEs{ueIdx}.PhyEntity = hNRUEPassThroughPhy(simParameters, ueIdx); % Add passthrough PHY
    configurePhy(UEs{ueIdx}, simParameters);
    setPhyInterface(UEs{ueIdx}); % Set the interface to PHY layer

% Initialize the UL CQI values at gNB
updateChannelQuality(gNB, simParameters.InitialChannelQualityUL(ueIdx, :), 1, ueIdx); % 1 for

% Setup logical channels
for lcIdx = 1:simParameters.NumLogicalChannels
    % Create RLC channel configuration structure
    rlcChannelConfigStruct.EntityType = simParameters.RLCCConfig.EntityDir(ueIdx, lcIdx);
    rlcChannelConfigStruct.LogicalChannelID = simParameters.LCHConfig.LCID(ueIdx, lcIdx);
    rlcChannelConfigStruct.SeqNumFieldLength = simParameters.RLCCConfig.SNFieldLength(ueIdx, lcIdx);
    rlcChannelConfigStruct.MaxTxBufferSDUs = simParameters.RLCCConfig.MaxTxBufferSDUs(ueIdx, lcIdx);
    rlcChannelConfigStruct.ReassemblyTimer = simParameters.RLCCConfig.ReassemblyTimer(ueIdx, lcIdx);
    rlcChannelConfigStruct.EntityType = simParameters.RLCCConfig.EntityDir(ueIdx, lcIdx);
    rlcChannelConfigStruct.LCGID = simParameters.LCHConfig.LCGID(ueIdx, lcIdx);
    rlcChannelConfigStruct.Priority = simParameters.LCHConfig.Priority(ueIdx, lcIdx);
    rlcChannelConfigStruct.PBR = simParameters.LCHConfig.PBR(ueIdx, lcIdx);
    rlcChannelConfigStruct.BSD = simParameters.LCHConfig.BSD(ueIdx, lcIdx);

% Setup logical channel at gNB for the UE
configureLogicalChannel(gNB, ueIdx, rlcChannelConfigStruct);
% Setup logical channel at UE
configureLogicalChannel(UEs{ueIdx}, ueIdx, rlcChannelConfigStruct);

% Add data traffic pattern generators to UE nodes. Application data
% is pumped to RLC layer as per the installed traffic pattern
packetSize = simParameters.PacketSizesUEs(ueIdx, lcIdx);
% Calculate the data rate (in kbps) of On-Off traffic pattern using
% packet size (in bytes) and packet interval (in ms)
dataRate = ceil(1000/simParameters.PacketPeriodicityUEs(ueIdx)) * packetSize * 8e-3;
% Limit the size of the generated application packet to the maximum
% RLC SDU size. The maximum supported RLC SDU size is 9000 bytes
if packetSize > simParameters.maxRLCSDULength
    packetSize = simParameters.maxRLCSDULength;
end
% Create an object for On-Off network traffic pattern and add it to the
% specified UE. This object generates the uplink (UL) data traffic on the UE
app = networkTrafficOnOff('PacketSize', packetSize, 'GeneratePacket', true, ...
    'OnTime', simParameters.NumFramesSim/100, 'OffTime', 0, 'DataRate', dataRate);
UEs{ueIdx}.addApplication(ueIdx, simParameters.LCHConfig.LCID(ueIdx, lcIdx), app);
end
end

% Setup the UL and DL packet distribution mechanism
simParameters.MaxReceivers = simParameters.NumUEs;
% Create DL packet distribution object
dlPacketDistributionObj = hNRPacketDistribution(simParameters, 0);
% Create UL packet distribution object

```

```
ulPacketDistributionObj = hNRPacketDistribution(simParameters, 1);
hNRSetUpPacketDistribution(simParameters, gNB, UEs, dlPacketDistributionObj, ulPacketDistributionObj);
```

Processing Loop

Simulation is run slot by slot. In each slot, these operations are executed:

- Run the MAC and PHY layers of gNB
- Run the MAC and PHY layers of UEs
- Layer specific logging and visualization
- Advance the timer for the nodes. Every 1 ms it also sends trigger to application and RLC layers. Application layer and RLC layer execute their scheduled operations based on 1 ms timer trigger.

```
% Create an object for MAC scheduling information visualization and logging (UL direction is represented as 1)
simSchedulingLogger = hNRSchedulingLogger(simParameters, 1);
```

```
% Create RLC statistics logging object
simRLCLogger = hNRRLCLogger(simParameters, lchInfo);
```

```
% Create metrics visualization object (UL direction is represented as 1)
visualizer = hNRMetricsVisualizer(simParameters, 'RLCLogger', simRLCLogger, 'LCHInfo', lchInfo,
```

```
% Run processing loop
```

```
slotNum = 0;
numSymbolsSim = numSlotsSim * 14; % Simulation time in units of symbol duration
```

```
% Execute all the symbols in the simulation
```

```
for symbolNum = 1 : tickGranularity : numSymbolsSim
    if mod(symbolNum - 1, 14) == 0
        slotNum = slotNum + 1;
    end
```

```
    % Run MAC and PHY of gNB
    run(gNB);
```

```
    % Run MAC and PHY layers of UEs
    for ueIdx = 1:simParameters.NumUEs
        run(UEs{ueIdx});
    end
```

```
    % RLC logging (only at slot boundary)
    if (simParameters.SchedulingType == 1 && mod(symbolNum, 14) == 0) || (simParameters.SchedulingType == 2 && mod(symbolNum, 14) == 0)
        logCellRLCStats(simRLCLogger, gNB, UEs); % Update RLC statistics logs
    end
```

```
    % MAC logging
    logCellSchedulingStats(simSchedulingLogger, symbolNum, gNB, UEs, 1); % For UL
```

```
    % Visualization
```

```
    % Check slot boundary
```

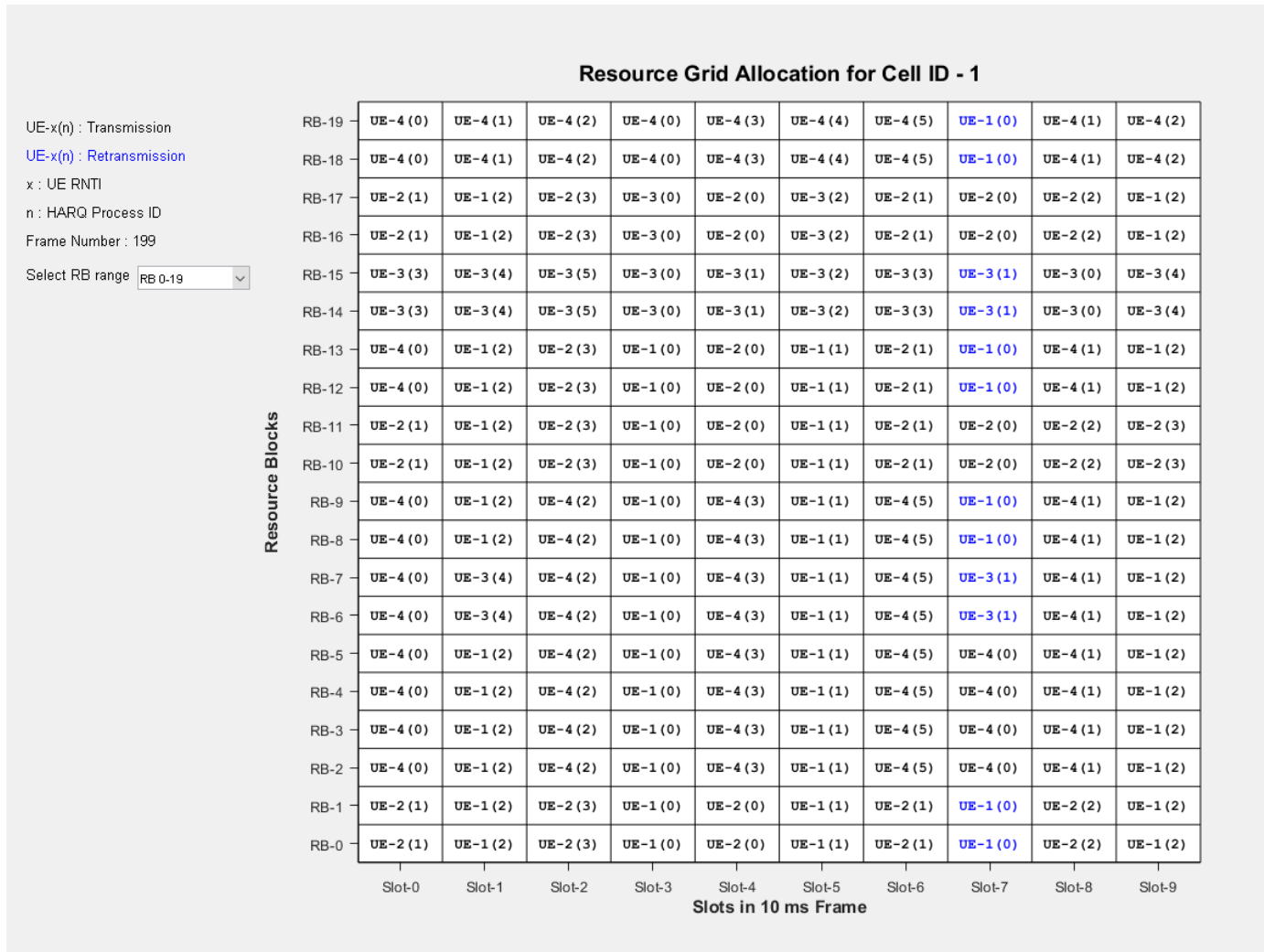
```
    if symbolNum > 1 && ((simParameters.SchedulingType == 1 && mod(symbolNum, 14) == 0) || (simParameters.SchedulingType == 2 && mod(symbolNum, 14) == 0))
        % RB assignment visualization (if enabled)
        if simParameters.RBVisualization
            if mod(slotNum, rbAssignmentPlotPeriodicity) == 0
                % Plot at slot boundary, if the update periodicity is reached
                plotRBGrids(simSchedulingLogger);
            end
        end
    end
```

```

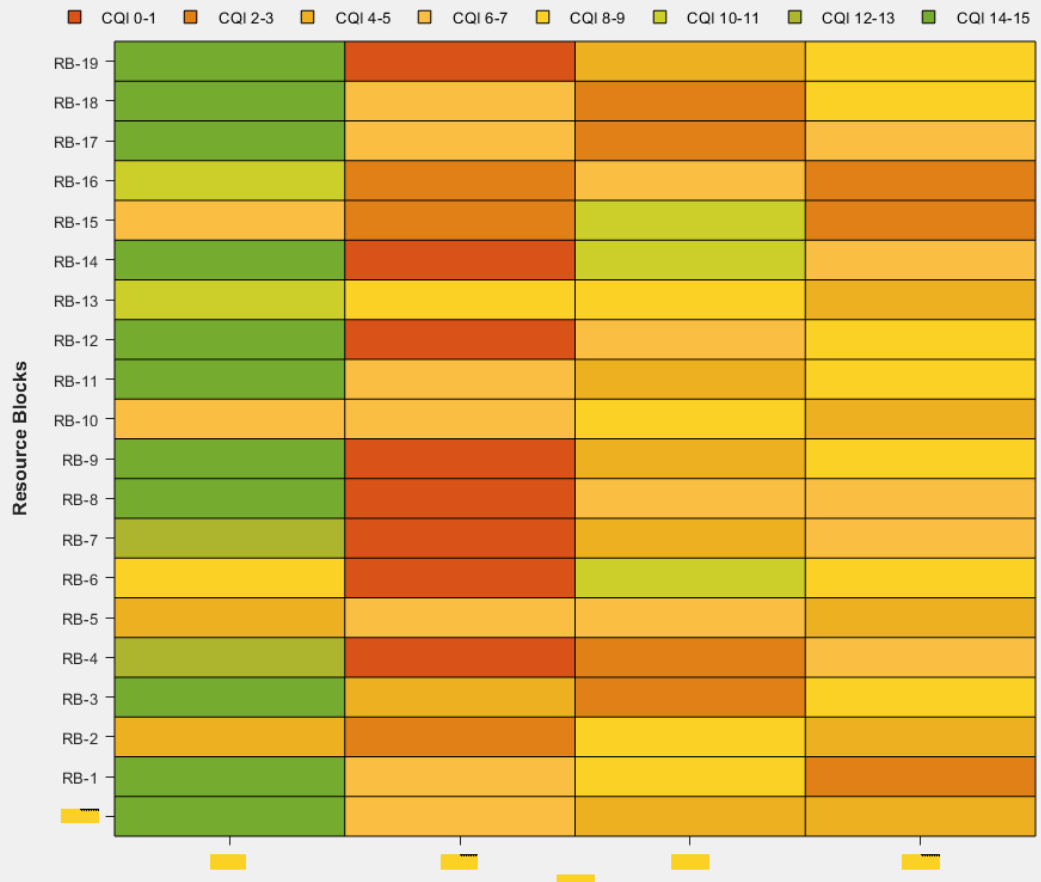
% CQI grid visualization (if enabled)
if simParameters.CQIVisualization
    if mod(slotNum, numSlotsFrame) == 0 % Plot at frame boundary
        plotCQIRBGrids(simSchedulingLogger);
    end
end
% If the update periodicity is reached, plot scheduler metrics and RLC metrics visualization
% at slot boundary
if mod(slotNum, simParameters.MetricsStepSize) == 0
    plotMetrics(visualizer, slotNum);
end
end

% Advance timer ticks for gNB and UEs by 14 symbols
advanceTimer(gNB, tickGranularity);
for ueIdx = 1:simParameters.NumUEs
    advanceTimer(UEs{ueIdx}, tickGranularity);
end
end
end

```

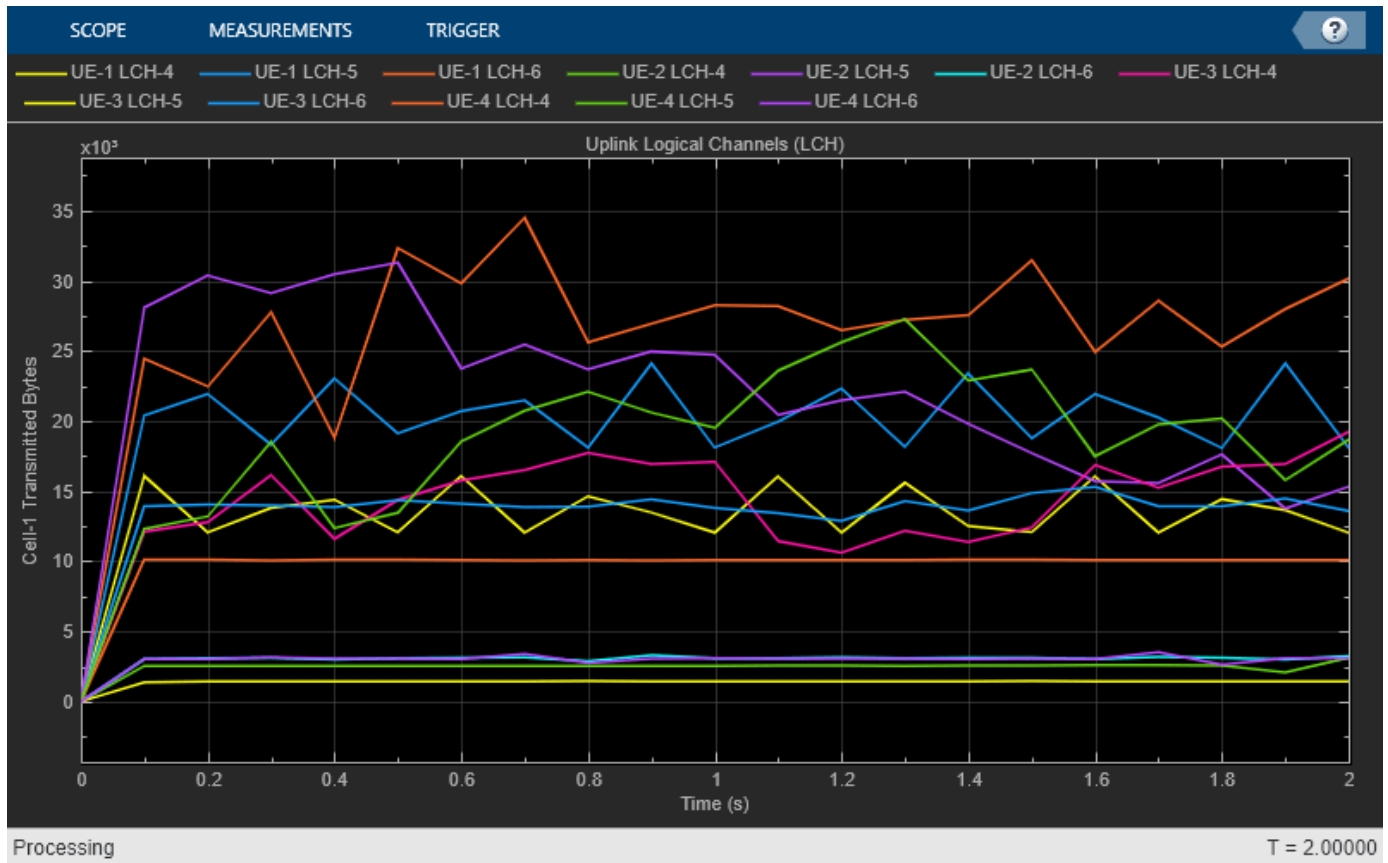


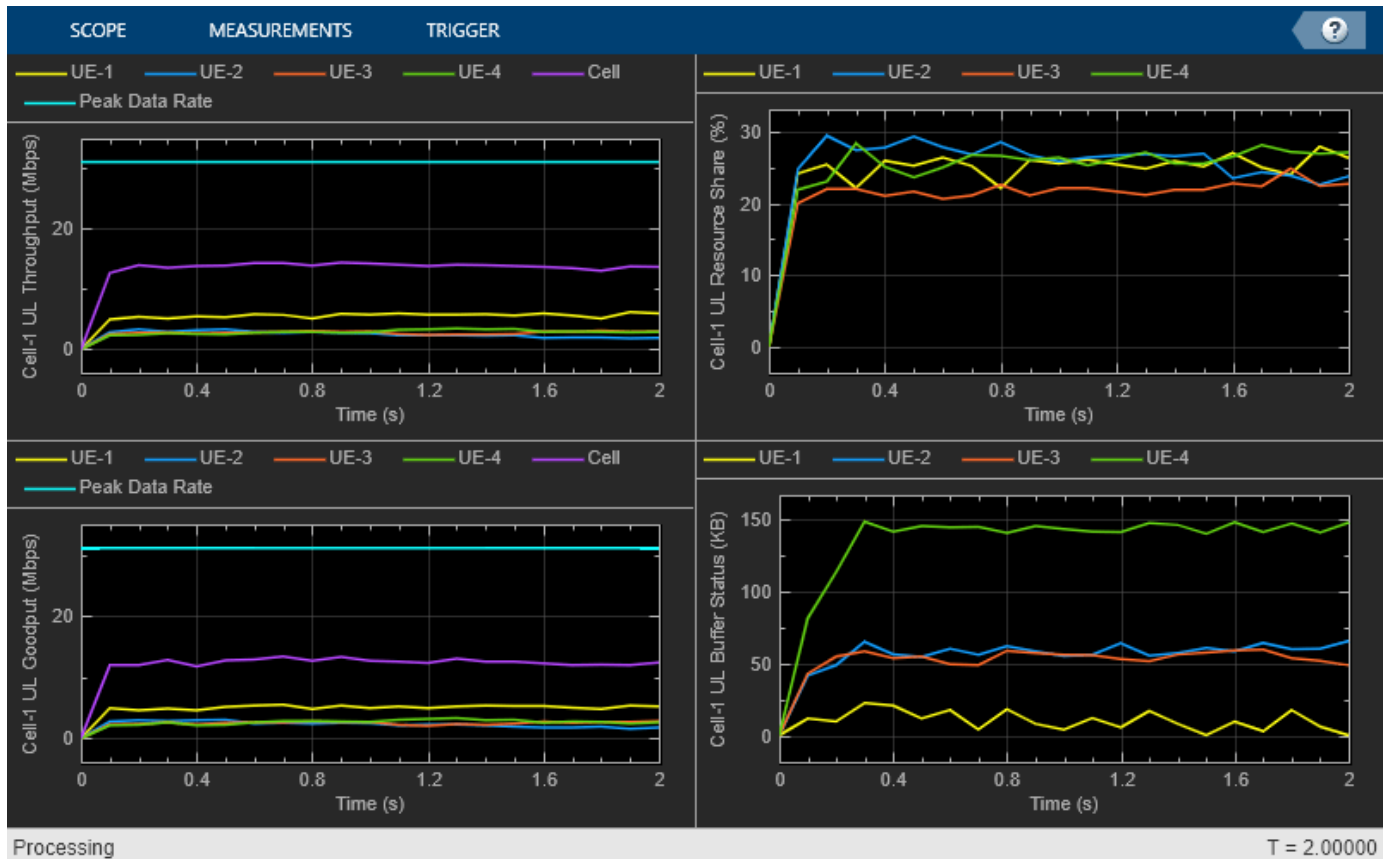
Channel Quality Visualization for Cell ID - 1



Frame Number : 199

Select RB range





Simulation Visualization

The four types of run-time visualization shown are:

- *Display of CQI values for UEs over the PUSCH bandwidth:* For details, see the 'Channel Quality Visualization' figure for more details.
- *Display of resource grid assignment to UEs:* The 2-D time-frequency grid updates every 10 ms (frame length) and shows the RB allocation to the UEs in the previous frame. The HARQ process for the PUSCH assignments is also shown alongside with the RNTI of the UEs. New transmissions are shown in black and retransmissions are shown in blue using the HARQ process ID of each UE, a retransmission assignment can be mapped to its previously failed transmission. For details, see the 'Resource Grid Allocation' figure for more details.
- *Display of UL scheduling metrics plots:* The 'Uplink Scheduler Performance Metrics' figure includes plots of the: UL throughput (per UE and cell), UL goodput (per UE and cell), resource share percentage among UEs (out of the total UL resources) to convey the fairness of scheduling, and pending UL buffer status of the UEs to show whether UEs are getting sufficient resources. The maximum achievable data rate value for UL throughput is shown with a dashed line in throughput and goodput plots. The performance metrics plots update for every `metricsStepSize` slots.
- *Display of RLC metrics plot:* The 'RLC Metrics Visualization' figure represents the number of bytes transmitted by RLC layer (per logical channel) for each UE. The RLC metrics plot updates for every `metricsStepSize` slots.

Simulation Logs

The parameters used for the simulation and simulation logs are saved in MAT files for post-simulation analysis and visualization. The simulation parameters are saved in a MAT file with the filename as the value of configuration parameter `simParameters.ParametersLogFile`. The per time step logs, scheduling assignment logs and RLC logs are saved in MAT file `simParameters.SimulationLogFile`. After the simulation, open the file to load `ULTimeStepLogs`, `SchedulingAssignmentLogs` and `RLCLogs` in the workspace.

Time step logs: The table shows a sample time step entry. Each row of the table represents a slot.

Timestamp	Frame	Slot	RBG Allocation Bitmap	MCS	HARQ Process	NDI	Tx Type	CQI for UEs	HARQ NDI Status	Throughput Bytes	Goodput Bytes	Buffer Status of UEs
50	5	0	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....
51	5	1	[0 0 1 1 0 1 0 1 0 1 0 0 0] [1 1 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 1 0 0] [0 0 0 0 1 0 1 0 1 0 0 1 1] [0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0]	[10 12 8 -1]	[0 3 6 -1]	[0 0 1 -1]	['newTx', 'newTx', 'reTx', 'noTx']	[5 9 9 8 7 8 9 9 9 11 12] [5 7 3 4 9 5 9 7 9 10 15] [3 9 9 9 9 4 9 9 9 13] [9 7 7 3 7 8 5 8 8 15 9]	[1 0 0 1 0 1 0 . .] [1 1 0 1 0 1 0 . .] [1 0 0 1 0 1 1 . .] [1 0 0 1 0 1 0 . .]	[46 54 38 0]	[46 54 0 0]	[299480 135671 77567 137070]
52	5	2	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....

Each row of the table represents a slot and contains the following information:

- *Timestamp*: Time (in milliseconds) since the start of simulation.
- *Frame*: Frame number.
- *Slot*: Slot number in the frame.
- *RBG Allocation Bitmap*: N -by- P bitmap matrix, where N is the number of UEs and P is the number of RBGs. If an RBG is assigned to a particular UE, the corresponding bit is set to 1. For example, [0 0 1 1 0 1 0 1 0 1 0 0 0; 1 1 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 1 0 0; 0 0 0 0 1 0 1 0 1 0 0 1 1; 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0] means that the UL bandwidth has 13 RBGs and UE-1 is assigned RBG indices: 2, 3, 5, 7 and 9; UE-2 is assigned the RBG indices 0, 1 and 10; UE-3 is assigned the RBG indices 4, 6, 8, 11 and 12 and UE-4 is not assigned any RBG.
- *MCS*: Row vector of length N , where N is the number of UEs. Each value corresponds to the modulation and coding scheme (MCS) index for the PUSCH transmission. For example, [10 12 8 -1] means that only UE-1, UE-2, and UE-3 are assigned UL resources for this slot and use MCS values 10, 12, and 8, respectively.
- *HARQ Process*: Row vector of length N , where N is the number of UEs. The value is the HARQ process ID used by UE for the PUSCH transmission. For example, [0 3 6 -1] means that only UE-1, UE-2, and UE-3 are assigned UL resources for this slot and use the HARQ process IDs 0, 3, and 6, respectively.
- *NDI*: Row vector of length N , where N is the number of UEs. The value is the NDI flag value in the UL assignment for PUSCH transmission. For example, [0 0 1 -1] means that only UE-1, UE-2, and UE-3 are assigned UL resources for this slot and use the NDI flag values (which determine whether a new transmission or a retransmission is used) 0, 0, and 1, respectively.
- *Tx Type*: Tx Type specifies the transmission type (new transmission or retransmission). Row vector of length N , where N is the number of UEs. Possible values are either 'newTx', 'reTx', or 'noTx'. 'noTx' means that the UE is not allocated PUSCH resources. For example, ['newTx' 'newTx' 'reTx' 'noTx'] means that only UE-1, UE-2, and UE-3 are assigned UL resources for this slot. UE-1 and UE-2 transmit a new packet from the specified HARQ process, while UE-3 retransmits the packet in the buffer of the specified HARQ process.
- *CQI for UEs*: N -by- P matrix, where N is the number of UEs and P is the number of RBs in the bandwidth. A matrix element at position (i, j) corresponds to the UL CQI value for UE with RNTI i at RB j .

- **HARQ NDI Status:** N -by- P matrix, where N is the number of UEs and P is the number of HARQ processes on UEs. A matrix element at position (i, j) is the last received NDI flag at UE i for HARQ process ID j . For new transmissions, this value and the NDI flag in the PUSCH assignment must toggle. For example, in slot 1 of frame 5 described in the scheduling log, UE-1 uses the HARQ ID 0 and the last NDI flag value for HARQ ID 0 at UE-1 is 1. To indicate a new transmission, the NDI flag values changes to 0 in the PUSCH assignment.
- **Throughput Bytes:** Row vector of length N , where N is the number of UEs. The values represent MAC bytes transmitted by UEs in this slot.
- **Goodput Bytes:** Row vector of length N , where N is the number of UEs. The values represent new transmission MAC bytes transmitted by UEs in this slot.
- **Buffer Status of UEs:** Row vector of length N , where N is the number of UEs. The values represent the amount of pending buffers at UEs.

Scheduling assignment logs: Information of all the scheduling assignments and related information is logged in this file. The table shows sample log entries.

'RNTI'	'Frame'	'Slot'	'Grant type'	'RBG Allocation Map'	'Start Sym'	'Num Sym'	'MCS'	'HARQ ID'	'NDI Flag'	'RV'	'Tx Type'	'Feedback Slot Offset (DL grants only)'	'CQI on RBs'
1	0	9	'UL'	'[1 1 1 1 1 1 1 0 0 0 0 0]'	0	14	16	0	1	0	'newTx'	'NA'	'[13 14 2 14 10 2 5 9 15 15 3 15 15 8 13 3 7 14 12 15 10 1 13 15 11]'
2	0	9	'UL'	'[0 0 0 0 0 0 0 1 0 1 1 1]'	0	14	12	0	1	0	'newTx'	'NA'	'[10 9 5 8 3 9 1 4 1 2 10 9 4 12 1 6 5 10 10 3 6 6 8 9 10]'
3	0	9	'UL'	'[0 0 0 0 0 0 0 1 0 0 0 0]'	0	14	15	0	1	0	'newTx'	'NA'	'[3 7 7 2 2 5 10 4 6 3 8 3 6 7 9 10 6 2 2 3 9 3 10]'
4	0	9	'UL'	'[0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 1 0 0 0]'	0	14	15	0	1	0	'newTx'	'NA'	'[4 2 3 7 5 4 9 6 6 10 3 8 8 4 6 1 1 6 8 10 2 6 5 1 4]'
2	1	0	'UL'	'[0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 1 1]'	0	14	15	1	1	0	'newTx'	'NA'	'[10 9 5 8 3 9 1 4 1 2 10 9 4 12 1 6 5 10 10 3 6 6 8 9 10]'
3	1	0	'UL'	'[1 0 0 1 0 1 1 1 1 0 1 0]'	0	14	9	1	1	0	'newTx'	'NA'	'[3 7 7 2 2 5 10 4 6 3 8 3 6 7 9 10 6 2 2 3 9 3 10]'
4	1	0	'UL'	'[0 1 1 0 1 0 0 0 0 1 0 0]'	0	14	10	1	1	0	'newTx'	'NA'	'[4 2 3 7 5 4 9 6 6 10 3 8 8 4 6 1 1 6 8 10 2 6 5 1 4]'

RLC logs: Each row in the RLC logs represents a slot and contains this information:

- **Timestamp:** Timestamp (in milliseconds)
- **Frame:** Frame number.
- **Slot:** Slot number in the frame.
- **UE RLC statistics:** N -by- P cell, where N is the product of the number of UEs and the number of logical channels, and P is the number of statistics collected. Each row represents statistics of a logical channel in a UE. The last row contains the cumulative RLC statistics of the entire simulation.
- **gNB RLC statistics:** N -by- P cell, where N is the product of the number of UEs and the number of logical channels, and P is the number of statistics collected. Each row represents statistics of a logical channel of a UE at gNB. The last row contains the cumulative RLC statistics of the entire simulation.

Each row of the UE and gNB RLC statistics table represents a logical channel of a UE and contains:

- **RNTI:** Radio network temporary identifier of a UE.
- **LCID:** Logical channel identifier.
- **TxDataPDU:** Number of data PDUs sent by RLC to MAC layer.
- **TxDataBytes:** Number of data bytes sent by RLC to MAC layer.
- **ReTxDataPDU:** Number of data PDUs retransmitted by RLC to MAC layer.
- **ReTxDataBytes:** Number of data bytes retransmitted by RLC to MAC layer.
- **TxControlPDU:** Number of control PDUs sent by RLC to MAC layer.
- **TxControlBytes:** Number of control bytes sent by RLC to MAC layer.
- **TxPacketsDropped:** Number of RLC SDUs dropped by RLC due to Tx buffer overflow.
- **TxBytesDropped:** Number of bytes dropped by RLC due to Tx buffer overflow.

- *TimerPollRetransmitTimedOut*: Number of times the poll retransmit timer expired.
- *RxDataPDU*: Number of data PDUs received by RLC from MAC layer.
- *RxDataBytes*: Number of data bytes received by RLC from MAC layer.
- *RxDataPDUDropped*: Number of received data PDUs from MAC which are dropped by RLC layer.
- *RxDataBytesDropped*: Number of received data bytes from MAC which are dropped by RLC layer.
- *RxDataPDUDuplicate*: Number of duplicate PDUs received by RLC from MAC layer.
- *RxDataBytesDuplicate*: Number of duplicate data bytes received by RLC from MAC layer.
- *RxControlPDU*: Number of control PDUs received by RLC from MAC layer.
- *RxControlBytes*: Number of control bytes received by RLC from MAC layer.
- *TimerReassemblyTimedOut*: Number of times the reassembly timer expired.
- *TimerStatusProhibitTimedOut*: Number of times the status prohibit timer expired.

You can run the script `NRPostSimVisualization` to get a post simulation visualization of logs. In the post simulation script, you are provided with variable `isLogReplay`, which provides these options to visualize 'Resource Grid Allocation' and 'Channel Quality Visualization' figures.

- Set `isLogReplay` to `true` for a replay of the simulation logs.
- Set `isLogReplay` to `false` to analyze the simulation logs and input the frame number to visualize the scheduling information of the particular frame

```
% Read the logs and save them in MAT-files
simulationLogs = cell(1, 1);
simulationLogs{1} = struct('ULTimeStepLogs',[], 'SchedulingAssignmentLogs',[] , 'RLCLogs',[]);
[~, simulationLogs{1}.ULTimeStepLogs] = getSchedulingLogs(simSchedulingLogger); % UL time step s
simulationLogs{1}.SchedulingAssignmentLogs = getGrantLogs(simSchedulingLogger); % Scheduling ass
simulationLogs{1}.RLCLogs = getRLCLogs(simRLCLogger); % RLC statistics logs
save(simParameters.SimulationLogFile, 'simulationLogs'); % Save simulation logs in a MAT-file
save(simParameters.ParametersLogFile, 'simParameters'); % Save simulation parameters in a MAT-fi
```

Appendix

The example uses these helper functions and classes:

- `hWirelessNode.m`: Wireless node base class
- `hNRNode.m`: NR node base class for both gNB and UE
- `hNRGNB.m`: gNB node functionality
- `hNRUE.m`: UE node functionality
- `helperApplication.m`: Application layer functionality
- `hNRRLCEntity.m`: Base class for RLC UM and AM entities
- `hNRUMEntity.m`: RLC UM functionality
- `hNRRLCDataPDUInfo.m`: Creates RLC PDU information object
- `hNRRLCDataReassembly.m`: Create an RLC SDU reassembly information object
- `hNRRLCBufferStatus.m`: Generates RLC buffer status information object
- `hNRMAC.m`: NR MAC base class functionality
- `hNRGNBMAC.m`: gNB MAC functionality
- `hNRUEMAC.m`: UE MAC functionality

- hNRScheduler.m: Core MAC scheduler functionality
- hNRSchedulerBestCQI.m: Implements best CQI scheduling strategy
- hNRSchedulerProportionalFair.m: Implements proportional fair scheduling strategy
- hNRSchedulerRoundRobin.m: Implements round robin scheduling strategy
- hNRMACBSR.m: Generates buffer status report
- hNRMACBSRParser.m: Parses buffer status report
- hNRMACSubPDU.m: Generates MAC subPDU
- hNRMACPaddingSubPDU.m: Generates MAC subPDU with padding
- hNRMACMultiplex.m: Generates MAC PDU
- hNRMACPDUParser.m: Parses MAC PDU
- hNewHARQProcesses.m: Creates new HARQ process
- hUpdateHARQProcess.m: Updates HARQ process
- hNRPhyInterface.m: PHY layer interface class
- hNRGNBPassthroughPhy.m: gNB passthrough PHY layer
- hNRUEPassthroughPhy.m: UE passthrough PHY layer
- hNRPUSCHInfo.m: PUSCH information structure passed by MAC to PHY layer
- hNRRxIndicationInfo.m: Information structure passed by PHY layer to MAC along with MAC PDU
- hNRPacketDistribution.m: Creates packet distribution object
- hNRUplinkGrantFormat.m: UL assignment format
- hNRRLCLogger.m: Implements RLC statistics logging and visualization functionality
- hNRSchedulingLogger.m: Implements scheduling information logging and visualization functionality
- hNRULSchedulingValidateConfig.m: Validates simulation configuration
- hNRSetUpPacketDistribution.m: Set up packet distribution functionality
- hNRPacketWriter.m: Captures MAC packets
- hNRPacketInfo.m: Metadata format for capturing MAC packets
- hNRMetricsVisualizer.m: Implements metrics visualization functionality
- NRPostSimVisualization.m: Post simulation visualization script

References

- [1] 3GPP TS 38.214. "NR; Physical layer procedures for data." *3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Radio Access Network.*
- [2] 3GPP TS 38.321. "NR; Medium Access Control (MAC) protocol specification." *3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Radio Access Network.*
- [3] 3GPP TS 38.322. "NR; Radio Link Control (RLC) protocol specification." *3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Radio Access Network.*

See Also

Related Examples

- “NR FDD Scheduling Performance Evaluation” on page 5-55

NR FDD Scheduling Performance Evaluation

This example models scheduling of downlink (DL) and uplink (UL) resources and measures network performance in frequency division duplexing (FDD) mode. The example includes three different scheduling strategies and also shows how to integrate a custom scheduler. To evaluate the network performance with different data traffic patterns, the example also models the radio link control layer in unacknowledged mode (RLC-UM) with logical channel prioritization (LCP) procedure. To model PHY, a probability-based passthrough physical (PHY) layer without any signal processing is used. You can switch to the 5G Toolbox™ PHY layer for high fidelity modeling. The performance of the scheduling strategy is evaluated in terms of the achieved throughput and fairness in resource sharing.

Introduction

This example shows how a scheduling strategy (controlled by the gNB) assigns UL and DL resources among the UEs. The example considers the following operations within the gNB and UEs that facilitate UL and DL transmissions and receptions.

	Operations
gNB	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Run the scheduling algorithm to assign uplink and downlink resources • Send the uplink and downlink assignments to the UEs • Receive the PUSCH transmissions from the UEs • Adhere to the downlink assignments for PDSCH transmission • Receive the feedback of PDSCHs from the UEs
UEs	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Send the pending buffer status report to the gNB • Receive the uplink and downlink assignments from the gNB • Adhere to the received uplink assignments from the gNB for PUSCH transmission • Receive the PDSCH transmissions from the gNB • Send feedback for the received PDSCHs

The complete PUSCH or PDSCH packet is transmitted in the first symbol of its allocated symbol set. Receiver processes the packet in the symbol just after the last symbol in the allocated symbol set.

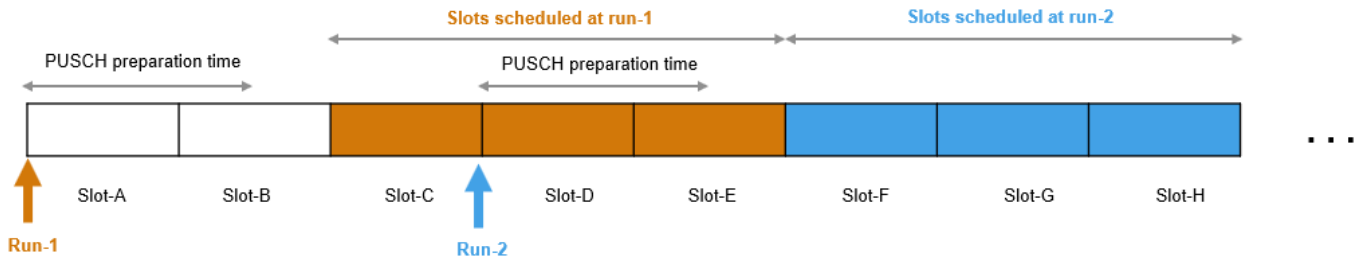
The schedulers (UL and DL) run every p slots to assign the UL and DL resources, where p is the configured periodicity of the scheduler. In each run, the number of slots scheduled is equal to the periodicity of scheduler run, p .

UL Scheduler

The first slot, among the p slots to be scheduled in a run, is the nearest upcoming slot which satisfies the PUSCH preparation time capability of UEs. For example, the figure shows the way scheduler selects the slots during two consecutive runs. It assumes scheduler periodicity (p) as 3 slots. Hence, the scheduler runs after every 3 slots, and schedules resources for 3 slots. PUSCH preparation time capability for all the UEs is assumed as greater than 1 slot (14 symbols) but less than 2 slots (28 symbols).

- Run-1: When scheduler runs at the start of Slot-A, it schedules 3 slots starting from Slot-C, because for Slot-A and Slot-B the UEs do not get enough PUSCH preparation time (UEs gets a

time of 0 symbols at start of Slot-A and 14 symbols at start of Slot-B). For Slot-C, UEs get 28 symbols for PUSCH preparation and this satisfies the PUSCH preparation time capability. Hence, Slot-C, D, and E are scheduled in this run.

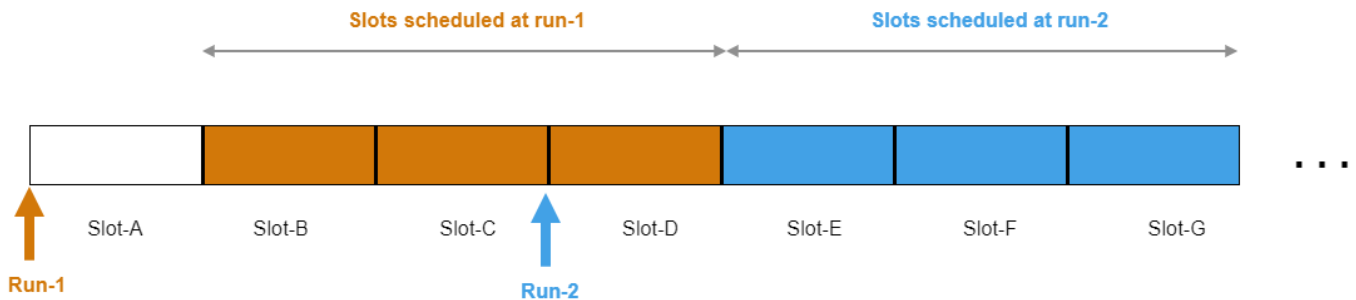


- Run-2: When scheduler runs at the start of Slot-D, it schedules the next 3 contiguous slots starting from Slot-F (Slot-F, G, and H).

DL Scheduler

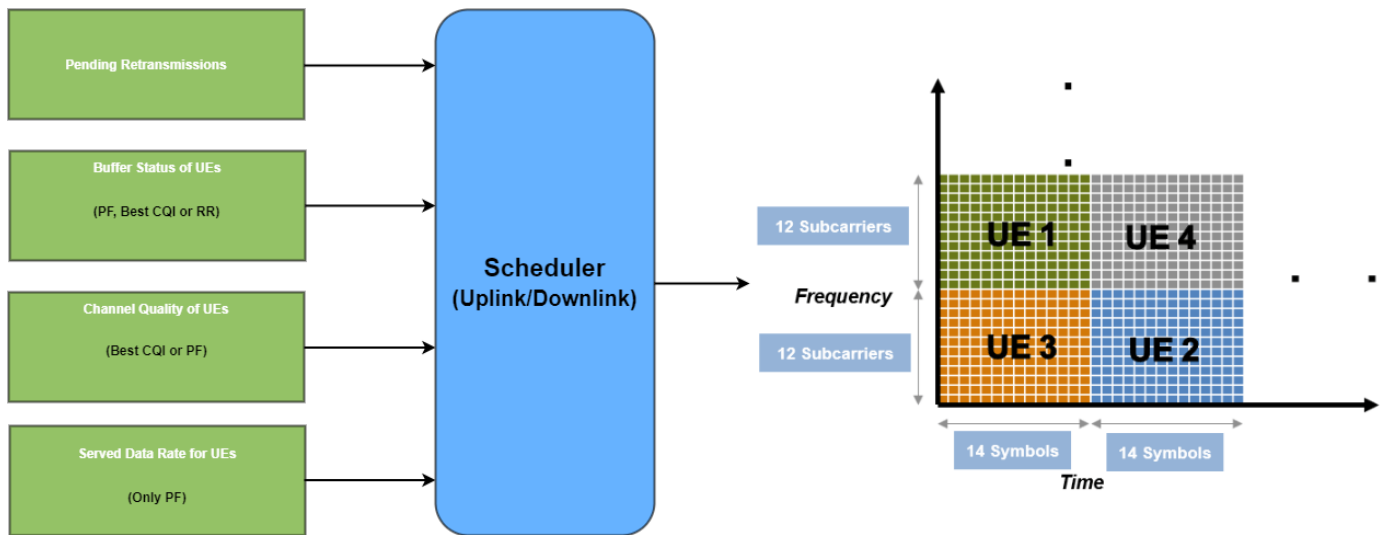
The first slot, among the p slots to be scheduled in a run, is the immediate next slot.

- Run-1: When scheduler runs at the start of Slot-A, it schedules 3 contiguous slots Slot-B, C, and D.



- Run-2: When scheduler runs at the start of Slot-D, it schedules 3 contiguous slots Slot-E, F, and G.

You can choose any one of the implemented scheduling strategies: proportional fair (PF), best CQI, or round robin (RR). The various supported inputs to the UL scheduler are listed along with the scheduling strategies that consider them.



The control packets required are assumed to be sent out of band without the need of resources for transmission. The control packets are UL assignment, DL assignment, buffer status report (BSR), and PDSCH feedback.

The demodulation reference signal (DM-RS) is not modeled in this example. However, one symbol is kept unused for it in the PUSCH and PDSCH assignments.

This example models:

- Slot based and symbol based DL and UL scheduling.
- Noncontiguous allocation of frequency-domain resources in terms of resource block groups (RBGs).
- Configurable subcarrier spacing resulting in different slot durations.
- Asynchronous adaptive hybrid automatic repeat request (HARQ) mechanism in UL and DL.
- Multiple logical channels to support different kind of applications.
- Logical channel prioritization (LCP) to distribute the received assignment among logical channels per UE for UL and DL.

Scenario Configuration

Set the parameters for simulation.

```

rng('default'); % Reset the random number generator
simParameters = []; % Clear the simulation parameters
simParameters.NumFramesSim = 100; % Simulation time in terms of number of 10 ms frames
simParameters.SchedulingType = 0; % Set the value to 0 (slot based scheduling) or 1 (symbol based)
% Number of UEs in the simulation. UEs are assumed to have sequential radio
% network temporary identifiers (RNTIs) from 1 to NumUEs. If you change the
% number of UEs, ensure that the length of simParameters.UEDistance is equal to NumUEs
simParameters.NumUEs = 4;
simParameters.UEDistance = [100 250 700 750]; % Distance of UEs from gNB (in meters)

% Set the channel bandwidth to 30 MHz and subcarrier spacing (SCS) to 15
% kHz as defined in 3GPP TS 38.104 Section 5.3.2. The complete UL and
% DL bandwidth is assumed to be allotted for PUSCH and PDSCH. The

```

```

% UL and DL carriers are assumed to have symmetric channel
% bandwidth
simParameters.DLBandwidth = 30e6; % Hz
simParameters.ULBandwidth = 30e6; % Hz
simParameters.NumRBs = 160;
simParameters.SCS = 15; % kHz
simParameters.DLCarrierFreq = 2.635e9; % Hz
simParameters.ULCarrierFreq = 2.515e9; % Hz

% Configure parameters to update UL channel quality at gNB and DL
% channel quality at gNB and UE. Channel conditions are periodically
% improved or deteriorated by CQIDelta every channelUpdatePeriodicity
% seconds for all RBs of a UE. Whether channel conditions for a particular
% UE improve or deteriorate is randomly determined
% RBCQI = RBCQI +/- CQIDelta
simParameters.ChannelUpdatePeriodicity = 0.2; % In sec
simParameters.CQIDelta = 2;
% Mapping between distance from gNB (first column in meters) and maximum
% achievable UL CQI value (second column). For example, if a UE is 700
% meters away from the gNB, it can achieve a maximum CQI value of 10 as the
% distance falls within the [501, 800] meters range, as per the mapping.
% Set the distance in increasing order and the maximum achievable CQI value in
% decreasing order
simParameters.CQIvsDistance = [
    200 15;
    500 12;
    800 10;
    1000 8;
    1200 7];

simParameters.BSRPeriodicity = 5; % In ms
simParameters.EnableHARQ = true; % Flag to enable or disable HARQ. If disabled, there are no retransmissions
simParameters.NumHARQ = 16; % Number of HARQ processes

% Set the scheduler run periodicity in terms of number of slots. Value must
% be less than the number of slots in a 10 ms frame
simParameters.SchedulerPeriodicity = 4;
simParameters.SchedulerStrategy = 'PF'; % Supported scheduling strategies: 'PF', 'RR' and 'BestCQI'
% Moving average parameter within the range [0, 1] to calculate average
% data rate for a UE in UL and DL directions. This value is used in
% the PF scheduling strategy. Parameter value closer to 1 implies more
% weight on the instantaneous data rate. Parameter value closer to 0
% implies more weight on the past data rate
% AverageDataRate = ((1 - MovingAvgDataRateWeight) * PastDataRate) + (MovingAvgDataRateWeight * InstantaneousDataRate)
simParameters.MovingAvgDataRateWeight = 0.5;
% gNB ensures that PUSCH assignment is received at UEs PUSCHPrepTime ahead
% of the transmission time
simParameters.PUSCHPrepTime = 200; % In microseconds
% Maximum RBs allotted to a UE in a slot for the UL and DL
% transmission (limit is applicable for new PUSCH and PDSCH assignments and
% not for the retransmissions)
simParameters.RBAllocationLimitUL = 100; % For PUSCH
simParameters.RBAllocationLimitDL = 100; % For PDSCH

```

Load the logical channel configuration table. Each row in the table represents one logical channel and has these properties as columns.

- RNTI - Radio network temporary identifier of the UE.
- LogicalChannelID - Logical channel identifier.
- LCGID - Logical channel group identifier.
- SeqNumFieldLength - Defines the sequence number field length. It takes either 6 or 12.
- MaxTxBufferSDUs - Maximum Tx buffer size (in terms of number of packets).
- ReassemblyTimer - Defines the reassembly timer (in ms).
- EntityType - Defines the RLC entity type. It takes values 0, 1, and 2, which indicates whether the RLC UM entity is unidirectional DL, unidirectional UL, or bidirectional UM, respectively.
- Priority - Priority of the logical channel.
- PBR - Prioritized bit rate (in kilo bytes per second).
- BSD - Bucket size duration (in ms).

```
load('NRFDDRLCChannelConfig.mat')
simParameters.RLCChannelConfig = RLCChannelConfig;
```

Load the application configuration table containing these fields. Each row in the table represents one application and has these properties as columns.

- PacketInterval - Interval between two consecutive packet generations (in ms).
- PacketSize - Size of the packet (in bytes).
- HostDevice - Defines the device (UE or gNB) on which the application is installed with the specified configuration. The device takes values 0, 1, or 2. The values indicate the application is configured on gNB side, UE side, or both UE and gNB respectively.
- RNTI - Radio network temporary identifier of a UE. This identifies the UE for which the application is installed.
- LCID - Logical channel identifier.

```
load('NRFDDAppConfig.mat');
simParameters.AppConfig = AppConfig;
```

Logging and Visualization Configuration

```
% The parameters CQIVisualization and RBVisualization control the display
% of these visualizations: (i) CQI visualization of RBs (ii) RB assignment
% visualization. By default, these plots are disabled. You can enable them
% by setting to 'true'
simParameters.CQIVisualization = false;
simParameters.RBVisualization = false;
% The output metrics plots are updated periodically NumMetricsSteps times within the
% simulation duration
simParameters.NumMetricsSteps = 20;
% MAT-files to write the logs into. They are used for post simulation analysis and visualization
simParameters.ParametersLogFile = 'simParameters'; % For logging the simulation parameters
simParameters.SimulationLogFile = 'simulationLogs'; % For logging the simulation logs

% Validate the simulation configuration
hNRSchedulingFDDValidateConfig(simParameters);
```

Derived Parameters

Based on the primary configuration parameters, compute the derived parameters. Additionally, set some example specific constants.

```

simParameters.DuplexMode = 0; % FDD
% Size of sub-band for CQI reporting in terms of number of RBs (Only used
% when 5G Toolbox™ PHY layer processing is enabled)
simParameters.SubbandSize = 16;
simParameters.NumCells = 1; % Number of cells
simParameters.NCellID = 1; % Physical cell ID
simParameters.GNBPosition = [0 0 0]; % Position of gNB in (x,y,z) coordinates
% Slot duration for the selected SCS and number of slots in a 10 ms frame
slotDuration = 1/(simParameters.SCS/15); % In ms
numSlotsFrame = 10/slotDuration; % Number of slots in a 10 ms frame
numSlotsSim = simParameters.NumFramesSim * numSlotsFrame; % Number of slots in the simulation

% Calculate maximum achievable CQI value for the UEs based on their distance from
% the gNB
maxUECQIs = zeros(simParameters.NumUEs, 1); % To store the maximum achievable CQI value for UEs
for ueIdx = 1:simParameters.NumUEs
    % Based on the distance of the UE from gNB, find matching row in
    % CQIvsDistance mapping
    matchingRowIndex = find(simParameters.CQIvsDistance(:, 1) > simParameters.UEDistance(ueIdx));
    if isempty(matchingRowIndex)
        maxUECQIs(ueIdx) = simParameters.CQIvsDistance(end, 2);
    else
        maxUECQIs(ueIdx) = simParameters.CQIvsDistance(matchingRowIndex(1), 2);
    end
end

% Interval at which metrics visualization updates in terms of number of
% slots. As one slot is the finest time-granularity of the simulation, make
% sure that MetricsStepSize is an integer
simParameters.MetricsStepSize = ceil(numSlotsSim / simParameters.NumMetricsSteps);
if mod(numSlotsSim, simParameters.NumMetricsSteps) ~= 0
    % Update the NumMetricsSteps parameter if NumSlotsSim is not
    % completely divisible by it
    simParameters.NumMetricsSteps = floor(numSlotsSim / simParameters.MetricsStepSize);
end

% Define initial UL and DL channel quality as an N-by-P matrix,
% where 'N' is the number of UEs and 'P' is the number of RBs in the carrier
% bandwidth. The initial value of CQI for each RB, for each UE, is given
% randomly and is limited by the maximum achievable CQI value corresponding
% to the distance of the UE from gNB
simParameters.InitialChannelQualityUL = zeros(simParameters.NumUEs, simParameters.NumRBs); % To
simParameters.InitialChannelQualityDL = zeros(simParameters.NumUEs, simParameters.NumRBs); % To
for ueIdx = 1:simParameters.NumUEs
    % Assign random CQI values for the RBs, limited by the maximum achievable CQI value
    simParameters.InitialChannelQualityUL(ueIdx, :) = randi([1 maxUECQIs(ueIdx)], 1, simParameters.NumRBs);
    % Initially, DL and UL CQI values are assumed to be equal
    simParameters.InitialChannelQualityDL(ueIdx, :) = simParameters.InitialChannelQualityUL(ueIdx, :);
end

% To store the logical channel information associated per UE
lchInfo = repmat(struct('RNTI', [], 'LCID', [], 'EntityDir', []), [simParameters.NumUEs 1]);
for ueIdx = 1:simParameters.NumUEs
    lchInfo(ueIdx).RNTI = ueIdx;
    lchInfo(ueIdx).LCID = simParameters.RLCChannelConfig.LogicalChannelID(simParameters.AppConfig);
    lchInfo(ueIdx).EntityDir = simParameters.RLCChannelConfig.EntityType(simParameters.AppConfig);
end

```

```

if ~isfield(simParameters, 'SchedulingType') || simParameters.SchedulingType == 0 % If no scheduling
    rbAssignmentPlotPeriodicity = numSlotsFrame; % Update RB assignment visualization every frame
    tickGranularity = 14;
    simParameters.PUSCHMappingType = 'A';
    simParameters.PDSCHMappingType = 'A';
else % Symbol based scheduling
    rbAssignmentPlotPeriodicity = 1; % Update RB assignment visualization every slot
    tickGranularity = 1;
    simParameters.PUSCHMappingType = 'B';
    simParameters.PDSCHMappingType = 'B';
end

```

gNB and UEs Setup

Create the gNB and UE objects, initialize the channel quality information for UEs, and set up the logical channel at gNB and UE. The helper classes hNRGNB.m and hNRUE.m create gNB and UE nodes respectively, containing the RLC and medium access control (MAC) layers. For MAC layer, hNRGNB.m uses the helper class hNRGNBMAC.m to implement the gNB MAC functionality and hNRUE.m uses hNRUEMAC.m to implement the UE MAC functionality. Schedulers are implemented in hNRSchedulerRoundRobin.m (RR), hNRSchedulerProportionalFair.m (PF), hNRSchedulerBestCQI.m (Best CQI). All the schedulers inherit from the base class hNRScheduler.m which contains the core scheduling functionality. For RLC layer, both hNRGNB.m and hNRUE.m use hNRUMEntity.m to implement the functionality of the RLC transmitter and receiver. Passthrough PHY layer for UE and gNB is implemented in hNRUEPassThroughPhy.m and hNRGNBPassThroughPhy.m, respectively.

```

simParameters.Position = simParameters.GNBPosition;
gNB = hNRGNB(simParameters); % Create gNB node

% Create and add scheduler
switch(simParameters.SchedulerStrategy)
    case 'RR' % Round robin scheduler
        scheduler = hNRSchedulerRoundRobin(simParameters);
    case 'PF' % Proportional fair scheduler
        scheduler = hNRSchedulerProportionalFair(simParameters);
    case 'BestCQI' % Best CQI scheduler
        scheduler = hNRSchedulerBestCQI(simParameters);
end
addScheduler(gNB, scheduler); % Add scheduler to gNB

gNB.PhyEntity = hNRGNBPassThroughPhy(simParameters); % Add passthrough PHY
configurePhy(gNB, simParameters);
setPhyInterface(gNB); % Set the interface to PHY layer

% Create the set of UE nodes
UEs = cell(simParameters.NumUEs, 1);
for ueIdx=1:simParameters.NumUEs
    simParameters.Position = [simParameters.UEDistance(ueIdx) 0 0]; % Position of UE
    UEs{ueIdx} = hNRUE(simParameters, ueIdx);
    UEs{ueIdx}.PhyEntity = hNRUEPassThroughPhy(simParameters, ueIdx); % Add passthrough PHY
    configurePhy(UEs{ueIdx}, simParameters);
    setPhyInterface(UEs{ueIdx}); % Set the interface to PHY layer

    % Initialize the UL CQI values at gNB
    updateChannelQuality(gNB, simParameters.InitialChannelQualityUL(ueIdx, :), 1, ueIdx); % 1 for UL
    % Initialize the DL CQI values at gNB and UE. The DL CQI values
    % help gNB in scheduling, and UE in packet error probability estimation

```

```

        updateChannelQuality(gNB, simParameters.InitialChannelQualityDL(ueIdx, :), 0, ueIdx); % 0 for
        updateChannelQuality(UEs{ueIdx}, simParameters.InitialChannelQualityDL(ueIdx, :));
    end

    % Setup logical channels
    for lchInfoIdx = 1:size(simParameters.RLCChannelConfig, 1)
        rlcChannelConfigStruct = table2struct(simParameters.RLCChannelConfig(lchInfoIdx, :));
        ueIdx = simParameters.RLCChannelConfig.RNTI(lchInfoIdx);
        % Setup the logical channel at gNB and UE
        gNB.configureLogicalChannel(ueIdx, rlcChannelConfigStruct);
        UEs{ueIdx}.configureLogicalChannel(ueIdx, rlcChannelConfigStruct);
    end

    % Add data traffic pattern generators to gNB and UE nodes
    for appIdx = 1:size(simParameters.AppConfig, 1)
        device = simParameters.AppConfig.HostDevice(appIdx);
        rnti = simParameters.AppConfig.RNTI(appIdx);
        lcid = simParameters.AppConfig.LCID(appIdx);
        packetSize = simParameters.AppConfig.PacketSize(appIdx);
        packetInterval = simParameters.AppConfig.PacketInterval(appIdx);
        % Calculate the data rate (in kbps) of On-Off traffic pattern using
        % packet size (in bytes) and packet interval (in ms)
        dataRate = ceil(1000/packetInterval) * packetSize * 8e-3;
        % Limit the size of the generated application packet to the maximum RLC
        % SDU size. The maximum supported RLC SDU size is 9000 bytes
        if packetSize > 9000
            packetSize = 9000;
        end
        % Create an object for On-Off network traffic pattern and add it to the
        % specified UE. This object generates the uplink data traffic on the UE
        if device == 1 || device == 2
            ulApp = networkTrafficOnOff('PacketSize', packetSize, 'GeneratePacket', true, ...
                'OnTime', simParameters.NumFramesSim/100, 'OffTime', 0, 'DataRate', dataRate);
            UEs{rnti}.addApplication(rnti, lcid, ulApp);
        end
        % Create an object for On-Off network traffic pattern for the specified
        % UE and add it to the gNB. This object generates the downlink data
        % traffic on the gNB for the UE
        if device == 0 || device == 2
            dlApp = networkTrafficOnOff('PacketSize', packetSize, 'GeneratePacket', true, ...
                'OnTime', simParameters.NumFramesSim/100, 'OffTime', 0, 'DataRate', dataRate);
            gNB.addApplication(rnti, lcid, dlApp);
        end
    end

    % Setup the UL and DL packet distribution mechanism
    simParameters.MaxReceivers = simParameters.NumUEs;
    % Create DL packet distribution object
    dlPacketDistributionObj = hNRPacketDistribution(simParameters, 0); % 0 for DL
    % Create UL packet distribution object
    ulPacketDistributionObj = hNRPacketDistribution(simParameters, 1); % 1 for UL
    hNRSetUpPacketDistribution(simParameters, gNB, UEs, dlPacketDistributionObj, ulPacketDistributionObj);

```

Processing Loop

Simulation is run slot by slot. In each slot, these operations are executed:

- Run the MAC and PHY layers of gNB

- Run the MAC and PHY layers of UEs
- Layer specific logging and visualization
- Advance the timer for the nodes. Every 1 ms it also sends trigger to application and RLC layers. Application layer and RLC layer execute their scheduled operations based on 1 ms timer trigger.

```
% Create an object for MAC (UL & DL) scheduling information visualization and logging
simSchedulingLogger = hNRSchedulingLogger(simParameters);
```

```
% Create RLC statistics logging object
simRLCLogger = hNRRLCLogger(simParameters, lchInfo);
```

```
% Create visualization object for RLC and MAC metrics
visualizer = hNRMetricsVisualizer(simParameters, 'RLCLogger', simRLCLogger, 'LCHInfo', lchInfo,
```

```
% Run processing loop
```

```
slotNum = 0;
numSymbolsSim = numSlotsSim * 14; % Simulation time in units of symbol duration
```

```
% Execute all the symbols in the simulation
```

```
for symbolNum = 1 : tickGranularity : numSymbolsSim
    if mod(symbolNum - 1, 14) == 0
        slotNum = slotNum + 1;
    end
```

```
    % Run MAC and PHY of gNB
    run(gNB);
```

```
    % Run MAC and PHY of UEs
    for ueIdx = 1:simParameters.NumUEs
        run(UEs{ueIdx});
    end
```

```
    % RLC logging (only at slot boundary)
```

```
    if (simParameters.SchedulingType == 1 && mod(symbolNum, 14) == 0) || (simParameters.SchedulingType == 2 && mod(symbolNum, 14) == 0)
        logCellRLCStats(simRLCLogger, gNB, UEs);
    end
```

```
    % MAC logging
```

```
    logCellSchedulingStats(simSchedulingLogger, symbolNum, gNB, UEs);
```

```
    % Visualization
```

```
    % Check slot boundary
```

```
    if symbolNum > 1 && ((simParameters.SchedulingType == 1 && mod(symbolNum, 14) == 0) || (simParameters.SchedulingType == 2 && mod(symbolNum, 14) == 0))
        % RB assignment visualization (if enabled)
        if simParameters.RBVisualization
            if mod(slotNum, rbAssignmentPlotPeriodicity) == 0
                % Plot at slot boundary, if the update periodicity is reached
                plotRBGrids(simSchedulingLogger);
            end
        end
```

```
    % CQI grid visualization (if enabled)
```

```
    if simParameters.CQIVisualization
        if mod(slotNum, numSlotsFrame) == 0 % Plot at frame boundary
            plotCQIRBGrids(simSchedulingLogger);
        end
    end
```

```
end
```

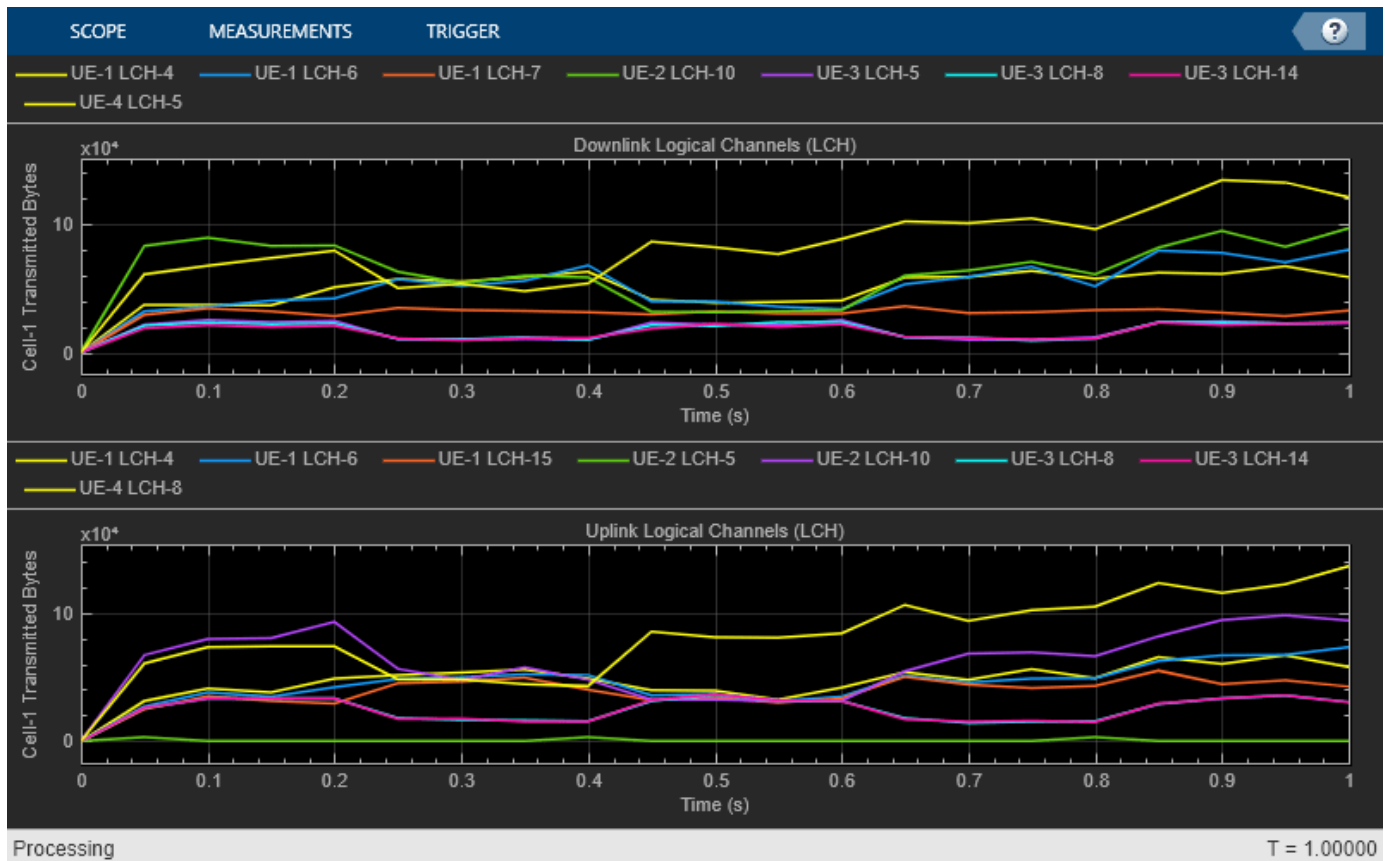
```
% If the update periodicity is reached, plot RLC and scheduler metrics visualization
% at slot boundary
```

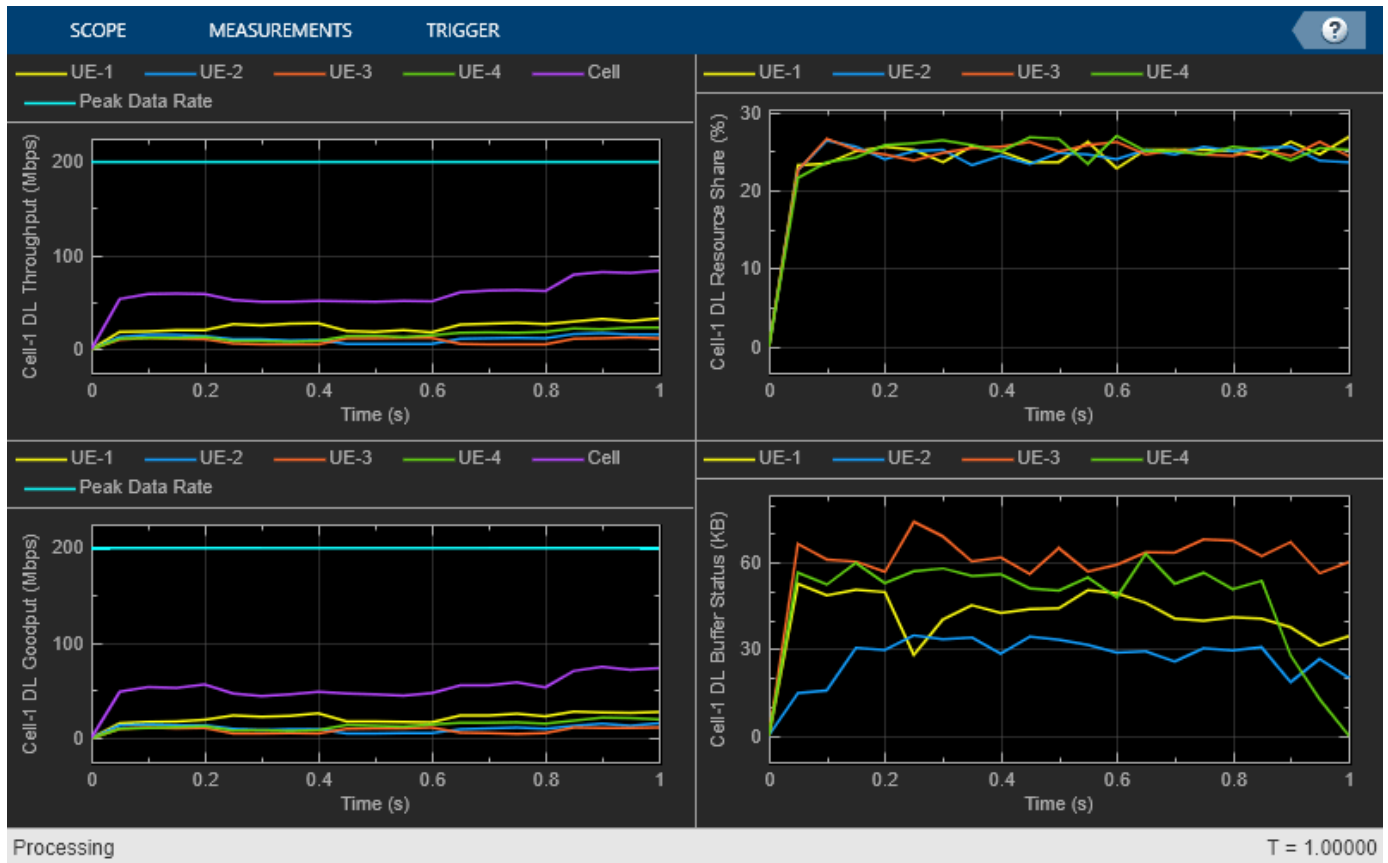
```

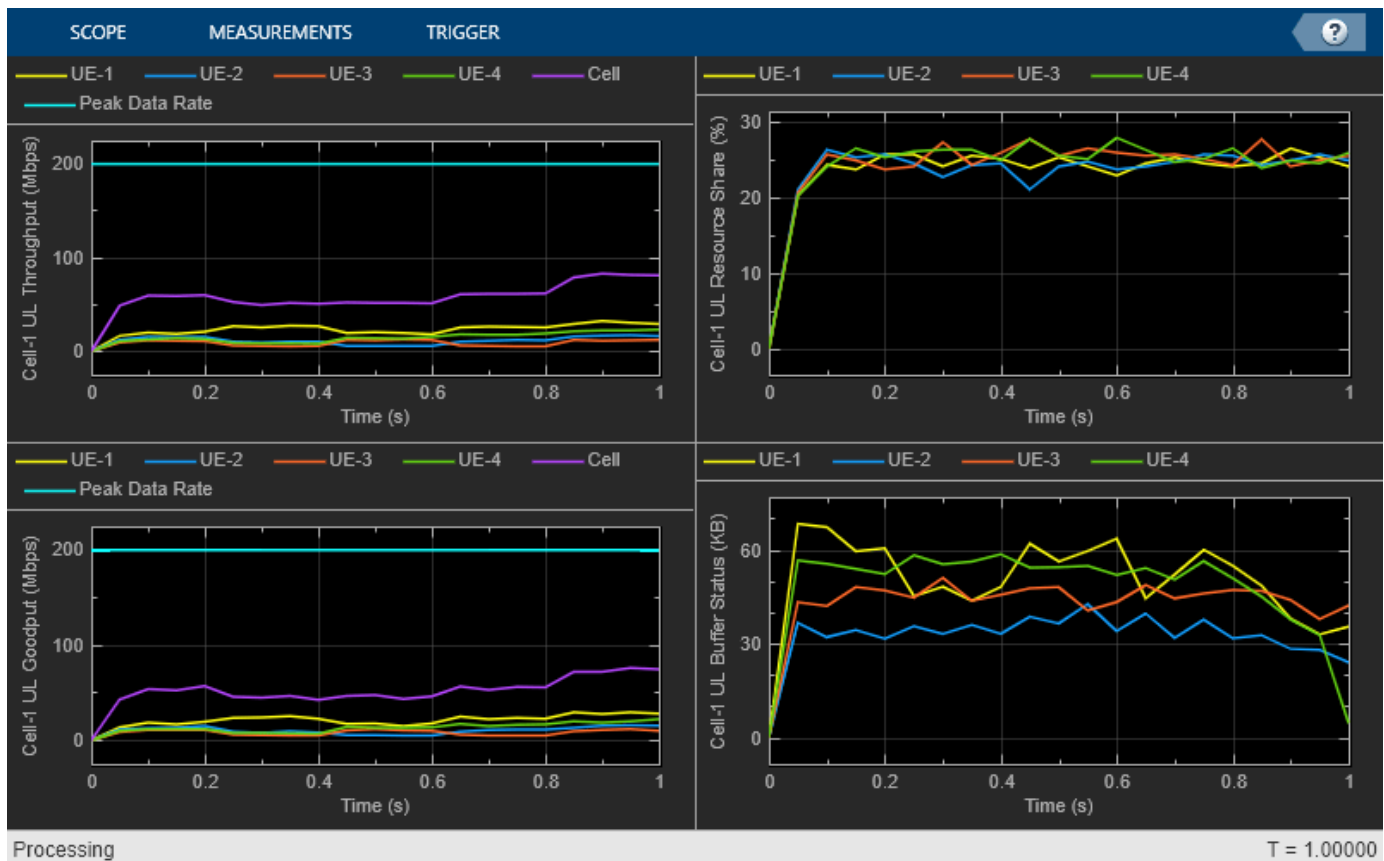
    if mod(slotNum, simParameters.MetricsStepSize) == 0
        plotMetrics(visualizer, slotNum);
    end
end

% Advance timer ticks for gNB and UEs by 14 symbols
advanceTimer(gNB, tickGranularity);
for ueIdx = 1:simParameters.NumUEs
    advanceTimer(UEs{ueIdx}, tickGranularity);
end
end
end

```







Simulation Visualization

The five types of run-time visualization shown are:

- *Display of CQI values for UEs over the PUSCH and PDSCH bandwidth:* You can enable this visualization in the Logging and Visualization Configuration on page 5-0 section. For details, see the 'Channel Quality Visualization' figure description in “NR PUSCH FDD Scheduling” on page 5-37 example.
- *Display of resource grid assignment to UEs:* The 2D time-frequency grid shows the resource allocation to the UEs. You can enable this visualization in the Logging and Visualization Configuration on page 5-0 section. For details, see the 'Resource Grid Allocation' figure in “NR PUSCH FDD Scheduling” on page 5-37 example.
- *Display of UL scheduling metrics plots:* The four plots displayed in 'Uplink Scheduler Performance Metrics' figure represent: UL throughput (per UE and cell), UL goodput (per UE and cell), resource share percentage among UEs (out of the total UL resources) to convey the fairness of scheduling, and pending UL buffer-status of UEs to show whether UEs are getting sufficient resources. The maximum achievable data rate value for UL throughput is shown with a dashed line in throughput and goodput plots. The performance metrics plots update for every `metricsStepSize` slots.
- *Display of DL scheduling metrics plots:* Like UL metrics plots, 'Downlink Scheduler Performance Metrics' displays corresponding subplots for DL direction. The performance metrics plots update for every `metricsStepSize` slots.

- *Display of RLC metrics plots:* The 'RLC Metrics Visualization' figure shows the number of bytes transmitted by RLC layer (per logical channel) for each UE. The RLC metrics plot updates for every metricsStepSize slots.

Simulation Logs

The parameters used for simulation and the simulation logs are saved in MAT-files for post simulation analysis and visualization. The simulation parameters are saved in a MAT-file with the file name as the value of configuration parameter `simParameters.ParametersLogFile`. The per time step logs, scheduling assignment logs, and RLC logs are saved in the MAT-file `simParameters.SimulationLogFile`. After the simulation, open the file to load `DLTimeStepLogs`, `ULTimeStepLogs`, `SchedulingAssignmentLogs`, and `RLCLogs` in the workspace.

Time step logs: Both the DL and UL time step logs follow the same format. For details of log format, see the 'Simulation Logs' section of “NR PUSCH FDD Scheduling” on page 5-37.

Scheduling assignment logs: Information of all the scheduling assignments and the related information is logged in this file. The table shows sample log entries.

'RNTI'	'Frame'	'Slot'	'Grant type'	'RBG Allocation Map'	'Start Sym'	'Num Sym'	'MCS'	'HARQ ID'	'NDI Flag'	'RV'	'Tx Type'	'Feedback Slot Offset (DL grants only)'	'CQI on RBs'
3	0	8	'DL'	'[1 0 0 0 0 0 0 1 1 0 1 1 1]'	0	14	10	2	1	0	'newTx'	2	'[3 7 7 2 2 5 10 4 6 3 8 3 6 7 9 10 6 2...'
4	0	8	'DL'	'[0 1 1 1 1 1 1 0 0 1 0 0 0]'	0	14	9	3	1	0	'newTx'	2	'[4 2 3 7 5 4 9 6 6 10 3 8 8 4 6 1 1 6 ...'
1	0	9	'UL'	'[1 1 1 1 1 1 1 0 0 0 0 0 0]'	0	14	16	0	1	0	'newTx'	'NA'	'[13 14 2 14 10 2 5 9 15 15 3 15 15 8...'
2	0	9	'UL'	'[0 0 0 0 0 0 0 1 0 1 1 1]'	0	14	12	0	1	0	'newTx'	'NA'	'[10 9 5 8 3 9 1 4 1 2 10 9 4 12 1 6 5 ...'
3	0	9	'UL'	'[0 0 0 0 0 0 0 1 0 0 0 0 0]'	0	14	15	0	1	0	'newTx'	'NA'	'[3 7 7 2 2 5 10 4 6 3 8 3 6 7 9 10 6 2...'
4	0	9	'UL'	'[0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 1 0 0 0]'	0	14	15	0	1	0	'newTx'	'NA'	'[4 2 3 7 5 4 9 6 6 10 3 8 8 4 6 1 1 6 ...'

RLC logs: For more information on the RLC log format, see “NR PUSCH FDD Scheduling” on page 5-37.

You can run the script `NRPostSimVisualization` to get a post simulation visualization of logs. In the post simulation script, you are provided with variable `isLogReplay`, which provides these options to visualize 'Resource Grid Allocation' and 'Channel Quality Visualization' figures.

- Set `isLogReplay` to true for replay of simulation logs.
- Set `isLogReplay` to false to analyze the details of a particular frame. In the 'Resource Grid Allocation' window, input the frame number to visualize the resource assignment for the entire frame. The frame number entered here controls the frame number for the 'Channel Quality Visualization' figure too.

% Get the logs

```
simulationLogs = cell(1,1);
logInfo = struct('DLTimeStepLogs',[], 'ULTimeStepLogs',[], 'SchedulingAssignmentLogs',[], 'RLCLogs',[]);
[logInfo.DLTimeStepLogs, logInfo.ULTimeStepLogs] = getSchedulingLogs(simSchedulingLogger);
logInfo.SchedulingAssignmentLogs = getGrantLogs(simSchedulingLogger); % Scheduling assignments log
logInfo.RLCLogs = getRLCLogs(simRLCLogger);
simulationLogs{1} = logInfo;
save(simParameters.ParametersLogFile, 'simulationLogs'); % Save simulation logs in a MAT-file
save(simParameters.SimulationLogFile, 'simulationLogs');
```

Further Exploration

You can use this example to further explore these options.

Custom scheduling

You can modify the existing scheduling strategy to implement a custom one. Perform following steps to accomplish this.

Create a custom scheduler class

Create a new class `customStrategy.m` and inherit from `hNRScheduler.m`. Implement the constructor of the class to call the base class constructor as shown below. See the constructor of `hNRSchedulerRoundRobin.m`, `hNRSchedulerProportionalFair.m`, `hNRSchedulerBestCQI.m` for more details.

```
function obj = customStrategy(param)
    obj = obj@hNRScheduler(simParameters); % Invoke the super class constructor to initialize the
    % Initialize any properties specific to this custom scheduling strategy
end
```

Implement custom UL scheduling

Override the `scheduleULResourcesSlot` function of the base class by implementing it in the class `customStrategy.m` function.

```
function uplinkGrants = scheduleULResourcesSlot(obj, slotNum)
    % Implement custom UL scheduling to populate the output 'uplinkGrants'
end
```

First input `obj` is the custom scheduler object. By virtue of inheritance, it contains the context of base class `hNRScheduler.m` which can be used as input for taking scheduling decisions. Second input `slotNum` is the slot number in the 10 ms frame whose UL resources are getting scheduled. Note that it is not the current slot in which UL scheduler is running but the slot which is getting scheduled. Using the context in `obj`, do the custom scheduling and populate the output `uplinkGrants` of this function with an array of valid UL scheduling assignments. `uplinkGrants` can have maximum one assignment per UE. Each element in this array is PUSCH assignment for a UE. Also, update the context of UL HARQ processes as per the HARQ process ID assigned in the UL assignments. See the `scheduleULResourcesSlot` function in `hNRScheduler.m` for more details.

Implement custom DL scheduling

Follow the procedure like custom UL scheduling to override the `scheduleDLResourcesSlot` function of the base class by implementing it in the class `customStrategy.m` function.

Create and install the custom scheduler

To use the custom scheduler in this example, create its object and install it on the gNB in the gNB and UEs Setup on page 5-0 section.

```
scheduler = customScheduler(simParameters);
addScheduler(gNB, scheduler); % Add scheduler to gNB
```

Use 5G Toolbox™ physical layer

You can also switch from passthrough PHY layer to 5G Toolbox™ physical layer processing by creating PHY objects using `hNRGNBPhy.m` and `hNRUEPhy.m`. For more details, see 'gNB and UEs Setup' section of "NR Cell Performance Evaluation with Physical Layer Integration" on page 5-92.

Based on the chosen scheduling strategy, this example shows the assignment of UL and DL resources to multiple UEs by the gNB. A run-time visualization display of the resource grid gives detailed

information about the RBs allocated to each UE and the HARQ process ID assigned for transmission. UL and DL scheduling performance is analyzed based on run-time plots of throughput and goodput, resource share fairness, and pending buffer status on the UEs. A more thorough post simulation analysis by using the saved logs gives a detailed picture of the operations happening on a per slot basis.

Use RLC AM

You can also switch the operating mode of an RLC entity from UM to acknowledged mode (AM) by modifying the input structure fields `EntityType` and `SeqNumFieldLength` in the `configureLogicalChannel` function of `hNRNode.m`. Set the `EntityType` to 3 and `SeqNumFieldLength` to either 12 or 18. You can also add and set the following fields to the input structure to explore the RLC AM functionality:

- `PollRetransmitTimer`: Timer used by the transmitting side of an RLC AM entity in order to retransmit a poll
- `PollPDU`: Parameter used by the transmitting side of an RLC AM entity to trigger a poll based on number of PDUs
- `PollByte`: Parameter used by the transmitting side of an RLC AM entity to trigger a poll based on number of SDU bytes
- `MaxRetransmissions`: Maximum number of retransmissions corresponding to an RLC SDU, including its segments
- `StatusProhibitTimer`: Timer used by the receiving side of an RLC AM entity in order to prohibit frequent transmission of status PDUs

Appendix

The example uses these helper functions and classes:

- `hWirelessNode.m`: Wireless node base class
- `hNRNode.m`: NR node base class for both gNB and UE
- `hNRGNB.m`: gNB node functionality
- `hNRUE.m`: UE node functionality
- `helperApplication.m`: Application layer functionality
- `hNRRLCEntity.m`: Base class for RLC UM and AM entities
- `hNRUMEntity.m`: RLC UM functionality
- `hNRAMEntity.m`: RLC AM functionality
- `hNRRLCDataPDUInfo.m`: Creates RLC PDU information object
- `hNRRLCBufferStatus.m`: Generates RLC buffer status information object
- `hNRRLCDataReassembly.m`: Create an RLC SDU reassembly information object
- `hNRMAC.m`: NR MAC base class functionality
- `hNRGNBMAC.m`: gNB MAC functionality
- `hNRUEMAC.m`: UE MAC functionality
- `hNRScheduler.m`: Core MAC scheduler functionality
- `hNRSchedulerBestCQI.m`: Implements best CQI scheduling strategy
- `hNRSchedulerProportionalFair.m`: Implements proportional fair scheduling strategy

- hNRSchedulerRoundRobin.m: Implements round robin scheduling strategy
- hNRMACBSR.m: Generates buffer status report
- hNRMACBSRParser.m: Parses buffer status report
- hNRMACSubPDU.m: Generates MAC subPDU
- hNRMACPaddingSubPDU.m: Generates MAC subPDU with padding
- hNRMACMultiplex.m: Generates MAC PDU
- hNRMACPDUParser.m: Parses MAC PDU
- hNewHARQProcesses.m: Creates new HARQ process
- hUpdateHARQProcess.m: Updates HARQ process
- hNRPhyInterface.m: PHY layer interface class
- hNRGNBPassthroughPhy.m: gNB passthrough PHY layer
- hNRUEPassthroughPhy.m: UE passthrough PHY layer
- hNRGNBPhy.m: gNB PHY functionality
- hNRUEPhy.m: UE PHY functionality
- hNRPUSCHInfo.m: PUSCH information structure passed by MAC to PHY layer
- hNRPDSCHInfo.m: PDSCH information structure passed by MAC to PHY layer
- hNRRxIndicationInfo.m: Information structure passed by PHY layer to MAC along with MAC PDU
- hNRUplinkGrantFormat.m: UL grant format
- hNRDownlinkGrantFormat.m: DL grant format
- hNRPacketDistribution.m: Creates packet distribution object
- hNRPhyRxBuffer.m: Creates PHY signal reception buffer object
- hSkipWeakTimingOffset.m: Skip timing offset estimates with weak correlation
- hNRRLCLogger.m: Implements RLC statistics logging and visualization functionality
- hNRSchedulingLogger.m: Implements scheduling information logging and visualization functionality
- hNRPhyLogger.m: Implements uplink and downlink block error rate logging and visualization functionality
- hNRSchedulingFDDValidateConfig.m: Validates simulation configuration
- hNRSetUpPacketDistribution.m: Set up packet distribution functionality
- hNRPacketWriter.m: Captures MAC packets
- hNRPacketInfo.m: Metadata format for capturing MAC packets
- hNRMetricsVisualizer.m: Implements metrics visualization functionality
- NRPostSimVisualization.m: Post simulation visualization script

References

- [1] 3GPP TS 38.104. "NR; Base Station (BS) radio transmission and reception." *3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Radio Access Network*.
- [2] 3GPP TS 38.214. "NR; Physical layer procedures for data." *3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Radio Access Network*.

[3] 3GPP TS 38.321. "NR; Medium Access Control (MAC) protocol specification." *3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Radio Access Network*.

[4] 3GPP TS 38.322. "NR; Radio Link Control (RLC) protocol specification." *3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Radio Access Network*.

[5] 3GPP TS 38.331. "NR; Radio Resource Control (RRC) protocol specification." *3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Radio Access Network*.

See Also

Related Examples

- "NR PUSCH FDD Scheduling" on page 5-37
- "NR TDD Symbol Based Scheduling Performance Evaluation" on page 5-72

NR TDD Symbol Based Scheduling Performance Evaluation

This example models a symbol-based scheduling scheme in time division duplexing (TDD) mode and evaluates the network performance. Symbol-based scheduling of resources allows shorter transmission durations spanning a few symbols in the slot. In TDD mode, physical uplink shared channel (PUSCH) and physical downlink shared channel (PDSCH) transmissions are scheduled in the same frequency band with separation in time domain. You can customize the scheduling strategy and evaluate network performance. The performance of the scheduling strategy is evaluated in terms of achieved throughput and fairness in resource sharing.

Introduction

The example considers the following operations within the gNB and UEs that facilitate UL and DL transmissions and receptions.

	Operations
gNB	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Run the scheduling algorithm to assign uplink and downlink resources • Send the uplink and downlink assignments to the UEs • Receive the PUSCH transmissions from the UEs • Adhere to the downlink assignments for PDSCH transmission • Receive the feedback of PDSCHs from the UEs
UEs	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Send the pending buffer status report to the gNB • Receive the uplink and downlink assignments from the gNB • Adhere to the received uplink assignments from the gNB for PUSCH transmission • Receive the PDSCH transmissions from the gNB • Send feedback for the received PDSCHs

The complete PUSCH or PDSCH packet is transmitted in the first symbol of its allocated symbol set. Receiver processes the packet in the symbol just after the last symbol in the allocated symbol set.

This example models:

- Configurable TDD DL-UL pattern.
- Slot-based and symbol-based DL and UL scheduling. UL scheduler ensures that the UEs get the required PUSCH preparation time.
- Noncontiguous allocation of frequency domain resources in terms of resource block groups (RBGs).
- Configurable subcarrier spacing resulting in different slot durations.
- Configurable demodulation reference signal (DM-RS) properties.
- Asynchronous hybrid automatic repeat request (HARQ) mechanism.
- Periodic DL and UL application traffic pattern.
- RLC operating in UM mode.
- Single bandwidth part covering the entire carrier bandwidth.

Following control packets are assumed to be sent out of band i.e. without the need of resources for transmission and assured error-free reception: UL assignment, DL assignment, buffer status report

(BSR), PDSCH feedback, and CQI report. These control packets follow the TDD DL and UL timings. For example, BSR and PDSCH feedback are sent in UL time while resource assignments are sent in DL time.

TDD DL-UL Pattern Configuration

NR provides a flexible way of configuring the DL and UL resources. The parameters used to define a custom TDD configuration are:

- 1 DL-UL transmission periodicity in ms.
- 2 Reference subcarrier spacing to calculate the number of slots in the DL-UL pattern. In this example, it is assumed to be same as actual subcarrier spacing used for transmission.
- 3 Number of consecutive full DL slots at the beginning of each DL-UL pattern.
- 4 Number of consecutive DL symbols in the beginning of the slot following the last full DL slot.
- 5 Number of consecutive full UL slots at the end of each DL-UL pattern.
- 6 Number of consecutive UL symbols in the end of the slot preceding the first full UL slot.

The example does not model flexible symbols, so the symbols with unspecified symbol type are assumed for guard period. Here is an example of resulting TDD DL-UL pattern based on these parameters. This DL-UL pattern repeats itself in the timeline.

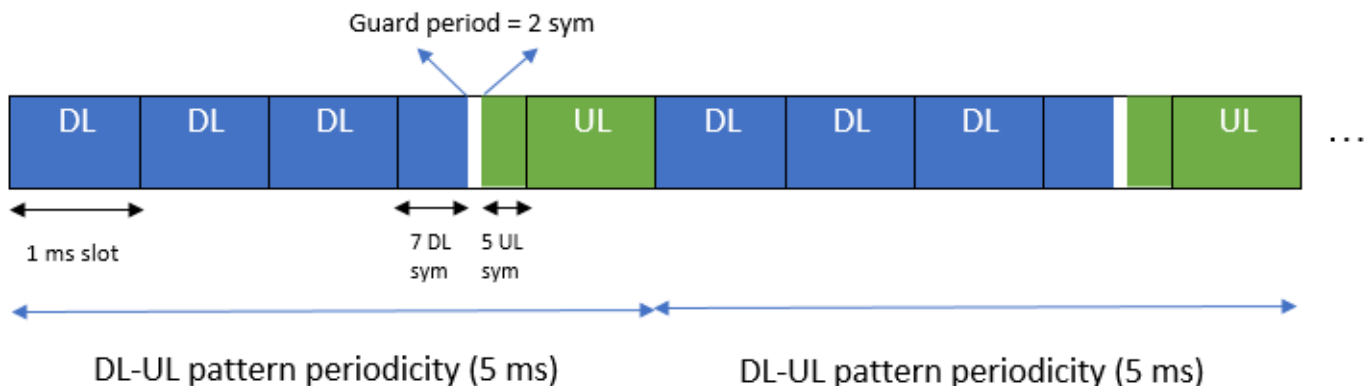
- $reference_scs = 15$ kHz (i.e. 1 ms slot), $DLULPeriodicity = 5$ ms, $numDLSlots = 3$, $numDLSyms = 7$, $numULSlots = 1$, $numULSyms = 5$

Number of slots in DL-UL periodicity with respect to reference SCS of 15 kHz,
 $NumSlotsDLULPeriodicity = 5$

$NumberOfGuardSymbols = TotalSymbolsInPattern - TotalSymbolsWithTypeSpecified$

$= (14 * NumSlotsDLULPeriodicity) - (numDLSlots*14 + numDLSyms + numULSyms + numULSlots*14)$

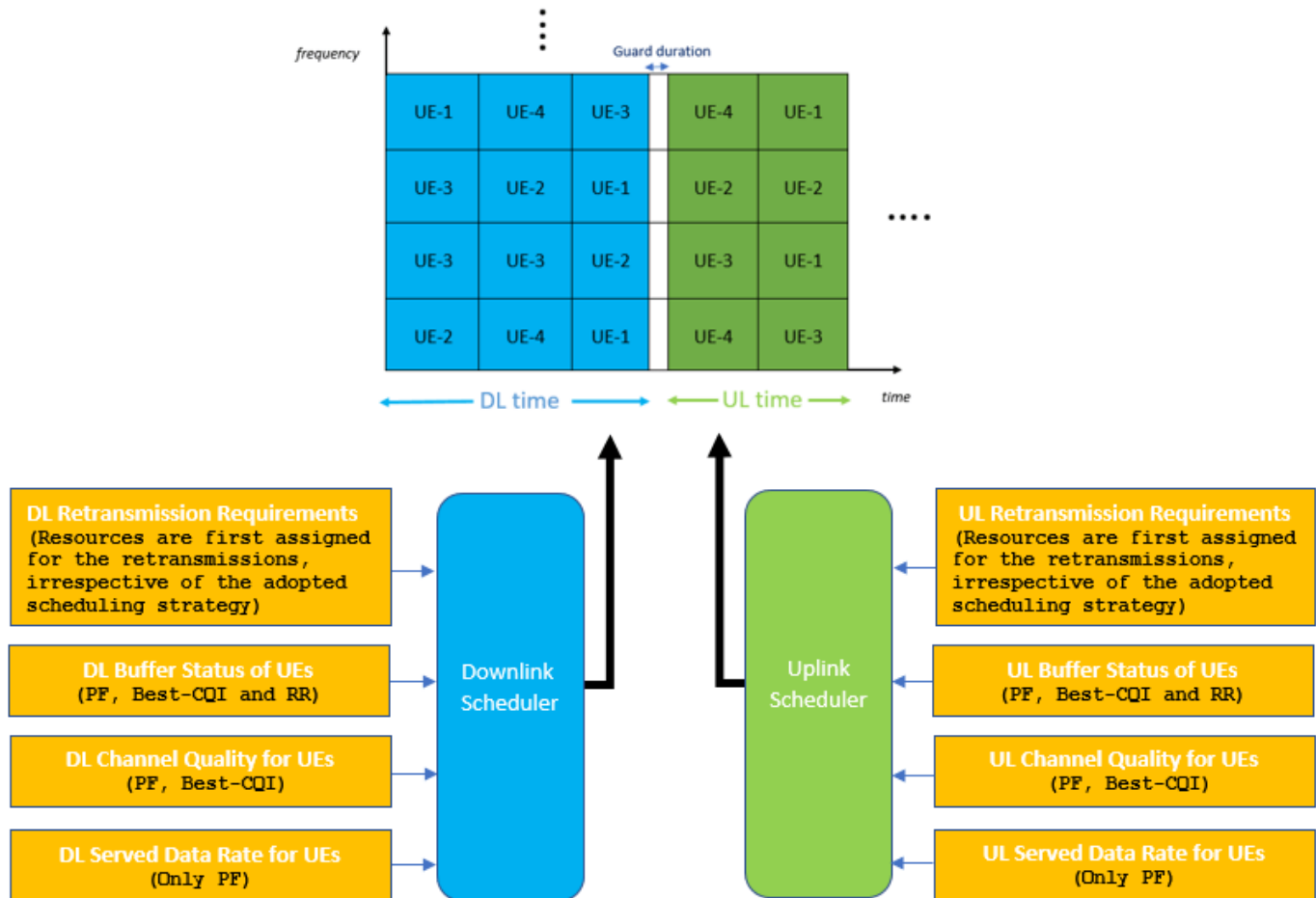
$= 2$ symbols



Scheduler

UL and DL schedulers distribute the UL and DL resources respectively among the UEs. You can choose any one of the implemented scheduling strategies: proportional fair (PF), best CQI, or round

robin (RR). The various supported inputs to the schedulers are shown along with the scheduling strategies that consider them.

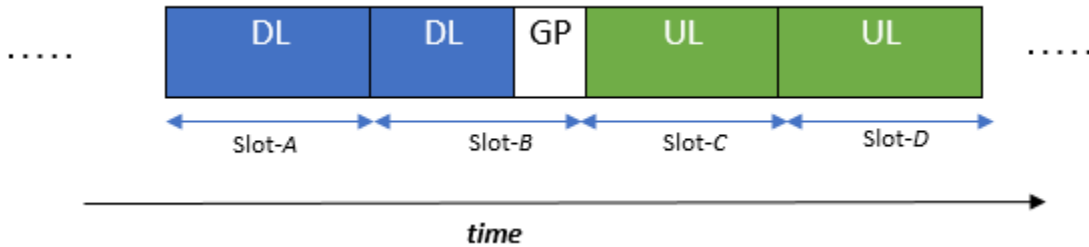


Both UL and DL schedulers run at the start of a slot when the first symbol is a DL symbol. Schedulers run in DL time so that assignments (UL and DL) can be instantly sent to UEs in the DL direction. The run time of the scheduler algorithm as well as the propagation delay is assumed to be zero. The output of scheduling operations is an array of assignments. Each assignment contains the information fields to fully define a PUSCH or PDSCH transmission.

- **UL Scheduler**

The UL scheduling operation follows these two steps.

- 1 *Select slots to be scheduled:* The criteria used in this example selects all the upcoming slots (including the current one) containing unscheduled UL symbols that must be scheduled now. Such slots must be scheduled now as they cannot be scheduled in the next slot with DL symbols, depending on the value of PUSCH preparation time capability of the UEs. It ensures that the UL resources are scheduled as close as possible to the actual transmission time.



Below are 2 examples to explain how UL slots are selected in this example for scheduling, based on PUSCH preparation time.

(i) Assuming that the UEs require PUSCH preparation time equivalent to 10 symbols, when the UL scheduler runs in Slot-A, it does not select any slot for scheduling. Because scheduling in the next slot (i.e. Slot-B) provides enough PUSCH preparation time (14 symbols) for the UL transmission in Slot-C. Later, when the UL scheduler runs in Slot-B, it selects both Slot-C and Slot-D for scheduling. Slot-D is scheduled in Slot-B itself (and not in Slot-C) because Slot-C is a full UL slot and hence does not have any DL symbols for sending the assignments in the DL direction.

(ii) Assuming that the UEs require PUSCH preparation time equivalent to 16 symbols, Slot-C is scheduled in Slot-A itself. Because scheduling in Slot-B would only provide 14 symbols of PUSCH preparation time to start transmission in Slot-C. Slot-D is scheduled in Slot-B.

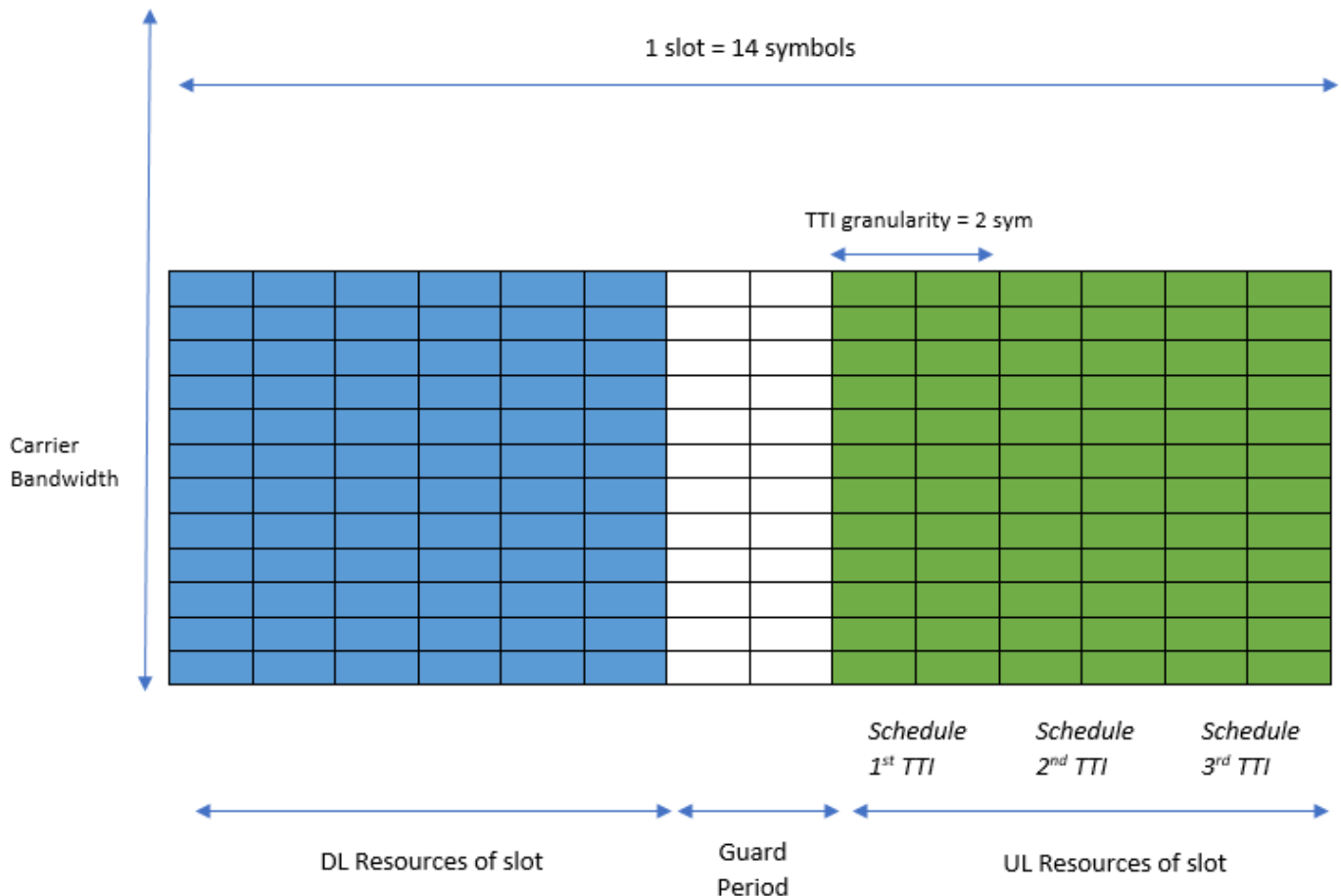
2. Resource scheduling: If any slots are selected in the first step, assign the UL resources of those slots to the UEs.

- **DL scheduler**

The DL scheduler runs at each slot beginning with a DL symbol and assign resources of the first upcoming slot containing DL symbols. So, when the DL scheduler runs at the start of Slot-A, it schedules DL resources of Slot-B.

Symbol based scheduling

NR allows the TTI to start at any symbol position in the slot and with TTI granularity in symbols. The figure shows the way UL scheduler operates in this example to schedule UL symbols of a slot with TTI granularity of two symbols. The slot shown contains six UL symbols. Scheduler completes the iteration of the UL symbols in three iterations with each iteration distributing the frequency resources of two symbols. The DL scheduler also follows a similar approach for DL scheduling.



Scenario Configuration

Set the parameters for simulation.

```

rng('default'); % Reset the random number generator
simParameters = []; % Clear simParameters variable
simParameters.NumFramesSim = 100; % Simulation time in terms of number of 10 ms frames

% Number of UEs in the simulation. UEs are assumed to have sequential radio
% network temporary identifiers (RNTIs) from 1 to NumUEs. If you change the
% number of UEs, ensure that the following simulation parameters are array
% of length equal to NumUEs: simParameters.UEDistance,
% simParameters.ULPacketPeriodicityUEs, simParameters.ULPacketSizesUEs,
% simParameters.DLPacketPeriodicityUEs, simParameters.DLPacketSizesUEs
simParameters.NumUEs = 4;
simParameters.UEDistance = [100; 150; 300; 400]; % Distance of UEs from gNB (in meters)

% Set the value of scheduling type to 0 (slot-based scheduling) or 1
% (symbol-based scheduling). If value is not set, the default value is 0
simParameters.SchedulingType = 1;

% Set the time-domain assignment in terms of symbol duration. If number of
% symbols (DL or UL) are not enough for this granularity then a smaller

```

```

% valid granularity is chosen. Applicable only for symbol-based scheduling.
% For slot-based scheduling, biggest possible granularity in a slot is
% chosen
simParameters.TTIGranularity = 4;

% Define the TDD DL-UL pattern. The reference subcarrier spacing used for
% calculating slot duration for the pattern is assumed to be same as actual
% subcarrier spacing used for transmission as defined by simParameters.SCS.
% Keep only the symbols intended for guard period during DLULPeriodicity
% with type (DL or UL) unspecified
simParameters.DLULPeriodicity = 5; % Duration of the DL-UL pattern in ms
simParameters.NumDLSlots = 2; % Number of consecutive full DL slots at the beginning of each DL-UL
simParameters.NumDLSyms = 8; % Number of consecutive DL symbols in the beginning of the slot following
simParameters.NumULSyms = 4; % Number of consecutive UL symbols in the end of the slot preceding
simParameters.NumULSlots = 2; % Number of consecutive full UL slots at the end of each DL-UL pattern

% Mapping between distance from gNB (first column in meters) and maximum
% achievable UL CQI value (second column). For example, if a UE is 700
% meters away from the gNB, it can achieve a maximum CQI value of 8 as the
% distance falls within the [501, 1000] meters range, as per the mapping.
% Set the distance in increasing order and the maximum achievable CQI value
% in decreasing order
simParameters.CQIvsDistance = [
    200 15;
    300 12;
    500 10;
    1000 8;
    1200 7];

% Set the periodic UL and DL application traffic pattern for UEs
simParameters.ULPacketPeriodicityUEs = [20; 30; 20; 30]; % Periodicity (in ms) at which the UL packets are generated
simParameters.ULPacketSizesUEs = [4000; 6000; 5500; 4000]; % Size of the UL packets (in bytes) generated
simParameters.DLPacketPeriodicityUEs = [20; 15; 15; 20]; % Periodicity (in ms) at which the DL packets are generated
simParameters.DLPacketSizesUEs = [6000; 5000; 10000; 8000]; % Size of the DL packets generated (in bytes)

% Medium access control (MAC) configuration
simParameters.SchedulerStrategy = 'PF'; % Supported scheduling strategies: 'PF', 'RR' and 'BestEffort'
% PUSCH preparation time. gNB ensures that PUSCH assignment is received at
% UEs PUSCHPrepTime ahead of the transmission time
simParameters.PUSCHPrepTime = 200; % In microseconds
% Maximum RBs allotted to a UE for PUSCH and PDSCH transmissions (limit is
% applicable for new transmission assignments and not for the retransmissions)
simParameters.RBAllocationLimitUL = 15; % For PUSCH
simParameters.RBAllocationLimitDL = 15; % For PDSCH
simParameters.BSRPeriodicity = 1; % Buffer status report transmission periodicity (in ms)

simParameters.DMRSTypeAPosition = 2;
% PUSCH DM-RS configuration
simParameters.PUSCHDMRSAdditionalPosTypeB = 0;
simParameters.PUSCHDMRSAdditionalPosTypeA = 0;
simParameters.PUSCHDMRSConfigurationType = 1;
% PDSCH DM-RS configuration
simParameters.PDSCHDMRSAdditionalPosTypeB = 0;
simParameters.PDSCHDMRSAdditionalPosTypeA = 0;
simParameters.PDSCHDMRSConfigurationType = 1;

% PHY layer and channel configuration
% RB count for 5 MHz band with 15 kHz subcarrier spacing (SCS). The complete

```

```

% bandwidth is assumed to be allotted for PUSCH or PDSCH
simParameters.NumRBs = 25;
simParameters.SCS = 15; % kHz
simParameters.DLBandwidth = 5e6; % Hz
simParameters.ULBandwidth = 5e6; % Hz
simParameters.DLCarrierFreq = 2.595e9; % Hz
simParameters.ULCarrierFreq = 2.595e9; % Hz

% Configure parameters to update channel conditions for the UEs. Channel
% quality is periodically improved or deteriorated by CQIDelta every
% channelUpdatePeriodicity seconds for all RBs of a UE. Whether channel
% conditions for a particular UE improve or deteriorate is randomly
% determined: RB_CQI = RB_CQI +/- CQIDelta
simParameters.ChannelUpdatePeriodicity = 0.2; % In sec
simParameters.CQIDelta = 1;

% Logging and visualization configuration
% Flag to enable or disable runtime CQI visualization
simParameters.CQIVisualization = true;
% Flag to enable or disable run time visualization of RB assignment. If enabled,
% then for slot-based scheduling it updates every frame (10 ms) to show RB
% allocation to the UEs for different slots of the last frame. For
% symbol-based scheduling, it updates every slot to show RB allocation to
% the UEs over different symbols of the last slot
simParameters.RBVisualization = false;
% The output metrics plots are updated periodically NumMetricsSteps times within the
% simulation duration
simParameters.NumMetricsSteps = 20;
% MAT-files to write the logs into. They are used for post simulation analysis and visualization
simParameters.ParametersLogFile = 'simParameters'; % For logging the simulation parameters
simParameters.SimulationLogFile = 'simulationLogs'; % For logging the simulation logs

hNRSchedulingTDDValidateConfig(simParameters); % Validate the simulation configuration

```

Derived Parameters

Based on the primary configuration parameters, compute the derived parameters. Additionally, set some example specific constants.

```

simParameters.DuplexMode = 1; % TDD (example specific constant)
if simParameters.SchedulingType % Symbol-based scheduling
    simParameters.PUSCHMappingType = 'B';
    simParameters.PDSCHMappingType = 'B';
else % Slot-based scheduling
    simParameters.PUSCHMappingType = 'A';
    simParameters.PDSCHMappingType = 'A';
end
simParameters.NCellID = 1; % Physical cell ID
simParameters.GNBPosition = [0 0 0]; % Position of gNB in (x,y,z) coordinates
numLogicalChannels = 1; % Only 1 logical channel is assumed in each UE (Example specific constant)
slotDuration = 1/(simParameters.SCS/15); % Slot duration in ms
numSlotsFrame = 10/slotDuration; % Number of slots in 10 ms frame
numSlotsSim = simParameters.NumFramesSim * numSlotsFrame; % Simulation time in units of slot duration
numSymbolsSim = numSlotsSim * 14; % Simulation time in units of symbol duration
% Interval at which metrics visualization updates in terms of number of
% slots. Make sure that MetricsStepSize is an integer
simParameters.MetricsStepSize = ceil(numSlotsSim / simParameters.NumMetricsSteps);
if mod(numSlotsSim, simParameters.NumMetricsSteps) ~= 0

```

```

    % Update the NumMetricsSteps parameter if numSlotsSim is not
    % completely divisible by it
    simParameters.NumMetricsSteps = floor(numSlotsSim / simParameters.MetricsStepSize);
end

% Logical channel id (logical channel ID of data radio bearers starts from 4)
simParameters.LCHConfig.LCID = 4;

% RLC entity direction. Value 0 represents DL only, 1
% represents UL only and 2 represents both UL and DL
% directions. Setting entity direction to have both UL and DL
simParameters.RLCCConfig.EntityDir = 2;
% Construct information for RLC logger
lchInfo = repmat(struct('RNTI',[],'LCID',[],'EntityDir',[]), [simParameters.NumUEs 1]);
for idx = 1:simParameters.NumUEs
    lchInfo(idx).RNTI = idx;
    lchInfo(idx).LCID = simParameters.LCHConfig.LCID;
    lchInfo(idx).EntityDir = simParameters.RLCCConfig.EntityDir;
end

% Create RLC channel configuration structure
rlcChannelConfigStruct.LCGID = 1; % Mapping between logical channel and logical channel group ID
rlcChannelConfigStruct.Priority = 1; % Priority of each logical channel
rlcChannelConfigStruct.PBR = 8; % Prioritized bitrate (PBR), in kilobytes per second, of each logical channel
rlcChannelConfigStruct.BSD = 10; % Bucket size duration (BSD), in ms, of each logical channel
rlcChannelConfigStruct.EntityType = simParameters.RLCCConfig.EntityDir;
rlcChannelConfigStruct.LogicalChannelID = simParameters.LCHConfig.LCID;

% Maximum RLC SDU length (in bytes) as per 3GPP TS 38.323
simParameters.maxRLCSDULength = 9000;

% Calculate maximum achievable CQI value for the UEs based on their distance
% from the gNB
maxUECQIs = zeros(simParameters.NumUEs, 1); % To store the maximum achievable CQI value for UEs
for ueIdx = 1:simParameters.NumUEs
    % Based on the distance of the UE from gNB, find matching row in CQIvsDistance mapping
    matchingRowIndex = find(simParameters.CQIvsDistance(:, 1) > simParameters.UEDistance(ueIdx));
    if isempty(matchingRowIndex)
        maxUECQIs(ueIdx) = simParameters.CQIvsDistance(end, 2);
    else
        maxUECQIs(ueIdx) = simParameters.CQIvsDistance(matchingRowIndex(1), 2);
    end
end

% Define initial UL and DL channel quality as an N-by-P matrix,
% where 'N' is the number of UEs and 'P' is the number of RBs in the carrier
% bandwidth. The initial value of CQI for each RB, for each UE, is given
% randomly and is limited by the maximum achievable CQI value corresponding
% to the distance of the UE from gNB
simParameters.InitialChannelQualityUL = zeros(simParameters.NumUEs, simParameters.NumRBs); % To store initial UL channel quality
simParameters.InitialChannelQualityDL = zeros(simParameters.NumUEs, simParameters.NumRBs); % To store initial DL channel quality
for ueIdx = 1:simParameters.NumUEs
    % Assign random CQI values for the RBs, limited by the maximum achievable CQI value
    simParameters.InitialChannelQualityUL(ueIdx, :) = randi([1 maxUECQIs(ueIdx)], 1, simParameters.NumRBs);
    % Initially, DL and UL CQI values are assumed to be equal
    simParameters.InitialChannelQualityDL(ueIdx, :) = simParameters.InitialChannelQualityUL(ueIdx, :);
end

```

```

% Update periodicity of RB assignment visualization in terms of number of slots
if ~isfield(simParameters, 'SchedulingType') || simParameters.SchedulingType == 0 % If no scheduling
    rbAssignmentPlotPeriodicity = numSlotsFrame; % Update every frame (10 ms)
else % Symbol-based scheduling
    rbAssignmentPlotPeriodicity = 1; % Update every slot
end

```

gNB and UEs Setup

Create the gNB and UE objects, initialize the channel quality information for UEs and set up the logical channel at gNB and UE. The helper classes hNRGNB.m and hNRUE.m create gNB and UE node respectively, containing the RLC and MAC layer. For MAC layer, hNRGNB.m uses the helper class hNRGNBMAC.m to implement the gNB MAC functionality and hNRUE.m uses hNRUEMAC.m to implement the UE MAC functionality. Schedulers are implemented in hNRSchedulerRoundRobin.m (RR), hNRSchedulerProportionalFair.m (PF), hNRSchedulerBestCQI.m (Best CQI) . All the schedulers inherit from the base class hNRScheduler.m which contains the core scheduling functionality. For RLC layer, both hNRGNB.m and hNRUE.m use hNRUMEntity.m to implement the functionality of the RLC transmitter and receiver. Passthrough PHY layer for UE and gNB is implemented in hNRUEPassThroughPhy.m and hNRGNBPassThroughPhy.m, respectively.

```

simParameters.Position = simParameters.GNBPosition;
gNB = hNRGNB(simParameters); % Create the gNB node
% Create and add scheduler
switch(simParameters.SchedulerStrategy)
    case 'RR' % Round robin scheduler
        scheduler = hNRSchedulerRoundRobin(simParameters);
    case 'PF' % Proportional fair scheduler
        scheduler = hNRSchedulerProportionalFair(simParameters);
    case 'BestCQI' % Best CQI scheduler
        scheduler = hNRSchedulerBestCQI(simParameters);
end
addScheduler(gNB, scheduler); % Add scheduler to gNB

gNB.PhyEntity = hNRGNBPassThroughPhy(simParameters); % Add passthrough PHY
configurePhy(gNB, simParameters);
setPhyInterface(gNB); % Set the interface to PHY layer

% Create the set of UE nodes
UEs = cell(simParameters.NumUEs, 1);
for ueIdx = 1:simParameters.NumUEs
    simParameters.Position = [simParameters.UEDistance(ueIdx) 0 0]; % Position of UE
    UEs{ueIdx} = hNRUE(simParameters, ueIdx);
    UEs{ueIdx}.PhyEntity = hNRUEPassThroughPhy(simParameters, ueIdx); % Add passthrough PHY
    configurePhy(UEs{ueIdx}, simParameters);
    setPhyInterface(UEs{ueIdx}); % Set the interface to PHY layer

    % Initialize the UL CQI values at gNB
    updateChannelQuality(gNB, simParameters.InitialChannelQualityUL(ueIdx, :), 1, ueIdx); % 1 for UL
    % Initialize the DL CQI values at gNB and UE. The DL CQI values
    % help gNB in scheduling, and UE in packet error probability estimation
    updateChannelQuality(gNB, simParameters.InitialChannelQualityDL(ueIdx, :), 0, ueIdx); % 0 for DL
    updateChannelQuality(UEs{ueIdx}, simParameters.InitialChannelQualityDL(ueIdx, :));

    % Setup logical channel at gNB for the UE
    configureLogicalChannel(gNB, ueIdx, rlcChannelConfigStruct);
    % Setup logical channel at UE
    configureLogicalChannel(UEs{ueIdx}, ueIdx, rlcChannelConfigStruct);

```



```

% Add data traffic pattern generators to gNB and UE nodes
ulPacketSize = simParameters.ULPacketSizesUEs(ueIdx);
% Calculate the data rate (in kbps) of On-Off traffic pattern using
% packet size (in bytes) and packet interval (in ms)
ulDataRate = ceil(1000/simParameters.ULPacketPeriodicityUEs(ueIdx)) * ulPacketSize * 8e-3;
% Limit the size of the generated application packet to the maximum RLC
% SDU size. The maximum supported RLC SDU size is 9000 bytes
if ulPacketSize > simParameters.maxRLCSDULength
    ulPacketSize = simParameters.maxRLCSDULength;
end
% Create an object for On-Off network traffic pattern and add it to the
% specified UE. This object generates the uplink (UL) data traffic on the UE
ulApp = networkTrafficOnOff('PacketSize', ulPacketSize, 'GeneratePacket', true, ...
    'OnTime', simParameters.NumFramesSim/100, 'OffTime', 0, 'DataRate', ulDataRate);
UEs{ueIdx}.addApplication(ueIdx, simParameters.LCHConfig.LCID, ulApp);

dlPacketSize = simParameters.DLPacketSizesUEs(ueIdx);
dlDataRate = ceil(1000/simParameters.DLPacketPeriodicityUEs(ueIdx)) * dlPacketSize * 8e-3;
if dlPacketSize > simParameters.maxRLCSDULength
    dlPacketSize = simParameters.maxRLCSDULength;
end
% Create an object for On-Off network traffic pattern for the specified
% UE and add it to the gNB. This object generates the downlink (DL) data
% traffic on the gNB for the UE
dlApp = networkTrafficOnOff('PacketSize', dlPacketSize, 'GeneratePacket', true, ...
    'OnTime', simParameters.NumFramesSim/100, 'OffTime', 0, 'DataRate', dlDataRate);
gNB.addApplication(ueIdx, simParameters.LCHConfig.LCID, dlApp);

end

% Setup the UL and DL packet distribution mechanism
simParameters.MaxReceivers = simParameters.NumUEs;
% Create DL packet distribution object
dlPacketDistributionObj = hNRPacketDistribution(simParameters, 0); % 0 for DL
% Create UL packet distribution object
ulPacketDistributionObj = hNRPacketDistribution(simParameters, 1); % 1 for UL
hNRSetupPacketDistribution(simParameters, gNB, UEs, dlPacketDistributionObj, ulPacketDistributionObj);

```

Processing Loop

Simulation is run symbol by symbol to execute corresponding operations. If slot-based scheduling is chosen, the execution jumps from the current slot boundary to the next slot boundary. The operations executed are:

- Run the MAC and PHY layers of gNB
- Run the MAC and PHY layers of UEs
- Layer specific logging and visualization
- Advance the timer for the nodes. Every 1 ms it also sends trigger to application and RLC layers. Application layer and RLC layer execute their scheduled operations based on 1 ms timer trigger.

```

% Create an object for MAC (UL & DL) scheduling information visualization and logging
simSchedulingLogger = hNRSchedulingLogger(simParameters);
% Create an object for RLC layer metrics logging
simRLCLogger = hNRRLCLogger(simParameters, lchInfo);

```

```

% Create visualization object for RLC and MAC metrics
visualizer = hNRMetricsVisualizer(simParameters, 'RLCLogger', simRLCLogger, 'LCHInfo', lchInfo,

slotNum = 0;
tickGranularity = 1;
% Execute all the symbols in the simulation
for symbolNum = 1 : tickGranularity : numSymbolsSim
    symbolType = currentSymbolType(gNB); % Get current symbol type: DL/UL/Guard
    if mod(symbolNum - 1, 14) == 0
        slotNum = slotNum + 1;
    end

    % Run MAC and PHY layers of gNB
    run(gNB);

    % Run MAC and PHY layers of UEs
    for ueIdx = 1:simParameters.NumUEs
        run(UEs{ueIdx});
    end

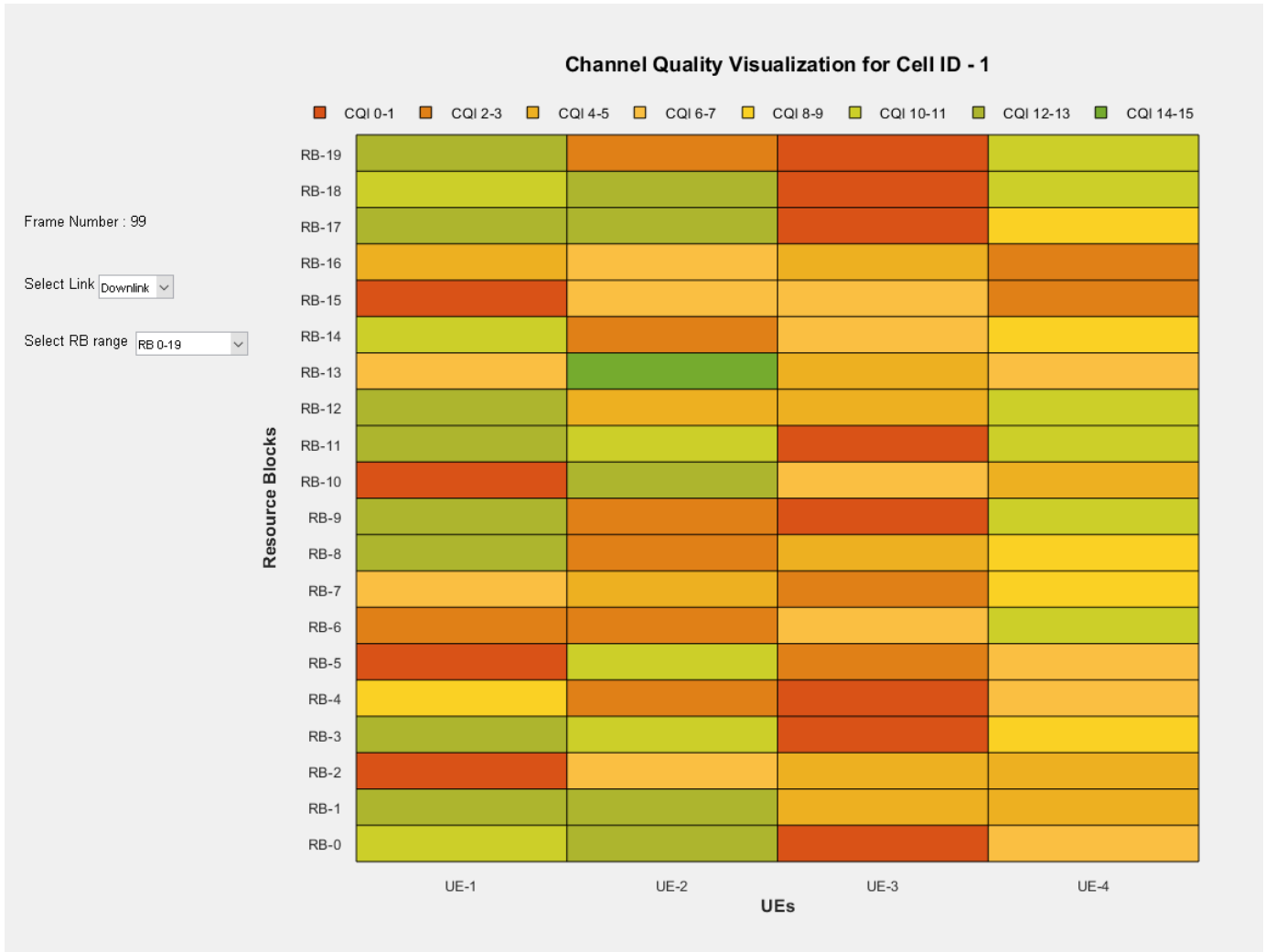
    % RLC logging (only at slot boundary)
    if mod(symbolNum - 1, 14) == 0 %
        logCellRLCStats(simRLCLogger, gNB, UEs);
    end

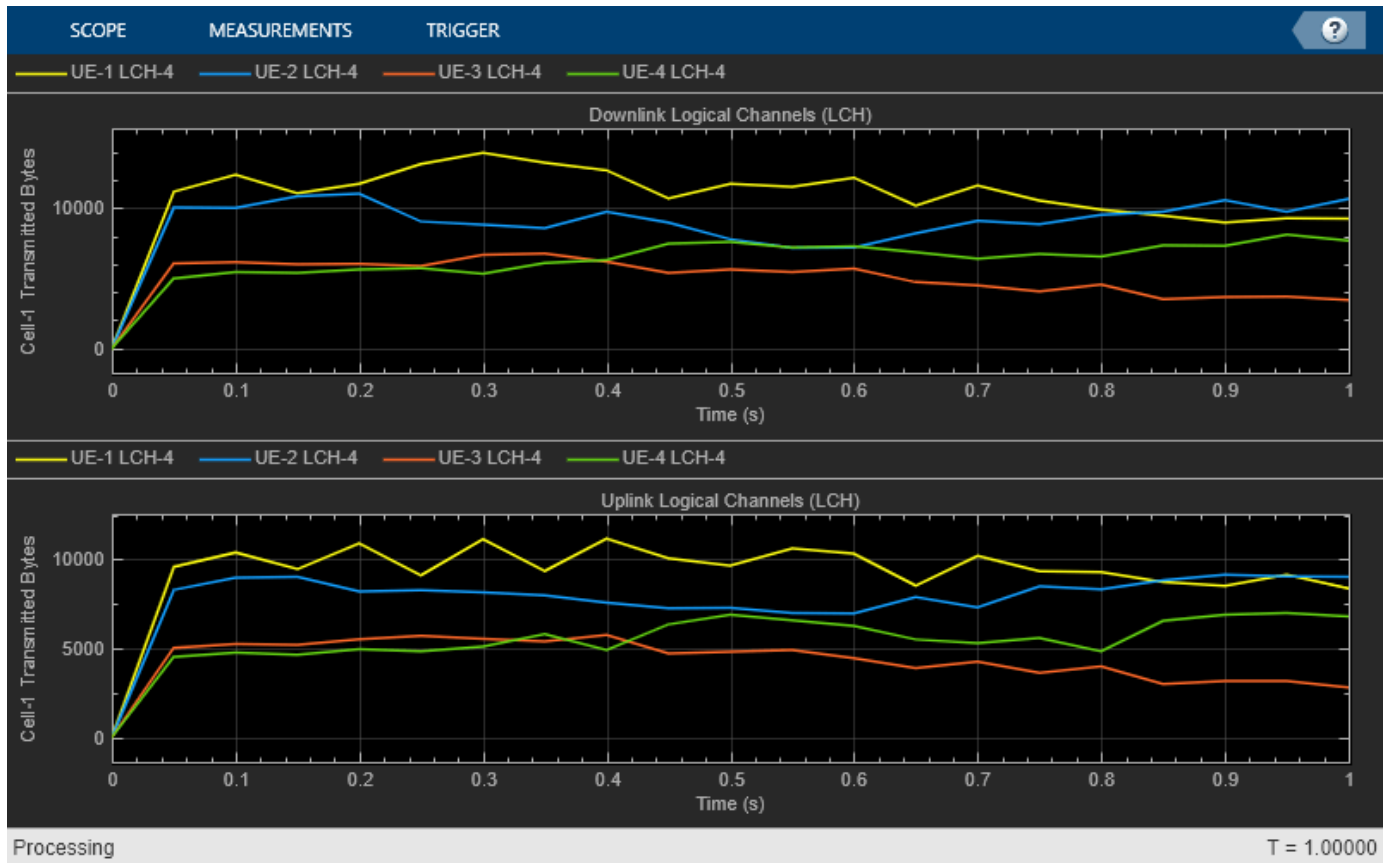
    % MAC logging
    logCellSchedulingStats(simSchedulingLogger, symbolNum, gNB, UEs);

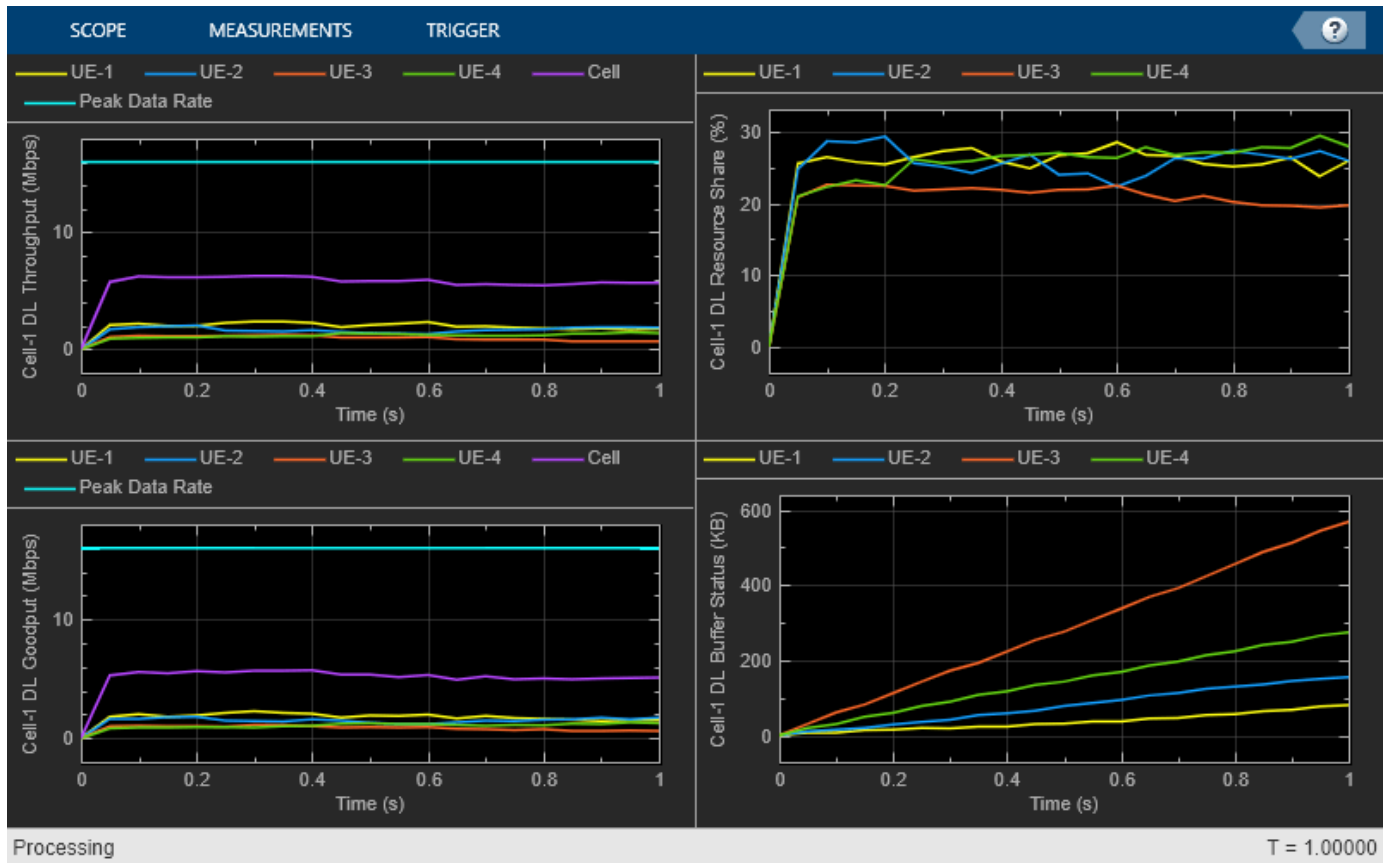
    % Visualization
    % Check slot boundary
    if symbolNum > 1 && ((simParameters.SchedulingType == 1 && mod(symbolNum, 14) == 0) || (simP
        % RB assignment visualization (if enabled)
        if simParameters.RBVisualization
            if mod(slotNum, rbAssignmentPlotPeriodicity) == 0
                % Plot at slot boundary, if the update periodicity is reached
                plotRBGrids(simSchedulingLogger);
            end
        end
        % CQI grid visualization (if enabled)
        if simParameters.CQIVisualization
            if mod(slotNum, numSlotsFrame) == 0 % Plot at frame boundary
                plotCQIRBGrids(simSchedulingLogger);
            end
        end
        % Plot scheduler metrics and RLC metrics visualization at slot
        % boundary, if the update periodicity is reached
        if mod(slotNum, simParameters.MetricsStepSize) == 0
            plotMetrics(visualizer, slotNum);
        end
    end

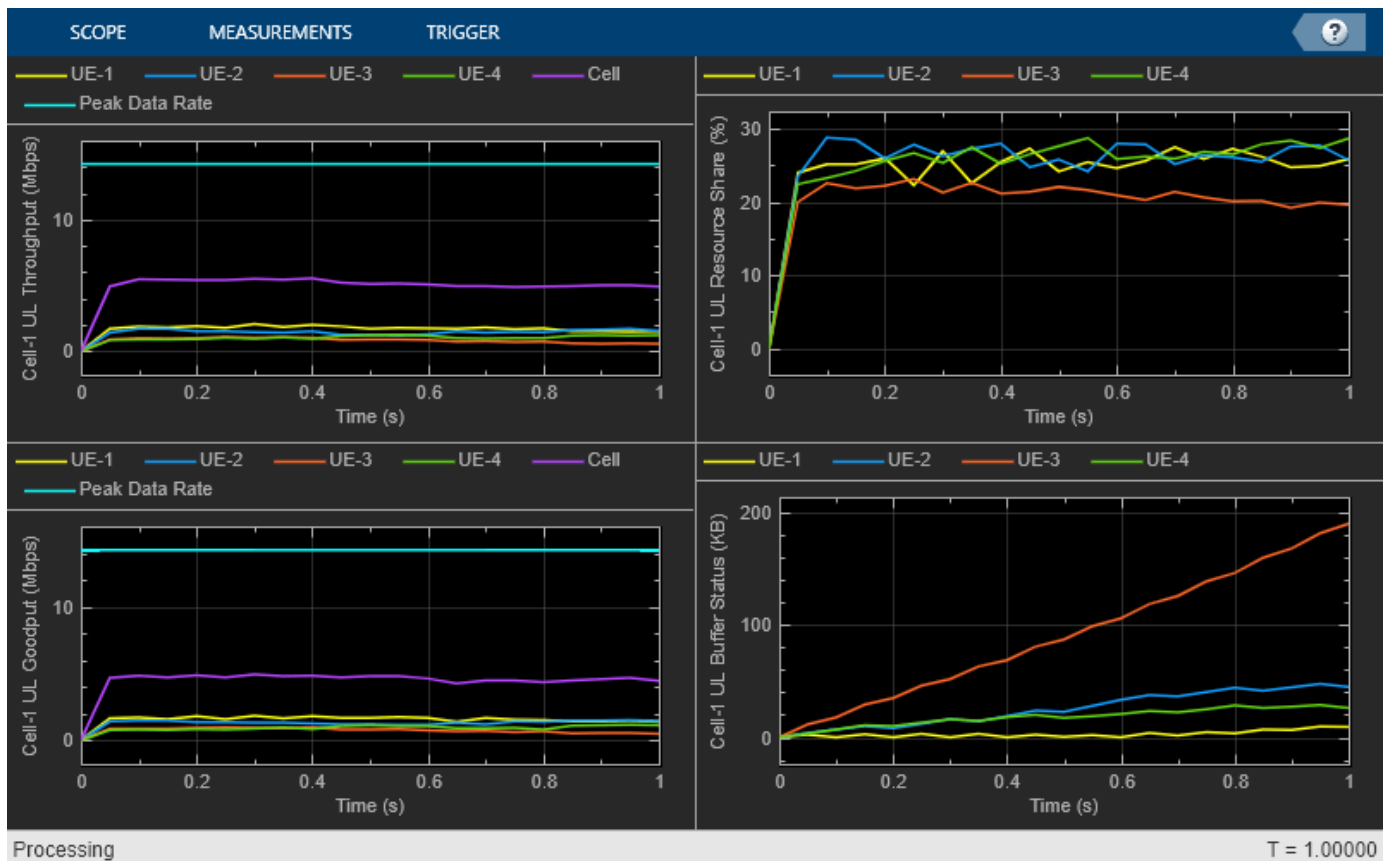
    % Advance timer ticks for gNB and UEs by 'tickGranularity' symbols
    advanceTimer(gNB, tickGranularity);
    for ueIdx = 1:simParameters.NumUEs % For all UEs
        advanceTimer(UEs{ueIdx}, tickGranularity);
    end
end
end

```







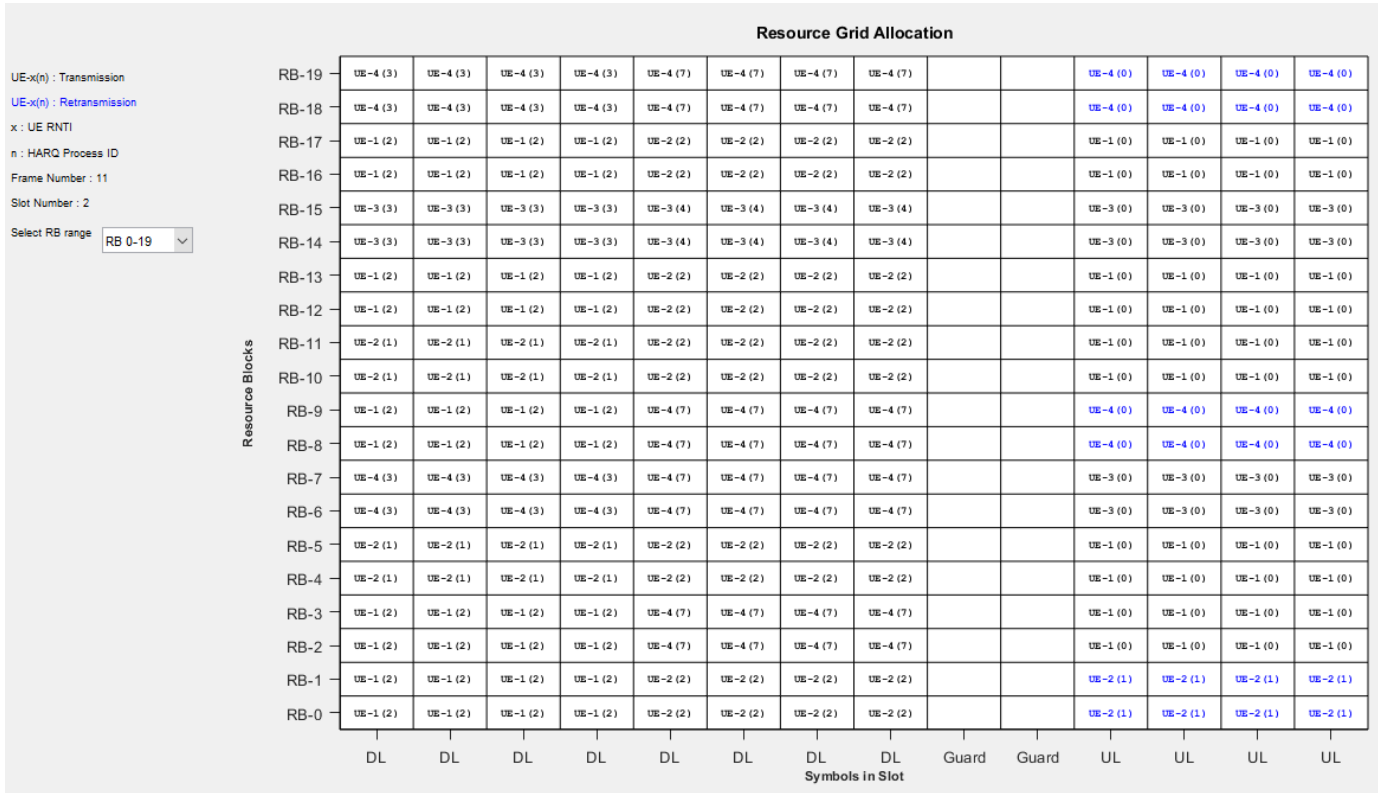


Simulation Visualization

The five types of runtime visualization shown are:

- *Display of CQI values for UEs over the PUSCH or PDSCH bandwidth:* For details, see the 'Channel Quality Visualization' figure.
- *Display of resource grid assignment to UEs:* The 2-D time-frequency grid shows the resource allocation to the UEs. For slot-based scheduling, it updates every 10 ms (frame length), and shows the RB allocation to the UEs in the previous frame. For symbol-based scheduling, it updates every slot, and shows the RB allocation of symbols of the previous slot. For details, see the 'Resource Grid Allocation' figure.
- *Display of UL scheduling metrics plots:* The 'Uplink Scheduler Performance Metrics' figure includes plots of the: UL throughput (per UE and cell), UL goodput (per UE and cell), resource share percentage among UEs (out of the total UL resources) to convey the fairness of scheduling, and pending UL buffer status of the UEs to show whether UEs are getting sufficient resources. The maximum achievable data rate value for UL throughput is `metricsStepSize` slots. shown with a dashed line in throughput and goodput plots. The performance metrics plots update every for every `metricsStepSize` slots.
- *Display of DL scheduling metrics plots:* Like uplink metrics plots, the 'Downlink Scheduler Performance Metrics' displays corresponding subplots for DL direction. The performance metrics plots update for every `metricsStepSize` slots

- *Display of RLC metrics plot:* The 'RLC Metrics Visualization' figure shows the number of bytes transmitted by RLC layer (per logical channel) for each UE. The RLC metrics plot updates for every metricsStepSize slots.



Simulation Logs

The parameters used for simulation and the simulation logs are saved in MAT-files for post simulation analysis and visualization. The simulation parameters are saved in MAT-file with filename as the value of configuration parameter `simParameters.ParametersLogFile`. The per time step logs, scheduling assignment logs, and RLC logs are saved in the MAT-file `simParameters.SimulationLogFile`. After the simulation, open it to load `TimeStepLogs`, `SchedulingAssignmentLogs`, and `RLCLogs` in the workspace.

Time step logs: The table shows a sample time step entry. Each row of the table represents a symbol or a slot, based on the chosen scheduling type (symbol-based or slot-based). The information in a row is for DL, if the type of symbol (or slot) is DL. Likewise, for UL symbol (or slot).

Timestamp	Frame	Slot	Symbol	Type	RBG Allocation Bitmap	MCS	HARQ Process	NDI	Tx Type	CQI for UEs	HARQ NDI Status	Throughput Bytes	Goodput Bytes	Buffer Status of UEs
50	5	0	0	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....
51.2857	5	1	4	'UL'	{0011010101000} {1100000000100} {0000101010011} {0000000000000}	[10128-1]	[036-1]	[001-1]	'newTx','newTx','reTx','noTx'	{589878989112.....} {5734959791015.....} {399694989913.....} {977378588159.....}	{1001010..} {1101010..} {1001011..} {1001010..}	[4654380]	[465400]	[29948013567177567137070]
52	5	2	0	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....

Each row contains the following information:

- *Timestamp:* Timestamp (in milliseconds)

- *Frame*: Frame number.
- *Slot*: Slot number in the frame.
- *Symbol*: Symbol number in the slot (Only for symbol-based scheduling).
- *Type*: Symbol (or Slot) type as 'DL', 'UL', or 'Guard'. For slot-based scheduling, type can only be DL/UL. As the slot containing the guard symbols is assumed to be a DL slot with guard symbols at the end of the slot.
- *RBG Allocation Bitmap*: N -by- P bitmap matrix, where N is the number of UEs and P is the number of RBGs in the bandwidth. If an RBG is assigned to a particular UE, the corresponding bit is set to 1. For example, [0 0 1 1 0 1 0 1 0 1 0 0 0; 1 1 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 1 0 0; 0 0 0 0 1 0 1 0 1 0 0 1 1; 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0] means, that the bandwidth has 13 RBGs and UE-1 is assigned the RBG indices 2, 3, 5, 7, and 9; UE-2 is assigned the RBG indices: 0, 1, and 10; UE-3 is assigned the RBG indices: 4, 6, 8, 11, and 12; and UE-4 is not assigned any RBG.
- *MCS*: Row vector of length N where N is the number of UEs. Each value corresponds to the modulation and coding scheme (MCS) index for the PUSCH or PDSCH transmission. For example, [10 12 8 -1] means that only UE-1, UE-2, and UE-3 are assigned UL resources (symbol type is 'UL') for this symbol and use MCS values 10, 12, and 8, respectively.
- *HARQ Process*: Row vector of length N , where N is the number of UEs. The value is the HARQ process ID used by UE for the PUSCH transmission or used by gNB for PDSCH transmission. For example, [0 3 6 -1] means that only UE-1, UE-2, and UE-3 are assigned UL resources (symbol type is 'UL') for this symbol and use the HARQ process IDs 0, 3, and 6, respectively.
- *NDI*: Row vector of length N , where N is the number of UEs. The value is the NDI flag value in the assignment for PUSCH or PDSCH transmission. For example, [0 0 1 -1] means that only UE-1, UE-2, and UE-3 are assigned UL resources for this symbol and use the NDI flag values (which determine whether a new transmission or a retransmission is done) are 0, 0, and 1, respectively.
- *Tx Type*: Tx Type specifies the transmission type (new transmission or retransmission). Row vector of length N , where N is the number of UEs. Possible values are either 'newTx', 'reTx', or 'noTx'. 'noTx' means that the UE is not allotted PUSCH or PDSCH resources. For example: ['newTx' 'newTx' 'reTx' 'noTx'] means that only UE-1, UE-2, and UE-3 are assigned UL resources for this symbol. UE-1 and UE-2 transmit a new packet from the specified HARQ process, while UE-3 retransmits the packet in the buffer of the specified HARQ process.
- *CQI for UEs*: N -by- P matrix, where N is the number of UEs and P is the number of RBs in the bandwidth. A matrix element at position (i, j) corresponds to the CQI value for UE with RNTI i at RB j .
- *HARQ NDI Status*: N -by- P matrix, where N is the number of UEs and P is the number of HARQ processes. A matrix element at position (i, j) is the last received NDI flag at UE i for DL or UL HARQ process ID j . For new transmissions, this value and the NDI flag in the PUSCH or PDSCH assignment must toggle for the HARQ process in the assignment.
- *Throughput Bytes*: Row vector of length N , where N is the number of UEs. The values represent UL or DL MAC bytes transmitted by or for the UEs in this symbol. Note that the total throughput bytes for the complete PUSCH or PDSCH transmission are shown in the row corresponding to the first symbol of the transmission.
- *Goodput Bytes*: Row vector of length N , where N is the number of UEs. The values represent new UL or DL transmission MAC bytes transmitted by or for the UEs in this symbol. Like throughput, all the goodput bytes for the complete PUSCH or PDSCH are shown in the row corresponding to first symbol of the transmission.
- *Buffer Status of UEs*: Row vector of length N , where N is the number of UEs. The values represent the amount of UL direction pending buffers at UEs (or DL direction pending buffers for UEs at gNB).

Scheduling assignment logs: Information of all the scheduling assignments and related information is logged in this table. Each row is one UL or DL assignment. For details of log format, see the 'Simulation Logs' section of “NR FDD Scheduling Performance Evaluation” on page 5-55 example.

RLC logs: For more information on the RLC log format, see “NR PUSCH FDD Scheduling” on page 5-37.

You can run the script NRPostSimVisualization to get a post simulation visualization of logs. In the post simulation script, you are provided with variable `isLogReplay`, which provides these options to visualize 'Resource Grid Allocation' and 'Channel Quality Visualization' figures.

- Set `isLogReplay` to `true` for a replay of the simulation logs.
- Set `isLogReplay` to `false` to analyze the details of a particular frame or a particular slot of a frame. In the 'Resource Grid Allocation' window, input the frame number and slot number to visualize the resource assignment of the particular slot, if scheduling type is symbol-based. For slot-based scheduling, enter the frame number to visualize the resource assignment for the entire frame. The frame number entered here controls the frame number for 'Channel Quality Visualization' figure too.

```
% Read the logs and write them to MAT-files
% Get the logs
simulationLogs = cell(1,1);
logInfo = struct('TimeStepLogs',[], 'SchedulingAssignmentLogs',[] , 'RLCLogs',[]);
[logInfo.TimeStepLogs] = getSchedulingLogs(simSchedulingLogger);
logInfo.SchedulingAssignmentLogs = getGrantLogs(simSchedulingLogger); % Scheduling assignments L
logInfo.RLCLogs = getRLCLogs(simRLCLogger); % RLC statistics logs
simulationLogs{1} = logInfo;

save(simParameters.SimulationLogFile, 'simulationLogs'); % Save simulation logs in a MAT-file
save(simParameters.ParametersLogFile, 'simParameters'); % Save simulation parameters in a MAT-fi
```

Further Exploration

You can use this example to further explore these options.

Custom scheduling

You can modify the existing scheduling strategy to implement a custom one. Refer to 'Further Exploration' section of “NR FDD Scheduling Performance Evaluation” on page 5-55 example to see the steps involved.

Use 5G Toolbox™ physical layer

You can also switch from passthrough PHY layer to 5G Toolbox™ physical layer processing by creating PHY objects using `hNRGNBPhy.m` and `hNRUEPhy.m`. For more details, see 'gNB and UEs Setup' section of “NR Cell Performance Evaluation with Physical Layer Integration” on page 5-92.

Use RLC AM

You can also switch the operating mode of an RLC entity from UM to acknowledged mode (AM) by modifying the input structure fields `EntityType` and `SeqNumFieldLength` in the `configureLogicalChannel` function of `hNRNode.m`. For more details, see 'Further Exploration' section of “NR FDD Scheduling Performance Evaluation” on page 5-55.

Based on the chosen scheduling strategy, this example demonstrates the assignment of UL and DL resources to multiple UEs by the gNB. UL and DL scheduling performance is analyzed based on

runtime plots of throughput, goodput, resource share fairness, and pending buffer status of the UEs. A more thorough post simulation analysis by using the saved logs gives a detailed picture of the operations happening on a per symbol or per slot basis.

Appendix

The example uses these helper functions and classes:

- hWirelessNode.m: Wireless node base class
- hNRNode.m: NR node base class
- hNRGNB.m: gNB node functionality
- hNRUE.m: UE node functionality
- helperApplication.m: Application layer functionality
- hNRRLCEntity.m: Base class for RLC UM and AM entities
- hNRUMEntity.m: RLC UM functionality
- hNRAMEntity.m: RLC AM functionality
- hNRRLCDataPDUInfo.m: Creates RLC PDU information object
- hNRRLCBufferStatus.m: Generates RLC buffer status information object
- hNRRLCDataReassembly.m: Create an RLC SDU reassembly information object
- hNRMAC.m: NR MAC base class functionality
- hNRGNBMAC.m: gNB MAC functionality
- hNRUEMAC.m: UE MAC functionality
- hNRScheduler.m: Core MAC scheduler functionality
- hNRSchedulerBestCQI.m: Implements best CQI scheduling strategy
- hNRSchedulerProportionalFair.m: Implements proportional fair scheduling strategy
- hNRSchedulerRoundRobin.m: Implements round robin scheduling strategy
- hNRMACBSR.m: Generates buffer status report
- hNRMACBSRParser.m: Parses buffer status report
- hNRMACSubPDU.m: Generates MAC subPDU
- hNRMACPaddingSubPDU.m: Generates MAC subPDU with padding
- hNRMACMultiplex.m: Generates MAC PDU
- hNRMACPDUParser.m: Parses MAC PDU
- hNewHARQProcesses.m: Creates new HARQ process
- hUpdateHARQProcess.m: Updates HARQ process
- hNRPhyInterface.m: PHY layer interface class
- hNRGNBPassthroughPhy.m: gNB passthrough PHY layer
- hNRUEPassthroughPhy.m: UE passthrough PHY layer
- hNRGNBPhy.m: gNB PHY functionality
- hNRUEPhy.m: UE PHY functionality
- hNRPUSCHInfo.m: PUSCH information structure passed by MAC to PHY layer
- hNRPDSCHInfo.m: PDSCH information structure passed by MAC to PHY layer

- hNR RxIndicationInfo.m: Information structure passed by PHY layer to MAC along with MAC PDU
- hNR UplinkGrantFormat.m: UL assignment format
- hNR DownlinkGrantFormat.m: DL assignment format
- hNR PacketDistribution.m: Creates packet distribution object
- hNR PhyRxBuffer.m: Creates PHY signal reception buffer object
- hNR SkipWeakTimingOffset.m: Skip timing offset estimates with weak correlation
- hNR RLCLogger.m: Implements RLC statistics logging and visualization functionality
- hNR SchedulingLogger.m: Implements scheduling information logging and visualization functionality
- hNR PhyLogger.m: Implements uplink and downlink block error rate logging and visualization functionality
- hNR SchedulingTDDValidateConfig.m: Validates simulation configuration
- hNR SetUpPacketDistribution.m: Set up packet distribution functionality
- hNR PacketWriter.m: Captures MAC packets
- hNR PacketInfo.m: Metadata format for capturing MAC packets
- hNR MetricsVisualizer.m: Implements metrics visualization functionality
- NRPostSimVisualization.m: Post simulation visualization script

References

- [1] 3GPP TS 38.214. "NR; Physical layer procedures for data." *3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Radio Access Network*.
- [2] 3GPP TS 38.321. "NR; Medium Access Control (MAC) protocol specification." *3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Radio Access Network*.
- [3] 3GPP TS 38.322. "NR; Radio Link Control (RLC) protocol specification." *3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Radio Access Network*.
- [4] 3GPP TS 38.331. "NR; Radio Resource Control (RRC) protocol specification." *3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Radio Access Network*.

See Also

Related Examples

- "NR FDD Scheduling Performance Evaluation" on page 5-55

NR Cell Performance Evaluation with Physical Layer Integration

This example demonstrates the integration of high fidelity 5G Toolbox™ physical layer in a 5G New Radio (NR) node. The example models a 5G NR cell consisting of a set of user equipment (UE) connected to a gNB. The NR stack on the nodes includes radio link control (RLC), medium access control (MAC), and physical (PHY) layers. The example also models channel impairments that you can customize. For faster MAC focused simulations you can switch to passthrough PHY layer or you can integrate with a custom PHY layer.

Introduction

The example considers the following operations within gNB and UEs that facilitate uplink (UL) and downlink (DL) transmissions and receptions.

	Operations
gNB	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Run the scheduling algorithm to assign uplink and downlink resources • Send the uplink and downlink assignments to the UEs • Receive the physical uplink shared channel (PUSCH) transmissions from the UEs • Adhere to the downlink assignments for physical downlink shared channel (PDSCH) transmission • Receive the feedback of the PDSCHs from the UEs • Send the channel state information reference signals (CSI-RS) to the UEs
UEs	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Send the pending buffer status report to gNB • Receive the uplink and downlink assignments from the gNB • Adhere to the received uplink assignments from the gNB for PUSCH transmission • Receive the PDSCH transmission from the gNB • Send feedback for the received PDSCHs • Measure the channel quality on received CSI-RS and report it to gNB

The complete PUSCH or PDSCH packet is transmitted in the first symbol of its allocated symbol set. Receiver processes the packet in the symbol just after the last symbol in the allocated symbol set.

This example models:

- Slot based and symbol based DL and UL scheduling.
- Configurable subcarrier spacing resulting in different slot durations.
- Noncontiguous allocation of frequency-domain resources in terms of resource block groups (RBGs).
- Asynchronous adaptive hybrid automatic repeat request (HARQ) mechanism in UL and DL.
- PUSCH demodulation reference signal (DM-RS) and PDSCH DM-RS.
- DL channel quality measurement by UEs based on the CSI-RS received from gNB. By default, the CSI-RS resource element is transmitted in each slot for each resource block (RB) in DL bandwidth for all UEs. The same CSI-RS configuration is applicable to all the UEs. The example does not model the sounding reference signal (SRS) for measuring UL channel quality. UL channel quality is assumed to be the same as the DL channel quality measured on CSI-RS.

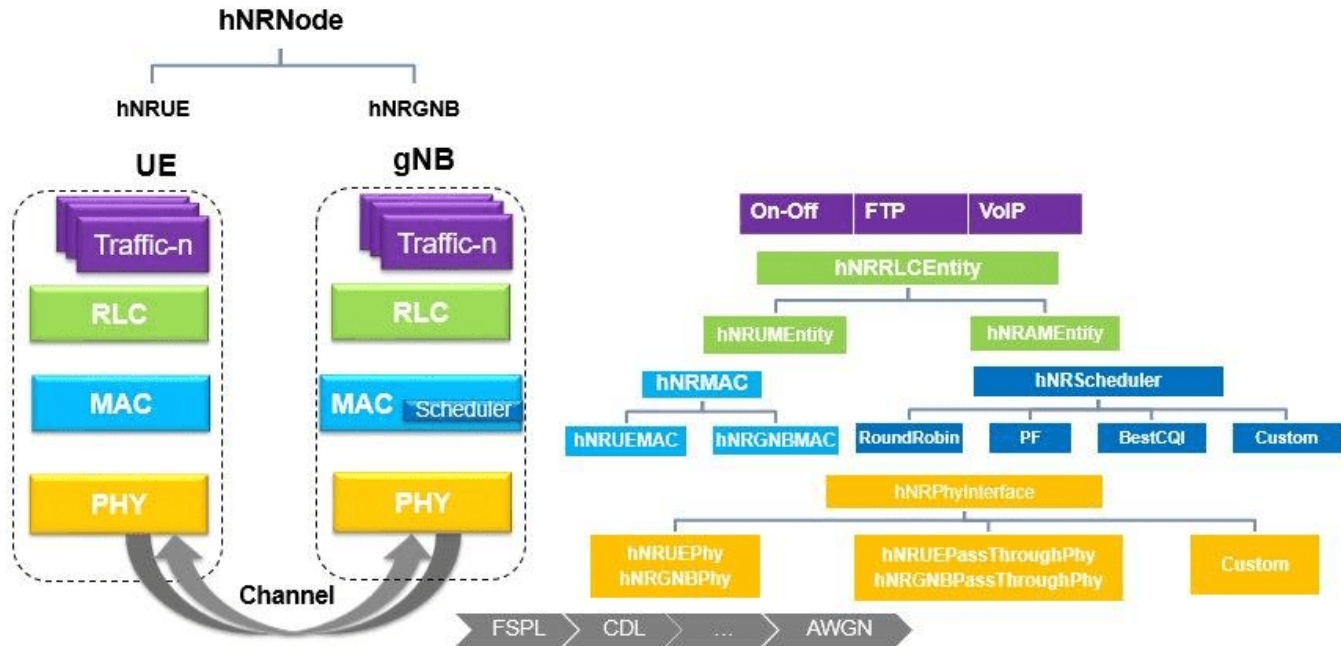
- Free space path loss (FSPL), additive white Gaussian noise (AWGN), and clustered delay line (CDL) propagation channel model.
- Single input single output (SISO) antenna configuration.
- Single bandwidth part across the whole carrier.

Control packets such as UL assignment, DL assignment, buffer status report (BSR), PDSCH feedback, and channel quality indicator (CQI) report, are assumed to be sent out of band, that is, without the need of resources for transmission and assured error-free reception.

NR Protocol Stack

A node (gNB or UE) is a composition of NR stack layers. The helper classes hNRGNB.m and hNRUE.m create gNB and UE nodes respectively, containing the RLC, MAC, and PHY layers.

5G Node Composition



RLC Layer

RLC operates in unacknowledged mode (UM) with a single logical channel (LCH). For the RLC layer, both hNRGNB.m and hNRUE.m use hNRUMEntity.m to implement the functionality of both the RLC transmitter and receiver.

MAC Layer

For the MAC layer, hNRGNB.m uses the helper class hNRGNBMAC.m to implement the gNB MAC functionality and hNRUE.m uses hNRUEMAC.m to implement the UE MAC functionality. gNB MAC has UL and DL schedulers that assign UL and DL resources, respectively to the UEs. For more details about UL and DL scheduling to assign the PUSCH and the PDSCH resources, see the “NR FDD Scheduling Performance Evaluation” on page 5-55 example. Schedulers are implemented in hNRSchedulerRoundRobin.m (Round robin strategy), hNRSchedulerProportionalFair.m (Proportional

fair strategy), and `hNRSchedulerBestCQI.m` (Best CQI strategy) helper classes. All these schedulers are inherited from the base class `hNRScheduler.m`, which contains the core scheduling functionality.

PHY Layer and Channel Modeling

The example uses 5G Toolbox™ for PHY layer operations of UE and gNB. On the Tx side, the operations involve the physical layer processing of a transport block received from MAC and its transmission. On the Rx side, there is processing of received waveform and sending the decoded information to MAC. For more details on PDSCH and PUSCH processing chains, refer to the “NR PDSCH Throughput” on page 1-56 example and “NR PUSCH Throughput” on page 2-45 example, respectively. For the PHY layer, `hNRGNB.m` uses the helper class `hNRGNBPhy.m` to implement the gNB PHY layer functionality and `hNRUE.m` uses `hNRUEPhy.m` to implement the UE PHY layer functionality. For channel impairments, the example models FSPL, AWGN, and the CDL propagation channel model.

The example uses a lookup table to map the received signal to interference and noise ratio (SINR) to CQI index for 0.1 block error rate (BLER). The lookup table corresponds to the CQI table as per 3GPP TS 38.214 Table 5.2.2.1-3. For more information about the process of generating this lookup table, refer to “5G NR Downlink CSI Reporting” on page 4-47 example.

MAC-PHY Interface

Following are the major interface calls between the MAC layer and PHY layer. For more details, refer to `hNRPhyInterface.m`.

- `txDataRequest`: The request from MAC to PHY to transmit either PDSCH (by gNB) or PUSCH (by UE). MAC calls this request at the start of Tx time. The PHY processing time is not modeled in this example.
- `rxDataRequest`: The request from MAC to PHY to receive either PUSCH (by gNB) or PDSCH (by UE). MAC calls this request at the start of Rx time.
- `dlControlRequest`: The request from MAC to PHY for non-data downlink transmissions or receptions. For gNB, this request is sent by gNB MAC for DL transmissions. For UE, it is sent by UE MAC for DL receptions. MAC sends the request at the start of a DL slot for all the scheduled DL transmission or receptions in the slot. This interface is used for all the DL transmission and receptions, except PDSCH. `txDataRequest` and `rxDataRequest` are used for PDSCH. In this example, gNB MAC uses this interface to send CSI-RS, and UE MAC uses it to receive CSI-RS.
- `registerMACInterfaceFcn`: The one-time setup call to register MAC callback functions at PHY. PHY uses the callbacks to send information up the stack to MAC. gNB PHY uses the callback to send decoded UL packets to MAC. UE PHY uses the callbacks to send decoded DL packets and DL channel quality measured on CSI-RS to MAC.

Pluggable PHY

You can plug and use different variations of PHY layer in your system. In a simulation run, all the nodes use the same variation of the PHY layer. The MAC is unaware of the type of PHY layer underneath, because the MAC uses the MAC-PHY interface to interact with the PHY layer. By default the example uses 5G Toolbox™ to model the PHY layer. To use a passthrough PHY layer, refer to “NR PUSCH FDD Scheduling” on page 5-37, “NR FDD Scheduling Performance Evaluation” on page 5-55, and “NR TDD Symbol Based Scheduling Performance Evaluation” on page 5-72 examples. A passthrough PHY layer does not do any physical layer processing of packets.

Scenario Configuration

Set the parameters for simulation.

```

rng('default'); % Reset the random number generator
simParameters = []; % Clear the simParameters variable
simParameters.NumFramesSim = 30; % Simulation time in terms of number of 10 ms frames
simParameters.SchedulingType = 0; % Set the value to 0 (slot based scheduling) or 1 (symbol based)

% Number of UEs in the simulation. UEs are assumed to have sequential radio
% network temporary identifiers (RNTIs) from 1 to NumUEs. If you change the
% number of UEs, ensure that the following simulation parameters are array
% of length equal to NumUEs: simParameters.UEDistance,
% simParameters.ULPacketPeriodicityUEs, simParameters.ULPacketSizesUEs,
% simParameters.DLPacketPeriodicityUEs, simParameters.DLPacketSizesUEs
simParameters.NumUEs = 4;
simParameters.UEDistance = [100; 400; 1500; 1000];

% Set the channel bandwidth to 5 MHz and subcarrier spacing (SCS) to 15
% kHz as defined in 3GPP TS 38.104 Section 5.3.2
% RB count for 5 MHz band with 15 kHz SCS. The complete
% bandwidth is assumed to be allotted for PUSCH/PDSCH
simParameters.NumRBs = 25;
simParameters.SCS = 15; % kHz
simParameters.DLCarrierFreq = 2.635e9; % Hz
simParameters.ULCarrierFreq = 2.515e9; % Hz
% The UL and DL carriers are assumed to have symmetric channel
% bandwidth
simParameters.DLBandwidth = 5e6; % Hz
simParameters.ULBandwidth = 5e6; % Hz

simParameters.UETxPower = 23; % Tx power for all the UEs in dBm
simParameters.GNBTxPower = 29; % Tx power for gNB in dBm
simParameters.GNBRxGain = 11; % Receiver antenna gain at gNB

% SINR to CQI mapping table for 0.1 BLER
simParameters.SINR90pc = [-5.46 -0.46 4.54 9.05 11.54 14.04 15.54 18.04 ...
    20.04 22.43 24.93 25.43 27.43 30.43 33.43];

simParameters.SchedulerStrategy = 'PF'; % Supported scheduling strategies: 'PF', 'RR', and 'Best'
% Maximum limit on the RBs allotted for PUSCH and PDSCH
% Transmission limit is applicable for new PUSCH and PDSCH assignments and
% not for the retransmissions
simParameters.RBAllocationLimitUL = 15; % For PUSCH
simParameters.RBAllocationLimitDL = 15; % For PDSCH

% Logging and Visualization Configuration
% The parameters CQIVisualization and RBVisualization control the display
% of these visualizations: (i) CQI visualization of RBs (ii) RB assignment
% visualization. By default, the 'RBVisualization' plot is disabled. You
% can enable it by setting to 'true'
simParameters.CQIVisualization = true;
simParameters.RBVisualization = false;
% The output metrics plots are updated periodically NumMetricsSteps times within the simulation
simParameters.NumMetricsSteps = 20;
% MAT-files to write the logs into. They are used for post simulation analysis and visualization
simParameters.ParametersLogFile = 'simParameters'; % For logging the simulation parameters
simParameters.SimulationLogFile = 'simulationLogs'; % For logging the simulation logs

% Enable packet capture (PCAP)
simParameters.PCAPLogging = false; % Set the value to true to enable packet capture for UEofInterest
simParameters.UEofInterest = 1; % Log the packets of UE with this RNTI

```

```

% Set the periodic UL and DL application traffic pattern for UEs
simParameters.ULPacketPeriodicityUEs = [10; 20; 20; 30]; % Periodicity (in ms) at which the UL packets are generated
simParameters.ULPacketSizesUEs = [8000; 8000; 7500; 8500]; % Size of the UL packets (in bytes) generated
simParameters.DLPacketPeriodicityUEs = [10; 20; 30; 30]; % Periodicity (in ms) at which the DL packets are generated
simParameters.DLPacketSizesUEs = [10000; 9000; 7500; 7500]; % Size of the DL packets generated (in bytes)
% Validate the simulation configuration
hNRCellPerformanceWithPhysicalLayerValidateConfig(simParameters);

```

Derived Parameters

Based on the primary configuration parameters, compute the derived parameters. Additionally, set some example specific constants.

```

simParameters.DuplexMode = 0; % FDD
simParameters.NCellID = 1; % Physical cell ID
simParameters.Position = [0 0 0]; % Position of gNB in (x,y,z) coordinates
simParameters.CSIRSRowNumber = 2; % Possible row numbers for single transmit antenna case are 1 and 2
simParameters.SubbandSize = 8; % Size of sub-band for CQI reporting in terms of number of RBs
simParameters.ChannelModelType = 'CDL'; % To model CDL propagation channel
% gNB ensures that PUSCH assignment is received at UEs PUSCHPrepTime ahead
% of the transmission time
simParameters.PUSCHPrepTime = 200; % In microseconds
% Slot duration for the selected SCS and number of slots in a 10 ms frame
slotDuration = 1/(simParameters.SCS/15); % In ms
numSlotsFrame = 10/slotDuration; % Number of slots in a 10 ms frame
numSlotsSim = simParameters.NumFramesSim * numSlotsFrame; % Number of slots in the simulation

% Interval at which metrics visualization updates in terms of number of
% slots. As one slot is the finest time-granularity of the simulation, make
% sure that MetricsStepSize is an integer
simParameters.MetricsStepSize = ceil(numSlotsSim / simParameters.NumMetricsSteps);
if mod(numSlotsSim, simParameters.NumMetricsSteps) ~= 0
    % Update the NumMetricsSteps parameter if NumSlotsSim is not
    % completely divisible by it
    simParameters.NumMetricsSteps = floor(numSlotsSim / simParameters.MetricsStepSize);
end

numLogicalChannels = 1; % Only 1 logical channel is assumed in each UE in this example
% Logical channel id (logical channel ID of data radio bearers starts from 4)
simParameters.LCHConfig.LCID = 4;

% RLC entity direction. Value 0 represents DL only, 1
% represents UL only and 2 represents both UL and DL
% direction. Setting entity direction to have both UL and DL
simParameters.RLCCConfig.EntityDir = 2;

% Create RLC channel configuration structure
rlcChannelConfigStruct.LCGID = 1; % Mapping between logical channel and logical channel group ID
rlcChannelConfigStruct.Priority = 1; % Priority of each logical channel
rlcChannelConfigStruct.PBR = 8; % Prioritized bitrate (PBR), in kilobytes per second, of each logical channel
rlcChannelConfigStruct.BSD = 10; % Bucket size duration (BSD), in ms, of each logical channel
rlcChannelConfigStruct.EntityType = simParameters.RLCCConfig.EntityDir;
rlcChannelConfigStruct.LogicalChannelID = simParameters.LCHConfig.LCID;

% Maximum RLC SDU length (in bytes) as per 3GPP TS 38.323
simParameters.maxRLCSDULength = 9000;

```



```

if ~isfield(simParameters, 'SchedulingType') || simParameters.SchedulingType == 0 % If no scheduler
    rbAssignmentPlotPeriodicity = numSlotsFrame; % Update RB assignment visualization every frame
    tickGranularity = 14;
    simParameters.PUSCHMappingType = 'A';
    simParameters.PDSCHMappingType = 'A';
else % Symbol based scheduling
    rbAssignmentPlotPeriodicity = 1; % Update RB assignment visualization every slot
    tickGranularity = 1;
    simParameters.PUSCHMappingType = 'B';
    simParameters.PDSCHMappingType = 'B';
end

```

gNB and UEs Setup

Create the gNB and UE objects, initialize the channel quality information for UEs, and set up the logical channel at gNB and UE. The helper classes hNRGNB.m and hNRUE.m create gNB node and UE node respectively, containing the RLC, MAC and PHY layers.

```

gNB = hNRGNB(simParameters); % Create gNB node
% Create scheduler
switch(simParameters.SchedulerStrategy)
    case 'RR' % Round robin scheduler
        scheduler = hNRSchedulerRoundRobin(simParameters);
    case 'PF' % Proportional fair scheduler
        scheduler = hNRSchedulerProportionalFair(simParameters);
    case 'BestCQI' % Best CQI scheduler
        scheduler = hNRSchedulerBestCQI(simParameters);
end
addScheduler(gNB, scheduler); % Add scheduler to gNB

gNB.PhyEntity = hNRGNBPhy(simParameters); % Create the PHY layer instance
configurePhy(gNB, simParameters); % Configure the PHY layer
setPhyInterface(gNB); % Set the interface to PHY layer

% Create the set of UE nodes
UEs = cell(simParameters.NumUEs, 1);
for ueIdx=1:simParameters.NumUEs
    simParameters.Position = [simParameters.UEDistance(ueIdx) 0 0]; % Position of UE
    UEs{ueIdx} = hNRUE(simParameters, ueIdx);
    UEs{ueIdx}.PhyEntity = hNRUEPhy(simParameters, ueIdx); % Create the PHY layer instance
    configurePhy(UEs{ueIdx}, simParameters); % Configure the PHY layer
    setPhyInterface(UEs{ueIdx}); % Set up the interface to PHY layer

    % Setup logical channel at gNB for the UE
    configureLogicalChannel(gNB, ueIdx, rlcChannelConfigStruct);
    % Setup logical channel at UE
    configureLogicalChannel(UEs{ueIdx}, ueIdx, rlcChannelConfigStruct);

    % Add data traffic pattern generators to gNB and UE nodes
    ulPacketSize = simParameters.ULPacketSizesUEs(ueIdx);
    % Calculate the data rate (in kbps) of On-Off traffic pattern using
    % packet size (in bytes) and packet interval (in ms)
    ulDataRate = ceil(1000/simParameters.ULPacketPeriodicityUEs(ueIdx)) * ulPacketSize * 8e-3;
    % Limit the size of the generated application packet to the maximum RLC
    % SDU size. The maximum supported RLC SDU size is 9000 bytes
    if ulPacketSize > simParameters.maxRLCSDULength
        ulPacketSize = simParameters.maxRLCSDULength;
    end
end

```

```

% Create an object for On-Off network traffic pattern and add it to the
% specified UE. This object generates the uplink data traffic on the UE
ulApp = networkTrafficOnOff('PacketSize', ulPacketSize, 'GeneratePacket', true, ...
    'OnTime', simParameters.NumFramesSim/100, 'OffTime', 0, 'DataRate', ulDataRate);
UEs{ueIdx}.addApplication(ueIdx, simParameters.LCHConfig.LCID, ulApp);

dlPacketSize = simParameters.DLPacketSizesUEs(ueIdx);
dlDataRate = ceil(1000/simParameters.DLPacketPeriodicityUEs(ueIdx)) * dlPacketSize *8e-3;
if dlPacketSize > simParameters.maxRLCSDULength
    dlPacketSize = simParameters.maxRLCSDULength;
end

% Create an object for On-Off network traffic pattern for the specified
% UE and add it to the gNB. This object generates the downlink data
% traffic on the gNB for the UE
dlApp = networkTrafficOnOff('PacketSize', dlPacketSize, 'GeneratePacket', true, ...
    'OnTime', simParameters.NumFramesSim/100, 'OffTime', 0, 'DataRate', dlDataRate);
gNB.addApplication(ueIdx, simParameters.LCHConfig.LCID, dlApp);
end
% Setup the UL and DL packet distribution mechanism
simParameters.MaxReceivers = simParameters.NumUEs;
% Create DL packet distribution object
dlPacketDistributionObj = hNRPacketDistribution(simParameters, 0); % 0 for DL
% Create UL packet distribution object
ulPacketDistributionObj = hNRPacketDistribution(simParameters, 1); % 1 for UL
hNRSetupPacketDistribution(simParameters, gNB, UEs, dlPacketDistributionObj, ulPacketDistributionObj);

% Enable PCAP logging
if simParameters.PCAPLogging
    % To generate unique file name for every simulation run
    ueCapturefileName = strcat('CellID-', num2str(simParameters.NCellID), '_ue-', num2str(simParameters.UEofInterest));
    enablePacketLogging(UEs{simParameters.UEofInterest}.PhyEntity, ueCapturefileName);

    % Uncomment the below code to enable packet capture at gNB
    % gnbCapturefileName = strcat('CellID-', num2str(simParameters.NCellID), '_gNB-', num2str(simParameters.UEofInterest));
    % enablePacketLogging(gNB.PhyEntity, gnbCapturefileName);
end

```

Processing Loop

Simulation is run slot by slot. In each slot, these operations are executed:

- Run the MAC and PHY layers of gNB
- Run the MAC and PHY layers of UEs
- Layer-specific logging and visualization
- Advance the timer for the nodes. Every 1 ms it also sends trigger to application and RLC layers. Application layer and RLC layer execute their scheduled operations based on 1 ms timer trigger.

```

% Create an object for MAC (UL & DL) scheduling information visualization and logging
simSchedulingLogger = hNRSchedulingLogger(simParameters);
% Create an object for PHY metrics logging
simPhyLogger = hNRPhyLogger(simParameters);
% Create visualization object for MAC and PHY metrics
visualizer = hNRMetricsVisualizer(simParameters, 'MACLogger', simSchedulingLogger, 'PhyLogger', ...);

% Run processing loop

```

```

slotNum = 0;
numSymbolsSim = numSlotsSim * 14; % Simulation time in units of symbol duration
% Execute all the symbols in the simulation
for symbolNum = 1 : tickGranularity : numSymbolsSim
    if mod(symbolNum - 1, 14) == 0
        slotNum = slotNum + 1;
    end

    % Run MAC and PHY of gNB
    run(gNB);

    % Run MAC and PHY of UEs
    for ueIdx = 1:simParameters.NumUEs
        run(UEs{ueIdx});
    end

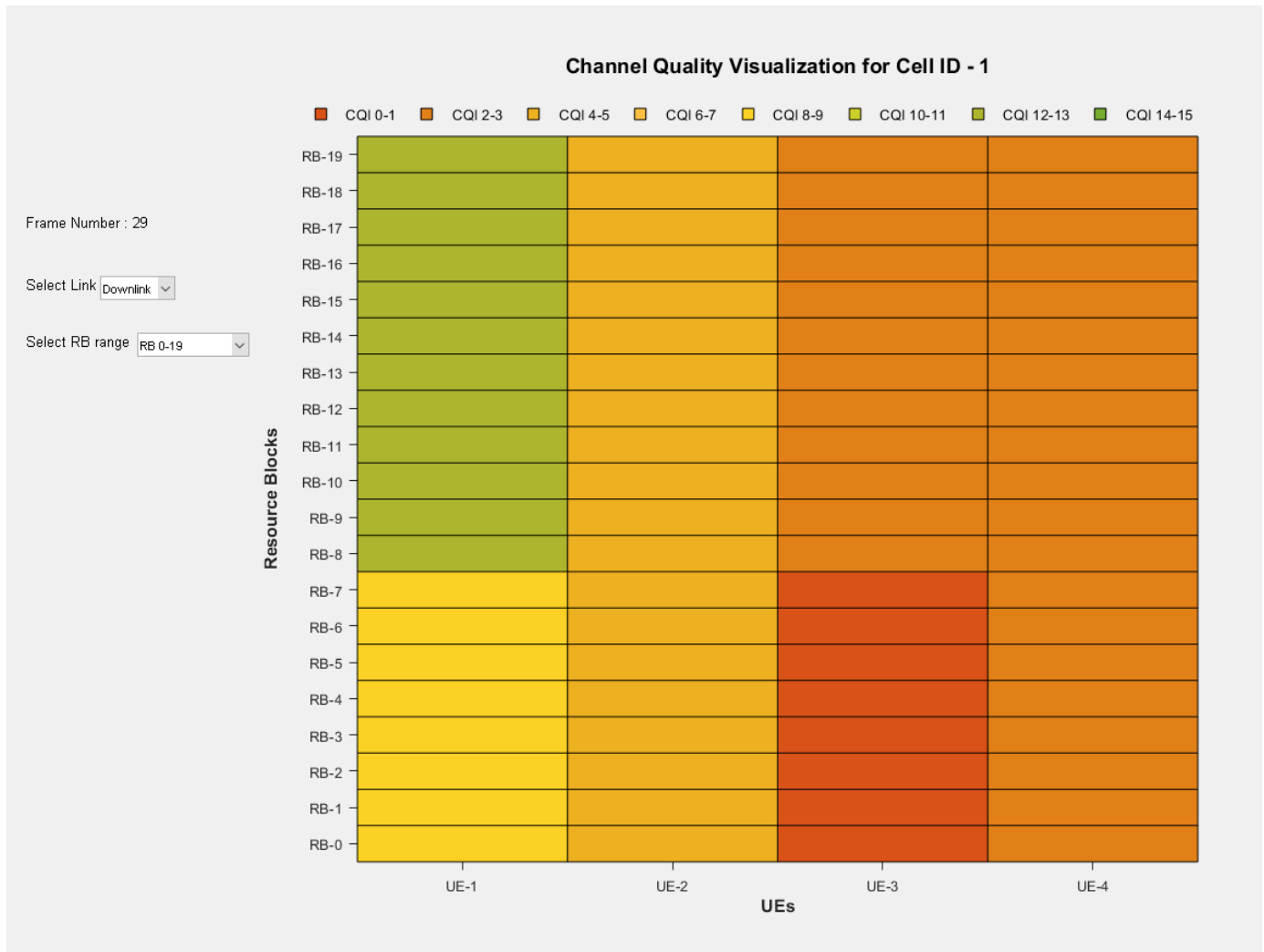
    % MAC logging
    logCellSchedulingStats(simSchedulingLogger, symbolNum, gNB, UEs);

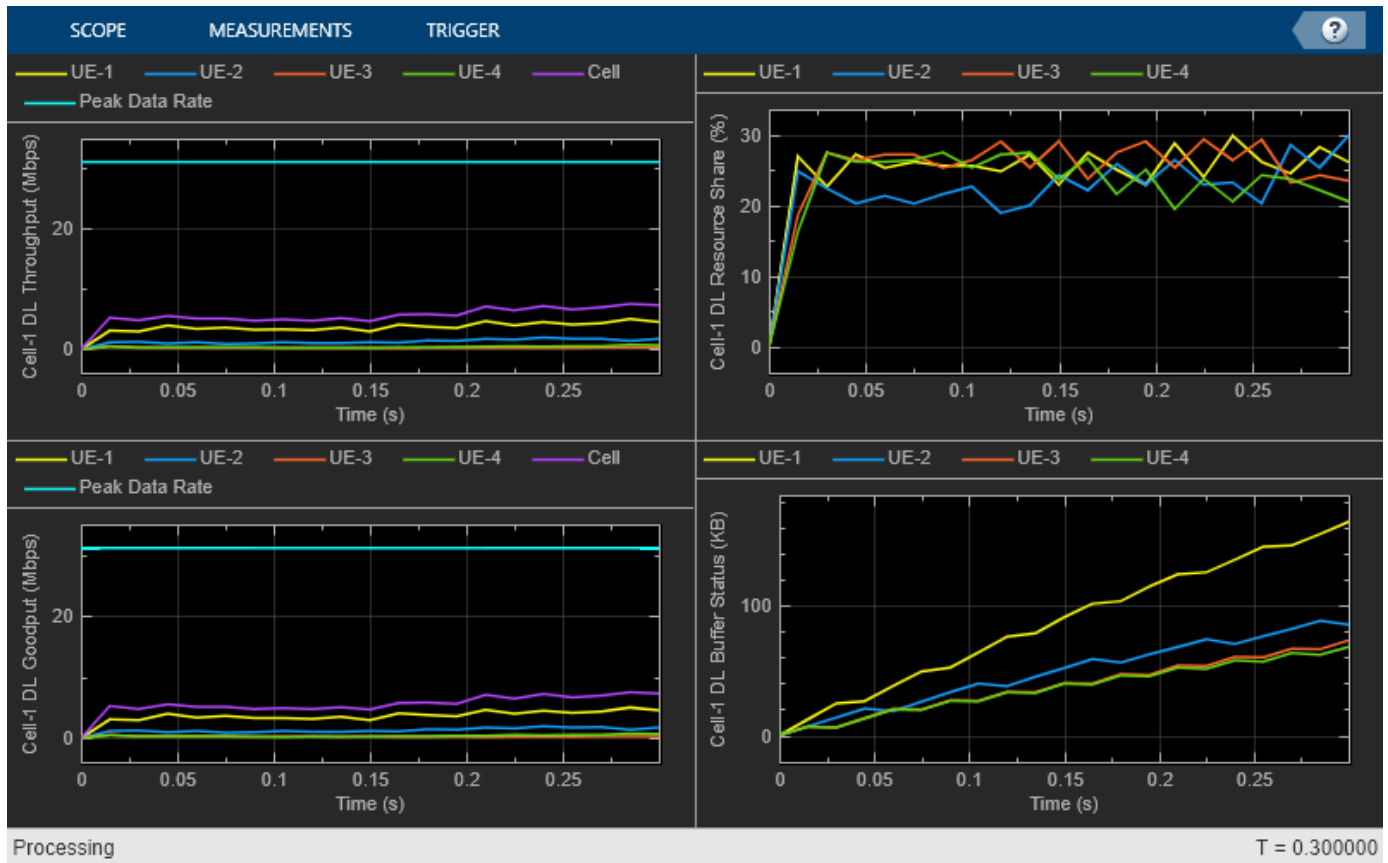
    % PHY logging
    logCellPhyStats(simPhyLogger, symbolNum, gNB, UEs);

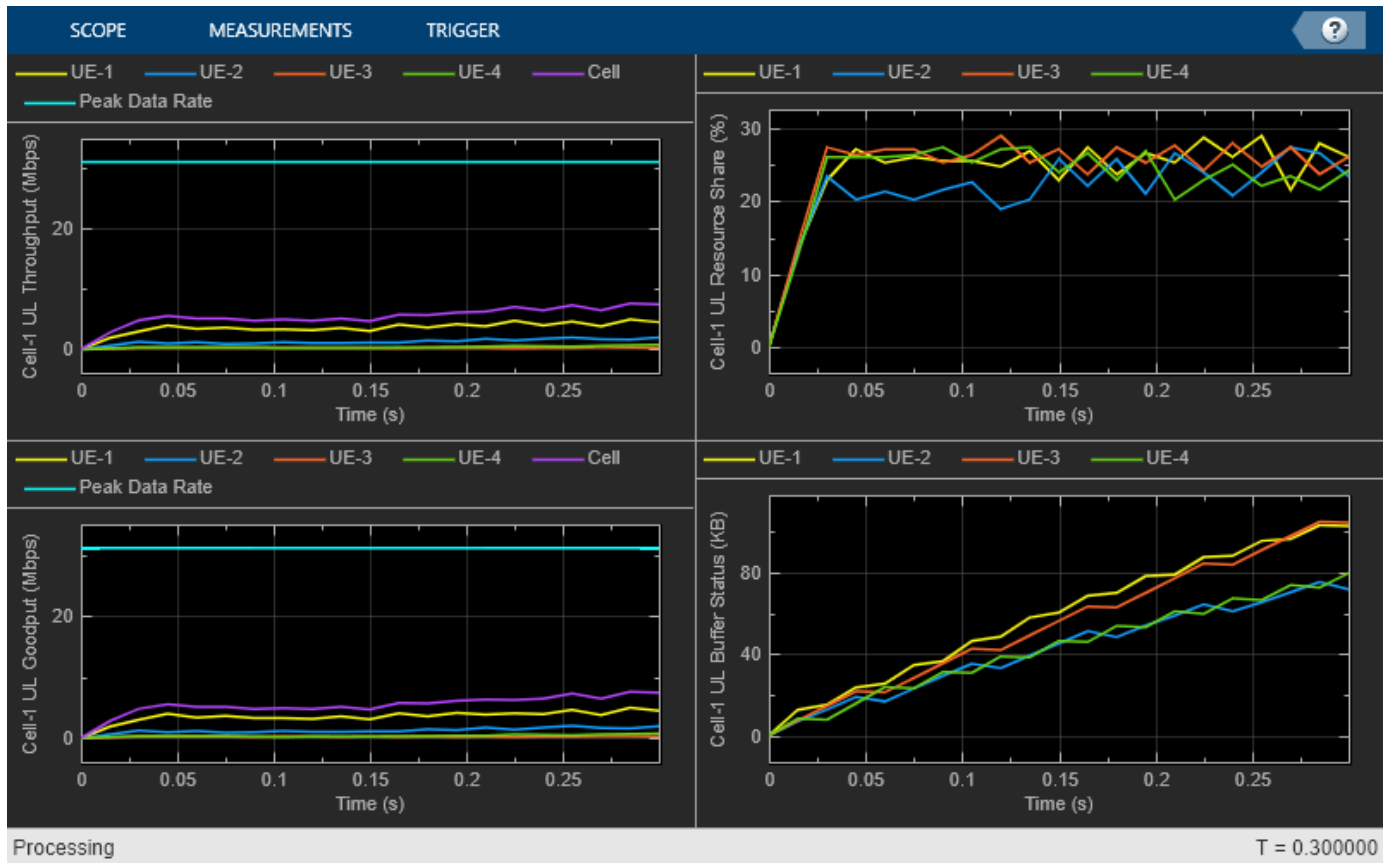
    % Visualization
    % Check slot boundary
    if symbolNum > 1 && ((simParameters.SchedulingType == 1 && mod(symbolNum, 14) == 0) || (simP
        % RB assignment visualization (if enabled)
        if simParameters.RBVisualization
            if mod(slotNum, rbAssignmentPlotPeriodicity) == 0
                % Plot at slot boundary, if the update periodicity is reached
                plotRBGrids(simSchedulingLogger);
            end
        end
        % CQI grid visualization (if enabled)
        if simParameters.CQIVisualization
            if mod(slotNum, numSlotsFrame) == 0 % Plot at frame boundary
                plotCQIRBGrids(simSchedulingLogger);
            end
        end
        % If the update periodicity is reached, plot scheduler metrics and PHY metrics visualiza
        % at slot boundary
        if mod(slotNum, simParameters.MetricsStepSize) == 0
            plotMetrics(visualizer, slotNum);
        end
    end

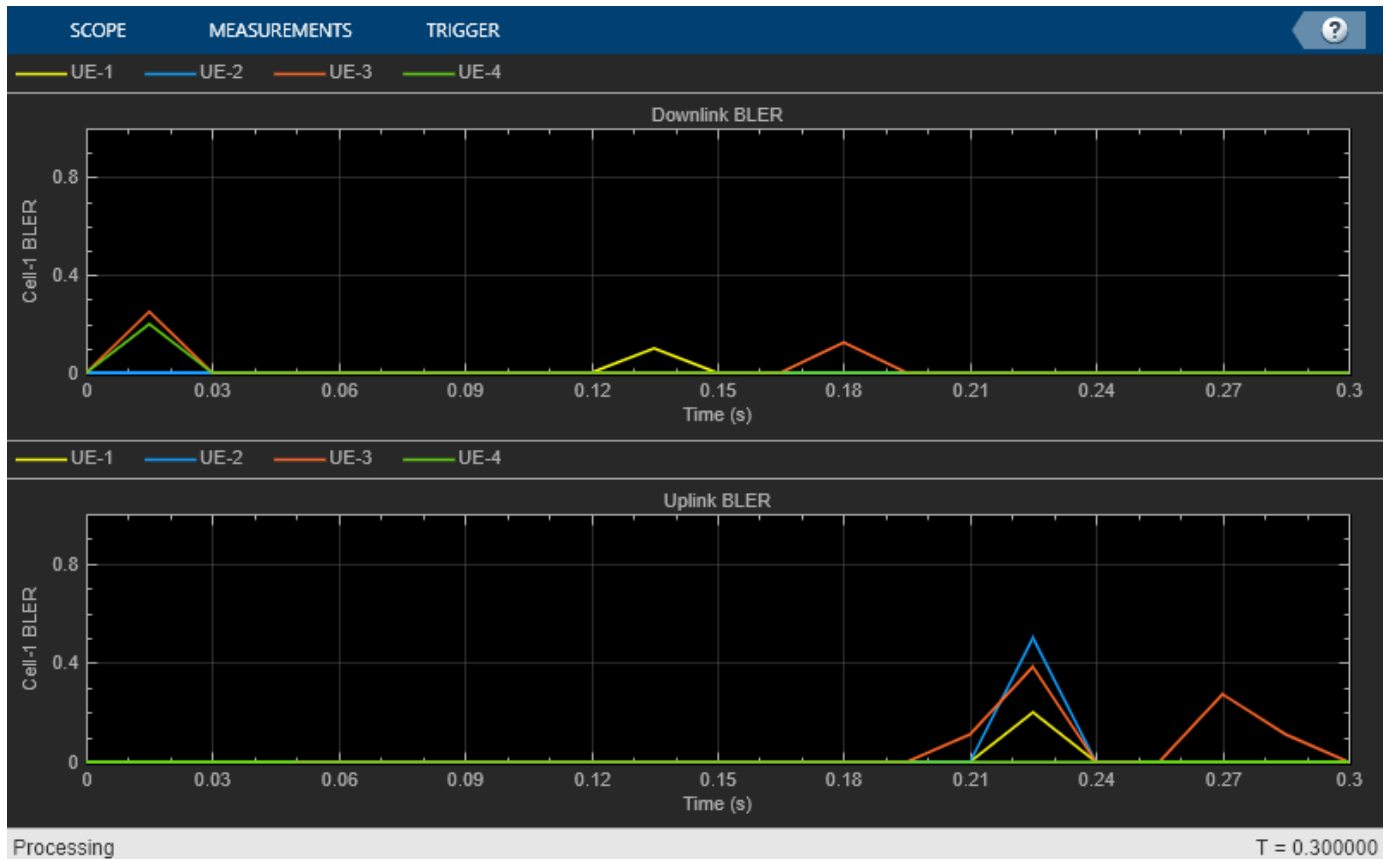
    % Advance timer ticks for gNB and UEs by 14 symbols
    advanceTimer(gNB, tickGranularity);
    for ueIdx = 1:simParameters.NumUEs
        advanceTimer(UEs{ueIdx}, tickGranularity);
    end
end
end

```









Simulation Visualization

The five types of run-time visualization shown are:

- *Display of CQI values for UEs over the PUSCH/PDSCH bandwidth:* For details, see the 'Channel Quality Visualization' figure description in "NR PUSCH FDD Scheduling" on page 5-37 example.
- *Display of resource grid assignment to UEs:* The 2D time-frequency grid shows the resource allocation to the UEs. You can enable this visualization in the Scenario Configuration on page 5-0 section. For details, see the 'Resource Grid Allocation' figure description in "NR PUSCH FDD Scheduling" on page 5-37 example.
- *Display of UL scheduling metrics plots:* For details, see 'Uplink Scheduler Performance Metrics' figure description in "NR FDD Scheduling Performance Evaluation" on page 5-55 example.
- *Display of DL scheduling metrics plots:* For details, see 'Downlink Scheduler Performance Metrics' figure description in "NR FDD Scheduling Performance Evaluation" on page 5-55 example.
- *Display of DL and UL Block Error Rates:* The two sub-plots displayed in 'Block Error Rate (BLER) Visualization' shows the block error rate (for each UE) observed in the uplink and downlink directions, as the simulation progresses. The plot is updated every metricsStepSize slots.

Simulation Logs

The parameters used for simulation and the simulation logs are saved in MAT-files for post simulation analysis and visualization. The simulation parameters are saved in a MAT-file with the file name as the value of configuration parameter `simParameters.ParametersLogFile`. The per time step logs, scheduling assignment logs, and BLER logs are saved in the MAT-file

`simParameters.SimulationLogFile`. After the simulation, open the file to load `DLTimeStepLogs`, `ULTimeStepLogs`, `SchedulingAssignmentLogs`, and `RLCLogs` in the workspace.

Time step logs: Both the DL and UL time step logs follow the same format. For details of log format, see the 'Simulation Logs' section of “NR PUSCH FDD Scheduling” on page 5-37.

Scheduling assignment logs: Information of all the scheduling assignments and related information is logged in this file. For details of log format, see the 'Simulation Logs' section of “NR FDD Scheduling Performance Evaluation” on page 5-55 example.

Block Error Rate logs: Block error information observed in the uplink and downlink directions are logged in this file. This table shows the sample log entries.

Timestamp	Frame Number	Slot Number	Number of Erroneous Packets(DL)	Number of Packets(DL)	Number of Erroneous Packets(UL)	Number of Packets(UL)
0	0	0	[0;0;0;0]	[0;0;0;0]	[0;0;0;0]	[0;0;0;0]
1	0	1	[0;0;0;0]	[0;0;0;0]	[0;0;0;0]	[0;0;0;0]
2	0	2	[0;0;0;0]	[0;0;0;0]	[0;0;0;0]	[0;0;0;0]
3	0	3	[0;0;0;0]	[1;1;0;0]	[0;0;0;0]	[0;0;0;0]
4	0	4	[0;0;1;1]	[0;0;1;1]	[0;0;0;0]	[0;0;0;0]
5	0	5	[0;0;0;0]	[1;1;0;0]	[0;0;0;0]	[0;0;0;0]
6	0	6	[0;0;0;0]	[1;1;0;0]	[0;0;0;0]	[0;0;0;0]
7	0	7	[0;0;0;0]	[1;1;0;0]	[0;0;0;0]	[0;0;0;0]
8	0	8	[0;0;0;0]	[1;1;0;1]	[0;0;0;0]	[1;1;0;0]
9	0	9	[0;0;0;0]	[0;1;1;0]	[0;0;0;0]	[0;0;1;1]

Each row of the log represents one slot. The column contains the information vector of length equal to the number of UEs. Information about a UE is at an index equal to its RNTI.

At the end of the simulation, the achieved value for system performance indicators is compared to their theoretical peak values (considering zero overheads). Performance indicators displayed are achieved data rate (UL and DL), achieved spectral efficiency (UL and DL), and BLER observed for UEs (DL and UL). The peak values are calculated as per 3GPP TR 37.910.

```
simulationLogs = cell(1,1);
if(simParameters.DuplexMode == 0) % FDD
    logInfo = struct('DLTimeStepLogs', [], 'ULTimeStepLogs', [], 'SchedulingAssignmentLogs', [],
else
    logInfo = struct('TimeStepLogs', [], 'SchedulingAssignmentLogs', [], 'BLERLogs', []);
end
[dlStats, ulStats] = getPerformanceIndicators(simSchedulingLogger);
[logInfo.BLERLogs, logInfo.AvgBLERLogs] = getBLERLogs(simPhyLogger); % Block Error rate logs
fprintf('Peak UL throughput: %0.2f Mbps. Achieved average UL Throughput: %0.2f Mbps', ulStats(1,
Peak UL throughput: 31.11 Mbps. Achieved average UL Throughput: 5.70 Mbps

fprintf('\nPeak DL throughput: %0.2f Mbps. Achieved average DL Throughput: %0.2f Mbps', dlStats(1,
Peak DL throughput: 31.11 Mbps. Achieved average DL Throughput: 5.84 Mbps

fprintf('\nAchieved average UL Goodput: %0.2f Mbps. Achieved average DL Goodput: %0.2f Mbps', ulStats(1,
Achieved average UL Goodput: 5.65 Mbps. Achieved average DL Goodput: 5.83 Mbps

fprintf('\nPeak UL spectral efficiency: %0.2f bits/s/Hz. Achieved average UL spectral efficiency: %0.2f bits/s/Hz', ulStats(1,
Peak UL spectral efficiency: 6.22 bits/s/Hz. Achieved average UL spectral efficiency: 1.14 bits/s/Hz
```



```
fprintf('\nPeak DL spectral efficiency: %0.2f bits/s/Hz. Achieved average DL spectral efficiency
Peak DL spectral efficiency: 6.22 bits/s/Hz. Achieved average DL spectral efficiency: 1.17 bits/s/
disp(['Block error rate for each UE in the uplink direction: [' num2str(round(logInfo.AvgBLERLogs
Block error rate for each UE in the uplink direction: [0.01      0.04      0.06      0]
disp(['Block error rate for each UE in the downlink direction: [' num2str(round(logInfo.AvgBLERL
Block error rate for each UE in the downlink direction: [0.01      0      0.01      0.0]
```

You can run the script `NRPostSimVisualization` to get a post-simulation visualization of logs. For more details about the options to run this script, refer to the “NR FDD Scheduling Performance Evaluation” on page 5-55 example

```
% Read the logs and save them in MAT-files
if(simParameters.DuplexMode == 0) % FDD
    [logInfo.DLTimeStepLogs, logInfo.ULTimeStepLogs] = getSchedulingLogs(simSchedulingLogger);
else % TDD
    logInfo.TimeStepLogs = getSchedulingLogs(simSchedulingLogger);
end
logInfo.SchedulingAssignmentLogs = getGrantLogs(simSchedulingLogger); % Scheduling assignments l
simulationLogs{1} = logInfo;
save(simParameters.ParametersLogFile, 'simParameters'); % Save simulation parameters in a MAT-fi
save(simParameters.SimulationLogFile, 'simulationLogs'); % Save simulation logs in a MAT-file
```

Further Exploration

You can use this example to further explore these options.

Custom scheduling

You can modify the existing scheduling strategy to implement a custom one. Refer to 'Further Exploration' section of “NR FDD Scheduling Performance Evaluation” on page 5-55 example to see the steps involved.

Use passthrough physical layer

For MAC focused simulations, you can use the passthrough PHY layer by installing passthrough PHY layer object on nodes. For gNB create an object of type `hNRGNBPassthroughPhy`, and for UE create an object of type `hNRUEPassthroughPhy`. For details, see 'gNB and UEs setup' section of “NR FDD Scheduling Performance Evaluation” on page 5-55 example.

Based on described simulation parameters, the example evaluates the performance of the system measured in terms of various metrics. Different visualizations show the run time performance of the system. A more thorough post simulation analysis by using the saved logs gives a detailed picture of the operations on a per slot basis.

Use RLC AM

You can also switch the operating mode of an RLC entity from UM to acknowledged mode (AM) by modifying the input structure fields `EntityType` and `SeqNumFieldLength` in the `configureLogicalChannel` function of `hNRNode.m`. For more details, see the 'Further Exploration' section of “NR FDD Scheduling Performance Evaluation” on page 5-55.

Appendix

The example uses these helper functions and classes:

- hWirelessNode.m: Wireless node base class
- hNRNode.m: NR node base class for both gNB and UE
- hNRGNB.m: gNB node functionality
- hNRUE.m: UE node functionality
- helperApplication.m: Application layer functionality
- hNRRLCEntity.m: Base class for RLC UM and AM entities
- hNRUMEntity.m: RLC UM functionality
- hNRAMEntity.m: RLC AM functionality
- hNRRLCDataPDUInfo.m: Creates RLC PDU information object
- hNRRLCBufferStatus.m: Generates RLC buffer status information object
- hNRRLCDataReassembly.m: Create an RLC SDU reassembly information object
- hNRMAC.m: NR MAC base class functionality
- hNRGNBMAC.m: gNB MAC functionality
- hNRUEMAC.m: UE MAC functionality
- hNRScheduler.m: Core MAC scheduler functionality
- hNRSchedulerBestCQI.m: Implements best CQI scheduling strategy
- hNRSchedulerProportionalFair.m: Implements proportional fair scheduling strategy
- hNRSchedulerRoundRobin.m: Implements round robin scheduling strategy
- hNRMACBSR.m: Generates buffer status report
- hNRMACBSRParser.m: Parses buffer status report
- hNRMACSubPDU.m: Generates MAC subPDU
- hNRMACPaddingSubPDU.m: Generates MAC subPDU with padding
- hNRMACMultiplex.m: Generates MAC PDU
- hNRMACPDUParser.m: Parses MAC PDU
- hNewHARQProcesses.m: Creates new HARQ process
- hUpdateHARQProcess.m: Updates HARQ process
- hNRPhyInterface.m: NR PHY base class functionality
- hNRGNBPhy.m: gNB PHY functionality
- hNRUEPhy.m: UE PHY functionality
- hNRGNBPassthroughPhy.m: gNB passthrough PHY layer
- hNRUEPassthroughPhy.m: UE passthrough PHY layer
- hNRPUSCHInfo.m: PUSCH information structure passed by MAC to PHY layer
- hNRPDSCHInfo.m: PDSCH information structure passed by MAC to PHY layer
- hNRRxIndicationInfo.m: Information structure passed by PHY layer to MAC along with MAC PDU
- hNRUplinkGrantFormat.m: UL grant format
- hNRDownlinkGrantFormat.m: DL grant format

- hNRPacketDistribution.m: Creates packet distribution object
- hNRPhyRxBuffer.m: Creates PHY signal reception buffer object
- hSkipWeakTimingOffset.m: Skip timing offset estimates with weak correlation
- hNRRLCLogger.m: Implements RLC statistics logging and visualization functionality
- hNRSchedulingLogger.m: Implements scheduling information logging and visualization functionality
- hNRPhyLogger.m: Implements uplink and downlink block error rate logging and visualization functionality
- hNRCellPerformanceWithPhysicalLayerValidateConfig.m: Validates simulation configuration
- hNRSetUpPacketDistribution.m: Set up packet distribution functionality
- hNRPacketWriter.m: Captures MAC packets
- hNRPacketInfo.m: Metadata format for capturing MAC packets
- hNRMetricsVisualizer.m: Implements metrics visualization functionality
- NRPostSimVisualization.m: Post simulation visualization script

References

- [1] 3GPP TS 38.104. "NR; Base Station (BS) radio transmission and reception." *3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Radio Access Network*.
- [2] 3GPP TS 38.214. "NR; Physical layer procedures for data." *3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Radio Access Network*.
- [3] 3GPP TS 38.321. "NR; Medium Access Control (MAC) protocol specification." *3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Radio Access Network*.
- [4] 3GPP TS 38.322. "NR; Radio Link Control (RLC) protocol specification." *3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Radio Access Network*.
- [5] 3GPP TS 38.323. "NR; Packet Data Convergence Protocol (PDCP) specification." *3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Radio Access Network*.
- [6] 3GPP TS 38.331. "NR; Radio Resource Control (RRC) protocol specification." *3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Radio Access Network*.
- [7] 3GPP TR 37.910. "Study on self evaluation towards IMT-2020 submission." *3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Radio Access Network*.

See Also

Related Examples

- "NR FDD Scheduling Performance Evaluation" on page 5-55
- "NR Intercell Interference Modeling" on page 5-108

NR Intercell Interference Modeling

This example shows the impact on network performance due to intercell downlink (DL) interference caused by nearby cells. The example models a 5G New Radio (NR) network of multiple cells operating in the same frequency band. Each cell has a gNB placed at the center of the cell that serves a set of user equipments (UEs). The NR stack on the nodes includes radio link control (RLC), medium access control (MAC), and physical (PHY) layers.

Introduction

The example considers the following operations within gNB and UEs that facilitate DL transmissions and receptions.

	Operations
gNB	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Run the scheduling algorithm to assign downlink resources • Send the downlink grants to the UEs • Adhere to the downlink grants for physical downlink shared channel (PDSCH) transmission • Receive the feedback of PDSCHs from the UEs • Send the channel state information reference signals (CSI-RS) to the UEs
UEs	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Receive the downlink grants from the gNB • Receive the PDSCH transmissions from the gNB • Send feedback for the received PDSCHs • Measure channel quality on CSI-RS

The complete PDSCH packet is transmitted in the first symbol of its allocated symbol set. Receiver processes the packet in the symbol just after the last symbol in the allocated symbol set.

This example models:

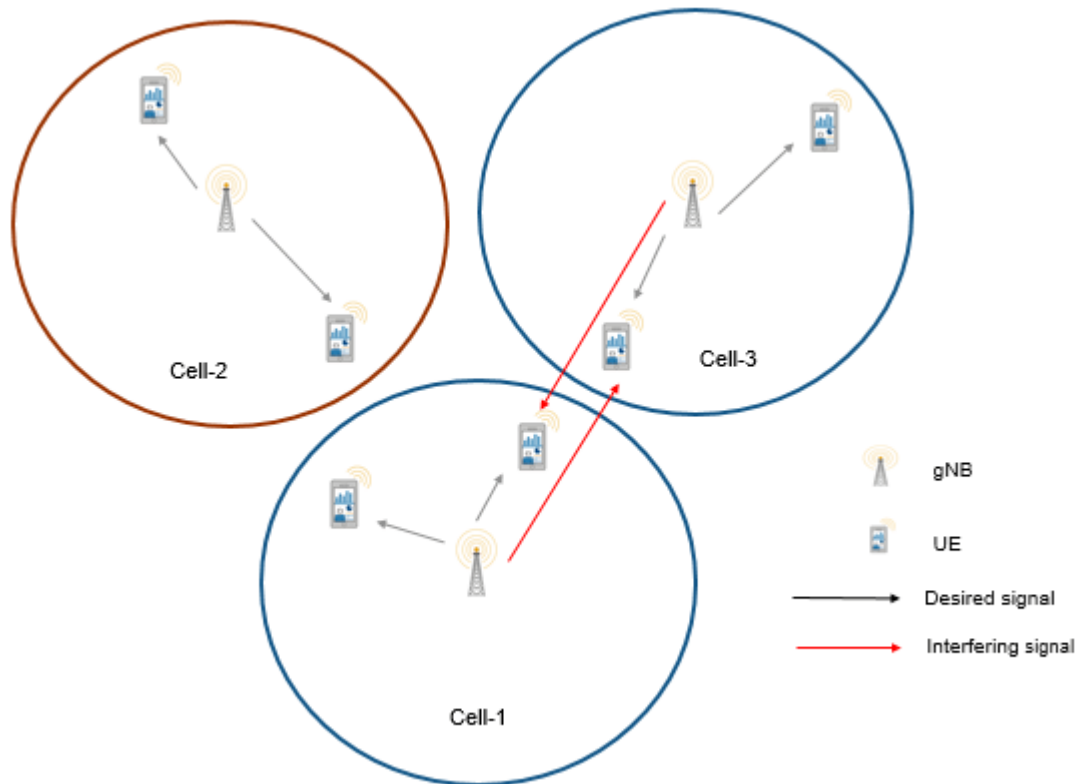
- Co-channel intercell interference.
- Slot based and symbol based DL scheduling of PDSCH resources.
- Configurable subcarrier spacing resulting in different slot durations.
- Noncontiguous allocation of frequency-domain resources in terms of resource block groups (RBGs).
- PDSCH demodulation reference signal (DM-RS).
- DL channel quality measurement by UEs based on the CSI-RS received from gNB. By default, the CSI-RS resource element is transmitted in each slot for each resource block (RB) in DL bandwidth, for all UEs. The same CSI-RS configuration is applicable to all the UEs in the cell.
- Free space path loss (FSPL), and additive white Gaussian noise (AWGN).
- Single input single output (SISO) antenna configuration.
- Single bandwidth part across the whole carrier.

Control packets such as DL assignment, PDSCH feedback, and channel quality indicator (CQI) report, are assumed to be sent out of band, that is, without the need for resources for transmission and assured error-free reception.

Co-Channel Interference

In cellular systems, each cell operates on a particular carrier frequency. The cells operating on the same carrier frequency are called co-channel cells. Co-channel cells can interfere in transmissions between them.

Consider this sample network topology consisting of 3 cells. Cell-1 and cell-3 operate on the same frequency band. Cell-2 operates on a different frequency band and does not interfere with cell-1 or cell-3.



NR Protocol Stack

A node (gNB or UE) consists of applications generating traffic, in addition to RLC, medium access control (MAC) and PHY. The helper classes `hNRGNB.m` and `hNRUE.m` create gNB and UE nodes respectively, containing RLC, MAC, and PHY layers. For more details on each layer, refer to the 'NR Protocol Stack' section in the "NR Cell Performance Evaluation with Physical Layer Integration" on page 5-92 example.

Scenario Configuration

For simulation, set the following key configuration parameters.

- Simulation time
- Number of cells
- Cell radius (all the UEs connected to a gNB are within this distance)
- Positions of gNBs

- Number of UEs in each cell
- Signal to interference and noise ratio (SINR) to CQI mapping table for 0.1 block error rate (BLER). The lookup table to map the received SINR to CQI index for 0.1 BLER. The lookup table corresponds to the CQI table as per 3GPP TS 38.214 Table 5.2.2.1-3. For more information about the process of generating this lookup table, see the “5G NR Downlink CSI Reporting” on page 4-47 example.
- Transmit power of gNB
- DL carrier bandwidth in terms of number of resource blocks (RBs)
- DL carrier frequency
- Subcarrier spacing
- DL application traffic model

```
rng('default'); % Reset the random number generator
simParameters = []; % Clear the simParameters variable
simParameters.NumFramesSim = 20; % Simulation time in terms of number of 10 ms frames
simParameters.SchedulingType = 0; % Set the value to 0 (slot based scheduling) or 1 (symbol based)
```

Number of cells in the simulation. Cells are assumed to have sequential cell identifiers (NCellIDs) from 0 to NumCells-1. If you change the number of cells, ensure that the number of rows in simParameters.GNBPosition is equal to NumCells.

```
simParameters.NumCells = 3; % Number of cells
simParameters.CellRadius = 500; % Radius of each cell (in meters)
```

The N-by-2 matrix represents the position of gNBs in (X, Y) coordinates, where 'N' is the number of cells in the simulation. The row number 'P' represents the X and Y coordinates of the gNB in the cell having cell ID 'P-1'. For example, the value [3000, 600] in the 2nd row represents the (X, Y) coordinates of the gNB in the cell having cell ID 1.

```
simParameters.GNBPosition = [1700 600;
    3000 600;
    2500 2000];
```

```
% Number of UEs in a cell. Each cell contains same number of UEs
simParameters.NumUEsCell = 4;
```

```
simParameters.GNBTxPower = 32; % Tx power for gNB (in dBm)
```

```
% Set the channel bandwidth to 10 MHz and subcarrier spacing (SCS) to 30 kHz
% as defined in 3GPP TS 38.104 Section 5.3.2.
```

```
simParameters.NumRBs = 24;
simParameters.SCS = 30; % kHz
simParameters.DLCarrierFreq = 2.635e9; % Hz
simParameters.DLBandwidth = 10e6; % Hz
```

```
% SINR to CQI mapping table for 0.1 BLER
```

```
simParameters.SINR90pc = [-5.46 -0.46 4.54 9.05 11.54 14.04 15.54 18.04 ...
    20.04 22.43 24.93 25.43 27.43 30.43 33.43];
```

```
% Maximum limit on the RBs allotted for PDSCH. Transmission limit is
% applicable for new PDSCH assignments and not for the retransmissions
simParameters.RBAllocationLimitDL = 15; % For PDSCH
```

Logging and visualization configuration.

```

% Specify the ID of cell of interest. All the visualizations and metrics are shown for this cell
simParameters.CellOfInterest = 2; % Set a value from 0 to NumCells-1

% The parameters CQIVisualization and RBVisualization control the display
% of these visualizations: (i) CQI visualization of RBs (ii) RB assignment
% visualization. By default, the 'RBVisualization' plot is disabled. You
% can enable it by setting to 'true'
simParameters.CQIVisualization = true;
simParameters.RBVisualization = false;
% The output metrics plots are updated periodically NumMetricsSteps times within the
% simulation duration
simParameters.NumMetricsSteps = 20;
% MAT-files to write the logs into. They are used for post simulation analysis and visualization
simParameters.ParametersLogFile = 'simParameters'; % For logging the simulation parameters
simParameters.SimulationLogFile = 'simulationLogs'; % For logging the simulation logs

```

Application traffic configuration.

```

% Set the periodic DL application traffic model for UEs. The following
% configuration applies for each cell
simParameters.DLPacketPeriodicityUEs = 10; % Periodicity (in ms) at which the DL packets are generated
simParameters.DLPacketSizesUEs = 2e4; % Size of the DL packets generated (in bytes) for UEs at given cell

% Validate the simulation configuration
hNRIntercellInterferenceValidateConfig(simParameters);

```

Derived Parameters

Based on the primary configuration parameters, compute the derived parameters. Additionally, set some example specific constants.

```

simParameters.DuplexMode = 0; % FDD
simParameters.ULBandwidth = 10e6; % Hz
simParameters.ULCarrierFreq = 2.515e9; % Hz
simParameters.NumUEs = simParameters.NumUEsCell; % Number of UEs in a cell
simParameters.NCellIDList = 0:simParameters.NumCells-1; % List of physical cell IDs

% CSI-RS resource configuration. All UEs are assumed to measure channel quality on same CSI-RS resource
simParameters.CSIRSRowNumber = 2; % Possible row numbers for single transmit antenna case are 1 and 2
simParameters.SubbandSize = 8; % Size of sub-band for CQI reporting in terms of number of RBs

% Set the BSRPeriodicity to 'inf' as there is no UL traffic
simParameters.BSRPeriodicity = inf; % In ms

% Slot duration for the selected SCS and number of slots in a 10 ms frame
slotDuration = 1/(simParameters.SCS/15); % In ms
numSlotsFrame = 10/slotDuration; % Number of slots in a 10 ms frame
numSlotsSim = simParameters.NumFramesSim * numSlotsFrame; % Number of slots in the simulation

% Interval at which metrics visualization updates in terms of number of
% slots. As one slot is the finest time-granularity of the simulation, make
% sure that MetricsStepSize is an integer
simParameters.MetricsStepSize = ceil(numSlotsSim / simParameters.NumMetricsSteps);
if mod(numSlotsSim, simParameters.NumMetricsSteps) ~= 0
    % Update the NumMetricsSteps parameter if NumSlotsSim is not
    % completely divisible by it
    simParameters.NumMetricsSteps = floor(numSlotsSim / simParameters.MetricsStepSize);
end

```

```

numLogicalChannels = 1; % Only 1 logical channel is assumed in each UE in this example

% Logical channel configuration applies for all the nodes (UEs and gNBs) in the simulation
simParameters.LCHConfig.LCID = 4;

% RLC entity direction. Value 0 represents DL only, 1
% represents UL only and 2 represents both UL and DL
% directions. Setting entity direction to have both UL and DL
simParameters.RLCCConfig.EntityDir = 0;

% Create RLC channel configuration structure
rlcChannelConfigStruct.LCGID = 1; % Mapping between logical channel and logical channel group ID
rlcChannelConfigStruct.Priority = 1; % Priority of each logical channel
rlcChannelConfigStruct.PBR = 8; % Prioritized bitrate (PBR), in kilobytes per second, of each logical channel
rlcChannelConfigStruct.BSD = 10; % Bucket size duration (BSD), in ms, of each logical channel
rlcChannelConfigStruct.EntityType = simParameters.RLCCConfig.EntityDir;
rlcChannelConfigStruct.LogicalChannelID = simParameters.LCHConfig.LCID;

% Maximum RLC service data unit (SDU) length (in bytes) as per 3GPP TS 38.323
simParameters.maxRLCSDULength = 9000;

% Generate the positions of UEs in each cell
simParameters.UEPosition = generateUEPositions(simParameters);

% Total number of UEs in the simulation
simParameters.MaxReceivers = simParameters.NumCells * simParameters.NumUEsCell;

if ~isfield(simParameters, 'SchedulingType') || simParameters.SchedulingType == 0 % If no scheduling type is specified
    rbAssignmentPlotPeriodicity = numSlotsFrame; % Update RB assignment visualization every frame
    tickGranularity = 14;
    simParameters.PUSCHMappingType = 'A';
    simParameters.PDSCHMappingType = 'A';
else % Symbol based scheduling
    rbAssignmentPlotPeriodicity = 1; % Update RB assignment visualization every slot
    tickGranularity = 1;
    simParameters.PUSCHMappingType = 'B';
    simParameters.PDSCHMappingType = 'B';
end

```

Multicell Setup

Set up the cells with an individual cell consisting of one gNB and multiple UEs. For each cell, create the gNB and UE objects, initialize the channel quality information for UEs, and set up the logical channel at gNB and UEs. The helper classes hNRGNB.m and hNRUE.m create gNB and UE nodes respectively, containing the RLC, MAC, and PHY layers.

```

gNB = cell(simParameters.NumCells, 1);
UEs = cell(simParameters.NumCells, simParameters.NumUEsCell);
% Create DL packet distribution object
dlPacketDistributionObj = hNRPacketDistribution(simParameters, 0); % 0 for DL
% Create UL packet distribution object
ulPacketDistributionObj = hNRPacketDistribution(simParameters, 1); % 1 for UL

for cellIdx = 1:simParameters.NumCells % For each cell

    simParameters.NCellID = simParameters.NCellIDList(cellIdx); % Cell ID
    simParameters.Position = [simParameters.GNBPosition(cellIdx, :) 0]; % gNB position in (x,y,z)

```



```

gNB{cellIdx} = hNRGNB(simParameters); % Create gNB node
scheduler = hNRSchedulerProportionalFair(simParameters); % Create proportional fair scheduler
addScheduler(gNB{cellIdx}, scheduler); % Add scheduler to gNB

gNB{cellIdx}.PhyEntity = hNRGNBPhy(simParameters); % Create the PHY layer instance
configurePhy(gNB{cellIdx}, simParameters); % Configure the PHY layer
setPhyInterface(gNB{cellIdx}); % Set up the interface to PHY layer

% For each cell, create the set of UE nodes and place them randomly within the cell radius
for ueIdx = 1:simParameters.NumUEsCell
    simParameters.Position = [simParameters.UEPosition{cellIdx}(ueIdx, :) 0]; % Position of UEs
    UEs{cellIdx, ueIdx} = hNRUE(simParameters, ueIdx);
    UEs{cellIdx, ueIdx}.PhyEntity = hNRUEPhy(simParameters, ueIdx); % Create the PHY layer instance
    configurePhy(UEs{cellIdx, ueIdx}, simParameters); % Configure the PHY layer
    setPhyInterface(UEs{cellIdx, ueIdx}); % Set up the interface to PHY

    % Setup logical channel at gNB for the UE
    configureLogicalChannel(gNB{cellIdx}, ueIdx, rlcChannelConfigStruct);
    % Setup logical channel at UE
    configureLogicalChannel(UEs{cellIdx, ueIdx}, ueIdx, rlcChannelConfigStruct);

    % Add data traffic pattern generators to gNB node
    packetSize = simParameters.DLPacketSizesUEs;
    % Calculate the data rate (in kbps) of On-Off traffic pattern using
    % packet size (in bytes) and packet interval (in ms)
    dataRate = ceil(1000/simParameters.DLPacketPeriodicityUEs) * packetSize * 8e-3;
    % Limit the size of the generated application packet to the maximum
    % RLC SDU size. The maximum supported RLC SDU size is 9000 bytes
    if packetSize > simParameters.maxRLCSDULength
        packetSize = simParameters.maxRLCSDULength;
    end
    % Create an object for On-Off network traffic pattern for the specified
    % UE and add it to the gNB. This object generates the downlink data
    % traffic on the gNB for the UE
    app = networkTrafficOnOff('PacketSize', packetSize, 'GeneratePacket', true, ...
        'OnTime', simParameters.NumFramesSim/100, 'OffTime', 0, 'DataRate', dataRate);
    gNB{cellIdx}.addApplication(ueIdx, simParameters.LCHConfig.LCID, app);
end

% Setup the UL and DL packet distribution mechanism
hNRSetupPacketDistribution(simParameters, gNB{cellIdx}, UEs(cellIdx, :), dlPacketDistribution);
end

```

Processing Loop

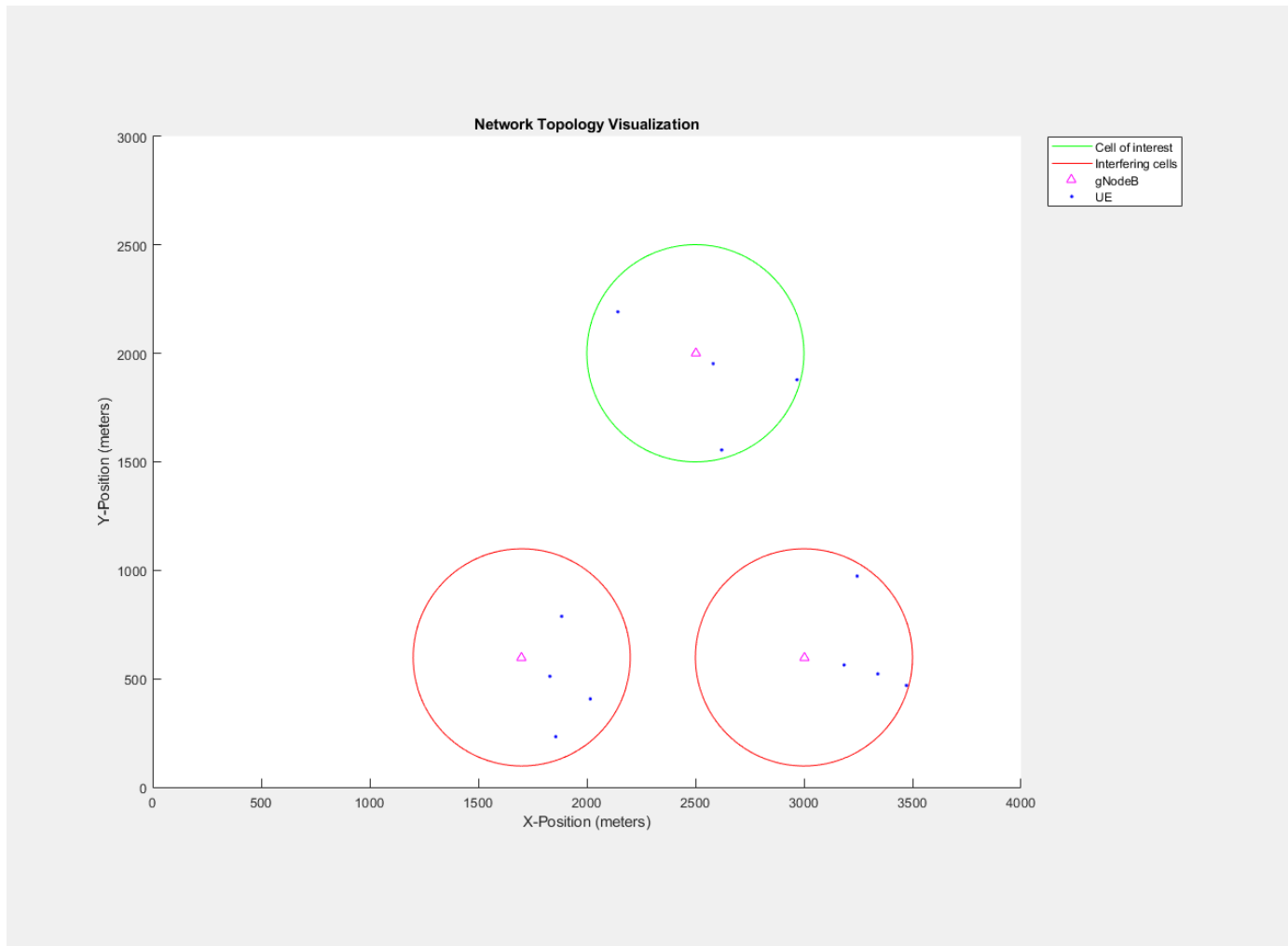
Simulation is run slot by slot. For each cell, in each slot, these operations are executed:

- Run the MAC and PHY layers of gNB
- Run the MAC and PHY layers of UEs
- Layer-specific logging and visualization
- Advance the timer for the nodes. Every 1 ms it also sends trigger to application and RLC layers. Application layer and RLC layer execute their scheduled operations based on 1 ms timer trigger.

```

% Display network topology
plotNetwork(simParameters);

```



```

simSchedulingLogger = cell(simParameters.NumCells, 1);
simPhyLogger = cell(simParameters.NumCells, 1);
for cellIdx = 1:simParameters.NumCells
    % Create an object for MAC DL scheduling information visualization and logging
    simParameters.NCellID = simParameters.NCellIDList(cellIdx);
    simSchedulingLogger{cellIdx} = hNRSchedulingLogger(simParameters, 0); % 0 for DL
    % Create an object for PHY layer metrics logging
    simPhyLogger{cellIdx} = hNRPhyLogger(simParameters, 0); % 0 for DL
end

% Store the index of cell ID of interest
cellofInterestIdx = find(simParameters.CellofInterest == simParameters.NCellIDList);

% Create metrics visualization object for MAC and PHY metrics (DL direction is represented as 0)
visualizer = hNRMetricsVisualizer(simParameters, 'MACLogger', simSchedulingLogger{cellofInterestIdx});

% Run processing loop
slotNum = 0;
numSymbolsSim = numSlotsSim * 14; % Simulation time in units of symbol duration
% Execute all the symbols in the simulation

```

```

for symbolNum = 1 : tickGranularity : numSymbolsSim
    if mod(symbolNum - 1, 14) == 0
        slotNum = slotNum + 1;
    end

    % All the cells operating on same SCS hence slot durations are same
    for cellIdx = 1:simParameters.NumCells % For each cell
        % Run MAC and PHY layers of gNB
        run(gNB{cellIdx});

        % Run MAC and PHY layers of UEs
        for ueIdx = 1:simParameters.NumUEsCell
            run(UEs{cellIdx, ueIdx});
        end

        % MAC logging
        logCellSchedulingStats(simSchedulingLogger{cellIdx}, symbolNum, gNB{cellIdx}, UEs(cellIdx, :));

        % PHY logging
        logCellPhyStats(simPhyLogger{cellIdx}, symbolNum, gNB{cellIdx}, UEs(cellIdx, :));
    end

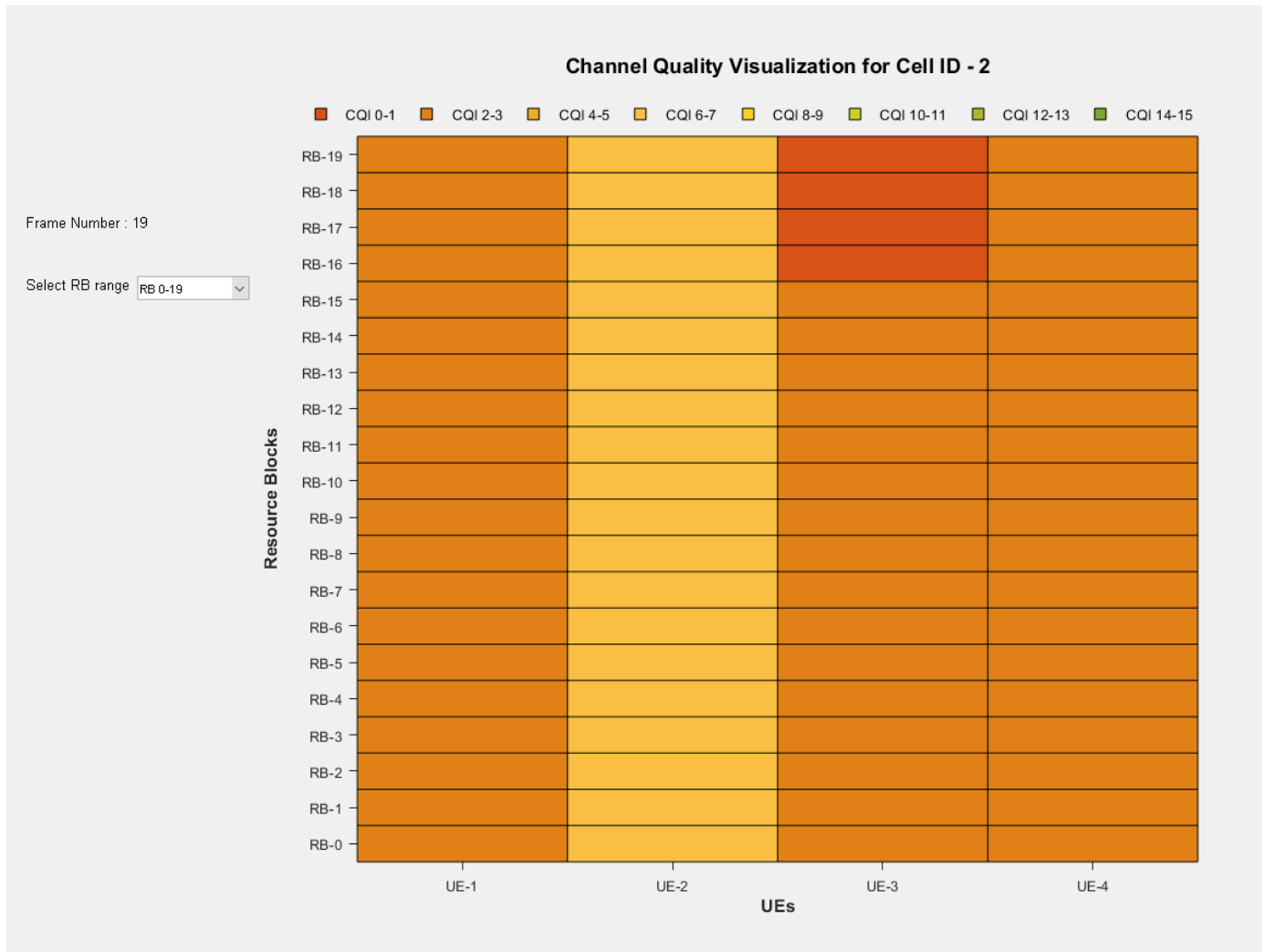
    % Visualization
    % Check slot boundary
    if symbolNum > 1 && ((simParameters.SchedulingType == 1 && mod(symbolNum, 14) == 0) || (simParameters.SchedulingType == 2 && mod(symbolNum, 14) == 0))
        % RB assignment visualization (if enabled)
        if simParameters.RBVisualization
            if mod(slotNum, rbAssignmentPlotPeriodicity) == 0
                % Plot at slot boundary, if the update periodicity is reached
                plotRBGrids(simSchedulingLogger{cellOfInterestIdx});
            end
        end

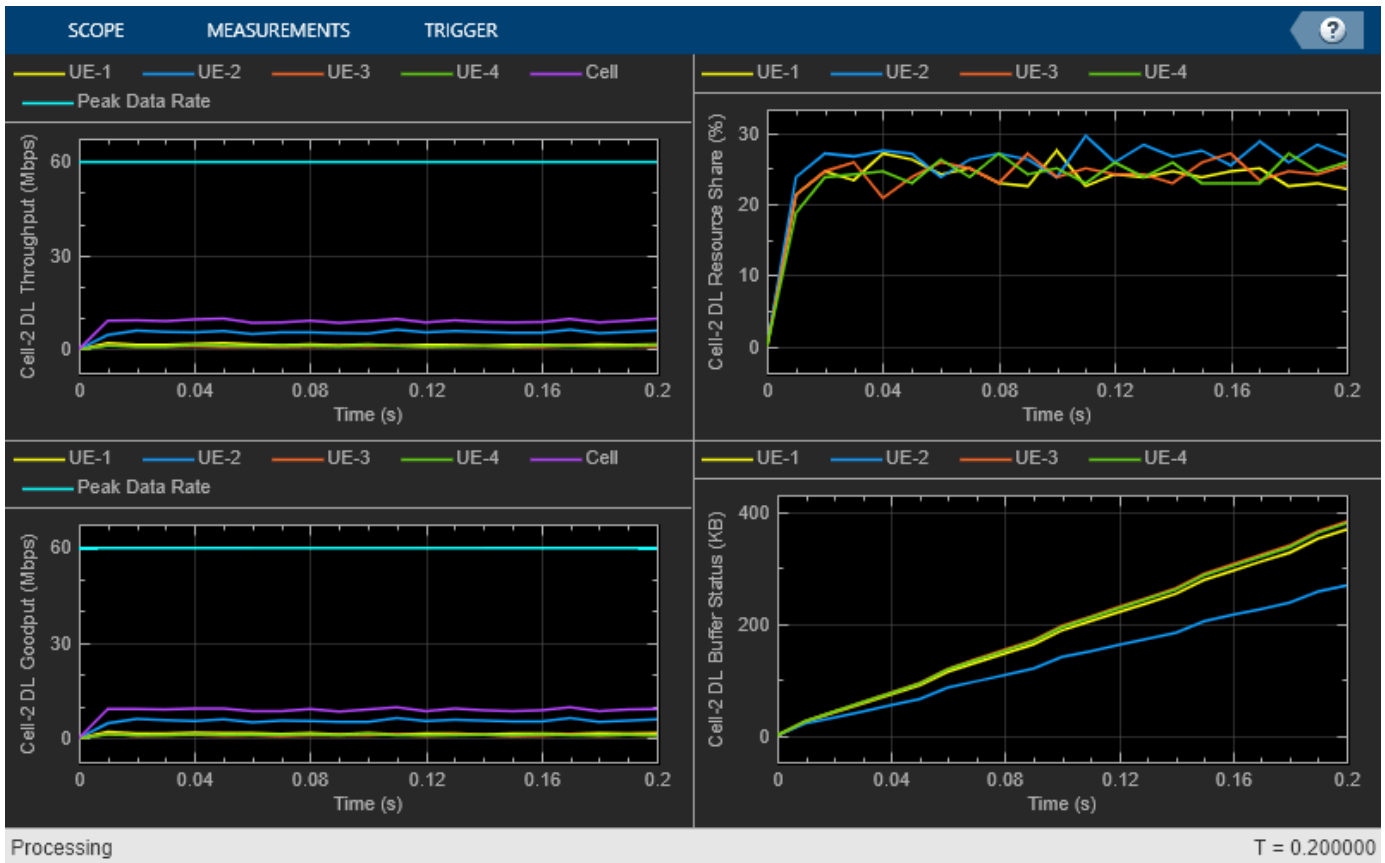
        % CQI grid visualization (if enabled)
        if simParameters.CQIVisualization
            if mod(slotNum, numSlotsFrame) == 0 % Plot at frame boundary
                plotCQIRBGrids(simSchedulingLogger{cellOfInterestIdx});
            end
        end

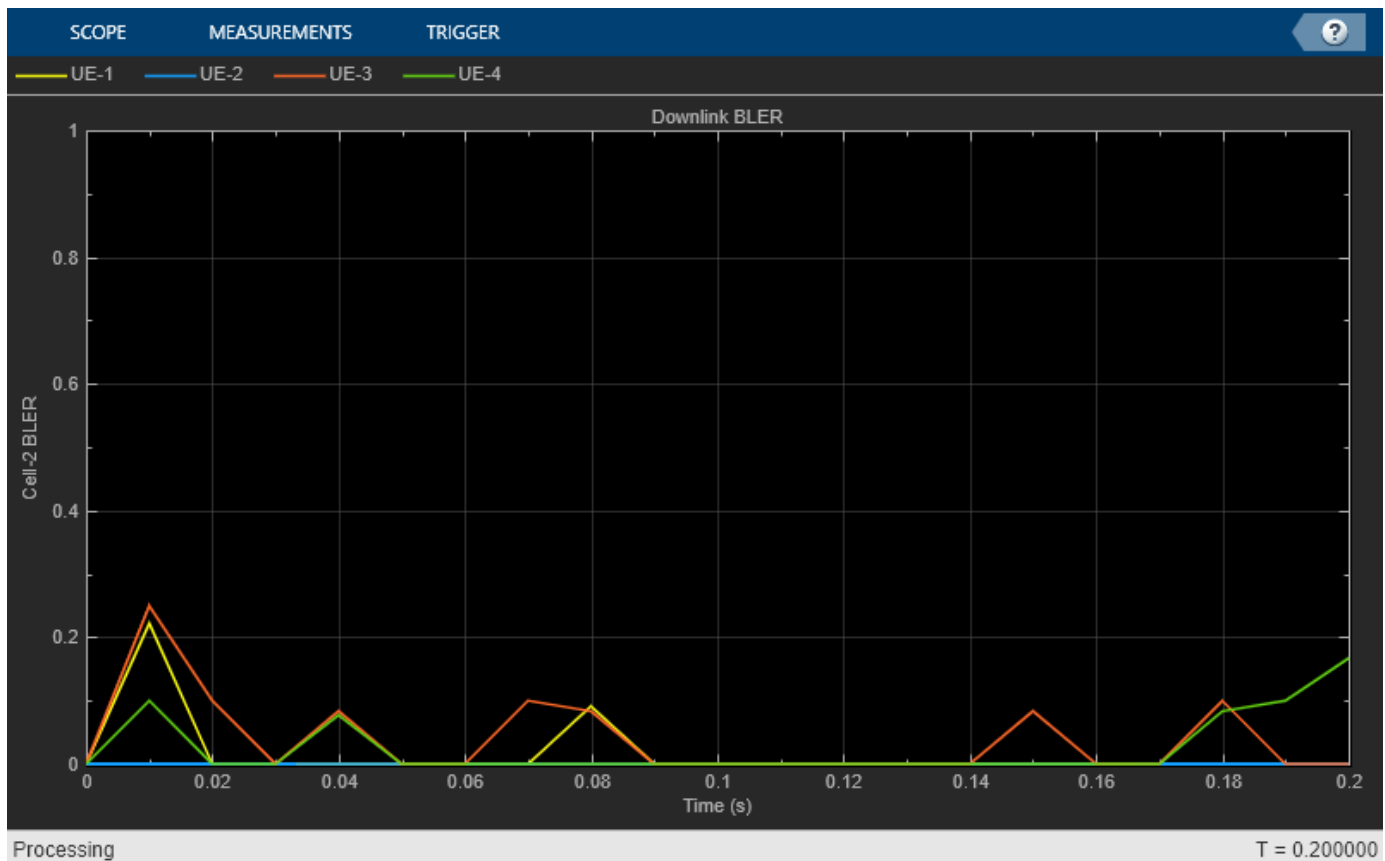
        % If the update periodicity is reached, plot scheduler metrics and PHY metrics visualization
        % at slot boundary
        if mod(slotNum, simParameters.MetricsStepSize) == 0
            plotMetrics(visualizer, slotNum);
        end
    end

    for cellIdx = 1:simParameters.NumCells
        % Advance timer ticks for gNB and UEs by the number of symbols per slot
        advanceTimer(gNB{cellIdx}, tickGranularity);
        for ueIdx = 1:simParameters.NumUEsCell
            advanceTimer(UEs{cellIdx, ueIdx}, tickGranularity);
        end
    end
end
end

```







Simulation Visualization

The five types of run-time visualization shown are:

- *Display of Network Topology*: The figure shows the configured cell topology. For each cell, it shows the position of the gNB and the connected UEs.
- *Display of CQI values for UEs over the PDSCH bandwidth*: For details, see the 'Channel Quality Visualization' figure description in the "NR PUSCH FDD Scheduling" on page 5-37 example.
- *Display of resource grid assignment to UEs*: The 2D time-frequency grid shows the resource allocation to the UEs. You can enable this visualization in the Logging and Visualization Configuration on page 5-0 section. For details, see the 'Resource Grid Allocation' figure description in the "NR PUSCH FDD Scheduling" on page 5-37 example.
- *Display of DL scheduling metrics plots*: For details, see the 'Downlink Scheduler Performance Metrics' figure description in the "NR FDD Scheduling Performance Evaluation" on page 5-55 example.
- *Display of DL Block Error Rates*: For details, see the 'Block Error Rate (BLER) Visualization' figure description in the "NR Cell Performance Evaluation with Physical Layer Integration" on page 5-92 example.

Simulation Logs

The parameters used for simulation and the simulation logs are saved in MAT-files for post simulation analysis and visualization. The simulation parameters are saved in a MAT-file with the file name as the value of configuration parameter `simParameters.ParametersLogFile`. The per time step logs,

scheduling assignment logs, and BLER logs are captured for each cell in the simulation and saved in the MAT-file `simParameters.SimulationLogFile`. After the simulation, open the file to load `NCellID`, `DLTimeStepLogs`, `SchedulingAssignmentLogs`, and `BLERLogs` in the workspace.

NCellID: This stores the cell ID and represents cell to which the simulation logs belong.

DL Time step logs: Stores the per slot logs of the simulation with each slot as one row in the simulation. For details of log format, see the 'Simulation Logs' section of the “NR PUSCH FDD Scheduling” on page 5-37 example.

Scheduling Assignment logs: Information of all the scheduling assignments and related information is logged in this file. For details of log format, see the 'Simulation Logs' section in the “NR FDD Scheduling Performance Evaluation” on page 5-55 example.

Block Error Rate logs: Information of all the scheduling assignments and related information is logged in this file. For details of log format, see the 'Simulation Logs' section in the “NR Cell Performance Evaluation with Physical Layer Integration” on page 5-92 example.

You can run the script `NRPostSimVisualization` to get a post-simulation visualization of logs. For more details about the options to run this script, see the “NR FDD Scheduling Performance Evaluation” on page 5-55 example.

```
dlStats = getPerformanceIndicators(simSchedulingLogger{simParameters.CellOfInterest + 1});
[~, avgBLERLogs] = getBLERLogs(simPhyLogger{simParameters.CellOfInterest + 1});
fprintf('\nPeak DL throughput: %0.2f Mbps. Achieved average DL Throughput: %0.2f Mbps', dlStats(
Peak DL throughput: 59.72 Mbps. Achieved average DL Throughput: 9.07 Mbps

fprintf('\nAchieved average DL Goodput: %0.2f Mbps', dlStats(5, 1));
Achieved average DL Goodput: 8.98 Mbps

fprintf('\nPeak DL spectral efficiency: %0.2f bits/s/Hz. Achieved average DL spectral efficiency
Peak DL spectral efficiency: 5.97 bits/s/Hz. Achieved average DL spectral efficiency: 0.91 bits/s

disp(['Block error rate for each UE in the downlink direction: [' num2str(round(avgBLERLogs(:, 1
Block error rate for each UE in the downlink direction: [0.01          0          0.04          0.03

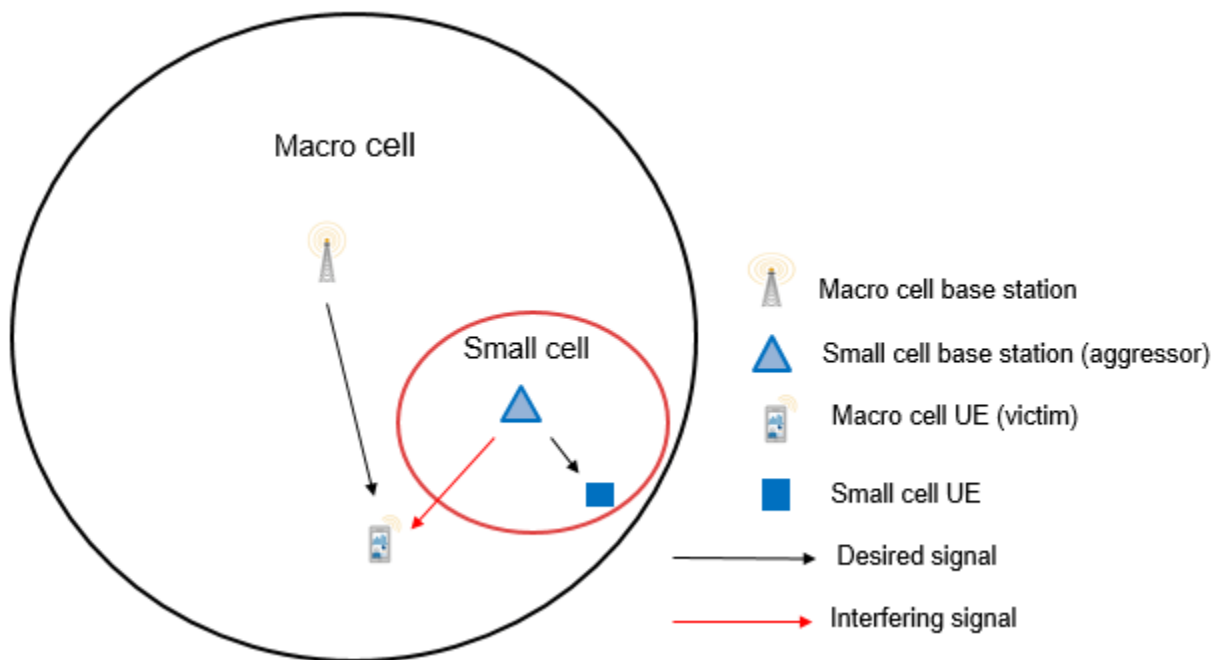
% Get the logs
if(simParameters.DuplexMode == 0) % FDD
    logInfo = struct('NCellID', [], 'DLTimeStepLogs', [], 'SchedulingAssignmentLogs', [], 'BLERLogs', []);
else
    logInfo = struct('NCellID', [], 'TimeStepLogs', [], 'SchedulingAssignmentLogs', [], 'BLERLogs', []);
end
simulationLogs = cell(simParameters.NumCells, 1);
for cellIdx = 1:simParameters.NumCells
    logInfo.NCellID = simParameters.NCellIDList(cellIdx);
    if(simParameters.DuplexMode == 0) % FDD
        logInfo.DLTimeStepLogs = getSchedulingLogs(simSchedulingLogger{cellIdx});
    else % TDD
        logInfo.TimeStepLogs = getSchedulingLogs(simSchedulingLogger{cellIdx});
    end
    logInfo.SchedulingAssignmentLogs = getGrantLogs(simSchedulingLogger{cellIdx}); % Scheduling assignment logs
    logInfo.BLERLogs = getBLERLogs(simPhyLogger{cellIdx}); % Block error rate logs
    simulationLogs{cellIdx, 1} = logInfo;
end
```

```
save(simParameters.ParametersLogFile, 'simParameters'); % Save simulation parameters in a MAT-file
save(simParameters.SimulationLogFile, 'simulationLogs'); % Save simulation logs in a MAT-file
```

Further Exploration

You can use this example to further explore these options.

- Model the uplink interference between the nodes by configuring uplink-related configuration. For details, see the “NR Cell Performance Evaluation with Physical Layer Integration” on page 5-92 example.
- Model the Aggressor-Victim scenarios: The aggressor is the source of interference and the victim suffers due to the interference. Consider the DL scenario in the following figure. The macro UE is far away from the macro base station (BS) and near to the small cell. The small cell BS interferes with macro BS transmission for macro UE in DL. Due to that macro UE suffers from interference by the small cell BS. The small cell BS is called the aggressor and macro UE is called the victim.



- To model multiple clusters, where each cluster consists of cells operating on different frequencies, and analyze the impact of interference on the cell edge users.

Based on the described simulation parameters, the example evaluates the performance of the system measured in terms of various metrics. Different visualizations show the run time performance of the system. A more thorough post simulation analysis by using the saved logs gives a detailed picture of the operations happening on a per slot basis.

Appendix

The example uses these helper functions and classes:

- `hWirelessNode.m`: Wireless node base class
- `hNRNode.m`: NR node base class for both gNB and UE

- hNRGNB.m: gNB node functionality
- hNRUE.m: UE node functionality
- helperApplication.m: Application layer functionality
- hNRRLCEntity.m: Base class for RLC UM and AM entities
- hNRUMEntity.m: RLC UM functionality
- hNRAMEntity.m: RLC AM functionality
- hNRRLCDataPDUInfo.m: Creates RLC PDU information object
- hNRRLCBufferStatus.m: Generates RLC buffer status information object
- hNRRLCDataReassembly.m: Create an RLC SDU reassembly information object
- hNRMAC.m: NR MAC base class functionality
- hNRGNBMAC.m: gNB MAC functionality
- hNRUEMAC.m: UE MAC functionality
- hNRScheduler.m: Core MAC scheduler functionality
- hNRSchedulerBestCQI.m: Implements best CQI scheduling strategy
- hNRSchedulerProportionalFair.m: Implements proportional fair scheduling strategy
- hNRSchedulerRoundRobin.m: Implements round robin scheduling strategy
- hNRMACBSR.m: Generates buffer status report
- hNRMACBSRParser.m: Parses buffer status report
- hNRMACSubPDU.m: Generates MAC subPDU
- hNRMACPaddingSubPDU.m: Generates MAC subPDU with padding
- hNRMACMultiplex.m: Generates MAC PDU
- hNRMACPDUParser.m: Parses MAC PDU
- hNewHARQProcesses.m: Creates new HARQ process
- hUpdateHARQProcess.m: Updates HARQ process
- hNRPhyInterface.m: NR PHY base class functionality
- hNRGNBPhy.m: gNB PHY functionality
- hNRUEPhy.m: UE PHY functionality
- hNRPUSCHInfo.m: PUSCH information structure passed by MAC to PHY layer
- hNRPDSCHInfo.m: PDSCH information structure passed by MAC to PHY layer
- hNRRxIndicationInfo.m: Information structure passed by PHY layer to MAC along with MAC PDU
- hNRUplinkGrantFormat.m: UL grant format
- hNRDownlinkGrantFormat.m: DL grant format
- hNRPacketDistribution.m: Creates packet distribution object
- hNRPhyRxBuffer.m: Creates PHY signal reception buffer object
- hSkipWeakTimingOffset.m: Skip timing offset estimates with weak correlation
- hNRRLCLogger.m: Implements RLC statistics logging and visualization functionality
- hNRSchedulingLogger.m: Implements scheduling information logging and visualization functionality
- hNRPhyLogger.m: Implements uplink and downlink block error rate logging and visualization functionality

- hNRInterCellInterferenceValidateConfig.m: Validates simulation configuration
- hNRSetUpPacketDistribution.m: Set up packet distribution functionality
- hNRPacketWriter.m: Captures MAC packets
- hNRPacketInfo.m: Metadata format for capturing MAC packets
- hNRMetricsVisualizer.m: Implements metrics visualization functionality
- NRPostSimVisualization.m: Post simulation visualization script

Local functions

```
function plotNetwork(simParameters)
% Create the figure
figure('Name', 'Network Topology Visualization', 'units', 'normalized', 'outerposition', [0 0 1 1]);
title('Network Topology Visualization');
hold on;

for cellIdx = 1:simParameters.NumCells

    % Plot the circle
    th = 0:pi/60:2*pi;
    xunit = simParameters.CellRadius * cos(th) + simParameters.GNBPosition(cellIdx, 1);
    yunit = simParameters.CellRadius * sin(th) + simParameters.GNBPosition(cellIdx, 2);
    if simParameters.CellOfInterest == simParameters.NCellIDList(cellIdx)
        h1 = plot(xunit, yunit, 'Color', 'green'); % Cell of interest
    else
        h2 = plot(xunit, yunit, 'Color', 'red');
    end
    xlabel('X-Position (meters)')
    ylabel('Y-Position (meters)')
    % Add tool tip data for gNBs
    s1 = scatter(simParameters.GNBPosition(cellIdx, 1), simParameters.GNBPosition(cellIdx, 2), 'b', 'filled');
    cellIdRow = dataTipTextRow('Cell - ', {num2str(simParameters.NCellIDList(cellIdx))});
    s1.DataTipTemplate.DataTipRows(1) = cellIdRow;
    posRow = dataTipTextRow('Position[X, Y]: ', {[ '[' num2str(simParameters.GNBPosition(cellIdx, 1), 1) ' ' num2str(simParameters.GNBPosition(cellIdx, 2), 1) ' ]' ]});
    s1.DataTipTemplate.DataTipRows(2) = posRow;

    % Add tool tip data for UEs
    uePosition = simParameters.UEPosition{cellIdx};
    for ueIdx = 1:size(uePosition, 1)
        s2 = scatter(uePosition(ueIdx, 1), uePosition(ueIdx, 2), '.', 'MarkerEdgeColor', 'blue');
        ueIdRow = dataTipTextRow('UE - ', {num2str(ueIdx)});
        s2.DataTipTemplate.DataTipRows(1) = ueIdRow;
        posRow = dataTipTextRow('Position[X, Y]: ', {[ '[' num2str(uePosition(ueIdx, 1), 1) ' ' num2str(uePosition(ueIdx, 2), 1) ' ]' ]});
        s2.DataTipTemplate.DataTipRows(2) = posRow;
    end
end
% Create the legend
if simParameters.NumCells > 1
    legend([h1 h2 s1 s2], 'Cell of interest', 'Interfering cells', 'gNodeB', 'UE', 'Location', 'Location');
else
    legend([h1 s1 s2], 'Cell of interest', 'gNodeB', 'UE', 'Location', 'northeastoutside')
end
axis([0 4000 0 3000]); % Set axis limits
hold off;
daspect([1000,1000,1]); % Set data aspect ratio
end
```

```

function uePositions = generateUEPositions(simParameters)
% Return the position of UEs in each cell

uePositions = cell(simParameters.NumCells, 1);
for cellIdx=1:simParameters.NumCells
    gnbXCo = simParameters.GNBPosition(cellIdx, 1); % gNB X-coordinate
    gnbYCo = simParameters.GNBPosition(cellIdx, 2); % gNB Y-coordinate
    theta = rand(simParameters.NumUEsCell, 1)*(2*pi);
    % Expression to calculate position of UEs with in the cell. By default,
    % it will place the UEs randomly with in the cell
    r = sqrt(rand(simParameters.NumUEsCell, 1))*simParameters.CellRadius;
    x = round(gnbXCo + r.*cos(theta));
    y = round(gnbYCo + r.*sin(theta));
    uePositions{cellIdx} = [x y];
end
end

```

References

- [1] 3GPP TS 38.104. "NR; Base Station (BS) radio transmission and reception." *3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Radio Access Network*.
- [2] 3GPP TS 38.214. "NR; Physical layer procedures for data." *3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Radio Access Network*.
- [3] 3GPP TS 38.321. "NR; Medium Access Control (MAC) protocol specification." *3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Radio Access Network*.
- [4] 3GPP TS 38.322. "NR; Radio Link Control (RLC) protocol specification." *3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Radio Access Network*.
- [5] 3GPP TS 38.323. "NR; Packet Data Convergence Protocol (PDCP) specification." *3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Radio Access Network*.
- [6] 3GPP TS 38.331. "NR; Radio Resource Control (RRC) protocol specification." *3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Radio Access Network*.
- [7] 3GPP TR 37.910. "Study on self evaluation towards IMT-2020 submission." *3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Radio Access Network*.

See Also

Related Examples

- "NR Cell Performance Evaluation with Physical Layer Integration" on page 5-92
- "NR FDD Scheduling Performance Evaluation" on page 5-55

Generate and Visualize FTP Application Traffic Pattern

This example shows how to generate a file transfer protocol (FTP) application traffic pattern based on the IEEE® 802.11ax™ Evaluation Methodology [1 on page 5-0] and the 3GPP TR 36.814 specification [2 on page 5-0].

FTP Application Traffic Model

Multinode communication systems involve modeling of different application traffic models. Each application is characterized by parameters such as the data rate, packet inter arrival time, and packet size. To evaluate various algorithms and protocols, standardization bodies such as IEEE and 3GPP define certain application traffic patterns such as Voice over Internet Protocol (VoIP), video conferencing, and FTP. This example generates and visualizes an FTP application traffic pattern.

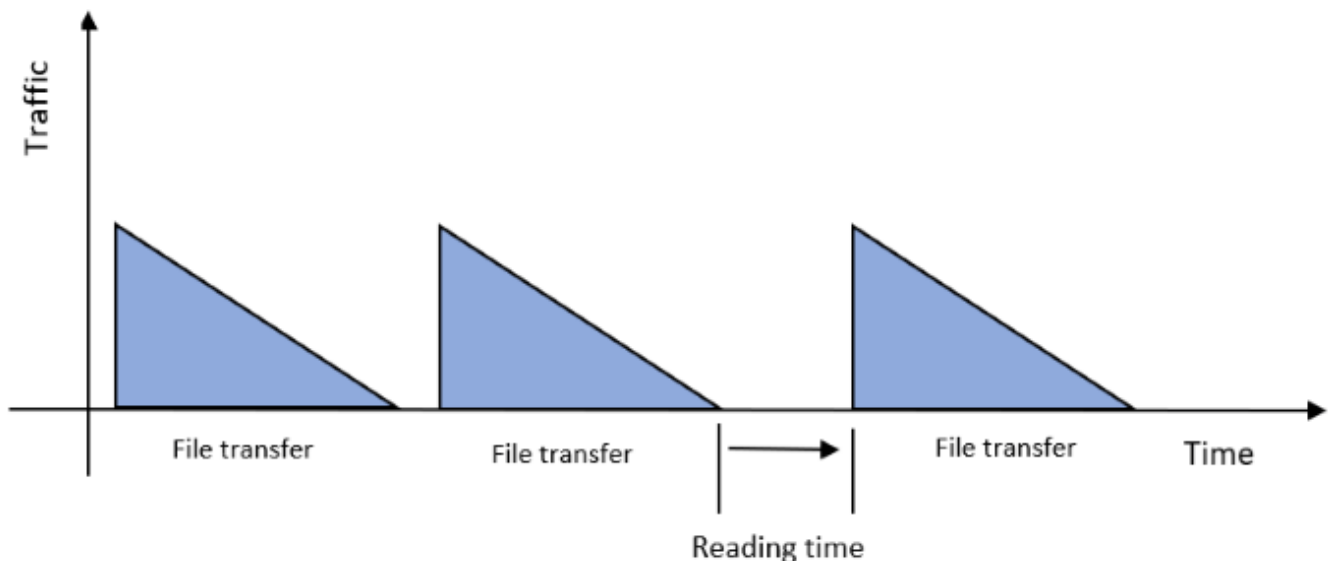
The FTP application traffic pattern is modeled as a sequence of file transfers separated by reading time. The reading time specifies the time interval between two successive file transfers. The file is generated as multiple packets separated by packet inter arrival time. The packet inter arrival time specifies the time interval between two successive packet transfers.

The 11ax Evaluation Methodology [1 on page 5-0] specifies this FTP application traffic model:

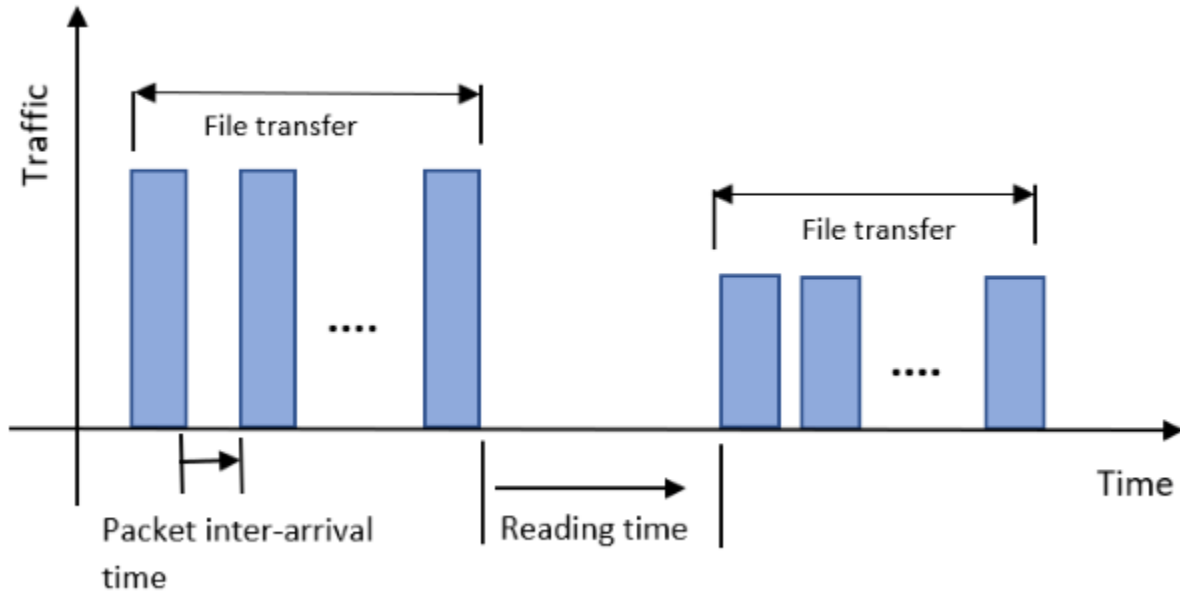
- **Local FTP traffic model** - This model is characterized by truncated Lognormal file size and exponential reading time.

The 3GPP TR 36.814 specification [2 on page 5-0] specifies these FTP application traffic models:

- **FTP traffic model 2** - This model is characterized by 2/0.5 megabytes file size and exponential reading time. This figure shows the traffic pattern of this FTP model.



- **FTP traffic model 3** - This model is characterized by a 0.5 megabytes file, exponential reading time, and Poisson packet arrival rate. This figure shows the traffic pattern of this FTP model.



This example demonstrates the local FTP traffic model specified in 11-ax Evaluation Methodology [1 on page 5-0]. Similarly, you can use the FTP traffic models 2 and 3 specified in 3GPP TR 36.814 specification [2 on page 5-0] using the file size and packet arrival rate properties.

Configure FTP Application Traffic Pattern Object

Create a configuration object to generate the FTP application traffic pattern.

```
% Create FTP application traffic pattern object with default properties
ftpObj = networkTrafficFTP;

% Set exponential distribution mean value for reading time in milliseconds
ftpObj.ExponentialMean = 50;

% Set truncated Lognormal distribution mu value for file size calculation
ftpObj.LogNormalMu = 10;

% Set truncated Lognormal distribution sigma value for file size calculation
ftpObj.LogNormalSigma = 1;

% Set truncated Lognormal distribution upper limit in megabytes
ftpObj.UpperLimit = 5;

% Display object
disp(ftpObj);

networkTrafficFTP with properties:

    LogNormalMu: 10
    LogNormalSigma: 1
    UpperLimit: 5
    ExponentialMean: 50
```

```

PacketInterArrivalTime: 0
GeneratePacket: 0

```

Generate and Visualize FTP Application Traffic Pattern

Generate FTP application traffic pattern using the generate object function of the networkTrafficFTP object.

```

% Set simulation time in milliseconds
simTime = 10000;

% Set step time in milliseconds
stepTime = 1;

% Validate simTime, simTime must be greater than or equal to stepTime
validateattributes(simTime, {'numeric'}, {'real', 'scalar', 'finite', '>='}, stepTime);
rng('default');

% Time after which the generate method must be invoked again
nextInvokeTime = 0;

% Generated packet count
packetCount = 0;

% Initialize arrays to store outputs for visualization
% Packet generation times in milliseconds
generationTime = zeros(5000, 1);

% Time interval between two consecutive packet transfers in milliseconds
packetIntervals = zeros(5000, 1);

% Packet sizes in bytes
packetSizes = zeros(5000, 1);

% Loop over the simulation time, generating FTP application traffic pattern
% and saving the dt and packet size values for visualization
while simTime
    if nextInvokeTime <= 0 % Time to generate the packet
        packetCount = packetCount+1; % Increment packet count
        % Call generate method and store outputs for visualization
        [packetIntervals(packetCount), packetSizes(packetCount)] = generate(ftpObj);
        % Set next invoke time
        nextInvokeTime = packetIntervals(packetCount);
        % Store packet generation time for visualization
        generationTime(packetCount+1) = generationTime(packetCount) + packetIntervals(packetCount);
    end

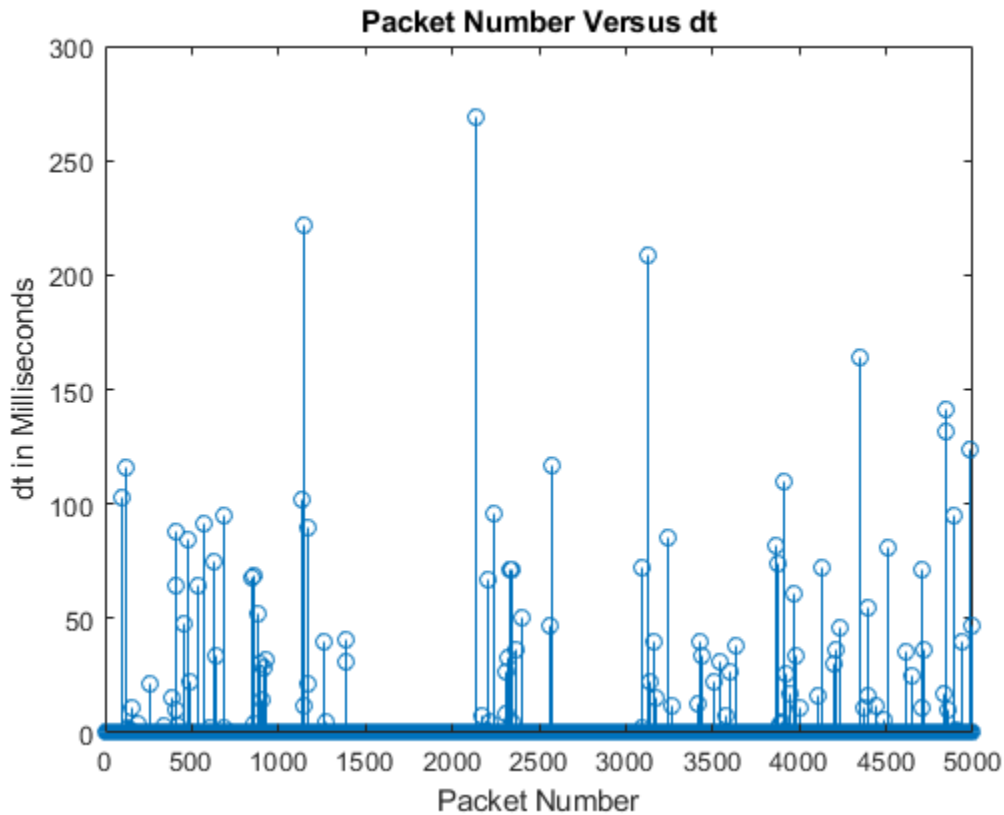
    % Update next invoke time
    nextInvokeTime = nextInvokeTime - stepTime;

    % Update simulation time
    simTime = simTime - stepTime;
end

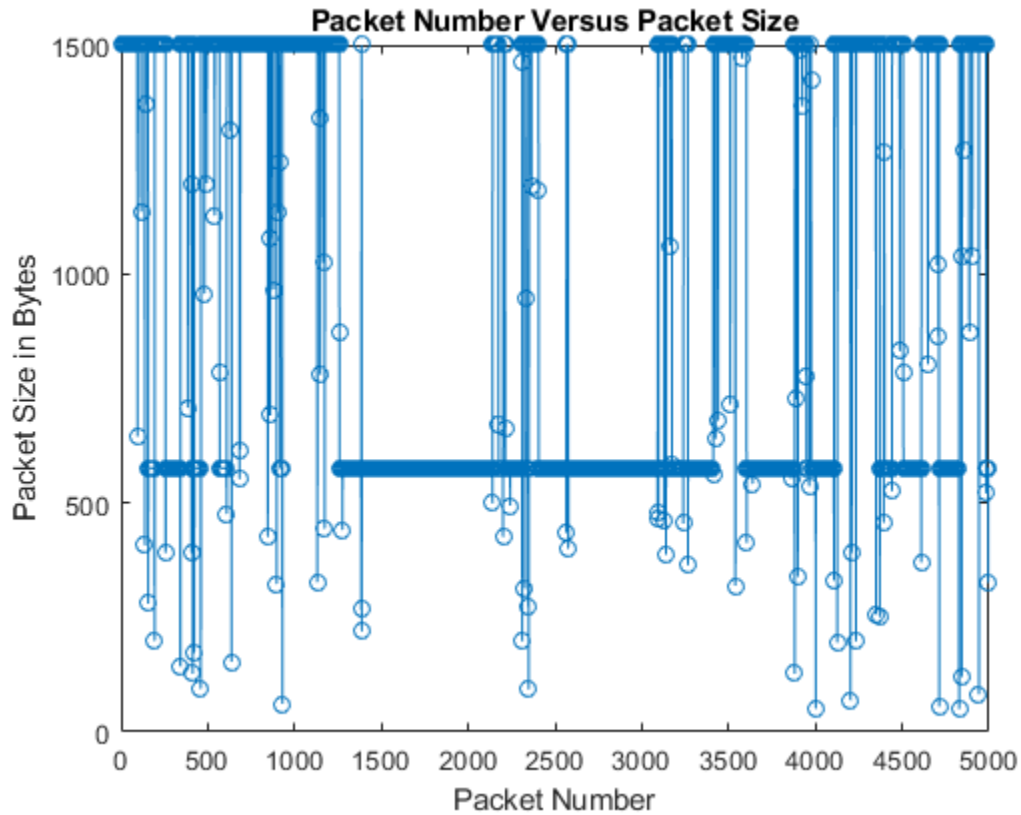
```

Visualize the generated FTP application traffic pattern. In this plot, dt is the time interval between two successive FTP application packets.

```
% Packet Number Versus Packet Intervals (dt)
% Stem graph to see packet intervals
pktIntervalsFig = figure('Name', 'Packet intervals', 'NumberTitle', 'off');
pktIntervalsAxes = axes(pktIntervalsFig);
stem(pktIntervalsAxes, packetIntervals(1:packetCount));
title(pktIntervalsAxes, 'Packet Number Versus dt');
xlabel(pktIntervalsAxes, 'Packet Number');
ylabel(pktIntervalsAxes, 'dt in Milliseconds');
```



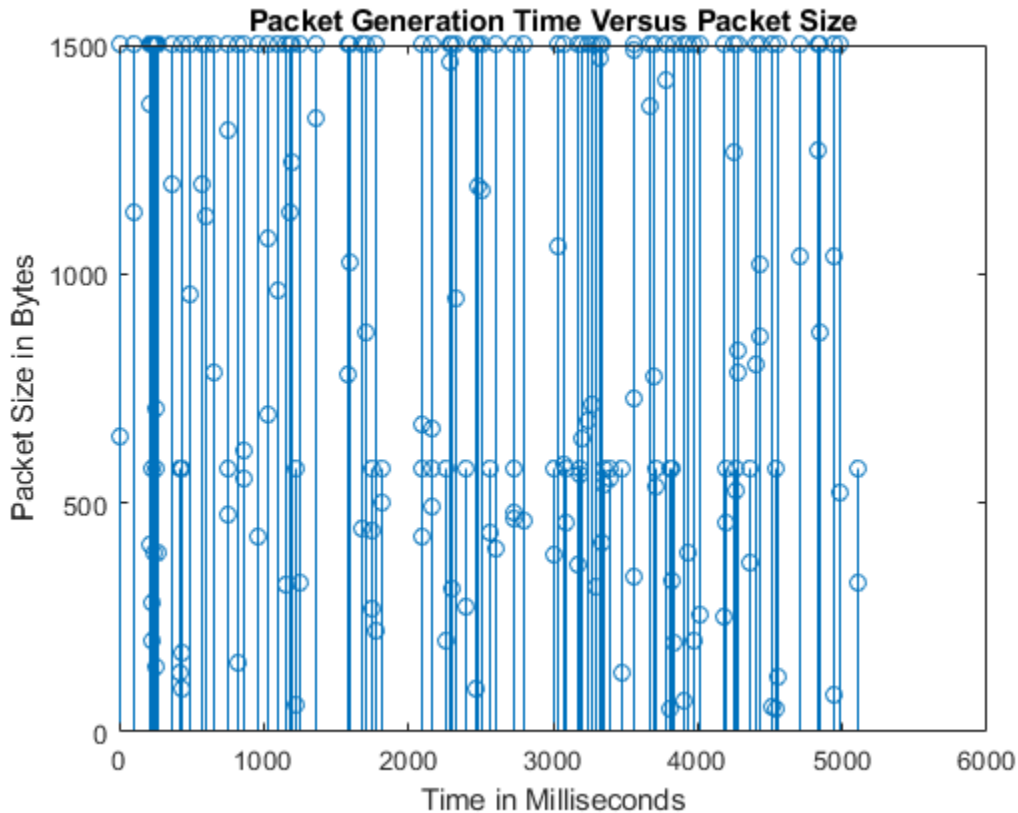
```
% Plot to see different packet sizes
pktSizesFig = figure('Name', 'Packet sizes', 'NumberTitle', 'off');
pktSizesAxes = axes(pktSizesFig);
plot(pktSizesAxes, packetSizes(1:packetCount), 'marker', 'o');
title(pktSizesAxes, 'Packet Number Versus Packet Size');
xlabel(pktSizesAxes, 'Packet Number');
ylabel(pktSizesAxes, 'Packet Size in Bytes');
```



```

% Stem graph of FTP application traffic pattern (Packet sizes of different files
% at different packet generation times)
ftpPatternFig = figure('Name', 'FTP application traffic pattern', 'NumberTitle', 'off');
ftpPatternAxes = axes(ftpPatternFig);
stem(ftpPatternAxes, generationTime(1:packetCount), packetSizes(1:packetCount), 'Marker', 'o');
title(ftpPatternAxes, 'Packet Generation Time Versus Packet Size');
ylabel(ftpPatternAxes, 'Packet Size in Bytes');
xlabel(ftpPatternAxes, 'Time in Milliseconds');

```

Further Exploration

This example generates an FTP traffic pattern as per the 11ax Evaluation Methodology [1 on page 5-0] and 3GPP specification [2 on page 5-0]. Similarly, you can use `networkTrafficVoIP` and `networkTrafficOnOff` objects to generate VoIP and On-Off application traffic patterns, respectively. You can use these different application traffic patterns in system-level simulations to accurately model the real-world data traffic.

References

- 1 IEEE 802.11-14/0571r12 . "11ax Evaluation Methodology". IEEE P802.11. Wireless LANs.
- 2 3GPP TR 36.814. "Evolved Universal Terrestrial Radio Access (E-UTRA). Further advancements for E-UTRA physical layer aspects". *3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Radio Access Network*.

See Also

Objects

`networkTrafficFTP` | `networkTrafficOnOff` | `networkTrafficVoIP`

Test and Measurement

5G NR-TM and FRC Waveform Generation

This example shows how to generate standard-compliant 5G NR test models (NR-TMs) and uplink and downlink fixed reference channels (FRCs) for frequency range 1 (FR1) and frequency range 2 (FR2). For the NR-TM and FRC waveform generation, you can specify the NR-TM or FRC name, the channel bandwidth, the subcarrier spacing, and the duplexing mode.

Introduction

The 3GPP 5G NR standard defines sets of link and waveform configurations for the purposes of conformance testing. Two specific types of downlink conformance waveforms are NR test models (NR-TM), for the purpose of base station (BS) RF testing, and downlink fixed reference channels (FRC), for user equipment (UE) input testing.

The NR-TMs for FR1 are defined in TS 38.141-1 Section 4.9.2, and the NR-TMs for FR2 are defined in TS 38.141-2 Section 4.9.2.

They are used in a range of RF tests, including:

- BS output power
- Timing alignment error (TAE)
- Occupied bandwidth emissions
- Adjacent channel leakage ratio (ACLR)
- Operating band unwanted emissions
- Transmitter spurious emissions
- Transmitter intermodulation

Specific test models are aimed at specific sets of measurements.

The physical downlink shared channel (PDSCH) FRC for FR1 are defined in TS 38.101-1 Annex A.3, and for FR2 are defined in TS 38.101-2 Annex A.3.

They are used in a number of UE tests, including:

- UE receiver requirements
- Maximum UE input level testing

The physical uplink shared channel (PUSCH) FRC for FR1 and FR2 are defined in TS 38.104 Annex A.

They are used in a number of base station reception tests, including:

- Reference sensitivity
- Adjacent channel selectivity (ACS)
- In-band and out-of-band blocking
- Receiver intermodulation
- In-channel selectivity
- Dynamic range
- Performance requirements

NR-TMs and FRCs are defined across a standardized set of transmission bandwidth configurations for a valid range of channel bandwidth and subcarrier spacing combinations.

This reference application example uses the MATLAB class `hNRReferenceWaveformGenerator`. This class provides access to the bandwidth configuration tables, the Release 15 test model and FRC lists, and provides baseband waveform generation and resource grid visualization.

The `hNRReferenceWaveformGenerator` class contains two constant MATLAB table properties. The `FR1BandwidthTable` property contains the FR1 transmission bandwidth configurations defined in TS 38.104 Table 5.3.2-1. See also the FR1 maximum transmission bandwidth configurations defined in TS 38.101-1 Table 5.3.2-1. The `FR2BandwidthTable` property contains the FR2 transmission bandwidth configurations defined in TS 38.104 Table 5.3.2-2. See also the FR2 maximum transmission bandwidth configurations defined in TS 38.101-2 Table 5.3.2-1.

```
% Release 15 transmission bandwidth configurations
```

```
fr1bandwidthtable = hNRReferenceWaveformGenerator.FR1BandwidthTable
```

```
fr1bandwidthtable=3×13 table
```

	5MHz	10MHz	15MHz	20MHz	25MHz	30MHz	40MHz	50MHz	60MHz	70MHz
15kHz	25	52	79	106	133	160	216	270	NaN	NaN
30kHz	11	24	38	51	65	78	106	133	162	189
60kHz	NaN	11	18	24	31	38	51	65	79	93

```
fr2bandwidthtable = hNRReferenceWaveformGenerator.FR2BandwidthTable
```

```
fr2bandwidthtable=2×4 table
```

	50MHz	100MHz	200MHz	400MHz
60kHz	66	132	264	NaN
120kHz	32	66	132	264

The `hNRReferenceWaveformGenerator` class also contains two constant properties which list the test model names for FR1 (TS 38.141-1 Section 4.9.2) and test model names for FR2 (TS 38.141-2 Section 4.9.2).

```
% Release 15 NR-TM test models for FR1 and FR2
```

```
fr1testmodels = hNRReferenceWaveformGenerator.FR1TestModels
```

```
fr1testmodels = 8×1 string
```

```
"NR-FR1-TM1.1"  
"NR-FR1-TM1.2"  
"NR-FR1-TM2"  
"NR-FR1-TM2a"  
"NR-FR1-TM3.1"  
"NR-FR1-TM3.1a"  
"NR-FR1-TM3.2"  
"NR-FR1-TM3.3"
```

```
fr2testmodels = hNRReferenceWaveformGenerator.FR2TestModels
```

```
fr2testmodels = 3×1 string
```

```
"NR-FR2-TM1.1"
```

```
"NR-FR2-TM2"  
"NR-FR2-TM3.1"
```

For the downlink FRCs, the class contains additional constant properties which list the downlink FRC names for FR1 (TS 38.101-1 Annex A.3) and for FR2 (TS 38.101-2 Annex A.3).

```
% Release 15 downlink fixed reference channels for FR1 and FR2  
fr1downlinkfrc = hNRReferenceWaveformGenerator.FR1DownlinkFRC
```

```
fr1downlinkfrc = 3×1 string  
"DL-FRC-FR1-QPSK"  
"DL-FRC-FR1-64QAM"  
"DL-FRC-FR1-256QAM"
```

```
fr2downlinkfrc = hNRReferenceWaveformGenerator.FR2DownlinkFRC
```

```
fr2downlinkfrc = 3×1 string  
"DL-FRC-FR2-QPSK"  
"DL-FRC-FR2-16QAM"  
"DL-FRC-FR2-64QAM"
```

For the uplink FRCs, the class contains two constant properties which list the uplink FRC names for FR1 and FR2 (TS 38.104 Annex A).

```
% Release 15 uplink fixed reference channels for FR1 and FR2  
fr1uplinkfrc = hNRReferenceWaveformGenerator.FR1UplinkFRC
```

```
fr1uplinkfrc = 89×1 string  
"G-FR1-A1-1"  
"G-FR1-A1-2"  
"G-FR1-A1-3"  
"G-FR1-A1-4"  
"G-FR1-A1-5"  
"G-FR1-A1-6"  
"G-FR1-A1-7"  
"G-FR1-A1-8"  
"G-FR1-A1-9"  
"G-FR1-A2-1"  
"G-FR1-A2-2"  
"G-FR1-A2-3"  
"G-FR1-A2-4"  
"G-FR1-A2-5"  
"G-FR1-A2-6"  
"G-FR1-A3-1"  
"G-FR1-A3-2"  
"G-FR1-A3-3"  
"G-FR1-A3-4"  
"G-FR1-A3-5"  
"G-FR1-A3-6"  
"G-FR1-A3-7"  
"G-FR1-A3-8"  
"G-FR1-A3-9"  
"G-FR1-A3-10"  
"G-FR1-A3-11"  
"G-FR1-A3-12"  
"G-FR1-A3-13"
```

```

"G-FR1-A3-14"
"G-FR1-A3-15"
:

fr2uplinkfrc = hNRReferenceWaveformGenerator.FR2UplinkFRC
fr2uplinkfrc = 37x1 string
"G-FR2-A1-1"
"G-FR2-A1-2"
"G-FR2-A1-3"
"G-FR2-A1-4"
"G-FR2-A1-5"
"G-FR2-A3-1"
"G-FR2-A3-2"
"G-FR2-A3-3"
"G-FR2-A3-4"
"G-FR2-A3-5"
"G-FR2-A3-6"
"G-FR2-A3-7"
"G-FR2-A3-8"
"G-FR2-A3-9"
"G-FR2-A3-10"
"G-FR2-A3-11"
"G-FR2-A3-12"
"G-FR2-A4-1"
"G-FR2-A4-2"
"G-FR2-A4-3"
"G-FR2-A4-4"
"G-FR2-A4-5"
"G-FR2-A4-6"
"G-FR2-A4-7"
"G-FR2-A4-8"
"G-FR2-A4-9"
"G-FR2-A4-10"
"G-FR2-A5-1"
"G-FR2-A5-2"
"G-FR2-A5-3"
:

```

For more information, access the help of `hNRReferenceWaveformGenerator` by typing `'doc hNRReferenceWaveformGenerator'`.

NR-TM and PDSCH FRC Waveform Generation

Each PDSCH reference waveform is defined by a combination of:

- NR-TM or FRC name
- Channel bandwidth
- Subcarrier spacing
- Duplexing mode

Different NR-TMs are defined for FR1 and FR2. Depending on the test model purposes, NR-TMs have varying PDSCH characteristics. For example: full band, single modulation scheme, or full band, multiple modulation schemes with varying power boosting/deboosting or single, varying PRB allocation. Common features to all NR-TMs are: no SS burst, PDSCH mapping type A with one (FR2)

or two (FR1) DM-RS positions per slot transmission, and a single PDCCH across two symbols with NCCE = 1. There is no transport or DCI coding used and the input to the PDSCH and PDCCH is all 0's or PN23. FDD NR-TM waveforms are 10 ms in length and TDD cases are 20 ms. PT-RS are specified for FR2 NR-TM.

By comparison, downlink FRC waveforms contain transport coded PDSCH using RV = 0. The reference PDSCH are not defined in slots which overlap the SS burst (slot 0 or slots 0 and 1). They use front loaded PDSCH mapping type A with 2 additional DM-RS positions. There is no FDM between the PDSCH and the DM-RS. The full-band PDSCH start at symbol 2 and the first 2 symbols in a slot contain a full occupied CORESET. The FRC waveforms generated in this example do not contain additional OCNG. Power levels for all resource elements are uniform. The transport block data source is ITU PN9.

The channel bandwidth and subcarrier spacing combination have to be a valid pair from the associated FR bandwidth configuration table. The standard only defines FR2 NR-TM and FRC for TDD but with this example you can also create FDD waveforms.

This MATLAB code creates an `hNRReferenceWaveformGenerator` object for the selected NR-TM or FRC configuration. You can use this object to generate the associated baseband waveform and to display the underlying PRB and subcarrier-level resource grids.

`% Select the NR-TM or PDSCH FRC waveform parameters`

```

dlNrref = NR-FR1-TM3.2 (...); % Model name and properties
bw      = 10MHz (FR1); % Channel bandwidth
scs     = 15kHz (FR1); % Subcarrier spacing
dm      = FDD; % Duplexing mode
ncellid = 1; % NCellID
sv      = V15.7.0; % TS 38.141-x version (NR-TM only)

```

`% Run this entire section to generate the required waveform`

`% Create generator object for the above NR-TM/PDSCH FRC reference model`

```
dlrefwavegen = hNRReferenceWaveformGenerator(dlNrref,bw,scs,dm,ncellid,sv)
```

```
dlrefwavegen =
```

```
hNRReferenceWaveformGenerator with properties:
```

```

FR1BandwidthTable: [3x13 table]
FR2BandwidthTable: [2x4 table]
FR1TestModels: [8x1 string]
FR2TestModels: [3x1 string]
FR1DownlinkFRC: [3x1 string]
FR2DownlinkFRC: [3x1 string]
FR1UplinkFRC: [89x1 string]
FR2UplinkFRC: [37x1 string]
Config: [1x1 nrDLCarrierConfig]
IsReadOnly: 1
ConfiguredModel: {"NR-FR1-TM3.2" "10MHz" "15kHz" "FDD" [1] "15.7.0"}
TargetRNTI: 1

```



```
% Generate waveform
[dlrefwaveform,dlrefwaveinfo,dlresourceinfo] = generateWaveform(dlrefwavegen);

% View transmission information about the set of PDSCH within the waveform
dlresourceinfo.WaveformResources.PDSCH

ans=1x3 struct array with fields:
    Name
    CDMLengths
    Resources

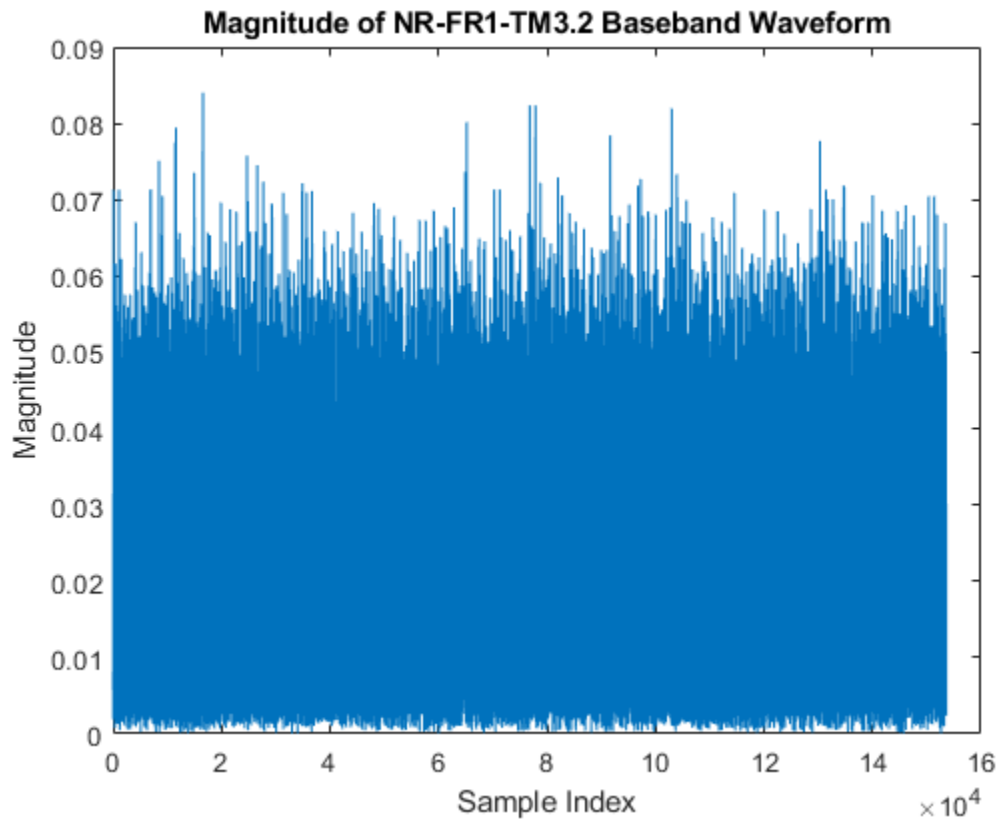
% View detailed information about one of the PDSCH sequences
dlresourceinfo.WaveformResources.PDSCH(1).Resources

ans=1x10 struct array with fields:
    NSlot
    TransportBlockSize
    TransportBlock
    RV
    Codeword
    G
    Gd
    ChannelIndices
    ChannelSymbols
    DMRSIndices
    DMRSSymbols
    DMRSSymbolSet
    PTRSIndices
    PTRSSymbols
    PTRSSymbolSet

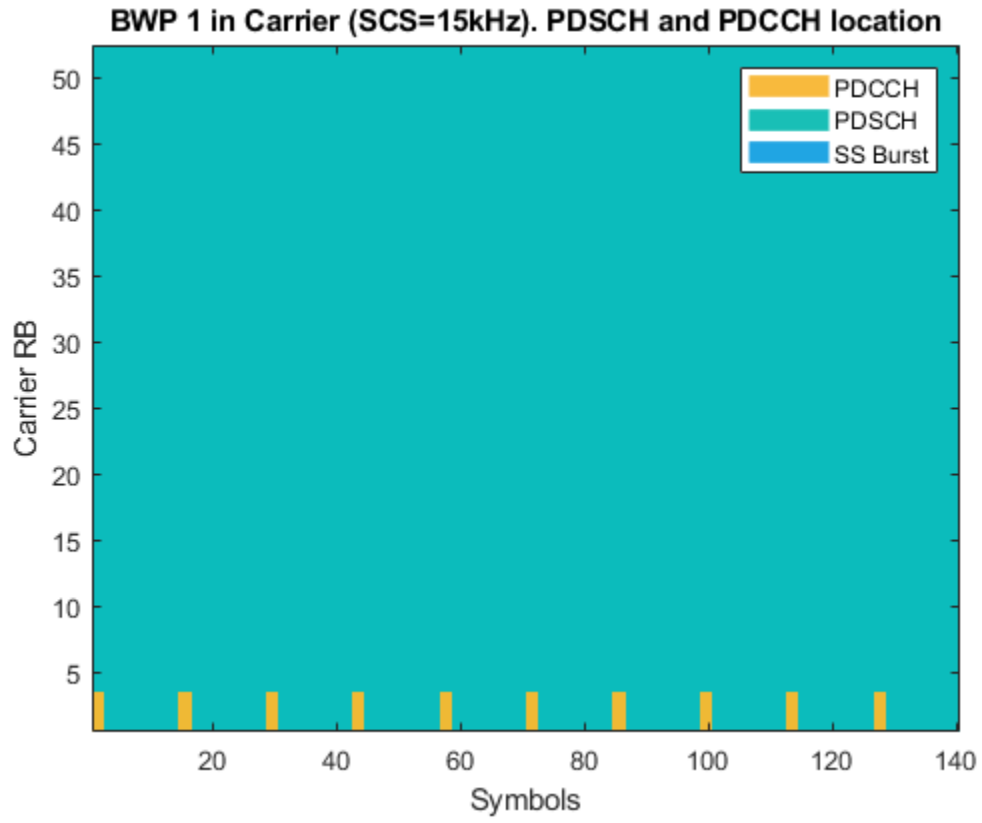
% Waveform sample rate (Hz)
samplerate = dlrefwaveinfo.Info.SampleRate

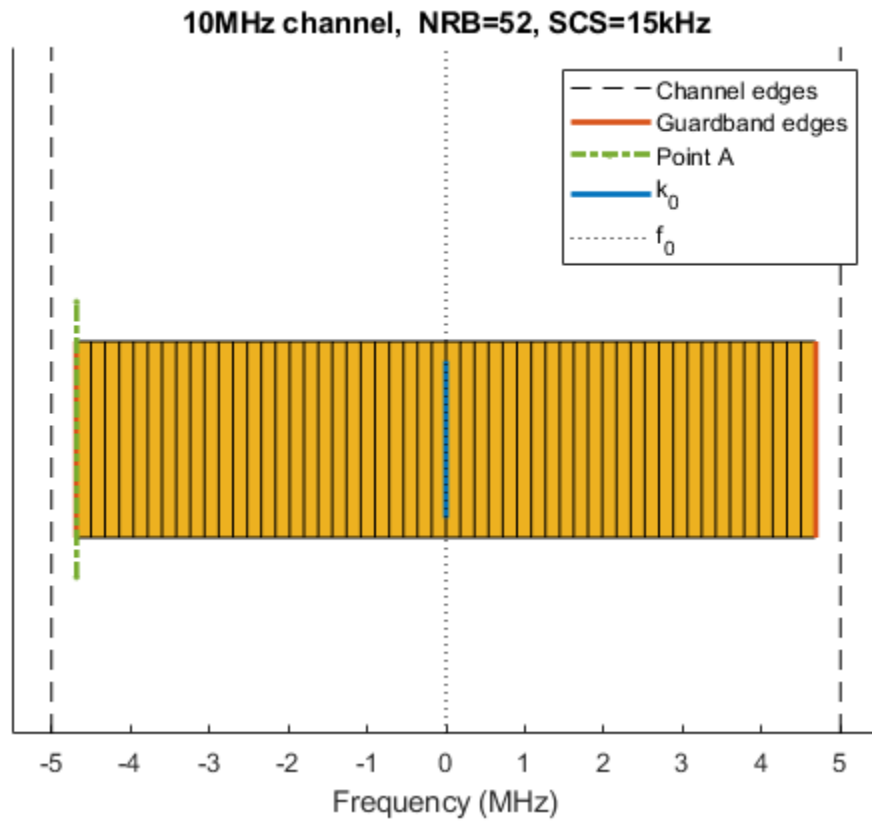
samplerate = 15360000

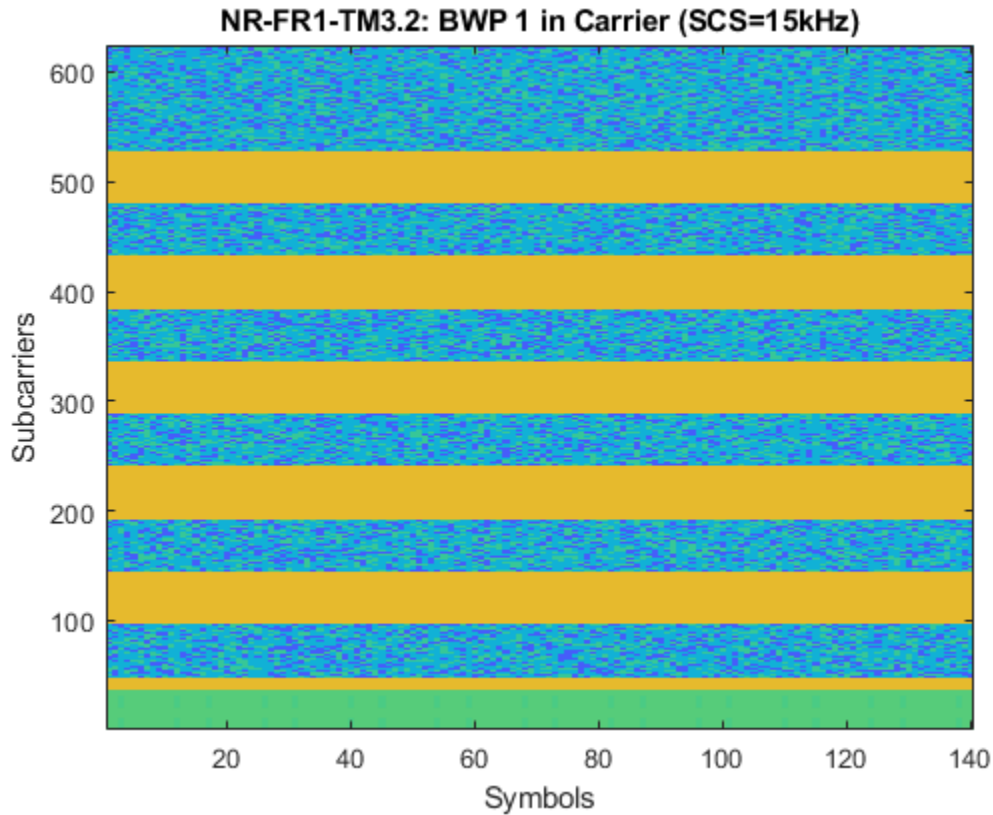
plot(abs(dlrefwaveform)); title(sprintf('Magnitude of %s Baseband Waveform',dlnrref)); xlabel('S
```



```
% Visualize the associated PRB and subcarrier resource grids  
displayResourceGrid(dlrefwavegen);
```







```
fullparameterset = dlrefwavegen.Config % Full low-level parameter set
```

```
fullparameterset =  
nrDLCarrierConfig with properties:
```

```
    Label: 'NR-FR1-TM3.2'  
    FrequencyRange: 'FR1'  
    ChannelBandwidth: 10  
    NCellID: 1  
    NumSubframes: 10  
    WindowingPercent: 0  
    SampleRate: []  
    CarrierFrequency: 0  
    SCSCarriers: {[1x1 nrSCSCarrierConfig]}  
    BandwidthParts: {[1x1 nrWavegenBWPCongig]}  
    SSBurst: [1x1 nrWavegenSSBurstConfig]  
    CORESET: {[1x1 nrCORESETConfig]}  
    SearchSpaces: {[1x1 nrSearchSpaceConfig]}  
    PDCCH: {[1x1 nrWavegenPDCCHConfig]}  
    PDSCH: {[1x1 nrWavegenPDSCHConfig] [1x1 nrWavegenPDSCHConfig] [1x1 nrWavegenPDSCHConfig]}  
    CSIRS: {[1x1 nrWavegenCSIRSConfig]}
```

```
% Make the Config parameters writable and boost the power on all PDSCH DM-RS  
dlrefwavegen = makeConfigWritable(dlrefwavegen)
```

```

dlrefwavegen =
  hNRReferenceWaveformGenerator with properties:

    FR1BandwidthTable: [3×13 table]
    FR2BandwidthTable: [2×4 table]
    FR1TestModels: [8×1 string]
    FR2TestModels: [3×1 string]
    FR1DownlinkFRC: [3×1 string]
    FR2DownlinkFRC: [3×1 string]
    FR1UplinkFRC: [89×1 string]
    FR2UplinkFRC: [37×1 string]
    Config: [1×1 nrDLCarrierConfig]
    IsReadOnly: 0
    ConfiguredModel: {"NR-FR1-TM3.2"} ["10MHz"] ["15kHz"] ["FDD"] [1] ["15.7.0"]}
    TargetRNTI: 1

% Set DM-RS power parameter on all the PDSCH
pdscharray = [dlrefwavegen.Config.PDSCH{:}]; % Extract all PDSCH configs into an array
[pdscharray.DMRSPower] = deal(3); % Boost the DM-RS power on all the PDSCH
dlrefwavegen.Config.PDSCH = num2cell(pdscharray); % Reassign the updated PDSCH configs

```

PUSCH FRC Waveform Generation

Each PUSCH FRC reference channel definition in TS 38.104 Annex A explicitly defines a number of key parameters including:

- Frequency range
- Channel bandwidth
- Subcarrier spacing
- Code rate
- Modulation
- DM-RS configuration

Additionally, the associated receiver tests introduce some additional parameters that are not specified in the TS 38.104 Annex A tables, for example, the general test parameters defined in:

- Table 8.2.1.1-1 (Conducted performance requirements for PUSCH without transform precoding)
- Table 8.2.2.1-1 (Conducted performance requirements for PUSCH with transform precoding)
- Table 11.2.2.1.1-1 (Radiated performance requirements for BS type 2-O for PUSCH without transform precoding)
- Table 11.2.2.2.1-1 (Radiated performance requirements for BS type 2-O for PUSCH with transform precoding)

The parameter sets that are captured in the MATLAB reference waveform generator use the above specification sources. Since a given FRC can be used in different tests with different parameters requirements, the following general rules apply to the default generator configurations. All parameters can be modified after construction. Transform precoding is enabled for appropriate FRC. FR2 waveforms are TDD and 20ms in length, and FR1 waveforms are FDD and 10ms. The PUSCH FRC are defined with type A mapping, type B mapping, or, in some cases, either mapping type. In the latter case, type A mapping is configured. FR2 waveforms without transform precoding are configured with PT-RS, otherwise PT-RS are off. Scrambling identities are set to 0. Power levels for all resource elements are uniform. The transport block data source is ITU PN9 with RV = 0 i.e. no retransmissions.

This MATLAB code creates an `hNRReferenceWaveformGenerator` object for the selected PUSCH FRC configuration. Due to the large number of FRC, the live script FRC drop-down lists only those from section TS 38.104 A.1 (reference sensitivity, ACS, in-band blocking etc.) and A.2 (dynamic range). The performance test FRC defined in A.3, A.4, A.5 can be chosen by specifying the FRC name string directly in the code below. After the generator object is created, all configuration parameters can be changed by making them writable using the `makeConfigWritable` function.

`% Select the PUSCH FRC waveform`

```
ulnrref = ; % This live script down-drop list is preconfigured for TS 38.1
```

```
% Possible overrides to Annex A definitions (empty values provide the Annex A defaults)
bw      = []; % Bandwidth override (5,10,15,20,25,30,40,50,60,70,80,90,100,200,400 MHz)
scs     = []; % Subcarrier spacing override (15,30,60,120 kHz)
dm      = []; % Duplexing mode override ("FDD","TDD")
ncellid = []; % Cell identity override (used to control scrambling identities)
```

`% Run this entire section to generate the required waveform`

`% Create generator object for the above PUSCH FRC reference model`

```
ulrefwavegen = hNRReferenceWaveformGenerator(ulnrref,bw,scs,dm,ncellid)
```

```
ulrefwavegen =
```

```
hNRReferenceWaveformGenerator with properties:
```

```
FR1BandwidthTable: [3x13 table]
FR2BandwidthTable: [2x4 table]
FR1TestModels: [8x1 string]
FR2TestModels: [3x1 string]
FR1DownlinkFRC: [3x1 string]
FR2DownlinkFRC: [3x1 string]
FR1UplinkFRC: [89x1 string]
FR2UplinkFRC: [37x1 string]
Config: [1x1 struct]
IsReadOnly: 1
ConfiguredModel: {"G-FR1-A1-1"} [] [] ["FDD"] [0]}
TargetRNTI: 0
```

`% Generate waveform`

```
[ulrefwaveform,ulrefwaveinfo,ulresourceinfo] = generateWaveform(ulrefwavegen);
```

`% View transmission information about the set of PUSCH within the waveform`

```
ulresourceinfo.WaveformResources.PUSCH
```

```
ans = struct with fields:
```

```
Name: 'PUSCH sequence for G-FR1-A1-1'
CDMLengths: [1 1]
Resources: [1x10 struct]
```

`% View detailed information about one of the PUSCH sequences`

```
ulresourceinfo.WaveformResources.PUSCH(1).Resources
```

```
ans=1x10 struct array with fields:
```

```
NSlot
```

```

TransportBlockSize
TransportBlock
RV
Codeword
G
Gd
ChannelIndices
ChannelSymbols
DMRSIndices
DMRSSymbols
DMRSSymbolSet
PTRSIndices
PTRSSymbols
PTRSSymbolSet

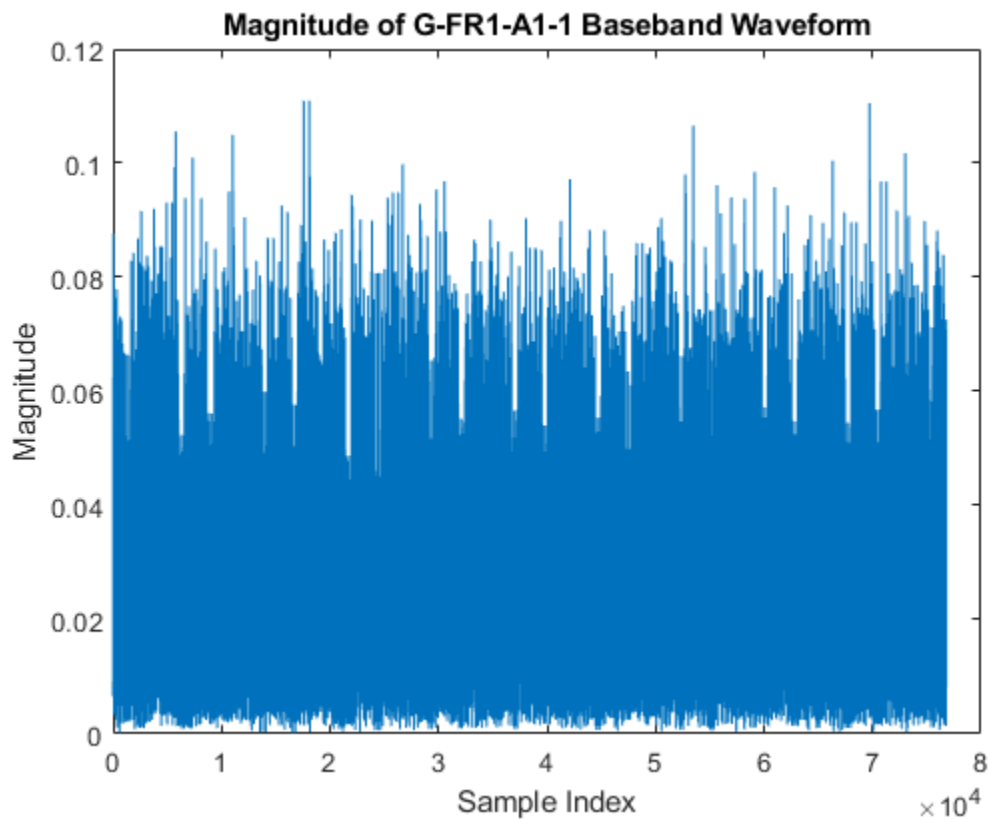
```

```
% Waveform sample rate (Hz)
```

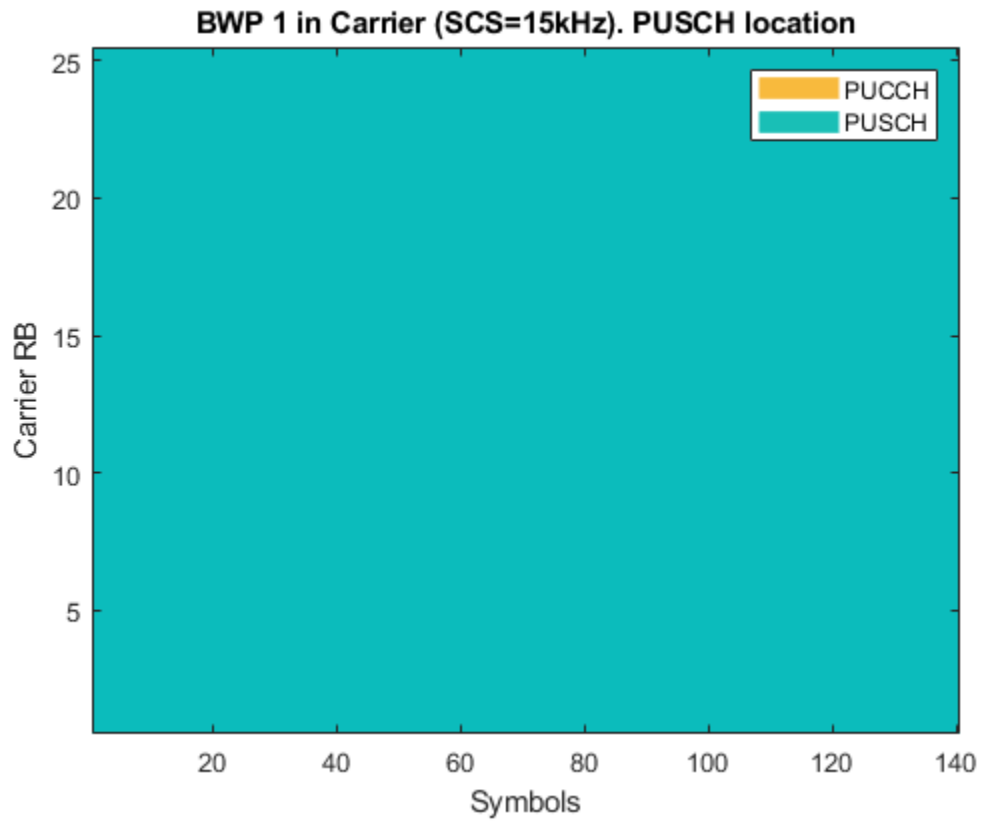
```
samplerate = ulrefwaveinfo.Info.SampleRate
```

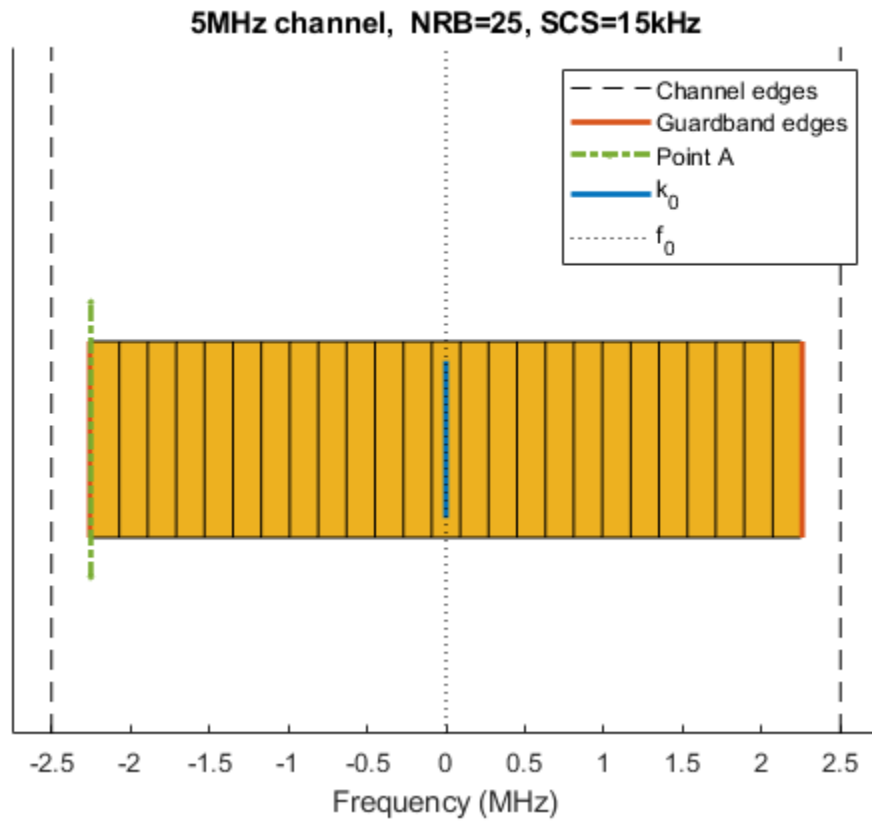
```
samplerate = 7680000
```

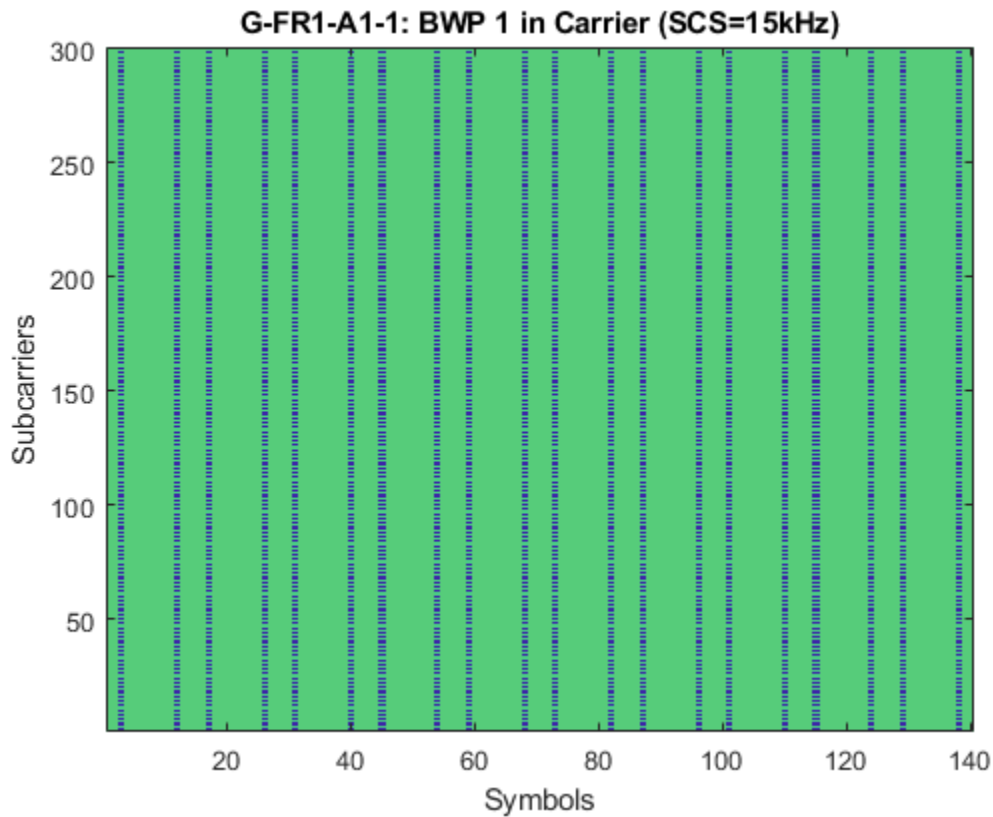
```
plot(abs(ulrefwaveform)); title(sprintf('Magnitude of %s Baseband Waveform',ulnrrref)); xlabel('S
```



```
% Visualize the associated PRB and subcarrier resource grids
displayResourceGrid(ulrefwavegen);
```





```
fullparameterset = ulrefwavegen.Config % Full low-level parameter set
```

```
fullparameterset = struct with fields:
```

```
    Name: 'G-FR1-A1-1'
    NCellID: 0
    ChannelBandwidth: 5
    FrequencyRange: "FR1"
    NumSubframes: 10
    Windowing: 0
    DisplayGrids: 0
    Carriers: [1x1 struct]
    BWP: [1x1 struct]
    PUCCH: [1x1 struct]
    PUSCH: [1x1 struct]
```

References

- [1] 3GPP TS 38.101-1. "NR; User Equipment (UE) radio transmission and reception; Part 1: Range 1 Standalone." *3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Radio Access Network*.
- [2] 3GPP TS 38.101-2. "NR; User Equipment (UE) radio transmission and reception; Part 2: Range 2 Standalone." *3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Radio Access Network*.

[3] 3GPP TS 38.104. "NR; Base Station (BS) radio transmission and reception." *3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Radio Access Network*.

[4] 3GPP TS 38.141-1. "NR; Base Station (BS) conformance testing Part 1: Conducted conformance testing." *3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Radio Access Network*.

[5] 3GPP TS 38.141-2. "NR; Base Station (BS) conformance testing Part 2: Radiated conformance testing." *3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Radio Access Network*.

See Also

Apps

5G Waveform Generator

Related Examples

- "5G NR Downlink Vector Waveform Generation" on page 1-2
- "5G NR Uplink Vector Waveform Generation" on page 2-2
- "App-Based 5G Waveform Generation" on page 6-19

App-Based 5G Waveform Generation

This example shows how to generate standard-compliant NR uplink and downlink carrier waveforms, NR test models (NR-TM), and NR uplink and downlink fixed reference channel (FRC) waveforms by using the **5G Waveform Generator** app. The example also discusses waveform exporting and transferring options available in the app.

Open 5G Waveform Generator App

On the **Apps** tab of the MATLAB® toolstrip, under **Signal Processing and Communications**, click the **5G Waveform Generator** app icon. This app opens the **Wireless Waveform Generator** app configured for 5G waveform generation.

Select 5G NR Waveform

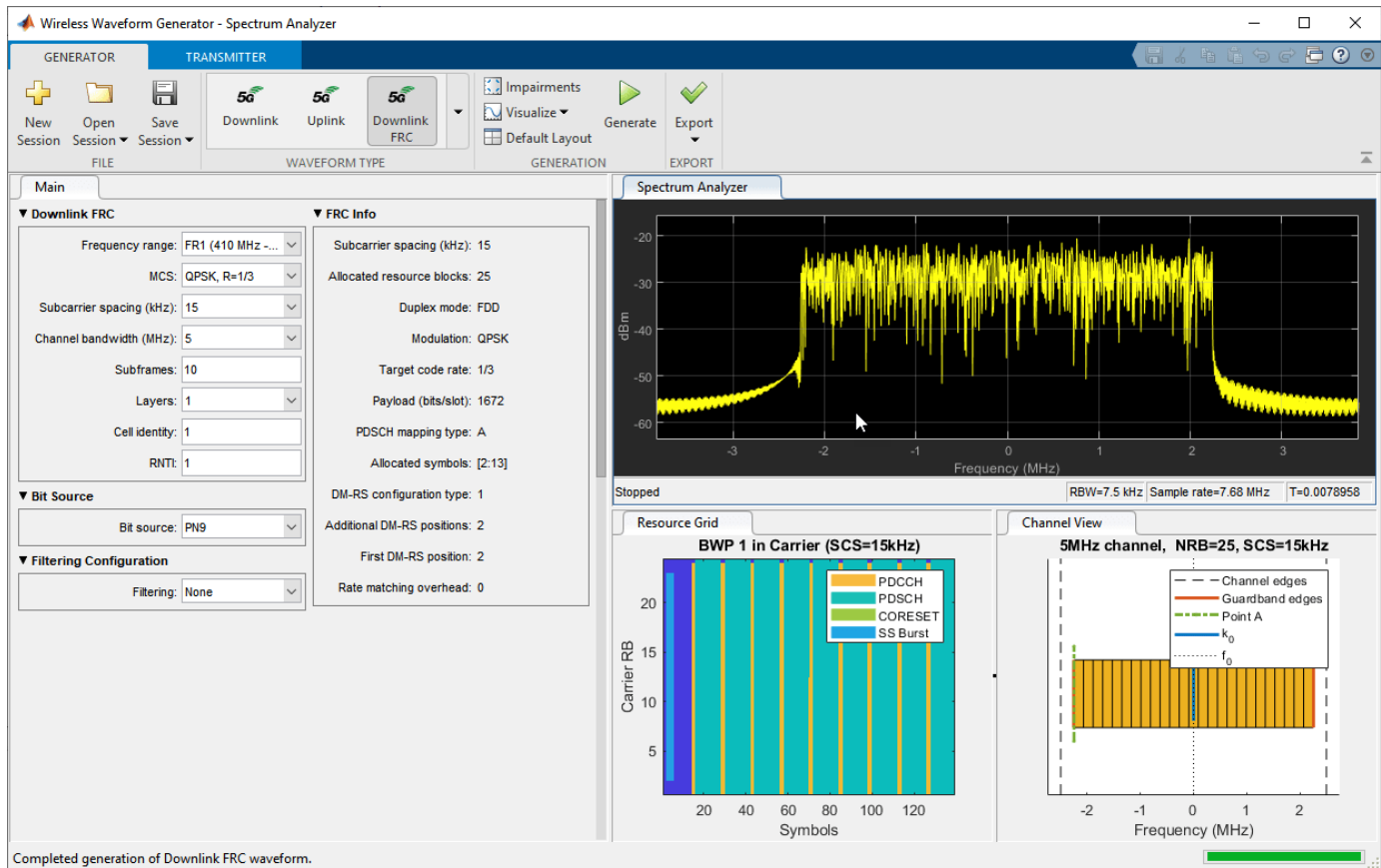
In the **Waveform Type** section on the app toolstrip, click the waveform you want to generate. Select one of these waveforms.

- 5G Downlink
- 5G Uplink
- 5G Downlink FRC
- 5G Uplink FRC
- 5G Test Models (NR-TM)

Generate 5G NR Waveform

Depending on the selected waveform, the app presents specific tabs where you can set the parameters of the selected waveform. On the app toolstrip, in the **Generation** section, you can add impairments and set visualization tools applicable for the selected waveform. To visualize the waveform on the selected visualization tools, click **Generate**.

For example, this figure shows the visualization results of a downlink FRC waveform using default parameters.



Export Generated Waveform to MATLAB Workspace or File

To export the generated waveform, on the app toolstrip, in the **Export** section, select **Export to Workspace** or **Export to File**. You can export the waveform as a structure to the MATLAB workspace or a MAT-file (.mat). You can also export the waveform to a baseband file (.bb).

Export Waveform Configuration Parameters to MATLAB Script

To export waveform configuration parameters, on the app toolstrip, in the **Export** section, select **Export to MATLAB Script**. With this option, you can export the waveform configuration parameters into a runnable MATLAB script that you can use to generate the waveform outside the app. This option is only available for NR uplink and downlink waveforms.

Transmit 5G NR Waveform

To transmit the generated waveform, on the app toolstrip, click on the **Transmitter** tab and set up the instruments. You can use all the instruments supported by the `rfsiggen` (Instrument Control Toolbox) function. This feature requires “Instrument Control Toolbox”.

See Also

Apps
5G Waveform Generator

Related Examples

- “5G NR-TM and FRC Waveform Generation” on page 6-2

More About

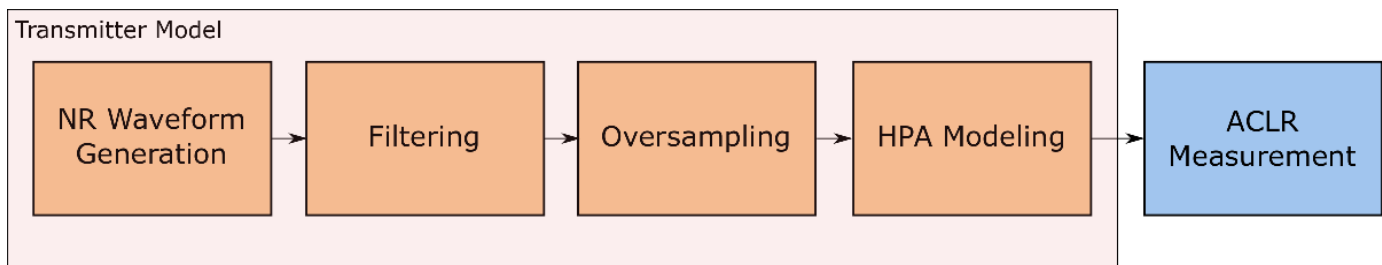
- “Use Wireless Waveform Generator App”

5G NR Downlink ACLR Measurement

This example shows how to measure the adjacent channel leakage ratio (ACLR) for 5G NR test models (NR-TMs) in frequency range 1 (FR1) and FR2 using 5G Toolbox™.

Introduction

The ACLR is the ratio of the filtered mean power centered on the assigned channel frequency to the filtered mean power centered on an adjacent channel frequency. This example performs ACLR measurements for an NR downlink waveform, as defined in TS 38.104 Section 6.6.3. To model the effect of out-of-band spectral emissions, the example applies spectral regrowth on an oversampled waveform by using a high power amplifier (HPA) model.



Generate NR-TM Waveform

Use the MATLAB class `hNRReferenceWaveformGenerator` to generate 5G NR-TMs for FR1 and FR2. You can generate the NR-TM waveforms by specifying these parameters:

- NR-TM name
- Channel bandwidth
- Subcarrier spacing
- Duplexing mode

For more information, see the “5G NR-TM and FRC Waveform Generation” on page 6-2 example.

`% Select the NR-TM waveform parameters`

```

nrtm = NR-FR1-TM1.2 (...); % NR-TM name and properties
bw = 20MHz (FR1); % Channel bandwidth
scs = 15kHz (FR1); % Subcarrier spacing
dm = FDD; % Duplexing mode
  
```

`% Create generator object for the above NR-TM`

```
tmWaveGen = hNRReferenceWaveformGenerator(nrtm,bw,scs,dm);
```

`% Ensure no windowing to highlight impact of filtering on ACLR`

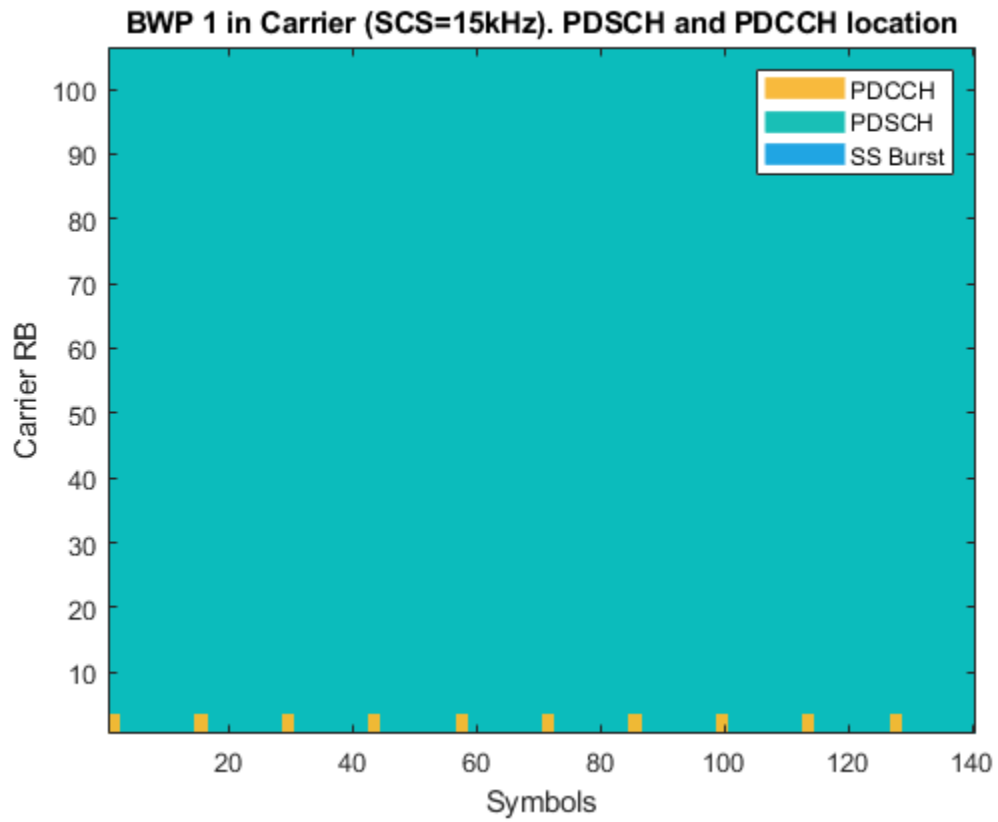
```
tmWaveGen = makeConfigWritable(tmWaveGen);
tmWaveGen.Config.WindowingPercent = 0;
```

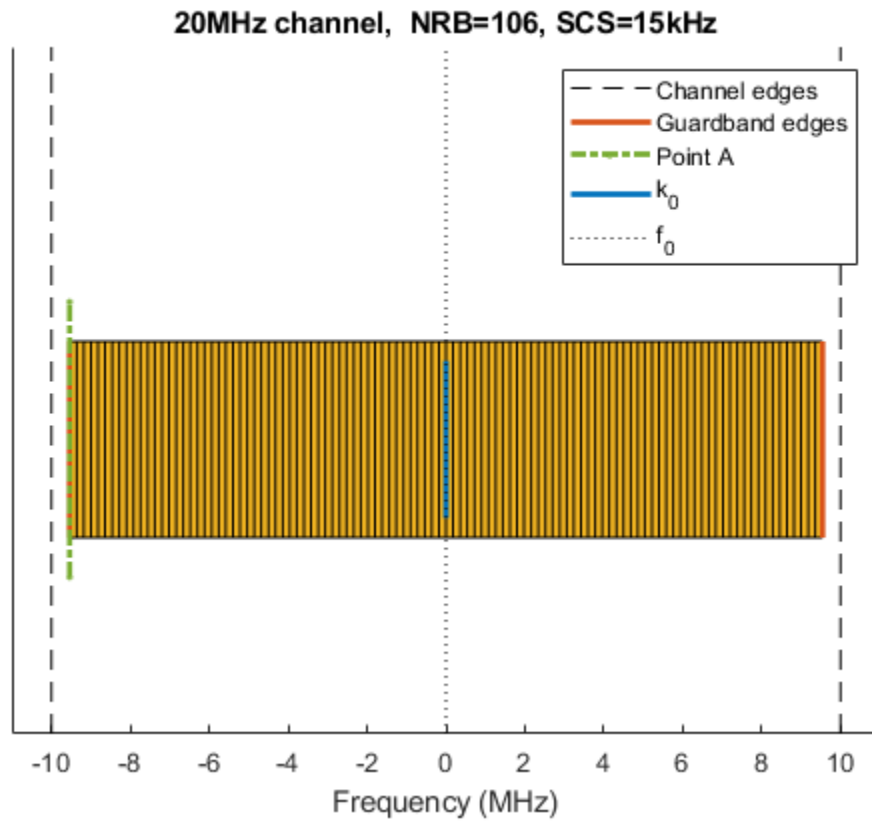
`% Generate waveform`

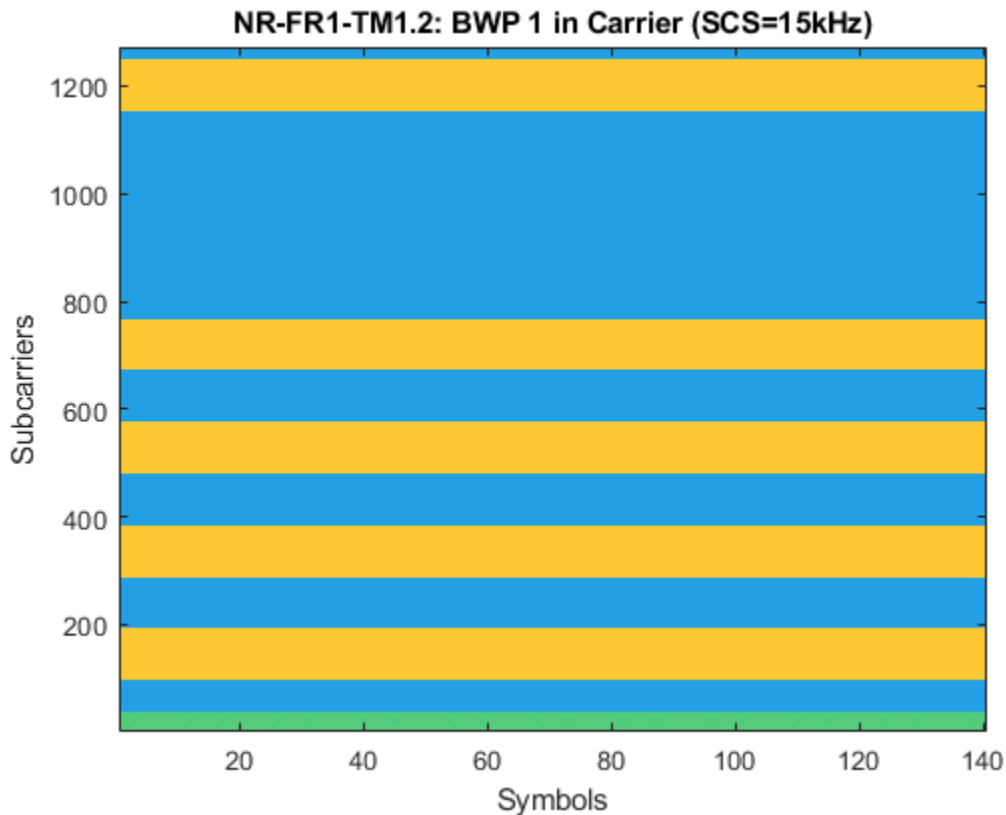
```
[tmWaveform,tmWaveInfo] = generateWaveform(tmWaveGen);
samplingRate = tmWaveInfo.Info.SamplingRate; % Waveform sampling rate (Hz)
```



```
% Visualize the associated PRB and subcarrier resource grids  
displayResourceGrid(tmWaveGen);
```







Display Results

- The associated PRB resource grid (top) depicts the allocation of the different components (PDCCH, PDSCH, CORESET and SS Burst) in each BWP. The grid does not plot the amplitude of the signals only the signal locations in the grid.
- The SCS specific carrier resource grids (middle) along with the minimum guardbands, aligned relative to the overall channel bandwidth.
- The subcarrier resource grid (bottom) indicates the amplitude levels of the generated waveform. If just one color is shown, all the components have the same amplitude.

Calculate ACLR Parameters

The helper function `hACLRParametersNR.m` calculates the parameters required for ACLR measurement.

The function determines the required oversampling. If the input waveform sampling rate (`samplingRate`) is not sufficient to span the entire bandwidth (`aclr.BandwidthACLR`) of the adjacent channels (allowing for a maximum of 85% bandwidth occupancy), you can use an upsampled version of the waveform for ACLR calculations. The upsampling factor is `aclr.OSR`.

```
aclrParameters = hACLRParametersNR(tmWaveGen.Config);
disp(aclrParameters);
```

```
Bandwidth: 20000000
SubcarrierSpacing: 15000
BandwidthConfig: 19080000
```

```

BandwidthACLR: 100000000
OSR: 4
SamplingRate: 122880000

```

Filter Waveform to Improve ACLR

The generated waveform has no filtering, so there are significant out-of-band spectral emissions owing to the implicit rectangular pulse shaping in the OFDM modulation (each OFDM subcarrier has a sinc shape in the frequency domain). Filtering the waveform improves ACLR performance.

Design a filter with a transition band that starts at the edge of the occupied transmission bandwidth (`acLR.BandwidthConfig`) and stops at the edge of the overall channel bandwidth (`acLR.Bandwidth`). This filter involves no rate change, it just shapes the spectrum within the original bandwidth of the waveform.

```

% Design filter
lpFilt = designfilt('lowpassfir',...
    'PassbandFrequency',acLRParameters.BandwidthConfig/2,...
    'StopbandFrequency',acLRParameters.Bandwidth/2,...
    'PassbandRipple',0.1,...
    'StopbandAttenuation',80,...
    'SampleRate',samplingRate);

% Apply filter
filtTmWaveform = filter(lpFilt,tmWaveform);

```

Oversampling and HPA Nonlinearity Model

To create a signal capable of representing 1st and 2nd adjacent carriers, for example, to represent `acLR.BandwidthACLR` with at most 85% bandwidth occupancy, oversample the NR waveform. After oversampling the signal, employ an HPA model to generate out-of-band distortion. For example, to simulate the HPA behaviour, you can use the Rapp method, which is widely used in wireless applications to generate AM/AM distortion. In MATLAB®, you can use the Memoryless Nonlinearity object to model the Rapp method. To highlight the impact of filtering on the ACLR measurements, apply the oversampling and HPA nonlinearities first to the filtered NR signal and then to the same NR signal without filtering.

```

% Apply required oversampling
resampled = resample(tmWaveform,acLRParameters.OSR,1);           % Not filtered
filtResampled = resample(filtTmWaveform,acLRParameters.OSR,1); % Filtered

% Create and configure a memoryless nonlinearity to model the amplifier
nonLinearity = comm.MemorylessNonlinearity;
nonLinearity.Method = 'Rapp model';
nonLinearity.Smoothness = 3; % p parameter
nonLinearity.LinearGain = 0.5; % dB
nonLinearity.OutputSaturationLevel = 2; % It limits the output signal level

% Signal conditioning to control the HPA input back-off level
resampled = resampled/max(abs(resampled)); % Not filtered
filtResampled = filtResampled/max(abs(filtResampled)); % Filtered

% Apply the amplifier model to the NR waveforms
txWaveform = nonLinearity(resampled); % Not filtered
txFiltWaveform = nonLinearity(filtResampled); % Filtered

```

Calculate NR ACLR

The `hACLRMeasurementNR.m` helper function measures the NR ACLR using a square window on adjacent channels. This function takes a DFT of the measurement signal and uses the energy of the appropriate bins to calculate the adjacent channel powers.

```
% Calculate NR ACLR
aclr = hACLRMeasurementNR(aclrParameters,txWaveform);           % Not filtered
filtAclr = hACLRMeasurementNR(aclrParameters,txFiltWaveform); % Filtered
```

The `hACLRMeasurementNR.m` helper function returns the ACLR measurements in a structure with these fields:

- **Bandwidth:** the channel bandwidth associated with `tmWaveform`, in Hertz. This is the overall bandwidth of the assigned channel.
- **SubcarrierSpacing:** the subcarrier spacing associated with `tmWaveform`, in Hertz.
- **BandwidthConfig:** the transmission bandwidth configuration associated with `tmWaveform`, in Hertz. This is the bandwidth within the channel bandwidth that contains active subcarriers.
- **BandwidthACLR:** the bandwidth required to represent 1st and 2nd adjacent carriers; the sampling rate used internally for ACLR measurements will support this bandwidth with at most 85% bandwidth occupancy.
- **OSR:** the integer oversampling ratio of the input `tmWaveform` required to create a signal capable of representing 1st and 2nd adjacent carriers.
- **SamplingRate:** the sampling rate of the internal measurement signal from which the ACLR is calculated. If `OSR = 1`, this signal is the input waveform; if `OSR > 1`, this signal is the input waveform upsampled by `OSR`. Therefore: `aclr.SamplingRate = OSR*samplingRate`.
- **CarrierFrequency:** a vector of NR center frequencies, in Hertz, for adjacent channels `[-2,-1,1,2]`.
- **SignalPowerdBm:** the power, in decibels relative to 1 mW in 1 ohm, of the input within the NR channel of interest, for example in a square filter of bandwidth `aclr.BandwidthConfig` centered at 0 Hz.
- **ACLRdB:** a vector of NR ACLRs, in decibels relative to `aclr.SignalPowerdBm`, measured for adjacent channels `[-2,-1,1,2]`.

Display Results

The `hACLRResultsNR.m` helper function displays the NR ACLR and plots the NR spectrum and the adjacent channel leakage ratios.

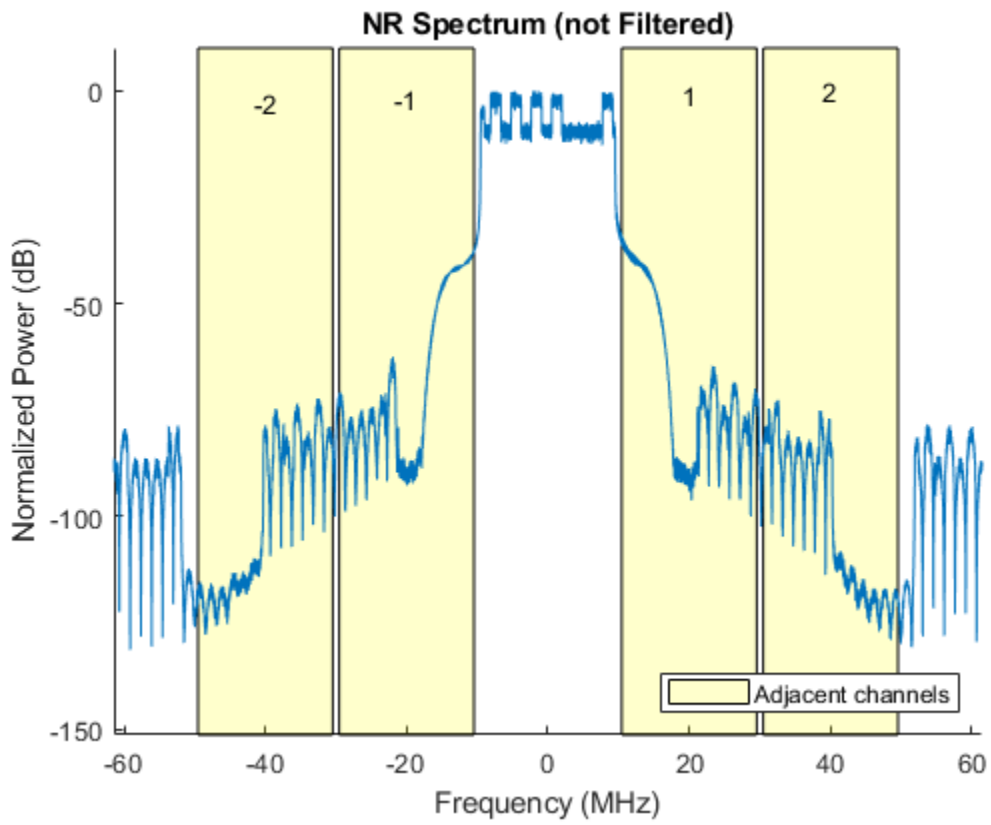
Not Filtered

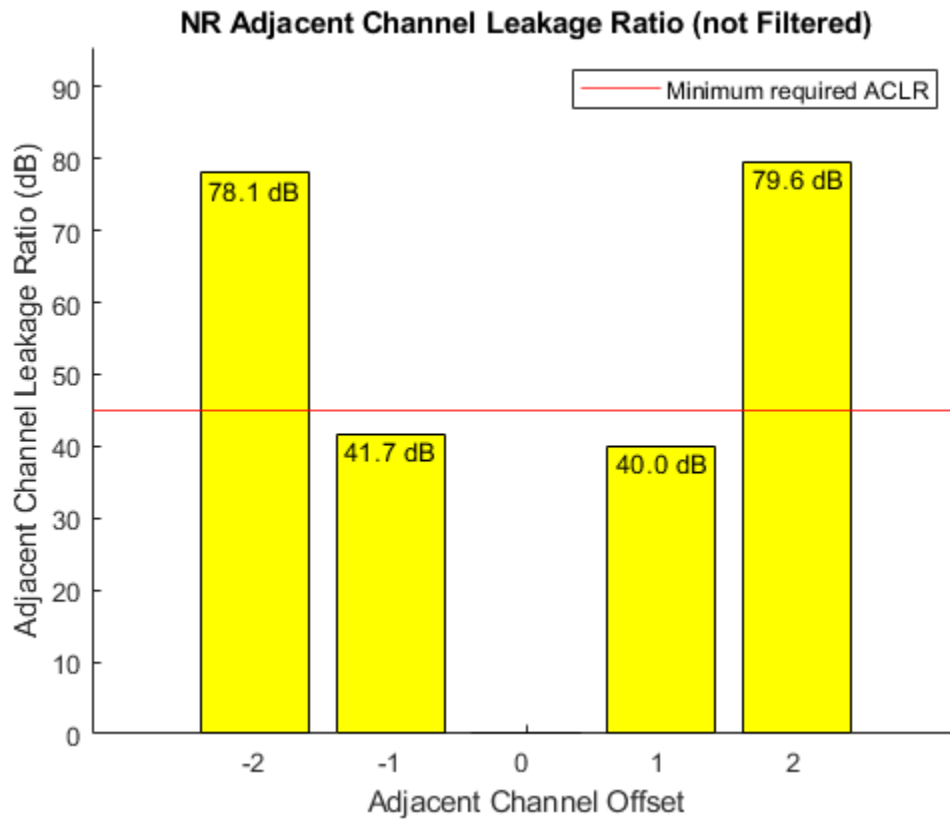
According to TS 38.104 Section 6.6.3.2, the minimum required ACLR for conducted measurements is 45 dB. As some of these ACLR values are lower than 45 dB, they do not fall within the requirements.

```
hACLRResultsNR(aclr,txWaveform,'(not Filtered)');

    Bandwidth: 20000000
SubcarrierSpacing: 15000
    BandwidthConfig: 19080000
    BandwidthACLR: 100000000
            OSR: 4
    SamplingRate: 122880000
CarrierFrequency: [-40000000 -20000000 20000000 40000000]
```

SignalPowerdBm: 19.7642
ACLRdB: [78.1435 41.6526 40.0279 79.6265]

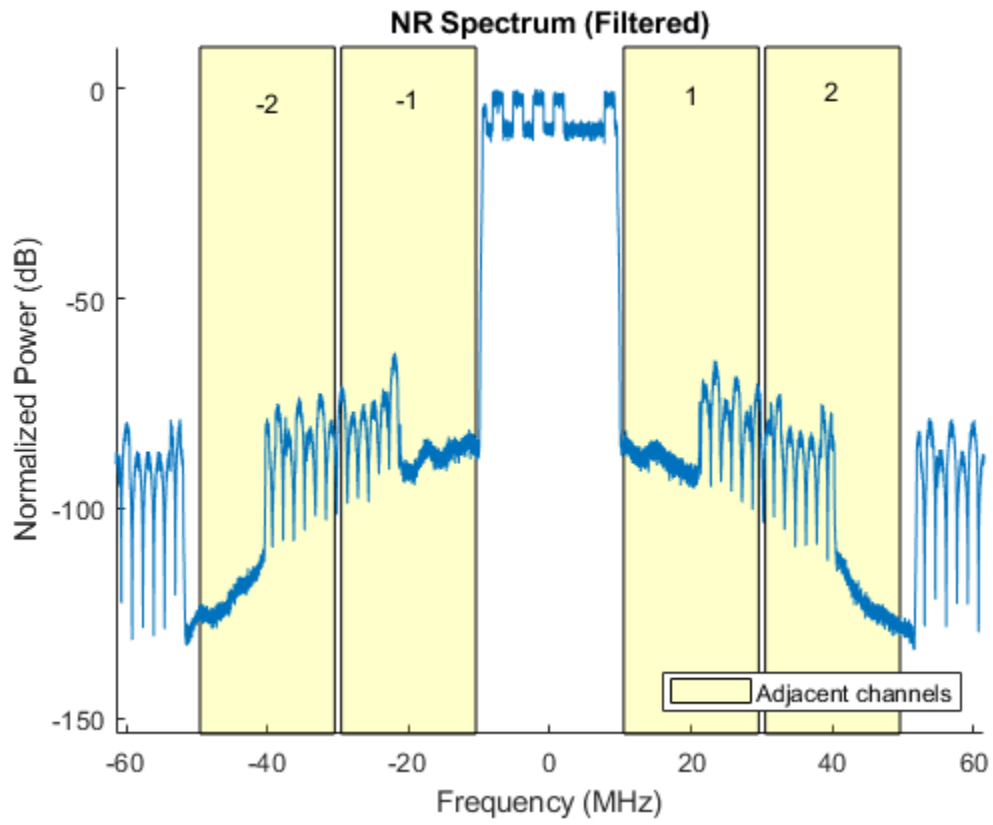


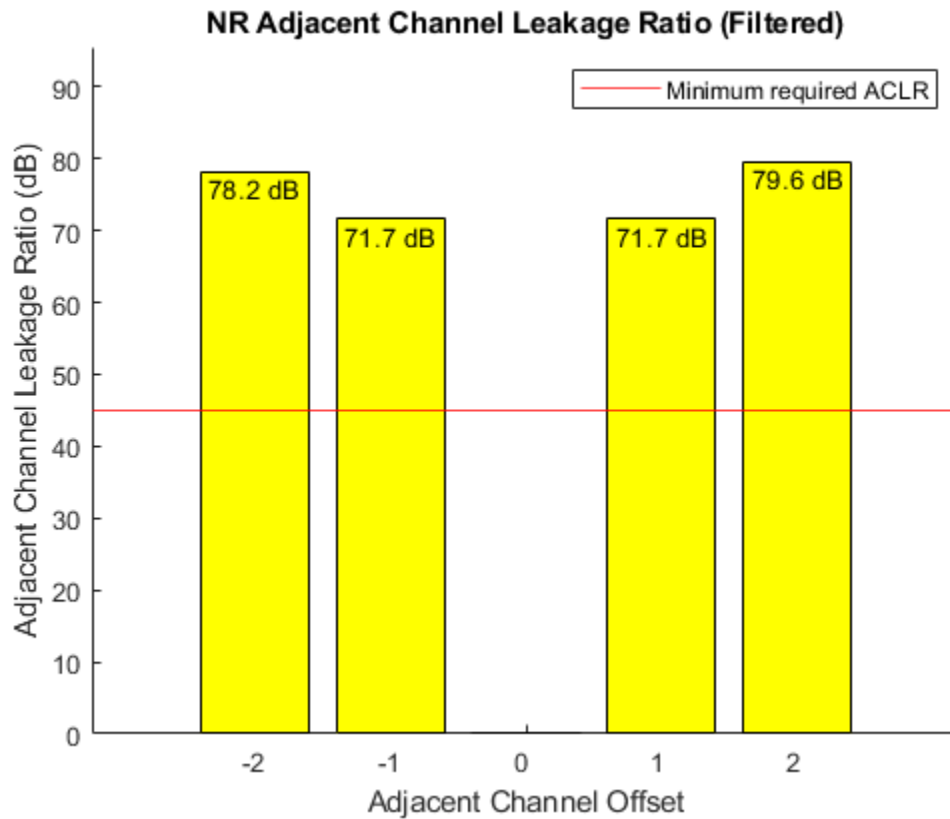


Filtered

The performance improves when the generated waveform is filtered. The ACLR results with the filtered waveform are higher than the minimum required value.

```
hACLRResultsNR(filtAclr,txFiltWaveform,'(Filtered)');
    Bandwidth: 20000000
SubcarrierSpacing: 15000
BandwidthConfig: 19080000
BandwidthACLR: 100000000
    OSR: 4
SamplingRate: 122880000
CarrierFrequency: [-40000000 -20000000 20000000 40000000]
SignalPowerBm: 19.6869
    ACLRdB: [78.1614 71.6984 71.6686 79.6094]
```





Appendix

This example uses the following helper functions and classes:

- hACLRMeasurementNR.m
- hACLRParametersNR.m
- hACLRResultsNR.m
- hNRReferenceWaveformGenerator.m

References

- [1] 3GPP TS 38.104. "NR; Base Station (BS) radio transmission and reception." *3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Radio Access Network.*

See Also

Related Examples

- "5G NR-TM and FRC Waveform Generation" on page 6-2

Modeling and Testing an NR RF Transmitter

The example shows how to characterize the impact of RF impairments, such as in-phase and quadrature (IQ) imbalance, phase noise, and power amplifier (PA) nonlinearities in the performance of a new radio (NR) radio frequency (RF) transmitter. The NR RF transmitter is modeled in Simulink® using 5G Toolbox™ and RF Blockset™.

Introduction

This example shows how to characterize the impact of RF impairments such as IQ imbalance, phase noise, and PA nonlinearities in the performance of an NR RF transmitter. To evaluate the performance, the example considers these measurements:

- Error vector magnitude (EVM): vector difference at a given time between the ideal (transmitted) signal and the measured (received) signal.
- Adjacent channel leakage ratio (ACLR): measure of the amount of power leaking into adjacent channels and is defined as the ratio of the filtered mean power centered on the assigned channel frequency to the filtered mean power centered on an adjacent channel frequency.
- Occupied bandwidth: bandwidth that contains 99% of the total integrated power of the signal, centered on the assigned channel frequency.
- Channel power: filtered mean power centered on the assigned channel frequency.
- Complementary cumulative distribution function (CCDF): probability of a signal's instantaneous power to be a level specified above its average power.

The model works on a subframe by subframe basis. For each subframe, the workflow consists of these steps:

- 1 Generate the baseband waveform using 5G Toolbox functions.
- 2 Upconvert the generated waveform to the passband frequency and apply RF filtering and amplification using RF Blockset.
- 3 Downconvert the transmitted waveform to baseband frequency.
- 4 Calculate the ACLR/ACPR, occupied bandwidth, channel power, and CCDF using the Spectrum Analyzer block.
- 5 Demodulate the waveform at the receiver to measure EVM.

The example uses a Simulink model to perform these operations. Baseband signal processing (steps 1 and 5) uses MATLAB® Function blocks, whereas the RF transmitter modeling (steps 2-4) uses RF Blockset. This model supports Normal and Accelerator simulation modes.

Simulink Model Structure

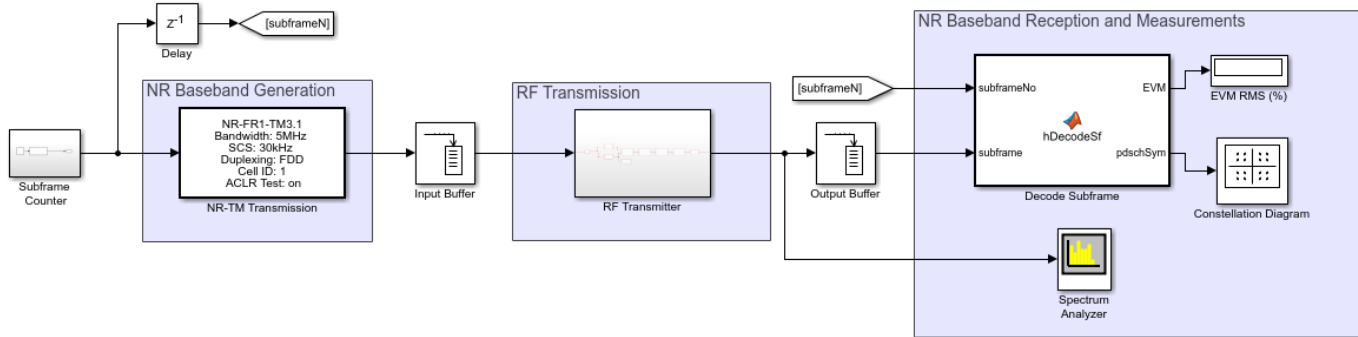
The model contains three main components:

- NR Baseband Generation: generates the baseband waveform.
- RF Transmission: upconverts the waveform from baseband to passband, applies RF filtering, and amplification and performs downconversion.
- NR Baseband Reception and Measurements: performs the RF measurements and demodulates the baseband waveform to calculate the EVM.

```
modelName = 'NRModelingAndTestingRFTransmitterModel';  
open_system(modelName);
```

Modeling and Testing an NR RF Transmitter

Input signal: NR Test Model
 Tests: EVM, ACLR, occupied bandwidth, channel power and CCDF

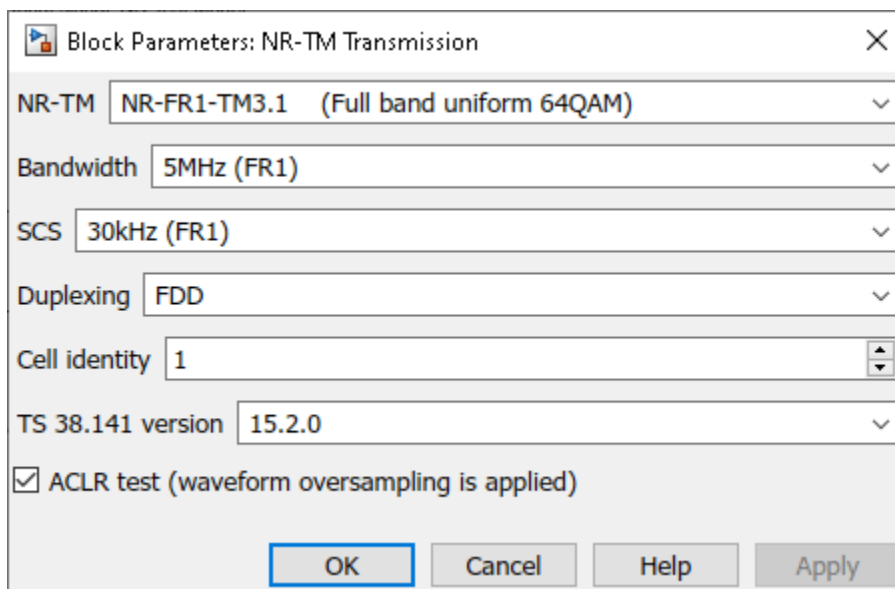


Copyright 2019-2021 The MathWorks, Inc.

NR Baseband Generation

The NR-TM Transmission block transmits standard-compliant 5G NR test model (NR-TM) waveforms for frequency range 1 (FR1) and frequency range 2 (FR2) [1].

For the NR-TM waveform generation, you can specify the NR-TM name, the channel bandwidth, the subcarrier spacing (SCS), the duplexing mode, the cell identity, and the TS 38.141 version using the NR-TM Transmission block mask. Additionally, this block provides the option to enable or disable the ACLR test. When the ACLR measurement is enabled, the waveform is oversampled to visualize the spectral regrowth.



For more information on how to generate NR-TMs, see “5G NR-TM and FRC Waveform Generation” on page 6-2.

As the example works on a subframe by subframe basis, the NR-TM Transmission block sends one subframe at a time. Transmitting ten subframes, corresponding to one frame in the case of FDD duplexing mode, lasts 10 ms. If the simulation time is longer than 10 ms, the NR-TM Transmission block transmits the same frame cyclically. The Subframe Counter block stores the number of the currently transmitted subframe. If the simulation time is longer than a frame period, the Subframe Counter block resets to 0.

RF Transmission

The RF Transmitter block is based on a superheterodyne transmitter architecture. This architecture upconverts the waveform to the passband frequency and applies RF filtering and amplification before transmitting the signal. Typical components of the superheterodyne transmitter are:

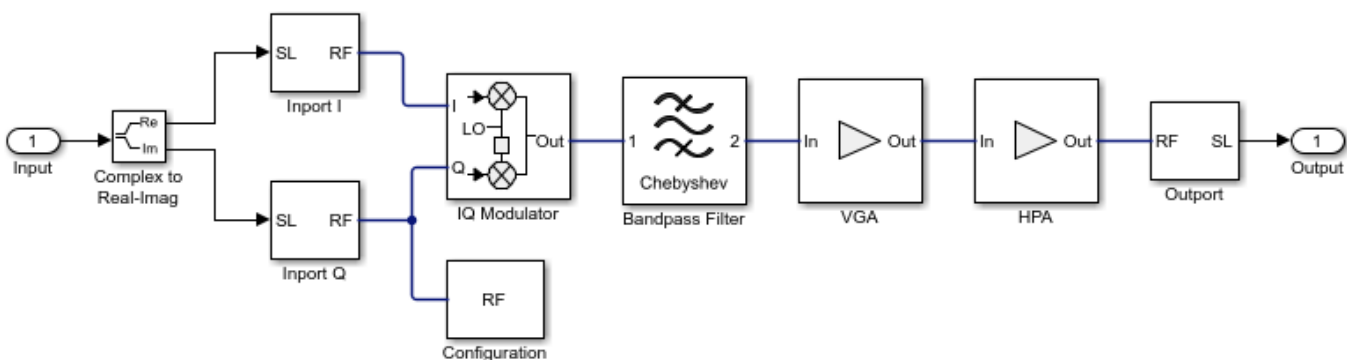
- IQ modulator consisting of mixers, phase shifter, and local oscillator
- Bandpass filter
- Power amplifier

In addition to these components, this RF Transmitter block also includes a variable gain amplifier (VGA) to control the input back-off (IBO) level of the high power amplifier (HPA).

```
set_param(modelName, 'Open', 'off');
set_param([modelName '/RF Transmitter'], 'Open', 'on');
```

RF Superheterodyne Transmitter

This architecture upconverts the waveform to the carrier frequency 2140MHz (default) and applies RF filtering and amplification before transmitting the signal.

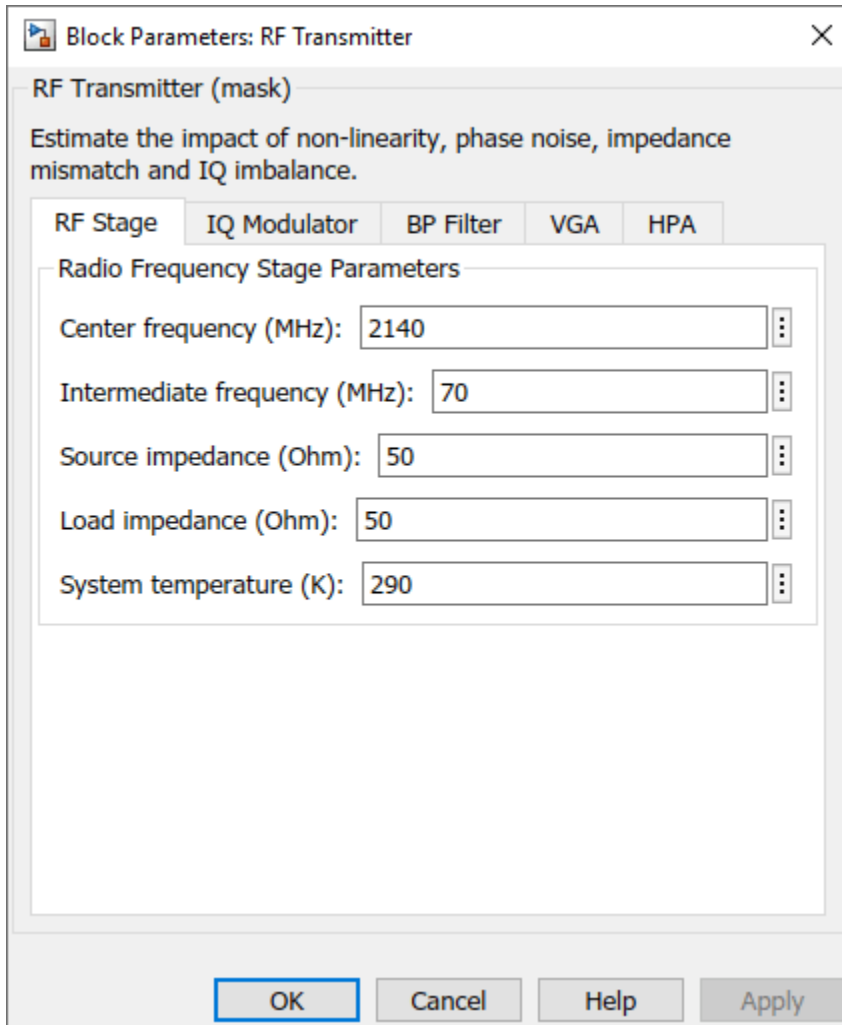


The Inport block converts the complex baseband waveform into an RF signal and the Outport block converts the RF signal back into complex baseband. Because the RF Transmitter accepts a maximum of 1024 samples per subframe, the Input Buffer, before the RF Transmitter block, reduces the number of samples sent to the RF Transmitter. In the current configuration, the Input Buffer sends 1024 samples at a time.

Before sending the samples onto the Decode Subframe block, the Output Buffer (after the RF Transmitter) buffers all samples within a subframe.

The Delay block accounts for buffer-induced delays. As the duration of the delay is equivalent to the transmission of a subframe, the Decode Subframe block does not demodulate the first information received during a subframe period.

You can configure the RF Transmitter components using the RF Transmitter block mask.



The RF Transmitter block exhibits typical impairments, including:

- I/Q imbalance as a result of gain or phase mismatches between the parallel sections of the transmitter chain dealing with the IQ signal paths.
- Phase noise as a secondary effect directly related to the thermal noise within the active devices of the oscillator.
- HPA nonlinearities due to DC power limitation when the amplifier works in saturation region.

This example highlights the effect of nonlinear behavior of the HPA.

NR Baseband Reception and Measurements

The Decode Subframe block performs OFDM demodulation of the received subframe, channel estimation, and equalization to recover and plot the PDSCH symbols in the Constellation Diagram. This block also averages the EVM over time and frequency and plots these values:

- EVM per OFDM symbol: EVM averaged over each OFDM symbol.
- EVM per slot: EVM averaged over the allocated PDSCH symbols within a slot.
- EVM per subcarrier: EVM averaged over the allocated PDSCH symbols within a subcarrier.
- Overall EVM: EVM averaged over the allocated PDSCH symbols transmitted.

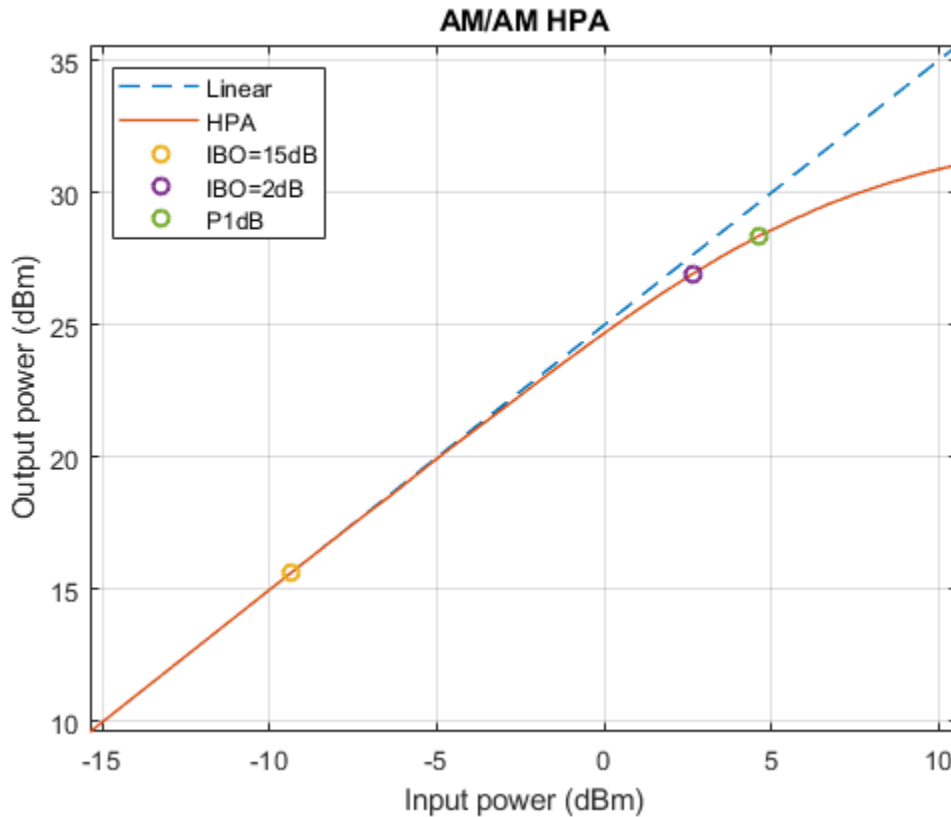
According to TS 38.141-1 [1], not all PDSCH symbols are considered for the EVM evaluation. Using the RNTI, the helper function `hListTargetPDSCHs` selects the target PDSCH symbols to analyze.

The Spectrum Analyzer block provides frequency-domain measurements such as ACLR (referred to as ACPR), occupied bandwidth, channel power, and CCDF. To visualize the spectral regrowth, the ACLR test oversamples the waveform. The oversampling factor depends on the waveform configuration and should be set such that the generated signal is capable of representing first and second adjacent channels. The ACLR evaluation follows the specifications in TS 38.141-1 [1].

Model Performance

To characterize the impact of HPA nonlinearities in the EVM and ACLR evaluations, you can measure the amplitude-to-amplitude modulation (AM/AM) of the HPA. The AM/AM refers to the output power levels in terms of the input power levels. The helper function `hPlotHPACurve` displays the AM/AM characteristic of the HPA selected for this model.

```
hPlotHPACurve();  
figHPA =(gcf);
```



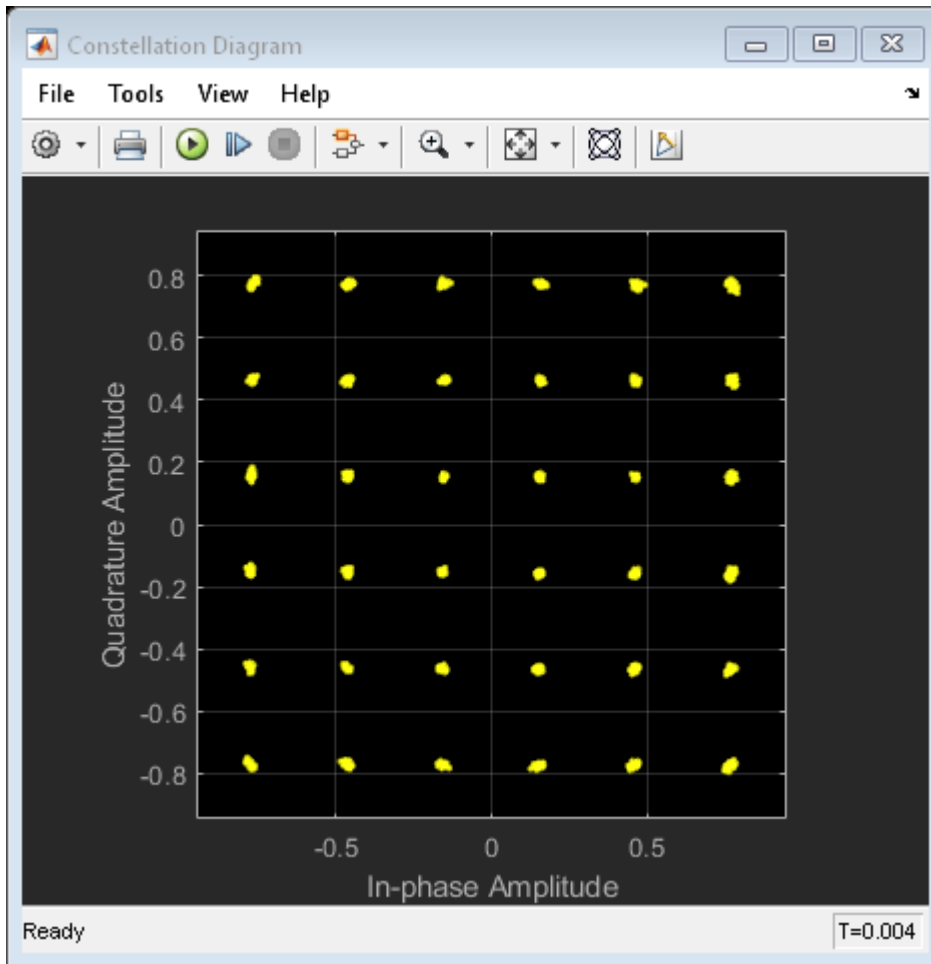
P1dB is the power at 1 dB compression point and is usually used as a reference when selecting the IBO level of the HPA. You can see the HPA impact on the RF transmitter by analyzing the EVM and ACLR results for different operating points of the HPA. For example, compare the case when IBO = 15 dB, corresponding to HPA operating in linear region, with the case when IBO = 2 dB, corresponding to HPA operating in full saturation. The gain of the VGA controls the IBO level. To keep a VGA linear behavior, select gain values lower than 20 dB.

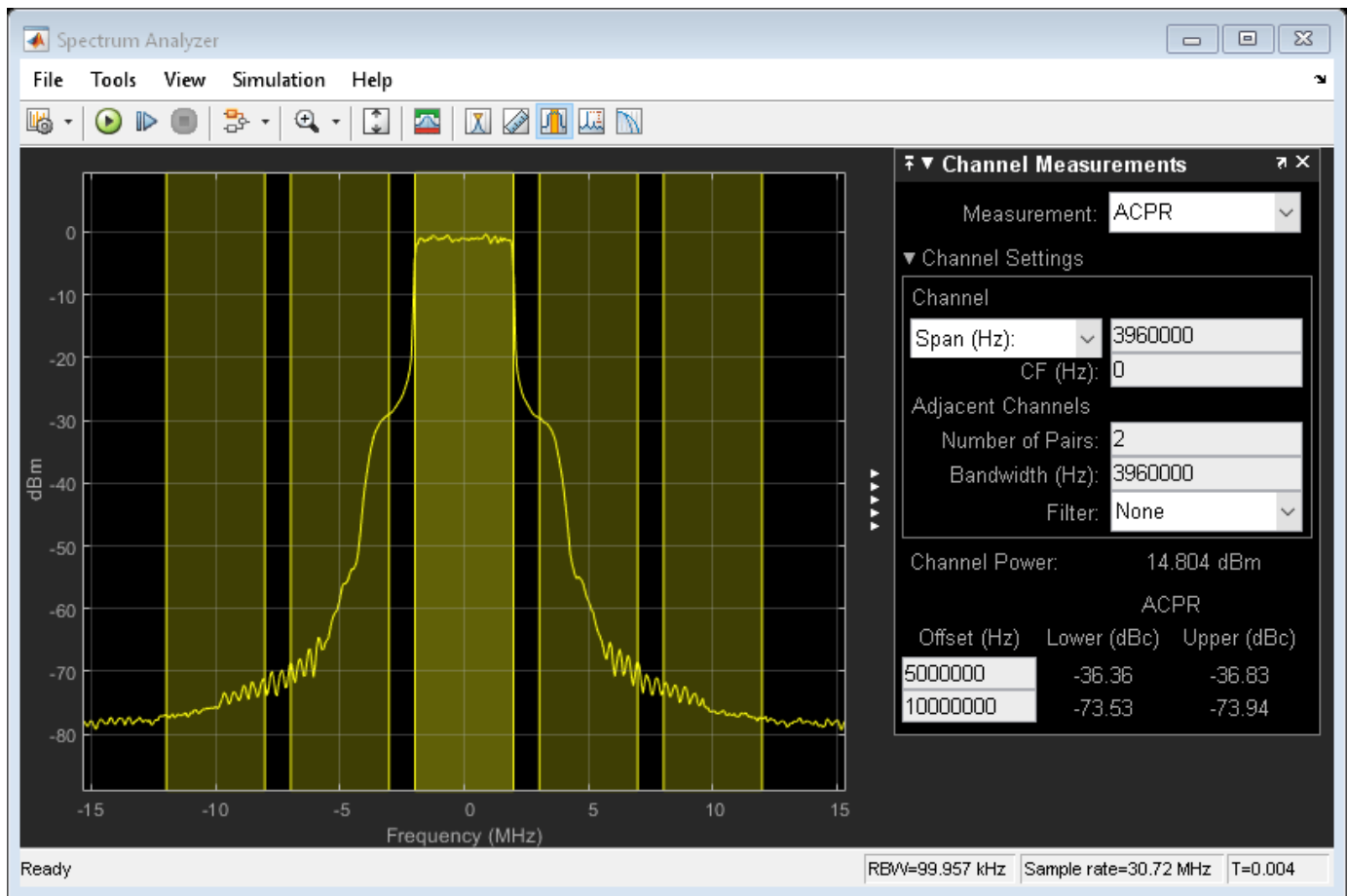
- *Linear HPA (IBO = 15 dB)*. To operate at an IBO level of 15 dB, set the **Available power gain** parameter of the VGA block to 0 dB. To simulate a whole frame, run the simulation long enough to capture, for instance, 4 subframes (4 ms). During simulation, the model displays the EVM and ACLR measurements and the constellation diagram.

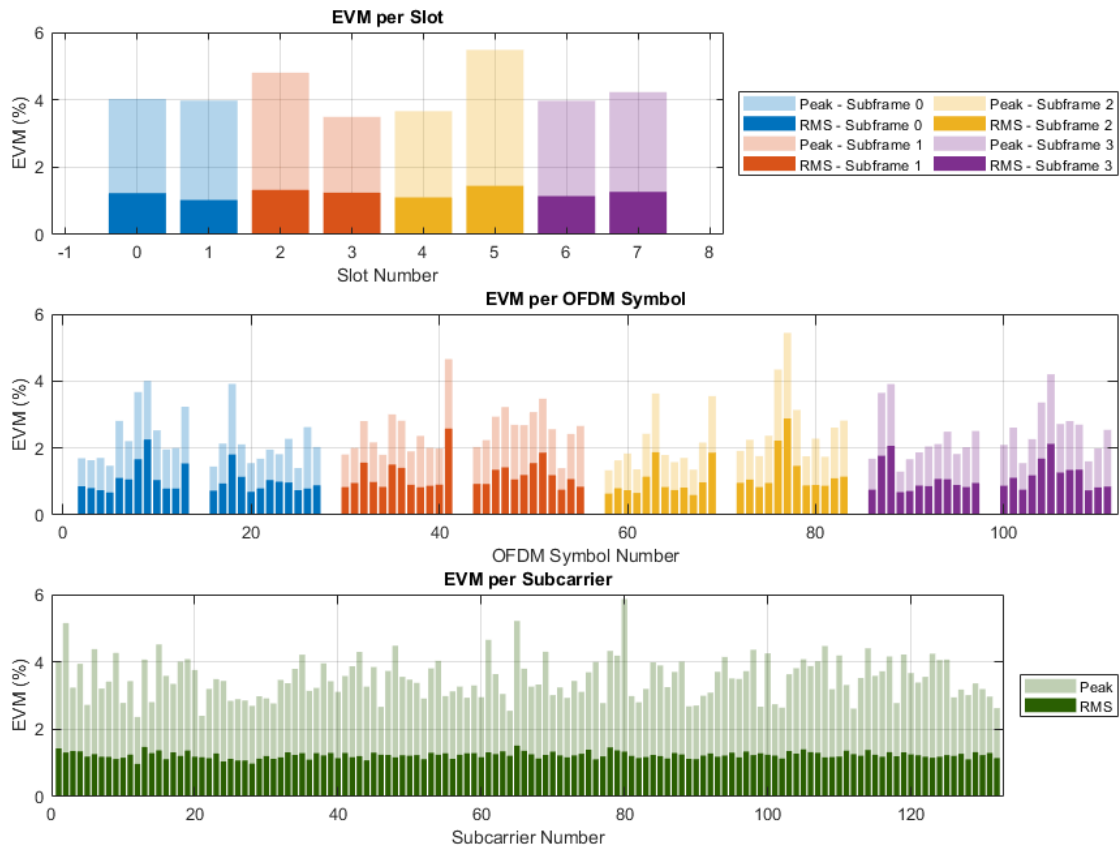
```
set_param([modelName '/RF Transmitter'], 'vgaGain', '0');
sim(modelName);
```

```
--- Starting simulation ---
Transmitting subframe 0 ...
Transmitting subframe 1 ...
Transmitting subframe 2 ...
Transmitting subframe 3 ...
```

```
--- End of simulation ---
```







According to TS 38.104 [2], the minimum required ACLR for conducted measurements is 45 dB and the maximum required EVM when the constellation is 64-QAM is 8%. As the ACLR values are higher than 45 dB, and the overall EVM, around 1.3%, is lower than 8%, both measurements fall within the requirements.

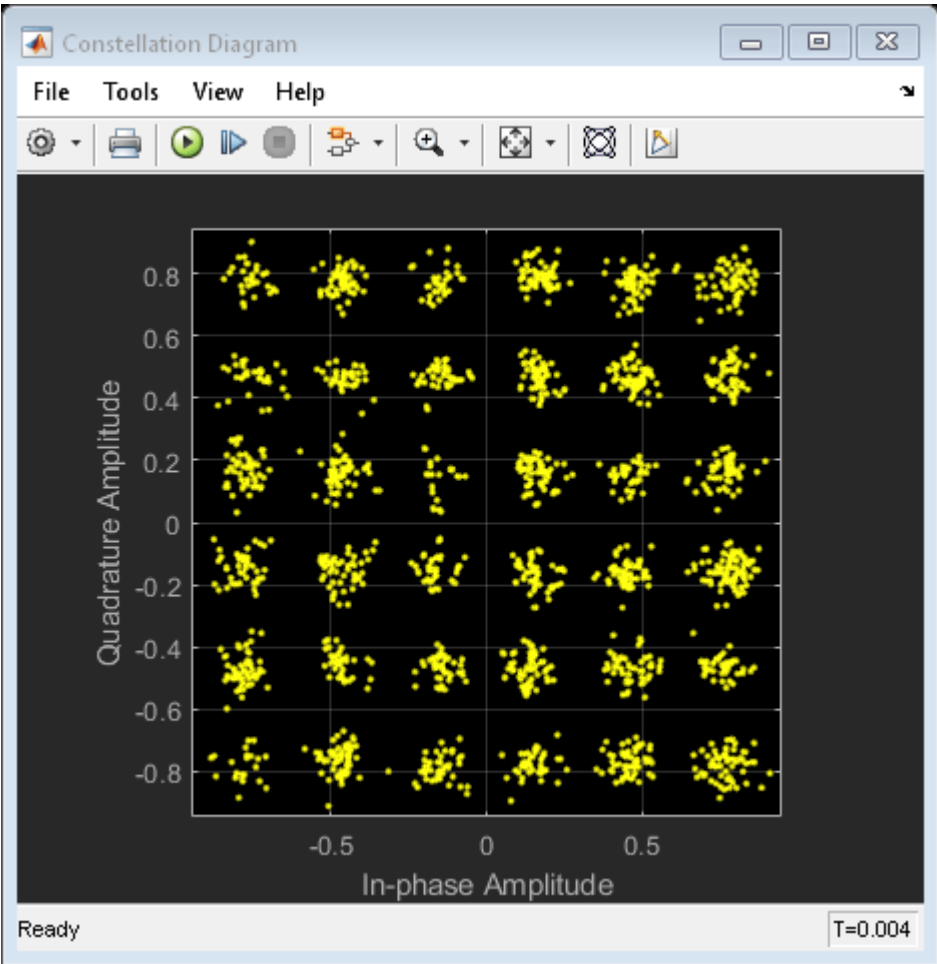
- *Nonlinear HPA (IBO = 2 dB)*. To operate at an IBO level of 2 dB, set the **Available power gain** parameter of the VGA block to 12 dB.

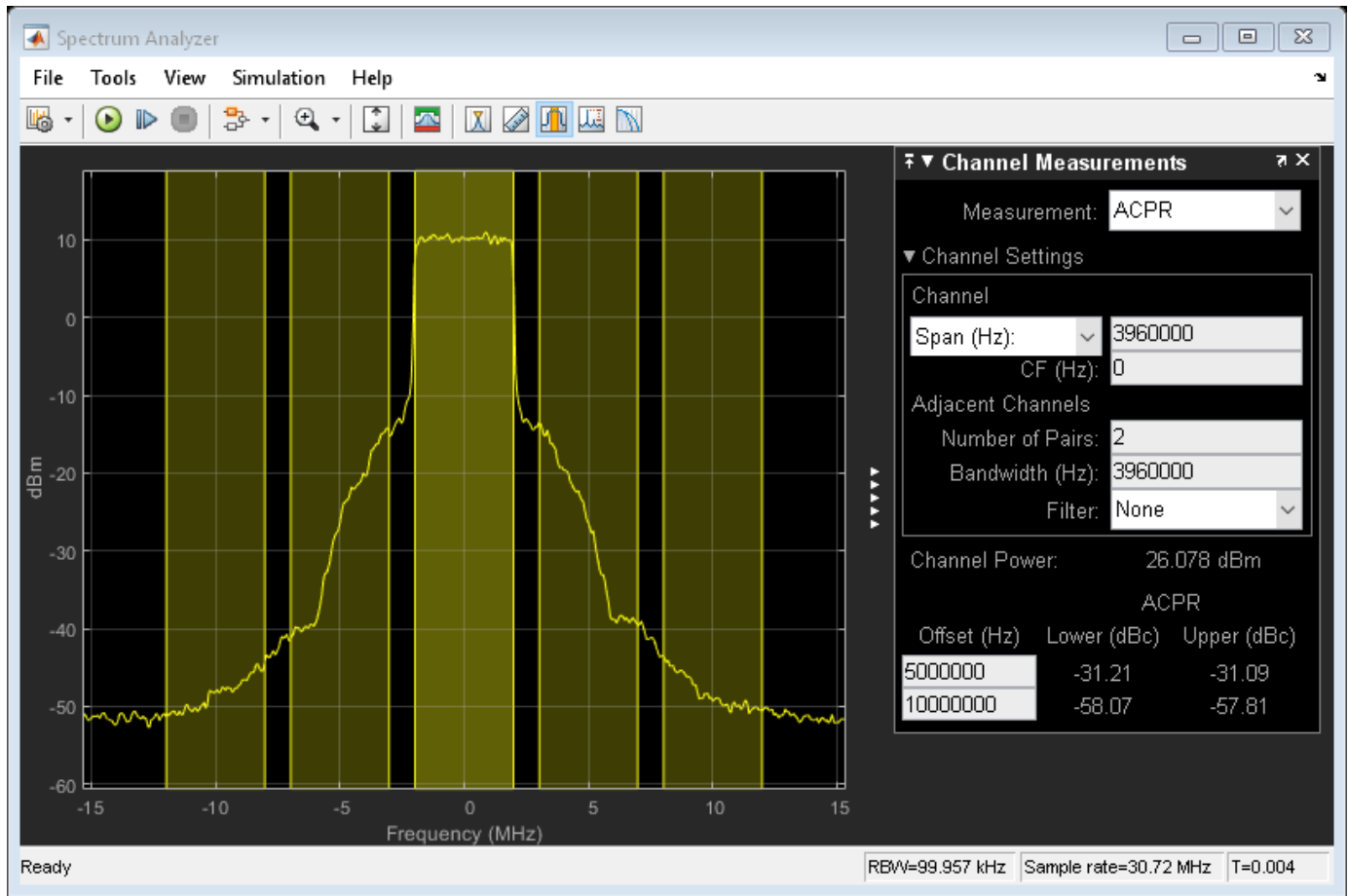
```
set_param([modelName '/RF Transmitter'],'vgaGain','12');
sim(modelName);
slmsgviewer.DeleteInstance();
```

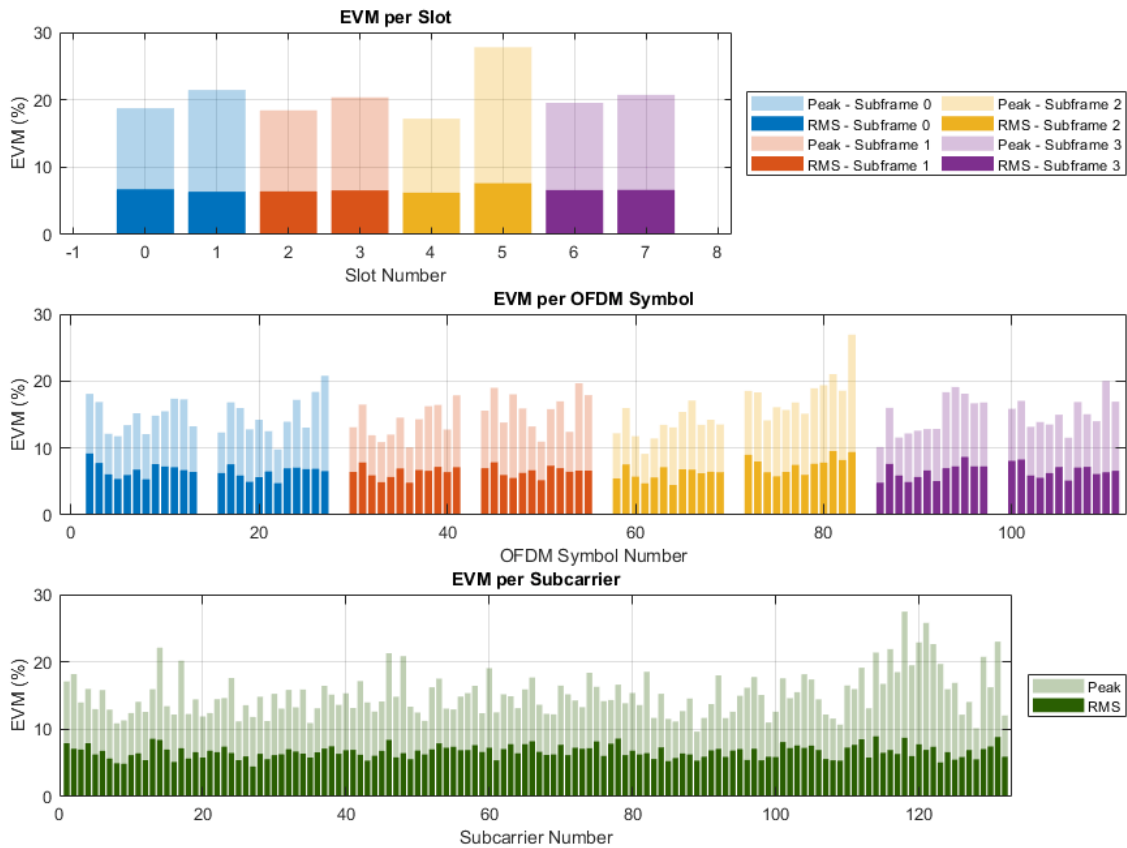
```
% Restore to default parameters
set_param([modelName '/RF Transmitter'],'vgaGain','0');
```

```
--- Starting simulation ---
Transmitting subframe 0 ...
Transmitting subframe 1 ...
Transmitting subframe 2 ...
Transmitting subframe 3 ...
```

```
--- End of simulation ---
```







Compared to the previous case, the constellation diagram is distorted and the spectral regrowth is higher. In terms of the measurements, the first adjacent channel ACLR does not fall within the requirements of TS 38.104 [2] and the overall EVM, around 7%, is higher.

The RF Transmitter is configured to work with the default values of the NR-TM Transmission block and with a carrier centered at 2140 MHz (FR1). If you change the carrier frequency or the values in the Waveform Parameters block, you may need to update the parameters of the RF Transmitter components as these parameters have been selected to work for the default configuration of the example. For more information, see the Summary and Further Exploration section of this example.

Summary and Further Exploration

This example demonstrates how to model and test an NR RF transmitter in Simulink. The RF transmitter consists of an IQ modulator, a bandpass filter and amplifiers. To evaluate the performance, the Simulink model considers ACLR and EVM measurements. The example highlights the effect of HPA nonlinearities on the performance of the RF Transmitter. You can explore the impact of altering other impairments as well. For example:

- Increase I/Q imbalance by using the **I/Q gain mismatch (dB)** and **I/Q phase mismatch (Deg)** parameters on the **IQ Modulator** tab of the RF Transmitter block.
- Increase the phase noise by using **Phase noise offset (Hz)** and **Phase noise level (dBc/Hz)** parameters on the **IQ Modulator** tab of the RF Transmitter block.

Additionally, you can check the occupied bandwidth, the channel power, and the CCDF measurements by using the Spectrum Analyzer block.

If you change the carrier frequency or the values in the Waveform Parameters block, you may need to update the parameters of the RF Transmitter components as these parameters have been selected to work for the default configuration of the example. For instance, a change in the carrier frequency requires revising the bandwidth of the filter. If you select a bandwidth wider than 20MHz, you may need to update the **Impulse response duration** and **Phase noise frequency offset (Hz)** parameters of the IQ Modulator block. The phase noise offset determines the lower limit of the impulse response duration. If the phase noise frequency offset resolution is too high for a given impulse response duration, a warning message appears, specifying the minimum duration suitable for the required resolution. For more information, see IQ Modulator (RF Blockset).

This example could be the basis for testing NR-TM waveforms for different RF configurations. You can try replacing the RF Transmitter block by another RF subsystem of your choice and configuring the model accordingly.

References

- 1 3GPP TS 38.141-1. "NR; Base Station (BS) conformance testing Part 1: Conducted conformance testing." *3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Radio Access Network*.
- 2 3GPP TS 38.104. "NR; Base Station (BS) radio transmission and reception." *3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Radio Access Network*.

See Also

Related Examples

- "5G NR-TM and FRC Waveform Generation" on page 6-2
- "Modeling and Testing an NR RF Receiver with LTE Interference" on page 6-45

Modeling and Testing an NR RF Receiver with LTE Interference

The example shows how to characterize the impact of radio frequency (RF) impairments in the RF reception of a new radio (NR) waveform when coexisting with a long-term evolution (LTE) interference. The baseband waveforms are generated using 5G Toolbox™ and LTE Toolbox™, and the RF receiver is modeled using RF Blockset™.

Introduction

This example characterizes the impact of LTE interference in the RF reception of an NR waveform. To evaluate the impact of the interference, the example performs these measurements:

- Error vector magnitude (EVM): vector difference at a given time between the ideal (transmitted) signal and the measured (received) signal.
- Adjacent channel leakage ratio (ACLR): measure of the amount of power leaking into adjacent channels. It is defined as the ratio of the filtered mean power centered on the assigned channel frequency to the filtered mean power centered on an adjacent channel frequency.
- Occupied bandwidth: bandwidth that contains 99% of the total integrated power of the signal, centered on the assigned channel frequency.
- Channel power: filtered mean power centered on the assigned channel frequency.
- Complementary cumulative distribution function (CCDF): probability of a signal's instantaneous power to be a level specified above its average power.

The impact of the receiver RF impairments such as phase noise and power amplifier (PA) nonlinearities are also considered.

The example works on a subframe by subframe basis. For each subframe, the workflow consists of these steps:

- 1 Generate the baseband NR waveform using 5G Toolbox.
- 2 Generate the baseband LTE waveform (interference) using LTE Toolbox.
- 3 Upconvert both waveforms to their carrier frequencies using RF Blockset.
- 4 Use an RF receiver to downconvert the waveform centered at the NR carrier to baseband frequency.
- 5 Calculate the ACLR/ACPR, occupied bandwidth, channel power, and CCDF using the Spectrum Analyzer block.
- 6 Demodulate the NR baseband waveform to measure EVM.

This example uses a Simulink model to perform these operations. Baseband signal processing (steps 1, 2, and 6) uses MATLAB® Function blocks, whereas the RF receiver modeling (steps 3 and 4) uses RF Blockset. This model supports Normal and Accelerator simulation modes.

Simulink Model Structure

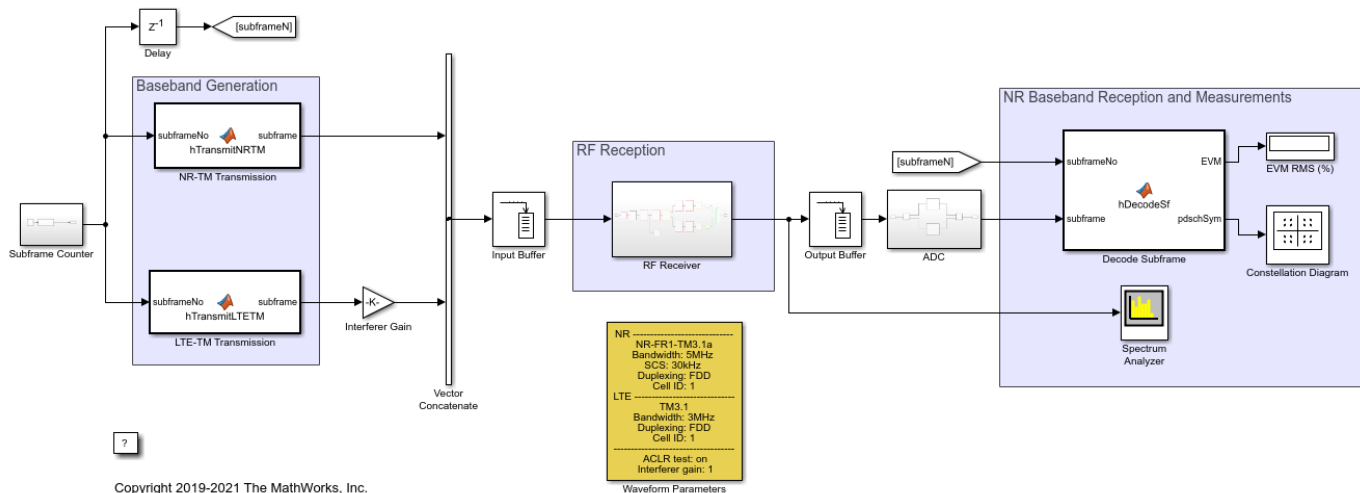
The model contains three main parts:

- Baseband Generation: generates the baseband NR and LTE waveforms.
- RF Reception: the upconverted waveforms pass through an RF receiver which downconverts the waveform centered at the NR carrier.
- NR Baseband Reception and Measurements: performs the RF measurements and demodulates the baseband waveform to calculate the EVM.

```
modelName = 'NewRadioRFReceiverWithLTEInterferenceModel';
open_system(modelName);
```

Modeling and Testing an NR RF Receiver with LTE Interference

Input signal: NR Test Model
 Interferer: LTE Test Model
 Tests: EVM, ACLR, occupied bandwidth, channel power and CCDF



Copyright 2019-2021 The MathWorks, Inc.

Baseband Generation

The NR-TM Transmission block transmits standard-compliant 5G NR test model (NR-TM) waveforms for frequency range 1 (FR1) and frequency range 2 (FR2) [1]. For the NR-TM waveform generation, you can specify the NR-TM name, the channel bandwidth, the subcarrier spacing (SCS), the duplexing mode, the cell identity, and the TS 38.141 version using the Waveform Parameters block.

Similarly, the LTE-TM Transmission block transmits standard-compliant LTE-TM waveforms [2]. You can also specify the TM name, the channel bandwidth, the duplexing mode and the cell identity. This model resamples, if necessary, the LTE waveform to match the sampling rate of the NR waveform. The Waveform Parameter block does not accept an LTE bandwidth wider than the NR bandwidth.

Additionally, the Waveform Parameters block provides the option to enable or disable the ACLR test. When the ACLR measurement is enabled, the waveform is oversampled to visualize the spectral regrowth. The Waveform Parameters block also includes a parameter called **Interferer Gain** which allows control the linear gain of the LTE interference. To cancel the transmission of the LTE interference, set the **Interferer Gain** parameter to 0. The Interferer Gain block is connected between the Baseband Generation and the RF Reception stages.

Block Parameters: Waveform Parameters

NR Waveform Parameters

NR-TM: NR-FR1-TM3.1a (Full band uniform 256QAM)

NR bandwidth: 5MHz (FR1)

SCS: 30kHz (FR1)

NR duplexing: FDD

NR cell identity: 1

TS 38.141 version: 15.2.0

LTE Waveform Parameters

LTE-TM: 3.1

LTE bandwidth: 3MHz

LTE duplexing: FDD

LTE cell identity: 1

ACLR test (waveform oversampling is applied)

Interferer gain: 1

OK Cancel Help Apply

For more information on how to generate NR-TMs and LTE-TMs, see “5G NR-TM and FRC Waveform Generation” on page 6-2 and “LTE Downlink Test Model (E-TM) Waveform Generation” (LTE Toolbox), respectively.

As the example works on a subframe by subframe basis, the NR-TM and LTE-TM Transmission blocks generate one subframe at a time. Transmitting ten subframes, corresponding to one frame in the case of FDD duplexing mode, lasts 10 ms. If the simulation time is longer than 10 ms, both blocks transmit the same frame cyclically. The Subframe Counter block stores the number of the currently transmitted subframe. If the simulation time is longer than a frame period, the Subframe Counter block resets to 0.

RF Reception

The RF Receiver block is based on a superheterodyne receiver architecture. This architecture applies passband filtering and amplification and downconverts the received waveform to an intermediate frequency. The RF components of this superheterodyne receiver are:

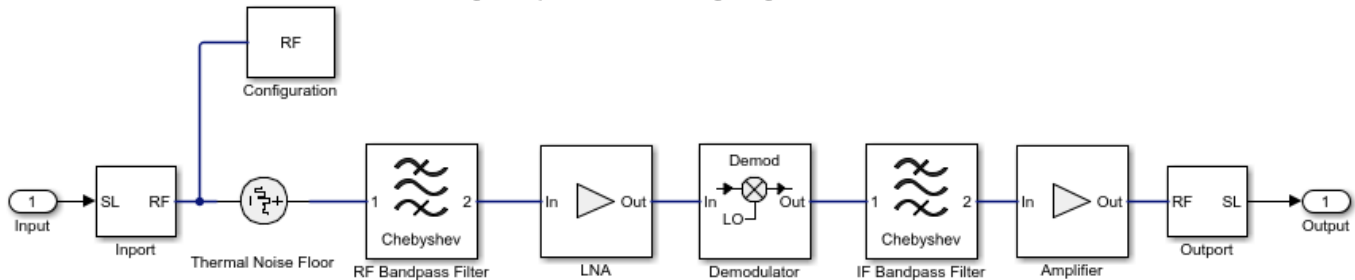
- Bandpass filters

- Low noise and power amplifiers
- Demodulator consisting of mixers, phase shifter, and local oscillator

```
set_param(modelName, 'Open', 'off');
set_param([modelName '/RF Receiver'], 'Open', 'on');
```

RF Superheterodyne Receiver

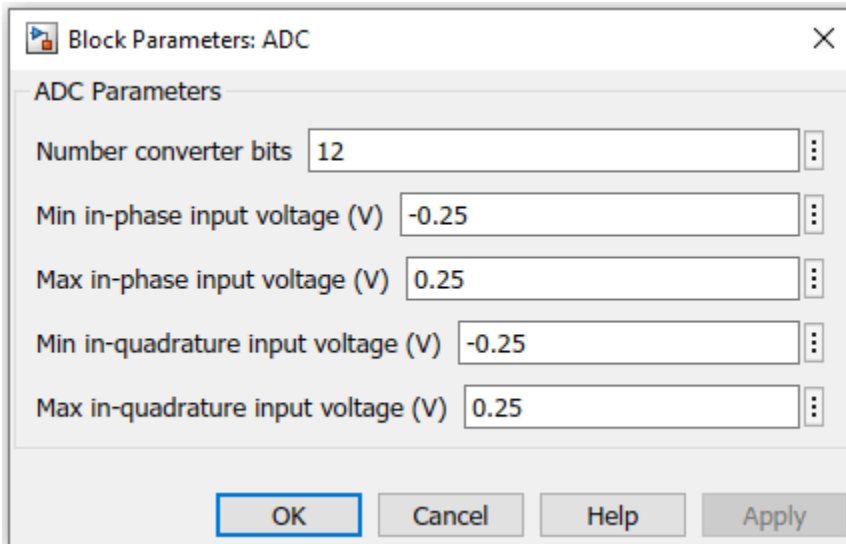
This architecture downconverts the waveform to the intermediate frequency 70MHz (default) and applies RF filtering and amplification before decoding the signal.



To send both waveforms to the RF Receiver, insert a Vector Concatenate block between the Baseband Reception and the RF Reception stages. The Vector Concatenate block concatenates both waveforms horizontally, one column per waveform. Then, the Inport block inside the RF Receiver converts the two concatenated complex baseband waveforms into RF signals considering the center frequencies chosen in the **Carrier frequencies** parameter of this block (every frequency selected in **Carrier frequencies** is assigned to a different concatenated waveform). The Outport block converts the RF signal back into complex baseband.

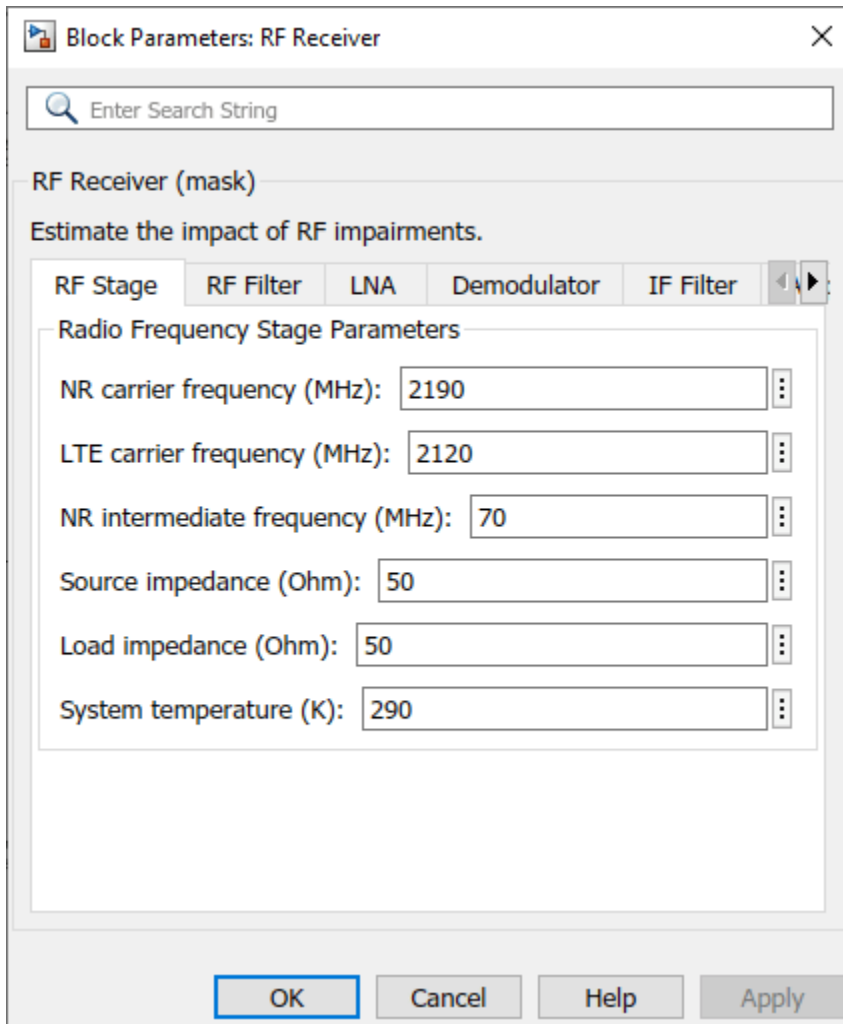
Due to the fact that the RF Receiver accepts a maximum of 1024 samples per subframe, the Input Buffer, before the RF Receiver block, reduces the number of samples sent to the RF Receiver. In the current configuration, the Input Buffer sends 1024 samples at a time.

Before sending the samples onto the Decode Subframe block, the Output Buffer (after the RF Receiver) buffers all samples within a subframe and the ADC block digitizes the signal. You can modify the ADC block parameters using its mask.



The Delay block accounts for buffer-induced delays. As the duration of the delay is equivalent to the transmission of a subframe, the Decode Subframe block does not demodulate the first information received during a subframe period.

You can configure the RF Receiver components using the RF Receiver block mask.



The RF Receiver block exhibits typical impairments, including:

- Phase noise as a secondary effect directly related to the thermal noise within the active devices of the oscillator.
- PA nonlinearities due to DC power limitation when the amplifier works in saturation region.

NR Baseband Reception and Measurements

The Decode Subframe block performs OFDM demodulation of the received subframe, channel estimation, and equalization to recover and plot the PDSCH symbols in the Constellation Diagram. This block also averages the EVM over time and frequency and plots these values:

- EVM per OFDM symbol: EVM averaged over each OFDM symbol.
- EVM per slot: EVM averaged over the allocated PDSCH symbols within a slot.
- EVM per subcarrier: EVM averaged over the allocated PDSCH symbols within a subcarrier.
- Overall EVM: EVM averaged over all the allocated PDSCH symbols transmitted.

According to TS 38.141-1 [1], not all PDSCH symbols are considered for the EVM evaluation. Using the RNTI, the helper function `hListTargetPDSCHs` selects the target PDSCH symbols to analyze.

The Spectrum Analyzer block provides frequency-domain measurements such as ACLR (referred to as ACPR), occupied bandwidth, channel power, and CCDF. To visualize the spectral regrowth, the ACLR test oversamples the waveform. The oversampling factor depends on the waveform configuration and should be set such that the generated signal is capable of representing first and second adjacent channels. The ACLR evaluation follows the specifications in TS 38.141-1 [1].

Model Performance

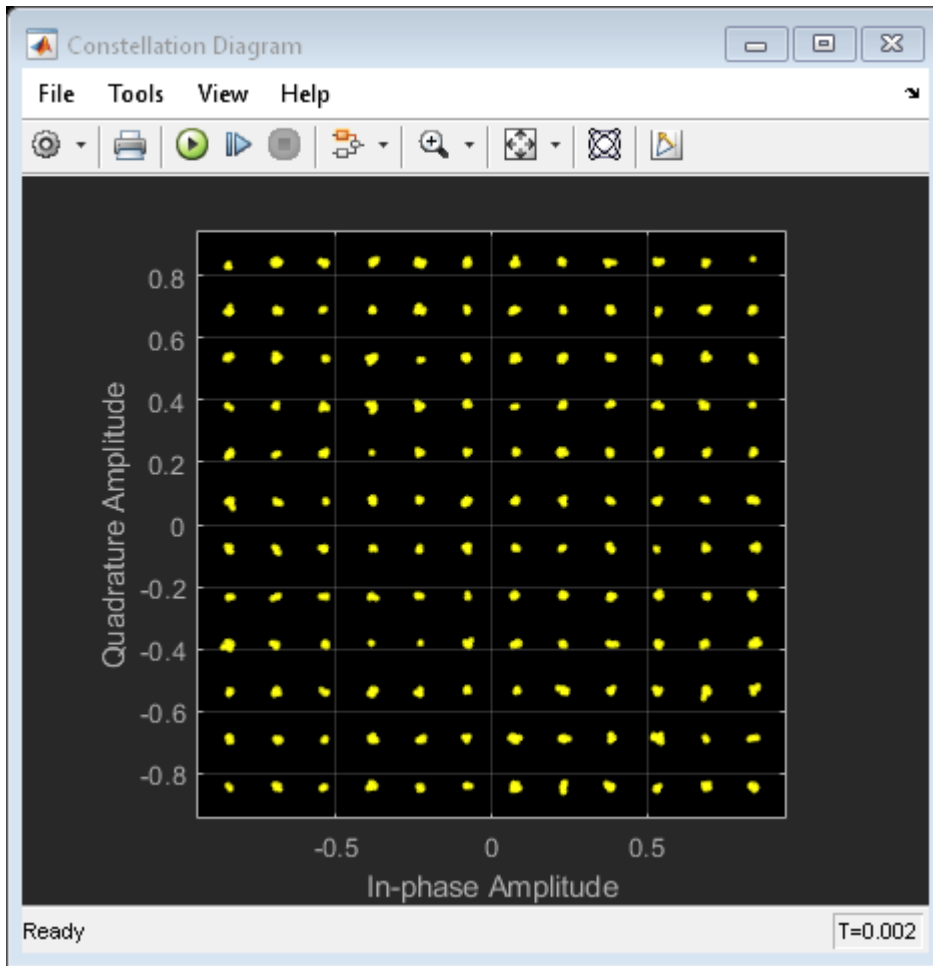
To characterize the impact of the LTE interference on the NR reception you can compare the EVM and ACLR results for two different cases: 1) there is no interference, for example only the NR waveform; and 2) there is interference, you transmit both waveforms, NR and LTE.

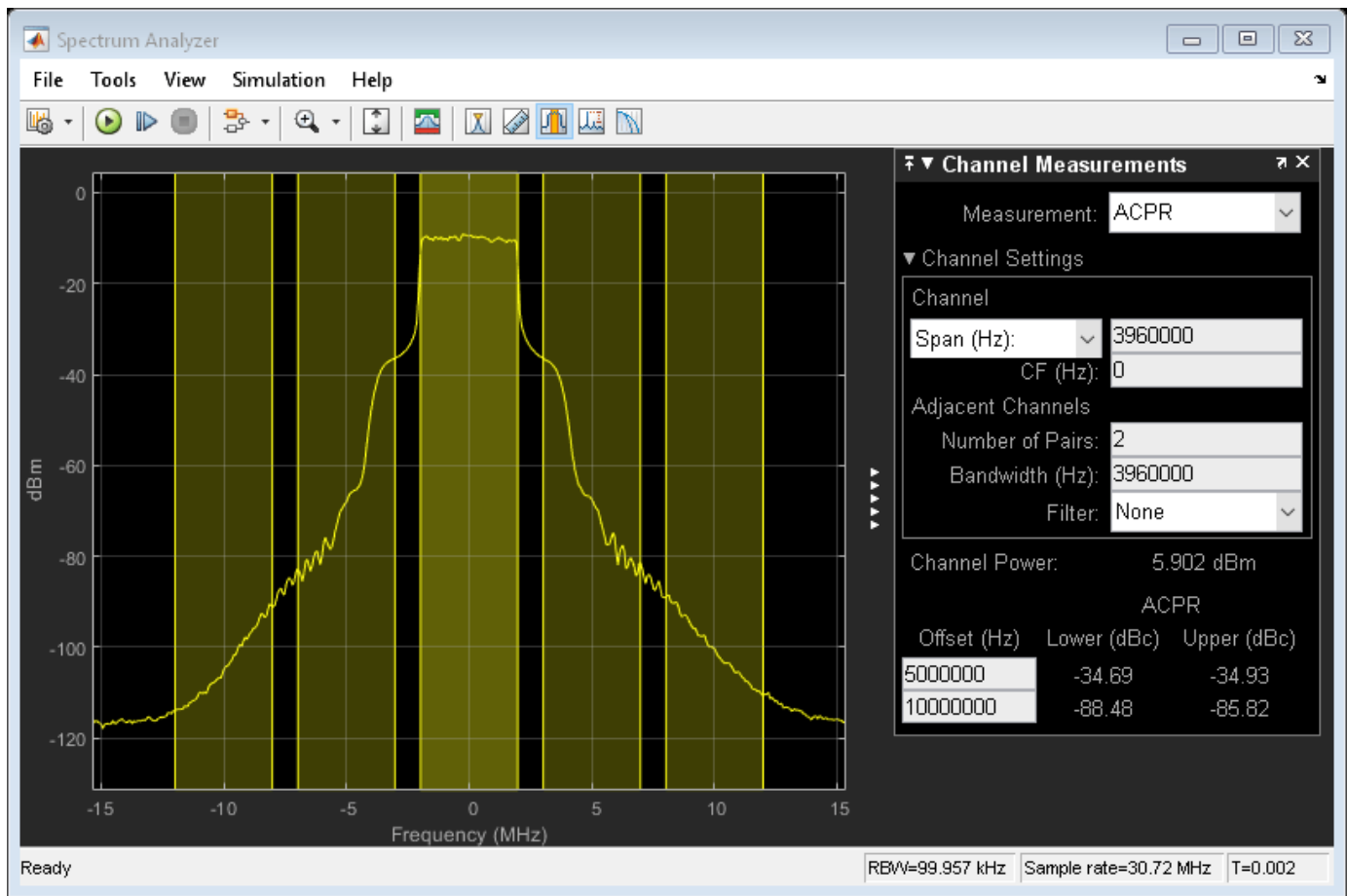
- *Without LTE interference (Interferer gain = 0)*. To eliminate the LTE interference, set the **Interferer gain** parameter of the Waveform Parameters block to 0. To simulate a whole frame, run the simulation long enough to capture 10 subframes (10 ms). During simulation, the model displays the EVM and ACLR measurements and the constellation diagram. These are the results when transmitting 2 subframes.

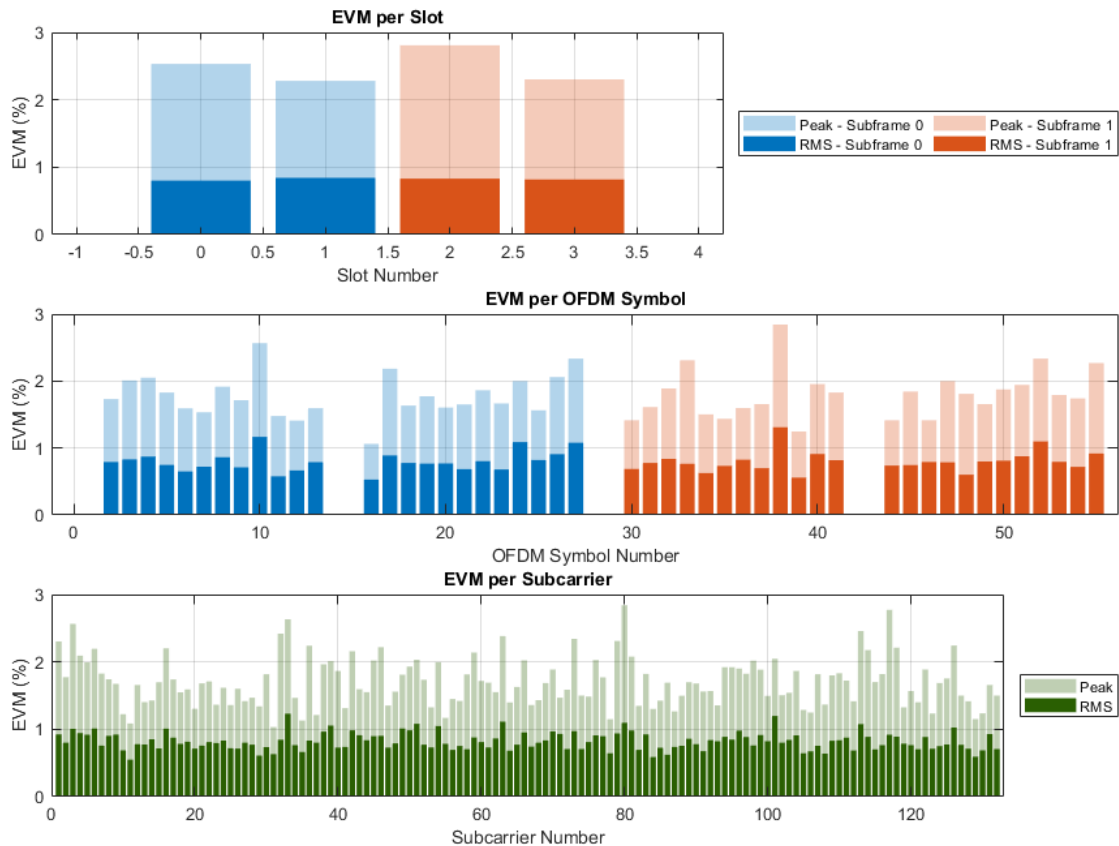
```
set_param([modelName '/Waveform Parameters'], 'InterfererGain', '0');
sim(modelName);

--- Starting simulation ---
  Transmitting subframe 0 ...
  Transmitting subframe 1 ...

--- End of simulation ---
```







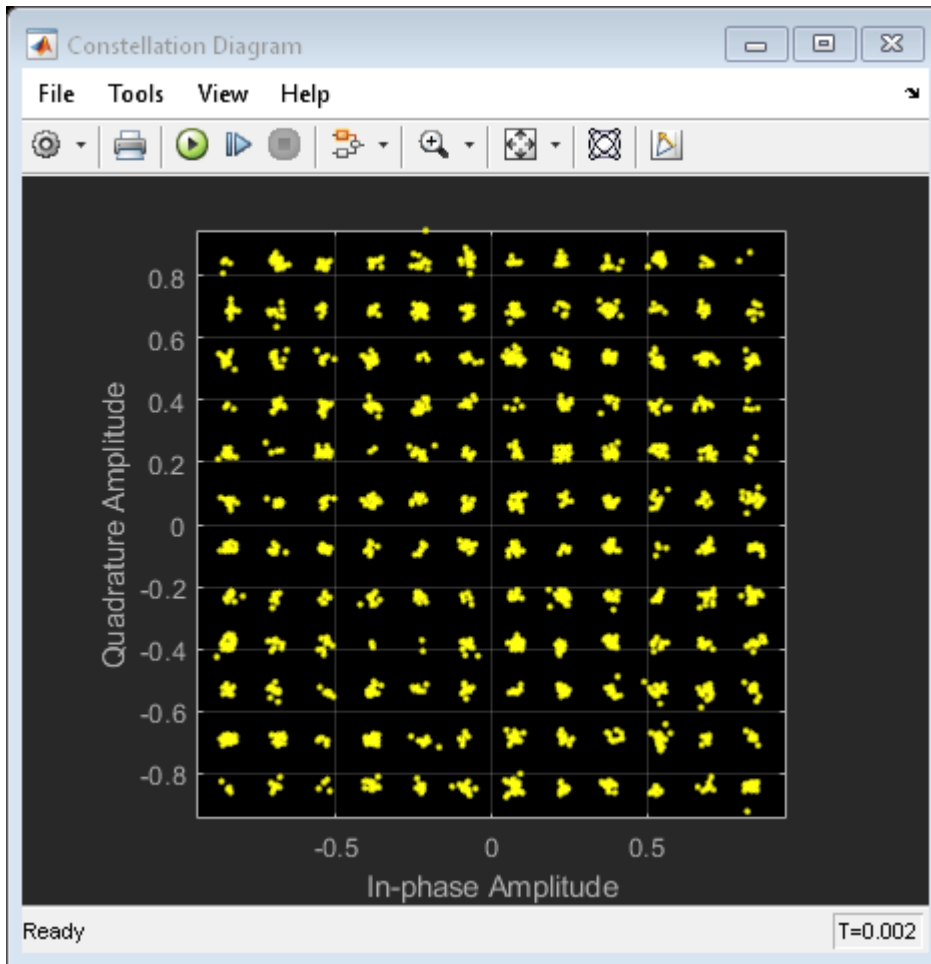
According to TS 38.104 [3], the minimum required ACLR for conducted measurements is 45 dB and the maximum required EVM when the constellation is 256-QAM is 3.5%. As the ACLR values, around 53 dB, are higher than 45 dB, and the overall EVM, around 0.8%, is lower than 3.5%, both measurements fall within the requirements.

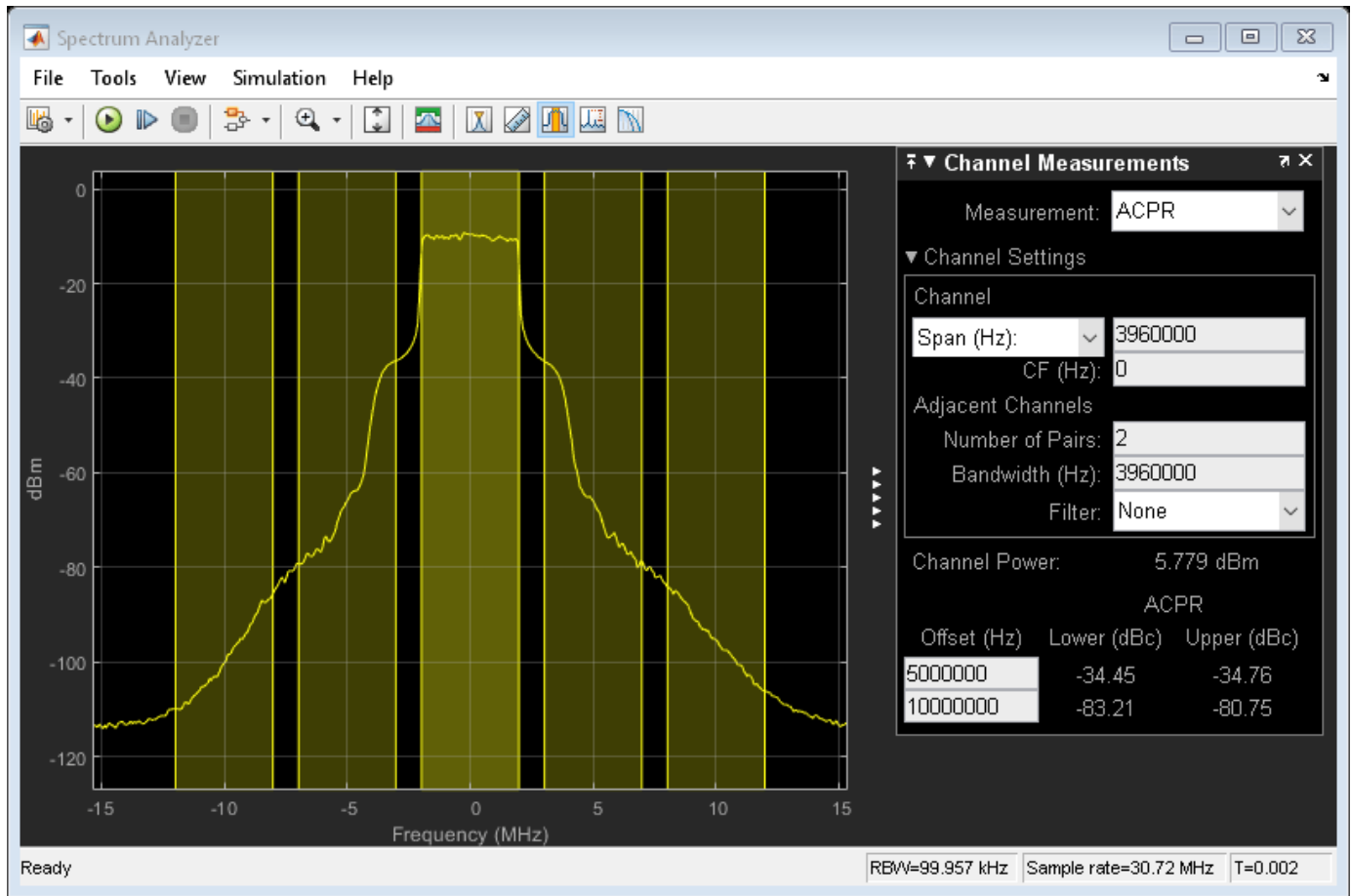
- *With LTE interference (Interferer gain = 1)*. To activate the LTE interference, set the **Interferer gain** parameter of the Waveform Parameters block to any available value different from 0. For example, choose value 1.

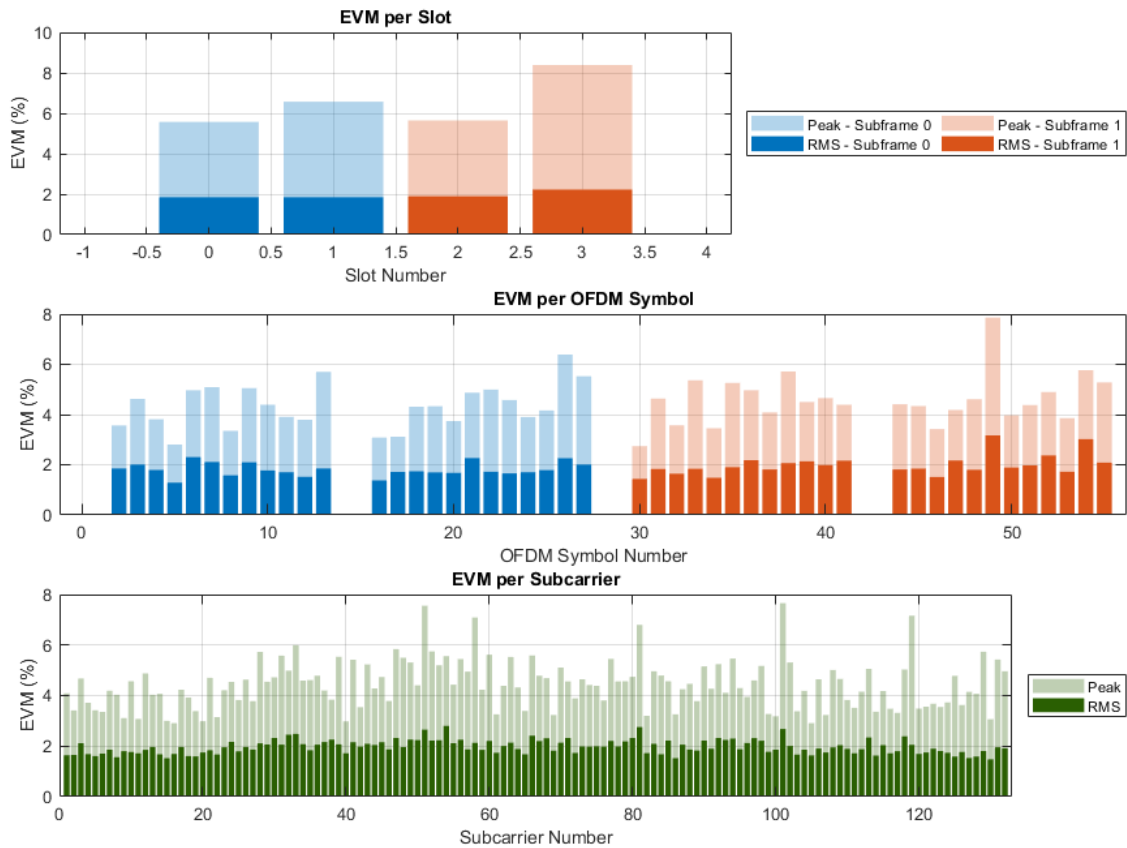
```
set_param([modelName '/Waveform Parameters'], 'InterfererGain', '1');
sim(modelName);
slmsgviewer.DeleteInstance();

--- Starting simulation ---
  Transmitting subframe 0 ...
  Transmitting subframe 1 ...

--- End of simulation ---
```





Compared to the previous case, the constellation diagram is more distorted and the spectral regrowth is higher. In terms of the measurements, the ACLR values, around 48 dB, and the overall EVM, around 2%, still fall within the requirements of TS 38.104 [3].

The RF Receiver is configured to work with the default values of the Waveform Parameters block and with the NR and LTE carriers centered at 2190 MHz and 2120 MHz, respectively. These carriers are within the NR operating band n65 [4] and the E-UTRA operating band 1 [5]. If you change the carrier frequency or the values in the Waveform Parameters block, you may need to update the parameters of the RF Receiver components as these parameters have been selected to work for the default configuration of the example. For more information, see the Summary and Further Exploration section of this example.

Summary and Further Exploration

This example demonstrates how to model and test the reception of an NR waveform when coexisting with an LTE waveform. The RF receiver consists of bandpass filters, amplifiers and a demodulator. To evaluate the impact of the LTE interference, the example modifies the gain of the LTE waveform and performs ACLR and EVM measurements. You can explore the impact of altering the RF impairments as well. For example:

- Increase the phase noise by using **Phase noise offset (Hz)** and **Phase noise level (dBc/Hz)** parameters on the **Demodulator** tab of the RF Receiver block.

- Reduce the input back-off of the Amplifier block by increasing the **Gain (dB)** parameter on the **LNA** tab of the RF Receiver block.

Additionally, you can check the occupied bandwidth, the channel power, and the CCDF measurements by using the Spectrum Analyzer block.

If you change the carrier frequencies or the values in the Waveform Parameters block, you may need to update the parameters of the RF Receiver components as these parameters have been selected to work for the default configuration of the example. For instance, a change in the carrier frequencies requires revising the bandwidth of the filters. If you select an NR bandwidth wider than 20MHz, you may need to update the **Impulse response duration** and **Phase noise frequency offset (Hz)** parameters of the Demodulator block. The phase noise offset determines the lower limit of the impulse response duration. If the phase noise frequency offset resolution is too high for a given impulse response duration, a warning message appears, specifying the minimum duration suitable for the required resolution. For more information, see Demodulator (RF Blockset).

This example could be the basis for testing the coexistence between NR-TM and LTE-TM waveforms for different RF configurations. You can try replacing the RF Receiver block by another RF subsystem of your choice and configuring the model accordingly.

References

- 1 3GPP TS 38.141-1. "NR; Base Station (BS) conformance testing Part 1: Conducted conformance testing." *3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Radio Access Network*.
- 2 3GPP TS 36.141 "E-UTRA; Base Station (BS) conformance testing" *3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Radio Access Network*.
- 3 3GPP TS 38.104. "NR; Base Station (BS) radio transmission and reception." *3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Radio Access Network*.
- 4 3GPP TS 38.101-1. "NR; User Equipment (UE) radio transmission and reception." *3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Radio Access Network*.
- 5 3GPP TS 36.101. "E-UTRA; User Equipment (UE) radio transmission and reception." *3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Radio Access Network*.

See Also

Related Examples

- "5G NR-TM and FRC Waveform Generation" on page 6-2
- "Modeling and Testing an NR RF Transmitter" on page 6-32

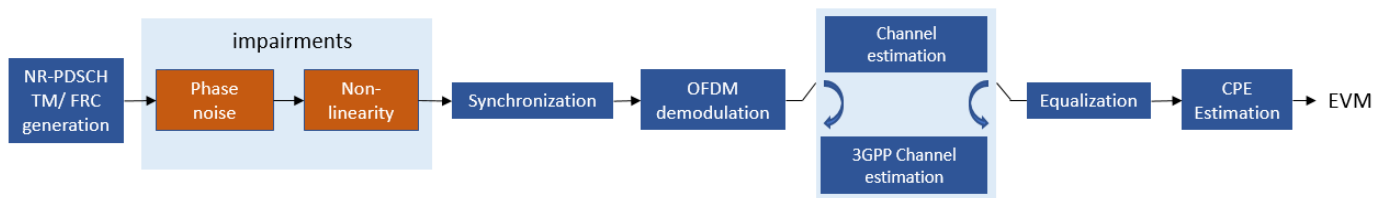
EVM Measurement of 5G NR PDSCH Waveforms

This example shows how to measure the error vector magnitude (EVM) of NR test model (NR-TM) or fixed reference channel (FRC) waveforms. The example also shows how to add impairments including phase noise and memoryless nonlinearity.

Introduction

For base station RF testing, the 3GPP 5G NR standard defines a set of NR-TM waveforms. For user equipment (UE) testing, the standard defines a set of FRC waveforms. The NR-TMs and FRCs for frequency range 1 (FR1) are defined in TS 38.141-1 while the NR-TMs and FRCs for frequency range 2 (FR2) are defined in TS 38.141-2.

This example shows how to generate an NR waveform (TM or FRC) and add impairments. Here we consider phase noise and memoryless nonlinearities. We then calculate the EVM of the resulting signal. We plot the RMS and peak EVMs per OFDM symbol, slot, and subcarrier. We also calculate the overall EVM (RMS EVM averaged over the complete waveform). Annex B and Annex C of TS 38.104 define an alternative method for computing the EVM in FR1 and FR2, respectively. The figure below shows the processing chain implemented in this example.



Simulation parameters

Each NR-TM or FRC waveform is defined by a combination of:

- NR-TM/FRC name
- Channel bandwidth
- Subcarrier spacing
- Duplexing mode

% Select one of the Release 15 NR-TMs for FR1 and FR2 among:

```

% "NR-FR1-TM1.1", "NR-FR1-TM1.2", "NR-FR1-TM2",
% "NR-FR1-TM2a", "NR-FR1-TM3.1", "NR-FR1-TM3.1a",
% "NR-FR1-TM3.2", "NR-FR1-TM3.3", "NR-FR2-TM1.1",
% "NR-FR2-TM2", "NR-FR2-TM3.1"
  
```

% or

% Select one of the Release 15 FRCs for FR1 and FR2 among:

```

% "DL-FRC-FR1-QPSK", "DL-FRC-FR1-64QAM",
% "DL-FRC-FR1-256QAM", "DL-FRC-FR2-QPSK",
% "DL-FRC-FR2-16QAM", "DL-FRC-FR2-64QAM"
  
```

```
rc = "NR-FR1-TM3.2"; % Reference channel (NR-TM or FRC)
```

% Select the NR waveform parameters

```

bw = "10MHz"; % Channel bandwidth
scs = "30kHz"; % Subcarrier spacing
dm = "FDD"; % Duplexing mode
  
```

For TMs, the generated waveform may contain more than one PDSCH. The chosen PDSCH to analyse is based on the RNTI. By default, the following RNTIs are considered for EVM calculation:

- NR-FR1-TM2: RNTI = 2 (64QAM EVM)
- NR-FR1-TM2a: RNTI = 2 (256QAM EVM)
- NR-FR1-TM3.1: RNTI = 0 and 2 (64QAM EVM)
- NR-FR1-TM3.1a: RNTI = 0 and 2 (256QAM EVM)
- NR-FR1-TM3.2: RNTI = 1 (16QAM EVM)
- NR-FR1-TM3.3: RNTI = 1 (QPSK EVM)
- NR-FR2-TM2: RNTI = 2 (64QAM EVM)
- NR-FR2-TM3.1: RNTI = 0 and 2 (64QAM EVM)

As per the specifications (TS 38.141-1, TS 38.141-2), these TMs are not designed to perform EVM measurements: NR-FR1-TM1.1, NR-FR1-TM1.2, NR-FR2-TM1.1. However, if you generate these TMs, the example measures the EVM for the following RNTIs.

- NR-FR1-TM1.1: RNTI = 0 (QPSK EVM)
- NR-FR1-TM1.2: RNTI = 2 (QPSK EVM)
- NR-FR2-TM1.1: RNTI = 0 (QPSK EVM)

For FRCs, by default, RNTI 0 is considered for EVM calculation. In case the input waveform is neither a TM nor an FRC waveform, at most one layer is supported for EVM measurement.

The example calculates the EVM for the RNTIs listed above. To override the default RNTIs, specify the `targetRNTIs` vector

```
targetRNTIs = [];
```

To print EVM statistics, set `displayEVM` to `true`. To disable the prints, set `displayEVM` to `false`. To plot EVM statistics, set `plotEVM` to `true`. To disable the plots, set `plotEVM` to `false`

```
displayEVM = true;
plotEVM = true;

if displayEVM
    fprintf('Reference Channel = %s\n', rc);
end
```

```
Reference Channel = NR-FR1-TM3.2
```

To measure EVM as defined in TS 38.104, Annex B(FR1) / Annex C(FR2), set `evm3GPP` to `true`. `evm3GPP` is disabled by default.

```
evm3GPP = false;
```

Create waveform generator object and generate the waveform

```
tmwavegen = hNRReferenceWaveformGenerator(rc,bw,scs,dm);
[txWaveform,tmwaveinfo,resourcesinfo] = generateWaveform(tmwavegen,tmwavegen.Config.NumSubframes
```

Impairment: Phase Noise and Nonlinearity

This example considers two impairments: phase noise and memoryless nonlinearity. Enable or disable impairments by toggling the flags `phaseNoiseOn` and `nonLinearityModelOn`.

```
phaseNoiseOn = true;
nonLinearityModelOn = true;
```

Normalize the waveform to fit the dynamic range of the nonlinearity.

```
txWaveform = txWaveform/max(abs(txWaveform), [], 'all');
```

The waveform consists of one frame for FDD and two for TDD. Repeat the signal twice. We will remove the first half of the resulting waveform to avoid the transient introduced by the phase noise model.

```
txWaveform = repmat(txWaveform,2,1);
```

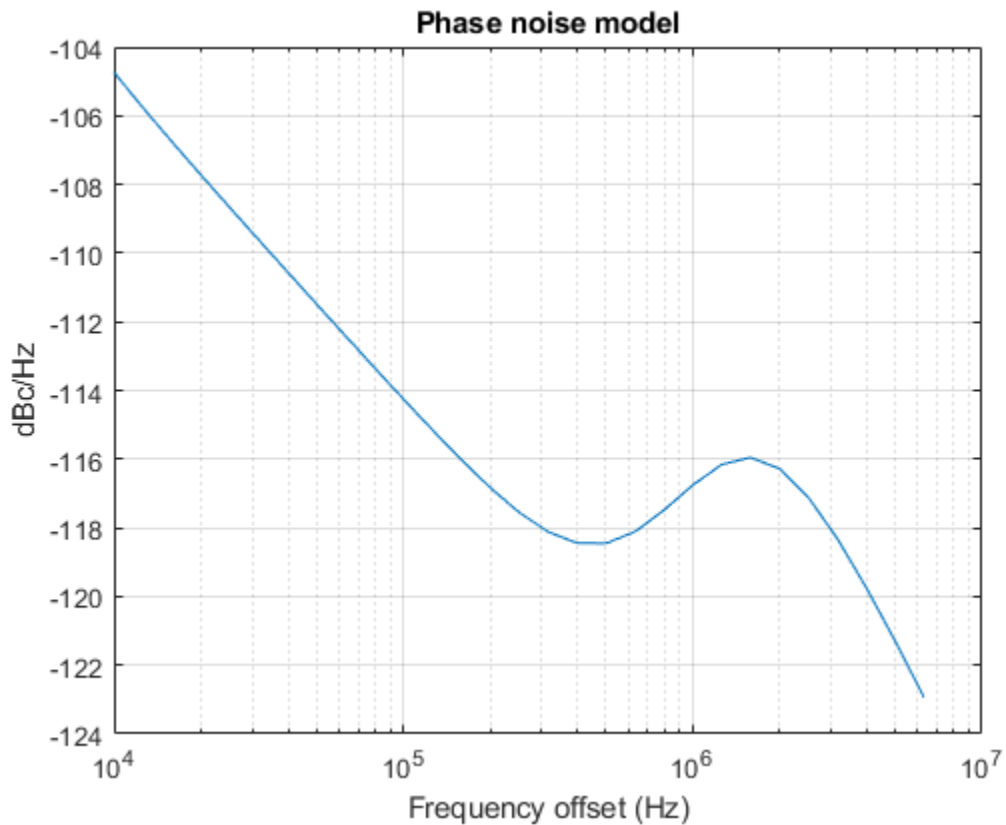
Introduce phase noise distortion. The figure shows the phase noise characteristic. The carrier frequency considered depends on the frequency range. We use values of 4 GHz and 28 GHz for FR1 and FR2 respectively. The phase noise characteristic is generated with the pole/zero model described in R1-163984, "Discussion on phase noise modeling".

```
if phaseNoiseOn
    sr = tmwaveinfo.Info.SamplingRate;

    % Carrier frequency
    if tmwavegen.Config.FrequencyRange == "FR1" % carrier frequency for FR1
        fc = 4e9;
    else % carrier frequency for FR2
        fc = 30e9;
    end

    % Calculate the phase noise level.
    foffsetLog = (4:0.1:log10(sr/2)); % model offset from 1e3Hz to sr/2
    foffset = 10.^foffsetLog; % linear freq offset
    PN_dBc_Hz = hPhaseNoisePoleZeroModel(foffset,fc,'C');
    figure; semilogx(foffset,PN_dBc_Hz);
    xlabel('Frequency offset (Hz)');
    ylabel('dBc/Hz');
    title('Phase noise model'); grid on

    % Apply phase noise to waveform
    pnoise = comm.PhaseNoise('FrequencyOffset',foffset,'Level',PN_dBc_Hz,'SampleRate',sr);
    pnoise.RandomStream = "mt19937ar with seed";
    rxWaveform = zeros(size(txWaveform),'like',txWaveform);
    for i = 1:size(txWaveform,2)
        rxWaveform(:,i) = pnoise(txWaveform(:,i));
    end
    release(pnoise)
end
else
    rxWaveform = txWaveform; %#ok<UNRCH>
end
```



Introduce nonlinear distortion. For this example, use the Rapp model. The figure shows the nonlinearity introduced. Set the parameters for the Rapp model to match the characteristics of the memoryless model from TR 38.803 "Memoryless polynomial model - Annex A.1".

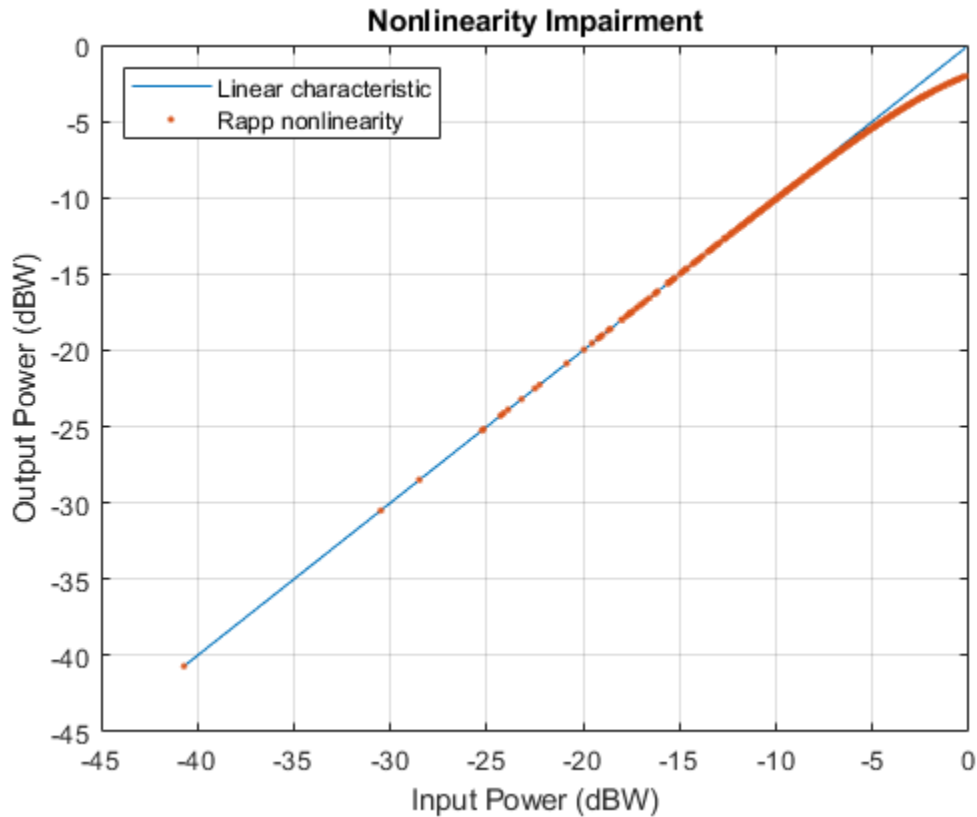
```

if nonLinearityModelOn
    rapp = comm.MemorylessNonlinearity('Method','Rapp model');
    rapp.Smoothness = 1.55;
    rapp.OutputSaturationLevel = 1;

    % Plot nonlinear characteristic
    plotNonLinearCharacteristic(rapp);

    % Apply nonlinearity
    for i = 1:size(rxWaveform,2)
        rxWaveform(:,i) = rapp(rxWaveform(:,i));
        release(rapp)
    end
end
end

```

The signal was previously repeated twice. Remove the first half of this signal. This avoids any transient introduced by the impairment models.

```
if dm == "FDD"
    nFrames = 1;
else % TDD
    nFrames = 2;
end
```

```
rxWaveform(1:nFrames*tmwaveinfo.Info.SamplesPerSubframe*10,:) = [];
```

Measurements

The function, `hNRPDSCEVM`, performs these steps to decode and analyze the waveform:

- Synchronization using the DM-RS over one frame for FDD (two frames for TDD)
- OFDM demodulation of the received waveform
- Channel estimation
- Equalization
- Common Phase error (CPE) estimation and compensation
- PDSCH EVM computation (enable the switch `evm3GPP`, to process according to the EVM measurement requirements specified in TS 38.104, Annex B (FR1) / Annex C (FR2)).

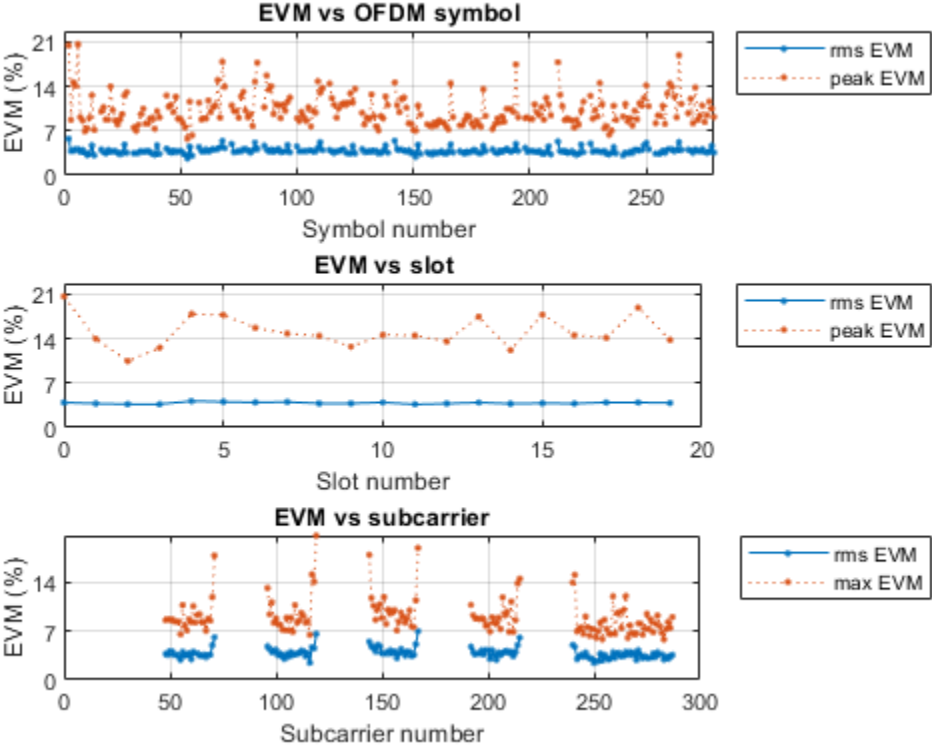
The example measures and outputs various EVM related statistics per symbol, per slot, and per frame peak EVM and RMS EVM. The example displays EVM for each slot and frame. It also displays the

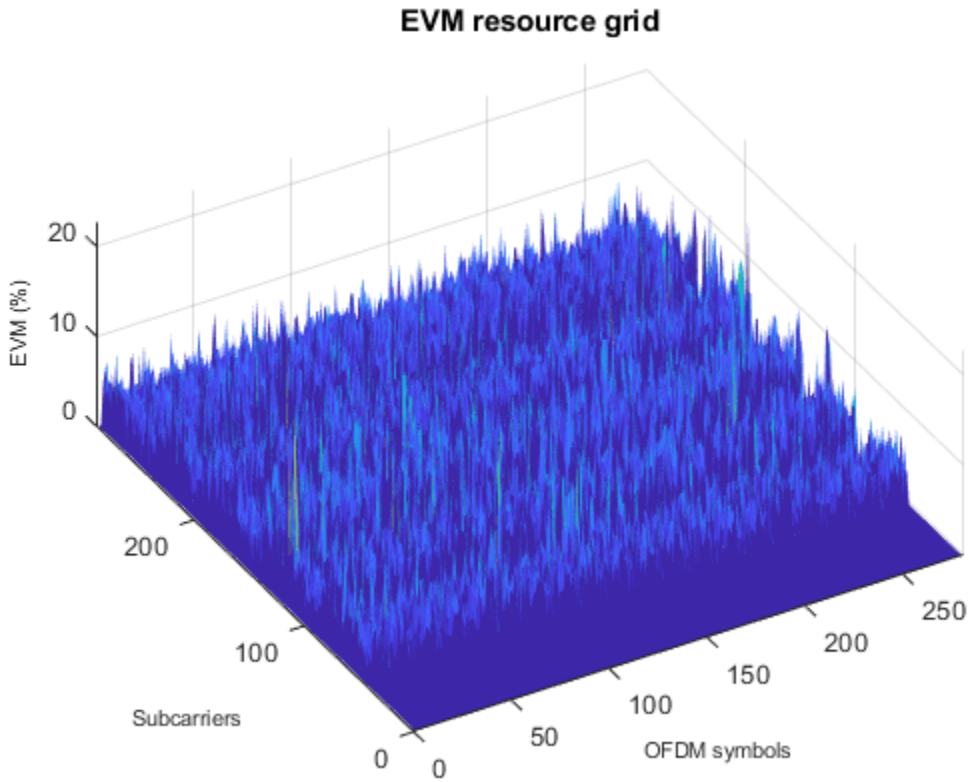
overall EVM averaged over the entire input waveform. The example produces a number of plots: EVM vs per OFDM symbol, slot, subcarrier, and overall EVM. Each plot displays the peak vs RMS EVM.

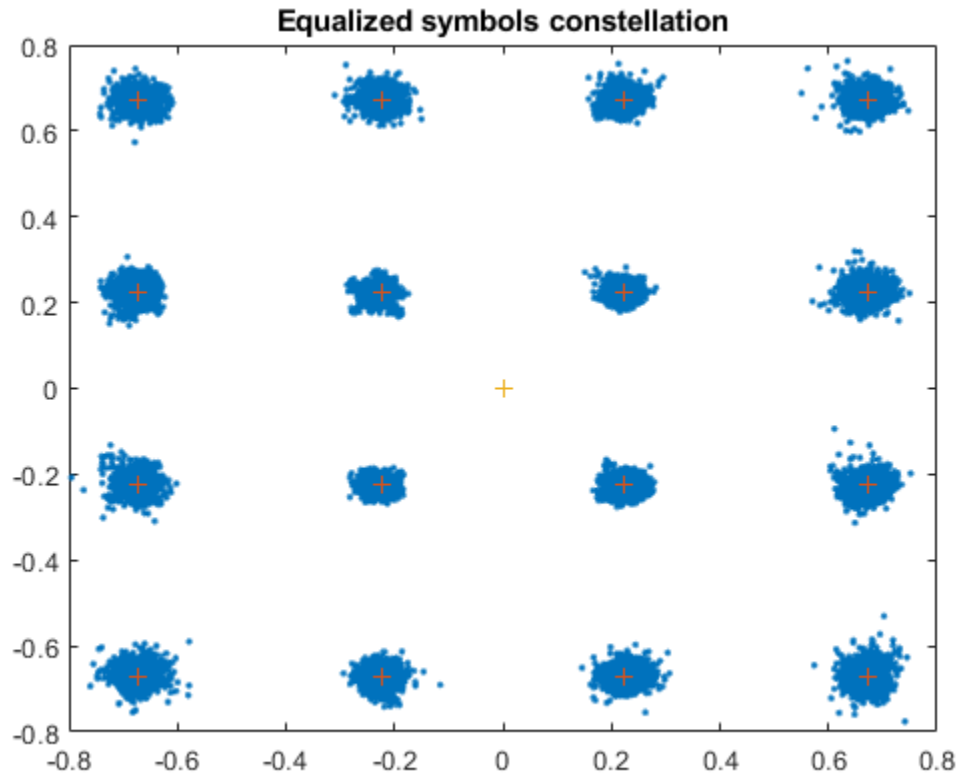
```
cfg = struct();
cfg.Evm3GPP = evm3GPP;
cfg.TargetRNTIs = targetRNTIs;
cfg.PlotEVM = plotEVM;
cfg.DisplayEVM = displayEVM;
cfg.Label = tmwavegen.ConfiguredModel{1};

% Compute and display EVM measurements
[evmInfo,eqSym,refSym] = hNRPDSCHEVM(tmwavegen.Config,rxWaveform,cfg);

RMS EVM, Peak EVM, slot 0: 3.929 20.636%
RMS EVM, Peak EVM, slot 1: 3.779 13.962%
RMS EVM, Peak EVM, slot 2: 3.683 10.465%
RMS EVM, Peak EVM, slot 3: 3.679 12.549%
RMS EVM, Peak EVM, slot 4: 4.169 17.878%
RMS EVM, Peak EVM, slot 5: 4.053 17.728%
RMS EVM, Peak EVM, slot 6: 3.960 15.706%
RMS EVM, Peak EVM, slot 7: 4.031 14.790%
RMS EVM, Peak EVM, slot 8: 3.799 14.443%
RMS EVM, Peak EVM, slot 9: 3.803 12.730%
RMS EVM, Peak EVM, slot 10: 3.946 14.595%
RMS EVM, Peak EVM, slot 11: 3.661 14.484%
RMS EVM, Peak EVM, slot 12: 3.773 13.534%
RMS EVM, Peak EVM, slot 13: 3.930 17.440%
RMS EVM, Peak EVM, slot 14: 3.754 12.184%
RMS EVM, Peak EVM, slot 15: 3.832 17.780%
RMS EVM, Peak EVM, slot 16: 3.774 14.530%
RMS EVM, Peak EVM, slot 17: 3.950 14.131%
RMS EVM, Peak EVM, slot 18: 3.948 18.886%
RMS EVM, Peak EVM, slot 19: 3.871 13.786%
Averaged RMS EVM frame 0: 3.868%
Averaged overall RMS EVM: 3.868%
Overall Peak EVM = 20.6363%
```







Local functions

```
function plotNonLinearCharacteristic(memoryLessNonlinearity)
% Plot the nonlinear characteristic of the power amplifier (PA) impairment
% represented by the input parameter memoryLessNonlinearity, which is a
% comm.MemorylessNonlinearity Communications Toolbox(TM) System object.

% Input samples
x = complex((1/sqrt(2))*(-1+2*rand(1000,1)), (1/sqrt(2))*(-1+2*rand(1000,1)));

% Nonlinearity
yRapp = memoryLessNonlinearity(x);

% Release object to feed it a different number of samples
release(memoryLessNonlinearity);

% Plot characteristic
figure;
plot(10*log10(abs(x).^2), 10*log10(abs(x).^2));
hold on;
grid on
plot(10*log10(abs(x).^2), 10*log10(abs(yRapp).^2), '.');
xlabel('Input Power (dBW)');
ylabel('Output Power (dBW)');
title('Nonlinearity Impairment')
```

```
legend('Linear characteristic', 'Rapp nonlinearity', 'Location', 'Northwest');  
end
```

See Also

Related Examples

- “5G NR-TM and FRC Waveform Generation” on page 6-2
- “NR Phase Noise Modeling and Compensation” on page 3-16

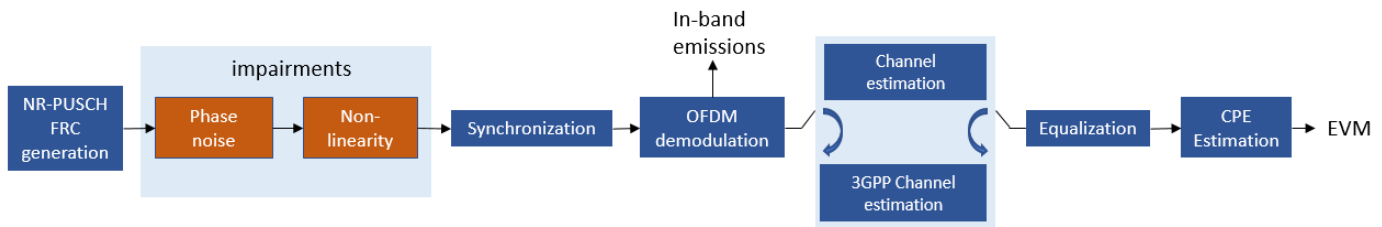
EVM Measurement of 5G NR PUSCH Waveforms

This example shows how to measure the error vector magnitude (EVM) of PUSCH fixed reference channel (FRC) waveforms. The example also shows how to add impairments including phase noise and memoryless nonlinearity.

Introduction

For base station receiver RF testing, the 3GPP 5G NR standard defines a set of FRC waveforms. The FRCs for frequency range 1 (FR1) and frequency range 2 (FR2) are defined in TS 38.104, Annex A.

This example shows how to generate an NR waveform (FRC) and add impairments. The example uses phase noise and memoryless nonlinearities. It shows how to calculate the EVM of the resulting signal, and then plot the root mean square (RMS) and peak EVMs per orthogonal frequency division multiplexing (OFDM) symbol, slot, and subcarrier. Then calculate the overall EVM (RMS EVM averaged over the complete waveform). Annex F of TS 38.101-1 and TS 38.101-2 define an alternative method for computing the EVM in FR1 and FR2, respectively. The figure below shows the processing chain implemented in this example.



Simulation parameters

Each FRC waveform is defined by a combination of these parameters:

- Frequency range number
- Order of the modulation and coding scheme (MCS) used
- Index of the FRC for the given MCS

Select one of the Release 15 FRCs for FR1 and FR2.

The selected reference channel (rc) must follow a G-FR X -A Y - Z format, where X is the frequency-range number (1 or 2), Y is the order of the MCS used in Annex A of TS 38.104 (i.e., a value from 1 to 5) and Z is the index of the FRC for the given MCS. The range of valid Z values depends on the frequency range and the MCS (X and Y) In case the input waveform is not a FRC waveform, atmost one layer is supported for EVM measurement.

```
rc = "G-FR1-A1-7"; % FRC
```

To print EVM statistics, set `displayEVM` to `true`. To disable the prints, set `displayEVM` to `false`. To plot EVM statistics, set `plotEVM` to `true`. To disable the plots, set `plotEVM` to `false`

```
displayEVM = true;
plotEVM = true;

if displayEVM
    fprintf('Reference Channel = %s\n',rc);
end
```

```
Reference Channel = G-FR1-A1-7
```

To measure EVM as defined in TS 38.101-1 (FR1) or TS 38.101-2 (FR2), Annex F respectively, set `evm3GPP` to `true`. `evm3GPP` is disabled by default.

```
evm3GPP = false;
```

Create a waveform generator object, then and generate the waveform.

```
wavegen = hNRReferenceWaveformGenerator(rc);
[txWaveform, tmwaveinfo, resourcesinfo] = generateWaveform(wavegen, wavegen.Config.NumSubframes);
```

Impairment: Phase Noise and Memoryless Nonlinearity

This example considers two impairments: phase noise and memoryless nonlinearity. Enable or disable impairments by toggling the flags `phaseNoiseOn` and `nonLinearityModelOn`.

```
phaseNoiseOn = true;
nonLinearityModelOn = true;
```

Normalize the waveform to fit the dynamic range of the nonlinearity.

```
txWaveform = txWaveform/max(abs(txWaveform), [], 'all');
```

The waveform consists of one frame for frequency division duplexing (FDD) and two for time division duplexing (TDD). Repeat the signal twice. For this example, remove the first half of the resulting waveform to avoid the transient introduced by the phase noise model.

```
txWaveform = repmat(txWaveform, 2, 1);
```

Introduce phase noise distortion. The figure shows the phase noise characteristic. The carrier frequency considered depends on the frequency range. We use values of 4 GHz and 28 GHz for FR1 and FR2, respectively. The phase noise characteristic is generated with the pole or zero model described in R1-163984, "Discussion on phase noise modeling".

```
if phaseNoiseOn
    sr = tmwaveinfo.Info.SamplingRate;

    % Carrier frequency
    if wavegen.Config.FrequencyRange == "FR1" % Carrier frequency for FR1
        fc = 4e9;
    else % Carrier frequency for FR2
        fc = 28e9;
    end

    % Calculate the phase noise level.
    foffsetLog = (3:0.1:log10(sr/2)); % Model offset from 1e3Hz to sr/2
    foffset = 10.^foffsetLog; % Linear frequency offset
    PN_dBc_Hz = hPhaseNoisePoleZeroModel(foffset, fc, 'A');
    figure;
    semilogx(foffset, PN_dBc_Hz);
    xlabel('Frequency Offset (Hz)');
    ylabel('dBc/Hz');
    title('Phase noise model'); grid on

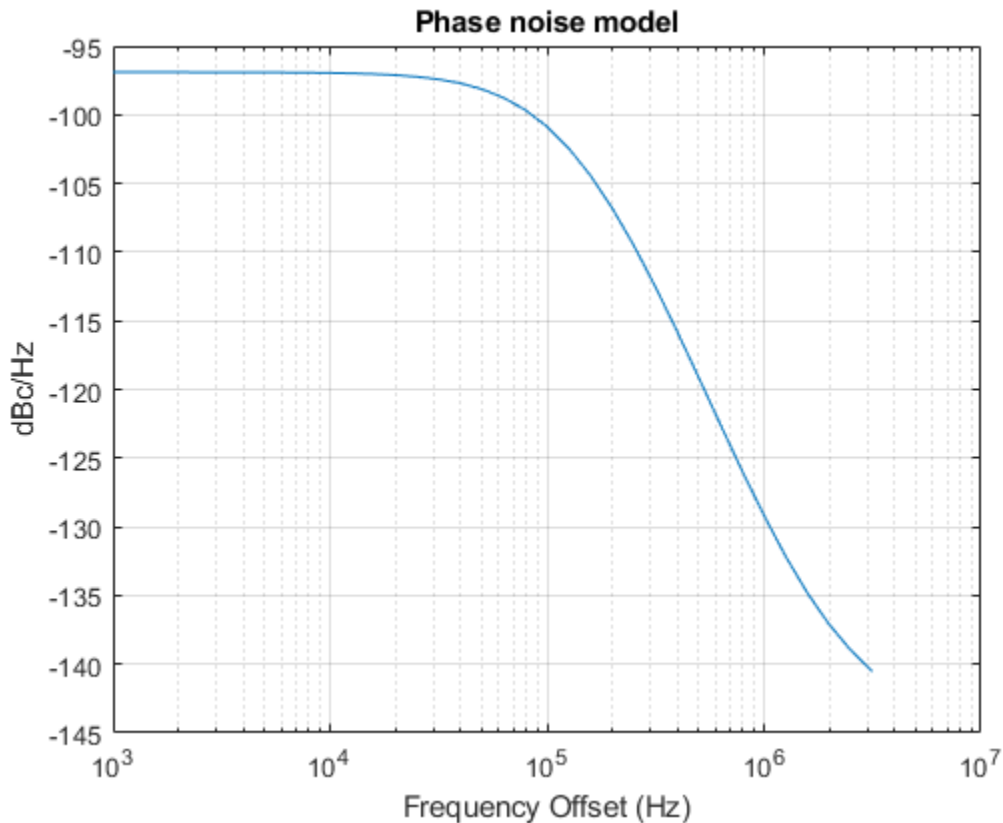
    % Apply phase noise to waveform
    pnoise = comm.PhaseNoise('FrequencyOffset', foffset, 'Level', PN_dBc_Hz, 'SampleRate', sr);
    rxWaveform = zeros(size(txWaveform), 'like', txWaveform);
```



```

for i = 1:size(txWaveform,2)
    rxWaveform(:,i) = pnoise(txWaveform(:,i));
    release(pnoise)
end
else
    rxWaveform = txWaveform; %#ok<UNRCH>
end

```



Introduce nonlinear distortion. For this example, use the Rapp model. The figure shows the introduced nonlinearity. Set the parameters for the Rapp model to match the characteristics of the memoryless model from TR 38.803 "Memoryless polynomial model - Annex A.1".

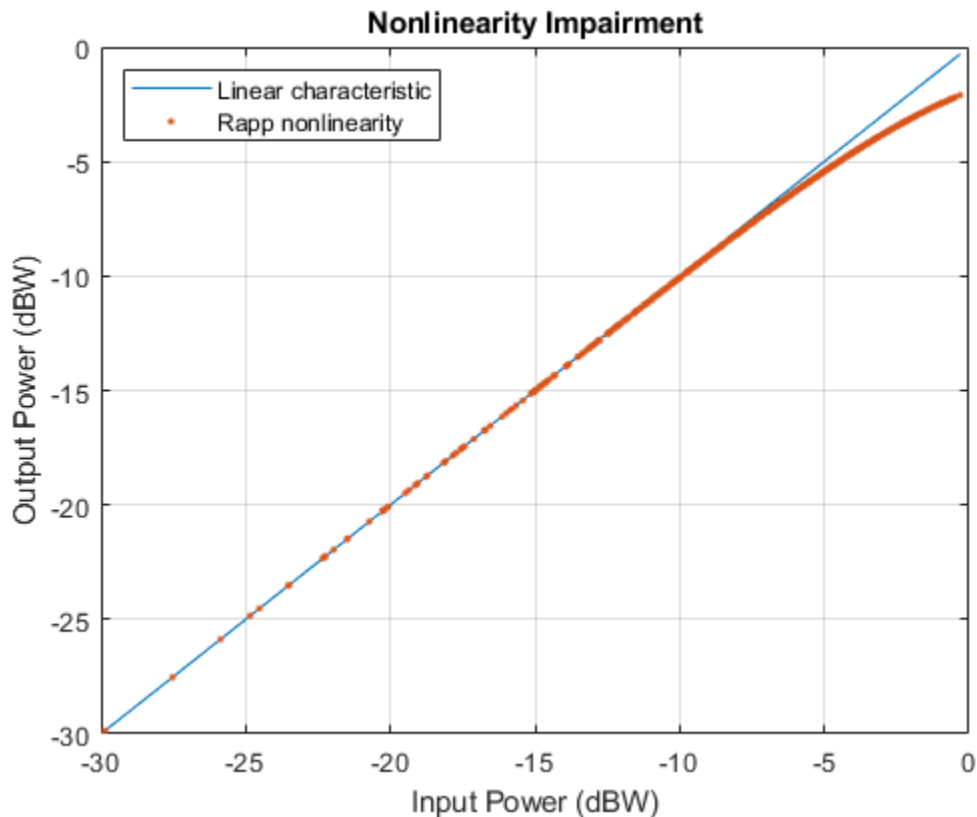
```

if nonLinearityModelOn
    rapp = comm.MemorylessNonlinearity('Method','Rapp model');
    rapp.Smoothness = 1.55;
    rapp.OutputSaturationLevel = 1;

    % Plot nonlinear characteristic
    plotNonLinearCharacteristic(rapp);

    % Apply nonlinearity
    for i = 1:size(rxWaveform,2)
        rxWaveform(:,i) = rapp(rxWaveform(:,i));
        release(rapp)
    end
end

```



The signal was previously repeated twice. Remove the first half of this signal to avoid any transient introduced by the impairment models.

```
dm = wavegen.ConfiguredModel{4};
if dm == "FDD"
    nFrames = 1;
else % TDD
    nFrames = 2;
end
rxWaveform(1:nFrames*tmwaveinfo.Info.SamplesPerSubframe*10,:) = [];
```

Measurements

The function, `hNRPUSCHEVM`, performs these steps to decode and analyze the waveform:

- Synchronization using the DM-RS over one frame for FDD (two frames for TDD)
- OFDM demodulation of the received waveform
- Channel estimation
- Equalization
- PUSCH EVM computation (enable the switch `evm3GPP` to process according to the EVM measurement requirements specified in TS 38.101-1(FR1) or TS 38.101-2 (FR2), Annex F.

The example measures and outputs various EVM related statistics per symbol, per slot, and per frame peak EVM and RMS EVM. The example displays the EVM for each slot and frame, and displays the overall EVM averaged over the entire input waveform. The example produces these plots: EVM

versus per OFDM symbol, slot, subcarrier, overall EVM and in-band emissions. Each EVM related plot displays the peak versus RMS EVM.

```
% Compute and display EVM measurements
```

```
cfg = struct();
```

```
cfg.Evm3GPP = evm3GPP;
```

```
cfg.PlotEVM = plotEVM;
```

```
cfg.DisplayEVM = displayEVM;
```

```
[evmInfo,eqSym,refSym] = hNRPUSCHEVM(wavegen.Config,rxWaveform,cfg);
```

```
RMS EVM, Peak EVM, slot 0: 2.555 7.690%
```

```
RMS EVM, Peak EVM, slot 1: 2.257 6.221%
```

```
RMS EVM, Peak EVM, slot 2: 2.463 6.350%
```

```
RMS EVM, Peak EVM, slot 3: 2.332 6.617%
```

```
RMS EVM, Peak EVM, slot 4: 2.252 7.191%
```

```
RMS EVM, Peak EVM, slot 5: 2.408 6.119%
```

```
RMS EVM, Peak EVM, slot 6: 2.418 7.326%
```

```
RMS EVM, Peak EVM, slot 7: 2.505 8.758%
```

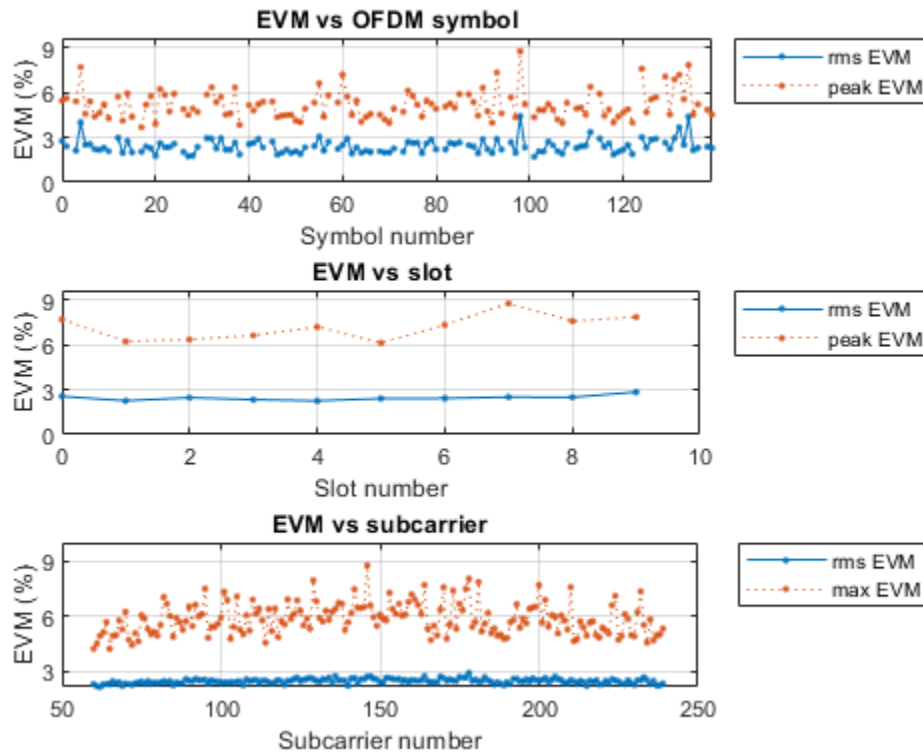
```
RMS EVM, Peak EVM, slot 8: 2.492 7.579%
```

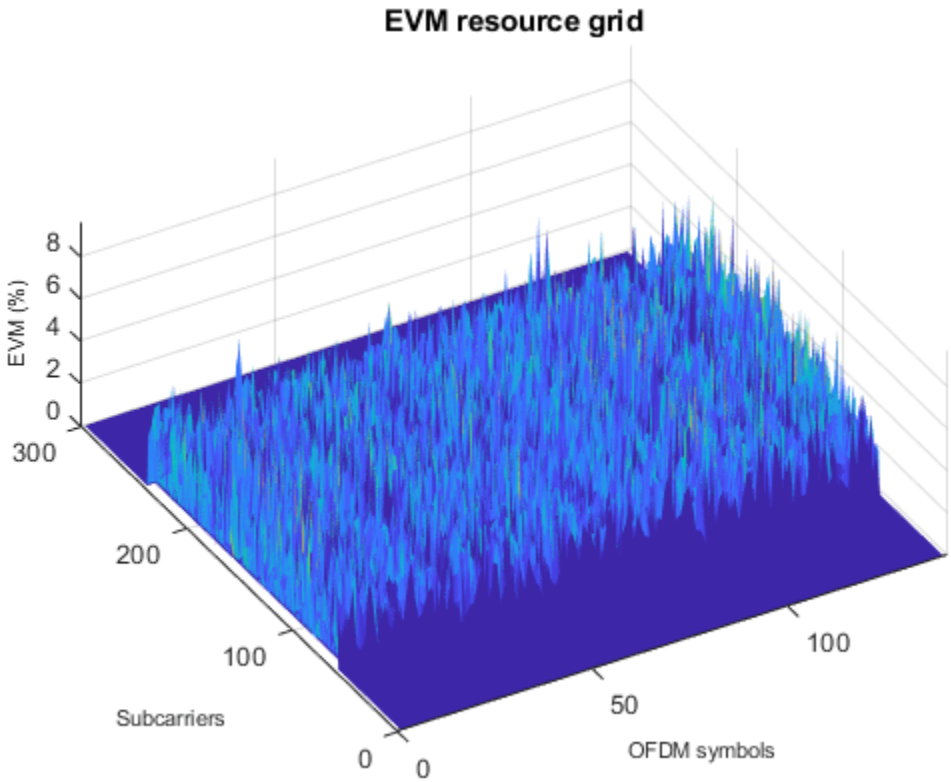
```
RMS EVM, Peak EVM, slot 9: 2.838 7.852%
```

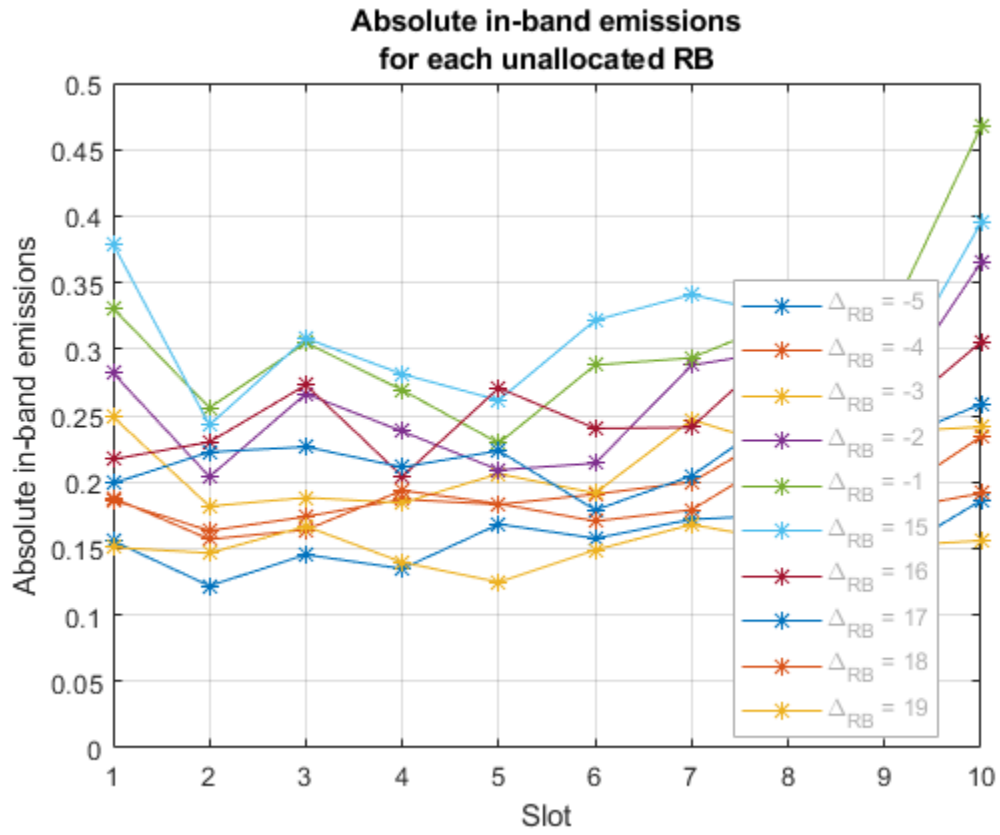
```
Averaged RMS EVM frame 0: 2.457%
```

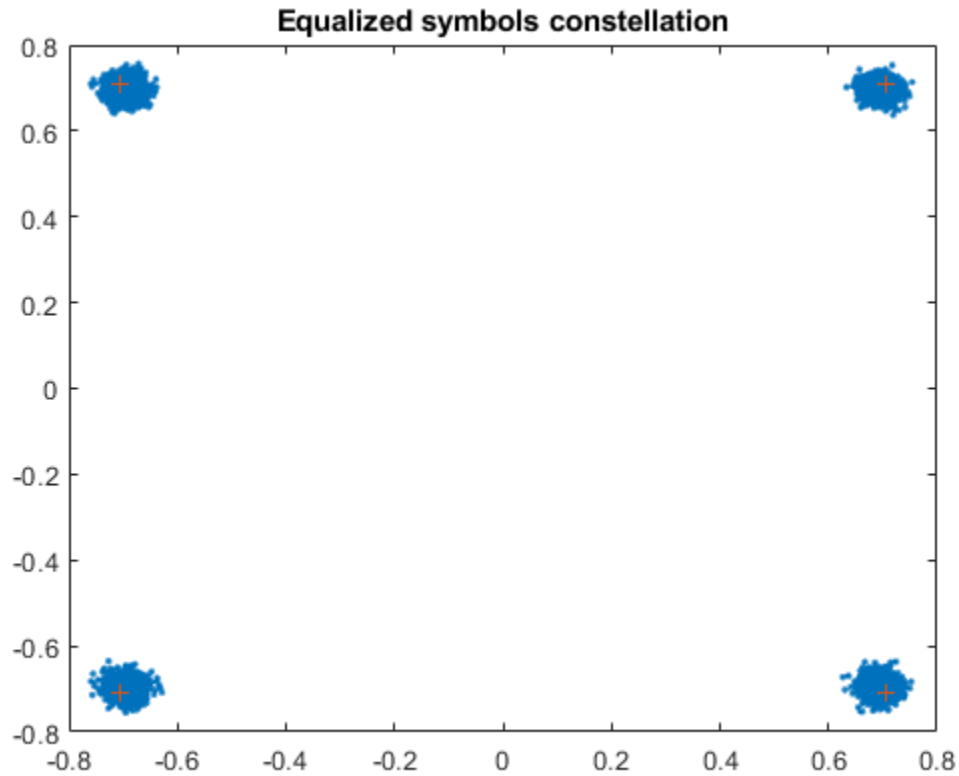
```
Averaged overall RMS EVM: 2.457%
```

```
Peak EVM : 8.7576%
```









Local functions

```
function plotNonLinearCharacteristic(memoryLessNonlinearity)
% Plot the nonlinear characteristic of the power amplifier (PA) impairment
% represented by the input parameter memoryLessNonlinearity, which is a
% comm.MemorylessNonlinearity Communications Toolbox(TM) System object.

% Input samples
x = complex((1/sqrt(2))*(-1+2*rand(1000,1)), (1/sqrt(2))*(-1+2*rand(1000,1)));

% Nonlinearity
yRapp = memoryLessNonlinearity(x);
% Release object to feed it a different number of samples
release(memoryLessNonlinearity);

% Plot characteristic
figure;
plot(10*log10(abs(x).^2), 10*log10(abs(x).^2));
hold on;
grid on
plot(10*log10(abs(x).^2), 10*log10(abs(yRapp).^2), '.');
xlabel('Input Power (dBW)');
ylabel('Output Power (dBW)');
title('Nonlinearity Impairment')
```

```
legend('Linear characteristic', 'Rapp nonlinearity', 'Location', 'Northwest');  
end
```

See Also

Related Examples

- “5G NR-TM and FRC Waveform Generation” on page 6-2
- “NR Phase Noise Modeling and Compensation” on page 3-16

5G NR Downlink Carrier Aggregation, Demodulation, and Analysis

This example shows how to generate, aggregate, and demodulate multiple downlink carriers using 5G Toolbox™ features.

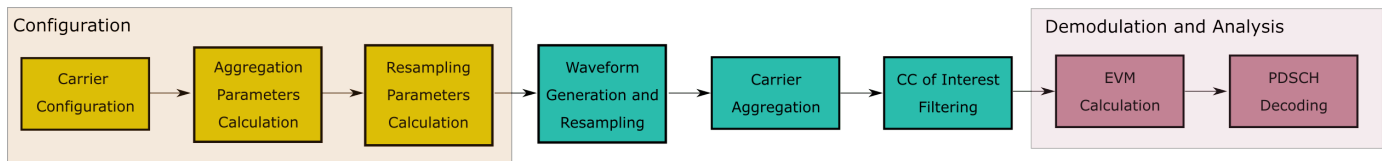
Introduction

This example generates an NR waveform with carrier aggregation (CA). To perform carrier aggregation, the example calculates the frequency offsets for the intraband contiguous CA case, as described in TS 38.104 Section 5.3A. The example also supports customized intraband noncontiguous and interband CA scenarios.

To generate an aggregated downlink waveform, the example configures a standard-compliant downlink fixed reference channel (FRC) for each component carrier. TS 38.101-1 Annex A.3 defines the physical downlink shared channel (PDSCH) FRCs for FR1 and TS 38.101-2 Annex A.3 defines the PDSCH FRCs for FR2. For the FRC waveform generation, you can specify the channel bandwidth, the subcarrier spacing, the modulation, the duplexing mode, and the cell ID. For more information on how to generate DL FRCs, see “5G NR-TM and FRC Waveform Generation” on page 6-2.

After generating the component carriers (CCs), the example resamples the waveforms to a common sample rate and combines the CCs to generate the aggregated waveform.

Finally, the example filters and downsamples a selected CC to perform EVM measurements and PDSCH decoding.



Selection of Component Carrier Parameters

The vector `ChannelBandwidths` specifies the bandwidth for each CC. The length of this vector corresponds to the number of CCs. The elements of `ChannelBandwidths` must be in the set {5, 10, 15, 20, 25, 30, 40, 50, 60, 70, 80, 90, 100} MHz for FR1 and in the set {50, 100, 200, 400} MHz for FR2. TS 38.101-1 Section 5.5A.1 Table 5.5A.1-1 and TS 38.101-2 Section 5.5A.1 Table 5.5A.1-1 list the valid combinations of bandwidths for FR1 and FR2 carrier aggregation, respectively.

If the `ccSpacings` vector is empty, the example calculates the spacings between consecutive carriers, `ccSpacings`, as described in TS 38.104. To select the spacings of your choice, add the spacings to the `ccSpacings` vector.

```

% Configure three carriers for the aggregation. You can select a different
% number of carriers by modifying the number of elements in the
% |channelBandwidths|, |SCSs|, |modulations|, and |nCellIDs| vectors.
frequencyRange = 'FR1'; % (FR1 or FR2)
channelRaster = 100; % Channel raster in kHz (15, 60 or 100)
channelBandwidths = [60 40 40]; % Channel bandwidths in MHz
                        % (5, 10, 15, 20, 25, 30, 40, 50, 60, 70, 80,
                        % 90 or 100 for FR1)
                        % (50, 100, 200 or 400 for FR2)
SCSs = [30 30 30]; % Subcarrier spacings in kHz
  
```



```

        % (15, 30 or 60 for FR1)
        % (60 or 120 for FR2)
modulations = {'QPSK' '64QAM' '256QAM'}; % ('QPSK', '64QAM' or '256QAM' for FR1)
                                                % ('QPSK', '16QAM' or '64QAM' for FR2)
nCellIDs = [1 2 3]; % Cell IDs
duplexMode = 'TDD'; % Duplex mode ('TDD' or 'FDD')
sv = '15.2.0'; % Standard version ('15.1.0', '15.2.0' or '15.7.0')
numSubframes = 10; % Number of subframes to generate per carrier

% Choose the spacings between consecutive carriers, |ccSpacings|, or leave
% the vector empty for calculating the spacings, as described in TS 38.104
% Section 5.3A
ccSpacings = []; % MHz

% Select the CC to demodulate
CCofInterest = 2;

% Verify the number of CCs, channel bandwidths, subcarrier spacings,
% modulations, and spacings. Additionally, check that the spacings are
% greater than 0.
hNRVerifyCarrierParameters(length(channelBandwidths),length(SCSs),...
    length(modulations),length(nCellIDs),ccSpacings);

```

Component Carrier Configuration

Generate a configuration structure for each CC using `hNRReferenceWaveformGenerator`. Store the configuration structures for all CCs in a cell array.

```

% Establish the number of component carriers
numCC = length(channelBandwidths);

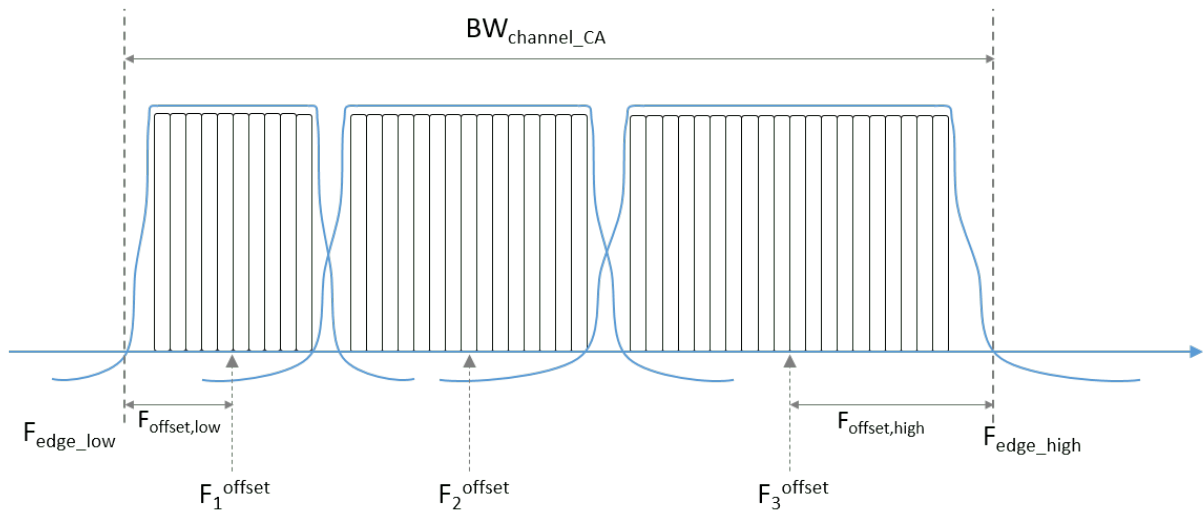
% CC configuration
referenceChannel = cell(1,numCC);
wavegen = cell(1,numCC);
for i = 1:numCC
    % Select a reference channel, FRC, based on the chosen modulation and
    % frequency range
    referenceChannel{i} = strcat('DL-FRC-',frequencyRange,'-',modulations{i});

    % Create a generator object for the above PDSCH FRC reference channel
    wavegen{i} = hNRReferenceWaveformGenerator(referenceChannel{i},...
        channelBandwidths(i),SCSs(i),duplexMode,nCellIDs(i),sv);
end

```

Carrier Aggregation Parameters Calculation

To perform the carrier aggregation, you must calculate the frequency parameters described in TS 38.104, Sections 5.3 and 5.4.



- F_{c_offset} is a vector containing the center frequency of each CC at baseband
- $F_{\text{offset_low}}$ is the frequency offset from the lower F_{c_offset} to the lower aggregated bandwidth edge
- $F_{\text{offset_high}}$ is the frequency offset from the upper F_{c_offset} to the upper aggregated channel bandwidth edge
- $F_{\text{edge_low}}$ is the lower edge of the aggregated channel bandwidth
- $F_{\text{edge_high}}$ is the upper edge of the aggregated channel bandwidth
- $BW_{\text{channel_CA}}$ is the aggregated channel bandwidth of all CCs

Center the lower carrier component at baseband ($F_{c_offset}(1) = 0$ Hz) and compute the center frequency for the rest of the CCs. To determine the center frequencies by following the method described in TS 38.104 Section 5.3A, you must calculate the minimum guardbands and the minimum CC spacings. Alternatively, to select your own center frequencies, choose a nonempty `ccSpacings` vector.

```
% Get the largest SCS configuration, |SCSConfig|, among the SCS
% configurations supported for each two consecutive channel bandwidths to
% obtain the minimum guardband, as described in TS 38.104 Section 5.4.1.2.
table = hGetGBTable(frequencyRange); % Minimum guardband table
if isequal(frequencyRange,'FR1')
    if any(channelBandwidths(:) == 5)
        SCSConfig = 1;
    else
        SCSConfig = 2;
    end
else
    SCSConfig = 3;
end

% Calculate the minimum guardband, as described in TS 38.104 Section 5.3.3
% Table 5.3.3-1 for FR1 and Table 5.3.3-1 for FR2, to obtain the minimum CC
% spacings.
minimumGuardBand = zeros(1,numCC);
```

```

NDLRB = zeros(1,numCC);
scs = strcat(num2str(2^SCSConfig*15),'kHz'); % Common SCS in kHz to extract
                                             % minimum guardband
for i = 1:numCC
    NDLRB(i) = wavegen{i}.Config.SCSCarriers{1}.NSizeGrid;
    minimumGuardBand(i) = table{scs},{strcat(num2str(channelBandwidths(i)),...
        'MHz')};}; % kHz
    minimumGuardBand(i) = minimumGuardBand(i)*1e-3; % MHz
end

% Compute the minimum CC spacings, as defined in TS 38.104 Section
% 5.4.1.2. Use these spacings to calculate the center frequencies and for
% filtering each CC.
minCCSpacings = zeros(1,numCC-1); % Minimum CC spacing
for k = 2:numCC
    minCCSpacings(k-1) = hNRCarrierAggregationChannelSpacing( ...
        channelBandwidths(k-1), channelBandwidths(k), minimumGuardBand(k-1), ...
        minimumGuardBand(k),channelRaster,SCSConfig); % MHz
end

% Determine the center frequency for each CC with respect to 0 Hz.
% Initially, the lower carrier frequency is at baseband (Fc_offset(1) = 0 Hz).
Fc_offset = zeros(1,numCC);
if isempty(ccSpacings)
    ccSpacings = minCCSpacings;
end
for k = 2:numCC
    Fc_offset(k) = Fc_offset(k-1) + ccSpacings(k-1); % MHz
end

Calculate the frequency offsets from the lower and upper center frequencies to the lower and upper
aggregated bandwidth edges, respectively, as described in TS 38.104 Section 5.3A.

F_offset_low = (NDLRB(1)*12+1)*(SCSs(1)*1e-3)/2 + minimumGuardBand(1); % MHz
F_offset_high = (NDLRB(end)*12-1)*(SCSs(end)*1e-3)/2 + minimumGuardBand(end); %MHz

Compute the lower and upper edges of the aggregated channel bandwidth, TS 38.104 Section 5.3A.

F_edge_low = Fc_offset(1) - F_offset_low; % MHz
F_edge_high = Fc_offset(end) + F_offset_high; % MHz

Calculate the aggregated channel bandwidth, TS 38.104 Section 5.3A

BW_channel_CA = F_edge_high - F_edge_low; % MHz
fprintf('BW_channel_CA: %0.4f MHz\n',BW_channel_CA);

BW_channel_CA: 141.0800 MHz

Determine the frequency shift to center the aggregated channel bandwidth at baseband (0 Hz).

shiftToCenter = -1*(BW_channel_CA/2 + F_edge_low);

% Center aggregated bandwidth at baseband
Fc_offset = Fc_offset + shiftToCenter;
F_edge_low = Fc_offset(1) - F_offset_low;
F_edge_high = Fc_offset(end) + F_offset_high;

% Display frequency band edges
fprintf('F_edge_low: %0.4f MHz\n',F_edge_low);

```

```

F_edge_low: -70.5400 MHz
fprintf('F_edge_high: %0.4f MHz\n',F_edge_high);
F_edge_high: 70.5400 MHz
fprintf('F_offset_low: %0.4f MHz\n',F_offset_low);
F_offset_low: 30.7050 MHz
fprintf('F_offset_high: %0.4f MHz\n',F_offset_high);
F_offset_high: 20.6750 MHz

% Display carrier frequencies
fprintf('\n');
for i = 1:numCC
    fprintf('Component Carrier %d:\n',i);
    fprintf('    Fc: %0.4f MHz\n', Fc_offset(i));
end

Component Carrier 1:
    Fc: -39.8350 MHz

Component Carrier 2:
    Fc: 9.9650 MHz

Component Carrier 3:
    Fc: 49.8650 MHz

```

Oversampling Rate Calculation

Calculate the required oversampling factors for each component carrier, OSRs, to use a common sampling rate for the aggregated waveform.

```

% Obtain sample rates of the component carriers
CCSR = zeros(1,numCC);
carriers = cell(1,numCC);
for i = 1:numCC
    carriers{i} = nrCarrierConfig;
    carriers{i}.NCellID = nCellIDs(i);
    carriers{i}.NSizeGrid = NDLRB(i);
    carriers{i}.SubcarrierSpacing = SCSs(i);
    carriers{i}.CyclicPrefix = wavegen{i}.Config.BandwidthParts{1}.CyclicPrefix;
    info = nrOFDMInfo(carriers{i});
    CCSR(i) = info.SampleRate; % Hz
end

% Calculate the oversampling ratio for the largest BW CC to ensure the
% waveform occupies a maximum of 85% of the total bandwidth, |bwfraction|
bwfraction = 0.85; % Bandwidth utilization of 85%
OSR = (BW_channel_CA/bwfraction)/(max(CCSR)/1e6);

% To simplify the resampling operation, choose an oversampling ratio which
% is a power of 2: calculate the next power of two above OSR
OSR = 2^ceil(log2(OSR));

```

```
% Calculate the overall sample rate for the aggregated waveform
SR = OSR*max(CCSR); % Hz
fprintf('\nOutput sample rate: %0.4f Ms/s\n\n',SR/1e6);
```

```
Output sample rate: 245.7600 Ms/s
```

```
% Calculate the individual oversampling factors for the component carriers
OSRs = SR./CCSR;
```

Waveform Generation and Carrier Aggregation

Call the `generateWaveform` function from the `hNRReferenceWaveformGenerator` helper file to generate the waveform for each CC. Resample each carrier to a common sample rate, frequency modulate the carriers to the appropriate center frequency, and finally aggregate the CCs to form the combined waveform.

```
% Generate and aggregate the component carriers
waveform = 0;
tmwaveinfo = cell(1,numCC);
waveInfo = cell(1,numCC);
resourcesInfo = cell(1,numCC);
frequencyShifter = comm.PhaseFrequencyOffset('SampleRate',SR);
for i = 1:numCC
    % Generate each CC
    [wf,waveInfo{i},resourcesInfo{i}] = generateWaveform(wavegen{i},...
        numSubframes);

    % Resample the CCs so that they have the same sample rate
    wf = resample(wf,OSRs(i),1)/OSRs(i);

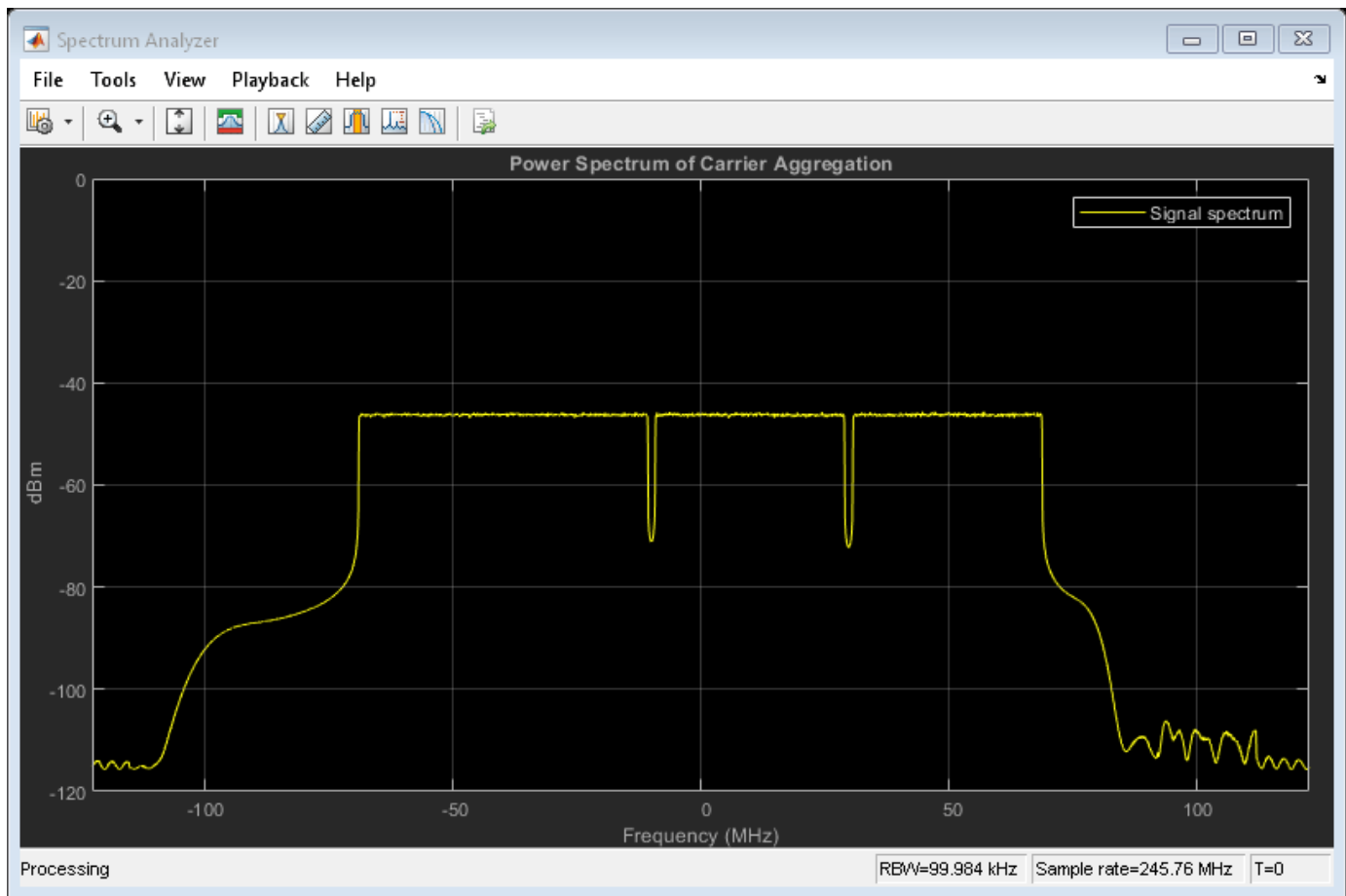
    % Frequency modulate each CC to the appropriate center frequency
    frequencyShifter.FrequencyOffset = Fc_offset(i)*1e6;
    wf = frequencyShifter(wf);
    frequencyShifter.release();

    % Aggregate the CCs to form the combined signal
    waveform = waveform + wf;
end
```

Plot Carrier Aggregated Spectrum

Display the spectrum of the carrier aggregated signal by using the `hNRCarrierAggregationPlotSpectrum` helper function. The spectrum plot shows the individual carrier bandwidths. This example does not upconvert the waveform to radio frequency (RF), the center of the aggregated bandwidth is at baseband (0 Hz).

```
specPlot = hNRCarrierAggregationPlotSpectrum(waveform,SR,...
    'Power Spectrum of Carrier Aggregation',{ 'Signal spectrum'});
```



CC Demodulation and Filtering

Choose a CC, then demodulate, filter and downsample the CC of your choice, following these steps.

- Bring the CC to baseband (0 Hz)
- Calculate the passband and stopband frequencies of the filter
- Filter out the neighboring CCs by using the designed filter and downsample the CC.

```
% Verify carrier of interest ID
if CCofInterest > numCC || CCofInterest <= 0 || mod(CCofInterest,1) ~= 0
    error('nr5g:NRDownlinkCarrierAggregationExample:CCOutOfRange',...
        'Cannot demodulate CC number %d, choose an integer number that falls between 1 and %d\n',
        CCofInterest, numCC) ;
end
fprintf(1,'Extracting CC number %d: \n', CCofInterest);
```

Extracting CC number 2:

```
% Define downsampling filter order
filterOrder = 201;
```

```
% Precalculate the filter passband and stopband values for all CC
firPassbandVec = (NDLRB*12-1).*(SCSS*1e-3)/2 / (SR/1e6/2);
```

```

firStopbandVec = hNRCarrierAggregationStopband(minCCSpacings,NDLRB,SR,SCSs);

% Choose the passband and stopband values for the carrier of interest
firPassband = firPassbandVec(CCofInterest);
firStopband = firStopbandVec(CCofInterest);

% Pad signal with zeros to consider filter transient response length
waveform = [waveform; zeros(filterOrder*2,size(waveform,2))];

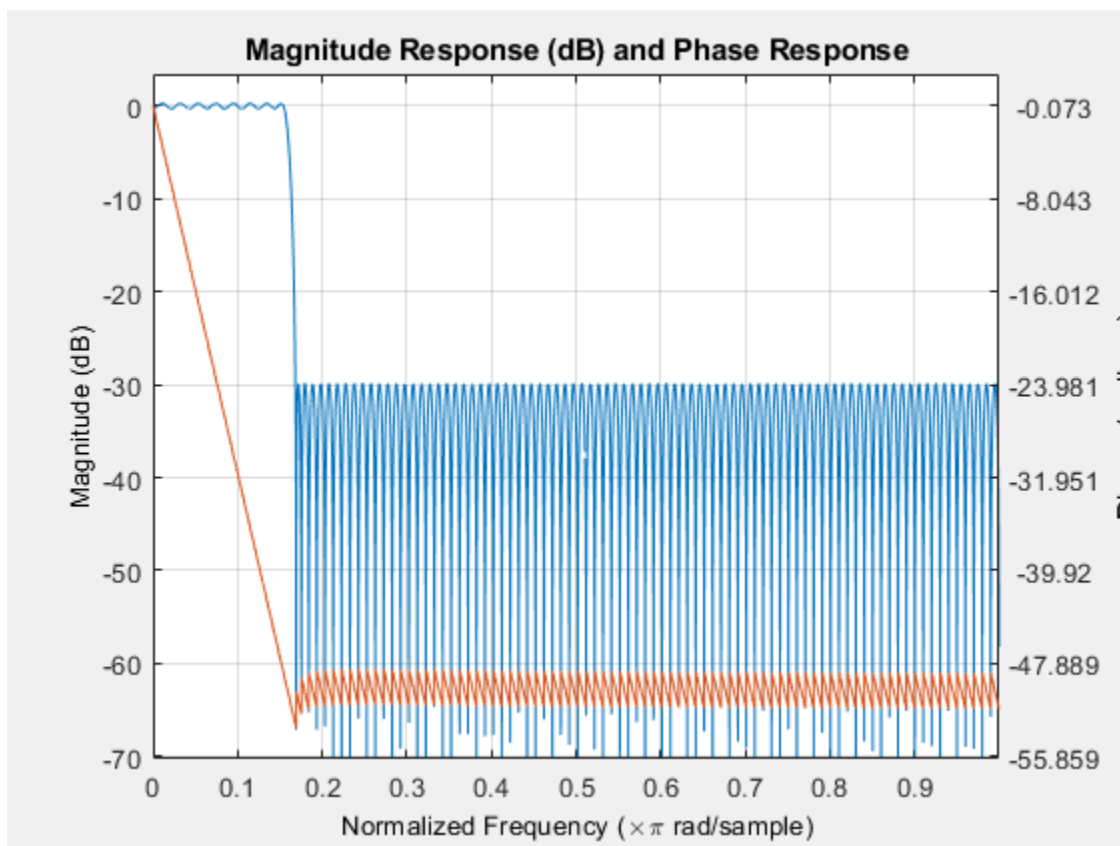
% Center the carrier of interest at 0 Hz
frequencyShifter.FrequencyOffset = -Fc_offset(CCofInterest)*1e6;
demodulatedCC = frequencyShifter(waveform);

% To ease the filter design requirements, apply the downsampling in two
% stages if necessary. Use a downsampling factor of 4 in the initial stage.
% If the quality of the resulting signal is not as required, consider a
% different filter design in this initial stage.
if (firStopband < 0.1)
    % Downsample by 4 in the initial stage
    SRC = 4;
    demodulatedCC = resample(demodulatedCC,1,SRC);
    % Update passband and stopband values
    firPassband = firPassband * SRC;
    firStopband = firStopband * SRC;
else
    % Do not apply an extra downsampling
    SRC = 1;
end

% Design the lowpass filter to filter out the CC of your choice
frEdges = [0 firPassband firStopband 1];
firFilter = dsp.FIRFilter;
firFilter.Numerator = firpm(filterOrder,frEdges,[1 1 0 0]);

% Display the response of the designed filter
fvtool(firFilter,'Analysis','freq');

```

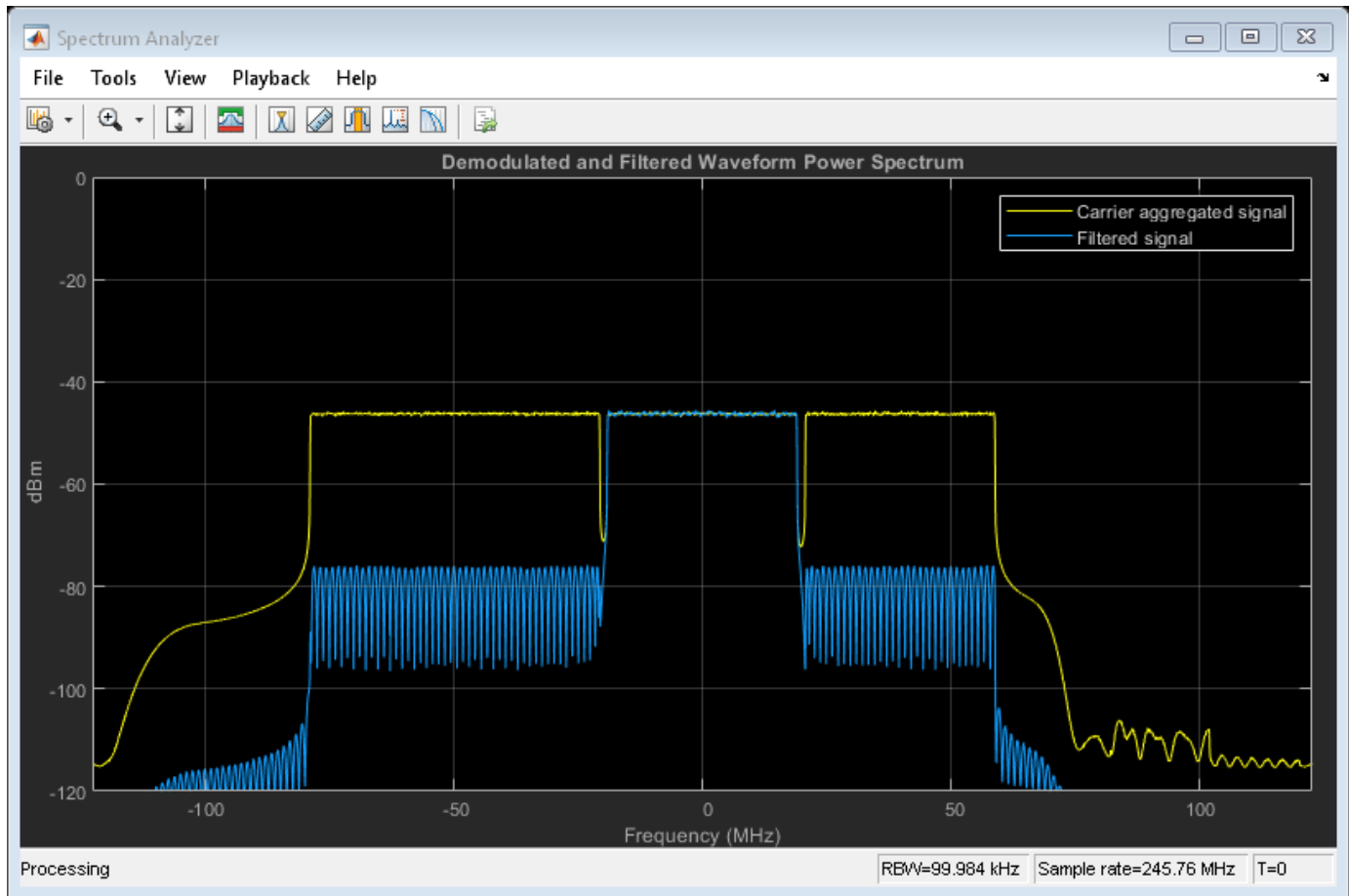


```

% Filter the signal to extract the component of interest
rxWaveform = firFilter(demodulatedCC);

% Plot the demodulated and filtered spectra
filteredSpecPlot = ...
    hNRCarrierAggregationPlotSpectrum([demodulatedCC, rxWaveform],SR,...
        'Demodulated and Filtered Waveform Power Spectrum',...
        {'Carrier aggregated signal' 'Filtered signal'});

```

```
% Downsample the filtered carrier to its baseband rate
rxWaveform = downsample(rxWaveform,OSRs(CCoFInterest)/SRC);
```

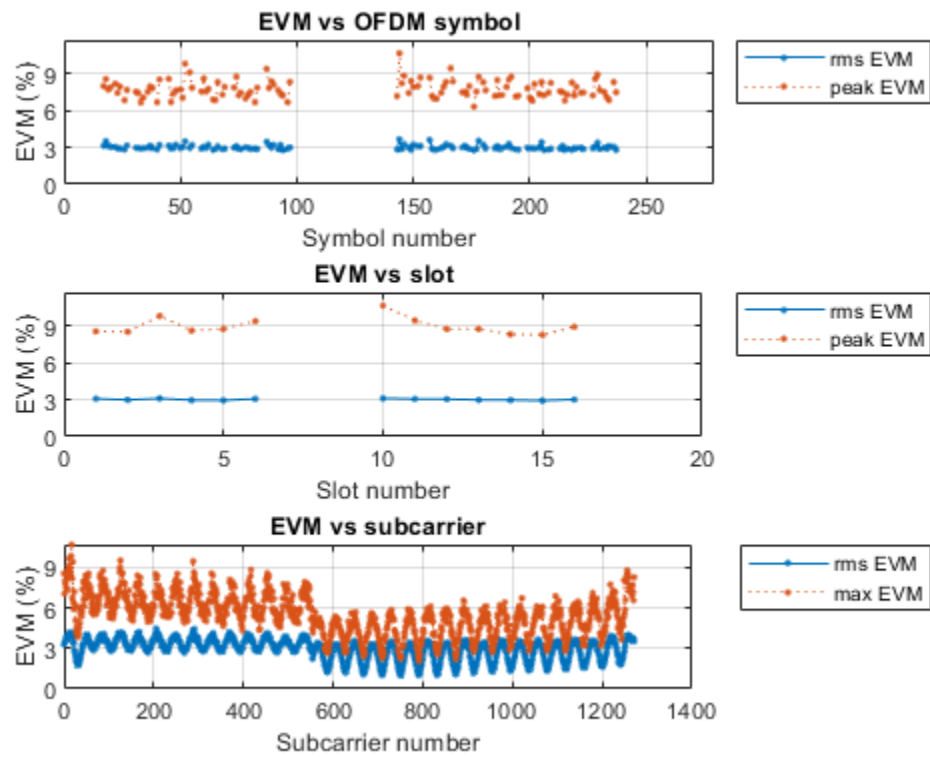
EVM Measurements

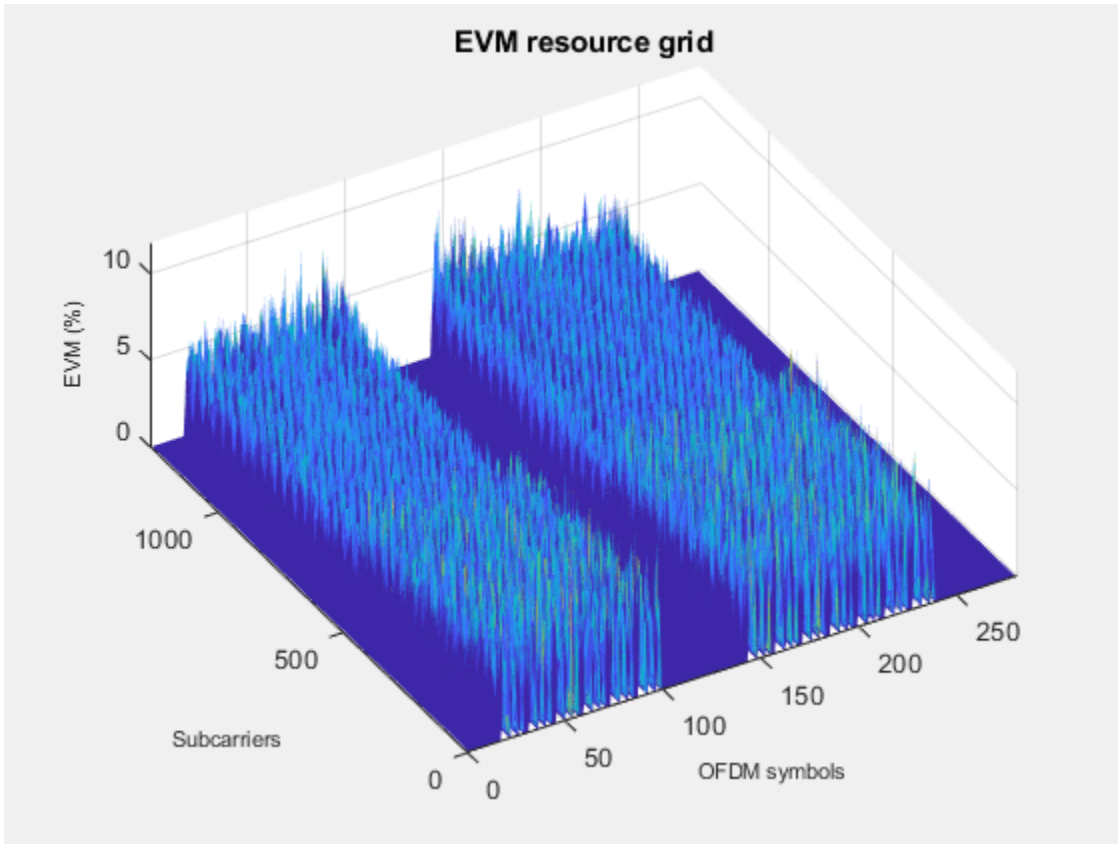
The `hNRPDSCEVM` helper function returns the PDSCH EVM by performing synchronization, OFDM demodulation, channel estimation, and equalization. The function displays the EVM for each slot and frame and the overall EVM averaged over the entire input waveform. The function also plots these graphs: EVM per OFDM symbol, slot, subcarrier, and overall EVM.

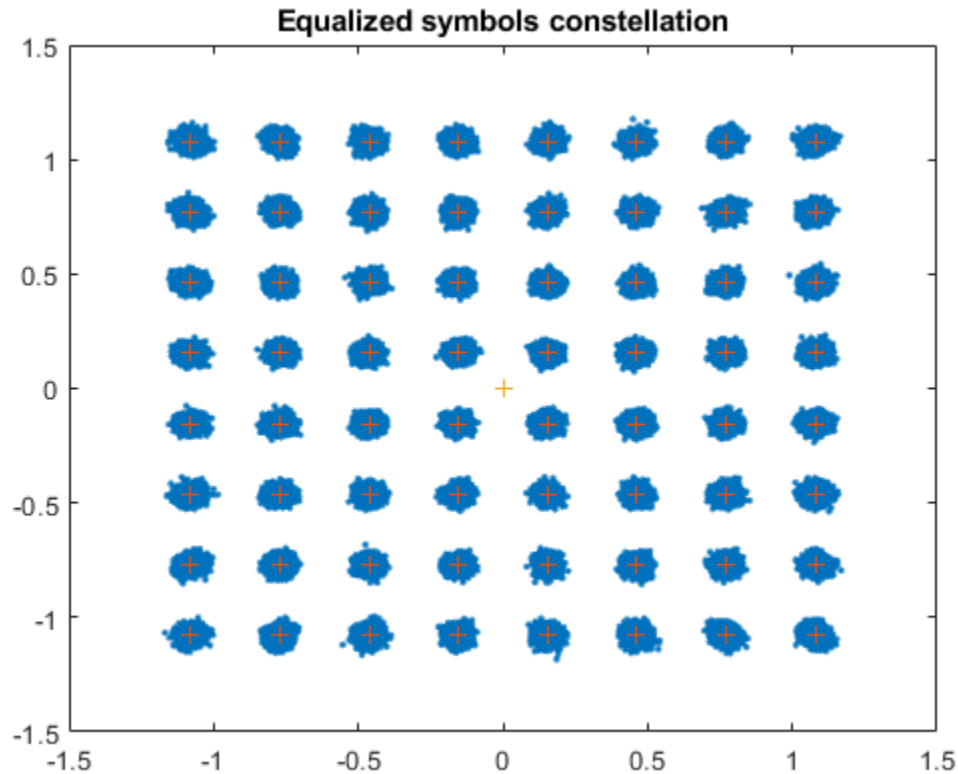
```
% Parameterize the channel estimator configuration using the structure |cfg|
cfg = struct();
cfg.Evm3GPP = true; % To measure EVM as defined in TS 38.104, Annex B(FR1)
                  % / Annex C(FR2) set |Evm3GPP| to |true|.
cfg.TargetRNTIs = [];
cfg.PlotEVM = true;
cfg.DisplayEVM = true;
cfg.Label = wavegen{CCoFInterest}.ConfiguredModel{1};

% Perform EVM measurements and plot results
[evmInfo,eqSym,refSym] = hNRPDSCEVM(wavegen{CCoFInterest}.Config,...
    rxWaveform,cfg);
```

Low edge RMS EVM, Peak EVM, slot 1: 3.092 8.591%
High edge RMS EVM, Peak EVM, slot 1: 2.795 8.020%
Low edge RMS EVM, Peak EVM, slot 2: 2.996 8.556%
High edge RMS EVM, Peak EVM, slot 2: 2.774 7.533%
Low edge RMS EVM, Peak EVM, slot 3: 3.114 9.851%
High edge RMS EVM, Peak EVM, slot 3: 2.796 7.604%
Low edge RMS EVM, Peak EVM, slot 4: 2.972 8.648%
High edge RMS EVM, Peak EVM, slot 4: 2.784 7.600%
Low edge RMS EVM, Peak EVM, slot 5: 2.949 8.783%
High edge RMS EVM, Peak EVM, slot 5: 2.774 7.659%
Low edge RMS EVM, Peak EVM, slot 6: 3.079 9.422%
High edge RMS EVM, Peak EVM, slot 6: 2.783 7.265%
Low edge RMS EVM, Peak EVM, slot 10: 3.118 10.700%
High edge RMS EVM, Peak EVM, slot 10: 2.779 8.086%
Low edge RMS EVM, Peak EVM, slot 11: 3.070 9.473%
High edge RMS EVM, Peak EVM, slot 11: 2.767 7.837%
Low edge RMS EVM, Peak EVM, slot 12: 3.053 8.774%
High edge RMS EVM, Peak EVM, slot 12: 2.780 7.284%
Low edge RMS EVM, Peak EVM, slot 13: 2.993 8.781%
High edge RMS EVM, Peak EVM, slot 13: 2.792 7.980%
Low edge RMS EVM, Peak EVM, slot 14: 2.981 8.352%
High edge RMS EVM, Peak EVM, slot 14: 2.789 7.437%
Low edge RMS EVM, Peak EVM, slot 15: 2.930 8.303%
High edge RMS EVM, Peak EVM, slot 15: 2.791 7.852%
Low edge RMS EVM, Peak EVM, slot 16: 3.023 8.961%
High edge RMS EVM, Peak EVM, slot 16: 2.788 7.686%
Averaged low edge RMS EVM, frame 0: 3.029%
Averaged high edge RMS EVM, frame 0: 2.784%
Averaged RMS EVM frame 0: 3.029%







Averaged overall RMS EVM: 3.029%
Overall Peak EVM = 10.7004%

PDSCH Decoding

Decode the PDSCH of the recovered signal and check the resulting CRC for errors.

```
% Perform time synchronization on the input waveform
offset = nrTimingEstimate(carriers{CCofInterest},rxWaveform,...
    waveInfo{CCofInterest}.ResourceGridBWP);
rxWaveform = rxWaveform(1+offset:end,:);

% Perform OFDM demodulation
rxGrid = nrOFDMDemodulate(carriers{CCofInterest},rxWaveform);

% Get the allocated slots and OFDM symbols per slot
allocatedSlots = zeros(1,size(resourcesInfo{CCofInterest}.WaveformResources.PDSCH.Resources,2));
for i=1:length(allocatedSlots)
    allocatedSlots(i) = resourcesInfo{CCofInterest}.WaveformResources.PDSCH.Resources(i).NSlot;
end
L = carriers{CCofInterest}.SymbolsPerSlot; % OFDM symbols per slot

% Create a DLSCH decoder System object
decodeDLSCH = nrDLSCHDecoder;
decodeDLSCH.MultipleHARQProcesses = false;
decodeDLSCH.TargetCodeRate = wavegen{CCofInterest}.Config.PDSCH{1}.TargetCodeRate;
decodeDLSCH.LDPCDecodingAlgorithm = 'Layered belief propagation';
decodeDLSCH.MaximumLDPCIterationCount = 6;
```

```

for NSlot=1:length(allocatedSlots)
    % Extract slot
    SlotID = allocatedSlots(NSlot);
    rxSlot = rxGrid(:,(1:L)+(SlotID*L),:);
    refSlot = waveInfo{CCofInterest}.ResourceGridBWP(:,(1:L)+(SlotID*L),:);

    % Perform channel estimation
    [estChannelGrid,noiseEst] = nrChannelEstimate(carriers{CCofInterest},...
        rxSlot,refSlot);

    % Get PDSCH resource elements from the received grid and channel estimate
    pdschIndices = resourcesInfo{CCofInterest}.WaveformResources.PDSCH.Resources(NSlot).ChannelI
    [pdschRx,pdschHest] = nrExtractResources(pdschIndices,rxSlot,estChannelGrid);

    % Perform equalization
    [pdschEq,csi] = nrEqualizeMMSE(pdschRx,pdschHest,noiseEst);

    % Perform layer demapping, symbol demodulation, and descrambling
    modulation = wavegen{CCofInterest}.Config.PDSCH{1}.Modulation;
    RNTI = wavegen{CCofInterest}.Config.PDSCH{1}.RNTI;
    [dlschLLRs,rxSymbols] = nrPDSCHDecode(pdschEq,modulation,...
        carriers{CCofInterest}.NCellID,RNTI,noiseEst);

    % Scale LLRs by CSI
    csi = nrLayerDemap(csi); % CSI layer demapping
    NumCW = size(resourcesInfo{CCofInterest}.WaveformResources.PDSCH.Resources(NSlot).Codeword,2)
    for cwIdx = 1:NumCW
        Qm = length(dlschLLRs{cwIdx})/length(rxSymbols{cwIdx}); % Bits per symbol
        csi{cwIdx} = repmat(csi{cwIdx}.',Qm,1); % Expand by each bit per symbol
        dlschLLRs{cwIdx} = dlschLLRs{cwIdx} .* csi{cwIdx}(:); % Scaled symbols
    end

    % Calculate the transport block sizes for the codewords in the slot
    trBlkSize = resourcesInfo{CCofInterest}.WaveformResources.PDSCH.Resources(NSlot).TransportBl

    % Decode the DL-SCH transport channel
    decodeDLSCH.TransportBlockLength = trBlkSize;
    NLayers = wavegen{CCofInterest}.Config.PDSCH{1}.NumLayers;
    RVSequence = wavegen{CCofInterest}.Config.PDSCH{1}.RVSequence;
    [decbits,crc] = decodeDLSCH(dlschLLRs,modulation,NLayers,RVSequence);

    % Display the CRC status
    if crc
        disp(['Slot ' num2str(SlotID) ': CRC failed']);
    else
        disp(['Slot ' num2str(SlotID) ': CRC passed']);
    end
end

Slot 1: CRC passed
Slot 2: CRC passed
Slot 3: CRC passed
Slot 4: CRC passed
Slot 5: CRC passed
Slot 6: CRC passed
Slot 10: CRC passed
Slot 11: CRC passed

```

Slot 12: CRC passed
Slot 13: CRC passed
Slot 14: CRC passed
Slot 15: CRC passed
Slot 16: CRC passed

Bibliography

- 1** 3GPP TS 38.104 "NR; Base Station (BS) radio transmission and reception" 3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Radio Access Network.
- 2** 3GPP TS 38.101-1 "NR; User Equipment (UE) radio transmission and reception; Part 1: Range 1 Standalone." 3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Radio Access Network.
- 3** 3GPP TS 38.101-2 "NR; User Equipment (UE) radio transmission and reception: Part 2: Range 2 Standalone." 3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Radio Access Network.

See Also

Functions

`nrCarrierConfig`

Related Examples

- "EVM Measurement of 5G NR PDSCH Waveforms" on page 6-59
- "5G NR-TM and FRC Waveform Generation" on page 6-2

Code Generation and Deployment

What is C Code Generation from MATLAB?

You can use 5G Toolbox together with MATLAB Coder™ to:

- Create a MEX file to speed up your MATLAB application.
- Generate ANSI®/ISO® compliant C/C++ source code that implements your MATLAB functions and models.
- Generate a standalone executable that runs independently of MATLAB on your computer or another platform.

In general, the code you generate using the toolbox is portable ANSI C code. In order to use code generation, you need a MATLAB Coder license. For more information, see “Get Started with MATLAB Coder” (MATLAB Coder).

Using MATLAB Coder

Creating a MATLAB Coder MEX file can substantially accelerate your MATLAB code. It is also a convenient first step in a workflow that ultimately leads to completely standalone code. When you create a MEX file, it runs in the MATLAB environment. Its inputs and outputs are available for inspection just like any other MATLAB variable. You can then use MATLAB tools for visualization, verification, and analysis.

The simplest way to generate MEX files from your MATLAB code is by using the `codegen` function at the command line. For example, if you have an existing function, `myfunction.m`, you can type the commands at the command line to compile and run the MEX function. `codegen` adds a platform-specific extension to this name. In this case, the “mex” suffix is added.

```
codegen myfunction.m  
myfunction_mex;
```

Within your code, you can run specific commands either as generated C code or by using the MATLAB engine. In cases where an isolated command does not yet have code generation support, you can use the `coder.extrinsic` command to embed the command in your code. This means that the generated code reenters the MATLAB environment when it needs to run that particular command. This is also useful if you want to embed commands that cannot generate code (such as plotting functions).

To generate standalone executables that run independently of the MATLAB environment, create a MATLAB Coder project inside the MATLAB Coder Integrated Development Environment (IDE). Alternatively, you can call the `codegen` command in the command line environment with appropriate configuration parameters. A standalone executable requires you to write your own `main.c` or `main.cpp` function. See “Generating Standalone C/C++ Executables from MATLAB Code” (MATLAB Coder) for more information.

C/C++ Compiler Setup

Before using `codegen` to compile your code, you must set up your C/C++ compiler. For 32-bit Windows platforms, MathWorks® supplies a default compiler with MATLAB. If your installation does not include a default compiler, you can supply your own compiler. For the current list of supported compilers, see Supported and Compatible Compilers on the MathWorks website. Install a compiler that is suitable for your platform, then read “Setting Up the C or C++ Compiler” (MATLAB Coder).

After installation, at the MATLAB command prompt, run `mex -setup`. You can then use the `codegen` function to compile your code.

Functions and System Objects That Support Code Generation

For an alphabetized list of features supporting C/C++ code generation, see [5G Toolbox - Functions Filtered by C/C++ Code Generation](#).

See Also

Functions

`codegen` | `mex`

More About

- [“Code Generation Workflow” \(MATLAB Coder\)](#)
- [Generate C Code from MATLAB Code Video](#)

